LATIN READER

ROLFE AND GENNISON

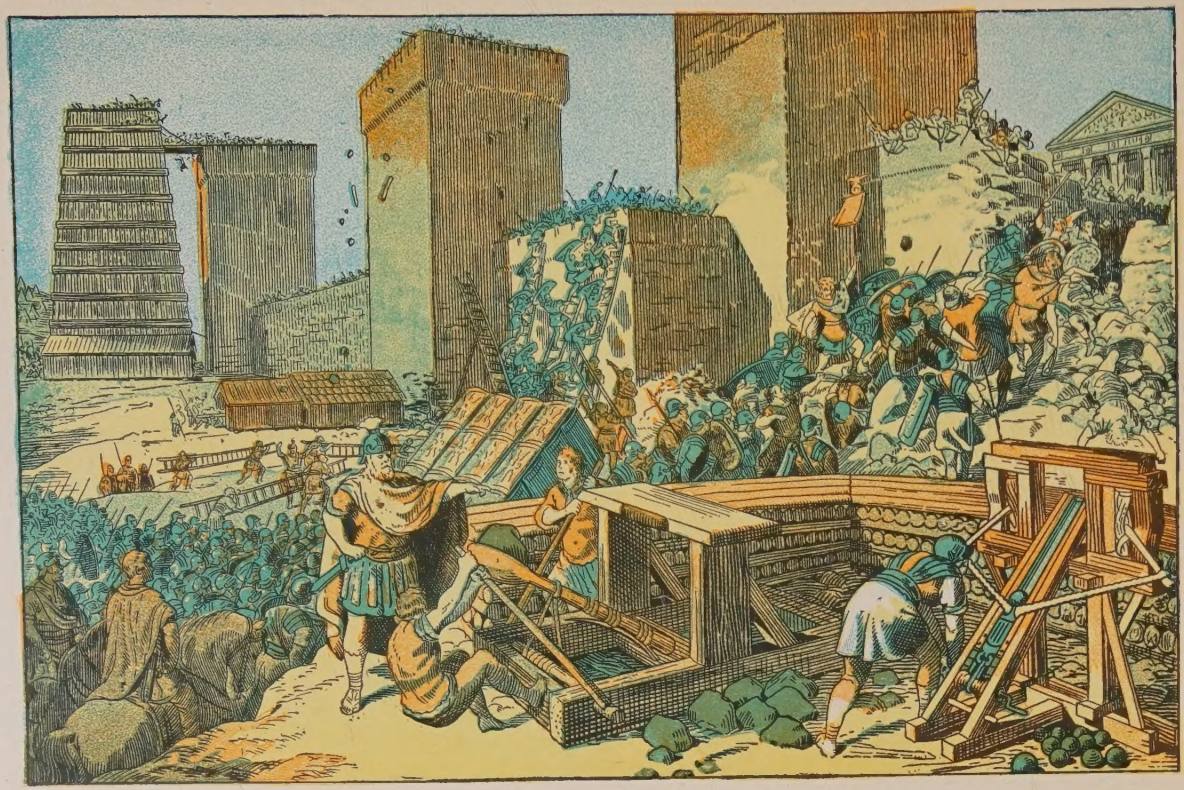
B. Smith

2-10¢

ANCIENT ITALY
SCALE OF STATUTE MILES
50 0 50 100
8 Longitude East 12 from Greenwich 16
46
42
RHAETIA
NORICUM
PANNONIA
LIBURNIA
DALMATIA
ADRIATIC S
VENETIA
GALLIA CISALPINA
LIGURIA
ETRURIA
PICENUM
CAPRARIA
ILVA
CORSICA
IGILIUM
Gulf of Genua
Genua
Nicaea
Augusta Taurinorum
Vercellae
Mediolanum
L. Verbanus
LITTLE ST. BERNARD
Ticinus R.
L. Larius
Cremona
Placentia
Parma
Mutina
Mantua
Andes
Verona
Padua
Athesis R.
L. Benacus
Po R.
Aquileia
Forum Julii
Ravenna
Rubicon R.
Ariminum
Pisaurum
Metaurus R.
Sena Gallica
Ancona
Sentinum
Pistoria
Fatsulae
Florentia
Luca
Pisae
Arnus R.
Volaterrae
Arretium
L. Trasimenus
Clusium
Camerinum
Spoletium
Volsinii
Nursia
Asculum
Aternus R.
Telamon
Tarquinii
L. Vadimonis
Cortinium

TYRRHENIAN SEA
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
IONIAN SEA
SARDINIA
Caralis
AFRICA
Utica
CARTHAGE
Tunis
Zama
Clupea
Hadrumetum
Leptis
Thapsus
Drepanum
AEGATES IS.
Eryx
Mt. Eryx
Panormus
Segesta
Thermae
Lilybaeum
Selinus
Agrigentum
Ecnomus
Tyndaris
Messana
Str. of Messana
Mylae
LIPARA
STRONGYLE
Mt. Etna
Tauromenium
Catana
Enna
Leontini
Gela
Camarina
SYRACUSE
Locri Epizephyrii
Rhegium
Croton
Sybaris
Thurii
Heraclea
Metapontum
Tarentum
Brundisium
CALABRIA
APULIA
Venusia
Canusium
Aufidus R.
Canna
Beneventum
Caudium
CAMPANIA
Capua
Neapolis
Puteoli
Salernum
CAPREAE I.
Cumae
Misenum
Formiae
Minturnae
Sinuessa
Circeii
Ostia
Alba Longa
Antium
Tusculum
LATIUM
ROME
Tiber R.
38
8
12
16

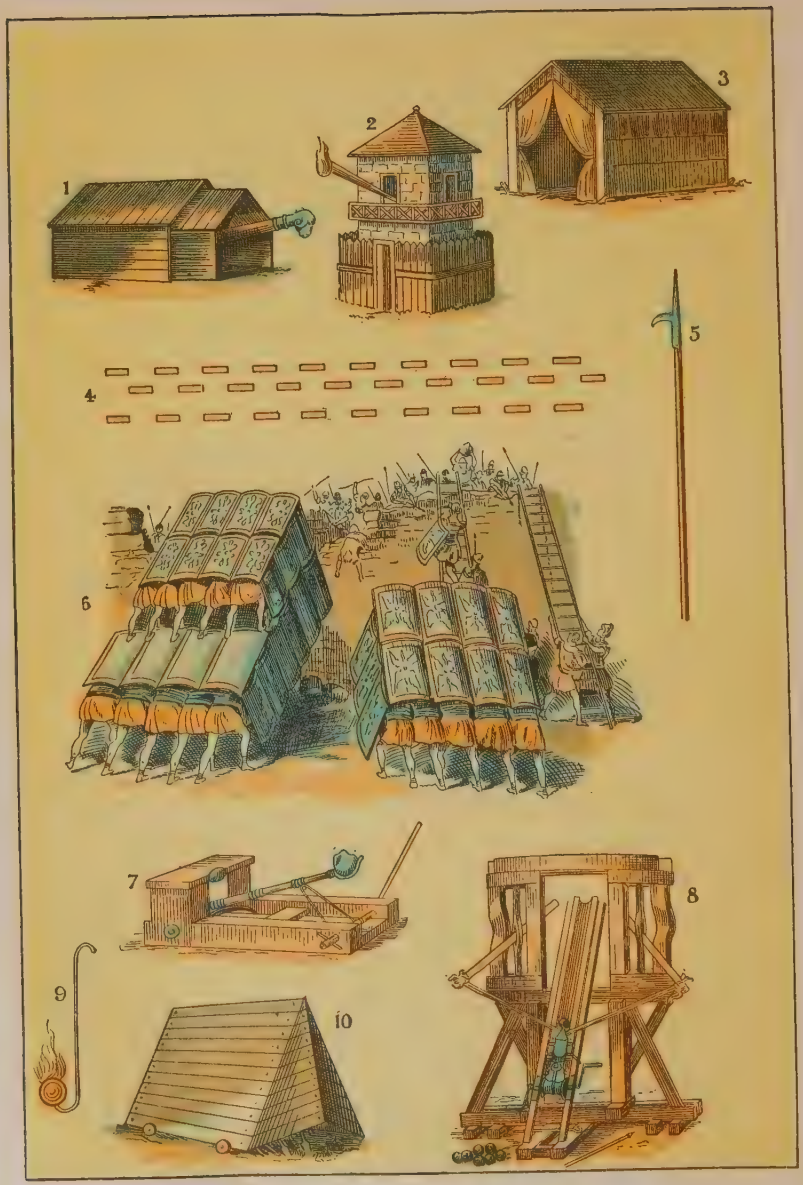
PLATE I



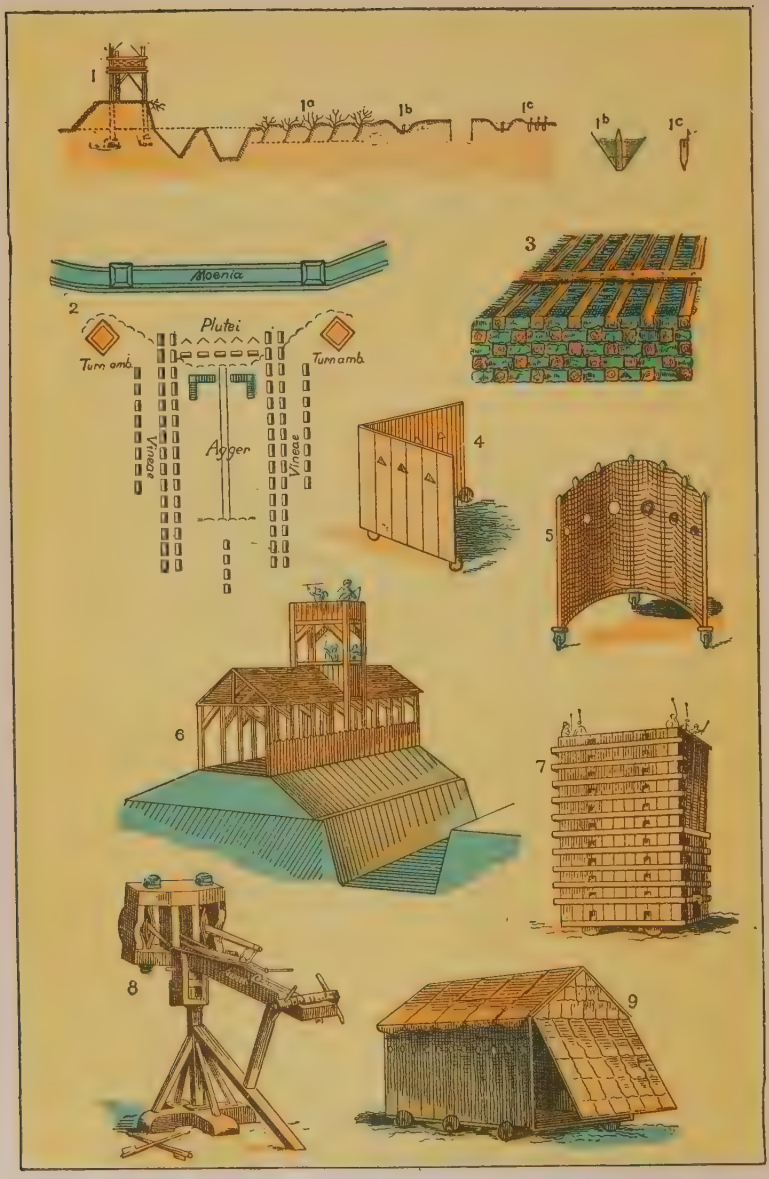
Attack on a Besieged City.

1. Imperator. 2. Legatus. 3. Centurio. 4. Lictor. 5. Signiferi. 6. Bucinator. 7. Tubicen. 8. Vexillum. 9. Aquila.

1. Slinger. 2. Light-armed Soldier. 3. Soldier of the Legion. 4. Sarcinae. 5. Cavalry.



1. Testudo arietaria. *2. Fire-signal Tower.* *3. Tabernaculum.*
4. Order of Battle. *5. Falx Muralis.* *6 Testudo.* *7. Onager.* *8. Ballista.*
9. Glans fusili ex Argilla. *10. Testudo fossaria.*



1. Cæsar's Intrenchments before Alesia (VII. 70); 1*a*, *Cippi*, 1*b*, *Lilia*, 1*c*, *Stimuli* *2. Agger, etc. 3. Gallic City Wall. 4, 5. Plutei. 6. Vallum with Passage-ways and Towers. 7. Turris Ambulatoria. 8. Catapulta. 9. Vinea.*

A Roman Chariot Race

A LATIN READER

FOR THE SECOND YEAR

WITH NOTES, EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION INTO LATIN
GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX, AND VOCABULARIES

BY

JOHN C. ROLFE, PH.D.
HEAD OF THE DEPARTMENT OF LATIN IN THE
UNIVERSITY OF PENNSYLVANIA

AND

WALTER DENNISON, PH.D.
LATE PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN
SWARTHMORE COLLEGE

ALLYN AND BACON
BOSTON NEW YORK CHICAGO
ATLANTA SAN FRANCISCO DALLAS

COPYRIGHT, 1918, BY
JOHN C. ROLFE AND WALTER DENNISON.

EAP

To the Memory of

WALTER DENNISON

PREFACE

This book is designed to provide a course of reading for those who wish a partial substitute for the traditional four books of Caesar's *Gallic War*. The selections cover considerably more than the actual requirements for admission to college, thus making it possible to vary the work from year to year and to do additional sight reading. The selections from Caesar's *Civil War* have been especially arranged for sight reading and the *Story of the Argonauts* will be found to be well adapted either to that purpose or as an introduction to Caesar, since its vocabulary is largely based upon that of the *Gallic War*.

While special pains have been taken to make the book attractive and convenient for use, it cannot be too strongly emphasized that the main object of the second year's work, if the student is to make any real progress, must be the acquirement of a working vocabulary and a knowledge of the principles of grammar. With these two ends in view a *Grammatical Appendix* has been provided, to which frequent reference is made in the Notes, and particular attention has been given to the derivation of words both in the *Vocabulary* and in sections 107–118 of the *Grammatical Appendix*.

The Selections from Caesar and the Fables have been annotated with reference to the requirements of those who may wish to begin their reading with those parts of the book.

The untimely death of Professor Dennison has delayed the appearance of the book, but has not diminished the extent and the value of his contribution to it.

Thanks are due to Professor B. L. D'Ooge, of the Michigan State Normal College, for the use of photographs of Carthage and its neighborhood, and to Professor Francis W. Kelsey, of the University of Michigan, for permission to use some of the plans in his new *Caesar's Commentaries*.

JOHN C. ROLFE.

JULY, 1918.

CONTENTS

PAGE

List of Illustrations xi

Plates; Maps; Plans xv

INTRODUCTION

I. The Roman History xvii

II. The Viri Romae xviii

III. The Life and Works of Cornelius Nepos . . xix

IV. The Life and Works of Gaius Iulius Caesar . . xxii

V. Caesar's Army xxvi

1. Who Composed the Army (xxvi). 2. The Infantry: The Legion (xxviii). Officers (xxviii). The Legionary (xxx). Weapons (xxxi). 3. The Cavalry (xxxv). 4. The Auxiliaries (xxxv). 5. The Camp (xxxvi). 6. On the March (xxxix). 7. The Battle (xli). 8. Capture of a Town (xliii). 9. Artillery (xliv). 10. The Battle-fields of Caesar To-day (xlv). 11. Caesar's Navy (xlvi). 12. Caesar's Rules of Strategy (xlvii). 13. The Gauls (xlviii). 14. Caesar's Mission in Gaul (xlix). 15. Britain (l).

Hints to the Pupil li

TEXT AND NOTES

I. ROMAN HISTORY 1

II. VIRI ROMAE:

1. Gaius Iulius Caesar 58

2. Marcus Tullius Cicero 82

III. CORNELIUS NEPOS:

1. Hamilcar 98

2. Hannibal 103

3. Cato 122

IV. THE STORY OF THE ARGONAUTS . . . 128

V. CAESAR:

De Bello Gallico: PAGE

Book I 155
Book II 249
Book III, The Campaign against the Veneti (10–16) 295
Book IV, The First Invasion of Britain (20–36) . 304
Campaign against the Morini and Menapii (37–38) . 324
Book V, The Second Invasion of Britain (8–23) . 327
The Attack on Cicero's Camp (38–52) . . . 345
Book VI, The Second Invasion of Germany (9–10) . 361
Customs of the Gauls and Germans (11–23) . . 363
The Hercynian Forest and Its Wonderful Animals (25–28) 377
Book VII, The Revolt of the Gauls (1–10, 63–67) . 380
The Siege of Alesia (68–90) 397

De Bello Civili:

Book I, Caesar and the Senate (1–7) . . . 423
Book II, The Second Sea-fight off Massilia (3–7) . 435
The Destruction of Curio's Army (36–44) . . 442
Book III, Operations in Illyricum and Epirus (12–18) 450
The Battle of Pharsalia (82–99) 458
The Death of Pompey (103, 104) 478

VI. FABLES 481

GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX 489

I. INFLECTIONS:

A. Nouns 489
General (1–6). The Five Declensions (7–45).

B. Adjectives 499
Declensions (46–55). Comparison (56–66).

C. Adverbs 505
Formation and Comparison (67–71).

D. Numerals 506
Cardinal, Ordinal, Distributive, Numeral Adverbs (72–74).

E. Pronouns 508
Classes and Declensions (75–86).

PAGE

F. VERBS 512
Principal Parts (87). *Sum* (88). The Four Conjugations (89–94). Deponents (95). Semi-Deponents (96). Periphrastic Conjugations (97). Irregular Verbs (98–106).

II. WORD FORMATION:

A. DERIVATIVES 535
Nouns (108–109). Adjectives (110–111). Verbs (112–113).

B. COMPOUNDS 537

WORD GROUPS 538

III. SYNTAX:

A. GENERAL RULES 544

B. NOUNS: 1. *The Accusative* 545
Direct Object (125). Adverbial (125, *a*). With Neuter Pronoun or Adjective (125, *b*). Subject of Infinitive (126). Two Accusatives (127–129). Extent (130). Place to Which (131–133).

2. *The Genitive* 547
General Rule (134). Possessive (135). Subjective (136). Objective (137). Partitive (138). Appositional (139). Quality (140). Measure (141). Value (142). With Adjectives (143). With Verbs of Remembering (144). With Verbs of Judicial Action (145). With Impersonal Verbs (146–147).

3. *The Dative* 550
Indirect Object (148–149). With the Passive (150). Reference (151). Person Judging (152). Separation (153). Possessor (154). Agency (155). Service (156). With Adjectives (157).

4. *The Ablative* 552
Separation (158). Source (159). Agency (160). Comparison (161–162). Means (163). Price (164). Cause (165). Manner (166). Accordance (166, *a*). Accompaniment (167). Degree of Difference (168). Attendant Circumstances (169). Quality (170). Specification (171). With *dignus* and *indignus* (172). Ablative Absolute (173).

PAGE

5. *Relations of Place* (174–179) 556
6. *Relations of Time* (180–182) 557
7. *Dates* (183) 558
8. *The Vocative* (184) 559

C. Prepositions (185–187) 559

D. Adjectives (188–195) 562

E. Pronouns (196–203) 563

F. Verbs 565

1. *General* (204–205). 2. *The Tenses* (206–217). 3. *Sequence of Tenses* (218–219). 4. *Peculiarities of Sequence* (220–224). 5. *Moods: a.* Independent Subjunctive: Hortatory (225). Jussive (226). Deliberative (227). Optative (228). *b.* Use of the Moods in Dependent Clauses: Purpose (229–231). Result (232). Characteristic (233). Temporal: *Postquam* (234). *Cum* (235). *Dum* (236–238). *Priusquam* (239). Causal Clauses (240–242). Conditional Sentences (243–249). Concessive and Adversative Clauses (250–254). Relative Clauses (255–256). Substantive Clauses (257–264). *Indirect Discourse* (265–271). *Attraction* (272). *The Imperative* (273). *The Infinitive* (274–275). *Participles* (276–281). *The Gerund and Gerundive* (282–285). *The Supine* (286–287).

IV. FIGURES OF RHETORIC AND GRAMMAR . 584

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION INTO LATIN

Latin Composition 585

Exercises based on The Roman History, Viri Romae, Nepos, and Story of the Argonauts (1–24) . . . 591

Exercises based on Caesar: Sentences (25–44) . . . 604
Continuous passages (45–95) . 615

VOCABULARIES

Rules for Pronunciation of Proper Names . . . 642

Abbreviations 644

Latin-English Vocabulary 1–146

English-Latin Vocabulary 147–169

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

PORTRAITS:

PAGE

Lucius Junius Brutus 20
Sulla 55
Cicero . . . . . xxi, 82
Pompey . . . . . xxiv, 427
Caesar . . . . . xxii, 58, 425
Octavian 93
Alexander the Great 63
Hannibal 103
Vercingetorix 417
Cleopatra 480

OTHER WORKS OF SCULPTURE:

Jupiter 139
Athena 153
Mercury 371
Mars 73
Apollo 373
A Vestal Virgin 5
Fortuna 473

From Trajan's Column:

A Roman General Addressing His Soldiers 241
Castellum 171
A Pontoon Bridge 187
Testudo 465

VIEWS:

Rome, Italy, and Sicily:

The Roman Forum 381
A Roman Colonnade 65
The House of the Vestals 9
The Roman Campagna 3
Ostia, Temple and Colonnade 15

PAGE

Ostia, The Tiber 19
Arpinum 83
Praeneste 33
The Anio at Tivoli 27
The Alban Lake 7
The Tomb of the Horatii 13
Tusculum, The Theatre 123
Tusculum, House on the Forum 125
Brundisium 453
Lake Trasimenus 109
Cannae 111
Ravenna, the Pine Grove 431
Palermo 87
Isles of the Sirens 96

Africa:

Carthage:
The Harbors 35
The Citadel from the Sea 39
Excavations on the Citadel 43
Roman Aqueduct 49
The Cisterns 99
The Tomb of Juba 447

Greece:

Delphi 131
The Vale of Tempe 147
Larissa 475

Gaul and Germany:

Pas de l'Ecluse 167
The Jura 173, 175
The Arar 179
The Rhine 209, 211, 361
Vesontio (Besançon) 221
Country near Belfort 229
Site of Caesar's Camp on the Axona 255
Site of the Battle on the Axona 259
Bridge over the Axona 263
The Sambre 275
Tongres 347
Druid Stones 367

PAGE

Gergovia 383, 387
Alesia 397
The Country about Alesia 399, 411
Marseilles 441
Arles, the Amphitheatre 438

Britain:

Cliffs near Dover 305
Roman Baths 317, 323
Roman Ruins 341

COINS:

Of Pyrrhus xvii
Representing Aeneas 2
With the *Corona Civica* 61
Of Caesar, with Emblems of *Pontifex Maximus* 67
Of Caesar as Perpetual Dictator 76
Of Caesar with Gallic Trumpets 155
Of Pompey 455
Of Quintus Nasidius 435
Commemorating Caesar's Assassination 77
Commemorating Caesar's *Elementia* 80
With Gallic Arms 294
Of Caesar, commemorating the Conquest of Gaul . . . 422
Representing Vercingetorix 405
Representing *Gallia Victa* 421

MODERN PICTURES:

A Roman Chariot Race . . . . . *Frontispiece*
Cicero arraigning Catiline 89
Battle between the Romans and the Helvetians 201
Conference between Caesar and Ariovistus 231
'*Desilite, commilitones*' 313

ANTIQUITIES: [1]

A Roman Centurion xxix
A Roman Soldier's Shield xxxi
Gallic and Roman Sword Blades from Alesia xxxii
Javelin Heads from Alesia xxxiii
Glandes 415

[1] Besides those mentioned under other heads.

PAGE

Falx Muralis 301
Cornu xxxv
Vexillum xxxiv
Tormentum xlv
Caesar's Fortifications at Alesia 403
A Roman Camp xxxviii
Vallum and *Fossa* xxxvii
Roman Trench xlvi
Roman Warship 297
Trireme 135
Rostra 299
Antemna 303

Postal card views of places connected with the Gallic War may be obtained, as, for example, those of Alesia, by addressing Mlle. Marlet, Alise-St. Reine, Côte d'Or, France.

Photographs and slides of these places are supplied by George R. Swain, Ann Arbor, Michigan. Of these, the illustrations on pages 167, 173, 175, 179, 229, 255, 259, 263, 275, 305, 347, 383, 387, 397, 399, 411, 417 are reproduced in this book by the courtesy of Mr. Swain.

PLATES

(At the beginning of the book.)

I. Attack on a Besieged City.
II. Officers. Standards and Musical Instruments.
III. Soldiers of the Roman Army.
IV. Military Engines. Testudo, etc.
V. Siege Works. Rampart of Camp, etc.

MAPS

Ancient Italy. *Colored*	*Frontispiece*	
		Page
Imperium Romanum	*opposite*	1
Rome	"	57
Graecia cum Insulis et Oris Maris Aegaei	"	97
Asia Citerior	"	115
Gallia. *Colored*	"	155
Britain according to Caesar		333
Massilia and the Harbor		439

PLANS

I.	Caesar's Line of Works along the Rhone below Geneva	*opposite*	171
II.	The Battle with the Helvetii	"	198
III.	The Battle between Caesar and Ariovistus	"	244
IV.	The Battle at the Aisne	"	260
V.	The Battle at the Sambre	"	277
VI.	The Siege of the Stronghold of the Aduatuci	"	288
VII.	The Sea-fight with the Veneti	"	294
VIII.	The Siege of Alesia	"	400
IX.	The Battle of Pharsalus	"	466

INTRODUCTION.

I. THE ROMAN HISTORY.

The ROMAN HISTORY is simplified Latin, based for the most part upon the texts of Livy and Eutropius.

The legends of the founding of Rome and of the reigns of the seven kings, although believed in by the Romans themselves, and generally accepted in modern times until the publication of the first volume of Niebuhr's *History of Rome*, in 1811, cannot be accepted as history. They are largely *aetiological*, that is, many of the stories have been invented to explain customs and institutions which were already in existence at the beginning of the historical period; and many of them may be traced to Greek sources. The dates were traditional with the Romans themselves, and are not to be relied on. According to Lewis (*On the Credibility of Early Roman History*), a trustworthy history of Rome does not begin until the war with Pyrrhus. In this statement he undoubtedly goes too far; but the history of the period before the destruction of the city by the Gauls in 390 B.C., while it narrates some historical facts, cannot be accepted as genuine in the form in which it has come down to us.

A Coin of Pyrrhus.

For an excellent discussion of the historical value of these legends, see Ihne's *Early Rome*.

II. THE VIRI ROMAE.

The Viri Romae was compiled by Charles François Lhomond, Professor Emeritus of the University of Paris, who lived from 1727 to 1794. Lhomond was an enthusiastic teacher of younger pupils, and refused many brilliant positions in order to devote himself to his chosen work. His Viri Romae was a labor of love, especially designed to meet the difficulties of the early stages of Latin study. It is not manufactured Latin, but a compilation from Cicero, Livy, Valerius Maximus, and other Roman writers. In his preface he tells us that he shortened sentences which were too long, and slightly changed the order of the Latin words in some cases; that in the selection of his material he aimed to stimulate the curiosity and influence the character of his pupils by giving the preference to acts of valor, of mercy, of unselfishness, of nobility of character, and of kindness.

The text used in this book is that of the tenth edition of C. Holzer (Stuttgart, 1889), with a few changes in orthography and punctuation. Holzer revised Lhomond's original text by following more closely the phraseology of the Latin authors from whom the selections are made. He also omitted some passages and inserted others, mainly interesting anecdotes.

III. THE LIFE AND WORKS OF CORNELIUS NEPOS.

1. Life of Nepos.

Cornelius Nepos was born in Cisalpine Gaul, the native country of Catullus, Vergil, and Livy. The elder Pliny speaks of him as *Padī accola;* and since we know that he was a native of that part of Cisalpine Gaul which was called Insubria, it has been assumed with considerable probability that his birthplace was Ticinum, the modern Pavia.

The dates of his birth and death are not certainly known, but he appears to have lived from 99 to 24 B.C. We know that he survived Atticus, who died in 32 B.C., and that he lived to a good old age. His *praenōmen* is unknown.

Nepos took up his residence at Rome early in life. He seems to have had an independent fortune and to have devoted his whole attention to literary pursuits. He took no part in politics; at least, we know from one of Pliny's letters that he was not of senatorial rank, and therefore that he had not held even a quaestorship.

He was on terms of intimacy with Cicero, Atticus, and Catullus. Catullus dedicated his book of poems to Nepos in the following complimentary lines:

> Whom shall I give this pretty little book to,
> New and fresh from the polish of the grit-stone?
> Thee, Cornelius! For often thou hast said, these
> Trifles of mine were not without their merit—
> Thou, who hast dared, alone of all Italians,
> This world's tale in volumes three to trace out;
> Jove! What research, what marvels there of learning!
> Therefore, such as it is, this little booklet,
> Take, friend; and then, oh tutelary Virgin,
> Centuries to come may find it still surviving.[1]

[1] Translated by Theodore Martin, "The Poems of Catullus, Translated into English Verse," Edinburgh and London, 1875.

2. The Works of Nepos.

Nepos was a prolific writer in several different departments of literature. Most of his works have been lost and are known to us only through references to them by other writers. They included the following:

1. *Love poems*, spoken of by the younger Pliny in the letter mentioned above.

2. *Chronica*, referred to by Catullus in his dedication to Nepos. This work comprised in three books an outline of the world's history from the earliest times until the author's own day. It was probably, like the *Annālēs* of Atticus, of a chronological character.

3. *Exempla*, a moral treatise in at least five books, drawing a comparison between the manners and customs of early Rome and those of his own day.

4. *A Life of Cato*, mentioned by Nepos himself.

5. *A Life of Cicero*, a panegyric, apparently composed after the death of the orator.

6. *A Treatise on Geography*, of which little or nothing is known.

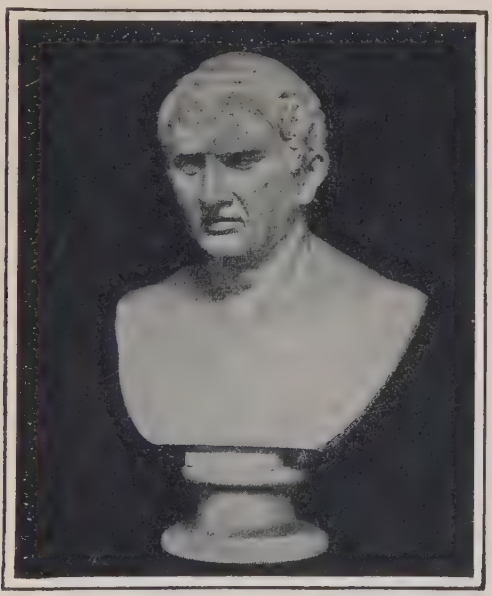
7. *Dē Virīs Illūstribus*, his last and greatest work. This consisted of at least sixteen books. He arranged his biographies in classes or groups, giving two books to each class. The first book of every class included the distinguished men of foreign nations, mostly of Greece; while the second treated those of Rome.

Of this work we have the entire book "On the Eminent Leaders of Foreign Nations" (*Dē Excellentibus Ducibus Exterārum Gentium*) and two lives from the book "On Roman Historians" (*Dē Historicīs Latīnīs*).

3. His Style.

The style of Nepos is simple and pleasing. His vocabulary is limited, and he expresses himself as a rule in short

sentences. When he occasionally attempts longer periods, it is evident that he is not at home in them. He shows considerable skill and taste in the order of his words. He is sometimes careless, especially in the omission of pronouns, but as a rule is very clear.



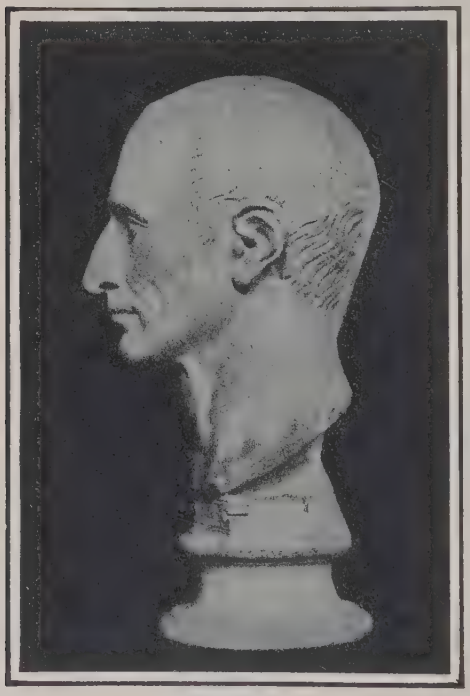
Cicero.

The deviations of Nepos from strict classical usage have been unduly exaggerated. Many of his irregularities may be paralleled in Caesar and Cicero, and still more in Livy. His Latin is pure enough to prove beyond question that the Lives could have been written only in the Classical Period.

IV. THE LIFE AND WORKS OF GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR.

1. Life of Caesar.[1]

Gaius Julius Caesar is generally supposed to have been born in 100 B.C. in the city of Rome. There is doubt both as to the date of his birth and his birthplace. The latter was probably Rome; for if any other city or town had been able to lay claim to the honor, it would doubtless have done so. The date 100 B.C. rests upon the best ancient tradition. If it is correct, Caesar held the offices of quaestor, aedile, praetor, and consul two years before the legal age. Therefore some scholars have assumed that he was born in 102. His family was of old patrician stock and also belonged to the new nobility (see note to p. 58, l. 1), since



Caesar.

[1] For fuller details see the *Life of Caesar*, pp. 58–82.

his father had attained the praetorship. He was a nephew of Gaius Marius and hence affiliated with the popular party.

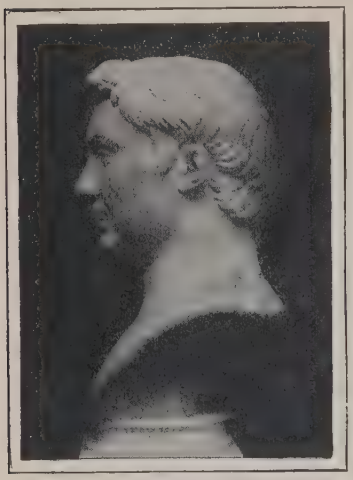
Little is known of Caesar's youth. At an early age he married Cornelia, daughter of Cinna, a prominent leader of the popular party, and refused to divorce her at Sulla's command. He studied oratory with Apollonius Molo in Rhodes and in his first military campaign won a civic crown at the siege of Mitylene.

In 68 he was elected quaestor and spent his year of office in Spain. As curule aedile in 65 he gave games and shows of unusual magnificence and thus contracted an enormous debt. To secure immunity from his creditors he became a candidate for the office of pontifex maximus, to which he was elected in 63 over candidates of greater age and higher rank.

Caesar was suspected of complicity in the conspiracy of Catiline, but the charge could not be proved and it seems on the whole improbable. He was elected praetor for the year 62, and after his term of office became governor of Spain. His creditors attempted to prevent him from leaving Rome, but Marcus Crassus became surety for his debts. On his return he formed with Pompey and Crassus (in 60 B.C.) the agreement known as the First Triumvirate. He was elected consul for the year 59, and at the end of that year received the provinces of Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul with Illyricum for a term of five years, which was later extended to ten. During that period he completed the subjugation of Gaul.

Meanwhile Crassus had undertaken an expedition against the Parthians and lost his life at Carrhae (53 B.C.) while Pompey had taken sides with the Senate against Caesar. Caesar was ordered to disband his army and return to Rome as a private citizen, but refused to do so unless Pompey would also give up his legions. The Senate thereupon declared him a public enemy. Caesar crossed the Rubicon, the

boundary of his province, with a legion and advanced upon Rome. Pompey and his followers sailed for Epirus, and Caesar, after spending a few days in Rome, returned to Gaul and led his army against Pompey's forces in Spain. Within forty days he compelled Pompey's two generals to surrender, and captured Massilia (49 B.C.). Caesar then took his troops across the Adriatic and finally routed the Pompeians at Pharsalus in Thessaly (48 B.C.). Pompey fled to Egypt, where he was assassinated by order of the king.



Pompey.

During the next two years Caesar contended with the survivors of the Pompeian party in Africa and Spain, winning decisive victories at Thapsus in 46 and at Munda in 45 B.C. He then became dictator for life and turned his attention to plans for a reorganization of the government and the improvement of the city and of Italy. But a conspiracy was formed against him under the lead of Brutus and Cassius and he was assassinated on the Ides of March, 44 B.C.

2. The Works of Caesar.

A catalogue of Caesar's writings is given us by his biographer Suetonius, who flourished during the reign of Hadrian (117–138 A.D.). Besides some youthful works they comprised a grammatical treatise (*Dē Analogiā*), two volumes in criticism of Cato (*Anticatōnēs*), a collection of

witticisms (*Apophthegmata*), and his Commentaries on the Gallic and Civil Wars.

Caesar probably wrote the seven books of the Gallic War in the winter of 52–51 B.C., in Gaul. The conquest of Gaul continued to occupy his attention until the end of the year 50; the events of the years 51 and 50 are narrated in the eighth book of the Gallic War, which was apparently written by Aulus Hirtius, after Caesar's death.

Caesar's Civil War has come down to us in three books, covering events of the years 49 and 48 B.C.; joined with these are three other books, by different authors, on the Alexandrian, African, and Spanish campaigns in 47, 46, and 45 B.C. Caesar's three books were perhaps written in 46 B.C. The beginning of the first book is lost, and there are other lacunae. The text as a whole is in a less satisfactory condition than that of the Gallic War, but this may be due in part to haste of composition if, as has been assumed, Caesar wrote his Civil War by dictation at a time when he was overwhelmed with public business. The first two books deal with the events of a single year, 49, while in other cases Caesar devotes one book to a year; for this and other reasons it has been suggested that Books I and II of the Civil War as we know them formed originally one book.

Book I opens with an account of the events which led to the outbreak of the war between Caesar and Pompey (Chapters 1–7; Selection I). Twenty-six chapters (8–33) vividly trace the victorious progress of Caesar down the east side of Italy to Brundisium, whence Pompey escaped across the Adriatic, and to Rome, where Caesar spent a brief time, soon setting out for Gaul and Spain. The rest of Book I, and twenty-two chapters of Book II, are devoted to the siege of Massilia, which closed its gates to him, and to operations in Spain. The chastisement of the Massilians was left to lieutenants, of whom one, Brutus, worsted them in two sea fights (the second is described in Selection II), and the other,

Trebonius, finally captured the city. Caesar's operations in Spain, in the vicinity of Ilerda, culminated in the capture of Pompey's lieutenants Afranius and Petreius with the forces under their command, and the control of the province. The latter part of Book II treats of the destruction of Caesar's army in Africa (Selection III).

In Book III we read first, how Caesar settled affairs at Rome as promptly as possible after his return from Spain, and gathered an army at Brundisium in order to cross the Adriatic to meet Pompey, who for a year had been collecting forces and supplies. He was obliged, on account of lack of ships, to transport his army by detachments. The earlier operations and negotiations in Illyricum and Epirus are described in Selection IV. Caesar with an inferior force hems Pompey in at Dyrrachium, but suffers reverses and is obliged to withdraw. Both Caesar and Pompey march eastward into Thessaly, the former receiving reënforcements from Domitius Calvinus, the latter from Scipio. These movements end in the battle near Pharsalus (August 9, 48 B.C.), described in Selection V. The rest of Book III narrates events after the battle, including the death of Pompey (Selection VI), and the beginning of the complications in which Caesar found himself involved in Alexandria.

V. CAESAR'S ARMY.

1. Who Composed the Army.

The troops of Caesar's army consisted in the main of infantry (*peditēs*), cavalry (*equitēs*, *equitātus*), and auxiliaries (*auxilia*). There were also divisions of archers (*sagittāriī*) and slingers (*funditōrēs*). The artillery (*tormenta*), though relatively not so important in Caesar's army as in modern times, was effective in siege operations and was probably under a separate detachment of soldiers. There

were scouts or reconnoitering parties (*explōrātōrēs*), spies (*speculātōrēs*), and engineers (*fabrī*), taken from the ranks of the soldiers. The general's staff of officers was large and was accompanied by numerous orderlies, clerks, and personal servants. The general himself also had a body-guard or personal escort. In Caesar's retinue were many young men, non-combatants, who accompanied the army as his personal friends or on the recommendation of his friends, to observe the progress of events in this frontier war.

An important part of the army was the baggage train, consisting of hundreds of pack-animals (*iūmenta*) with their drivers, and conveying the heavy baggage (*impedīmenta*) and other supplies. Upon the commissariat department, which looked after the food supplies of the entire army, a task by no means easy in an unfriendly country, depended in a large measure the success of the army's operations. Finally, there was a multitude of camp-servants (*cālōnēs*) and traders or sutlers (*mercātōrēs*), who remained without the camp and stood ready to supply the soldiers with extras, often no doubt in return for objects of booty.

In the war with the Veneti, and in the operations against Britain, the efforts of the army were supplemented by the navy, consisting of a fleet of several hundred ships manned chiefly by land troops. We should think of the army of Caesar with all its various divisions and subdivisions as a complete unit, an organization in which nothing was lacking to make it an effective fighting machine. We may imagine the camp alive with interest, where every phase of army life might be seen; there were seasoned veterans, and young, newly enlisted soldiers, bound by ties of affection with relatives and friends in the homeland of Italy and eager for new adventures in these almost unknown countries.

2. The Infantry.

The infantry constituted the chief strength and stay of the army. Relatively, the number of foot-soldiers, who were Italian recruits, was much larger than that of the cavalry, which consisted mainly of foreigners.

The Legion. — The tactical unit of the infantry was the cohort. There were ten cohorts (*cohortēs*) in each legion, and each cohort was divided into three maniples (*manipulī*), and each maniple into two centuries or companies (*centuriae*, also called *ōrdinēs*).

Size. — The size of the legion varied. Theoretically the *centuria* should have had 100 men; accordingly there would have been 200 men in a maniple, 600 men in a cohort, and 6000 men in a legion. But it is more than likely that none of Caesar's legions in the Gallic War had at any time its full complement of soldiers. Naturally the legion was largest when it was first recruited, but it gradually became smaller, as the war progressed, from fatalities due to fighting or disease. When a legion became too greatly reduced, it was apparently not restored by the addition of new recruits, but an entirely new legion was enlisted. From statements which Caesar makes in the course of his narrative, we may estimate that the legions which took part in the war varied in size from about 3500 to 4500 men.

How designated. — Like the corps of the modern army, the legions were distinguished from one another by numerals. In the first year of the war Caesar had six legions, numbered consecutively VII, VIII, IX, X, XI, and XII. In the second year two new legions were enlisted, designated by the numerals XIII and XIV. In the year 52 B.C., when Alesia was besieged, the Romans had ten legions, the two additional ones being numbered probably I and XV.

Officers. — In general, the number of *officers* in Caesar's army was relatively smaller than in a modern army. The

commanding general was the *dux* or *imperātor*, Caesar himself. His principal officers, who were put in command of a legion and intrusted with important duties, were the *lēgātī*. They belonged to the senatorial order. Besides the *lēgātī* there were six tribunes (*tribūnī mīlitum*) assigned to each legion. It is probable that they performed their duties in rotation. In engagements with the enemy they commanded possibly the entire legion, or at any rate detachments of it. They took part in councils of war and performed certain administrative duties.

A Roman Centurion.

The captains of the maniple were the *centurions*, two in each; there were thus sixty centurions in the entire legion. It is probable that they ranked according to the number of the maniple or cohort in which they served. The *prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs* ranked highest in the legion, and the ranking centurion of the first cohort of the legion, called *prīmipīlus*, was perhaps the most important subordinate officer of the army. The centurions rose from the ranks and belonged socially to the plebs, or great mass of common people. They were almost without excep-

tion soldiers of fearless courage, who in battle personally led their men, whom they knew by name and by whom they were liked and trusted. Caesar frequently called upon them to take part in councils of war (see Plate II).

The *quaestor* was a financial officer corresponding nearly to the quartermaster-general of the modern army. He was a Roman state official, who handled the money expended in the campaign and superintended the purchase of supplies, food, arms, and general equipment of the army, and paid the soldiers their *stīpendium*.

The Roman Legionary. — The foot-soldiers in Caesar's army during the Gallic War, in distinction from the cavalry, were of *Italian birth and spoke Latin* as their vernacular. Caesar expressly tells us of the enlisting of certain legions in Cisalpine Gaul, now northern Italy. They were, therefore, not like mercenary troops who sold their services for pay, but their sympathies were strongly pro-Roman. The period of enlistment was twenty years. In *stature* they were a little undersized, and Caesar remarked upon this fact when comparing them with the tall, huge-bodied Germans. But the wonderful effectiveness of the Roman army as a fighting machine was due to the rigid discipline and exacting system both of life and army service. Coupled with this was the fact that, as we see many times in the course of the war, the Roman soldier was *something more than a machine* manipulated by another, for he frequently proved himself able to take the initiative and to act for himself when occasion demanded. His *duties* were those which soldiers have had to perform in pretty much every period of history; besides fighting, he had to do his share in building, fortifying, and protecting the camp, to drill, and to prepare his food. The staple of his *food* was wheat, of which each soldier received about one peck a week. The wheat was crushed or ground in a handmill. Other articles of food the soldiers occasionally obtained by foraging and

looting, or by purchasing them from the camp traders. The soldiers wore a *uniform*, in the sense that the clothing of all was alike. Over a sleeveless shirt (*tunica*) of wool was the breastplate (*lōrīca*) of leather, strengthened by strips of metal. In cold weather they threw about their shoulders and upper person a military cloak (*sagum*), which was little more than a blanket. They did not wear trousers or stockings, but their feet were protected by strong shoes, or at times by sandals.

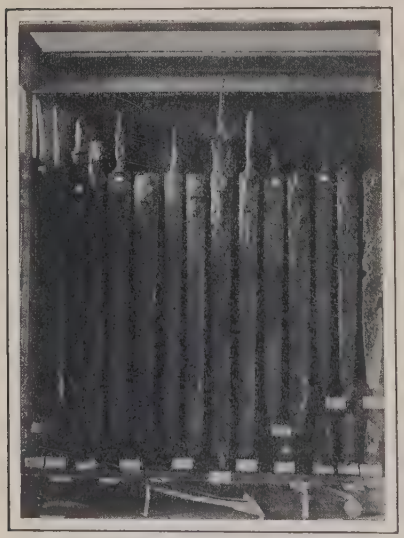
A Roman Soldier's Shield.

Weapons. — The defensive armor of Caesar's soldiers consisted of helmets, greaves, and shields. The helmet was either of metal (*cassis*) or of leather and metal (*galea*) (see Plate III). Crests (*īnsignia*) were worn on the helmet to distinguish different divisions of the army. Greaves (*ocreae*) were a casing of metal to protect the lower leg; greaves are not mentioned by Caesar. The shields (*scūta*) were oblong (about 4 by 2 feet), usually rounded slightly. They were made of wood with a heavy leather covering, and were often stiffened by metal bands; when they were in part of metal they were kept covered, when not in use, with leathern cases to protect them from wet, which would rust the metal and warp the frame. In the center of the outer side of the shield was a rounded projection called the boss (see Plate III, 3).

As offensive weapons Caesar's soldiers had the sword and javelin. The sword (*gladius*) was two-edged and pointed and could thus be used for both slashing and stabbing. It was

not so long as the Gallic sword, being with the handle about 2 feet 3 inches in length. It was encased in a scabbard. The sword was worn on the right side of the body, in distinction from modern usage, and was hung from a strap (*balteus*) passing over the left shoulder.

The javelin (*pīlum*), which is frequently mentioned in the *Commentaries*, had a round, rather slender, wrought-iron head, about two feet long, which was fastened to the wooden shaft, the length of the whole being about six feet and its weight perhaps 10 pounds. The head of the weapon terminated in a barbed point. Since the head was of wrought iron, it bent easily. Once hurled it was, therefore, ordinarily rendered useless to the enemy, but after the battle the javelins could be gathered and straightened and so made serviceable again. They could be thrown with effect from 75 to 100 feet. The discovery of many Roman weapons on the battle field of Alesia and elsewhere has made it possible for us to form a correct idea of their shape and appearance. Exact reconstructions of them have been made and may be seen in various collections of armor.



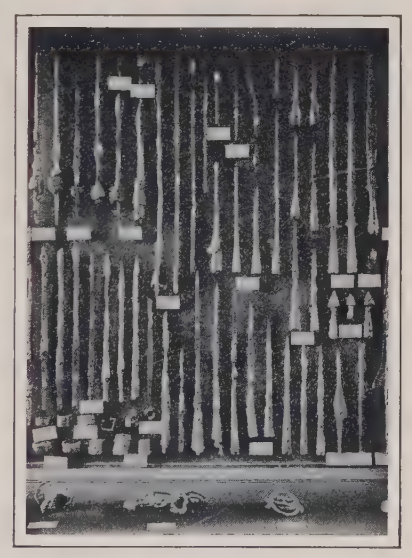
Gallic and Roman Sword Blades.

These were found in the trenches at Alesia. The Roman swords were shorter than the Gallic.

On the march the soldier had to carry his weapons and tools as well as his personal belongings (*sarcinae*), consisting

of rations of food, cooking utensils, and his private possessions. These were all done up together into a compact bundle, which was fastened to the end of a short pole carried over the shoulder (see Plate III, 3). The weight of the *sarcinae* varied, of course, but may have averaged from about 45 to 60 pounds.

The *pay* of the legionary soldier in Caesar's army is estimated at 225 denarii, or about $45 a year, but the purchasing power of money was much greater then than now and the requirements of living simpler. A substantial addition to this pay might be expected from the sale of objects of booty that fell to the share of soldiers. Officers naturally received higher pay.



Javelin Heads.
These were found in the trenches at Alesia.

The heavy baggage (*impedīmenta*) of the legion was carried by pack-animals (*iūmenta*), perhaps mules. It consisted of the soldiers' and officers' tents, which were made of leather, and the appliances for putting them up, tools, stakes, and other materials for making the camp, commissary supplies, artillery, and all the necessary appurtenances belonging to the legion as a whole. It is estimated that between 500 and 600 pack-animals were necessary to transport the *impedīmenta* of one legion.

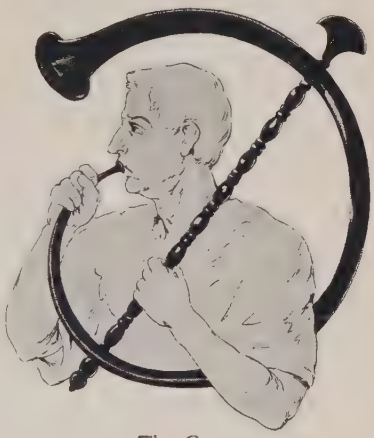
The Roman army had ensigns corresponding to our *flags*. For the legion as a whole it was an eagle (*aquila*), usually of silver, carried on the top of a staff by the *aquilifer*. For the maniple it was a *signum*, consisting of various emblems carried on a staff by the *signifer*. As in modern times, the standard was used to distinguish divisions of the army and was carefully guarded in battle. The importance of the *signa* is illustrated by the way in which this word is used in the following technical military terms: *signa ferre*, 'to advance'; *signa īnferre*, 'to advance to the attack'; *signa referre*, 'to retreat'; *signa convertere*, 'to face about.' The general had a *vexillum*, or square cloth banner, of red, which was displayed near his tent as a signal for battle.

The *Vexillum*.
A banner of the cavalry.

The army did not have a *band* in the modern sense of the word, but it had different kinds of horns used for somewhat the same purposes as now. The *tuba* was a long, straight instrument with a flaring end, with whose deep notes the general gave the signal to advance or retreat. The *cornū* was a large curved instrument having a shriller tone, which took up and passed along the signal given on the *tuba*. The *būcina* was used for camp-signals, to sound the reveille and the different divisions of the day. The notes of these instruments were of course much more piercing than the human voice and more inspiring (see Plate II).

3. The Cavalry.

Caesar's cavalry consisted of foreign troops, mainly Gauls, Germans, and Spaniards. Mention is made of a cavalry force of 4000 Gauls and of a division of 400 German cavalry. The unit of the cavalry was a division called an *āla*, commanded by a *praefectus equitum*. This was divided into *turmae* or squads and these in turn into *decuriae*, each commanded by a *decuriō*. The cavalry did effective scouting service and was often used in preliminary skirmishes to test the strength of the enemy. Occasionally by their dash and rapid maneuvering they helped to turn the tide of battle in favor of the Romans (see Plate III).



The *Cornu*.

The figure shows the way in which the instrument was carried.

4. The Auxiliaries.

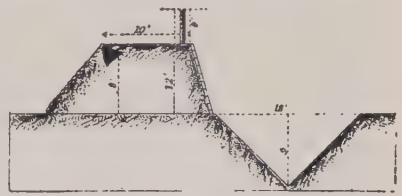
Frequent mention is made in the *Commentaries* of the auxiliary troops of the army, the *auxilia*. They consisted entirely of foreigners and were drawn chiefly from the allies of Rome. They added numbers to the army and increased its apparent strength, but were little relied upon in a decisive engagement. Among important divisions of the *auxilia* were the slingers (*funditōrēs*, see Plate III, 1) from the Balearic Islands, the archers (*sagittāriī*) from Numidia and Crete, and the light armed troops (*mīlitēs levis armā-*

tūrae), who were employed in raids and rapid movements impossible for the heavy infantry.

5. The Camp.

During the summer campaigns the army was protected every night or during a temporary stay in one place by an intrenched camp. The *site* was chosen usually upon rising ground in the vicinity of timber and water. A supply of fuel near at hand was essential and also a space of ground sufficiently large and level on which to form the troops in line of battle. The camp for the night was undoubtedly quickly made, due to a system that for effectiveness and dispatch may be compared with that which characterizes the daily appearance of the modern circus. The exact lines of the camp and its various divisions were measured off by the army engineers, and detachments of soldiers were detailed to perform set duties. Within a very short time the trenches were dug and the camp set in order. In *shape* the camp was quadrilateral, approximately a square or a rectangle, but occasionally rather irregular, owing to the lie of the ground. Its *dimensions* naturally depended on the size of the army. One of Caesar's camps may be measured with great exactness, for after the passing of twenty centuries it has been revealed to us by excavations. This particular camp was made during the Belgian campaign in the first half of the summer of 57 B.C. on the sloping ground between the Aisne river and the Miette brook (see Plan IV). The camp accommodated eight legions, numbering perhaps about 30,000 soldiers, a division of cavalry, and auxiliaries. This camp was 2159 feet long and 2149 feet wide, enclosing therefore about 106 acres. The corners were rounded. There were two *gates* on the west side, the front of the camp, and one gate on each of the other three sides. The opening of each gate was shaped thus: ⌐⌣¬, so that the enemy in attempting to enter would expose his right

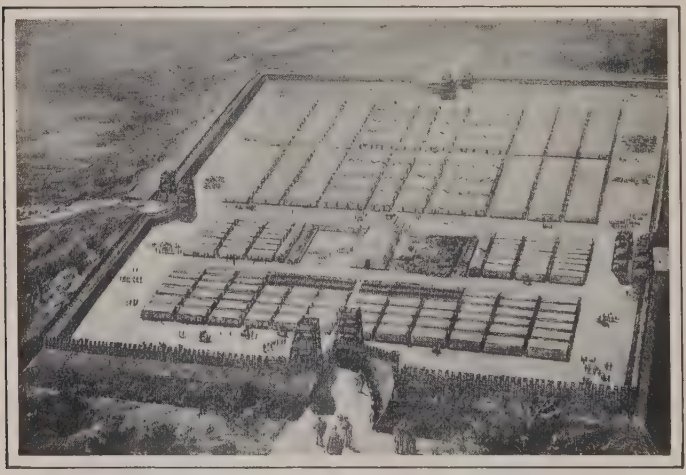
(unprotected) side to the fire of the missiles of defenders on the rampart. The gates had no doors, but the opening was closed when it was necessary with piles of turf. The *intrenchment* consisted of two parts, the *fossa* and the *agger* or *vāllum*. The *fossa* or trench was usually V-shaped and in the case of the camp at the Aisne river was about ten feet deep. For a stronger defensive position, as at Alesia, two *fossae* were made. The earth removed from the *fossa* was thrown up toward the inside of the camp and formed the *agger*. To prevent the embankment from caving in on the outer side, a row of stakes (*vāllī*) were driven in along the outer edge, or turf was piled up on its outer face, the whole being called the *vāllum* or rampart (see figure). The height of the rampart at the Aisne river was about twelve feet; the *agger* itself was perhaps only four or five feet high.



Cross-section of *Vallum* and *Fossa*.

At Alesia, and doubtless often elsewhere also, the rampart was further strengthened by erecting a breastwork (*lōrīca*) of branches, battlements (*pinnae*) of wicker-work, and towers at regular intervals. The rampart on the inside was made sloping, so that it could be mounted easily. The soldiers in time of attack stood on the rampart, and the enemy in order to force it had first to cross the *fossa;* the height of the rampart gave additional momentum to missiles hurled from it. In the present European war, owing to effective long distance fire, the soldiers occupy the trench and are protected by the rampart, which is thus between them and enemy. The *arrangement of the interior* of Caesar's camp we do not know definitely. The legionary troops were quartered undoubtedly in their respective divisions, with the cavalry and auxiliaries by

themselves. In some central space were the general's tent, known as the *praetōrium*, and the headquarters of his staff. In another place were the headquarters of the quaestor and his assistants, called the *quaestōrium*, and in still another place was the military tribunal. Somewhere in the camp were guarded the food supplies of the army and elsewhere the hostages and prisoners of war. The



Birdseye View of a Roman Camp.

Note the arrangement of the gates, the *fossa* and *vallum*, and the arrangement of the interior with the general's tent near the center.

traders (*mercātōrēs*) were established in the rear and outside of the camp intrenchments. There was a *main street* down the center of the camp called the *via praetōria*, connecting the front gate, the *porta praetōria*, with the rear gate opposite, the *porta decumāna*. Possibly another main street called the *via prīncipālis* crossed the *via praetōria* at right angles and connected the other two gates. Within the camp, skirting the rampart for its entire circuit, ran a wide street, which made access to the wall easy and lessened

the likelihood of hostile missiles reaching the tents of the Romans.

When once the camp was made, it was protected against surprise by numerous sentinels, posted (*in statiōne*) along the wall and at the gates. Squads of cavalry may have been posted outside and scouts kept constant watch of the country in the immediate vicinity of the camp. At night the number of pickets was undoubtedly increased and they were relieved at intervals; the night, extending from sunset to sunrise, was divided into four equal *watches* (*vigiliae*).

In the *winter camp* (*castra hīberna*) the arrangements were doubtless quite similar to those of the summer camp, except that in a permanent camp more attention could be given to the comfort of the soldiers.

6. On the March.

In the morning during the summer campaign the army, if on the march, left camp at sunrise, not taking the trouble of course to level the intrenchments, and marched from about 15 to 20 miles for the day's march, when they stopped to make camp again for the coming night. The day's march, counting periods of rest, occupied seven or eight hours. Forced marches (*maxima itinera*) were sometimes necessary, on which the army could cover 25 miles or more a day; on one occasion Caesar made a forced march of 50 Roman miles in less than thirty hours. Since the day's march was from one camp to another, distances were sometimes expressed in "camps"; thus a distance of "five camps" means a five days' march. It is to be noted that the *Roman mile* was somewhat shorter than the English mile. A Roman mile was accounted 1000 *passūs*, a single *passus* being five feet, or the distance of two steps. Thus the Roman mile had 5000 Roman feet, as compared with the English mile of 5280 English feet. Furthermore, the

Roman foot was about .97 of an English foot; there are, therefore, about 4850 English feet in the Roman mile.

On the march the soldier carried his private belongings, weapons, food, and work-tools (*sarcinae*); his helmet he sometimes carried on a cord passing around his neck; his shield was protected from dust and rain in its leather case, and his helmet crest and other *īnsignia* were also carefully protected.

The head of the column was the *prīmum agmen*, which in case of sudden attack engaged the enemy until the main body of the army could prepare itself. The rear was called the *novissimum agmen*. The width of the column in regular marching order depended naturally on the character of the country traversed. But it may be conjectured that ordinarily the army marched in divisions of maniples with 12 men abreast, occupying with the officers a space 40 feet wide. Marching in this fashion, a legion of 3600 men with four feet from breast to breast would stretch out 1200 feet and further (about a quarter of a mile), if we suppose, as would be reasonable, that a space was left between cohorts; the train of pack animals attending each legion would be about half as long. If necessary, a simple maneuver could reduce this width of the column by one half. When there was no apparent danger of an attack by the enemy, the order of march was by legions, each followed by its own baggage train (*impedīmenta*). But when approaching the enemy, the legions of three quarters of the army were massed together, followed by the baggage train of the entire army, the remaining quarter of the army bringing up the rear. In this way the baggage was protected, and the greater part of the army was ready for instant action.

A river was crossed by fords wherever possible; otherwise a bridge was built. *Bridges* were either temporary pontoon bridges constructed by building a roadway over a line of anchored boats, or more permanent ones of

wooden piles and cross timbers. For the latter the services of the military engineers (*fabrī*) were required.

Caesar's cavalry probably marched also in more or less regular formation. When he had 4000 mounted men, they could march eight abreast on a road 40 feet wide. If we allow ten to twelve feet for each rank, the entire line would stretch out over a mile, or twice that distance if they proceeded four abreast. In the years when Caesar had 10 legions his entire army train, including the cavalry, would in close marching order trail along over 9 or 10 miles at least.

7. The Battle.

A line of battle was formed (*aciēs īnstrūcta*) preparatory to an engagement with the enemy. Just what the arrangement was in detail is not known, but it is believed that each legion was drawn up by cohorts. The three maniples of each cohort stood side by side, each maniple having a depth of 10 ranks or lines, consisting of 12 each, abreast. With the officers each cohort of a legion of 3600 men would have a front of 120 feet and a depth of forty feet. This allows about three feet of lateral space for each soldier and four feet between every two ranks. The ten cohorts of each legion were not placed side by side, but the most common arrangement was the *aciēs triplex*, in which there were four cohorts in the first *aciēs* and three in each of the other two, with a space between every two cohorts of the front lines equal in length to the front of the cohort posted behind, thus:

This arrangement was adopted after long experimentation as the most effective. If the first line became exhausted,

it could be reënforced by the second line marching forward. The third line was held in reserve, and was often relied upon to turn the tide of battle when a crisis was reached. Usually the veterans were put in the first line. The front line of four cohorts would be 840 feet long, and since the legions stood side by side, each in three lines, the line of battle formed by the six legions at the Aisne river extended about a mile. The front of the line was divided into the right flank (*cornū dextrum*), the left flank (*cornū sinistrum*), and the center (*media aciēs*). The most experienced and reliable legions were placed on the flanks.

The cavalry was often stationed on the extreme flanks. It was employed to execute flank movements on the enemy, and to pursue and kill them when they had been put to flight.

The *order to begin the battle* (*signum*) was given on the *tuba* by command of the general, and passed on to the trumpeters of the various legions. Caesar himself, who was mounted, took up a position when the attack was begun, and watched closely the progress of the battle everywhere, sending orderlies with dispatches or directing the movements of reënforcements as they were needed.

The Romans, where it was possible, selected rising ground for their position, and having formed in a motionless line of battle challenged the enemy to approach and attack them from their lower position. Though disadvantageous to the enemy, the challenge was sometimes accepted. If it was not accepted and the ground between them was unobstructed, the Romans advanced sometimes with a rush. At a distance of about forty feet from the enemy's front they hurled their pikes upon them in a shower, and then at closer quarters drew their swords and the battle became a hand-to-hand combat. Warfare in Caesar's day was largely a contest of muscle and brawn, for artillery was employed in the main only in siege operations. The volatile

Gauls at the first onset frequently turned and fled in disorder without making a desperate resistance, although there were many battles in which they displayed remarkable courage and yielded to the Romans a hard-earned victory. Caesar sent the cavalry to pursue and put to death the fleeing remnants of the enemy's army.

8. Capture of a Town.

A hostile Gallic town was captured by a rapid assault (*oppugnātiō*) or by a formal siege (*obsidiō*). The former method was employed to reduce fortified towns that were small or those which from their location or lack of defenders would be likely to make less resistance. First the native defenders standing armed upon the town walls were dislodged from their positions by the missiles of slingers and bowmen. Then the *fossa* about the town was filled up with brush and dirt, and scaling ladders were raised against the wall, by which the legionary soldiers clambered to the top. Operations were often facilitated by the battering ram (*ariēs*), a great swinging beam whose end, fortified by a metal head resembling a ram's, was powerfully driven against the side of the town wall, making a breach in it through which the troops forced their way (see Plate IV, 1). The whole action was most spirited and, if successful, required only a short time to carry out (see Plate I).

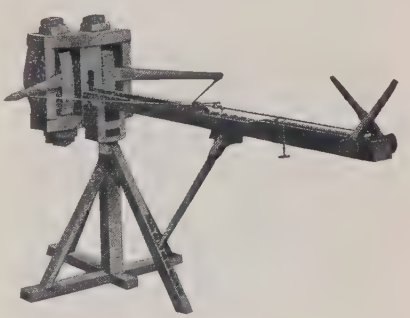
If the town was large and occupied a strong natural position, Caesar settled down for a long siege. The tactics employed depended on circumstances. At Alesia, which occupied a high isolated elevation surrounded by depressions and streams of water, the Romans encircled the hill, on which the town lay, by an elaborate system of double intrenchments, one line to confine the imprisoned Gauls, another to prevent reënforcements or supplies from reaching them. The garrison was therefore reduced by starvation. Wherever the lie of the ground permitted, the besiegers

constructed as the most effective of siege works a high intrenchment (*agger*), extending to the town and having a height equal to that of the town wall. The *agger* was in effect a colossal roadway, sometimes as high as 80 feet, giving access to the top of the wall. It was built of earth, stones, and timbers and was sometimes set on fire by the enemy. In the interior of the *agger* were galleries, and this feature of it hastened the action of fire. The *agger* was started some distance back from the wall, out of the range of the enemy's missiles. Nearer the town wall the work of construction was facilitated by the operations of slingers and archers, who under the protection of large movable shields, called *pluteī* (Plate V, 4, 5), attempted to keep the town wall clear of defenders. Furthermore the workmen used roofed sheds (*vīneae*, Plate V, 9) open at both ends; they were moved on rollers, and could be shoved together end to end, forming a long protected gallery, through which materials could be brought forward safely. Sometimes movable towers having several stories were built and pushed forward (Plate V, 7), on which soldiers and artillery were posted to engage the townsmen with a fusillade of weapons; at times in fact an *agger* was built on which the tower could be moved up to the very wall of the town. When the *agger* was completed, the legions had an unimpeded, straight roadway on which to force an entrance to the town. The battering ram might also be brought into service (see Plate IV, 1).

9. Artillery.

Caesar's army was provided with hurling engines, which correspond to the artillery of a modern army, although with one exception they are uniformly called in the narrative of the Gallic War by the general term, *tormenta* (Plates IV, V). As in modern times, the different types of hurling engines had special names, among which the

most common are *catapulta*, *ballista*, and *scorpiō;* the latter is the only special type mentioned in the account of the Gallic War. The hurling power was torsion, that is, it was furnished by the motive power of twisted ropes or hair. The frame of the engine was from six to eight feet high. At the upper part of the frame on each side an arm was thrust into the meshes of rope or hair, which when twisted and let go threw the arms violently outward. The two ends of the arms were connected by a bowstring which was drawn down to the trigger by means of a windlass. It was possible to train the engine up or down, and to the right or left; it thus had a wide range. The missiles hurled were heavy stones, large arrows, and pike-shaped shafts of wood. Missiles could be thrown with effect about a quarter of a mile. These hurling engines were used, not in field battles, but in the storming of cities, in positions of defense where they would remain stationary, or on the deck of a ship to drive the enemy away, and make a landing possible. They were heavy and cumbrous, and not so conveniently moved from place to place as are modern cannon.



A *Tormentum.*

10. The Battle-Fields of Caesar To-day.

Several of the camp-sites and battle-fields of Caesar in Gaul have been absolutely identified. As stated above, the Romans on breaking camp in the morning did not take the time and trouble to level their intrenchments, but these trenches have been leveled in the passing of the

centuries by rains and the processes of cultivation of the ground. Thus the *fossa* was filled in again, not with earth in its original strata, but with the miscellaneous mass of dirt that gradually slid down into it from the rampart. Hence an excavation to-day, made straight across one of Caesar's trenches, reveals its outlines sharply and clearly, shaped like the letter V. This evidence, aided by what Caesar himself says in his text, leaves no doubt of the exact place where the battle with the Helvetians occurred, or the battle at the Aisne, the siege of Alesia, and many others. At Alesia were found many swords, spears, javelins, remains of shields, coins, and other objects that once belonged to the soldiers in Caesar's army. Among other things was a beautiful silver cup, booty that had perhaps fallen into the hands of some officer or soldier.

A Cut across a Roman Trench (a little later than Caesar's time).

About three feet of upper soil has formed since the trench was made.

11. Caesar's Navy.

In his operations in northern Europe Caesar required the assistance of war vessels (*nāvēs longae*) and transports (*nāvēs onerāriae*) for the campaign against the Veneti and for the two British expeditions. For the Venetic campaign he had ships or galleys (*nāvēs longae*) built.

They were of light draft and were propelled swiftly by means of both sails and oars, chiefly by the latter. The rowers sat under the deck on benches arranged usually in three tiers. The method by which a hostile ship was disabled was by ramming. The prow of the Roman galley was sheathed with a bronze beak (*rōstrum*). Taking a good start, and propelled at a terrific speed by the oarsmen, the galley crashed amidships into the enemy's vessel, to stave a hole in its sides and cause it to sink. Another method was to approach the enemy's ship, hold the rail tightly with grappling irons, and then board her. If the hostile ship was built high, the Romans erected towers upon their own deck and showered missiles from its height down upon the enemy. In the sea-fight with the Veneti the Romans used knives fastened to the ends of long poles to cut the ropes that held the sails and thus won the victory. For the sails fell, and since the Venetic ships were propelled by sails only, they fell an easy prey to the resourceful Romans. In the first British expedition Caesar had 80 transports and a small number of galleys. In the second expedition he had a fleet of about 540 transports and 28 galleys.

12. Caesar's Rules of Strategy.

Caesar was victorious so often, not only because he had a fine, well-disciplined army, a splendid, intelligent fighting machine, but also because he was a great general. The following are some of his rules of warfare which we can formulate from the story of his operations. They may be applied also in times of peace to win success in life.

1. Strike quickly. Do not wait to begin an engagement when you can fight it now.

2. Divide the enemy's forces and conquer each part separately.

3. Make friends wherever you can.

4. Be brave but cautious. Before advancing be reasonably sure that it is safe to do so.

5. Engage the enemy's attention in some way, that they may be inactive and unsuspecting, while you seize the opportunity to strengthen your position.

6. Select a position for battle that is most advantageous to you and most disadvantageous to the enemy.

7. Act quickly, so that, before the enemy learn that you have started to do something, you will already have finished it.

8. Be merciless to those who prove treacherous.

9. Do not send an ultimatum to the enemy unless you know that you can back it up with force.

10. Make a surprise attack upon the enemy's rear while you are engaging them in front.

11. Keep intact the lines of communication with your base of supplies.

12. Hold a part of your forces in reserve.

13. Keep a watchful eye on the enemy all the time.

14. Make the enemy overconfident by minimizing the size and strength of your own forces.

15. Keep your word, even with the enemy.

16. Be fearless and confident. The enemy have been beaten before.

17. Never give up and never be discouraged, no matter what the odds are.

13. The Gauls.

The Gauls at the time of Caesar's occupation had no national unity, being divided into a large number of more or less isolated states. It was during the progress of this war that they realized slowly the importance of a combination of their forces, and in the seventh year of the war they elected a commander-in-chief of the entire Gallic army, Vercingetorix, who is justly honored to-day as the first

national hero of France. The Gauls, it is needless to say, were brave in the defense of their country, but they failed, partly because they were not trained in military science and partly because they were by nature too volatile. They entered upon a battle with a fierce and determined onset, but in the face of the steady charge of the Romans they turned and fled. In numbers they surpassed their enemy, but in leadership, organization, and sustained effort they were quite inferior. But they were not nomadic barbarians. They had villages and walled towns. They had a highly developed religious system and to some extent engaged in trade. The walls of their fortified towns were built of a cross-timbered construction with the intervening spaces filled with earth and stones. Well preserved remains of a Gallic wall were found at Bibracte (see Plate V, 3). This kind of wall construction provided an excellent means of defense against the Roman battering ram, which was designed to demolish a wall made entirely of stone or bricks and rubble.

The Gauls did not tamely submit to Roman rule and they proved themselves to be a foe worthy of Caesar's best efforts. If they retreated, it was to make a determined stand at some other time or place. Some states preferred almost to suffer annihilation rather than surrender. They learned military tactics from the Romans themselves and later, after their subjugation, adopted in part the language and institutions of their conquerors.

14. Caesar's Mission in Gaul.

Caesar was drawn gradually into the war. The reasons he assigns for invading a peaceful country sound plausible; namely, that it was to protect the interests of the allies of Rome. Probably the lurking fear of a German invasion of Italy influenced him. At any rate, it may be questioned

whether an older civilized nation does not have the right to impose its civilization upon a primitive people, as the United States, for instance, is attempting to do in the Philippines. By the slow process of absorption through the centuries ancient Gaul became transformed into modern France, having as a heritage from Rome in modified form her language, religion, coinage, and military and legal institutions.

15. Britain.

It is true that in his two expeditions into Britain Caesar did not in reality bring a new land under the sovereign power of Rome, but at least he called the attention of the Roman world anew to the islands lying beyond the North Channel. It was an expedition of adventure rather than of conquest. The natives, he found, were almost barbaric. They painted their faces in order to inspire fear in the enemy. Their dress and weapons were strange. Like all primitive peoples they were warriors and their method of fighting with war chariots was so strange that Caesar devotes a chapter to a description of it. Although Caesar may have accomplished but little in a military sense by these expeditions, his narrative of this portion of the war is intensely interesting, and the fact that Julius Caesar once crossed the Thames river and was only a short distance from the site of London will always stir the imagination of all of us who belong to the English-speaking race.

HINTS TO THE PUPIL[1]

I. *Pronunciation and reading of the Latin.* — First read the assigned lesson through, aloud if possible, in the original, taking care to pronounce correctly, and to indicate clearly the distinction between long and short vowels. Observe that the pronunciation of *u* is like that in English *rude*, not as in *unite*. Notice also that the *ĕ*, *ĭ*, *ŏ*, *ŭ* differ from *ē*, *ī*, *ō*, *ū* not only in quantity, but in *quality* as well, the latter being *close*, and the former *open* vowels. Be careful about the pronunciation of consonant *i*, of *v*, of *bs* and *bt*, of *c*, *g*, *s*, and *x*, and of the aspirates (*ph*, *ch*, *th*). Of two doubled consonants each is distinctly sounded; *e.g. ĭl-le*, *Metĕl-lus*. This is not the case in English; *e.g.* in *wholly*.

Be careful to place the accent correctly. Remember that the accent depends not on the quantity of the *vowels*, but of the *syllables*; *e.g. Metĕl-lus*, *profĕc-tus*.

As you read, try to divide the sentences into parts, according to the grammatical relations of the words to one another. These will often correspond to the marks of punctuation, but not always: *e.g. Post hunc* | *Servius Tullius suscēpit imperium*, | *genitus ex nōbilī fēminā* | *captīvā tamen et famulā.* |

Try to understand the meaning of the text as far as possible, before translating it into English. Look up in the *Vocabulary* the words whose meaning you do not know, and try to fix their signification permanently in your mind. Notice the derivation of the words, or associate them with the English words descended from them, which are given in the *Vocabulary*. **Do not look up the same word day after day**, *but learn its meaning the first time you meet it.*

II. *Translation into English.* — When you have read the lesson carefully in Latin, translate it into the best possible English. Re-

[1] These *Hints* are the result of practical experience in the classroom, and an attempt has been made to warn the pupil against the errors which he is constantly liable to make.

member that Latin and English are different languages with different idioms, and that the one cannot be translated word for word into the other. Keep as close as possible to the original; but *do not attempt to translate literally*, when the Latin idiom differs from the English. *E.g. pollicitus est sē hōc factūrum esse*, 'he promised that he would do this'; *eā rē cognitā*, '*when* this was known,' '*since* this was known,' etc., according to the context.

In preparing the reading lesson from day to day, be sure to look up carefully all references to the *Introduction* and *Grammatical Appendix*. Do not be discouraged if the meaning is not clear to you at first. Be patient and attack the sentence again, determined, like Caesar, to succeed in overcoming difficulties.

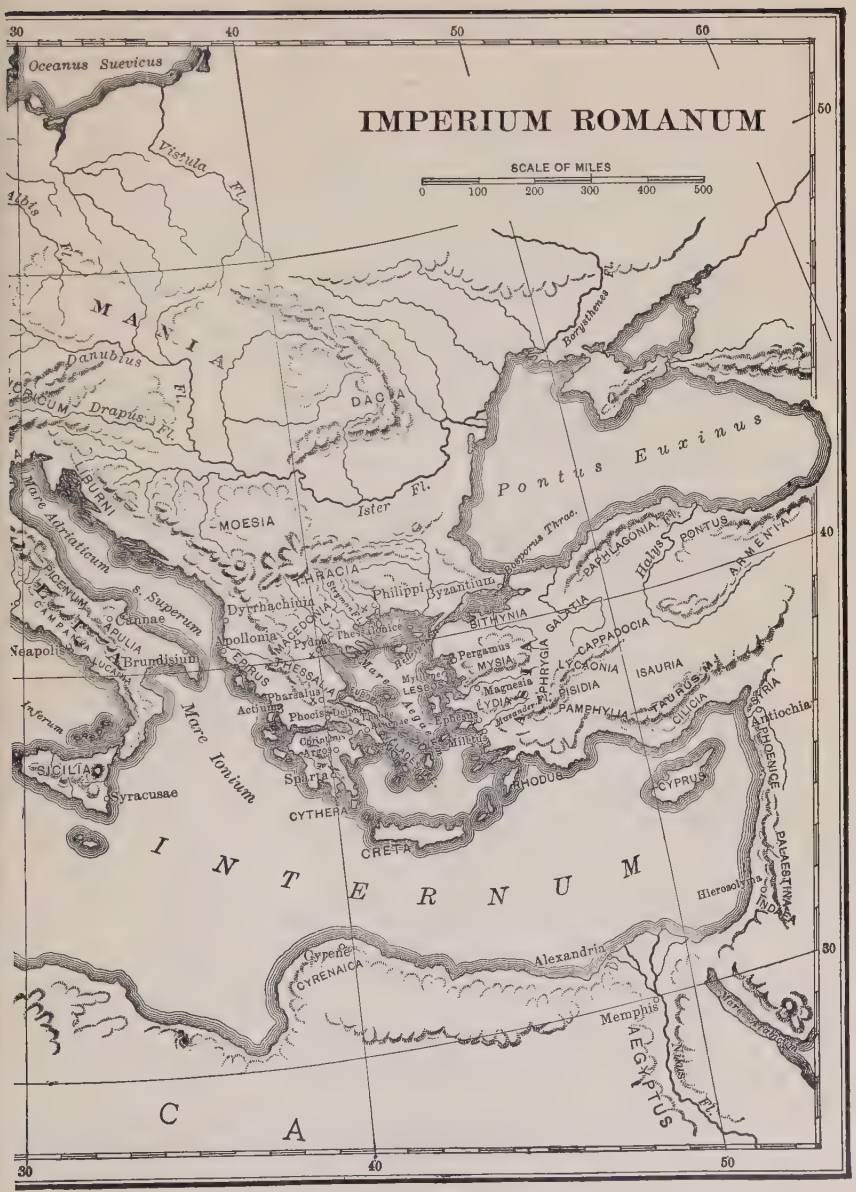
Observe that Latin words cannot always be translated by the corresponding English word: for example, *generōsus*, *nōbilis*. Note the Latin derivation and the exact meaning of such words.

Avoid such stereotyped translations as *ille*, 'that one'; *quīdam*, 'a certain one'; *quidem*, 'indeed'; *ipse*, 'self' or 'very.' Find out what the exact force of the word is in each instance, and render it accordingly.

III. *History, Geography, Mythology, and Antiquities.* — In order to read the Latin authors easily and appreciatively, it is necessary not only to have the ability to understand and to translate the text, but to gain as well a knowledge of the historical environment, and of the conditions of Roman life. This may be acquired gradually, by carefully noticing all references of that nature. The necessary information is given in the *Notes* and *Vocabulary*. In the case of geographical names, do not be content to be told the location of a place, but find its exact position on the map. If the *Vocabulary*, for example, tells you that Sparta was the capital of Laconia, turn to the map of Greece, and find out where Laconia was situated, and in what part of the state Sparta was located.

IV. The *Grammatical Appendix* has been provided in order that the student may look up forms and constructions with as little labor as possible. Look up all references to it, unless their meaning is already clear to you. If you are weak on forms, review them constantly until you have fixed them permanently in your mind.

HIBERNIA
BRITANNIA
Oceanus Germanicus
Oceanus Sue
Chersonesus Cimbrica
Albis Fl.
Fretum Gallicum
Rhenus Fl.
BELGAE
Sequana Fl.
Parisii
Agedincum
GALLI SEU CELTAE
Liger Fl.
Avaricum
GALLIA
TRANSALPINA
Lugdunum
Arar Fl.
Rhodanus
SANTONES
Garumna Fl.
Tolosa
PYRENAEI MONTES
PROV. ROMANA
Massilia
Aquae Sextiae
Padus Fl.
CISALPINA
Danubi
NORICUM
Drap
LIBURNI
Mare Adriaticum
ETRURIA
ROMA
PICENUM
CAMPANIA
Neapolis
Mare Tyrrhenum (Tuscum) s. Inferum
CORSICA
SARDINIA
BALEARES
IAE
Numantia
Iberus Fl.
CELTIBERI
HISPANIA
Tagus Fl.
Saguntum
Corduba
Carthago Nova
Gades
LUSITANIA
OCEANUS ATLANTICUS
MARE
SICILIA
Utica
Carthago
Clypea
Bagrada Fl.
Zama
NUMIDAE
Hadrumetum
MAURETANI
AFRI
GAETULI
Capena
Cures
Crustumerium
L. Sabatinus
Sabate
Cremera Fl.
Allia Fl.
Carseoli
Fidenae
Veii
Antemnae
MONS SACER
Tibur
Collatia
ROMA
Lacus Regillus
Gabii
Praeneste
Tusculum
ALGIDUS M.
Tiber
Ostia
Lac. Albanus
M. ALBANUS
Alba Longa
Laurentum
Lavinium
Velitrae
Lanuvium
Coras
Corioli
Ardea
Antium
VOLSCI
VECILIUS M.
Norba
Mare Tuscum
ROME AND VICINITY


IMPERIUM ROMANUM
SCALE OF MILES
0 100 200 300 400 500
Oceanus Suevicus
Vistula Fl.
Albis Fl.
MANIA
Danubius Fl.
Drapus Fl.
DACIA
Ister Fl.
Borysthenes Fl.
Pontus Euxinus
Bosporus Thrac.
Halys Fl.
PONTUS
ARMENIA
PAPHLAGONIA
GALATIA
CAPPADOCIA
LYCAONIA
ISAURIA
TAURUS M.
CILICIA
SYRIA
Antiochia
PHOENICE
PALAESTINA
INDAEA
Hierosolyma
Mare Adriaticum
BRUNI
MOESIA
THRACIA
Philippi
Byzantium
BITHYNIA
PHRYGIA
LYDIA
PISIDIA
PAMPHYLIA
Pergamus
MYSIA
Magnesia
Ephesus
Miletus
Mare Aegaeum
Dyrrhachium
MACEDONIA
Pydna
Thessalonice
Apollonia
EPIRUS
THESSALIA
Pharsalus
Actium
Phocis
Delphi
Corinthus
Argos
Sparta
CYTHERA
CRETA
RHODUS
CYPRUS
Mare Ionium
Mare Adriaticum
PICENUM
CAMPANIA
APULIA
Cannae
Neapolis
LUCANIA
Brundisium
Inferum
SICILIA
Syracusae
INTERNUM
Cyrene
CYRENAICA
Alexandria
Memphis
AEGYPTUS
Nilus Fl.
Mari Arabicum
CA
30
40
50
60

LATIN READER

ROMAN HISTORY

Early Italian rulers; Aeneas comes to Italy.

1. Antīquissimīs temporibus Sāturnus in Italiam vēnisse dīcitur. Ibi haud procul ā Iāniculō arcem condidit, eamque

---

1. 1. **Antīquissimīs**: 'very early.' 193.[1] **temporibus**: for the case see 181. **in Italiam**: for the meaning of *in* with the acc. see 186, 1 (*a*). **vēnisse dīcitur**: 'is said to have come,' the pass. personal constr. Notice that the action of the verb *vēnisse* takes place before that of *dīcitur*. See note preceding 274. What would be the meaning of *venīre dīcitur;* of *ventūrus esse dīcitur?*

2. **Iāniculō**: 'the Janiculum,' a hill on the west side of the river Tiber. See Vocab. and map opp. p. 57. **eamque Sāturniam**: two accusatives, objects of *appellāvit*, both referring to the same thing, the latter being a pred. acc. 127.

---

[1] The numbers throughout the Notes refer to the Grammatical Appendix, p. 489. These references should be looked up carefully, for the information obtained in this way will assist in understanding the Latin.

References like this, p. 10, l. 8, are to the pages of this book. Translations of Latin words or phrases are in single quotation marks. The explanations of proper names, and the location of places, are given in part in the Vocabulary.

abl. = "ablative"; abs. = "absolute"; cf. (*cōnfer*) = "compare"; sc. (*scīlicet*) = "supply," "understood"; N. = "note"; Rem. = "remark"; Vocab. = "Vocabulary," at the end of the book; dir. disc. = "direct discourse"; ind. disc. = "indirect discourse" (*ōrātiō obliqua*); constr. = "construction"; l. = "line"; p. = "page"; pp. = "pages"; lit. = "literal," "literally"; trans. = "translate" or "translation"; deriv. = "derivation."

For other abbreviations see the list preceding the Vocabulary.

Sāturniam appellāvit. Hīc Italōs prīmus agrī cultūram docuit.

2. Posteā Latīnus in illīs regiōnibus imperāvit. Sub hōc rēge Troia in Asiā ēversa est. Hinc Aenēās, Anchīsae fīlius, cum multīs Troiānīs, quibus ferrum Graecōrum pepercerat, aufūgit, et in Italiam pervēnit. Ibi Latīnus rēx eī benignē receptō fīliam Lāvīniam in mātrimōnium dedit. Aenēās urbem condidit, quam in honōrem coniugis Lāvīnium appellāvit.

Aeneas.

A coin of the emperor Antoninus, representing the flight of the hero from Troy. He carries his father, Anchises, on his shoulder and leads his son, Ascanius, by the hand.

1. **Italōs . . . cultūram**: two accusatives, objects of *docuit*, one referring to the person affected, the other to the result produced, 128. **prīmus . . . docuit**: 'was the first to teach,' 191. *Prīmum*, in place of *prīmus*, would mean 'in the first place he taught.'

2. 3. **in illīs regiōnibus**: for the constr. see 174. **imperāvit**: here used intransitively, or absolutely, 205. **Sub**: 'under the rule of.'

4. **Troia**: Troy was captured and destroyed by the allied forces of the Greeks, under the lead of Agamemnon, king of Mycenae. According to tradition this event took place at the beginning of the twelfth century B.C. **in Asiā**: on the meaning of *in* with the abl. see 174. Cf. *in Italiam*, p. 1, l. 1. **Hinc**: 'from this place,' 'thence,' *i.e.* from Troy. Learn from the Vocab. the meanings of *hīc*, *hūc*, *hinc*. **Aenēās**, **Anchīsae**: see Vocab. For the declension of these Greek nouns see 15. **fīlius**: for the constr. see 121.

5. **cum multīs Troiānīs**: 167. **quibus**: for the case see 149, *a*. **Graecōrum**: see note on *Troia*, l. 4 above. **aufūgit**: meaning of *au-*? What is the length of the root vowel in the present tense? See Vocab.

6. **pervēnit**: what is the force of *per-*? What is the quantity of the root vowel in the pres.? **eī benignē receptō . . . dedit**: 'received him kindly and gave to him.' Note the lit. trans., and see 276. For the case of *eī* see 148.

7. **Lāvīniam**: see note on *fīlius*, l. 4 above.

8. **coniugis**: objective gen. with *honōrem*, 137. **quam . . . Lāvīnium**: see note on *eamque Sāturniam*, p. 1, l. 2.

The Alban kings.

3. Post Aenēae mortem Ascanius, Aenēae fīlius, rēgnum accēpit. Hīc sēdem rēgnī in alium locum trānstulit, urbemque condidit in monte Albānō, eamque Albam Longam nūncupāvit. Eum secūtus est Silvius, quī post Aenēae mortem

The Roman Campagna.

In the distance are the Alban Hills. The highest elevation is the Mons Albanus.

---

3. 1. **Post**: governs what word? Limiting words are sometimes put between the prep. and its case.

2. **sēdem rēgnī**: 'seat of royal government.'

3. **in**: 'on,' 'upon.' **monte Albānō**: The *Mōns Albānus*, now Monte Cavo, lies a few miles southeast of Rome. **Albam Longam**: the city was so called because it stretched out in a long line on the slopes of the *mōns Albānus;* 127. **nūncupāvit**: derivation? See Vocab.

4. **Eum**: 'him.' *Is* is frequently used as the pers. pron. of the third person.

ā Lāvīniā genitus erat. Eius posterī omnēs ūsque ad Rōmam conditam Albae rēgnāvērunt.

4. Unus hōrum rēgum, Rōmulus Silvius, sē Iove maiōrem esse dīcēbat, et, cum tonāret, mīlitibus imperāvit, ut clipeōs hastīs percuterent, dīcēbatque hunc sonum multō clāriōrem esse quam tonitrum. Fulmine ictus, et in Albānum lacum praecipitātus est.

5. Silvius Proca, rēx Albānōrum, duōs fīliōs relīquit, Numitōrem et Amūlium. Hōrum minor nātū, Amūlius, frātrī optiōnem dedit, utrum rēgnum habēre vellet, an bona quae pater relīquisset. Numitor paterna bona praetulit; Amūlius rēgnum obtinuit.

---

1. **ā Lāvīniā**: abl. of source, 159. **ad Rōmam conditam**: 'until the founding of Rome.' Note the lit. trans. and see 280. The traditional date of the founding of Rome is 753 B.C.

2. **Albae**: locative case. How translated? See 176.

4. 3. **hōrum**: *i.e.* of those who ruled at Alba. **rēgum**: what use of the gen.? 138. **sē . . . esse**: inf. with subj. acc. in ind. disc. introduced by *dīcēbat*. Study carefully 265. Trans. 'that he was.' Notice that *esse* represents time contemporaneous with that of *dīcēbat*; *sē* is a reflexive pron., 197. **Iove**: see 33; and for the case, 161.

4. **dīcēbat**: 'was wont to say.' See 209. **cum . . . tonāret**: on the mood see 235; *tonāret* is an impersonal verb, 204. **mīlitibus imperāvit**: see note on *quibus*, p. 2, l. 5. **ut . . . percuterent**: 'to strike,' a subst. clause of purpose, 260.

5. **hastīs**: abl. of means or instrument, 163. **multō clāriōrem**: 'much louder.' For the case of *multō* see 168. **hunc sonum . . . esse**: 'that this sound was'; see note on *sē . . . esse*, l. 3 above.

6. **quam tonitrum**: *tonitrum* is in the same case as the thing with which it is compared (*sonum*). What other way of expressing comparison? cf. *Iove*, l. 3 above. **ictus**: sc. *est*.

5. 8. **Proca**: the twelfth in the series of the Alban kings; 14.

9. **Hōrum**: see note on *rēgum*, l. 3 above. **minor nātū**: 'the younger.' For the case of *nātū* see 171.

10. **utrum . . . vellet, an bona**: sc. *habēre;* a double ind. question, 'whether — or,' depending on *optiōnem dedit*. See 259, *a*, and 219.

11. **relīquisset**: 'had left,' the plup. and not the perf. is used be-

Romulus and Remus; founding of Rome.

6. Amūlius, ut rēgnum firmissimē possidēret, Numitōris fīlium per insidiās interēmit, et fīliam frātris Rheam Silviam Vestālem virginem fēcit. Nam hīs Vestae sacerdōtibus nōn licet virō nūbere. Sed haec ā Mārte geminōs fīliōs Rōmulum et Remum peperit. Hōc cum Amūlius compe- 5

---

cause the action of the verb is prior to that of *vellet*, upon which it depends. The subjunctive is used because *quae . . . relīquisset* is a part of the ind. question. This use is sometimes called subj. *by attraction*, 272.

6. 1. **ut . . . possidēret**: a clause expressing the purpose of Amulius in killing (*interēmit*) the son of Numitor. Trans. *ut* by 'in order that,' 229.

2. **frātris**: *i.e.* of whom? **fīliam . . . Vestālem virginem fēcit**: see note on *eamque Sāturniam*, p. 1, l. 2. The Vestal Virgins were priestesses of Vesta, the goddess of the hearth. They were bound by a vow of chastity, a violation of which was punished by burial alive. **Rheam Silviam**: 121.

A Vestal Virgin.

A statue of *Virgo Vestalis Maxima*, or Chief of the Vestals, in her ritual dress.

3. **sacerdōtibus**: dat. case with *licet*.

4. **virō nūbere**: 'to marry,' lit. 'to veil oneself (as a bride) for the bridegroom.' For the case of *virō* see 149, *a*. *nūbere* is the subject of *licet;* see 274. **haec**: *i.e.* Rhea Silvia. **Rōmulum et Remum**: 121. **Hōc**: *i.e.* that she was the mother of twins.

5. **cum . . . comperisset**: cf. *cum . . . tonāret*, p. 4, l. 4. Observe that here the time of *comperisset* is prior to that of the verb on which it depends, *i.e. coniēcit*.

risset, mātrem in vincula coniēcit, puerōs autem in Tiberim abicī iussit.

7. Forte Tiberis aqua ultrā rīpam sē effūderat, et, cum puerī in vadō essent positī, aqua refluēns eōs in siccō relīquit. Ad eōrum vāgītum lupa accurrit, eōsque ūberibus suīs aluit. Quod vidēns Faustulus quīdam, pāstor illīus regiōnis, puerōs sustulit, et uxōrī Accae Lārentiae nūtriendōs dedit.

8. Sīc Rōmulus et Remus pueritiam inter pāstōrēs trānsēgērunt. Cum adolēvissent, et forte comperissent quis ipsōrum avus, quae māter fuisset, Amūlium interfēcērunt,

---

1. **mātrem**: sc. *puerōrum; i.e.* Rhea Silvia.

2. **abicī iussit**: 'commanded to be cast away.' *abicī* depends on *iussit*, 260, *a*, Note.

7. 3. **Forte**: adv. **Tiberis**: gen. case limiting *aqua*. **ultrā rīpam**: inundations, caused by the Tiber's overflowing its banks, were a common occurrence also in the historical period. **sē**: a reflexive pron., 197. **in vadō**: 'in a shallow place.'

4. **essent positī**: for the mood see 235. **refluēns**: 'by flowing back,' a pres. act. part., expressing the manner of *relīquit*, 276 and Note. **in siccō**: sc. *locō*, 'on dry land.'

5. **Ad eōrum vāgītum**: 'attracted by their crying,' lit. 'towards their crying.' **accurrit**: perf. tense. **ūberibus suīs aluit**: *i.e.* she suckled them.

6. **Quod**: in Latin a rel. pron. very often introduces a sentence, where in Eng. we use a demonstrative or pers. pron., 202, *a*. Trans. 'one (*quīdam*) Faustulus, seeing this.' **pāstor**: 121. **illīus**: what case? 81.

7. **Accae Lārentiae**: 121. **nūtriendōs**: 'to be nourished'; the gerundive (fut. pass. part.) agrees with *puerōs*, and expresses the purpose of *dedit*, 285.

8. 8. **trānsēgērunt**: for the agreement see 123, *b*.

9. **Cum adolēvissent . . . comperissent**: see note on *comperisset*, p. 5, l. 5. **quis . . . avus**: sc. *fuisset* from the following clause. *quis* and *quae* are subjects, each of its own clause, while *avus* and *māter* are pred. nouns.

10. **ipsōrum**: *i.e.* of Romulus and Remus, the subjects understood of *adolēvissent* and *comperissent*. The word is here equivalent to a

et Numitōrī avō rēgnum restituērunt. Tum urbem condidērunt in monte Aventīnō, quam Rōmulus ā suō nōmine Rōmam vocāvit. Haec cum moenibus circumdarētur, Remus occīsus est, dum frātrem irrīdēns moenia trānsilit.

The Alban Lake.

A view across the Lacus Albanus. On the opposite side is the ridge on which the town of Alba Longa probably stood.

---

reflexive pron., 201. **fuisset**: subj. in an ind. question, dependent on *comperissent*, 259. What would be the direct form of the question?

1. **Numitōrī**: 148.

2. **monte Aventīnō**: it is believed by modern scholars that the city of Romulus was built rather on the Palatine Hill, situated at the south corner of the depression where the *Forum Rōmānum* was afterwards built. See map opp. p. 57.

3. **Rōmam**: 127. **Haec**, *i.e. urbs* (= *Rōma*). **moenibus**: abl. of means, 163. **circumdarētur**: 'was being surrounded.'

4. **dum . . . trānsilit**: on the mood and tense see 236. **irrīdēns**: the pres. part. expressing the attendant circumstances of *trānsilit*. Cf. *refluēns*, p. 6, l. 4, and the note.

The war with the Sabines.

9. Rōmulus, ut cīvium numerum augēret, asȳlum patefēcit, ad quod multī ex cīvitātibus suīs pulsī accurrērunt. Sed novae urbis cīvibus coniugēs deerant. Fēstum itaque Neptūnī et lūdōs īnstituit. Ad hōs cum multī ex fīnitimīs populīs cum mulieribus et līberīs vēnissent, Rōmānī inter ipsōs lūdōs spectantēs virginēs rapuērunt.

10. Populī illī, quōrum virginēs raptae erant, bellum adversus raptōrēs suscēpērunt. Cum Rōmae appropinquārent, forte in Tarpeiam virginem incidērunt, quae in arce sacra prōcūrābat. Hanc rogābant, ut viam in arcem mōnstrāret,

---

9. 1. **ut . . . augēret**: cf. *ut . . . possidēret*, p. 5, l. 1. When the subject of a subordinate clause and the main clause is the same, it is usually put first in Latin; but this order is to be avoided in English. **asȳlum**: the *asylum* ('place of refuge') is supposed to have been opened in the natural depression lying between the northeastern and southwestern summits of the Capitoline Hill. See map, opp. p. 57.

2. **quod**: antecedent is *asȳlum*. **pulsī**: 'who had been expelled'; the part. should often be translated by a rel. clause.

3. **coniugēs**: subj. of *deerant*. Deriv.? See Vocab. **cīvibus**: dat. case with *deerant;* 154, *a*.

4. **hōs**: sc. *lūdōs*. **cum . . . vēnissent**: see note on *comperisset*, p. 5, l. 5.

5. **populīs**: 'peoples,' in the sense of 'nations,' 'tribes.' **cum mulieribus et līberīs**: see note on *cum Troiānīs*, p. 2, l. 5. **inter ipsōs lūdōs**: 'in the very midst of the games.' Note the trans. of *ipsōs;* 200, *a*.

6. **spectantēs**: modifies *virginēs*. See note on *pulsī*, l. 2 above.

10. 7. **quōrum**: 'whose.' **adversus**: prep. See Vocab.

8. **Rōmae**: on the case see 149, *b*. **appropinquārent**: note the tense. What time does it denote?

9. **forte . . . incidērunt**: 'they happened to meet.' **virginem**: 121. **in arce . . . prōcūrābat**: 'was conducting sacred rites in the citadel.'

10. **ut mōnstrāret**: 'to show the way,' 260.

eīque permīsērunt, ut mūnus sibi posceret. Illa petiit ut sibi darent quod in sinistrīs manibus gererent, ānulōs aureōs et armillās significāns. At hostēs in arcem ab eā perductī scūtīs Tarpeiam obruērunt; nam et haec in sinistrīs manibus gerēbant.

The House of the Vestals.

A restoration showing the courtyard with the surrounding colonnades (*porticus*).

1. **ut . . . sibi posceret**: 'to ask for herself,' 198. On the tense of *posceret* and *mōnstrāret* (p. 8, l. 10) see 219, and on the mood, 261. **ut . . . darent**: cf. *ut . . . mōnstrāret*, p. 8, l. 10. **sibi**: 148.

2. **quod**: the antecedent is *id*, the obj. of *darent*. **in**: 'on.' **gererent**: the subjunctive because the clause of which *gererent* is the verb is a part of the purpose clause. See note on *relīquisset*, p. 4, l. 11.

3. **significāns**: limits *illa*, subj. of *petiit*. **ab eā**: *i.e. Tarpeiā*. The abl. of the agent requires the prep. *ā*, *ab*; 160.

4. **perductī**: expresses time. How should it be translated? **scūtīs**: see note on *hastīs*, p. 4, l. 5. **et**: 'also,' *i.e.* as well as what?

11. Tum Rōmulus cum hoste, quī montem Tarpeium tenēbat, pugnam cōnseruit in eō locō, ubi nunc forum Rōmānum est. In mediā caede raptae prōcessērunt, et hinc patrēs, hinc coniugēs et socerōs complectēbantur, et rogābant ut caedis fīnem facerent. Utrīque hīs precibus commōtī sunt. Rōmulus foedus īcit, et Sabīnōs in urbem recēpit.

Division of citizens; death of Romulus.

12. Posteā cīvitātem dēscrīpsit. Centum senātōrēs lēgit, eōsque cum ob aetātem tum ob reverentiam eīs dēbitam

---

11. 1. **hoste**: *i.e. Sabīnīs.* **montem Tarpeium**: the famous 'Tarpeian Rock,' probably on the south side of the Capitoline Hill. From this rock traitors and criminals were hurled. Cf. Byron, *Childe Harold*, IV, 112:

> "Where is the rock of Triumph, the high place
> Where Rome embraced her heroes? where the steep
> Tarpeian — fittest goal of Treason's race,
> The promontory whence the Traitor's Leap
> Cured all ambition?"

2. **forum Rōmānum**: see note on *monte Aventīnō*, p. 7, l. 2, above.

3. **in mediā caede**: 'in the midst of the bloody battle.' **raptae**: sc. *mulierēs*, and trans. by a rel. clause. **hinc . . . hinc**: 'on this side . . . on that.'

4. **patrēs**: *i.e. Sabīnōs*, while *coniugēs et socerōs* are the Romans.

5. **ut . . . facerent**: cf. *ut . . . mōnstrāret*, p. 8, l. 10. **Utrīque**: from *uterque*. **precibus**: 163.

6. **foedus īcit**: 'made a treaty.' In early Rome, when a treaty was made, a victim was killed ('struck') as part of the ceremony.

12. 8. **cīvitātem dēscrīpsit**: 'divided the citizens into classes.' **lēgit**: note the quantity of the penult. How does it determine the tense of the word?

9. **cum . . . tum**: 'not only . . . but also.' See Vocab. **ob aetātem**: *senātōrēs* is connected etymologically with *senex* 'old man.' **dēbitam**: see note on *pulsī*, p. 8, l. 2. **patrēs**: 127.

patrēs appellāvit. Plēbem in trīgintā cūriās distribuit, eāsque raptārum nōminibus nūncupāvit. Annō rēgnī trīcēsimō septimō, cum exercitum lūstrāret, inter tempestātem ortam repente oculīs hominum subductus est. Hinc aliī eum ā senātōribus interfectum, aliī ad deōs sublātum esse exīstimāvērunt.

Numa Pompilius, the lawgiver.

13. Post Rōmulī mortem ūnīus annī interrēgnum fuit. Quō exāctō, Numa Pompilius, Curibus urbe in agrō Sabīnōrum nātus, rēx creātus est. Hīc vir bellum quidem nūllum gessit; nec minus tamen cīvitātī prōfuit. Nam et lēgēs dedit, et sacra plūrima īnstituit, ut populī barbarī et

---

2. **raptārum**: sc. *mulierum Sabīnārum*. See note on *raptae*, p. 10, l. 3.

3. **cum . . . lūstrāret**: 'when he was reviewing the army.' The time is contemporaneous with that of *subductus est*. See note on *appropinquārent*, p. 8, l. 8. Every five years a review (*cēnsus*) of the citizens was made, after which a purifying sacrifice (*lūstrum*) was offered. Thus *lūstrārī*, which originally meant to perform such a sacrifice, came to mean 'review.' **inter**: 'during.'

4. **ortam**: trans. by a rel. clause. **oculīs**: for the case see 153. **Hinc**: 'hence,' *i.e.* in consequence of what is related in the preceding sentence. **aliī . . . aliī**: 'some . . . others.'

5. **ā senātōribus**: see note on *ab eā*, p. 9, l. 3. **interfectum**: sc. *esse*.

13. 7. **ūnīus**: on the form see 49. What other adjectives are declined in the same way? **annī**: gen. of measure, 141. **interrēgnum**: determine the meaning from the derivation.

8. **Quō exāctō**: 'and when this had come to an end.' Cf. note on *quod*, p. 6, l. 5. **Curibus**: 'at Cures.' See note on *Albae*, p. 4, l. 2. **urbe**: 121.

9. **rēx creātus est**: 129, *a*. **quidem**: Numa waged no war 'to be sure,' yet he was useful to the citizens in other ways.

10. **cīvitātī**: see note on *Rōmae*, p. 8, l. 8. **et . . . et**: correlative. For the meaning see Vocab.

11. **ut . . . mollīret**: see note on *ut . . . possidēret*, p. 5, l. 1.

bellicōsī mōrēs mollīret. Omnia autem quae faciēbat, sē nymphae Ēgeriae, coniugis suae, iussū facere dīcēbat. Morbō dēcessit, quadrāgēsimō tertiō imperī annō.

Tullus Hostilius, the warrior.

14. Numae successit Tullus Hostīlius, cuius avus sē in bellō adversus Sabīnōs fortem et strēnuum virum praestiterat. Rēx creātus bellum Albānīs indīxit, idque trigeminōrum Horātiōrum et Cūriātiōrum certāmine fīnīvit. Albam propter perfidiam Mettī Fūfetī dīruit. Cum trīgintā duōs annōs rēgnāsset, fulmine ictus cum domō suā ārsit.

---

1. **bellicōsī**: note the deriv., 111, *a*. **Omnia**: 'everything.' **sē**: subject of *facere*. To whom does it refer?

2. **nymphae**: with *iussū*. For the case of *iussū* see 165. **dīcēbat**: see note on *sē . . . esse*, p. 4, l. 3. **Morbō dēcessit**; sc. *dē vītā*, 'he died a natural death.'

3. **quadrāgēsimō tertiō**: 72, 181. **imperī**: gen. case. See 18.

14. 4. **Numae**: 149, *b*. **cuius**: 'whose.' **sē . . . praestiterat**: 'had shown himself.'

5. **adversus**: cf. *adversus*, p. 8, l. 7. **virum**: 127.

6. **creātus**: trans. by a temporal clause. **Albānīs**: cf. *Numae*, l. 4. **idque**: *i.e. bellum*. **trigeminōrum . . . Cūriātiōrum**: *i.e.* there were three Horatii and three Curiatii. The victory of the Horatii was commemorated by the *pīla Horātia* in the Forum, a pillar which bore the spoils taken from the Curiatii. See Macaulay, *Lays of Ancient Rome*, *Virginia*, 177:

> "And sprang upon that column,
> By many a minstrel sung,
> Whereon three mouldering helmets,
> Three rusting swords are hung."

8. **perfidiam**: after the combat ended in favor of the Romans, Mettius Fufetius, though bound by a treaty of allegiance to the Romans, raised a revolution of the inhabitants of Veii and of Fidenae against them. **Mettī Fūfetī**: what case? See 18. **Cum . . . rēgnāsset**: see note on *comperisset*, p. 5, l. 5. *rēgnāsset* = *rēgnāvisset*.

9. **annōs**: 130. **domō**: note the gender.

Ancus Marcius.

15. Post hunc Ancus Mārcius, Numae ex fīliā nepōs, suscēpit imperium. Hīc vir aequitāte et religiōne avō similis, Latīnōs bellō domuit, urbem ampliāvit, et nova eī moenia circumdedit. Carcerem prīmus aedificāvit. Ad Tiberis ōstia urbem condidit, Ōstiamque vocāvit. Vīcēsimō quārtō annō imperī morbō obiit.

Tomb of the Horatii.

An Etruscan tomb at Albano, to which this name has been given.

---

15. 1. **ex fīliā**: explanatory of *Numae . . . nepōs*. Note the order.

2. **aequitāte et religiōne**: abl. of specification, 171. **avō**: dat. governed by the adj. *similis;* see 157.

3. **nova eī moenia circumdedit**: the thought might also be expressed in Latin thus: *novīs eam moenibus circumdedit* (cf. p. 7, l. 3). For the case of *eī* see 148.

4. **prīmus**: see note on *prīmus*, p. 2, l. 1. **Ad**: 'at,' in the sense of 'by,' 'near to.' **Carcerem**: The so-called "Mamertine prison" or *Tullīānum*, near the northwestern corner of the Forum Romanum; see note on p. 89, l. 5.

6. **morbō obiit**: 'he died a natural death.'

Tarquinius Priscus; his public works.

16. Deinde rēgnum Lūcius Tarquinius Prīscus accēpit, Dēmarātī fīlius, quī tyrannōs patriae Corinthī fugiēns in Etrūriam vēnerat. Ipse Tarquinius, quī nōmen ab urbe Tarquiniīs accēpit, aliquandō Rōmam profectus erat. Advenientī aquila pilleum abstulit, et postquam altē ēvolāvit, reposuit. Hinc Tanaquil coniūnx, mulier auguriōrum perīta, rēgnum eī portendī intellēxit.

17. Cum Rōmae commorārētur, Ancī rēgis familiāritātem cōnsecūtus est, quī eum fīliōrum suōrum tūtōrem relīquit. Sed is pūpillīs rēgnum intercēpit. Senātōribus, quōs Rōmulus creāverat, centum aliōs addidit, quī minōrum

---

16. 1. **Deindē**: *i.e.* after the death of Ancus Marcius.

2. **fīlius**: 121. **quī**: the antecedent is *Dēmarātī*. **Corinthī**: in apposition with *patriae*. For the location of Corinth see Vocab. **fugiēns**: what is the time of the action of the part. with reference to that of the main verb, *vēnerat*? 276 and Note.

3. **nōmen**: what name?

4. **Tarquiniīs**: what constr.? The Eng. idiom is 'of Tarquinii.' **aliquandō**: 'on one occasion,' 'once.' **Rōmam**: 'to Rome,' acc. expressing limit of motion. Why is the prep. omitted? 132. **Advenientī**: sc. *eī* = *Tarquiniō*, sometimes called dat. of separation, 153. Trans. 'as he was approaching Rome, an eagle carried off *his* cap.'

5. **pilleum**: a simple skull-cap of felt. **ēvolāvit**: 234.

6. **reposuit**: trans. *re-* 'on his head *again*.' **Hinc**: 'because of this.' **auguriōrum**: for the case see 143.

17. 8. **Cum**: 'while.' **Rōmae**: see note on *Albae*, p. 4, l. 2. **commorārētur**: what is the force of the tense? Cf. *lūstrāret*, p. 11, l. 3.

9. **eum**: *i.e. Tarquinium*. **suōrum**: notice that although this word refers to but one person, *i.e.* the subject of *relīquit*, it is pl. in form, in agreement with its noun. **tūtōrem**: 127.

10. **pūpillīs**: 153.

11. **aliōs**: sc. *senātōrēs*. **minōrum gentium**: sc. *senātōrēs*.

gentium sunt appellātī. Plūra bella fēlīciter gessit, nec paucōs agrōs, hostibus ădēmptōs, urbis territōriō ădiūnxit. Prīmus triumphāns urbem intrāvit. Cloācās fēcit;

Ostia.

A large part of the sea-port of Rome has been excavated. The view shows a temple standing within a colonnade.

---

2. **nec paucōs**: 'and not a few.' This is a figure of speech known as litotes, 289. **hostibus**: 'from the enemy.' For the case cf. *Advenientī*, p. 14, l. 4. **adēmptōs**: for the trans. see note on *pulsī*, p. 8, l. 2.

3. **Prīmus**: see note on *prīmus*, p. 2, l. 1. **triumphāns**: the triumph was a solemn procession in which a victorious general entered the city in a four-horse chariot, preceded by the captives and spoils taken in war, and followed by his troops. For a vivid description of a triumph see Macaulay, *Lays of Ancient Rome*, *Prophecy of Capys*, 224–268. **Cloācās**: extensive remains of the 'sewers,' said by tradition, though incorrectly, to have been built by Tarquinius Priscus are still in existence, and until recently were still in use.

Capitōlium incohāvit. Trīcēsimō octāvō imperī annō per Ancī fīliōs, quibus rēgnum ēripuerat, occīsus est.

Servius Tullius; the census. Murder of the king.

18. Post hunc Servius Tullius suscēpit imperium, genitus ex nōbilī fēminā, captīvā tamen et famulā. Cum in domō Tarquinī Prīscī ēducārētur, flamma in eius capite vīsa est. Hōc prōdigiō Tanaquil eī summam dignitātem portendī intellēxit, et coniugī persuāsit, ut eum sīcutī līberōs suōs ēducāret. Cum adolēvisset, rēx eī fīliam in mātrimōnium dedit.

19. Cum Prīscus Tarquinius occīsus esset, Tanaquil dē superiōre parte domūs populum allocūta est, dīcēns, rēgem grave quidem sed nōn lētāle vulnus accēpisse; eum petere, ut populus, dum convaluisset, Serviō Tulliō oboedīret. Sīc Servius rēgnāre coepit, sed bene imperium

---

1. **Capitōlium**: *i.e.* the temple of Jupiter, on the Capitoline Hill. **per fīliōs**: 'through the agency of the sons.'

2. **quibus**: see note on *Advenientī*, p. 14, l. 4.

18. 4. **ex nōbilī fēminā**: see note on *ā Lāvīniā*, p. 4, l. 1. **Cum**: for the meaning cf. p. 14, l. 8.

5. **ēducārētur**: 'was being reared.' Do not trans. by the Eng. deriv. **in**: 'upon.'

6. **prōdigiō**: abl. of cause, 165. **eī**: stands for whom?

7. **coniugī**: 149, *a*.

19. 11. **domūs**: gen. case. For the decl. see 40. Note the long vowel. **dīcēns**: what she said is stated *indirectly* in *rēgem . . . oboedīret*. See note on *sē . . . esse*, p. 4, l. 3. Give Tanaquil's words in dir. discourse.

12. **quidem**: see note on *quidem*, p. 11, l. 9.

13. **eum**: *i.e. rēgem*. **dum . . . convaluisset**: 'until he got well again,' representing the fut. perf. ind. of the dir. discourse. **Serviō Tulliō**: 149, *a*.

14. **oboedīret**: deriv.? See Vocab. **Sīc**: *i.e.* by the device employed by Tanaquil.

administrāvit. Montēs trēs urbī adiūnxit. Prīmus omnium cēnsum ōrdināvit. Sub eō Rōma habuit capitum octōgintā tria mīlia cīvium Rōmānōrum cum hīs, quī in agrīs erant.

20. Hīc rēx interfectus est scelere fīliae Tulliae et Tarquiniī Superbī, fīliī eius rēgis, cui Servius successerat. Nam ab ipsō Tarquiniō dē gradibus cūriae dēiectus, cum domum fugeret, interfectus est. Tullia in forum properāvit, et prīma coniugem rēgem salūtāvit. Cum domum redī-

---

1. **Montēs trēs**: inasmuch as the Palatine, Capitoline, Quirinal, and Aventine hills had already been occupied, the hills referred to are probably the remaining three of the original seven, namely the Viminal, Esquiline, and Caelian. **urbī**: 149, *b*. **Prīmus**: cf. note on p. 2, l. 1.

2. **cēnsum**: a division of the whole body of Roman citizens, for military and political purposes, into six classes, according to the amount of their property. They were divided into 193 centuries, each of which cast one vote, the classes voting in order, beginning with the first. As the first class contained 80 centuries, this with the 18 centuries of knights, which voted before the first class, cast a majority of the votes. Thus the political power was in the hands of the rich. See note on *lūstrāret*, p. 11, l. 3. **Sub eō**: cf. note on *sub*, p. 2, l. 3. **capitum**: 'of lives' or 'individuals,' depending on *mīlia*, while *cīvium* depends on *capitum*. The last-named word need not be translated into Eng.

3. **mīlia**: for the declension see 73. **cum**: 'together with.' **in agrīs**: *i.e.* in the country about Rome.

20. 5. **fīliae**: the poss. pron. is not always used in Latin, as it is in Eng.

7. **ab ipsō Tarquiniō**: for the constr. see note on *ab eā*, p. 9, l. 3. **dēiectus . . . interfectus est**: 'he was thrown down . . . and killed.' It frequently happens that a part. should be trans. thus as coördinate with the main verb.

8. **domum**: 132. **forum**: the senate-house (*cūria*) was situated near the forum; see map opposite p. 57.

9. **prīma**: cf. note to *prīmus*, p. 2, l. 1.

ret, aurīgam super patris corpus in viā iacēns carpentum agere iussit.

Tarquinius Superbus, the last of the kings; his banishment.

21. Tarquinius Superbus cognōmen mōribus meruit. Bellō tamen strēnuus plūrēs fīnitimōrum populōrum vīcit. Templum Iovis in Capitōliō aedificāvit. Posteā, dum Ardeam oppugnat, urbem Latī, imperium perdidit. Nam cum fīlius eius Lucrētiae, nōbilissimae fēminae, coniugī Tarquinī Collātīnī, vim fēcisset, haec sē ipsa occīdit in cōnspectū marītī, patris, et amīcōrum, postquam eōs obtestāta est, ut hanc iniūriam ulcīscerentur.

22. Hanc ob causam L. Brūtus, Collātīnus, aliīque nōnnūllī in exitium rēgis coniūrārunt, populōque persuāsērunt, ut eī portās urbis clauderet. Exercitus quoque, quī

---

1. **aurīgam agere iussit**: see note to p. 6, l. 2 above. **iacēns**: modifies *corpus*. **carpentum**: obj. of *agere;* a richly decorated carriage, two-wheeled, and provided with an awning.

21. 3. **cognōmen**: *i.e. Superbus*, 'the Proud.' **mōribus**: abl. of cause; see note on *prōdigiō*, p. 16, l. 6.

4. **Bellō**: see 181. **populōrum**: partitive gen., 138. Cf. *populīs*, p. 8, l. 5.

5. **Templum**: it was begun by Tarquinius Priscus; see p. 16, l. 1 fol. **in**: 'on.' **dum . . . oppugnat**: 'while he was besieging.' For the mood and tense, see 236.

7. **eius**: *i.e.* of Tarquinius. **Lucrētiae**: dat. governed by *vim fēcisset*. Trans. 'had dishonored Lucretia.'

8. **occīdit**: what is the difference in meaning between *occīdit* and *occidit?* See Vocab.

10. **ulcīscerentur**: 260.

22. 11. **Hanc ob causam**: a very common order. **Brūtus, Collātīnus**: there is no connective in either Latin or Eng. **Collātīnus**: *i.e. Tarquinius Collātīnus*. **nōnnūllī**: deriv.? See Vocab.

12. **in**: 'for.' **coniūrārunt**: = *coniūrāvērunt*. **populōque . . . clauderet**: cf. *coniugī persuāsit, ut . . , ēducāret*, p. 16, l. 7.

13. **eī**: 'against him.' Cf. *Lucrētiae*, l. 7 above.

cīvitātem Ardeam cum rēge oppugnābat, eum relīquit. Fūgit itaque cum uxōre et līberīs suīs. Ita Rōmae rēgnātum est per septem rēgēs, annōs ducentōs quadrāgintā trēs.

Creation of the consuls; war with Tarquinius.

23. Tarquiniō expulsō, cōnsulēs coepēre prō ūnō rēge duo creārī, ut, sī ūnus malus esset, alter eum coercēret. 5

Ostia.

Showing the Tiber and the ruins of warehouses.

---

1. **cīvitātem Ardeam**: *i.e.* the citizens of the town of Ardea, and of the adjacent tributary land (*agrī*).

2. **itaque**: *i.e.* because he was deserted by the army. **Ita**: sums up the rule of the kings. **Rōmae**: locative case. **rēgnātum est**: 'the government was administered,' impersonal; note the lit. meaning, 204 and 124.

3. **annōs**: for the case see 130.

23. 4. **Tarquiniō expulsō**: abl. abs. const., 173. **coepēre**: perf. indic., third pers. pl. What other ending is there for this tense and person? The traditional date of the first consulship is 509 B.C.

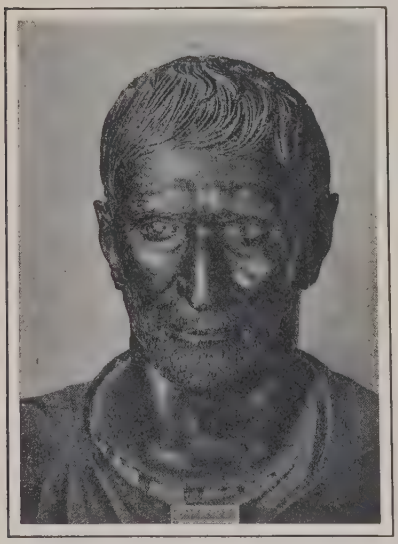
5. **duo**: modifies *cōnsulēs*. Its position contrasts it with *prō ūnō rēge*. **ūnus**: sc. *cōnsul*. **malus**: pred. adj. **ut . . . coercēret**: 229.

Annuum eīs imperium tribūtum est, nē per diūturnitātem potestātis īnsolentiōrēs redderentur. Fuērunt igitur annō prīmō, expulsīs rēgibus, cōnsulēs L. Iūnius Brūtus, ācerrimus lībertātis vindex, et Tarquinius Collātīnus, marītus Lucrētiae. Sed Collātīnō paulō post dignitās sublāta est. Placuerat enim, nē quis ex Tarquiniōrum familiā Rōmae manēret. Ergō cum omnī patrimōniō suō ex urbe migrāvit, et in eius locum Valerius Pūblicola cōnsul factus est.

24. Commōvit bellum urbī rēx Tarquinius. In prīmā pugnā Brūtus cōnsul, et Arrūns, Tarquinī fīlius

---

1. **Annuum**: 'for one year.' What part of speech? **nē . . . redderentur**: neg. clause of purpose, 229.



Lucius Junius Brutus.
A bust supposed to represent the founder of the Republic.

2. **īnsolentiōrēs**: pred. adj., 'too overbearing,' 193. **annō**: abl. of time, 181.

4. **lībertātis**: 137.

5. **Collātīnō**: see note on *pūpillīs*, p. 14, l. 10 above. **paulō post**: 'a little while afterward'; *post* is an adv.; for the case of *paulō* see 168.

6. **Placuerat**: 'it had been resolved.' For the lit. meaning see Vocab. **nē . . . manēret**: cf. *nē . . . redderentur*, l. 2 above. **quis**: 'any one.' With *nē* trans. 'that no one.'

8. **in eius locum**: 'in his place.' Note that in Latin *in* with the acc. is used, lit. 'into.' **cōnsul factus est**: see note on *rēx creātus est*, p. 11, l. 9.

24. 9. **urbī**: dat. governed by *commovit bellum*; cf. 149, [illegible].

sēsē invicem occīdērunt. Rōmānī tamen ex eā pugnā victōrēs recessērunt. Brūtum Rōmānae mātrōnae, quasi commūnem patrem, per annum lūxērunt. Valerius Pūblicola Sp. Lucrētium, Lucrētiae patrem, collēgam sibi fēcit; quī cum morbō exstīnctus esset, Horātium Pulvīllum sibi collēgam sūmpsit. Ita prīmus annus quīnque cōnsulēs habuit.

War with Porsena, king of the Etruscans.

25. Secundō quoque annō iterum Tarquinius bellum Rōmānīs intulit, Porsenā, rēge Etrūscōrum, auxilium eī ferente. In illō bellō Horātius Cocles sōlus pontem ligneum dēfendit et hostēs cohibuit, dōnec pōns ā tergō ruptus esset. Tum sē cum armīs in Tiberim coniēcit et ad suōs trānāvit.

26. Dum Porsena urbem obsidet, Q. Mūcius Scaevola,

---

1. **sēsē invicem**: 'each other.'

2. **Brūtum**: direct object of *lūxērunt*. Note the position of the word, as the logical subject of the sentence. The pass. is less commonly used in Latin than in Eng. **quasi**: they mourned for Brutus 'as if' for, *i.e.* just as they would for, their own fathers.

4. **quī**: 'and when he.' See note on *quod*, p. 6, l. 6.

5. **exstīnctus esset**: 235.

6. **quīnque cōnsulēs**: name them.

25. 7. **Secundō annō**: *i.e.* 508 B.C. **quoque**: adv.

8. **Porsenā ferente**: 'with the help of Porsena'; abl. abs. expressing attendant circumstances.

9. **sōlus**: 'alone.' **pontem ligneum**: called also *Pōns Sublicius*, from the piles (*sublicae*) on which it was built.

10. **dōnec**: 'until'; with the subjunctive because the action of the verb is viewed as anticipated or contemplated, 238. **ā tergō**: 'at his back.' Notice the form of expression, the usual one in such cases. The Romans had in mind the place *from which* the action proceeded.

11. **ad suōs**: 'to his friends,' *i.e.* to the Romans. Read the story of *Horatius* in Macaulay's *Lays of Ancient Rome*.

26. 12. **Dum . . . obsidet**: see note on *dum . . . oppugnat*, p. 18, l. 5.

iuvenis fortis animī, in castra hostis sē contulit, eō cōnsiliō, ut rēgem occīderet. At ibi scrībam rēgis prō ipsō rēge interfēcit. Tum ā rēgiīs satellitibus comprehēnsus et ad rēgem dēductus, cum Porsena eum īgnibus allātīs terrēret, dextram ārae accēnsae imposuit, dōnec flammīs cōnsūmpta esset. Hōc facinus rēx mīrātus iuvenem dīmīsit incolumem. Tum hīc quasi beneficium referēns ait, trecentōs aliōs iuvenēs in eum cōniūrāsse. Hāc rē territus Porsena pācem cum Rōmānīs fēcit, Tarquinius autem Tusculum sē contulit, ibique prīvātus cum uxōre cōnsenuit.

---

1. **fortis animī**: gen. of quality, 140. **hostis**: gen. case with *castra*. The *hostis* was *Porsena*, since Scaevola was a Roman. **eō cōnsiliō ut . . . occīderet**: 'with the intention of killing the king'; *ut . . . occīderet* is a subst. clause of purpose in apposition with *cōnsiliō*, 260, *a*.

2. **ibi**: where? **prō**: 'instead of,' *i.e.* 'mistaking him for.'

3. **comprehēnsus . . . dēductus**: cf. *dēiectus . . . interfectus est*, p. 17, l. 7. The time of the action of these participles is *prior* to, and of *terrēret*, *contemporaneous* with, the action of the main verb *imposuit*.

4. **allātīs**: from *ferō* with *ad* in composition. The abl. abs. expresses *means*, 'by bringing fire.' Study carefully 280. **terrēret**: Porsena did not *succeed* in terrifying Scaevola, he only '*attempted* to terrify.' The imperf. tense sometimes denotes an attempted action.

5. **ārae**: 149, *b*. **accēnsae**: trans. by the English past participle in *-ed* or by a rel. clause. **cōnsūmpta esset**: see note on *dōnec*, p. 21, l. 10.

6. **facinus**: 'deed.' What gender is this word? **incolumem**: adjective used as a predicate accusative, 127, *a*.

7. **hīc**: *i.e. iuvenis*. **ait**: a defective verb.

8. **aliōs**: 'other' than whom? **coniūrāsse**: = *coniūrāvisse*. **Hāc rē**: abl. of cause. Cf. *prōdigiō*, p. 16, l. 6. **territus**: trans. by the past part. in *-ed*.

9. **Tusculum**: see note on *Rōmam*, p. 14, l. 4. For the location of *Tusculum* see Vocab.; for views of Tusculum, pp. 123 and 125.

10. **prīvātus**: in contrast with his former position of *rēx*.

The secession of the plebs.

27. Sextō decimō annō post rēgēs exāctōs, populus Rōmae sēditiōnem fēcit, questus quod tribūtīs et mīlitiā ā senātū exhaurīrētur. Magna pars plēbis urbem relīquit, et in montem trāns Aniēnem amnem sēcessit. Tum patrēs turbātī Menēnium Agrippam mīsērunt ad plēbem, quī eam senātuī conciliāret. Hīc eīs inter alia fābulam nārrāvit dē ventre et membrīs hūmānī corporis; quā populus commōtus est, ut in urbem redīret. Tum prīmum tribūnī plēbis creātī sunt, quī plēbem adversum nōbilitātis superbiam dēfenderent.

---

27. 1. **Sextō decimō annō**: *i.e.* 494 B.C. **post rēgēs exāctōs**: 'after the expulsion of the kings'; cf. *ad Rōmam conditam*, p. 4, l. 1 and 280.

2. **questus**: 'complaining.' The meaning of the perfect participle shades off into that of the present. The English expression is 'complaining that,' the Latin always 'complaining because.'

3. **exhaurīrētur**: the subjunctive, because the reason given is viewed as that of the *populus*, 241.

4. **Aniēnem**: the nom. case is *Aniō*. **sēcessit**: what English words are derived from the present and from the perfect stem? **patrēs**: *i.e. senātōrēs*. See p. 10, l. 8 fol.

5. **quī conciliāret**: relative clause of purpose, *quī* being used instead of *ut is*, 230.

6. **alia**: 'other things.'

7. **quā**: sc. *fābulā*.

8. **ut . . . redīret**: cf. *ut ēducāret*, p. 16, l. 7. The expression is equivalent to *populō persuāsum est ut . . . redīret*. **prīmum**: 'for the first time.' See note on *prīmus*, p. 2, l. 1. **tribūnī plēbis**: these plebeian magistrates possessed extraordinary powers, since by their *veto* they could check the whole machinery of state. See Vocab.

9. **quī dēfenderent**: cf. *quī . . . conciliāret*, line . **adversum**: preposition. **superbiam**: 153.

The story of Coriolanus.

28. Octāvō decimō annō post exāctōs rēgēs, Cn. Mārcius, Coriolānus dictus ab urbe Volscōrum Coriolīs, quam bellō cēperat, plēbī invīsus fierī coepit. Quā rē urbe expulsus ad Volscōs, ācerrimōs Rōmānōrum hostēs, contendit, et ab eīs dux exercitūs factus Rōmānōs saepe vīcit. Iam ūsque ad quīntum mīliārium urbis accesserat, nec ūllīs cīvium suōrum lēgātiōnibus flectī poterat, ut patriae parceret. Dēnique Veturia māter et Volumnia uxor ex urbe ad eum vēnērunt; quārum flētū et precibus commōtus est, ut exercitum removēret. Quō factō ā Volscīs ut prōditor occīsus esse dīcitur.

War with the people of Veii.

29. Rōmānī cum adversum Veientēs bellum gererent, familia Fabiōrum sōla hōc bellum suscēpit. Profectī sunt

---

28. 1. **Octāvō decimō annō**: *i.e.* 492 B.C. **post exāctōs rēgēs**: cf. p. 23, l. 1.

2. **dictus**: 'called.' **Coriolīs**: in apposition with *urbe*, 121. *Coriolīs* is plural in form but agrees with *urbe* in case. **quam**: antecedent?

3. **invīsus**: agrees with the subject of *coepit*. **fierī**: 'to become.' **urbe**: 158 and note.

5. **exercitūs**: gen. case. Note the quantity of the final syllable.

6. **mīliārium urbis**: the principal Roman roads were provided with milestones, the distances being reckoned 'from the city.' **nec** = *et nōn*. The coördinate conjunction and a negative are regularly expressed in this manner in Latin.

7. **flectī**: pres. pass. inf. **ut . . . parceret**: see note on *ut . . . redīret*, p. 23, l. 8.

9. **ut . . . removēret**: cf. *ut . . . redīret*, p. 23, l. 8.

10. **Quō factō**: 'and for this act.' See note on *quod*, p. 6, l. 6.
: 'as.' **occīsus esse**: see note on *vēnisse*, p. 1, l. 1.

of *T*. 12. **Rōmānī**: subject of *gererent;* the order is a very com-
10. in Latin. **Veientēs**: 'the people of Veii.' See Vocab.
· 'alone.' **suscēpit**: translating each part of the com-
'ertook.'

trecentī sex nōbilissimī hominēs, duce Fabiō cōnsule. Cum saepe hostēs vīcissent, apud Cremeram fluvium castra posuērunt. Ibi Veientēs dolō ūsī eōs in īnsidiās pellexērunt. In proeliō ibi exortō omnēs periērunt. Ūnus superfuit ex tantā familiā, quī propter aetātem puerīlem dūcī nōn potuerat ad pugnam. Hīc genus prōpāgāvit ad Q. Fabium Maximum illum, quī Hannibalem prūdentī cunctātiōne dēbilitāvit.

The story of Virginia.

30. Annō trecentēsimō et alterō ab urbe conditā decemvirī creātī sunt, quī cīvitātī lēgēs scrīberent. Hī prīmō annō bene ēgērunt; secundō autem dominātiōnem exercēre coepērunt. Sed cum ūnus eōrum Appius Claudius virginem ingenuam, Verginiam, Verginī centuriōnis fīliam, corrumpere vellet, pater eam occīdit. Tum ad mīlitēs profūgit, eōsque ad sēditiōnem commōvit. Sublāta est decemvirīs potestās, ipsīque omnēs aut morte aut exsiliō pūnītī sunt.

1. **duce Fabiō**: 'under the leadership of Fabius,' lit. 'Fabius being leader,' abl. abs., with a noun, *duce*, instead of a participle. See 173.

3. **dolō**: what case? 163, *a*.

4. **Ūnus**: 'alone.'

6. **potuerat**: note the tense. What is the difference in spelling between this form and the corresponding form of the imperfect tense? **genus**: *i.e. Fabiōrum.* What gender is *genus* and what case? **ad**: 'down to.'

7. **illum**: on the meaning of the demonstrative, see 199. **Hannibalem**: *i.e.* in the Second Punic War.

30. 9. **Annō . . . alterō**: *i.e.* 452 B.C. **ab urbe conditā**: cf. *ad Rōmam conditam*, p. 4, l. 1 and 280. **decemvirī**: derivation?

10. **quī . . . scrīberent**: a rel. clause of purpose, 230.

11. **secundō**: sc. *annō*.

12. **Appius Claudius**: in apposition with *ūnus*. **virginem**: object of *corrumpere*.

14. **vellet**: 235. **eam**: *i.e. virginem*.

15. **Sublāta est**: notice the emphatic position. **decemvirīs**: 153.

The siege of Falerii; wars with the Gauls.

31. In bellō contrā Veientānōs Fūrius Camillus urbem Falēriōs obsidēbat. In quā obsidiōne cum lūdī litterāriī magister prīncipum fīliōs ex urbe in castra hostium dūxisset, Camillus hōc dōnum nōn accēpit, sed scelestum hominem, manibus post tergum vinctīs, puerīs Falēriōs redūcendum trādidit; virgāsque eīs dedit, quibus prōditōrem in urbem agerent.

32. Hāc tantā animī nōbilitāte commōtī Faliscī urbem Rōmānīs trādidērunt. Camillō autem apud Rōmānōs crīminī datum est, quod albīs equīs triumphāsset, et praedam inīquē dīvīsisset; damnātusque ob eam causam, et cīvitāte expulsus est. Paulō post Gallī Senonēs ad urbem vēnērunt,

---

31. 1. **Veientānōs** = *Veientēs*, p. 24, l. 12 above.

2. **Falēriōs**: a town a little to the east of Veii, 121. **lūdī litterāriī**: 'of a school'; with *magister*.

4. **hōc dōnum**: *i.e. prīncipum fīliōs.*

5. **hominem . . . puerīs . . . redūcendum trādidit**: cf. *puerōs . . . uxōrī . . . nūtriendōs dēdit*, p. 6, l. 7 fol. **manibus . . . vinctīs**: 'with his hands bound,' abl. abs. expressing the attendant circumstances of *redūcendum*. **post**: 'behind.' **Falēriōs**: 132.

6. **quibus . . . agerent**: 'with which to drive,' relative clause of purpose. Cf. *quī . . . scrīberent*, p. 25, l. 10.

32. 8. **Hāc . . . nōbilitāte**: note the order. **Faliscī**: 'the inhabitants of Falerii,' 'the Faliscans.'

9. **Camillō . . . crīminī**: 156 and note, *crīminī* is the dat. of purpose. **apud**: 'among.'

10. **quod . . . triumphāsset . . . dīvīsisset**: the subject of *datum est*. On the use of the subjunctive in causal clauses, see note on *quod . . . exhaurīrētur*, p. 23, l. 2. *quod* = 'that.' **albīs equīs**: *i.e.* he triumphed in a chariot drawn by 'white horses'; abl. of attendant circumstances, 169.

11. **inīquē**: derivation? Why is the penult long? **damnātusque**: sc. *est*. **cīvitāte**: abl. of separation, 158 and note.

12. **Paulō post**: cf. p. 20, l. 5.

Rōmānōs apud flūmen Alliam vīcērunt, et urbem etiam occupārunt. Iam nihil praeter Capitōlium dēfendī potuit. Et iam praesidium famē labōrābat, et in eō erant, ut pācem ā Gallīs aurō emerent, cum Camillus cum manū mīlitum superveniēns hostēs magnō proeliō superāret.

33. Annō trecentēsimō nōnāgēsimō quārtō post urbem

The Anio.

The cascades below the town of Tibur, the modern Tivoli, which now supply electric power to the city of Rome.

1. **occupārunt** = *occupāvērunt.*

2. **nihil**: subject of *potuit.*

3. **famē labōrābat**: 'was suffering with hunger'; *famē* is abl. of cause. **in eō erant, ut . . . emerent**: 'they were on the point of buying.' The subject of *erant* is *praesidium*, a collective noun, 123, *b.*

33. 6. **Annō . . . quārtō**: *i.e.* 360 B.C. **post urbem conditam**: cf. *ad Rōmam conditam*, p. 4, l. 1.

conditam Gallī iterum ad urbem accesserant, et quārtō mīliāriō trāns Aniēnem fluvium cōnsēderant. Contrā eōs missus est T. Quīnctius. Ibi Gallus quīdam eximiā corporis magnitūdine fortissimum Rōmānōrum ad certāmen singulāre prōvocāvit. T. Mānlius, nōbilissimus iuvenis, prōvocātiōnem accēpit, Gallum occīdit, eumque torque aureō spoliāvit, quō ōrnātus erat. Hinc et ipse et posterī eius Torquātī appellātī sunt. Gallī fugam capessīvērunt.

34. Novō bellō cum Gallīs exortō, annō urbis quadringentēsimō sextō, iterum Gallus prōcessit rōbore atque armīs īnsignis, et prōvocāvit ūnum ex Rōmānīs, ut sēcum armīs dēcerneret. Tum sē M. Valerius, tribūnus mīlitum, obtulit; et, cum prōcessisset armātus, corvus eī suprā dextrum bracchium sēdit. Mox, commissā pugnā, hīc corvus ālīs et unguibus Gallī oculōs verberāvit. Ita factum est, ut Gallus

---

1. **iterum**: 'a second time.'

3. **eximiā . . . magnitūdine**: 170. The abl. of quality, like the gen. of quality, must regularly have a modifier.

4. **fortissimum**: sc. *virum*. **ad certāmen singulāre prōvocāvit**: 'challenged to a single combat.'

6. **torque**: see note on *cīvitāte*, p. 26, l. 11.

7. **ōrnātus erat**: sc. *Gallus*. **Hinc**: *i.e.* from the circumstance just described.

8. **Torquātī**: derived of course from *torquis*.

34. 9. **bellō . . . exortō**: trans. by a temporal clause. **annō . . . sextō**: *i.e.* 348 B.C.

10. **rōbore atque armīs**: 171; with *īnsignis*.

11. **ex Rōmānīs** = *Rōmānōrum*, 185, 4 (*d*). **sēcum**: 185, 2 (*a*) and Note.

12. **dēcerneret**: 'fight,' *i.e.* 'decide' the contest. **tribūnus mīlitum**: an officer in the Roman army. See Introd. p. xxix. **sē . . . obtulit**: 'presented himself,' *i.e.* 'volunteered.'

13. **eī**: trans. by the possessive 'his' with *bracchium*, 151, *a*. **suprā**: 'upon.'

15. **factum est**: 'it happened'; the subject is *ut interficerētur*, a

facilī negōtiō ā Valeriō interficerētur, quī hinc Corvīnī nōmen accēpit.

The Samnite wars; battle of the Caudine Forks.

35. Posteā Rōmānī bellum gessērunt cum Samnītibus, ad quod L. Papīrius Cursor cum honōre dictātōris profectus est. Quī cum negōtī cuiusdam causā Rōmam īvisset, praecēpit Q. Fabiō Rulliānō, magistrō equitum, quem apud exercitum relīquit, nē pugnam cum hoste committeret. Sed ille occāsiōnem nactus fēlīcissimē dīmicāvit, Samnītēs dēlēvit. Ob hanc rem ā dictātōre capitis damnātus est. At ille in urbem cōnfūgit, et ingentī favōre mīlitum et populī līberātus est; in Papīrium autem tanta exorta est sēditiō, ut paene ipse interficerētur.

36. Duōbus annīs post T. Veturius et Spurius Postumius cōnsulēs bellum adversum Samnītēs gerēbant. Hī ā Pontiō,

---

substantive clause of result, but trans., 'it happened that the Gaul was killed.'

1. **facilī negōtiō**: 'with little trouble'; abl. of manner. **hinc**: 'from this circumstance.' **Corvīnī**: derived of course from *corvus*.

35. 3. **Samnītibus**: 'the inhabitants of Samnium,' 'the Samnites.'

4. **quod**: antecedent? **honōre**: 'office'; not to be translated by the corresponding English word. **dictātōris**: see Vocab.

5. **Quī cum**: 'and when he.' Note the order. **negōtī . . . causā**: 134; *causā* in this sense is always preceded by the gen. case.

6. **magistrō equitum**: see Vocab. and 149, *b*.

7. **nē . . . committeret**: 260.

9. **capitis damnātus est**: 'he was condemned to death.' For the case of *capitis* see 145. **ille**: *i.e.* Fabius.

11. **in**: 'against.'

36. 13. **Duōbus annīs post**: 'Two years after.' Cf. *paulō post*, p. 20, l. 5.

14. **Hī**: *i.e.* the consuls.

duce hostium, in īnsidiās inductī sunt. Nam ad Furculās Caudīnās Rōmānōs pellexit in angustiās, unde sēsē expedīre nōn poterant. Ibi Pontius patrem suum Hērennium rogāvit, quid faciendum putāret. Ille respondit, aut omnēs occīdendōs esse, ut Rōmānōrum vīrēs frangerentur, aut omnēs dīmittendōs, ut beneficiō obligārentur. Pontius utrumque cōnsilium improbāvit, omnēsque sub iugum mīsit. Samnītēs dēnique post bellum ūndēquīnquāgintā annōrum superātī sunt.

War with Pyrrhus, king of Epirus.

37. Dēvictīs Samnītibus, Tarentīnīs bellum indictum est, quia lēgātīs Rōmānōrum iniūriam fēcissent. Hī Pyrrhum, Ēpīrī rēgem, contrā Rōmānōs auxilium poposcērunt. Is

---

1. **Furculās Caudīnās**: 'the Caudine Forks,' narrow passes in the mountains, near the town of Caudium, in Samnium. See Map inside front cover.

2. **angustiās**: notice that this word, as well as *īnsidiās* (l. 1), is plural in form in Latin, but is to be translated into English by the singular. **unde** : = *ā quibus*, sc. *angustiīs*. **sēsē**: reduplicated form of *sē*. **expedīre**: derivation? See Vocab.

3. **Ibi**: 'thereupon.'

4. **putāret**: 259. What was the *direct* question Pontius asked of his father? **faciendum**: sc. *esse*, 'ought to be done.' **Ille**: *i.e. pater*. **occīdendōs . . . dīmittendōs**: sc. *esse*.

6. **beneficiō**: this would consist in letting the Romans go (*dīmittere*). **utrumque**: how does the meaning 'each of *two*' apply here?

7. **sub iugum**: two spears were set up and a third placed across on top; this was the 'yoke,' and conquered soldiers were made to pass under it, one by one.

8. **dēnique**: 'finally.' **ūndēquīnquāgintā**: literal meaning?

37. 10. **Tarentīnīs**: 'inhabitants of Tarentum.' See Map inside front cover.

11. **fēcissent**: subjunctive, because the reason given for declaring war is alleged by somebody else than the narrator. See note on *exhaurīrētur*, p. 23, l. 3. **Hī**: *i.e. Tarentīnī*. **Pyrrhum, auxilium**. 128.

12. **Ēpīrī**: a country northwest of Greece. See Vocab.

mox in Italiam vēnit, tumque prīmum Rōmānī cum trānsmarīnō hoste pugnāvērunt. Missus est contrā eum cōnsul P. Valerius Laevīnus. Hīc, cum explōrātōrēs Pyrrhī cēpisset, iussit eōs per castra dūcī, tumque dīmittī, ut renūntiārent Pyrrhō, quaecunque ā Rōmānīs agerentur.

38. Pugnā commissā, Pyrrhus auxiliō elephantōrum vīcit. Nox proeliō fīnem dedit. Laevīnus tamen per noctem fūgit. Pyrrhus Rōmānōs mīlle octingentōs cēpit, eōsque summō honōre tractāvit. Cum eōs, quī in proeliō interfectī erant, omnēs adversīs vulneribus et trucī vultū etiam mortuōs iacēre vidēret, tulisse ad caelum manūs dīcitur cum hāc vōce, "Ego cum tālibus virīs brevī orbem terrārum subigerem."

39. Posteā Pyrrhus Rōmam perrēxit; omnia ferrō īgneque vāstāvit; Campāniam dēpopulātus est, atque ad Prae-

---

1. **prīmum** see note on *prīmus*, p. 2, l. 1. **trānsmarīnō**: derivation?

4. **dūcī . . . dīmittī**: see note on p. 6, l. 2.

38. 6. **auxiliō**: abl. of cause.

7. **per noctem**: 'during the night.'

10. **adversīs vulneribus**: 'wounds received in front'; these indicated brave soldiers; only cowardly runaways would be wounded in the back. Abl. of attendant circumstances, 169. **trucī vultū**: abl. of attendant circumstances. Cf. *adversīs vulneribus* above. **etiam mortuōs**: 'even when dead,' or 'even in death.'

11. **tulisse**: 'to have raised.' **manūs**: note the quantity of the final syllable.

12. **cum hāc vōce**: 'with this remark,' or 'with these words.' **Ego . . . subigerem**: condition contrary to fact in present time, the condition being expressed by *cum tālibus virīs*, *i.e.* 'if I commanded such men, I would subdue,' etc., 246 and 248. **brevī**: sc. *tempore*.

39. 14. **Rōmam**: the meaning is 'towards Rome,' not 'to Rome,' 132.

15. **Campāniam**: see Vocab. **Praeneste**: see Map inside front cover. **ad**: **'toward,' 'to** the neighborhood of.' Why is

neste vēnit mīliāriō ab urbe octāvō decimō. Mox terrōre exercitūs, quī cum cōnsule sequēbātur, in Campāniam sē recēpit. Lēgātī ad Pyrrhum dē captīvīs redimendīs missī honōrificē ab eō susceptī sunt; captīvōs sine pretiō reddidit. Ūnum ex lēgātīs, Fabricium, sīc admīrātus est, ut eī quārtam partem rēgnī suī prōmitteret, sī ad sē trānsīret; sed ā Fabriciō contemptus est.

40. Cum iam Pyrrhus ingentī Rōmānōrum admīrātiōne tenērētur, lēgātum mīsit Cīneam, praestantissimum virum, quī pācem peteret eā condiciōne, ut Pyrrhus eam partem Italiae, quam armīs occupāverat, obtinēret. Rōmānī respondērunt, eum cum Rōmānīs pācem habēre nōn posse, nisi ex Italiā recessisset. Cīneās cum rediisset, Pyrrhō eum

---

the preposition used with the name of this town? 133. Cf. *Rōmam*, p. 31, l. 14.

2. **exercitūs**: objective gen., 137. **cum cōnsule**: cf. *cum multīs Troiānīs*, p. 2, l. 5. **sē recēpit**: sc. *Pyrrhus*. Notice the force of the prefix *re-*, 'he went *back*.'

3. **dē captīvīs redimendīs**: 'concerning (= to negotiate for) the ransoming of prisoners.' The gerundive, *redimendīs*, is really an adj. (= fut. pass. part.), and, as such, limits the noun *captīvīs*, 283.

4. **reddidit**: 'he gave *back*'; cf. note on *recēpit*, l. 2 above.

5. **ex lēgātīs**: see note on *ex Rōmānīs*, p. 28, l. 11. Why is there no ambiguity in Latin about the persons to whom **eī**, **suī**, and **sē** refer? See note on *sē*, p. 4, l. 3.

6. **sī . . . trānsīret**: *i.e.* if he would desert the Romans, and own allegiance to him (Pyrrhus).

40. 8. **Cum**: 'since.' **Rōmānōrum**: objective genitive.

9. **Cīneam**: in apposition with *lēgātum*. **virum**: in apposition with *Cīneam*.

10. **quī . . . peteret**: see note on *quī . . . scrīberent*, p. 25, l. 10. **eā condiciōne ut . . . obtinēret**: 'on condition that Pyrrhus should hold.' Cf. *eō cōnsiliō . . . ut occīderet*, p. 22, l. 1.

12. **eum**: refers to whom?

13. **recessisset**: the Romans said '*nisi ex Italiā recesseris*' (fut.

interrogantī, quālis ipsī Rōma vīsa esset, respondit, sē rēgum patriam vīdisse.

41. In alterō proeliō cum rēge Ēpīrī commissō Pyrrhus vulnerātus est, elephantī interfectī, vīgintī mīlia hostium caesa sunt. Pyrrhus Tarentum fūgit. Interiectō annō, Fabricius contrā eum missus est. Ad hunc medicus Pyrrhī nocte vēnit prōmittēns, sē Pyrrhum venēnō occīsūrum, sī mūnus sibi darētur. Hunc Fabricius vinctum redūcī iussit

Praeneste.

The town of Palestrina, on the site of ancient Praeneste.

---

perf.). See note on *dum convaluisset*, p. 16, l. 5. **Pyrrhō**: indirect object of *respondit*. **eum interrogantī**: 'who asked him.'

1. **quālis**: sc. *urbs*, 'what kind of city.' **ipsī**: for the case-form, see 82.

41. 3. **alterō**: 'second.'

4. **interfectī**: sc. *sunt*.

5. **Interiectō annō**: 'after a year had intervened.'

7. **vēnit prōmittēns**: 'came and promised.'

8. **vinctum redūcī**: 'to be bound and to be taken back.' Cf. note on *dēiectus*, p. 17, l. 7.

ad dominum. Tunc rēx admīrātus illum dīxisse fertur: "Ille est Fabricius, quī difficilius ab honestāte, quam sōl ā cursū suō āvertī potest." Paulō post Pyrrhus, tertiō etiam proeliō fūsus, ā Tarentō recessit, et, cum in Graeciam rediisset, apud Argos, Peloponnēsī urbem, interfectus est.

The First Punic War; the story of Regulus.

42. Annō quadringentēsimō nōnāgēsimō post urbem conditam Rōmānōrum exercitūs prīmum in Siciliam trāiēcērunt, rēgemque Syrācūsārum Hierōnem, Poenōsque, quī multās cīvitātēs in eā īnsulā occupāverant, superāvērunt. Quīntō annō huius bellī, quod contrā Poenōs gerēbātur, prīmum Rōmānī, C. Duīliō et Cn. Cornēliō Asinā cōnsulibus, in marī dīmicāvērunt. Duīlius Carthāginiēnsēs vīcit, trīgintā nāvēs occupāvit, quattuordecim mersit, septem mīlia hostium

---

1. **dominum**: *i.e. Pyrrhum.*

2. **quī**: subject of *āvertī potest* understood, since *sōl* is the subject of *āvertī potest* expressed. **difficilius**: 'with more difficulty.'

3. **Paulō post**: cf. *paulō post*, p. 26, l. 12.

5. **apud**: 'near.' **Argos**: see Vocab.

42. 6. **Annō . . . conditam**: *i.e.* 264 B.C.

7. **exercitūs**: nom. pl., subject of *trāiēcērunt*. Note the quantity. **trāiēcērunt**: here used intransitively, 'crossed'; in this case it is probably to be explained by understanding *sē* as object of the verb.

8. **rēgemque**: note that *-que* connects the two verbs, *trāiēcērunt* and *superāvērunt*, while the *-que* of *Poenōsque* connects the two nouns, *rēgem* and *Poenōs*. **Syrācūsārum**: the name of this city is in the plural. Cf. *Cannae*, p. 41, l. 2.

9. **in eā īnsulā**: *i.e. in Siciliā.*

11. **C. Duīliō et Cn. Cornēliō Asinā cōnsulibus**: 'during the consulship of C. Duilius,' etc. See note on *duce Fabiō cōnsule*, p. 25, l. 1 and 183. The Romans dated events by the names of the consuls for the current year. **in**: 'upon.'

12. **Carthāginiēnsēs**: another name for *Poenōs*.

13. **quattuordecim**: sc. *nāvēs.*

cēpit, tria mīlia occīdit. Nūlla victōria Rōmānīs grātior fuit. Duīliō concessum est, ut, cum ā cēnā redīret, puerī fūnālia gestantēs et tībīcen eum comitārentur.

43. Paucīs annīs interiectīs, bellum in Āfricam trānslātum est. Hamilcar, Carthāginiēnsium dux, pugnā nāvālī superātur; nam perditīs sexāgintā quattuor nāvibus sē

Carthage.

A view of the ancient harbors, looking southeast from the Byrsa, or Citadel.

1. **tria mīlia**: sc. *hostium*. **Rōmānīs**: dat. case with the adj. *grātior*, 157.

2. **concessum est**: impersonal, 'it was allowed.'

3. **tībīcen**: ordinarily nouns of the third decl. ending in *-n* are neuter, but this word is masc. by signification.

43. 4. **Paucīs annīs interiectīs**: cf. *Interiectō annō*, p. 33, l. 5.

5. **nāvālī**: an adj.; note the derivation.

6. **superātur**: 208. **perditīs . . . nāvibus**: 'after he had lost sixty-four ships.' What construction?

recēpit; Rōmānī vīgintī duās āmīsērunt. Cum in Āfricam vēnissent, Poenōs in plūribus proeliīs vīcērunt, magnam vim hominum cēpērunt, septuāgintā quattuor cīvitātēs in fidem accēpērunt. Tum victī Carthāginiēnsēs pācem ā Rōmānīs petiērunt. Quam cum M. Atīlius Rēgulus, Rōmānōrum dux, dare nōllet nisi dūrissimīs condiciōnibus, Carthāginiēnsēs auxilium petiērunt ā Lacedaemoniīs. Hī Xanthippum mīserunt, quī Rōmānum exercitum magnō proeliō vīcit. Rēgulus ipse captus et in vincula coniectus est.

44. Nōn tamen ubīque fortūna Carthāginiēnsibus fāvit. Cum aliquot proeliīs victī essent, Rēgulum rogāvērunt, ut Rōmam proficīscerētur, et pācem captīvōrumque permūtātiōnem ā Rōmānīs obtinēret. Ille cum Rōmam vēnisset, inductus in senātum dīxit, sē dēsiisse Rōmānum esse ex illā diē, quā in potestātem Poenōrum vēnisset. Tum Rōmānīs

---

1. **vīgintī duās**: sc. *nāvēs*.

2. **vīcērunt**: sc. *Rōmānī*.

3. **in fidem accēpērunt**: 'received under their protection.'

5. **Quam**: see note on *Quod*, p. 6, l. 6. The antecedent is *pācem*. Note the order.

6. **nōllet**: for the derivation see Vocab. under *nōlō*. **nisi dūrissimīs condiciōnibus**: 'except under the harshest conditions.' Abl. of attendant circumstances. See note to p. 31, l. 10.

9. **captus**: sc. *est*.

44. 10. **Carthāginiēnsibus**: 149, *a*.

11. **aliquot**: indeclinable; limits *proeliīs*. **ut . . . proficīscerētur**: cf. *ut . . . mōnstrāret*, p. 8, l. 10.

12. **captīvōrumque**: notice that the *-que* connects *pācem* and *permūtātiōnem*, and that *captīvōrum* belongs in the second of these two members; in other words, that *captīvōrum* depends upon *permūtātiōnem*.

14. **inductus**: expresses time. **sē dēsiisse Rōmānum esse**: because he was a prisoner of war of the Carthaginians.

15. **quā**: sc. *diē*. *Diēs* is fem. gender when it denotes an appointed time, 45. **Rōmānīs**: cf. *coniugī*, p. 16, l. 7.

suāsit, nē pācem cum Carthāginiēnsibus facerent: illōs enim tot cāsibus frāctōs spem nūllam nisi in pāce habēre; tantī nōn esse, ut tot mīlia captīvōrum propter sē ūnum et paucōs, quī ex Rōmānīs captī essent, redderentur. Haec sententia obtinuit. Regressus igitur in Āfricam crūdēlissimīs suppliciīs exstīnctus est.

45. Tandem, C. Lutātiō Catulō, A. Postumiō cōnsulibus, annō bellī Pūnicī vīcēsimō tertiō magnum proelium nāvāle commissum est contrā Lilybaeum, prōmunturium Siciliae. In eō proeliō septuāgintā trēs Carthāginiēnsium nāvēs captae, centum vīgintī quīnque dēmersae, trīgintā duo mīlia hostium capta, tredecim mīlia occīsa sunt. Statim Carthāginiēnsēs pācem petiērunt, eīsque pāx tribūta est. Captīvī Rōmānōrum, quī tenēbantur ā Carthāginiēnsibus, redditī sunt. Poenī Siciliā, Sardiniā, et cēterīs īnsulīs, quae

1. **suāsit**: for the difference in meaning between this word and *persuādeō*, see Vocab. **illōs . . . redderentur**: in indirect discourse depending on a verb of saying implied in *suāsit*. 'Exhorted them . . . (saying).' **illōs**: *i.e. Carthāginiēnsēs*. **enim**: introduces the reason for *nē . . . facerent*.

2. **tot**: limits *cāsibus;* abl. of means. *tot* is indeclinable; cf. *aliquot*, p. 36, l. 11. **tantī nōn esse**: 'it was not worth while'; for the case of *tantī* see 142.

3. **ut . . . redderentur**: the logical subject of *esse*. **propter**: governs *paucōs* as well as *sē*.

4. **ex Rōmānīs**: cf. p. 28, l. 11.

5. **obtinuit**: 'prevailed.'

45. 7. **C. Lutātiō Catulō, A. Postumiō cōnsulibus**: see note on *C. Duīliō et Cn. Cornēliō Asinā cōnsulibus*, p. 34, l. 11.

8. **annō . . . tertiō**: *i.e.* 241 B.C. The adjective **Pūnicī** is derived from the noun, *Poenī*.

9. **contrā**: 'opposite,' 'just off.' **Lilybaeum**: see Vocab.

11. **captae . . . dēmersae . . . capta**: sc. *sunt* with each.

14. **Captīvī**: derivation? See 110, *b* and 195, *a*.

15. **Siciliā, Sardiniā, et cēterīs īnsulīs**: abl. of separation with *dēcessērunt*, 158 and Note.

inter Italiam Āfricamque iacent, dēcessērunt, omnemque Hispāniam, quae citrā Ibērum est, Rōmānīs permīsērunt.

Conflict with the Gauls; the battle at Clusium.

46. Annō quīngentēsimō ūndētrīcēsimō ingentēs Gallōrum cōpiae Alpēs trānsiērunt. Sed prō Rōmānīs tōta Italia cōnsēnsit; trāditumque est octingenta mīlia hominum ad id bellum parāta esse. Rēs prōsperē gesta est apud Clūsium; quadrāgintā mīlia hominum interfecta sunt. Aliquot annīs post pugnātum est contrā Gallōs in agrō Īnsubrum, fīnītumque est bellum M. Claudiō Mārcellō, Cn. Cornēliō Scīpiōne cōnsulibus. Tum Mārcellus rēgem Gallōrum, Viridomarum, manū suā occīdit et triumphāns spolia Gallī, stīpitī imposita, umerīs suīs vexit.

The Second Punic War begun; the Romans are defeated at the Trebia; at Lake Trasimenus; at Cannae.

47. Paulō post Pūnicum bellum renovātum est per Hannibalem, Carthāginiēnsium ducem, quem pater Hamilcar novem annōs nātum ārīs admōverat, ut odium perenne in

---

2. **Ibērum**: see Vocab.

46. 3. **Annō . . . ūndētrīcēsimō**: *i.e.* 225 B.C. What is the literal meaning of *ūndētrīcēsimō*?

4. **prō**: 'in the support of.'

6. **Rēs prōsperē gesta est**: 'a successful engagement was fought.'

7. **apud**: see note on *apud*, p. 34, l. 5.

8. **Aliquot annīs post**: cf. *duōbus annīs post*, p. 29, l. 13. **pugnātum est**: passive and impersonal, 'a battle was fought,' 124.

11. **Viridomarum**: in apposition with *rēgem*.

12. **Gallī**: *i.e.* of Viridomarus, the Gallic king. **stīpitī**: dat. governed by *in-* in composition, 149, *b*.

47. 13. **Paulō post**: in 218 B.C. **per**: '*through* the action of.'

15. **novem annōs**: acc. expressing extent or duration of time, 130. **nātum**: modifies *quem*, i.e. *Hannibalem*. The whole expression *novem annōs nātum* means 'when he was nine years old.' **ārīs**: dat. because of the influence of the prep. *ad-* in composition, 149, *b*.

Rōmānōs iūrāret. Hīc annum agēns vīcēsimum aetātis Saguntum, Hispāniae cīvitātem, Rōmānīs amīcam, oppugnāre aggressus est. Huic Rōmānī per lēgātōs dēnūntiāvērunt, ut bellō abstinēret. Quī cum lēgātōs admittere nōllet, Rōmānī Carthāginem mīsērunt, ut mandārētur Hannibalī, nē bellum contrā sociōs populī Rōmānī gereret. Dūra

Carthage.

The Byrsa, or Citadel, seen from the sea.

The direct object, *quem*, feels the force of the action of the simple verb only, *-mōverat*. **perenne**: 'eternal.' Notice the derivation. **in Rōmānōs**: to be taken with *odium*.

1. **annum agēns vīcēsimum aetātis**: 'when in his twentieth year.'
2. **Rōmānīs**: 157. **oppugnāre**: depends upon *aggressus est*.
3. **aggressus est**: 'started to.' **Huic**: *i.e. Hannibalī*.
4. **cum**: 'since.' **nōllet**: see note to p. 36, l. 6.
5. **ut mandārētur**: depends upon an idea of commanding or demanding implied in *mīsērunt*, 260. Cf. *ut abstinēret*, l. 4.
6. **nē . . . gereret**: this clause is the logical subject of *mandārētur*, just as *ut . . . abstinēret* (l. 4) is the object of *dēnūntiāvērunt*. **sociōs**: the city of Saguntum had formed an alliance with the Romans.

respōnsa ā Carthāginiēnsibus reddita. Saguntīnīs intereā famē victīs, Rōmānī Carthāginiēnsibus bellum indīxērunt.

48. Hannibal, frātre Hasdrubale in Hispāniā relīctō, Pȳrēnaeōs et Alpēs trānsiit. Trāditur in Italiam octōgintā mīlia peditum, et vīgintī mīlia equitum, septem et trīgintā elephantōs addūxisse. Intereā multī Ligurēs et Gallī Hannibalī sē coniūnxērunt. Prīmus eī occurrit P. Cornēlius Scīpiō, quī, proeliō ad Tīcīnum commissō, superātus est, et, vulnere acceptō, in castra rediit. Tum Semprōnius Longus cōnflīxit ad Trebiam amnem. Is quoque vincitur. Multī populī sē Hannibalī dēdidērunt. Inde in Etrūriam prōgressus Flāminium cōnsulem ad Trasumēnum lacum superat. Ipse Flāminius interēmptus, Rōmānōrum vīgintī quīnque mīlia caesa sunt.

49. Quīngentēsimō et duodēquadrāgēsimō annō post urbem conditam L. Aemilius Paulus et P. Terentius Varrō contrā Hannibalem mittuntur. Quamquam intellēctum erat, Han-

---

1. **reddita**: sc. *sunt*.

2. **Carthāginiēnsibus**: cf. *Albānīs*, p. 12, l. 6.

48. 3. **frātre . . . relīctō**: (Hannibal) 'having left his brother.' How literally?

5. **septem et trīgintā**: in the case of compound numerals, if the smaller number precede, *et* is used to connect them. When the smaller number follows, the conjunction is unnecessary. Cf. *vīgintī quīnque* and *trīgintā duo*, p. 37, l. 11.

7. **Hannibalī sē coniūnxērunt**: 'joined Hannibal,' 148.

8. **Tīcīnum . . . Trebiam . . . Trasumēnum lacum**: see Vocab.

9. **vulnere acceptō**: expresses cause.

11. **vincitur**: see note on *superātur*, p. 35, l. 6. **populī**: 'tribes,' 'states.'

13. **interēmptus**: sc. *est*.

49. 15. **Quīngentēsimō . . . conditam**: *i.e.* 216 B.C.

17. **mittuntur**: cf. *vincitur*, l. 11 above.

nibalem nōn aliter vincī posse quam morā, Varrō tamen morae impatiēns apud vīcum, quī Cannae appellātur, in Āpuliā pugnāvit; ambō cōnsulēs victī, Paulus interēmptus est. In eā pugnā cōnsulārēs aut praetōriī vīgintī, senātōrēs trīgintā captī aut occīsī; mīlitum quadrāgintā mīlia; equitum tria mīlia et quīngentī periērunt. In hīs tantīs malīs nēmō tamen pācis mentiōnem facere dignātus est. Servī, quod numquam ante factum, manūmissī et mīlitēs factī sunt.

Operations in Sicily and in Spain.

50. Post eam pugnam multae Italiae cīvitātēs, quae Rōmānīs pāruerant, sē ad Hannibalem trānstulērunt. Hannibal Rōmānīs obtulit, ut captīvōs redimerent; respōnsumque est ā senātū, eōs cīvēs nōn esse necessāriōs, quī armātī capī potuissent. Hōs omnēs ille posteā variīs suppliciīs interfēcit, et trēs modiōs aureōrum ānulōrum Carthāginem mīsit,

---

1. **quam**: 'than,' with *aliter*. **morā**: *i.e.* by continually putting off a decisive engagement, and so wearing out the enemy.

2. **morae**: gen. case with the adjective *impatiēns*. **apud**: see note on *apud*, p. 34, l. 5. **Cannae**: see note on *Syrācūsārum*, p. 34, l. 8.

3. **victī**: sc. *sunt*.

4. **cōnsulārēs . . . praetōriī**: men who had been consuls, or praetors, respectively.

5. **captī . . . occīsī**: sc. *sunt*.

8. **quod**: has for its antecedent the thought contained in the main sentence, *Servī . . . manumissī* (*sunt*) *et mīlitēs factī sunt*. Trans. 'a thing which,' etc. **ante**: adverb. **factum**: sc. *erat*. **manūmissī**: derivation? See 115.

50. 9. **Post eam pugnam**: *i.e.* the battle at Cannae.

10. **pāruerant**: notice the tense.

11. **Rōmānīs**: 149, *b*.

12. **eōs cīvēs . . . esse**: depends upon *respōnsum est*. **armātī**: pf. pass. part., 276 and Note.

13. **Hōs omnēs**: *i.e. captīvōs*. **ille**: *Hannibal*.

14. **Carthāginem**: why is the preposition omitted?

quōs manibus equitum Rōmānōrum, senātōrum, et mīlitum dētrāxerat. Intereā in Hispāniā frāter Hannibalis, Hasdrubal, quī ibi remānserat cum magnō exercitū, ā duōbus Scīpiōnibus vincitur, perditque in pugnā trīgintā quīnque mīlia hominum.

51. Annō quārtō postquam Hannibal in Italiam vēnerat, M. Claudius Mārcellus cōnsul apud Nōlam, cīvitātem Campāniae, contrā Hannibalem bene pugnāvit. Illō tempore Philippus, Dēmētrī fīlius, rēx Macedoniae, ad Hannibalem lēgātōs mittit, eīque auxilia contrā Rōmānōs pollicētur. Quī lēgātī cum ā Rōmānīs captī essent, M. Valerius Laevīnus cum nāvibus missus est, quī rēgem impedīret, quō minus cōpiās in Italiam trāiceret. Īdem in Macedoniam penetrāns rēgem Philippum vīcit.

52. In Siciliā quoque rēs prōsperē gesta est. Mārcellus magnam huius īnsulae partem cēpit, quam Poenī occupāverant; Syrācūsās, nōbilissimam urbem, expugnāvit, et

---

1. **manibus**: see note on *Advenientī*, p. 14, l. 4.

3. **duōbus Scīpiōnibus**: *P. Cornēlius Scīpiō* and *Cn. Cornēlius Scīpiō*.

51. 7. **apud Nōlam**: what would *Nōlae* mean? Cf. note on *apud*, p. 34, l. 5.

8. **bene**: 'well,' *i.e.* 'successfully.'

9. **Macedoniae**: see Map opp. p. 115.

10. **eīque**: what does *-que* connect?

12. **quī . . . impedīret**: cf. *quī . . . peteret*, p. 32, l. 10. **quō minus . . . trāiceret**: 'from transporting,' 262.

13. **Īdem**: sc. *ille*, lit. 'he likewise,' 'he also.'

52. 15. **quoque**: *i.e.* as well as in Macedonia. **rēs gesta est**: cf. p. 38, l. 6.

16. **cēpit**: 'took,' in the sense of 'captured.' **occupāverant**: note the tense.

17. **Syrācūsās**: see note on *Syrācūsārum*, p. 34, l. 8. **nōbilissimam**: 'famous.' The Latin superlative is sometimes best trans. by an Eng. positive. **expugnāvit**: 'took by storm.' Note the derivation.

ingentem inde praedam Rōmam mīsit. Laevīnus in Macedoniā cum Philippō et multīs Graeciae populīs amīcitiam fēcit; et in Siciliam profectus Hannōnem, Poenōrum ducem, apud Agrigentum cēpit; quadrāgintā cīvitātēs in dēditiōnem accēpit, vīgintī sex expugnāvit. Ita omnī Siciliā receptā, cum ingentī glōriā Rōmam regressus est.

53. Intereā in Hispāniam, ubi duo Scīpiōnēs ab Hasdrubale interfectī erant, missus est P. Cornēlius Scīpiō, vir Rōmānōrum omnium ferē prīmus. Hīc, puer duodēvīgintī

Carthage.

Excavations on the side of the Byrsa, or Citadel. The cathedral is seen above.

1. **inde**: *i.e.* from Syracuse.

2. **cum**: governs *populīs* as well as *Philippō*.

6. **regressus est**: what is the force of *re-*?

53. 7. **duo Scīpiōnēs**: see note on *duōbus Scīpiōnibus*, p. 42, l. 3. **ab Hasdrubale**: why is the preposition necessary? See 160.

9. **Hīc, puer duodēvīgintī annōrum**: 'he, when a boy of eighteen years.' *annōrum* is gen. of measure, 141.

annōrum, in pugnā ad Tīcīnum, patrem singulārī virtūte servāvit. Deinde post clādem Cannēnsem multōs nōbilissimōrum iuvenum Italiam dēserere cupientium, auctōritāte suā ab hōc cōnsiliō dēterruit. Vīgintī quattuor annōrum iuvenis in Hispāniam missus, diē quā vēnit Carthāginem Novam cēpit, in quā omne aurum et argentum et bellī apparātum Poenī habēbant, nōbilissimōs quoque obsidēs, quōs ab Hispānīs accēperant. Hōs obsidēs parentibus reddidit. Quā rē omnēs ferē Hispāniae cīvitātēs ad eum ūnō animō trānsiērunt.

Hasdrubal defeated and killed at Sena; the battle of Zama.

54. Ab eō inde tempore rēs Rōmānōrum in diēs laetiōrēs factae sunt. Hasdrubal ā frātre ex Hispāniā in Italiam ēvocātus, apud Sēnam, Umbriae cīvitātem, in īnsidiās incidit, et strēnuē pugnāns occīsus est. Plūrimae autem cīvitātēs, quae in Bruttiīs ab Hannibale tenēbantur, Rōmānīs sē trādidērunt.

55. Annō decimō quārtō postquam in Italiam Hannibal vēnerat, Scīpiō cōnsul creātus, et in Āfricam missus est.

---

1. **in pugnā ad Tīcīnum**: mentioned p. 40, l. 7, fol.
2. **Cannēnsem**: 'of Cannae.'
3. **cupientium**: trans. by a rel. clause. Note the tense.
4. **ab hōc cōnsiliō**: *i.e. ut Italiam dēsererent.* **Vīgintī quattuor annōrum iuvenis**: cf. *Hīc puer duodēvīgintī annōrum*, p. 43, l. 9.
5. **diē**: abl. of time. **quā**: see note on *quā*, p. 36, l. 15.
9. **Quā rē**: *i.e.* because *obsidēs parentibus reddidit.* **ad eum . . . trānsiērunt**: *i.e.* allied themselves with.

54. 11. **Ab eō inde tempore**: 'from that time on' (*inde*). **in diēs**: 'day by day.' **laetiōrēs**: notice the degree of comparison.

12. **factae sunt**: 'became.' **frātre**: *i.e.* Hannibal.
15. **Bruttiīs**: the 'country of the Bruttii,' a district in southern Italy.
16. **trādidērunt**: derivation?

55. 17. **Annō . . . vēnerat**: *i.e.* 203 B.C.
18. **creātus**: sc. *est.*

Ibi contrā Hannōnem, ducem Carthāginiēnsium, prōsperē pugnat, tōtumque eius exercitum dēlet. Secundō proeliō ūndecim mīlia hominum occīdit, et castra cēpit cum quattuor mīlibus et quīngentīs mīlitibus. Syphācem, Numidiae rēgem, quī sē cum Poenīs coniūnxerat, cēpit, eumque cum nōbilissimīs Numidīs et īnfīnītīs spoliīs Rōmam mīsit. Quā rē audītā, omnis ferē Italia Hannibalem dēserit. Ipse ā Carthāginiēnsibus in Āfricam redīre iubētur. Ita annō decimō septimō Italia ab Hannibale līberāta est.

56. Post plūrēs pugnās et pācem plūs semel frūstrā tentātam, pugna ad Zamam committitur, in quā perītissimī ducēs cōpiās suās ad bellum ēdūcēbant. Scīpiō victor recēdit; Hannibal cum paucīs equitibus ēvādit. Post hōc proelium pāx cum Carthāginiēnsibus facta est. Scīpiō, cum Rōmam rediisset, ingentī glōriā triumphāvit, atque Āfricānus appellātus est. Sīc fīnem accēpit secundum Pūnicum bellum post annum ūndēvīcēsimum quam coeperat.

---

2. **pugnat . . . dēlet**: cf. *superātur*, p. 35, l. 6.

3. **ūndecim**: derivation. Note the quantity.

6. **Quā rē audītā**: 'when this was heard,' or, better, 'on hearing this.'

8. **ā Carthāginiēnsibus**: with *iubētur*. **annō decimō septimō**: *i.e.* 201 B.C.

9. **ab Hannibale līberāta est**: 'was freed from Hannibal.' See 158 and Note.

56. 10. **plūs semel**: 'more *than* once,' the regular comparative adverb, *quam*, being omitted, 162.

11. **ad Zamam**: meaning of *ad*? 133. This battle was fought in 202 B.C.

12. **victor**: predicate nom.

15. **Āfricānus appellātus est**: because of his decisive victories in Africa.

16. **Sīc**: in the manner above described. **fīnem accēpit**: the subject is *bellum*. Lit. 'received an end,' and so, 'was ended.'

17. **post . . . quam**: separated, as often in expressions of definite

Wars with Philip; with Antiochus; with Perseus.

57. Fīnītō Pūnicō bellō, secūtum est Macedonicum contrā Philippum rēgem. Superātus est rēx ā T. Quīnctiō Flāminīnō apud Cynoscephalās, pāxque eī data est hīs lēgibus: nē Graeciae cīvitātibus, quās Rōmānī contrā eum dēfenderant, bellum īnferret; ut captīvōs et trānsfugās redderet; quīnquāgintā sōlum nāvēs habēret; reliquās Rōmānīs daret; mīlle talenta praestāret, et obsidem daret fīlium Dēmētrium. T. Quīnctius etiam Lacedaemoniīs intulit bellum, et ducem eōrum Nābidem vīcit.

58. Fīnītō bellō Macedonicō, secūtum est bellum Syriacum contrā Antiochum rēgem, cum quō Hannibal sē iūnxerat. Missus est contrā eum L. Cornēlius Scīpiō cōnsul, cui frāter eius Scīpiō Āfricānus lēgātus est additus. Hannibal nāvālī proeliō victus, Antiochus autem ad Magnēsiam,

---

time, when the plup. tense may occur, 234, *a*. Trans. as if the Latin read *annō ūndēvīcēsimō postquam coeperat.*

57. 1. **Fīnītō Pūnicō bellō**: *i.e.* the Second Punic War. **Macedonicum**: sc. *bellum*.

3. **Cynoscephalās**: hills in eastern Thessaly. **hīs lēgibus**: 'on these terms,' 166, *a*. Following *lēgibus* we have six substantive clauses in apposition with *lēgibus: nē . . . īnferret, ut . . . redderet, (ut) . . . habēret, (ut) . . . daret; (ut) . . . praestāret, et . . . daret*, 257. For the construction, cf. *eā condiciōne ut . . . obtinēret*, p. 32, l. 10.

4. **Graeciae**: gen. modifying *cīvitātibus*.

5. **trānsfugās**: derivation?

6. **sōlum**: 'only.' Modifies *quīnquāgintā*. **reliquās**: sc. *nāvēs* from the preceding sentence.

7. **talenta**: a Greek standard of value. See Vocab.

8. **Lacedaemoniīs intulit bellum**: cf. l. 5 above.

58. 10. **Fīnītō bellō Macedonicō**: cf. *Fīnītō Pūnicō bellō* l. 1, above.

13. **lēgātus**: predicate nom.

14. **victus**: sc. *est*.

Asiae cīvitātem, ā Cornēliō Scīpiōne cōnsule ingentī proeliō fūsus est. Tum rēx Antiochus pācem petit. Data est eī hāc lēge, ut ex Eurōpā et Asiā recēderet, atque intrā Taurum sē continēret, decem mīlia talentōrum et vīgintī obsidēs praebēret, Hannibalem, concitōrem bellī, dēderet. Scīpiō Rōmam rediit, et ingentī glōriā triumphāvit. Nōmen et ipse, ad imitātiōnem frātris, Asiāticī accēpit.

59. Philippō, rēge Macedoniae, mortuō, fīlius eius Perseus rebellāvit, ingentibus cōpiīs parātīs. Dux Rōmānōrum, P. Licinius cōnsul, contrā eum missus, gravī proeliō ā rēge victus est. Rēx tamen pācem petēbat. Cui Rōmānī eam praestāre nōluērunt, nisi hīs condiciōnibus, ut sē et suōs Rōmānīs dēderet. Mox L. Aemilius Paulus cōnsul rēgem ad Pydnam superāvit, et vīgintī mīlia peditum eius occīdit. Equitātus cum rēge fūgit. Urbēs Macedoniae omnēs, quās rēx tenuerat, Rōmānīs sē dēdidērunt. Ipse Perseus ab

---

2. **Data est**: sc. *pāx*.

3. **hāc lēge**: see note on *lēgibus*, p. 46, l. 3. **ut . . . recēderet, atque . . . continēret, praebēret, . . . dēderet**: . . . see note on *lēgibus*, p. 46, l. 3. **Asiā**: *i.e.* from Asia Minor. See Vocab. **intrā Taurum**: 'within the limits of the Taurus mountains.'

4. **et**: 'also,' *i.e.* as well as his brother.

7. **ad imitātiōnem**: 'in imitation of.' **Asiāticī**: limits *nōmen*. Why did he select *Asiāticus* as a *nomen?*

59. 8. **Philippō . . . mortuō**: 'after the death of Philip.'

9. **rebellāvit**: derivation? **ingentibus . . . parātīs**: perhaps best translated by changing to the active construction, 'having prepared,' etc. **cōpiīs**: on the difference of meaning between the singular and plural, see Vocab.

10. **missus**: perf. pass. part.

12. **nisi hīs condiciōnibus, ut . . . dēderet**: cf. *hāc lēge ut . . . recēderet*, l. 3, above.

14. **Pydnam**: see Vocab. **eius**: whose?

16. **tenuerat**: note the tense. **dēdidērunt**: is this from the same word as *dēderet*, l. 13? **Ipse**: 'himself,' the intensive.

amīcīs dēsertus in Paulī potestātem vēnit. Hīc, multīs etiam aliīs rēbus gestīs, cum ingentī pompā Rōmam rediit in nāve Perseī, inūsitātae magnitūdinis; nam sēdecim rēmōrum ōrdinēs habuisse dīcitur. Triumphāvit magnificentissimē in currū aureō, duōbus fīliīs utrōque latere astantibus. Ante currum inter captīvōs duo rēgis fīliī et ipse Perseus ductī sunt.

The Third Punic War; Carthage is destroyed.

60. Tertium deinde bellum contrā Carthāginem susceptum est sescentēsimō et alterō annō ab urbe conditā, annō quīnquāgēsimō prīmō postquam secundum bellum Pūnicum trānsāctum erat. L. Mārcius Cēnsōrīnus et M'. Mānīlius cōnsulēs in Africam trāiēcērunt, et oppugnāvērunt Carthāginem. Multa ibi praeclārē gesta sunt per Scīpiōnem, Scīpiōnis Āfricānī nepōtem, quī tribūnus in Āfricā mīlitābat. Huius apud omnēs ingēns metus et reverentia erat, neque

---

1. **in**: governs *potestātem*. A modifying genitive, like an adjective, is thus very often placed between a preposition and its noun.

2. **Perseī**: gen. case, from *Perseus*. **magnitūdinis**: gen. of quality, 140.

4. **rēmōrum ōrdinēs**: 'banks of oars.' Ordinarily ancient vessels had only three or four banks of oars; hence the word *inūsitātae*, applied to this vessel of Perseus.

5. **duōbus fīliīs . . . astantibus**: here the abl. abs. expresses attendant circumstances. We may translate, 'with his two sons standing by.' **utrōque . . . latere**: '*on* each side;' cf. 175.

60. 9. **sescentēsimō . . . conditā**: *i.e.* 149 B.C. The war was forced on Carthage.

12. **trāiēcērunt**: transitive or intransitive?

13. **ibi**: where? **Scīpiōnis Āfricānī**: see p. 45, l. 12, fol.

15. **Huius**: *i.e. Scīpiōnis*, limits *metus et reverentia*, 137. **apud omnēs**: 'with all.' **ingēns**: pred. adj. **neque**: 'and . . . not.' The Latin regularly unites thus in one word the connective and a negative.

quidquam magis Carthāginiēnsium ducēs vītābant, quam contrā eum proelium committere.

61. Cum iam magnum esset Scīpiōnis nōmen, tertiō annō postquam Rōmānī in Āfricam trāiēcerant, cōnsul est creātus, et contrā Carthāginem missus. Is hanc urbem ā cīvibus ācerrimē dēfēnsam cēpit ac dīruit. Ingēns ibi praeda facta, plūrimaque inventa sunt, quae multārum cīvitātum excidiīs

Carthage.
A Roman Aqueduct.

1. **quidquam**: direct object of *vītābant*. **quam**: 'than,' with *magis*.
2. **committere**: depends upon *vītābant* understood.

61. 3. **magnum**: pred. adj. with *nōmen*, the subject of *esset*. *Magnum* is emphasized by its position.

5. **missus**: sc. *est*. **urbem . . . cēpit**: in 146 B.C.
6. **ibi**: 'where?' **facta**: sc. *est*.
7. **plūrima**: lit. 'very many things'; better, 'very many objects.' **excidiīs**: pl., referring to the destruction of different cities.

Carthāgō collēgerat. Haec omnia Scīpiō cīvitātibus Italiae, Siciliae, Āfricae reddidit, quae sua recognōscēbant. Ita Carthāgō septingentēsimō annō postquam condita erat, dēlēta est. Scīpiō nōmen Āfricānī iūniōris accēpit.

Mummius destroys Corinth; three great triumphs celebrated.

62. Interim in Macedoniā quīdam Pseudophilippus arma mōvit, et P. Iuventium, Rōmānōrum ducem, ad interneciōnem vīcit. Post eum Q. Caecilius Metellus dux ā Rōmānīs contrā Pseudophilippum missus est, et, vīgintī quīnque mīlibus ex mīlitibus eius occīsīs, Macedoniam recēpit; ipsum etiam Pseudophilippum in potestātem suam redēgit. Corinthiīs quoque bellum indictum est, nōbilissimae Graeciae cīvitātī, propter iniūriam Rōmānīs lēgātīs illātam. Hanc Mummius cōnsul cēpit ac dīruit. Trēs igitur Rōmae simul celeberrimī triumphī fuērunt; Scīpiōnis ex Āfricā, ante cuius currum ductus est Hasdrubal; Metellī ex Macedoniā, cuius currum praecessit Andriscus, quī et Pseudophi-

---

2. **quae**: the antecedent is *cīvitātibus*. **sua recognōscēbant**: 'recognized' or 'identified as their own.'

4. **iūniōris**: 'the younger,' in distinction from his adoptive grandfather, who also bore the cognomen of *Āfricānus;* see p. 45, l. 15.

62. 5. **Pseudophilippus**: *i.e.* one who falsely (*Pseudo-*) assumed the name of Philippus. This was a certain Andriscus (see below, l. 16), who pretended to be a son of King Perseus. **arma mōvit**: 'began hostilities.'

6. **ad interneciōnem**: 'up to the point of annihilation.'

8. **vīgintī quīnque mīlibus . . . occīsīs**: expresses time.

9. **ex mīlitibus eius**: see note on *ex Rōmānīs*, p. 28, l. 11.

12. **Rōmānīs lēgātīs**: 149, *b*. **illātam**: trans. by a rel. clause.

13. **Hanc**: sc. *cīvitātem*.

14. **fuērunt**: 'there were'; *trēs triumphī* is the predicate. See note on *triumphāns*, p. 15, l. 3 above. **Scīpiōnis . . . Metellī . . . Mummī**: sc. *triumphus fuit*.

16. **praecessit**: derivation? **et**: 'also.'

lippus dīcitur; Mummī ex Corinthō, ante quem signa aēnea et pīctae tabulae et alia urbis clārissimae ōrnāmenta praelāta sunt.

Wars in Spain.

63. Annō sescentēsimō decimō post urbem conditam Viriāthus in Lūsītāniā bellum contrā Rōmānōs excitāvit. Pāstor prīmō fuit, mox latrōnum dux; postrēmō tantōs ad bellum populōs concitāvit, ut vindex lībertātis Hispāniae exīstimārētur. Dēnique ā suīs interfectus est. Cum interfectōrēs eius praemium ā Caepiōne cōnsule peterent, respōnsum est, numquam Rōmānīs placuisse, imperātōrem ā mīlitibus suīs interficī.

64. Deinde bellum exortum est cum Numantīnīs, cīvitāte Hispāniae. Victus ab hīs Q. Pompeius, et post eum C. Hostīlius Mancīnus cōnsul, quī pācem cum eīs fēcit īnfāmem, quam populus et senātus iussit īnfringī, atque ipsum Mancīnum hostibus trādī. Tum P. Scīpiō Āfricānus in

1. **signa**: 'statues.'

2. **alia**: limits *ōrnāmenta*. **urbis clārissimae**: *i.e.* Corinth.

63. 4. **Annō . . . conditam**: *i.e.* 144 B.C.

6. **prīmō**: 'at first.'

7. **ut . . . exīstimārētur**: 232. **vindex**: pred. noun; sc. *ille* = *Viriāthus*. *Lībertātis* depends upon *vindex*, and *Hispāniae* in turn upon *lībertātis*.

8. **interfectōrēs**: derived from the verb, *interficiō* (cf. *interfectus est*). The suffix *-tor* denotes the agent or doer, 108, *a*.

10. **placuisse**: see note on *hunc sonum . . . esse*, p. 4, l. 5. **imperātōrem . . . interficī**: the logical subject of *placuisse*. On *imperātōrem* see note on *interfectōrēs*, l. 8.

64. 12. **cīvitāte**: in apposition with the name of the city, *Numantiā*, implied in *Numantīnīs*. Cf. *cīvitātī*, p. 50, l. 12.

13. **Victus**: sc. *est*.

14. **eīs**: *i.e.* whom?

15. **īnfringī . . . trādī**: for the construction, see note to *iussit*, p. 6, l. 2. *Quam* is the subject of the first infinitive, *Mancīnum* of the second.

Hispāniam missus est. Is prīmum mīlitem ignāvum et corruptum corrēxit; tum multās Hispāniae cīvitātēs partim bellō cēpit, partim in dēditiōnem accēpit. Postrēmō ipsam Numantiam famē ad dēditiōnem coēgit, urbemque ēvertit; reliquam prōvinciam in fidem accēpit.

War with Jugurtha.

65. P. Scīpiōne Nāsīcā et L. Calpurniō Bēstiā cōnsulibus, Iugurthae, Numidārum rēgī, bellum illātum est, quod Adherbalem et Hiempsalem, Micipsae fīliōs, patruēlēs suōs, interēmisset. Missus adversus eum cōnsul Calpurnius Bēstia corruptus rēgis pecūniā pācem cum eō flāgitiōsissimam fēcit, quae ā senātū improbāta est. Dēnique Q. Caecilius Metellus cōnsul Iugurtham variīs proeliīs vīcit, elephantōs eius occīdit vel cēpit, multās cīvitātēs ipsīus in dēditiōnem accēpit. Eī successit C. Marius, quī bellō terminum posuit, ipsumque Iugurtham cēpit. Ante currum triumphantis Marī Iugurtha cum duōbus fīliīs ductus est vinctus, et mox iussū cōnsulis in carcere strangulātus.

---

1. **mīlitem**: 'soldiery,' lit. 'soldier.'

2. **partim . . . partim**: 'partly,' with the verbs, *cēpit*, *accēpit*.

4. **famē**: abl. of means with *coēgit*. **coēgit**: derivation? See Vocab.

5. **reliquam**: 'the rest of the.'

65. 7. **Iugurthae**: cf. *lēgātīs*, p. 50, l. 12.

9. **interēmisset**: 'because, *according to the charge brought against him*, he had killed.' See note on *quod . . . exhaurīrētur*, p. 23, l. 2. **Missus . . . corruptus**: with *fēcit*. Trans. as if coördinate.

13. **vel**: *i.e.* he killed some elephants and captured the rest.

15. **triumphantis**: 'when he was celebrating his triumph.'

16. **cum duōbus fīliīs**: cf. *cum multīs Troiānīs*, p. 2, l. 5. **vinctus**: 'in chains,' lit. 'bound.'

17. **strangulātus**: sc. *est*.

The Cimbri and Teutones defeated by C. Marius.

66. Dum bellum in Numidiā contrā Iugurtham geritur, Cimbrī et Teutonēs aliaeque Germānōrum et Gallōrum gentēs Italiae minābantur, plūrēsque Rōmānōrum exercitūs fūdērunt. Ingēns fuit Rōmae timor, nē iterum Gallī urbem occupārent. Ergō Marius cōnsul creātus eīque bellum contrā Cimbrōs et Teutonēs dēcrētum est; bellōque prōtrāctō, tertius eī et quārtus cōnsulātus dēlātus est. In duōbus proeliīs cum Cimbrīs ducenta mīlia hostium cecīdit, octōgintā mīlia cēpit, eōrumque rēgem Teutobodum; propter quod meritum absēns quīntum cōnsul creātus est. Intereā Cimbrī et Teutonēs, quōrum cōpia adhūc īnfīnīta erat, in Italiam trānsiērunt. Iterum ā C. Mariō et Q. Catulō contrā eōs dīmicātum est ad Vērōnam. Centum et quadrā-

---

66. 1. **Dum . . . geritur**: 'while the war was being carried on.' Cf. *dum . . . oppugnat*, p. 18, l. 5.

3. **Italiae**: 149, *a*. **plūrēs**: 'several.'

4. **Ingēns**: note the emphatic position. **nē . . . occupārent**: depends upon (*fuit*) *timor*, 264. **iterum**: read again chap. 32.

5. **creātus**: sc. *est*. **eīque bellum . . . dēcrētum est**: 'war was intrusted to him by a decree (of the senate).'

7. **tertius**: sc. *cōnsulātus*.

8. **cecīdit**: what tells us that this form is the perfect tense of *caedō* and not of *cadō*?

9. **mīlia**: what word is to be supplied? **propter quod meritum**: 'and on account of this service,' *i.e.* his successes described in the preceding sentence. Note the trans. of *quod*.

10. **absēns**: 'though absent.' The part. contains a concessive idea. **quīntum**: 'for the fifth time.'

11. **adhūc**: 'still,' *i.e.* even after their losses in battle with Marius. **īnfīnīta**: derivation?

12. **trānsiērunt**: *i.e. Alpēs*. **ā C. Mariō et Q. Catulō . . . dīmicātum est**: 'C. Marius and Q. Catulus fought.' Cf. *pugnātum est*, p. 38, l. 8.

13. **ad**: cf. note on *ad*, p. 31, l. 15.

gintā mīlia aut in pugnā aut in fugā caesa sunt; sexāgintā mīlia capta. Tria et trīgintā Cimbrīs signa sublāta sunt.

The Social wars.

67. Sescentēsimō sexāgēsimō quārtō annō ab urbe conditā in Italiā gravissimum bellum exārsit. Nam Pīcentēs, Mārsī, Paelignīque, quī multōs annōs populō Rōmānō oboedierant, aequa cum illīs iūra sibi darī postulābant. Perniciōsum admodum hōc bellum fuit. P. Rutīlius cōnsul in eō occīsus est; plūrēs exercitūs fūsī fugātīque. Tandem L. Cornēlius Sulla cum alia ēgregiē gessit, tum Cluentium, hostium ducem, cum magnīs cōpiīs fūdit. Per quadriennium cum gravī utrīusque partis calamitāte hōc bellum trāctum est. Quīntō dēmum annō L. Cornēlius Sulla eī imposuit fīnem. Rōmānī tamen, id quod prius negāverant, iūs cīvitātis, bellō fīnītō, sociīs tribuērunt.

---

2. **capta**: sc. *sunt*.

67. 3. **Sescentēsimō . . . conditā**: *i.e.* 90 B.C.

4. **bellum**: the Social War (so named from *Sociī*, 'the allies' of Rome, who revolted). Also called 'Marsic' and 'Italic' (p. 56, l. 13).

5. **multōs annōs**: 130.

6. **cum illīs**: *i.e. cum Rōmānīs*. **iūra**: 'rights' of Roman citizenship.

7. **in eō**: sc. *bellō*.

8. **fūsī fugātīque**: sc. *sunt*.

9. **cum . . . tum**: 'not only . . . but also.'

10. **cōpiīs**: cf. the plural of *cōpiīs* with the singular, *cōpia*, p. 53, l. 11. **quadriennium**: derivation?

12. **eī**: *i.e. bellō*.

13. **id**: in apposition with the phrase *iūs cīvitātis*, and at the same time antecedent of *quod*. **prius**: 'formerly.' **negāverant**: note the tense.

14. **sociīs**: indirect object of *tribuērunt*.

The civil war between Marius and Sulla.

68. Annō urbis conditae sescentēsimō sexāgēsimō sextō prīmum Rōmae bellum cīvīle exortum est; eōdem annō etiam Mithridāticum. Causam bellō cīvīlī C. Marius dedit. Nam cum Sullae bellum adversus Mithridātem rēgem Pontī dēcrētum esset, Marius eī hunc honōrem ēripere cōnātus est. Sed Sulla, quī adhūc cum legiōnibus suīs in Italiā morābātur, cum exercitū Rōmam vēnit, et adversāriōs cum interfēcit, tum fugāvit. Tum rēbus Rōmae utcumque compositīs, in Asiam profectus est, plūribusque proeliīs Mithridātem coēgit ut pācem ā Rōmānīs peteret, et Asiā, quam invāserat, relīctā, rēgnī suī fīnibus contentus esset.

---

68. 1. **Annō . . . sextō**: *i.e.* 88 B.C. Notice the three modes of expression, *urbis conditae* here, *ab urbe conditā* on p. 54, l. 3, *post urbem conditam*, p. 40, l. 15.

2. **prīmum**: is an adj., limiting *bellum*.

3. **Mithridāticum**: sc. *bellum exortum est*. **bellō cīvīlī**: '*for* the civil war.'

4. **Sullae**: see note on *eīque*, p. 53, l. 5.

5. **eī**: 153.

7. **cum . . . tum**: note the same expression on p. 54, l. 9. Here trans. 'either . . . or'; *i.e.* he killed some, and put to flight others.

Sulla.

A bust supposed to represent the Dictator.

8. **utcumque**: 'in some way or other.'

11. **fīnibus**: abl. with the adj., *contentus*, 165, *a*.

69. Sed dum Sulla in Graeciā et Asiā Mithridātem vincit, Marius, quī fugātus erat, et L. Cornēlius Cinna, ūnus ex cōnsulibus, bellum in Italiā reparārunt, et ingressī Rōmam nōbilissimōs ex senātū et cōnsulārēs virōs interfēcērunt; multōs prōscrīpsērunt; ipsīus Sullae domō ēversā, fīliōs et uxōrem ad fugam compulērunt. Ūniversus reliquus senātus ex urbe fugiēns ad Sullam in Graeciam vēnit, ōrāns ut patriae subvenīret. Sulla in Italiam trāiēcit, hostium exercitūs vīcit, mox etiam urbem ingressus est, quam caede et sanguine cīvium replēvit. Quattuor mīlia inermium, quī sē dēdiderant, interficī iussit; duo mīlia equitum et senātōrum prōscrīpsit. Tum dē Mithridāte triumphāvit. Duo haec bella fūnestissima, Italicum, quod et sociāle dictum est, et cīvīle, cōnsūmpsērunt ultrā centum et quīnquāgintā

---

69. 1. **dum . . . vincit**: see note on *dum . . . oppugnat*, p. 18, l. 5.

2. **ex cōnsulibus**: see note on *ex Rōmānīs*, p. 28, l. 11.

3. **reparārunt**: = *reparāvērunt*.

4. **ex senātū**: *i.e.* 'from among the senators.' **cōnsulārēs**: 'of consular rank,' *i.e.* who had at some time held the office of consul.

5. **prōscrīpsērunt**: 'proscribed.' The custom of proscription, introduced by Sulla, consisted in 'posting up in writing' or 'publishing' the names of those whom he desired to have killed and their property confiscated, on the ground that they were hostile to his party. **ipsīus**: intensive; 'himself.' **ēversā**: note the gender of *domus*.

6. **Ūniversus**: 'in a body.' **reliquus**: 'the rest of.'

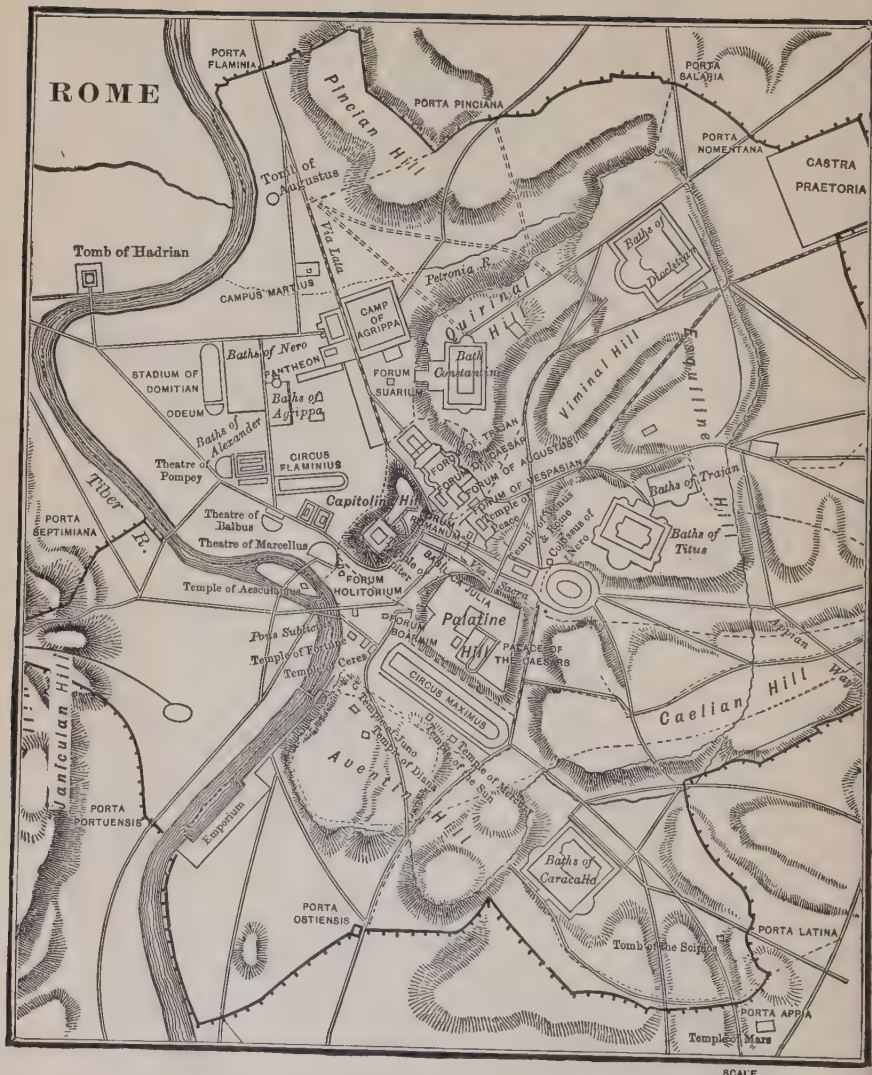
9. **etiam**: 'even.'

10. **inermium**: sc. *cīvium*.

12. **dē Mithridāte triumphāvit**: 'celebrated a triumph over Mithridates,' the regular form of expression. See note on *triumphāns*, p. 15, l. 3.

13. **Italicum**: sc. *bellum*. **et**: 'also.' **sociāle**: sc. *bellum*.

14. **cīvīle**: sc. *bellum*. **cōnsūmpsērunt**: the subject is *bella*, l. 13. **ultrā**: 'more than.'


ROME
PORTA FLAMINIA
Pincian Hill
PORTA PINCIANA
PORTA SALARIA
PORTA NOMENTANA
CASTRA PRAETORIA
Tomb of Augustus
Via Lata
Tomb of Hadrian
CAMPUS MARTIUS
Petronia R.
Baths of Diocletian
CAMP OF AGRIPPA
Quirinal Hill
Baths of Nero
PANTHEON
STADIUM OF DOMITIAN
ODEUM
Baths of Agrippa
FORUM SUARIUM
Bath Constantine
Viminal Hill
Esquiline Hill
Baths of Alexander
Theatre of Pompey
CIRCUS FLAMINIUS
FORUM OF TRAJAN
FORUM OF CAESAR
FORUM OF AUGUSTUS
FORUM OF VESPASIAN
Temple of Peace
Temple of Venus & Rome
Colossus of Nero
Baths of Trajan
Baths of Titus
Tiber R.
PORTA SEPTIMIANA
Capitoline Hill
Theatre of Balbus
Theatre of Marcellus
FORUM ROMANUM
Temple of Jupiter
BASILICA JULIA
Via Sacra
Temple of Aesculapius
FORUM HOLITORIUM
Palatine Hill
Pons Sublicius
Temple of Fortune
Temple of Ceres
FORUM BOARIUM
PALACE OF THE CAESARS
Appian Way
CIRCUS MAXIMUS
Caelian Hill
Janiculan Hill
Temple of Juno
Temple of Diana
Temple of Mercury
Temple of the Sun
Aventine Hill
PORTA PORTUENSIS
Emporium
Baths of Caracalla
PORTA OSTIENSIS
PORTA LATINA
Tomb of the Scipios
PORTA APPIA
Temple of Mars
SCALE
0 ⅛ ¼ ⅜ ½ Mile

mīlia hominum, virōs cōnsulārēs vīgintī quattuor, praetōriōs septem, aedīliciōs sexāgintā, senātōrēs ferē ducentōs.

---

1. **cōnsulārēs**: see note on *cōnsulārēs*, p. 56, l. 4. **praetōriōs**: 'ex-praetors,' 'men of praetorian rank'; cf. *cōnsulārēs*.

2. **aedīliciōs**: 'ex-aediles.'

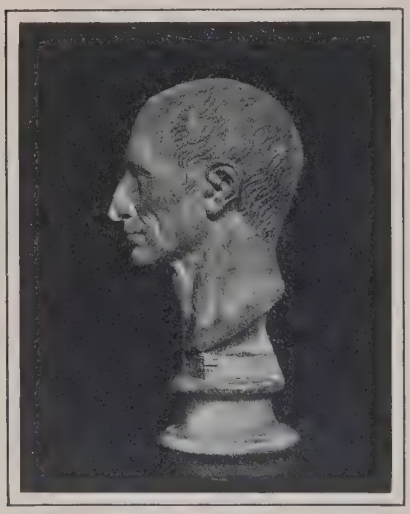
VIRI ROMAE

I. Gāius Iūlius Caesar

Caesar defies Sulla.

C. Iūlius Caesar, nōbilissimā Iūliōrum genitus familiā, annum agēns sextum et decimum patrem āmīsit. Cornē-

1. **C. Iūlius Caesar**: the character C in early times represented both C and G, and C. stands for Gaius. Of the three names *Gaius* is the *praenōmen*, corresponding to our Christian name; *Iūlius* is the *nōmen* or name of the *gēns*, sometimes called the 'gentile name'; and Caesar is the *cognōmen* or family name. The *cognōmen* was frequently a nickname originating in personal peculiarities, such as *Nāsō*, "big-nosed," *Flaccus*, "loose-eared," *etc.*, but such names were handed down to descendants to whom they did not of necessity apply. The origin of the name *Caesar* is uncertain. **nōbilissimā**: see note to p. 42, l. 17. **Iūliōrum**: the *Iūliī* were a patrician *gēns* and also belonged to the nobility, consisting of those whose ancestors had held an office which entitled them to admission to the Senate. These were the so-called curule offices: curule aedile, praetor, consul; and the quaestorship. **familiā**: for the case see 159. The *Iūliī* were really a *gēns*, made up of several *familiae*.



Julius Caesar.

2. **annum . . . sextum et decimum**: 'in his sixteenth year.' See

liam, Cinnae fīliam, dūxit uxōrem; cuius pater cum esset Sullae inimīcissimus, is Caesarem voluit compellere, ut eam repudiāret; neque id potuit efficere. Quā rē Caesar, bonīs spoliātus, cum etiam ad necem quaererētur, mūtātā veste nocte urbe ēlāpsus est, et quamquam tunc quārtānae morbō labōrābat, prope per singulās noctēs latebrās commūtāre cōgēbātur; et comprehēnsus ā Sullae lībertō, nē ad Sullam perdūcerētur vix datā pecūniā ēvāsit. Postrēmō per propinquōs et affīnēs suōs veniam impetrāvit.

---

note to p. 39, l. 1. **Cornēliam**: Roman women are ordinarily referred to only by the *nōmen*, or gentile name. See note to l. 1, above.

1. **Cinnae**: L. Cornelius Cinna was associated with Marius and took part in his proscriptions. He was the leader of the popular party from 87 to 84 B. C. **dūxit uxōrem**: = *in mātrimōnium dūxit*, 'married.' **pater**: subject of *esset;* note the position of *cum*, which is a common one in Latin.

2. **Sullae**: for the case see 157. Lucius Cornelius Sulla, leader of the aristocratic party in the civil wars against Marius and Cinna, lived from 138 to 78 B.C. He was consul in 88 and dictator from 81 to 79. **ut eam repudiāret**: 'to divorce her'; see 261.

3. **neque potuit**: 'but he could not.' **bonīs**: 'goods, property.' For the case see 158.

4. **etiam**: 'besides.' **ad necem**: 'to be put to death'; lit. 'for death.' **mūtātā veste**: *i.e.* disguising himself; lit. 'changing his clothing.'

5. **ēlāpsus est**: 'slipped out.' **quārtānae . . . labōrābat**: 'he was suffering from quartan ague.' *Quārtānae* (sc. *febris*) was an intermittent fever, the attacks of which occurred after intervals of two days, *i.e.* on every *fourth* day, according to the Roman method of inclusive reckoning. For the case of *morbō* see 165; for the mood of *labōrābat*, 250.

6. **prope per singulās noctēs**: 'almost every night.' **latebrās**: 'his hiding-places.'

7. **nē . . . perdūcerētur**: object of **ēvāsit**, 'he escaped being led'; see 260. Note the order; a purpose regularly precedes the main verb.

8. **datā pecūniā**: 'by giving him money' or 'bribing him'; see 280. **propinquōs et affīnēs**: the former are relatives by blood, the latter by marriage.

Satis cōnstat, Sullam, cum dēprecantibus amīcissimīs et ōrnātissimīs virīs aliquamdiū dēnegāsset atque illī pertināciter contenderent, expugnātum tandem prōclāmāsse, vincerent, dum modo scīrent, eum, quem incolumem tantopere cuperent, aliquandō optimātium partibus, quās sēcum simul dēfendissent, exitiō futūrum; nam Caesarī multōs Mariōs inesse.

He is captured by pirates; his revenge.

Stīpendia prīma in Asiā fēcit. In expugnātiōne Mitylēnārum corōnā cīvicā dōnātus est. Mortuō Sullā, Rhodum

---

1. **Satis cōnstat**: 'it is generally known,' 'all the world knows.' **cum**: the form of the words immediately following might suggest that *cum* is the prep.; but the mood of the verbs shows that it is the conj. **dēprecantibus . . . virīs**: for the case see 148.

2. **ōrnātissimīs**: here means 'most distinguished.' **aliquamdiū**: adv., 'for some time.'

3. **expugnātum**: 'forced to consent'; lit. 'taken by storm.' **vincerent**: 'that they might have their way;' see 266. In the dir. disc. *vincite* (or *vincātis*), 'have your way.'

4. **scīrent**: 253. It would be subjunctive also in the dir. disc. **quem . . . incolumem**: sc. *esse*.

5. **aliquandō**: adv., 'one day,' 'some day.' **optimātium partibus**: 'the party of the aristocrats,' 'the nobility'; see note to p. 58, l. 1, above. **sēcum**: refers to Sulla.

6. **dēfendissent**: 268. For *dēfendistis* of the dir. disc. **exitiō futūrum**: 'would be the ruin'; for the case of *exitiō* see 156. **nam . . . inesse**: 'for in Caesar there was many a Marius'; the expression has become proverbial.

8. **Stīpendia prīma . . . fēcit**: 'he served his first campaign'; lit. 'earned his first pay' as a soldier. **Asiā**: here refers to the Roman province, comprising only the western part of Asia Minor. **Mitylēnārum**: 'of Mitylenae,' the chief city of the island of Lesbos, in the northeastern part of the Aegean Sea.

9. **corōnā cīvicā**: for the case see 148, *a*. The civic crown, a simple garland of oak leaves, was among the most highly prized of the various rewards given for distinction in arms. It was awarded for

sēcēdere statuit, ut per ōtium Apollōniō Molōnī, tunc clārissimō dīcendī magistrō, operam daret. Hūc dum trāicit, ā praedōnibus captus est mānsitque apud eōs prope quadrāgintā diēs. Per omne autem illud spatium ita sē gessit, ut pīrātīs pariter terrōrī venerātiōnīque esset. Comitēs interim servōsque ad expediendās pecūniās, quibus redimerētur, dīmīsit. Vīgintī talenta pīrātae postulāverant; ille quīnquāgintā datūrum sē spopondit. Quibus numerātīs, cum exposi-

saving the life of a Roman citizen in battle and conferred certain privileges upon its possessor, including immunity from taxation. Cf. Macaulay, *Lays of Ancient Rome*, Virginia, 314,

> "How she danced with pleasure
> To see my civic crown."

The Civic Crown.

A Roman coin, showing the *corona civica*, with the inscription *ob civis servatos*, 'because of the preservation of the citizens.'

Rhodum: 'Rhodes,' an island with a city of the same name, lying south of the western part of Asia Minor. The reference here is to the city, which was famous for its schools of rhetoric and, like Athens, was a favorite resort for students of oratory. For the case see 132.

1. **per ōtium**: 'at leisure.' **Apollōniō**: Apollonius Molo was a celebrated teacher of oratory, under whom Cicero also studied.

2. **dīcendī**: 'of oratory.' **operam daret**: 'might give his attention.' **Hūc**: i.e. *Rhodum*. **trāicit**: for the mood and tense see 236.

5. **terrōrī venerātiōnīque**: cf. *exitiō*, p. 60, l. 6, above.

6. **ad expediendās pecūniās**: 'to raise moneys'; the plur. is sometimes used also in English. For the constr. see 282 and 283. **quibus redimerētur**: 'with which he might be ransomed,' 'for his ransom'; 230.

7. **dīmīsit**: 'sent in all directions'; note the force of the prefix. **quīnquāgintā**: sc. *talenta*. The talent, which was first a weight and then a sum of money, varied somewhat in different places. It usually refers to gold, but sometimes to silver, and may be reckoned in round numbers as about a thousand dollars.

8. **datūrum**: sc. *esse*. Note the tense, which is the usual one with verbs meaning 'promise.'

tus esset in lītore, cōnfestim Mīlētum, quae urbs proximē aberat, properāvit ibique contrāctā classe, invectus in eum locum in quō ipsī praedōnēs erant, partem classis fugāvit, partem mersit, aliquot nāvēs cēpit pīrātāsque in potestātem redāctōs eō suppliciō quod illīs saepe minātus inter iocum erat affēcit crucīque suffīxit.

Caesar's ambition; his munificence.

Quaestōrī ulterior Hispānia obvēnit. Quō profectus cum Alpēs trānsīret et ad cōnspectum pauperis cuiusdam vīcī comitēs per iocum inter sē disputārent num illīc etiam esset

---

1. **quae urbs proximē aberat**: 'which was the nearest city'; lit. 'which city was the nearest away.' Note the difference from the English idiom.

2. **invectus . . . fugāvit**: such combinations of a participle and a verb are usually best translated by two finite verbs, 'sailed . . . and put to flight.' *Invectus* is literally 'having been carried,' but with *nāve* expressed or understood it means 'sailed,' with *equō* 'rode,' *etc.*

4. **mersit**: *sank.*

5. **redāctōs**: a perf. pass. part. agreeing with *pīrātās.* Trans. as if it were perf. act. governing *pīrātās.* In general the Latin participles, which are more frequent than in English, are seldom to be translated literally. **quod illīs . . . inter iocum erat**: 'with which he had often jestingly threatened them.' For the case of *illīs* see 149, *a.* Note the position of *inter iocum* and its lit. meaning, 'amid joking'; *i.e.* 'while joking with them.'

6. **crucī suffīxit**: 'crucified,' a common punishment for slaves and malefactors.

7. **Quaestōrī**: sc. *eī*, 'as quaestor,' 'in his quaestorship.' **obvēnit**: 'fell to his lot.' The quaestors were assigned to their special spheres of duty by lot. **Quō**: adv. = *in ulteriōrem Hispāniam.*

8. **trānsīret**: 235. **ad cōnspectum**: 'at the sight.'

9. **per iocum**: 'in jest'; cf. *inter iocum*, line 5, above, and *per ōtium*, p. 61, l. 1. **num**: in indirect questions *num* has merely interrogative force and does not necessarily imply a negative answer. **illīc**: 'even there.'

ambitiōnī locus, sēriō dīxit Caesar mālle sē ibi prīmum esse quam Rōmae secundum. Dominātiōnis avidus ā prīmā aetāte rēgnum concupīscēbat semperque in ōre habēbat hōs Eurīpidis, Graecī poētae, versūs:

Nam sī violandum est iūs, rēgnandī grātiā
Violandum est, aliīs rēbus pietātem colās.

Cumque Gādēs, quod est Hispāniae oppidum, vēnisset, animadversā apud Herculis templum magnī Alexandrī

1. **ambitiōnī**: 'there was room for ambition,' more lit. 'ambition had a place,' see 154. **sēriō**: adv., 'seriously.' **ā prīmā aetāte**: 'from early youth.'

2. **Dominātiōnis**: 143.

3. **concupīscēbat**: note the force of the prefix (intensive) and of the suffix (inchoative): 'he began to have an eager desire.'

4. **Eurīpidis**: one of the great triad of Greek tragic poets, Aeschylus, Sophocles, and Euripides. He lived from 480 to 406 B.C. The lines are from the *Phoenissae* and the Latin version is Cicero's.

6. **aliīs rēbus**: 171. **pietātem**: here = 'justice.' **colās**: 226.

7. **Gādēs**: a town on the southern coast of Spain, modern Cadiz. For the omission of the prep. see 132. **quod**: for the gender and number see 122.

Alexander the Great.

8. **Herculis**: the Roman name of the Greek Heracles, famed for his strength and mighty deeds. **magnī Alexandrī**. 'of the great Alexander,' referring to the famous king of Macedon (336–323 B.C.).

imāgine ingemuit et quasi ignāviae eum pertaedēret, quod nihildum ā sē memorābile āctum esset in eā aetāte quā iam Alexander orbem terrārum subēgisset, missiōnem continuō efflāgitāvit ad captandās quam prīmum maiōrum rērum occāsiōnēs in urbe.

Aedīlis praeter Comitium ac Forum etiam Capitōlium ōrnāvit porticibus. Vēnātiōnēs autem lūdōsque et cum

---

1. **ingemuit**: 'sighed.' **quasi . . . pertaedēret**: 'as if he were disgusted with his lack of enterprise.' For the case of *eum* and *ignāviae*, see 146; for the mood of *pertaedēret*, 249.

2. **nihildum**: adv., 'nothing as yet.' **āctum esset**: the subj. because the reason is given as Caesar's thought, not as the view of the writer; 241. **quā**: sc. *aetāte* and see 181.

3. **subēgisset**: subj. because it represents a part of Caesar's thought; 272. **continuō**: 'at once'; to be distinguished from **continuē**, 'continually.'

4. **efflāgitāvit**: the force of *ef-* (*ex-*) is intensive; translate accordingly. **ad captandās . . . occāsiōnēs**: 'to seize the opportunity,' one of the various ways of expressing purpose; see note on *ad expediendās pecūniās*, p. 61, l. 6, above. **quam prīmum**: 194. **maiōrum rērum**: 'for greater deeds'; for the case see 137.

6. **Aedīlis**: 'as aedile' or 'in his aedileship.' Caesar was one of the two curule aediles, who had charge of public buildings and public works. They also had the oversight of the public spectacles and plays, and were in the habit of giving entertainments to the people at their own expense, to gain the good will of the populace and thus pave the way to their election to the praetorship and consulship. There were also two *aedīlēs plēbeī*, who had charge of the decrees of the Senate and other public documents. **Comitium**: the Comitium, an open place where assemblies were held; it was north of the Forum and separated from it by the *rostra*. **Forum**: an open space between the Palatine and Capitoline hills, surrounded by public buildings and shops, the center of the political and commercial life of Rome. **Capitōlium**: 'the Capitoline Hill,' one of the seven hills of Rome, overlooking the Forum.

7. **porticibus**: 'colonnades,' for the display of the materials to be used in his public entertainments. **Vēnātiōnēs**: 'beast-bait-

collēgā L. Bibulō et sēparātim ēdidit; quō factum est, ut commūnium quoque impēnsārum sōlus grātiam caperet. Hīs autem rēbus patrimōnium effūdit tantumque cōnflāvit aes aliēnum, ut ipse dīceret sibi opus esse mīliēns sēstertium, ut habēret nihil.

A Roman Colonnade.

Remains of the *porticus Octaviae* at Rome, dedicated by Augustus to his sister Octavia.

ings' or 'hunts of wild animals,' a favorite amusement of the Romans. **lūdōs**: 'dramatic entertainments.'

1. **quō factum est**: 'the result was.'

2. **commūnium . . . impēnsārum**: *i.e.* he got the credit (*grātiam caperet*) for the entertainments of which he and Bibulus jointly bore the expense, as well as (*quoque*) for those which he gave alone. For the mood of *caperet* see 261.

3. **effūdit**: 'wasted.' **cōnflāvit**: 'contracted.'

4 and 5. **aes aliēnum**: 'debt.' **sibi opus esse**: 'that he needed.' For the case of *sibi* see 154; *opus* is sometimes followed by the abl., but here takes a predicate acc., *mīliēns*. **mīliēns sēstertium**: =

The consulship; Caesar's arbitrary conduct.

Cōnsul deinde creātus cum L. Bibulō, societātem cum Gnaeō Pompeiō et Mārcō Crassō iūnxit Caesar, nē quid agerētur in rē pūblicā quod displicuisset ūllī ex tribus. Deinde lēgem tulit, ut ager Campānus plēbī dīviderētur. Cui lēgī cum senātus repugnāret, rem ad populum dētulit. Bibulus collēga in Forum vēnit, ut lēgī obsisteret, sed tanta in eum commōta est sēditiō, ut in caput eius cophinus stercore plēnus effunderētur fascēsque eī frangerentur atque adeō ipse armīs Forō expellerētur. Quā rē cum Bibulus per reliquum annī tempus domō abditus cūriā abstinēret,

mīlliēns centēna mīlia sēstertium, 'a hundred million sesterces' or about $5,000,000. The sestertius was two and one-half asses, equal to about five cents. In reckoning larger sums *sēstertium*, originally gen. pl., was used as a nominative singular with the meaning of 'a thousand sesterces' (*mīlia sēstertium*; see 21). With the distributive numerals (see 72) *sēstertium* is a gen. pl., and *centēna mīlia*, 'a hundred thousand,' is understood; hence *mīlliēns sēstertium* means 'a thousand times a hundred thousand sesterces,' or 'a hundred million.' **ut habēret nihil**: *i.e.*, to be free from debt.

1. **Cōnsul . . . creātus**: for the year 59 B.C. **societātem**: 'a league,' the so-called First Triumvirate, in 60 B.C.

3. **displicuisset**: subj. because it is an essential part of the clause *nē quid agerētur*; cf. *subēgisset*, p. 64, l. 3, above. For the case of *ūllī* see 149, *a*.

4. **tulit**: 'passed.' **ager Campānus**: this was land in Campania belonging to the state, or public land. **plēbī**: 'among the people'; for the case see 148.

5. **Cui lēgī**: 'this law'; see 149, *a*. **rem . . . dētulit**: 'he laid the matter before the people,' *i.e.* before the popular assembly.

6. **lēgī**: 149, *a*.

7. **cophinus stercore plēnus**: 'a basketful of manure'; for the case of *stercore* see 163, *c*.

8. **eī**: the dat. is nearly equal to a possessive genitive modifying *fascēs*; see 151, *a*.

9. **adeō**: 'even.'

10. **domō**: 'in his house,' really an abl. of means (see 168, *d*); the

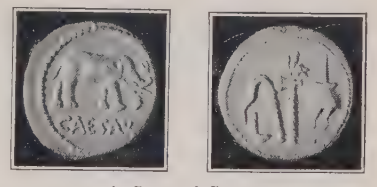
ūnus ex eō tempore Caesar omnia in rē pūblicā ad arbitrium administrābat, ut nōnnūllī urbānōrum, sī quid testandī grātiā signārent, per iocum nōn, ut mōs erat, cōnsulibus Caesare et Bibulō āctum scrīberent, sed Iūliō et Caesare, ūnum cōnsulem nōmine et cognōmine prō duōbus appellantēs. 5

The conquest of Gaul; Caesar's valor.

Fūnctus cōnsulātū Caesar Galliam prōvinciam accēpit. Gessit autem novem annīs, quibus in imperiō fuit, haec ferē: Galliam in prōvinciae fōrmam redēgit; Germānōs,

---

locative *domī* would mean 'at home.' **cūriā abstinēret**: 'kept away from the Senate-house.' *Cum* is causal; 240.



A Coin of Caesar.

One side shows an elephant trampling upon a dragon, representing Germany; the other has the emblems of the pontifex maximus: the peaked cap, an axe, a sprinkler, and a *simpulum*, or small ladle.

1. **ūnus**: 'alone.' **ad arbitrium**: 'according to his will,' 'as he pleased.'

2. **nōnnūllī urbānōrum**: 'sundry wits' or 'witty fellows.' For the case of *urbānōrum* see 138. **sī quid . . . signārent**: 'if they signed anything as witnesses'; more lit. 'for the purpose of bearing witness.' The subjunctive is used because the conditional clause is an essential part of the result clause, *ut . . . scrīberent* (272). General conditions are commonly in the indic. (see 244), although in post-Ciceronian Latin the subjunctive is regular.

3. **per iocum**: see p. 62, l. 9, and the note.

4. **āctum**: cf. the English expression 'done' in a given year. **Iūliō et Caesare**: sc. *cōnsulibus*. **ūnum . . . appellantēs**: it is to be hoped that no American student will find this explanation of the joke necessary.

5. **duōbus**: sc. *cōnsulibus*.

6. **cōnsulātū**: for the case see 163, *a*. **prōvinciam**: 'as his province,' in apposition with *Galliam*.

7. **novem annīs quibus**: time within which (182); *quibus* really expresses duration of time, but its case is attracted to that of *novīs annīs*. See, however, 180. **haec ferē**: 'about the following.'

quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, prīmus Rōmānōrum ponte fabricātō aggressus maximīs affēcit clādibus. Aggressus est Britannōs, ignōtōs anteā, superātīsque pecūniās et obsidēs imperāvit. Hīc cum multa Rōmānōrum mīlitum īnsignia nārrantur, tum illud ēgregium ipsīus Caesaris, quod nūtante in fugam exercitū, raptō fugientis ē manū scūtō, in prīmam volitāns aciem proelium restituit. Īdem aliō proeliō legiōnis aquiliferum ineundae fugae causā iam conversum, faucibus comprehēnsum, in contrāriam partem dētrāxit dextramque ad hostem tendēns, "Quōrsum tū," inquit, "abīs? Illīc sunt, cum quibus dīmicāmus." Quā adhortātiōne omnium

1. **prīmus Rōmānōrum . . . affēcit clādibus**: the sentence cannot be rendered word for word into good English. Trans. 'he was the first of the Romans to make a bridge across the Rhine and attack the Germans, whom,' *etc.*, or in some similar way. Note carefully the order and interrelation of the Latin words.

3. **superātīs**: sc. *eīs* = *Britannīs* and see 149, *a*. Observe that these words, when they govern the dat., do so for different reasons. In this case the dat. is really due to the *in-* in composition; 'he conquered them and imposed on them a requisition of money and hostages.' Britain did not become a Roman province until 43 A.D.

4. **Hīc**: adv., 'in this campaign'; lit. 'here.' **cum**: correlative with *tum* below, 'not only . . . but also.' **īnsignia**: 'brilliant exploits.'

5. **illud ēgregium**: sc. *īnsigne:* 'the following remarkable exploit.' **quod . . . restituit**: a substantive clause in the indic. in apposition with *illud;* trans. *quod* by 'that' and see 257. **nūtante in fugam**: 'giving way to flight'; lit. 'nodding, wavering.'

6. **scūtō**: see Introd. p. xxxi, and for the case, 173. For the trans. of the sentence see note on *redāctōs*, p. 62, l. 5, above.

7. **Īdem**: 'again he' or 'he also'; lit. 'he the same one.' **aliō proeliō**: abl. of time; 181.

8. **aquiliferum**: see Introd. p. xxxiv. **ineundae fugae causā**: 282 and 283.

9. **comprehēnsum . . . dētrāxit**: 'seized and turned.'

10. **Quōrsum**: 'whither' ('in what direction').

11. **dīmicāmus**: 'we are fighting.' **Quā adhortātiōne**: 202.

legiōnum trepidātiōnem corrēxit vincīque parātās vincere docuit.

The beginning of the civil war; Caesar crosses the Rubicon and marches to Brundisium.

Interfectō intereā apud Parthōs Crassō et dēfūnctā Iūliā, Caesaris fīliā, quae, nūpta Pompeiō, generī socerīque concordiam tenēbat, statim aemulātiō ērūpit. Iam prīdem Pompeiō suspectae Caesaris opēs et Caesarī Pompeiāna dignitās gravis, nec hīc ferēbat parem, nec ille superiōrem. Itaque cum Caesar in Galliā dētinērētur, et nē imperfectō bellō discēderet, postulāsset ut sibi licēret, quamvīs absentī, alterum cōnsulātum petere, ā senātū, suādentibus Pompeiō eiusque amīcīs, negātum eī est. Hanc iniūriam acceptam vindicātūrus, in Italiam rediit et bellandum ratus, cum

1. **corrēxit**: 'calmed'; lit. 'corrected.' **vincīque**: trans. with *parātās*, 'ready' (sc. *legiōnēs*). **vincere**: takes the place of the second acc. with *docuit*. See 128.

3. **Interfectō . . . Crassō**: in the disastrous defeat at Carrhae in 53 B.C. The Parthians were a Scythian people, dwelling southeast of the Caspian Sea. They were brave warriors and skilful archers.

4. **nūpta**: 'married.' **concordiam tenēbat**: 'maintained the harmony of,' 'kept the peace between.'

5. **Iam prīdem suspectae**: sc. *erant . . . erat* and see 211. *Suspectae* is a participle, 'an object of suspicion,' not part of a compound tense.

6. **Pompeiō . . . Caesarī**: see 152. **Pompeiāna**: = *Pompeī*.

7. **ferēbat**: we should say 'could bear.'

8. **imperfectō bellō**: 173; trans. 'before the war was ended.'

9. **ut . . . licēret**: 260. **quamvīs absentī**: = *quamvīs absēns esset*, 'although he was absent from Rome.'

10. **suādentibus . . . amīcīs**: 'at the solicitation of Pompey and his friends'; 173.

11. **negātum est**: sc. *id*, = *ut illī licēret alterum cōnsulātum petere*. **acceptam**: trans. by a relative clause.

12. **vindicātūrus**: = *ut vindicāret*. See 278. **bellandum ratus**:

exercitū Rubicōnem flūmen, quī prōvinciae eius fīnis erat, trānsiit. Hōc ad flūmen paulum cōnstitisse fertur, ac reputāns quantum mōlīrētur, conversus ad proximōs, "Etiam nunc," inquit, "regredī possumus; quod sī ponticulum trānsierimus, omnia armīs agenda erunt." Postrēmō autem, "Iacta ālea estō!" exclāmāns, exercitum trāicī iussit plūrimīsque urbibus occupātīs Brundisium contendit, quō Pompeius cōnsulēsque cōnfūgerant.

Caesar crosses the Adriatic. The battle of Pharsalia; victories in Pontus and in Africa.

Quī cum inde in Ēpīrum trāiēcissent, Caesar eōs secūtus Brundisiō Dyrrhachium inter oppositās classēs gravissimā

---

sc. *esse*, 'thinking that war was inevitable'; more lit. 'that war must be waged.' See 204.

1. **Rubicōnem . . . trānsiit**: since the Rubicon was the boundary of Caesar's province, to cross it at the head of an army was equivalent to a declaration of war. The expression 'to cross the Rubicon' has become proverbial. **quī**: for the agreement see note on *quod*, p. 63, l. 7.

2. **paulum**: 'for a little while.'

3. **quantum mōlīrētur**: 'how great an enterprise he was undertaking'; 259.

4. **quod sī**: 'but if.' **ponticulum**: 'that little bridge.' The dimin. emphasizes the insignificance of the action in comparison with its results.

5. **trānsierimus**: fut. perf. denoting an action completed at the time of *agenda erunt*. See 217. In accordance with English idiom it should be translated by the present. **omnia armīs agenda erunt**: 'the issue depends upon arms'; lit. 'all things will have to be done by arms.'

6. **Iacta ālea estō**: our familiar expression is 'the die is cast,' but Caesar appears to have used the imperative.

7. **quō**: adv., 'to which.'

9. **Quī**: 202. **inde**: 'from there,' *i.e.* from Brundisium.

10. **Brundisiō**: 178. **oppositās**: perf. pass. part. We should use the pres. act., 'the opposing fleets.'

hieme trānsmīsit; cōpiīsque quās subsequī iusserat diūtius cessantibus, cum ad eās arcessendās frūstrā mīsisset, mīrae audāciae facinus ēdidit. Morae enim impatiēns castrīs noctū ēgreditur, clam nāviculam cōnscendit, obvolūtō capite nē agnōscerētur, et quamquam mare saevā tempestāte intumēscēbat, in altum tamen prōtinus dīrigī nāvigium iubet et gubernātōre trepidante, "Quid timēs?" inquit, "Caesarem vehis!" neque prius gubernātōrem cēdere adversae tempestātī passus est, quam paene obrutus esset flūctibus.

Deinde Caesar in Ēpīrum profectus, Pompeium Pharsālicō proeliō fūdit, et fugientem persecūtus, ut occīsum cognōvit, Ptolemaeō rēgī, Pompeī interfectōrī, ā quō sibi quoque īnsidiās tendī vidēret, bellum intulit; quō victō, in

---

1. **hieme**: here 'storm.' **trānsmīsit**: 'crossed.' **subsequī**: 'follow closely' or 'close behind,' a force given by the prefix. **diūtius**: 'too long.' See 193.

2. **ad eās arcessendās**: see note on *ad expediendās pecūniās*, p. 61, l. 6. **frūstrā**: 'to no purpose.' **mīrae audāciae**: 'of astonishing boldness'; 140.

3. **Morae**: 143.

4. **nāviculam**: 'a small boat.' **obvolūtō**: 'muffled'; 169.

5. **saevā tempestāte**: 165. **intumēscēbat**: 250.

6. **in altum**: 'out to sea'; more lit. 'towards the deep.' **nāvigium**: 'the craft,' a general term.

7. **gubernātōre**: 'steersman, helmsman.' He was also the owner of the boat and the only other person present.

8. **adversae**: 'blowing in their faces.'

9. **obrutus esset**: note that the action of the verb did not take place. In such cases the subj. is used with *priusquam* and *antequam*; see 239.

10. **Pharsālicō**: 'of Pharsalus'; see note on *Cannēnsem*, p. 44, l. 2, above. Pharsalus was a small town of Thessaly, near Larisa.

11. **fugientem**: 'in his flight.'

12. **Ptolemaeō**: 149, *b*.

13. **quoque**: as well as against Pompey. **vidēret**: 242.

Pontum trānsiit Pharnacemque, Mithridātis fīlium, rebellantem et multiplicī successū praeferōcem intrā quīntum ab adventū diem, quattuor, quibus in cōnspectum vēnit, hōrīs ūnā prōflīgāvit aciē, mōre fulminis, quod ūnō eōdemque mōmentō vēnit, percussit, abscessit. Nec vāna dē sē praedicātiō est Caesaris, ante victum hostem esse quam vīsum. Ponticō posteā triumphō trium verbōrum praetulit titulum: "Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī." Deinde Scīpiōnem et Iubam, Numidiae rēgem, reliquiās Pompeiānārum partium in Āfricā refoventēs dēvīcit.

---

1. **Pontum**: a country in northeastern Asia Minor, south of the Euxine (Black) Sea.

2. **successū**: 165. **praeferōcem**: 'full of confidence'; *prae-* has intensive force. **ab adventū**: note the position. *Ab* denotes time, 'after his arrival.' The numerals *quīntum*, *quattuor* and *ūnā* are emphasized by their position and their separation from their nouns.

3. **quattuor . . . horīs**: 182. **quibus in cōnspectum vēnit**: sc. *hostis* or *eius;* 'after he came in sight of the enemy.' *Quibus* (sc. *horīs*) is also abl. of time within which; cf. *novem annīs*, *quibus*, p. 67, l. 7, above.

4. **aciē**: 'battle.' Note the order. **mōre fulminis**: 'like a thunderbolt'; for the case of *mōre* see 166, *a*.

5. **vēnit**, **percussit**, **abscessit**: note the perfect, denoting instantaneous action. The Romans believed that the thunderbolt returned to the skies after striking; hence *abscessit*. **praedicātiō**: 'boast.'

7. **Ponticō triumphō**: *i.e.* the triumph which he celebrated over Pharnaces, king of Pontus (l. 1, above); 181. **trium verbōrum . . . titulum**: 'an inscription of three words.' For the case of *verbōrum* see 141. **praetulit**: 'bore before him' in the procession.

8. **Scīpiōnem**: Q. Caecilius Metellus Pius Scipio, Pompey's father-in-law.

9. **refoventēs**: 'reviving'; lit. 'warming over.'

10. **dēvicit**: *dē-* conveys the idea of a complete victory. The reference is to the battle of Thapsus in 46 B.C.

Caesar defeats the Pompeians in Spain; his narrow escape.

Victōrem Āfricānī bellī Gaium Caesarem gravius excēpit Hispāniēnse, quod Cn. Pompeius, Magnī fīlius, adulēscēns fortissimus, ingēns ac terribile cōnflāverat, undique ad eum auxiliīs paternī nōminis magnitūdinem sequentium ex tōtō orbe cōnfluentibus. Sua Caesarem in Hispāniam comitāta fortūna est; sed nūllum umquam atrōcius perīculōsiusque ab eō initum proelium; adeō ut, plūs quam dubiō Mārte,

1. **Āfricānī bellī**: 'in the war in Africa'; *bellī* is an objective gen., governed by *Victōrem*. On the use of the adj. *Āfricānī* see note on *Pharsālicō*, p. 71, l. 10 above. **gravius**: adj. modifying *bellum*. **excēpit**: 'met.' The subject is *Hispāniēnse* (sc. *bellum*).

2. **Cn.**: stands for *Gnaeus;* cf. *C.*, p. 58, l. 1, above.

3. **ingēns ac terribile**: modifying *quod* (*bellum*). **eum**: = *Cn. Pompeium, Magnī fīlium.*

4. **sequentium**: 'from those who followed'; subjective gen. with *auxiliīs. Auxiliīs . . . cōnfluentibus* is abl. abs.

5. **Sua**: 'his usual.' **in Hispāniam**: note the case, 'accompanied Caesar to Spain.'

7. **initum**: sc. *est.* **proelium**: the battle of Munda in 45 B.C. **plūs quam dubiō Mārte**: 'when the battle was more than doubtful,' *i.e.* was going against Caesar. *Mārte* (the god of war) is used by metonymy for *proeliō.*

Mars.

The God of War, who determined the issue of battles.

dēscenderet equō cōnsistēnsque ante recēdentem suōrum aciem, increpāns Fortūnam, quod sē in eum servāsset exitum, dēnūntiāret mīlitibus vēstīgiō sē nōn recessūrum; proinde vidērent, quem et quō locō imperātōrem dēsertūrī essent. Verēcundiā magis quam virtūte aciēs restitūta est. Cn. Pompeius victus et interēmptus est. Caesar, omnium victor, regressus in urbem omnibus, quī contrā sē arma tulerant, ignōvit et quīnquiēns triumphāvit.

Caesar becomes ruler of Rome; his reforms and gigantic projects; the conspiracy.

Bellīs cīvīlibus cōnfectīs, conversus iam ad ōrdinandum reī pūblicae statum, fāstōs corrēxit annumque ad cursum sōlis accommodāvit, ut trecentōrum sexāgintā quīnque

1. **dēscenderet**: 232.

2. **servāsset**: the subjunctive shows that Caesar's reason is quoted by the narrator; see 241.

3. **dēnūntiāret**: 'declared'; in the same construction as *dēscenderet*, with which it is connected by *-que*. **vēstīgiō**: 'a step'; more lit. 'from where he stood,' 'from his tracks.'

4. **vidērent**: 266; cf. *vincerent*, p. 60, l. 3. **quem et quō locō imperātōrem**: 'what a commander and in what a situation.' Note the omission of the prep. with *locō* and see 175. **dēsertūrī essent**: 97; cf. 219, footnote.

5. **Verēcundiā . . . virtūte**: 165.

6. **interēmptus est**: 'was slain.' **omnium**: 'over all'; cf. *Āfricānī bellī*, p. 73, l. 1, and the note.

7. **omnibus**: 149, *a*.

8. **quīnquiēns**: 'five times.'

10. **fāstōs**: 'the calendar.'

11. **accommodāvit**: 'adapted to,' 'made to correspond with.' After Caesar's reform of the calendar, in 46 B.C., the year consisted of 365 days, distributed among the months as at present. By the previous arrangement, which tradition attributed to Numa, March, May, July, and October had 31 days, February 28, and the rest 29. Since this lunar year of 355 days was too short, the deficiency was partly made up by inserting an intercalary month (*intercalāriō mēnse*, p. 75, l. 1) every other year.

diērum esset et, intercalāriō mēnse sublātō, ūnus diēs quārtō quōque annō intercalārētur. Iūs labōriōsissimē ac sevērissimē dīxit. Repetundārum convictōs etiam ōrdine senātōriō mōvit. Peregrīnārum mercium portōria īnstituit; lēgem praecipuē sūmptuāriam exercuit. Dē ōrnandā īnstruendāque urbe, item dē tuendō ampliandōque imperiō plūra ac maiōra in diēs dēstinābat; imprīmīs iūs cīvīle ad certum modum redigere atque ex immēnsā lēgum cōpiā optima quaeque et necessāria in paucissimōs cōnferre librōs; bibliothēcās Graecās et Latīnās, quās maximās posset, pūblicāre, siccāre Pomptīnās palūdēs; viam mūnīre ā Marī Superō per

1. **diērum**: see note on **verbōrum**, p. 72, l. 7. **sublātō**: 'doing away with'; see note on *redāctōs*, p. 62, l. 5, above. **ūnus diēs . . . intercalārētur**: as in the present leap-year. **quārtō quōque annō**: 'every fourth year'; 181.

2. **Iūs dīxit**: 'he administered justice.'

3. **Repetundārum**: sc. *rērum*, 'extortion.' For the case see 145. **convictōs**: perf. pass. part. used as a substantive; trans. by a rel. clause. **ōrdine senātōriō**: 'the senatorial order,' 'the nobility'; see note to p. 58, l. 1, above, and for the case, 158.

4. **Peregrīnārum mercium**: 'on imports'; 137. **portōria**: 'duties.'

5. **lēgem sūmptuāriam**: 'the law against extravagance.' The existing 'sumptuary laws,' especially those regulating the expense of the table, were vigorously enforced by Caesar, who also passed a new law forbidding the use of purple garments, of litters, and of pearls, except by certain persons on certain days. **exercuit**: 'enforced.'

7. **dēstinābat**: 'planned.' **ad certum modum**: 'to a definite limit.'

8. **redigere**: sc. *dēstinābat*. **optima quaeque**: 'all the best'; see 203.

9. **bibliothēcās**: 'libraries,' a Greek word in Latin dress.

10. **posset**: subj. representing Caesar's design; 271. **pūblicāre**: 'open to the public.'

11. **Pomptīnās palūdēs**: 'the Pomptine Marshes,' a swampy tract of land of great extent on the coast of Latium, about fifty miles southeast of Rome. **viam mūnīre**: 'to build a road'; the term *mūnīre*

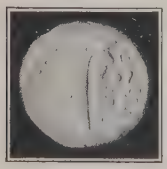
Appennīnī dorsum ad Tiberim ūsque; Dācōs, quī sē in Pontum effūderant, coercēre; mox Parthīs bellum īnferre per Armeniam.

Haec et alia agentem et meditantem mors praevēnit. Dictātor enim in perpetuum creātus agere īnsolentius coepit; senātum ad sē venientem sedēns excēpit et quendam ut adsurgeret monentem īrātō vultū respexit. Cum Antōnius, Caesaris in omnibus bellīs comes et tunc cōnsulātūs collēga, capitī eius in sellā aureā sedentis prō rōstrīs dia-

---

is well suited to the elaborate construction of the Roman highways, which were not only commercial, but military. **Marī Superō**: 'the Upper Sea,' a name applied to the Adriatic in contrast to the *Mare Īnferum*, the Tyrrhenian or Tuscan Sea.

1. **Appennīnī**: 'of the Appennines,' a long range of mountains running the whole length of the Italian peninsula. **dorsum**: 'back, ridge.' **ad . . . ūsque**: 'all the way to,' 'as far as.' **Tiberim**: the principal river of central Italy, on which Rome is situated. **Dācōs**: 'the Dacians,' a warlike people dwelling on the northern bank of the Danube river.



Caesar as Perpetual Dictator.

This coin, a silver denarius of about 44 B.C., shows Caesar with head veiled and crowned with laurel. The inscription reads *Caesar Dict*(ator) *in Perpetuo*.

2. **Pontum**: see note to p. 72, l. 1, above. **Parthīs**: see note to p. 69, l. 3, above.

3. **Armeniam**: 'Armenia,' a large country in Asia, east of Cappadocia and southeast of the Euxine (Black) Sea.

4. **agentem et meditantem**: sc. *eum*, 'as he was doing (some of these things) and planning (others).' **praevēnit**: 'anticipated him,' 'cut him off.'

5. **in perpetuum**: 'for life'; 'for all time.'

7. **adsurgeret**: 260. **īrātō vultū**: 169. **Antōnius**: referring to Mark Antony, afterwards triumvir.

9. **eius**: = *Caesaris*. **rōstrīs**: 'the rostrum' (in English the singular is used, in Latin always the plural) or speaker's platform, between the Comitium and the Forum. It was so called because it was decorated with the beaks of the ships (*rōstra*) taken from the people of Antium in 338 B.C. **diadēma**: 'crown,' another Greek

dēma, īnsigne rēgium, imposuisset, id ita ab eō est repulsum ut nōn offēnsus vidērētur. Quā rē coniūrātum in eum est ā sexāgintā amplius virīs, Cassiō et Brūtō ducibus, dēcrētumque eum Īdibus Mārtiīs in senātū cōnfodere.

He is assassinated; his views about death; Nemesis overtakes the conspirators.

Plūrima indicia futūrī perīculī obtulerant diī immortālēs. Uxor Calpurnia, territa nocturnō vīsū, ut Īdibus Mārtiīs domī subsisteret ōrābat, et Spūrinna haruspex praedīxerat ut proximōs diēs trīgintā quasi fātālēs cavēret, quōrum ultimus erat Īdūs Mārtiae. Hōc igitur diē Caesar Spūrinnae, "Ecquid scīs," inquit, "Īdūs Mārtiās iam vēnisse?" et is, "Ecquid scīs, illās nōndum praeterīsse?" Atque

word in Latin dress. Note that *corōna* is not used of a kingly crown and cf. p. 60, l. 9.

2. **offēnsus**: sc. esse. For the case see 274, *a*. **coniūrātum . . . est**: 'a conspiracy was made'; 204.

3. **sexāgintā amplius virīs**: 'more than sixty men.' *Amplius* does not affect the construction; see 162. **Cassiō et Brūtō**: Gaius Cassius Longinus and Marcus Junius Brutus. **dēcrētumque**: sc. *est*, 'it was decided.'

4. **Īdibus Mārtiīs**: 'the Ides (15th) of March'; see 183.

5. **futūrī perīculī**: 'of the coming danger.'

6. **Calpurnia**: see note on *Cornēliam*, p. 58, l. 2, above. **nocturnō vīsū**: 'by a dream.'

7. **domī**: 176. **subsisteret**: 260. **haruspex**: 'a soothsayer' who made his predictions from an inspection of the vitals of sacrificial victims. **praedīxerat**: 'had warned him'; note the tense, denoting an action prior to that of *ōrābat*.

A Roman Coin.

A coin of Brutus, showing the liberty cap and two daggers, with the inscription *Eid*(ibus) *Mar*(tiis), 'on the Ides of March.'

8. **quasi fātālēs**: 'as fateful.'

9. **Spūrinnae**: dat., indirect object of *inquit*.

10. **Ecquid**: simply interrogative. Do not translate.

11. **is**: sc. *respondit*.

cum Caesar eō diē in senātum vēnisset, assīdentem coniūrātī speciē officī circumstetērunt īlicōque ūnus, quasi aliquid rogātūrus, propius accessit renuentīque ab utrōque umerō togam apprehendit. Deinde clāmantem, "Ista quidem vīs est," Casca, ūnus ē coniūrātīs, adversum vulnerat paulum īnfrā iugulum. Caesar Cascae bracchium arreptum graphiō trāiēcit cōnātusque prōsilīre aliō vulnere tardātus est. Dein ut animadvertit undique sē strictīs pūgiōnibus petī, togā caput obvolvit et ita tribus et vīgintī plāgīs cōnfossus est. Cum Mārcum Brūtum, quem fīlī locō habēbat,

1. **assīdentem**: 'as he took his seat'; note the tense and see 276.

2. **speciē officī**: 'under pretense of paying their respects.' **īlicō**: 'on the spot,' 'at once.'

3. **rogātūrus**: see note on *vindicātūrus*, p. 69, l. 12. **renuentīque**; sc. *eī*: it might be translated 'when he shook his head.' The verb literally means 'to nod backward or up.' For the case see note on *eī*, p. 66, l. 8, above. **ab utrōque umerō**: 'by both shoulders'; see 185, 1, *b*.

4. **clāmantem**: sc. *eum*. **Ista**: note the force of the pronoun, 'that (act of yours)'; see 81, *a*, and for the agreement see notes on *quod*, p. 63, l. 7 and *quī*, p. 70, l. 1.

5. **adversum**: sc. *eum*, 'in front.'

6. **iugulum**: 'the throat.' **arreptum . . . trāiēcit**: 'seized and stabbed.'

7. **graphiō**: the Greek equivalent for *stilus*, a pointed instrument of bone or metal for writing on waxed tablets. **prōsilīre**: 'to leap up' from his seat.

8. **strictīs pūgiōnibus**: 'with drawn daggers.'

9. **togā caput obvolvit**: see Shakespeare, *Julius Caesar*, Act iii, Scene ii, 184:

> In his mantle muffling up his face,
> Even at the base of Pompey's statua,
> Which all the while ran blood, great Caesar fell.

plāgīs: 'wounds.'

10. **fīlī locō habēbat**: 'regarded as a son.' On *locō* without a prep. see note on *quō locō*, p. 74, l. 4.

in sē irruentem vīdisset, dīxisse fertur: "Tū quoque, mī fīlī?"

Illud inter omnēs ferē cōnstitit, talem eī mortem paene ex sententiā obtigisse. Nam et quondam cum apud Xenophōntem lēgisset Cȳrum ultimā valētūdine mandāsse quaedam dē fūnere suō, āspernātus tam lentum mortis genus, subitam sibi celeremque optāverat; et prīdiē quam occīderētur, in sermōne nātō super cēnam quisnam esset fīnis vītae commodissimus, repentīnum inopīnātumque praetulerat. Percussōrum autem neque trienniō quisquam amplius supervīxit neque morte necessāriā periit. Damnātī omnēs alius aliō cāsū periērunt, pars naufragiō, pars proeliō; nōnnūllī sēmet eōdem illō pūgiōne quō Caesarem violāvērunt, interēmērunt.

---

1. **mī fīlī**: note the form of the vocatives; see 18 and 80.

3. **cōnstitit**: 'it is agreed.' See note on *Satis cōnstat*, p. 60, l. 1.

4. **ex sententiā**: 'according to his desire'; 185, *d*, 4. **et**: 'not only'; correlative with *et* in l. 7. **quondam**: 'once.' **apud Xenophōntem**: 'in Xenophon,' the Athenian who conducted the famous retreat of the Ten Thousand, in 400 B.C. The passage referred to is in his *Cyropaedia*, an account of the youth and education of Cyrus.

5. **ultimā valētūdine**: 181. **mandāsse quaedam**: 'had given some directions.'

7. **subitam celeremque**: sc. *mortem*. **occīderētur**: see note on *obrutus esset*, p. 71, l. 9, above. Here the action of *occīderētur* had not yet taken place at the time of *praetulerat* (l. 9.). *Prīdiē quam* is nearly equivalent in meaning to *antequam* or *priusquam* and takes the same construction.

8. **nātō**: 'which arose.' **quisnam esset**: 259; the clause is in apposition with *sermōne*.

9. **commodissimus**: 'most agreeable, most desirable.' **repentīnum inopīnātumque**: sc. *fīnem vītae*.

10. **trienniō**: 'for three years more'; 168.

11. **morte necessāriā**: 'by a natural death.' **Damnātī . . . periērunt**: 'they were condemned (to death) and perished.'

13. **sēmet**: emphatic form of *sē*. **violāvērunt**: 'impiously slew.'

His personal characteristics.

Quō rārior in rēgibus et prīncipibus virīs moderātiō, hōc laudanda magis est. C. Iūlius Caesar victōriā cīvīlī clēmentissimē ūsus est; cum enim scrīnia dēprehendisset epistulārum ad Pompeium missārum ab eīs quī vidēbantur aut in dīversīs aut in neutrīs fuisse partibus, legere nōluit, sed combussit, nē forte in multōs gravius cōnsulendī locum darent. Cicerō hanc laudem eximiam Caesarī tribuit, quod nihil oblīvīscī solēret nisi iniūriās. Simultātēs omnēs, occāsiōne oblātā, libēns dēposuit. Ultrō ac prior scrīpsit C. Calvō post fāmōsa eius adversum sē epigrammata. Va-

---

1. **Quō rārior . . . hōc magis**: 'the rarer . . . the more.' For the case of *quō* and *eō* see 168. **prīncipibus virīs**: 'great men.'

2. **victōriā cīvīlī**: 'his victory in the civil war.'

3. **scrīnia . . . epistulārum**: 'some boxes of letters.' The *scrīnium* was a cylindrical box or case, for holding books (in the form of manuscript rolls) and letters.

A Roman Coin.

It shows a temple with four columns in front (tetrastyle) and the inscription *Clementiae Caesaris.*

5. **dīversīs**: 'of (lit. 'in') the opposing party'; *i.e.* not of Caesar's. **in neutrīs . . . partibus**: 'neutral'; lit. 'in neither party.' That is, they had not sided with Caesar. Pompey regarded all neutrals as his enemies. **nōluit**: 'refused.'

6. **nē . . . darent**: sc. *epistulae*. **gravius cōnsulendī**: 'of taking too severe measures'; 193.

7. **quod . . . solēret**: 'that he was accustomed,' a substantive clause in apposition with *laudem;* 257. The narrator quotes the remark of Cicero, hence the clause is in the subj.; see 271.

8. **nisi**: 'except.'

9. **prior**: *i.e.* without waiting to hear from Calvus.

10. **C. Calvō**: C. Licinius Macer Calvus was a celebrated orator and poet. He was a contemporary of Catullus (see next note) and was ranked with him as a lyric poet by the Romans. Practically none of his work has survived. **Valerium Catullum**: the celebrated

lerium Catullum, cuius versiculīs fāmam suam lacerātam nōn ignōrābat, adhibuit cēnae. C. Memmī suffrāgātor in petītiōne cōnsulātūs fuit, etsī asperrimās fuisse eius in sē ōrātiōnēs sciēbat.

Fuisse trāditur excelsā statūrā, ōre paulō plēniōre, nigrīs vegetīsque oculīs, capite calvō; quam calvitī dēfōrmitātem, quod saepe obtrectātōrum iocīs obnoxia erat, aegrē ferēbat. Ideō ex omnibus dēcrētīs sibi ā senātū populōque honōribus nōn alium aut recēpit aut ūsūrpāvit libentius quam iūs laureae perpetuō gestandae. Vīnī parcissimum eum fuisse nē inimīcī quidem negāvērunt. Verbum Catōnis est, ūnum ex omnibus Caesarem ad ēvertendam rem pūblicam sōbrium accessisse. Armōrum et equitandī perītissimus, labōris ultrā fidem patiēns; in agmine nōnnumquam equō, saepius pedibus anteībat, capite dētēctō, seu sōl, seu imber erat. Longissimās viās incrēdibilī celeritāte cōnficiēbat, ut per-

---

poet, by many ranked first among Roman writers of lyrics. He was born in Verona in 87 B.C., and died about 54.

1. **versiculīs**: the dimin. appears to have a contemptuous force. It is however sometimes used of lyric poetry without any such meaning.

2. **nōn ignōrābat**: 'he was well aware'; 289. **adhibuit**: 'invited.' **Memmī**: *C. Memmius Gemellus;* he secured the consulship in 54 B.C. through Caesar's efforts. *Memmī* is objective gen. with *suffrāgātor*.

5. **excelsā statūrā**: 170.

6. **calvitī**: 139.

7. **iocīs**: 157. **aegrē ferēbat**: 'was distressed at'; lit. 'bore with vexation.'

8. **dēcrētīs . . . honōribus**: note the order.

10. **laureae**: sc. *corōnae*, 'a laurel wreath.' **Vīnī**: for the case see 143.

11. **inimīcī**: 'his personal enemies.' **Verbum**: 'saying.'

13. **Armōrum et equitandī**: 143. **labōris**: cf. *dominātiōnis*, p. 63, l. 2.

14. **ultrā fidem**: 'beyond belief.' **equō . . . pedibus**: 163, *d.*

saepe nūntiōs dē sē praevenīret; neque eum morābantur flūmina, quae vel nandō vel innīxus īnflātīs ūtribus trāiciēbat.

II. Mārcus Tullius Cicerō

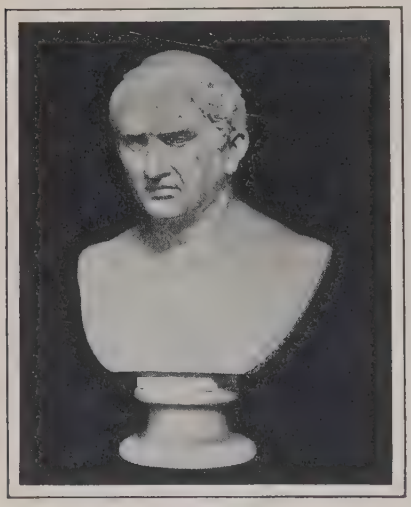
Cicero's early life and education; his devotion to oratory.

Mārcus Tullius Cicerō, equestrī genere, Arpīnī, quod est Volscōrum oppidum, nātus est. Ex eius avīs ūnus verrūcam

1. **nūntiōs dē sē**: *i.e.* the messengers who were sent to report his coming.

2. **īnflātīs ūtribus**: 'upon inflated bladders' or 'skins'; 163, *b*.

3. **Cicerō**: Cicero was born in 106 B.C. and died in 43. **equestrī genere**: 'the equestrian order.' For the case see 170. The knights (*equitēs*) were originally the cavalry of the state, consisting of the richest citizens. The *equitēs* ceased to serve in the field in the year 139 B.C., their place being taken by Gauls, Numidians, etc. Between the First and Second Punic Wars the equestrian order came into being, consisting of those who possessed a fortune of 400,000 sesterces ($20,000). It was thus an aristocracy of wealth, occupying a position in the state between the nobility (*ōrdō senātōrius*; see note to p. 58, l. 1) and the common people. The members of the order wore two narrow purple stripes on the tunic and a gold ring, and the first fourteen rows of seats in the theater behind the orchestra were assigned to them. For fuller details, see Granrud, *Roman Constitutional History*.



Cicero.

Arpīnī: 'at Arpinum,' a small town about fifty miles southeast of Rome, also the birthplace of Marius; 176.

4. **Volscōrum**: an ancient people of central Italy, southeast of

in extrēmō nāsō sitam habuit, ciceris grānō similem; inde cognōmen Cicerōnis gentī inditum. Suādentibus quibusdam ut id nōmen mūtāret, "Dabō operam," inquit, "ut istud cognōmen nōbilissimōrum nōminum splendōrem vincat." Cum ā patre Rōmam missus, ubi celeberrimōrum magi- 5

Arpinum.

The birthplace of Cicero and of Gaius Marius.

Rome, included within the limits of Latium in its widest extent. The Romans waged several wars with them in the early days of their history. **verrūcam**: 'a wart.'

1. **in extrēmō nāsō**: 'on the end of his nose'; see 192. **ciceris**: 'chick-pea.' **grānō**: 157. *Grānō* refers to the individual and *ciceris* to the species; the two together may be translated 'a chick-pea.'

2. **cognōmen**: see note to p. 58, l. 1. Some think that the family of the Ciceros derived its name from an ancestor who was a successful cultivator of that vegetable.

3. **ut mūtāret**: 260. **Dabō operam**: 'I shall see to it.' **istud**: note the force of the pronoun = 'that surname which you criticize,' or something similar (81, *a*).

5. **Cum**: with *disceret*. **ubi**: = *ut ibi;* 230.

strōrum scholīs interesset, eās artēs disceret, quibus aetās puerīlis ad hūmānitātem solet īnfōrmārī, tantō successū tantāque cum praeceptōrum tum cēterōrum discipulōrum admīrātiōne id fēcit, ut, cum fāma dē Cicerōnis ingeniō et doctrīnā ad aliōs mānāsset, nōn paucī quī eius videndī et audiendī grātiā scholās adīrent repertī esse dīcantur.

Cum nūllā rē magis ad summōs in rē pūblicā honōrēs viam mūnīrī posse intellegeret quam arte dīcendī et ēloquentiā, tōtō animō in eius studium incubuit; in quō quidem ita versātus est, ut nōn sōlum eōs quī in Forō et iūdiciīs causās perōrārent studiōsē sectārētur, sed prīvātim quoque dīligentissimē sē exercēret.

---

2. **ad hūmānitātem . . . īnfōrmārī** : 'is usually (lit. 'is wont to be') molded to refinement'; in other words, the elements of a liberal education. **tantō successū** : 166.

3. **tantāque . . . admīrātiōne** : note the order. **cum . . . tum** : 'both . . . and' or 'not only . . . but also.'

5. **mānāsset** : 'had made its way'; lit. 'had flowed.' **nōn paucī** : 'very many'; 289.

6. **scholās** : 132. **adīrent** : for the mood see 233. *Repertī esse* is equivalent to an expression of existence, *erant quī*. **repertī** : for the case see 274, *a*.

7. **in rē pūblicā** : 'in the state,' 'in public life.'

8. **viam mūnīrī posse** : 'the road could be opened'; see note to p. 75, l. 11, above.

9. **tōtō animō** : see note on *tantō successū*, l. 2, above. **eius** : = *artis dīcendī*. **incubuit** : a strong expression, suggesting 'throwing oneself into' a piece of work or 'bending to' an oar.

10. **versātus est** : 'busied himself'; the passive not infrequently has reflexive (or 'middle') force.

11. **iūdiciīs** : 'the courts,' held in the basilicas about the Forum. **sectārētur** : intensive of *sequor*, 'attached himself to.' This was the usual way of preparing for the practise of law; there were no schools of law.

12. **sē exercēret** : Cicero's success as an orator was due in no small measure to his constant efforts for self-improvement.

He withdraws to Greece. The quaestorship.

Prīmum ēloquentiam et lībertātem adversus Sullānōs ostendit. Nam cum Rōscium quendam, parricīdī accūsātum, ob Chrȳsogonī, Sullae lībertī, quī in eius adversāriīs erat, potentiam nēmō dēfendere audēret, tantā ēloquentiae vī eum dēfendit Cicerō ut iam tum in arte dīcendī nūllus eī pār esse vidērētur. Ex quō invidiam veritus, Athēnās studiōrum grātiā petiit, ubi Antiochum philosophum studiōsē audīvit. Inde ēloquentiae causā Rhodum sē contulit, ubi Molōnem, Graecum rhētorem tum disertissimum, magistrum habuit. Quī cum Cicerōnem dīcentem audīvisset, flēvisse dīcitur, quod per hunc Graecia ēloquentiae laude prīvārētur.

Rōmam reversus quaestor Siciliam habuit. Nūllīus vērō quaestūra aut grātior aut clārior fuit; cum magna tum esset

---

1. **Prīmum**: 'first,' 'to begin with.' **lībertātem**: 'independence.' **Sullānōs**: 'the party of Sulla,' 'Sulla's adherents.'

2. **Rōscium quendam**: 'a man named Roscius, one Roscius.' *Rōscium* is the object of *dēfendere*. Before attempting a translation of this sentence, read it slowly and carefully in Latin, noting the order of the words and their relation to one another. **parricīdī**: 145.

3. **ob Chrȳsogonī**: modifies *potentiam*. **in**: 'among.' **eius**: = *Rōscī*.

4. **tantā vī**: 166.

5. **iam tum**: 'even then.' **nūllus**: used substantively, = *nēmō*.

6. **eī**: 157. **Ex quō**: 'from this' (202), *i.e.* from his defense of Roscius. The antecedent of *quō* is the entire preceding sentence.

7. **studiōrum grātiā**: 'for the purpose of study.'

8. **Rhodum**: see note to p. 60, l. 9.

9. **Molōnem**: see note to p. 61, l. 1. **tum**: 'at that time.' Note the order.

11. **laude**: 158. **prīvārētur**: 241.

13. **quaestor**: sc. *ille*. 'as quaestor.' Cf. *quaestōrī*, p. 62, l. 7. **Siciliam habuit**: as his sphere of duty; see note to p. 62, l. 7.

annōnae difficultās, initiō molestus erat Siculīs, quōs cōgeret frūmenta in urbem mittere; posteā vērō, dīligentiam et iūstitiam et cōmitātem eius expertī, maiōrēs quaestōrī suō honōrēs quam ūllī umquam praetōrī dētulērunt. Ē Siciliā reversus Rōmam, in causīs dīcendīs ita flōruit ut inter omnēs causārum patrōnōs et esset et habērētur prīnceps.

Conspiracy of Catiline; brilliant career of Catiline's great-grandfather.

Cōnsul deinde factus, L. Sergī Catilīnae coniūrātiōnem singulārī virtūte, cōnstantiā, cūrā compressit. Catilīnae proavum, M. Sergium, incrēdibilī fortitūdine fuisse Plīnius refert. Stīpendia is fēcit secundō bellō Pūnicō. Secundō stīpendiō dextram manum perdidit; stīpendiīs duōbus ter et vīciēns vulnerātus est; ob id neutrā manū, neutrō pede satis ūtilis, plūrimīsque posteā stīpendiīs dēbilis mīles erat.

---

1. **annōnae difficultās**: 'shortage in the grain supply.' **quōs . . . cōgeret**: 'because he forced them'; see 202 and 241.

2. **vērō**: 'but.'

4. **quam ūllī . . . praetōrī**: sc. *dētulerant.*

5. **ita flōruit**: 'was so successful.'

6. **causārum patrōnōs**: 'advocates.' **et esset et habērētur**: *i.e.* he was and was admitted to be.

7. **Cōnsul . . . factus**: in 63 B.C.

9. **proavum**: 'great-grandfather.' **Plīnius**: referring to C. Plinius Secundus, the elder Pliny, author of the celebrated *Natural History.* He was born at Novum Comum in 23 B.C. and lost his life during the eruption of Mt. Vesuvius in 79 A.D., by which Pompeii was destroyed.

10. **Stīpendia . . . fēcit**: see note to p. 60, l. 8. **secundō . . . Pūnicō**: 218–202 B.C. For the case see 181. **Secundō stīpendiō**: 'in his second campaign'; 181.

11. **stīpendiīs duōbus**: 182.

12. **neutrā manū**: 171.

13. **ūtilis**: sc. *erat.* **plūrimīs stīpendiīs**: 180. **dēbilis**: 'though crippled.' **mīles erat**; he continued to serve as a soldier.'

Bis ab Hannibale captus, bis vinculōrum eius profugus, vīgintī mēnsibus nūllō nōn diē in catēnīs aut compedibus cūstōdītus. Sinistrā manū sōlā quater pugnāvit, duōbus equīs īnsidente eō suffossīs. Dextram sibi ferream fēcit eāque religātā proeliātus Cremōnam obsidiōne exēmit, Placentiam tūtātus est, duodēna castra hostium in Galliā

Palermo.

To-day the principal port of Sicily; it is not far from Lilybaeum, where Cicero was quaestor (p. 85, l. 13). In the background is Monte Pellegrino, called in ancient times Ercte.

---

1. **vinculōrum**: objective gen. with *profugus*, = *ē vinculīs*.

2. **vīgintī mēnsibus**: 180. **nūllō nōn diē**: *every day*. See note on *nōn ignōrābat*, p. 81, l. 2, above. **catēnīs aut compedibus**: 'chains or fetters.'

3. **duōbus . . . suffossīs**: an abl. abs. within an abl. abs. He had two horses killed under him.

4. **Dextram**: sc. *manum;* note the gender. *Dextram* has become so thoroughly substantivized that it is modified by an adj. (*ferream*).

5. **religātā**: 'fastened on.' **Cremōnam**: 'Cremona,' a town of Cisalpine Gaul, on the river Po (Padus). **obsidiōne**: 158.

6. **Placentiam**: 'Placentia,' a city of Cisalpine Gaul on the river Po, modern Piacenza. **duodēna**: 74.

cēpit. "Cēterī profectō," Plīnius addit, "victōrēs hominum fuēre, Sergius vīcit etiam fortūnam."

Cicero drives Catiline from the city; the other conspirators are put to death.

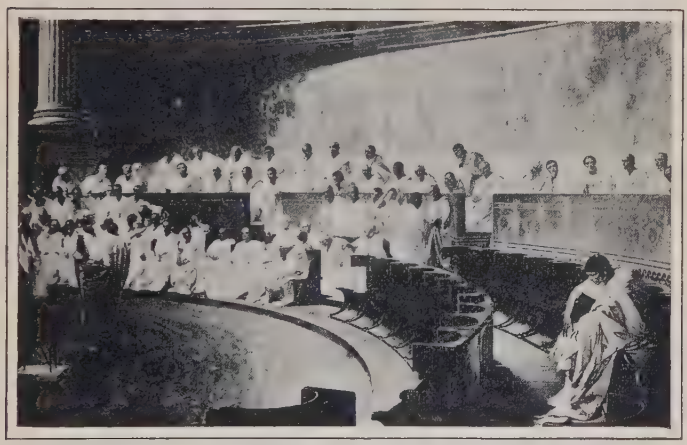
Singulārem huius virī glōriam foedē dēhonestāvit pronepōtis scelus. Hīc enim reī familiāris, quam profūderat, inopiā multōrumque scelerum cōnscientiā in furōrem āctus et dominandī cupiditāte incēnsus indignātusque, quod in petītiōne cōnsulātūs repulsam passus esset, coniūrātiōne factā senātum cōnfodere, cōnsulēs trucīdāre, urbem incendere, dīripere aerārium cōnstituerat. Āctum erat dē pulcherrimō imperiō, nisi illa coniūratiō in Cicerōnem et Antōnium cōnsulēs incidisset, quōrum alter industriā rem patefēcit, alter manū oppressit. Cum Cicerō habitō senātū in praesentem reum perōrāsset, Catilīna, incendium suum

---

1. **profectō**: adv., 'indeed.' **hominum**: 'over men'; see note on *Āfricānī bellī*, p. 73, l. 1, above.
2. **etiam**: 'as well,' or 'even.'
3. **foedē dēhonestāvit**: 'shamefully dishonored.'
4. **reī familiāris**: 'property.'
5. **inopiā**: 165.
6. **dominandī**: 'for power'; objective gen.
7. **passus esset**: 241.
8. **trucīdāre**: 'to massacre.'
9. **aerārium**: 'the treasury.' **Āctum erat dē**: 'it would have been all over with,' lit. 'it was.' For the mood see 247.
10. **in . . . cōnsulēs incidisset**: 'had happened in the consulship of Cicero and Antonius'; lit. 'had fallen into.'
11. **alter . . . alter**: = Cicero . . . Antonius. The latter had command of the army sent against Catiline, although he was prevented by illness (real or assumed) from taking part in the decisive battle.
12. **habitō senātū**: 'after calling the Senate together,' 'in a meeting of the Senate.'
13. **in praesentem reum**: 'against the guilty man in person.'

ruīnā sē restīnctūrum esse minitāns, Rōmā profugit et ad exercitum quem parāverat proficīscitur, signa illātūrus urbī.

Sed sociī eius, quī in urbe remānserant, comprehēnsī in carcere necātī sunt. A. Fulvius, vir senātōriī ōrdinis, fīlium, iuvenem et ingeniō et fōrmā inter aequālēs nitentem, prāvō cōnsiliō Catilīnae amīcitiam secūtum inque castra



Cicero arraigns Catiline.

Cicero delivers his First Oration against Catiline to the Senate, November 8, 63 B.C. The senators showed their feelings by vacating the seats in Catiline's vicinity.

1. **ruīnā** : that is, 'general ruin.'
2. **illātūrus** : see note on *vindicātūrus*, p. 69, l. 12, above.
4. **comprehēnsī . . . necātī sunt** : trans. by two finite verbs.
5. **in carcere** : in the *Tulliānum*, the lower, circular dungeon of the *Carcer*, the oldest prison at Rome, which is still to be seen on the eastern slope of the Capitoline Hill, near the Forum. The *Tulliānum* seems to have been originally a reservoir, and to have derived its name from *tullī*, 'springs.' **senātōriī ōrdinis** : see notes to p. 58, l. 1, and on *equestrī genere*, p. 82, l. 3.
6. **ingeniō et fōrmā** : 171. **nitentem** : 'conspicuous.'
7. **secūtum** : trans. by a relative clause.

eius ruentem, ex mediō itinere retrāctum suppliciō mortis affēcit, praefātus nōn sē Catilīnae illum adversus patriam, sed patriae adversus Catilīnam genuisse.

Defeat and death of Catiline; his desperate valor. Cicero gives the Gods the credit for his success.

Neque eō magis ab inceptō Catilīna dēstitit, sed īnfēstīs signīs Rōmam petēns Antōnī exercitū opprimitur. Quam atrōciter dīmicātum sit exitus docuit; nēmō hostium bellō superfuit; quem quisque in pugnandō cēperat locum, eum āmissā animā tegēbat. Catilīna longē ā suīs inter hostium cadāvera repertus est; pulcherrimā morte, sī prō patriā sīc concidisset!

Senātus populusque Rōmānus Cicerōnem patrem patriae appellāvit. Cicerō ipse in ōrātiōne prō Sullā palam praedicat cōnsilium patriae servandae fuisse iniectum sibi ā diīs, cum Catilīna coniūrāsset adversus eam. "Ō diī immortālēs," inquit, "vōs profectō incendistis tum animum meum cupiditāte cōnservandae patriae. Vōs āvocāstis mē ā cōgitātiōnibus omnibus cēterīs et convertistis ad salūtem ūnam

1. **retrāctum . . . affēcit**: trans. by two finite verbs. **suppliciō mortis**: a Roman father had the power of life and death over his sons.

2. **praefātus**: 'first declaring' (277). **Catilīnae . . . patriae**: 'for Catiline . . . for his country'; 148.

4. **eō**: 'on that account,' referring to the fate of the conspirators who had been left in Rome. **īnfēstīs . . . signīs**: 'in hostile array.'

5. **opprimitur**: 208.

6. **dīmicātum sit**: note the tense and see 223.

7. **quem locum, eum**: = *eum locum, quem.*

9. **pulcherrimā morte**: sc. *concidisset;* for the case see note on *tantō successū*, p. 84, l. 2, above. The apodosis of the conditional sentence is implied in *pulcherrimā morte;* see 248.

13. **fuisse iniectum sibi**: 'was inspired in him'; *fuisse iniectum* is equivalent to *iniectum esse.*

15. **profectō**: the adverb.

patriae. Vōs dēnique praetulistis mentī meae clārissimum lūmen in tenebrīs tantīs errōris et īnscientiae. Tribuam enim vōbīs quae sunt vestra. Nec vērō possum tantum dare ingeniō meō, ut dīspexerim sponte meā in tempestāte illā turbulentissimā reī pūblicae quid esset optimum factū."

Cicero's exile and recall.

Paucīs post annīs Cicerōnī diem dīxit Clōdius tribūnus plēbis, quod cīvēs Rōmānōs indictā causā necāvisset. Senātus maestus, tamquam in pūblicō lūctū, veste mūtātā prō eō dēprecābātur. Cicerō, cum posset armīs salūtem suam dēfendere, māluit urbe cēdere, quam suā causā caedem fierī. Proficīscentem omnēs bonī flentēs prōsecūtī sunt. Dein Clōdius ēdictum prōposuit, ut Mārcō Tulliō īgnī et aquā

2. **errōris . . . īnscientiae** : 139.

3. **quae** : sc. *ea.* **tantum dare** : 'give so much credit.'

4. **ut dīspexerim** : elliptical result clause = *ut dīcam mē dīspexisse*, 'as to say that I saw.'

5. **reī pūblicae** : subjective gen. **factū** : 287.

6. **Paucīs . . . annīs** : 168. **diem dīxit** : 'brought to trial'; lit. 'named a day' for trial.

7. **quod necāvisset** : note the mood; 'alleging that' (241). **cīvēs Rōmānōs** : *i.e.* the Catilinarian conspirators. **indictā causā** : 'without a trial'; 169.

8. **veste mūtātā** : 'in mourning garb.' The meaning is given by the context; cf. p. 59, l. 4.

9. **dēprecābātur** : 'begged for his pardon'; lit. 'begged off (*dē*).' **cum** : 'although.'

10. **quam** : = *potius quam*, 'rather than.' **suā causā** : 'on his account'; *suā* is equivalent to a subjective gen.

11. **Proficīscentem** : sc. *eum.* **omnēs bonī** : the term by which Cicero designates the senatorial party.

12. **ēdictum prōposuit** : sc. *populō*, in his capacity of *tribūnus plēbis.* **ut Mārcō Tulliō . . . interdīcerētur** : the regular formula for banishment. For the constr. of *Mārcō Tulliō* see 149, *b*; for that of *īgnī* and *aquā*, 158.

interdīcerētur; illīus domum et vīllās incendit. Sed **vīs** illa nōn diūturna fuit; mox enim tōtus ferē populus Rōmānus ingentī dēsīderiō Cicerōnis reditum flāgitāre coepit, et maximō omnium ōrdinum studiō Cicerō in patriam revocātus est. Nihil per tōtam vītam Cicerōnī itinere quō in patriam rediit, accidit iūcundius. Obviam eī redeuntī ab ūniversīs itum est; domus eius pūblicā pecūniā restitūta est.

The Civil Wars. Cicero arraigns Antony. Murder of Cicero.

Gravissimae illā tempestāte inter Caesarem et Pompeium ortae sunt inimīcitiae, ut rēs nisi bellō dirimī nōn posse vidērētur. Cicerō quidem summō studiō ēnītēbātur ut eōs inter sē reconciliāret et ā bellī cīvīlis calamitātibus dēterrēret, sed cum neutrum ad pācem ineundam permovēre posset, Pompeium secūtus est. Sed victō Pompeiō, ā Caesare victōre veniam ultrō accēpit. Quō interfectō, Octāviānum,

1. **domum et vīllās**: *i.e.* his city house and his country residences, of which he had a considerable number.

2. **diūturna**: 'long continued, lasting.'

3. **ingentī dēsīderiō**: 169.

4. **maximō . . . studiō**: 169. **omnium ōrdinum**: namely, the senatorial and equestrian orders and the common people.

5. **per tōtam vītam**: 'throughout his whole life'; stronger than *tōtam vītam*. **itinere**: with *iūcundius*, 161. **quō**: 163, *d*.

6. **Obviam . . . itum est**: 'everybody went to meet him on his return;' *eī* is dat. governed by *obviam*. *Itum est* is impersonal.

7. **pūblicā pecūniā**: 'at the public expense'; 164.

8. **Gravissimae**: modifying *inimīcitiae;* note the emphatic position.

9. **ut**: = *ita ut*. **rēs . . . dirimī nōn posse**: 'the matter could not be settled.' **nisi**: 'except.'

10. **quidem**: 'for his part.' **summō studiō**: 166.

14. **veniam**: 'pardon.' **ultrō**: 'freely, without solicitation.' **Octāviānum**: C. Octavius after his adoption by Julius Caesar took the name of *C. Iūlius Caesar Octāviānus*, after the usual custom. He received the title *Augustus* in 27 B.C.

Caesaris hērēdem, fōvit, Antōnium impugnāvit effēcitque ut ā senātū hostis iūdicārētur.

Sed Antōnius, initā cum Octāviānō societāte, Cicerōnem iam diū sibi inimīcum prōscrīpsit. Quā rē audītā, Cicerō trānsversīs itineribus in vīllam quae ā marī proximē aberat fūgit indeque nāvem cōnscendit, in Macedoniam trānsitūrus. Unde aliquotiēns in altum prōvectum cum modo ventī adversī rettulissent, modo ipse iactātiōnem maris patī nōn posset, taedium tandem eum et fugae et vītae cēpit, regres-

---

1. **Antōnium**: see note to p. 76, l. 7, above.

4. **iam diū . . . inimīcum**: 'who had long been his (personal) enemy.

5. **trānsversīs**: 'cross-country.' **itineribus**: see note on *quō*, p. 92, l. 5. **ā marī . . . aberat**: 'was nearest to the sea.' Note the Latin idiom, 'was nearest, reckoning (away) from the sea.'

9. **Macedoniam**: a country to the north of Greece. **trānsitūrus**: see note on *vindicātūrus*, p. 69, l. 12.

7. **Unde**: 'from there,' *i.e.* from his villa near Formiae in Latium. **aliquotiēns**: 'several times.' **in altum**: sc. *mare*. **prōvectum**: sc. *eum*. **modo . . . modo**: 'now . . . now.'

8. **iactātiōnem maris**: that is, he was seasick.

Octavian.

First named C. Octavius, then, after his adoption by Julius Caesar, C. Iulius Caesar Octavianus, and after 27 B.C. Augustus.

9. **fugae et vītae**: objective gen. governed by *taedium;* cf. *taedet* with gen. (146).

susque ad vīllam, "Moriar," inquit, "in patriā saepe servātā." Satis cōnstat, adventantibus percussōribus, servōs fortiter fidēliterque parātōs fuisse ad dīmicandum, ipsum dēpōnī lectīcam et quiētōs patī quod sors inīqua cōgeret iussisse. Prōminentī ex lectīcā et immōtam cervīcem praebentī caput praecīsum est. Manūs quoque abscīsae; caput relātum est ad Antōnium eiusque iussū cum dextrā manū in rōstrīs positum.

Cicero's patriotism; his philosophical works.

Quam diū rēs pūblica Rōmāna per eōs gerēbātur quibus sē ipsa commīserat, in eam cūrās cōgitātiōnēsque ferē omnēs suās cōnferēbat Cicerō et plūs operae pōnēbat in agendō quam in scrībendō. Cum autem dominātū ūnīus Iūlī Caesaris omnia tenērentur, nōn sē angōribus dēdidit nec indignīs homine doctō voluptātibus. Fugiēns cōnspectum

1. **Moriar**: 228. **saepe servātā**: trans. by a rel. clause with a verb in the first person of the perf. active.

4. **dēpōnī . . . patī**: depending on *iussisse*. **lectīcam**: litters for sick persons and invalids seem to have been in use at Rome from the earliest times. They were covered and inclosed with curtains, or with sides in which there were windows, and resembled a sedan chair. In later times they were used by people in health, especially in traveling. **quiētōs**: 'quietly.' Really an adj. agreeing with *servōs*. **cōgeret**: 268.

5. **Prōminentī**: sc. *eī;* see 153.

6. **abscīsae**: sc. *sunt*.

7. **iussū**: see note on *mōre*, p. 72, l. 4, above.

8. **rōstrīs**: see note to p. 76, l. 9.

9. **Quam diū**: 'as long as'; for the constr. see 237.

10. **ipsa**: = *rēs pūblica*.

11. **plūs operae pōnēbat in**: 'gave more attention to.' For the case of *operae* see 138.

12. **dominātū**: 163.

13. **angōribus**: 'melancholy, brooding.'

14. **homine**: 172.

Forī urbisque rūra peragrābat, abdēbatque sē quantum licēbat, et sōlus erat. Nihil agere autem cum animus nōn posset, exīstimāvit honestissimē molestiās posse dēpōnī, sī sē ad philosophiam rettulisset, cui adulēscēns multum temporis tribuerat, et omne studium cūramque convertit ad scrī-
bendum; atque ut cīvibus etiam ōtiōsus aliquid prōdesse posset, ēlabōrāvit ut doctiōrēs fierent et sapientiōrēs, plūraque brevī tempore ēversā rē pūblicā scrīpsit quam multīs annīs eā stante scrīpserat. Sīc fācundiae et Latīnārum litterārum parēns ēvāsit pāruitque virōrum sapientium praeceptō, quī docent nōn sōlum ex malīs ēligere minima oportēre, sed etiam excerpere ex hīs ipsīs, sī quid īnsit bonī.

Specimens of his wit.

Multa exstant facētē ab eō dicta. Cum Lentulum, generum suum, exiguae statūrae hominem, vīdisset longō gladiō

1. **rūra**: 'the country,' *i.e.* he went from one of his country residences to another. See p. 92, l. 1.

2. **Nihil . . . nōn**: the two negatives neutralize each other, 'since his mind must be busy' or 'occupied.'

3. **honestissimē**: 'most honorably.'

4. **rettulisset**: representing the thought of Cicero, *sī rettulerō;* 271. **adulēscēns**: 'in his youth.'

6. **aliquid**: 125, *a.*

7. **ut . . . fierent**: 260.

8. **brevī tempore**: 182. **ēversā rē pūblicā**: 'after the overthrow of the republic.' See 280.

9. **eā**: = *rē pūblicā.* Trans. *eā stante* by a temporal clause.

10. **ēvāsit**: 'he finally became,' 'turned out to be.'

11. **oportēre**: sc. *nōs* or *hominēs.*

12. **ex hīs ipsīs**: 'from evils themselves.' **si quid īnsit bonī**: 'whatever good there may be in them.' For the mood of *īnsit* see 268; for the case of *bonī*, 138.

13. **facētē ab eō dicta**: 'witty sayings of his'; lit. 'things wittily said by him.'

14. **exiguae statūrae**: 140. Cf. *excelsā statūrā*, p. 81, l. 5, above. **gladiō**: 163, *d.*

accīnctum, "Quis," inquit, "generum meum ad gladium alligāvit?"

Mātrōna quaedam, iūniōrem sē quam erat simulāns, dictitābat sē trīgintā tantum annōs habēre; cui Cicerō, "Vērum est," inquit, "nam hōc vīgintī annōs audiō."

Caesar, alterō cōnsule mortuō diē Decembris ultimā, Canīnium cōnsulem hōrā septimā in reliquam diēī partem re-

The Islands of the Sirens.

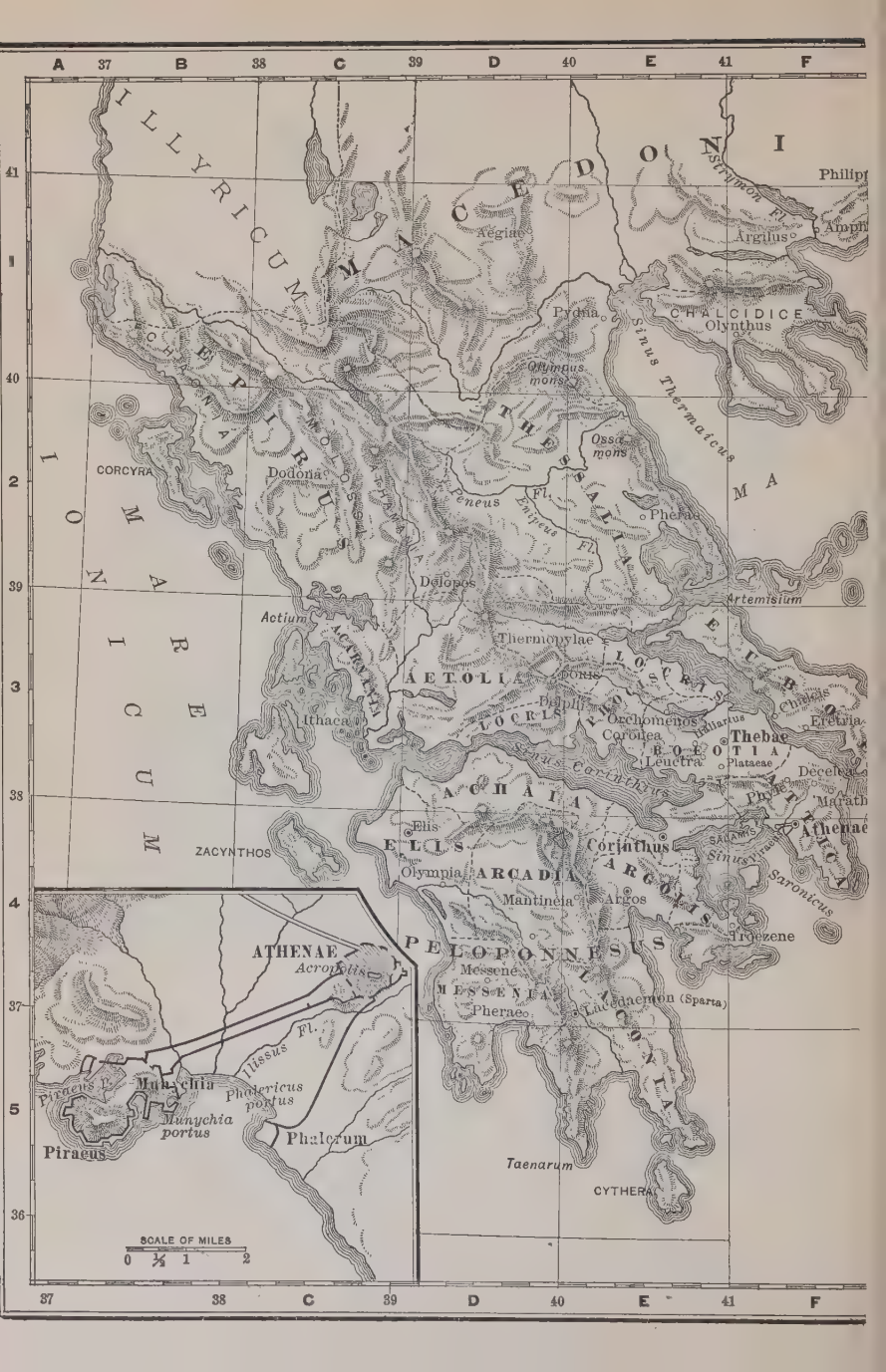
3. **iūniōrem sē**: sc. *esse*. **dictitābat**: note the force of the intensive verb; cf. *sectārētur*, p. 84, l. 11, above.

4. **tantum**: 'only.'

5. **audiō**: note the tense; see 207, *a*.

6. **alterō cōnsule**: 'the other consul,' that is, Caesar's colleague. **diē Decembris ultimā**: the newly elected consuls would enter office on the following day, January 1.

7. **horā septimā**: about 1 P.M.



ILLYRICUM
MACEDONI
Philipp
Strymon Fl.
Amph
Argilus
Aegiae
Pydna
CHALCIDICE
Olynthus
Sinus Thermaicus
Olympus mons
Ossa mons
THESSALIA
EPIRUS
CHAONIA
MOLOSSIS
CORCYRA
Dodona
Peneus Fl.
Enipeus Fl.
Pherae
MA
IONICUM
MARE
Delopes
Artemisium
Actium
ACARNANIA
Thermopylae
AETOLIA
LOCRIS
Doris
Delphi
Ithaca
Orchomenos
Haliartus
Chalcis
Eretria
Coronea
Thebae
BOEOTIA
Leuctra
Plataeae
Sinus Corinthius
Decelea
Phyle
Marath
ACHAIA
ATTICA
Athenae
Elis
ELIS
Corinthus
SALAMIS
Sinus Piraeus
Saronicus
ZACYNTHOS
Olympia
ARCADIA
ARGOLIS
Mantineia
Argos
Troezene
PELOPONNESUS
Messene
MESSENIA
Pherae
Lacedaemon (Sparta)
LACONIA
Taenarum
CYTHERA
ATHENAE
Acropolis
Ilissus Fl.
Piraeus P.
Munychia
Phalericus portus
Munychia portus
Phalerum
Piraeus
SCALE OF MILES
0 ½ 1 2

F 42 G 43 H 44 I 45 K 46 L
41
40
39
38
37
36
1
2
3
4
5
THRACIA
Philippi
Amphipolis
THASOS
ISAMOTHRACE
Aegos F.
Sestos
Lampsacus
Cyzicus
Propontis
Bizanthe
Ornithus
Cathetos
Caphias
Pactye
BITHYNIA
PHRYGIA
LEMNOS
Sigeum
Hellespontus
Colonae
Scamander Fl.
MYSIA
LESBOS
Mitylene
Pergamum
Caicus Fl.
SCYROS
Grynium
LYDIA
Cyme
Hermus Fl.
Sardes
Chalcis
Eretria
CHIOS
Decelea
Marathon
Athenae
Ephesus
Magnesia
Meander Fl.
SAMOS
Myus
Mycale
CARIA
Miletus
Delos
PAROS
Paros
NAXOS
Halicarnassus
Cnidus
Rhodos
RHODOS
MARE AEGAEUM
CYCLADES
SPORADES
GRAECIA CUM INSULIS
ET
ORIS MARIS AEGAEI
SCALE OF MILES
10 20 40 60 80 100

nūntiāverat; quem cum plērīque īrent salūtātum dē mōre, "Festīnēmus," inquit Cicerō, "priusquam abeat magistrātū." Dē eōdem Canīniō scrīpsit Cicerō: "Fuit mīrificā vigilantiā Canīnius, quī tōtō suō cōnsulātū somnum nōn vīderit."

---

1. **salūtātum**: 286. **dē mōre**: 185, 3, *d*.
2. **Festīnēmus**: 225. **abeat**: 239.
4. **vīderit**: 242; for the tense see note on *dīmicātum sit*, p. 90, l. 6, above.

CORNELIUS NEPOS

I. Hamilcar

The defence of Eryx; Catulus grants Hamilcar honorable terms.

1. Hamilcar, Hannibalis fīlius, cognōmine Barca, Carthāginiēnsis, prīmō Poenicō bellō, sed temporibus extrēmīs, admodum adulēscentulus in Siciliā praeesse coepit exercituī. Cum ante eius adventum et marī et terrā male rēs gererentur Carthāginiēnsium, ipse ubi affuit, numquam hostī cessit neque locum nocendī dedit, saepeque ē contrāriō, occāsiōne datā, lacessīvit semperque superior discessit.

Quō factō, cum paene omnia in Siciliā Poenī āmīsissent, ille Erycem sīc dēfendit ut bellum eō locō gestum nōn

---

1. 1. **Hannibalis**: grandfather of the great Hannibal. **cognōmine**: 171. **Barca**: Latin form of *βάρκᾶς*, meaning 'lightning.'

2. **Poenicō**: = *Pūnicō*. **temporibus extrēmīs**: 'towards the end.' Hamilcar came into Sicily in 247 B.C., seventeen years after the beginning of the war, which lasted from 264 to 241.

3. **admodum adulēscentulus**: 'at a very early age.' *Admodum*, an adv., modifies the adjectival idea in *adulēscentulus*. **exercituī**: 149, *b*.

4. **et marī et terrā**: the usual form of this expression is **terrā marīque**. For the constr. see 176. **malē rēs gererentur**: the Carthaginians retained only a few strongholds in Sicily, but held the supremacy on the sea.

5. **ipse**: emphasized by its position.

6. **locum**: 'opportunity.'

7. **lacessīvit**: sc. *hostem*.

9. **bellum . . . nōn vidērētur**: 'that the war did not seem to have been finished in that quarter.'

vidērētur. Interim Carthāginiēnsēs, classe apud īnsulās Aegātēs ā C. Lutātiō, cōnsule Rōmānōrum, superātī, statuērunt bellī facere fīnem eamque rem arbitriō permīsērunt Hamilcaris. Ille etsī flagrābat bellandī cupiditāte, tamen pācī serviendum putāvit, quod patriam exhaustam sūmptibus diūtius calamitātēs bellī ferre nōn posse intellegēbat, sed ita ut statim mente agitāret, sī

Carthage.

The cisterns which supplied the ancient city with water.

1. **apud īnsulās Aegātēs**: in 241 B.C. The Aegates were a group of three islands near the promontory of Lilybaeum, in the western part of Sicily.

2. **C. Lutātiō**: C. Lutātius Catulus.

3. **arbitriō permīsērunt**: 'intrusted the matter to the discretion of.'

5. **serviendum**: sc. *esse*, 'ought to be striven for.'

7. **sed ita ut**: 'but with the idea that.' The meaning is, that peace should be sought, but only for the purpose of gaining strength for a future war. With *ita* sc. *serviendum*.

paulum modo rēs essent refectae, bellum renovāre Rōmānōsque armīs persequī, dōnicum aut virtūte vīcissent aut victī manūs dedissent.

Hōc cōnsiliō pācem conciliāvit, in quō tantā fuit ferōciā, cum Catulus negāret bellum compositūrum, nisi ille cum suīs, quī Erycem tenērent, armīs relīctīs Siciliā dēcēderent, ut succumbente patriā ipse peritūrum sē potius dīxerit, quam cum tantō flāgitiō domum redīret: nōn enim suae esse virtūtis arma ā patriā accepta adversus hostēs adversāriīs trādere. Huius pertināciae cessit Catulus.

Hamilcar suppresses the revolt of the mercenaries.

2. At ille ut Carthāginem vēnit, multō aliter ac spērārat rem pūblicam sē habentem cognōvit. Namque diūturnitāte externī malī tantum exārsit intestīnum bellum ut numquam in parī perīculō fuerit Carthāgō, nisi cum dēlēta est.

---

1. **essent refectae**: 271. Hamilcar's thought was, *sī rēs erunt refectae, bellum renovābimus.*

2. **dōnicum**: an old form of *dōnec.*

3. **manūs dedissent**: 'should submit'; lit. 'should stretch out their hands,' to receive fetters. The subj. represents the design of Hamilcar; in the dir. disc. we should have the fut. perf. ind.

4. **in quō**: 'and in this matter' (202, *a*); that is, in the negotiations for peace. **ferōciā**: 'high spirit.'

5. **compositūrum**: sc. *sē* and *esse.* **ille**: Hamilcar.

6. **dēcēderent**: plur. because *ille cum suīs* forms the subject; for the mood see 268.

7. **ut . . . dīxerit**: modifies *tantā ferōciā;* see 232 and for the tense of *dīxerit*, 223.

8. **suae . . . virtūtis**: = *suae virtūtī convenīre;* for the case see 135, *a.*

10. **cessit**: to the extent of letting them march out under arms.

2. 11. **vēnit**: 234. **aliter . . . sē habentem**: 'in a very different condition.' **spērārat**: 269.

12. **diūturnitāte**: 165.

14. **cum dēlēta est**: the *cum*-clause gives the date; see 285.

Prīmō mercennāriī mīlitēs, quibus adversus Rōmānōs ūsī erant, dēscīvērunt, quōrum numerus erat vīgintī mīlium. Iī tōtam abaliēnārunt Āfricam, ipsam Carthāginem oppugnārunt. Quibus malīs adeō sunt Poenī perterritī ut etiam auxilia ab Rōmānīs petierint; eaque impetrārunt.

Sed extrēmō, cum prope iam ad dēspērātiōnem pervēnissent, Hamilcarem imperātōrem fēcērunt. Is nōn sōlum hostēs ā mūrīs Carthāginis remōvit, cum amplius centum mīlia facta essent armātōrum, sed etiam eō compulit ut locōrum angustiīs clausī plūrēs famē quam ferrō interīrent. Omnia oppida abaliēnāta, in eīs Uticam atque Hippōnem, valentissima tōtīus Āfricae, restituit patriae. Neque eō fuit contentus, sed etiam fīnēs imperī prōpāgāvit, tōtā Āfricā tantum ōtium reddidit ut nūllum in eā bellum vidērētur multīs annīs fuisse.

He wages war successfully in Spain; his death.

3. Rēbus hīs ex sententiā perāctīs, fīdentī animō atque īnfēstō Rōmānīs, quō facilius causam bellandī reperīret,

---

2. **dēscīvērunt**: 'revolted.'

3. **abaliēnārunt**: 'caused to revolt.' **oppugnārunt**: 290.

5. **eaque impetrārunt**: the Romans sent no troops, but aided them in various ways.

7. **imperātōrem**: in 239 B.C.

8. **cum . . . facta essent**: *i.e.* although the number of the enemy had been increased to more than 100,000 men.

11. **abaliēnāta**: cf. *abaliēnārunt* (l. 3). Trans. by a rel. clause with the verb in the active voice.

12. **eō**: 165, *a*.

13. **tōtā Āfricā**: 175.

3. 16. **ex sententiā**: 'to his liking'; 185, 4, *d*. **fīdentī animō**: 169.

17. **Rōmānīs**: dat. with *īnfēstīs*. **causam**: 'pretext.' **bellandī**: sc. *cum Rōmānīs*.

effēcit ut imperātor cum exercitū in Hispāniam mitterētur, eōque sēcum dūxit fīlium Hannibalem annōrum novem. Erat praetereā cum eō adulēscēns illūstris, fōrmōsus, Hasdrubal, cui ille fīliam suam in mātrimōnium dedit. Dē hōc ideō mentiōnem fēcimus, quod, Hamilcare occīsō, ille exercituī praefuit rēsque magnās gessit, et prīnceps largītiōne vetustōs pervertit mōrēs Carthāginiēnsium, eiusdemque post mortem Hannibal ab exercitū accēpit imperium.

4. At Hamilcar, posteāquam mare trānsiit in Hispāniamque vēnit, magnās rēs secundā gessit fortūnā; maximās bellicōsissimāsque gentēs subēgit, equīs, armīs, virīs, pecūniā tōtam locuplētāvit Āfricam. Hīc cum in Italiam bellum īnferre meditārētur, nōnō annō postquam in Hispāniam vēnerat, in proeliō pugnāns adversus Vettonēs occīsus est. Huius perpetuum odium ergā Rōmānōs maximē concitāsse vidētur secundum bellum Poenicum; namque Hannibal, fīlius eius, assiduīs patris obtestātiōnibus eō est perductus ut interīre quam Rōmānōs nōn experīrī māllet.

---

1. **ut . . . mitterētur**: 261.

2. **annōrum novem**: 141.

3. **illūstris**: *i.e.* 'of noble birth.' **fōrmōsus**: note the derivation; see 111, *a*.

6. **prīnceps**: = *prīmus*. For the use see 191. **largītiōne**: with *pervertit*, 164.

4. 9. **trānsiit . . . vēnit**: 234.

10. **secundā . . . fortūnā**: 169.

12. **in Italiam . . . īnferre**: 'to carry war into Italy,' while *Italiae bellum īnferre* would mean 'to make war upon Italy.'

14. **vēnerat**: for the tense see 234, *a*. **Vettonēs**: a people of Lusitania, the modern Portugal.

17. **eō est perductus**: 'was so influenced'; more lit., 'was brought to such a pass.' *Eō* is the adv.

18. **Rōmānōs nōn experīrī**: *i.e.* than not to try conclusions with the Romans.

II. Hannibal

His military genius. His hatred of the Romans.

1. Hannibal, Hamilcaris fīlius, Carthāginiēnsis. Sī vērum est, quod nēmō dubitat, ut populus Rōmānus omnēs gentēs virtūte superārit, nōn est īnfitiandum Hannibalem tantō praestitisse cēterōs imperātōrēs prūdentiā, quantō populus Rōmānus antecēdat fortitūdine cūnctās nātiōnēs; nam quotiēnscumque cum eō congressus est in Italiā, semper discessit superior. Quod nisi domī cīvium suōrum invidiā dēbilitātus esset, Rōmānōs vidētur superāre potuisse. Sed multōrum obtrectātiō dēvīcit ūnīus virtūtem.

2. Hīc autem velut hērēditāte relīctum odium paternum ergā Rōmānōs sīc cōnservāvit, ut prius animam quam id

---

1. 1. **Hannibal**: no verb is to be supplied, but the nom. is used as a simple naming case, as in epitaphs, titles, and the like.

2. **ut . . . superārit**: a subst. clause, subject of *est* (261, N.). The usual construction with *vērum est* is the acc. and the infin.

4. **tantō . . . quantō**: 168. **imperātōrēs**: the dat. is the more usual construction. **prūdentiā . . . fortitūdine**: 171.

6. **quotiēnscumque**: 'as often as, whenever.' **cum eō**: *i.e. cum populō Rōmānō.* **congressus est**: the subject of the verb is *Hannibal.*

7. **discessit superior**: as we say, 'came off victor.' **Quod nisi**: 'and if he had not'; *quod* is really the neut. of the rel. pron., in the adverbial acc. (125, *a*) = 'as to which.'

8. **vidētur . . . potuisse**: 247. *Vidētur potuisse* is equivalent to *potuit, ut vidētur.*

9. **multōrum**: 136.

2. 10. **Hīc**: Hannibal.

11. **ergā Rōmānōs**: the best writers rarely use *ergā* of unfriendly feelings. Cf. *in Rōmānōs*, p. 104, l. 13, below.

Hannibal.

A bust in Naples bearing the name of Hannibal, but of doubtful authenticity.

dēposuerit, quī quidem, cum patriā pulsus esset et aliēnārum opum indigēret, numquam dēstiterit animō bellāre cum Rōmānīs. Nam ut omittam Philippum, quem absēns hostem reddidit Rōmānīs, omnium eius temporibus potentissimus rēx Antiochus fuit. Hunc tantā cupiditāte incendit bellandī, ut ūsque ā Rubrō Marī arma cōnātus sit īnferre Italiae.

Ad quem cum lēgātī vēnissent Rōmānī, quī dē eius voluntāte explōrārent darentque operam cōnsiliīs clandestīnīs ut Hannibalem in suspīciōnem rēgī addūcerent, tamquam ab ipsīs corruptus alia atque anteā sentīret, neque id frūstrā fēcissent, idque Hannibal comperisset sēque ab interiōribus cōnsiliīs sēgregārī vīdisset, tempore datō, adiit ad rēgem, eīque cum multa dē fidē suā et odiō in Rōmānōs commemorāsset, hōc adiūnxit: "Pater meus," inquit, "Hamilcar, puerulō mē, utpote nōn amplius novem annōs nātō, in

---

1. **quī quidem**: *i.e.* 'as is shown by the fact that he'; more lit. 'since he indeed' (202, *a*; 242). **patriā**: 158. The prep. is found with *pellō* in the best prose.

3. **omittam**: 231. **absēns**: *i.e.* without a personal interview, while he himself was carrying on war with the Romans in Italy. **hostem**: from 215 to 205 B.C.

4. **eius**: = *Hannibalis*.

6. **Rubrō Marī**: here refers to the Persian Gulf.

7. **quem**: = *Antiochum*. **dē . . . explōrārent**: *i.e.* find out what his intentions were.

8. **darent operam**: cf. p. 83, l. 3, above. **cōnsiliīs**: abl. of means modifying *addūcerent*.

9. **rēgī**: 151. **tamquam**: *i.e.* alleging that; 249.

10. **atque**: 'than.'

11. **fēcissent . . . comperisset . . . vīdisset**: governed by *cum*, like *vēnissent* in l. 7. **ab interiōribus cōnsiliīs**: *i.e.* of Antiochus; *interiōribus* means 'more confidential.'

12. **tempore**: 'opportunity.'

15. **puerulō mē**: 173; trans. by a temporal clause modifying *proficīscēns*. **annōs**: 162.

Hispāniam imperātor proficīscēns, Carthāgine Iovī optimō maximō hostiās immolāvit. Quae dīvīna rēs dum cōnficiēbātur, quaesīvit ā mē vellemne sēcum in castra proficīscī. Id cum libenter accēpissem atque ab eō petere coepissem nē dubitāret dūcere, tum ille, 'Faciam,' inquit, 'sī mihi fidem quam postulō dederis.' Simul mē ad āram addūxit, apud quam sacrificāre īnstituerat, eamque, cēterīs remōtīs, tenentem iūrāre iussit, numquam mē in amīcitiā cum Rōmānīs fore.

"Id ego iūsiūrandum patrī datum ūsque ad hanc aetātem ita cōnservāvī, ut nēminī dubium esse dēbeat quīn reliquō tempore eādem mente sim futūrus. Quā rē sī quid amīcē dē Rōmānīs cōgitābis, nōn imprūdenter fēceris, sī mē cēlāris; cum quidem bellum parābis, tē ipsum frūstrāberis, sī nōn mē in eō prīncipem posueris."

---

1. **Carthāgine**: 176. **Iovī optimō maximō**: the sacrifice was made to Baal, the great divinity of the Phoenicians and Carthaginians, but the Romans identified the gods of foreign nations with their own.

2. **cōnficiēbātur**: the pres. with *dum* is the rule, unless the action of the *dum*-clause and that of the main clause are coextensive in time; see 236 and 237, with Note.

3. **in castra proficīscī**: *i.e.* to go to war.

5. **nē dubitāret**: 260.

6. **fidem**: 'pledge.' **dederis**: the tense gives the meaning of 'if you will first give me'; 217.

8. **tenentem**: sc. *mē*. The person who took oath by a god before an altar laid hold of the altar.

9. **fore**: = *futūrum esse*.

11. **quīn sim futūrus**: 263. The more common construction in Nepos is the infin. **mē**: 128.

13. **cēlāris**: = *cēlāveris*.

14. **cum quidem**: 'when however'; 235.

15. **in eō**: *i.e. in bellō* or *in bellō parandō*. **posueris**: 'make,' or with *mē . . . prīncipem*, 'give me the first place.'

The war in Spain. . Hannibal invades Italy.

3. Hāc igitur quā dīximus aetāte cum patre in Hispāniam profectus est, cuius post obitum, Hasdrubale imperātōre suffectō, equitātuī omnī praefuit. Hōc quoque interfectō, exercitus summam imperī ad eum dētulit. Id Carthāginem dēlātum pūblicē comprobātum est. Sīc Hannibal minor quīnque et vīgintī annīs nātus imperātor factus, proximō trienniō omnēs gentēs Hispāniae bellō subēgit, Saguntum, foederātam cīvitātem, vī expugnāvit, trēs exercitūs maximōs comparāvit. Ex hīs ūnum in Āfricam mīsit, alterum cum Hasdrubale frātre in Hispāniā relīquit, tertium in Italiam sēcum dūxit. Ut saltum Pyrēnaeum trānsiit, quācumque iter fēcit cum omnibus incolīs cōnflīxit; nēminem nisi victum dīmīsit.

Ad Alpēs posteā quam vēnit, quā Italiam ab Galliā sēiungunt, quās nēmō umquam cum exercitū ante eum praeter Herculem Graium trānsierat — quō factō is hodiē

---

3. 1. **quā**: sc. *eum profectum esse.*

2. **cuius**: 'and . . . his (= *patris*).'

4. **summam imperī**: *summam* is a noun; for the case of *imperī* see 138. **dētulit**: 'offered.'

5. **Id**: 'that action,' of making Hannibal commander-in-chief. **dēlātum**: 'reported.' **pūblicē comprobātum est**: *i.e.* was officially ratified.

6. **minor . . . nātus**: 'at the age of less than twenty-five years.' Hannibal was in fact twenty-six years old at the time.

7. **trienniō**: 182.

8. **cīvitātem**: here = *urbem.* **vī expugnāvit**: 219 B.C.

9. **comparāvit**: 290.

11. **dūxit**: in 218 B.C. **saltum Pyrēnaeum**: 'the Pyrenees,' between Gaul (France) and Spain.

16. **Herculem Graium**: 'the Grecian Hercules.' Hercules was the Latin name for the Grecian god Heracles: see note to p. 63, l. 8. **quō factō**: 165.

saltus Graius appellātur — Alpicōs cōnantēs prohibēre trānsitū concīdit, loca patefēcit, itinera mūniit, effēcit ut eā elephantus ōrnātus īre posset, quā anteā ūnus homō inermis vix poterat rēpere. Hāc cōpiās trādūxit in Italiamque pervēnit.

He defeats the Romans in many battles. He outwits Fabius.

4. Cōnflīxerat apud Rhodanum cum P. Cornēliō Scīpiōne cōnsule eumque pepulerat. Cum hōc eōdem Clastidī apud Padum dēcernit sauciumque inde ac fugātum dīmittit. Tertiō īdem Scīpiō cum collēgā Ti. Longō apud Trebiam adversus eum vēnit. Cum eīs manum cōnseruit, utrōsque prōflīgāvit. Inde per Ligurēs Appennīnum trānsiit, petēns Etrūriam.

---

1. **Alpicōs**: the Alpine tribes.

2. **concīdit**: cut to pieces; *con-* is intensive. **mūniit**: 'built'; see note to p. 75, l. 11.

3. **eā . . . quā**: adverbs: 'there . . . where.' **ōrnātus**: *i.e.* 'fully equipped,' contrasted with *inermis*, as is *rēpere* with *īre*. The elephants carried towers. **ūnus homō**: 'a single man.'

4. **Hāc**: adv., 'by this route.'

4. 6. **Cōnflīxerat . . . pepulerat**: note the tense. These events were completed at the time of *dēcernit*, which begins the main narration. The affair at the Rhone was a mere cavalry skirmish, in which the Romans were victorious. **P. Cornēliō Scīpiōne**: father of Scipio Africanus.

7. **Clastidī**: locative, used instead of *ad* or *apud* with the acc., the usual expression for a battle in the vicinity of a town; doubtless because of the following *apud*, to avoid repetition. Cf. *apud Argos*, p. 34, l. 5. Nepos confuses the battle of Clastidium with that at the river Ticinus in 218 B.C.

8. **saucium**: 'wounded.'

9. **Tertiō**: adv., 'thirdly.' **Ti. Longō**: *Tiberius Semprōnius Longus*. **Trebiam**: a tributary of the Po.

10. **utrōsque**: we should expect *utrumque* of two individuals.

11. **petēns**: 'on his way to,' in 217 B.C.

Hōc in itinere adeō gravī morbō afficitur oculōrum, ut posteā numquam dextrō aequē bene ūsus sit. Quā valētūdine cum etiamnum premerētur lectīcāque ferrētur, C. Flāminium cōnsulem apud Trasumēnum cum exercitū īnsidiīs circumventum occīdit, neque multō post C. Centenium praetōrem cum dēlēctā manū saltūs occupantem. Hinc in Āpūliam pervēnit. Ibi obviam eī vēnērunt duo cōnsulēs, C. Terentius et L. Aemilius. Utrīusque exercitūs ūnō proeliō fugāvit, Paulum cōnsulem occīdit et aliquot praetereā cōnsulārēs, in eīs Cn. Servīlium Geminum, quī superiōre annō fuerat cōnsul.

5. Hāc pugnā pugnātā, Rōmam profectus nūllō resistente in propinquīs urbī montibus morātus est. Cum aliquot ibi diēs castra habuisset et Capuam reverterētur, Q. Fabius Maximus, dictātor Rōmānus, in agrō Falernō

1. **afficitur**: 208.

2. **dextrō**: sc. *oculō*. **valētūdine**: 'infirmity.'

3. **lectīcā**: see note to p. 94, l. 4.

4. **Trasumēnum**: a large lake in the eastern part of Etruria.

5. **praetōrem**: *i.e. lēgātus prō praetōre.*

6. **saltūs occupantem**: 'while holding the mountain passes.' He was actually defeated and killed in Umbria, while marching to the aid of Flaminius. **Hinc . . . pervēnit**: the account of Hannibal's campaigns is confused and inaccurate. **Āpūliam**: a division of Italy in the southeastern part of the peninsula.

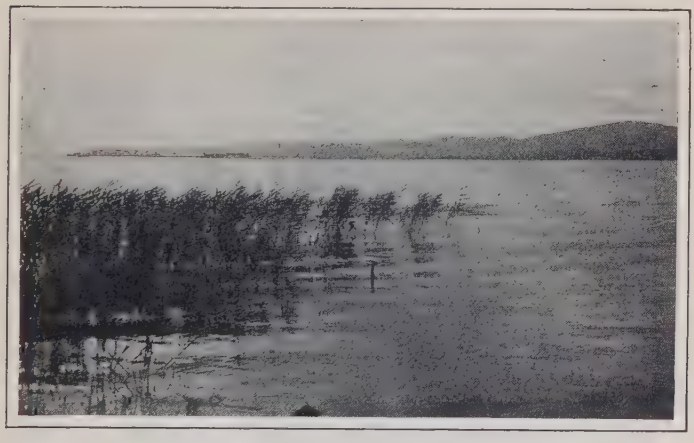
8. **Utrīusque**: the usual usage: cf. *utrōsque*, p. 107, l. 10, and the note. **ūnō proeliō**: at Cannae, in 216 B.C.

9. **Paulum**: L. Aemilius Paulus. **cōnsulārēs**: 'ex-consuls,' and therefore of the senatorial order.

5. 13. **habuisset . . . reverterētur**: notice the difference in the tenses. **Capuam**: the principal city of Campania, 136 miles southeast of Rome.

14. **Q. Fabius Maximus**: the reference is to Quintus Fabius Maximus, surnamed *Cunctātor*, or 'the Lingerer,' whose policy of masterly inactivity checked Hannibal's victorious career during the early part of the Second Punic War, and contributed greatly to the final triumph of Rome. 'Fabian policy' became proverbial. **agrō Falernō**: a district of Campania, famous for its wine.

eī sē obiēcit. Hīc clausus locōrum angustiīs, noctū sine ūllō dētrīmentō exercitūs sē expedīvit Fabiōque, callidissimō imperātōrī, dedit verba; namque obductā nocte sarmenta in cornibus iuvencōrum dēligāta incendit, eiusque generis multitūdinem magnam dispālātam immīsit. Quō repentīnō vīsū obiectō, tantum terrōrem iniēcit exercituī Rōmānōrum ut ēgredī extrā vāllum nēmō sit ausus.



Lake Trasimenus.
The scene of Hannibal's victory over Flaminius in 217 B.C.

1. **Hīc**: Hannibal.

2. **exercitūs**: 137.

3. **dedit verba**: 'cheated, tricked'; more lit. 'gave mere words' (instead of facts). This really took place in 211 B.C., after the battle of Cannae. **obductā nocte**: sc. *nūbibus* ('with clouds') 'on a cloudy night.' **sarmenta**: 'brushwood.'

4. **eiusque generis**: *i.e. iuvencōrum quōrum in cornibus sarmenta dēligāta erant.*

5. **dispālātam**: 'astray, straggling.'

6. **obiectō**: sc. *eīs* or *oculīs;* 'presented to the gaze.'

7. **extrā vāllum**: 'outside the rampart' of their camp. The Romans fortified their camp in regular order whenever they halted for the night.

Hanc post rem gestam nōn ita multīs diēbus M. Minucium Rūfum, magistrum equitum parī ac dictātōrem imperiō, dolō prōductum in proelium fugāvit. Ti. Semprōnium Gracchum, iterum cōnsulem, in Lūcānīs absēns in īnsidiās inductum sustulit. M. Claudium Mārcellum, quīnquiēns cōnsulem, apud Venusiam parī modō interfēcit. Longum est omnia ēnumerāre proelia. Quā rē hōc ūnum satis erit dictum, ex quō intellegī possit quantus ille fuerit: quam diū in Italiā fuit, nēmō eī in aciē restitit, nēmō adversus eum post Cannēnsem pugnam in campō castra posuit.

---

1. **Hanc . . . diēbus**: a favorite order with Nepos. For the case of *diēbus* see 168.

2. **parī ac dictātōrem imperiō**: the master of horse was usually the lieutenant of the dictator, and Rufus held that relation to the dictator Q. Fabius Maximus. He succeeded, however, in exciting distrust of the 'Fabian policy' and finally induced the people to give him equal authority with the dictator. For the case of *parī imperiō* see 170.

4. **iterum cōnsulem**: this expression is used strictly of a man who is holding his second consulship; as Sempronius was killed after his second consulship, the proper expression would be *bis cōnsulem*. On the other hand, Marcellus, who was holding his fifth consulship when he fell, should be designated as *quīntum* (adv.) *cōnsulem*. Gracchus was killed in 212 B.C., Marcellus in 208 B.C. **in Lūcānīs**: modifies *sustulit*, 'made way with.' *In Lūcānīs* means 'among the Lucanians.' The name *Lūcānia* for the division of Italy southeast of Campania (and Latium) was not yet in use. **absēns**: *i.e.* through one of his lieutenants.

5. **M. Claudium Mārcellum**: called the "Sword of Rome," as Fabius was its "Shield." He took Syracuse in 212 B.C.

6. **Longum est**: we should expect the subj. In English we say 'it would be a long story.'

7. **satis erit dictum**: we should say 'it will be enough to tell.'

8. **possit**: 233. **fuerit**: 259. **quam diū fuit**: see note to p. 94, l. 9, above.

10. **Cannēnsem pugnam**: 'The battle of Cannae'; see p. 108, l. 7, above.

Recalled to defend Carthage, is defeated by Scipio at Zama.

6. Hinc invictus patriam dēfēnsum revocātus, bellum gessit adversus P. Scīpiōnem, fīlium eius Scīpiōnis quem ipse prīmō apud Rhodanum, iterum apud Padum, tertiō apud Trebiam fugārat. Cum hōc, exhaustīs iam patriae facultātibus, cupīvit impraesentiārum bellum compōnere, quō valentior posteā congrederētur. Inde colloquium convēnit, condiciōnēs nōn convēnērunt. Post id factum paucīs

Cannae.

In Apulia, the scene of Hannibal's great victory in 216 B.C.

6. 1. **dēfēnsum**: 286. **revocātus**: in 203 B.C.

2. **P. Scīpiōnem**: called *Āfricānus* on account of his victory over Hannibal.

5. **impraesentiārum**: 'for the present, for a time.' **bellum compōnere**: = *pacem facere*.

6. **convēnit**: 'was agreed upon'; more lit. 'suited' (both parties).

7. **Post . . . diēbus**: cf. p. 110, l. 1, above.

diēbus apud Zamam cum eōdem cōnflīxit; pulsus — incrēdibile dictū — bīduō et duābus noctibus Hadrūmētum pervēnit, quod abest ab Zamā circiter mīlia passuum trecenta. In hāc fugā Numidae, quī simul cum eō ex aciē excesserant, īnsidiātī sunt eī, quōs nōn sōlum effūgit, sed etiam ipsōs oppressit. Hadrūmētī reliquōs ē fugā collēgit, novīs dīlēctibus paucīs diēbus multōs contrāxit.

The Carthaginians make peace with Rome; Hannibal becomes ruler of Carthage.

7. Cum in apparandō ācerrimē esset occupātus, Carthāginiēnsēs bellum cum Rōmānīs composuērunt. Ille nihilō sētius exercituī posteā praefuit rēsque in Āfricā gessit ūsque ad P. Sulpicium C. Aurēlium cōnsulēs. Hīs enim magistrātibus lēgātī Carthāginiēnsēs Rōmam vēnērunt quī senātuī populōque Rōmānō grātiās agerent, quod cum eīs pācem fēcissent, ob eamque rem corōnā aureā eōs dōnārent simulque peterent ut obsidēs eōrum Fregellīs essent captī-

---

1. **apud Zamam**: 202 B.C. **cum eōdem**: sc. *Scīpiōne*.

2. **dictū**: 287. **bīduō et . . . noctibus**: 182. **Hadrūmētum**: an important city of northern Africa, not far from Carthage.

3. **ab Zamā**: the prep. is used with names of towns in expressions of distance. **mīlia**: 130.

5. **ipsōs**: emphatic, 'them.' He ruined the very men who expected to ruin him.

7. **paucīs diēbus**: 182. **contrāxit**: 290.

7. 9. **nihilō sētius**: 'none the less.'

11. **P. Sulpicium . . . cōnsulēs**: 200 B.C. **Hīs . . . magistrātibus**: 'in their consulship.'

13. **cum eīs . . . eōrum**: we should expect *sēcum* and *suī;* the envoys, however, speak of the Carthaginians as a third party. **aureā corōnā**: 148, *a*.

15. **Fregellīs**: at Fregellae, a city of the Volscians in Latium on the river Liris.

vīque redderentur. Hīs ex senātūs cōnsultō respōnsum est: mūnus eōrum grātum acceptumque esse; obsidēs quō locō rogārent futūrōs; captīvōs nōn remissūrōs, quod Hannibalem, cuius operā susceptum bellum foret, inimīcissimum nōminī Rōmānō, etiamnum cum imperiō apud exercitum habērent itemque frātrem eius Māgōnem. Hōc respōnsō Carthāginiēnsēs cognitō Hannibalem domum et Māgōnem revocārunt.

Hūc ut rediit, rēx factus est, postquam imperātor fuerat annō secundō et vīcēsimō — ut enim Rōmae cōnsulēs, sīc Carthāgine quotannīs annuī bīnī rēgēs creābantur. In eō magistrātū parī dīligentiā sē Hannibal praebuit ac fuerat in bellō. Namque effēcit ex novīs vectīgālibus nōn sōlum ut esset pecūnia, quae Rōmānīs ex foedere penderētur, sed etiam superesset, quae in aerāriō repōnerētur.

---

2. **acceptum**: adj., 'acceptable.' **obsidēs . . . futūrōs**: a condensed expression for *obsidēs eō locō futūrōs in quō ut essent rogārent.*

3. **rogārent**: 268. **remissūrōs**: sc. *sē.*

5. **nōminī Rōmānō**: 'the Roman race.'

6. **Hōc respōnsō Carthāginiēnsēs cognitō**: note the position of *Carthāginiēnsēs.* Such words are sometimes called the 'subject' of the abl. abs. We might trans. 'the Carthaginians, having learned of this reply, recalled,' or 'when the Carthaginians had learned of this reply, they recalled.'

9. **rēx**: stands for the highest magistrate at Carthage, the *suffēs*, or 'judge.' **fuerat**: 234, *a.*

11. **quotannīs annuī bīnī rēgēs**: 'every year two kings (appointed) for a year,' a somewhat tautological expression. Note also the use of the distr. *bīnī*, 'two each' (year).

12. **parī dīligentiā**: 170.

13. **ex**: 'in consequence of, through.'

14. **penderētur**: 'to be paid,' 230.

15. **superesset**: 'should be a surplus.'

Fearing the Romans, he flees to Antiochus and rouses him against his enemies.

Deinde, M. Claudiō L. Fūriō cōnsulibus, Rōmā lēgātī Carthāginem vēnērunt. Hōs Hannibal ratus suī exposcendī grātiā missōs, priusquam eīs senātus darētur, nāvem ascendit clam atque in Syriam ad Antiochum perfūgit. Hāc rē palam factā, Poenī nāvēs duās quae eum comprehenderent, sī possent cōnsequī, mīsērunt, bona eius pūblicārunt, domum ā fundāmentīs disiēcērunt, ipsum exsulem iūdicārunt.

8. At Hannibal annō quārtō postquam domō profūgerat, L. Cornēliō Q. Minuciō cōnsulibus, cum quīnque nāvibus Āfricam accessit in fīnibus Cȳrēnaeōrum, sī forte Carthāginiēnsēs ad bellum indūcere posset Antiochī spē fīdūciāque, cui iam persuāserat ut cum exercitibus in Italiam proficīscerētur. Hūc Māgōnem frātrem excīvit. Id ubi Poenī rescīvērunt, Māgōnem eādem quā frātrem ab-

---

1. **M. Claudiō . . . cōnsulibus**: 196 B.C.

3. **missōs**: sc. *esse*. **senātus darētur**: 'an opportunity of addressing the senate was given them.' For the mood see note to p. 97, l. 2.

4. **Antiochum**: cf. p. 104, l. 5.

5. **palam factā**: 'made known, revealed.'

6. **possent**: subj. because it forms part of the design of the Carthaginians and of the instructions given to the commanders of the ships; 272.

7. **ā fundāmentīs**: 'from its foundations.'

8. 9. **profūgerat**: 234, *a*.

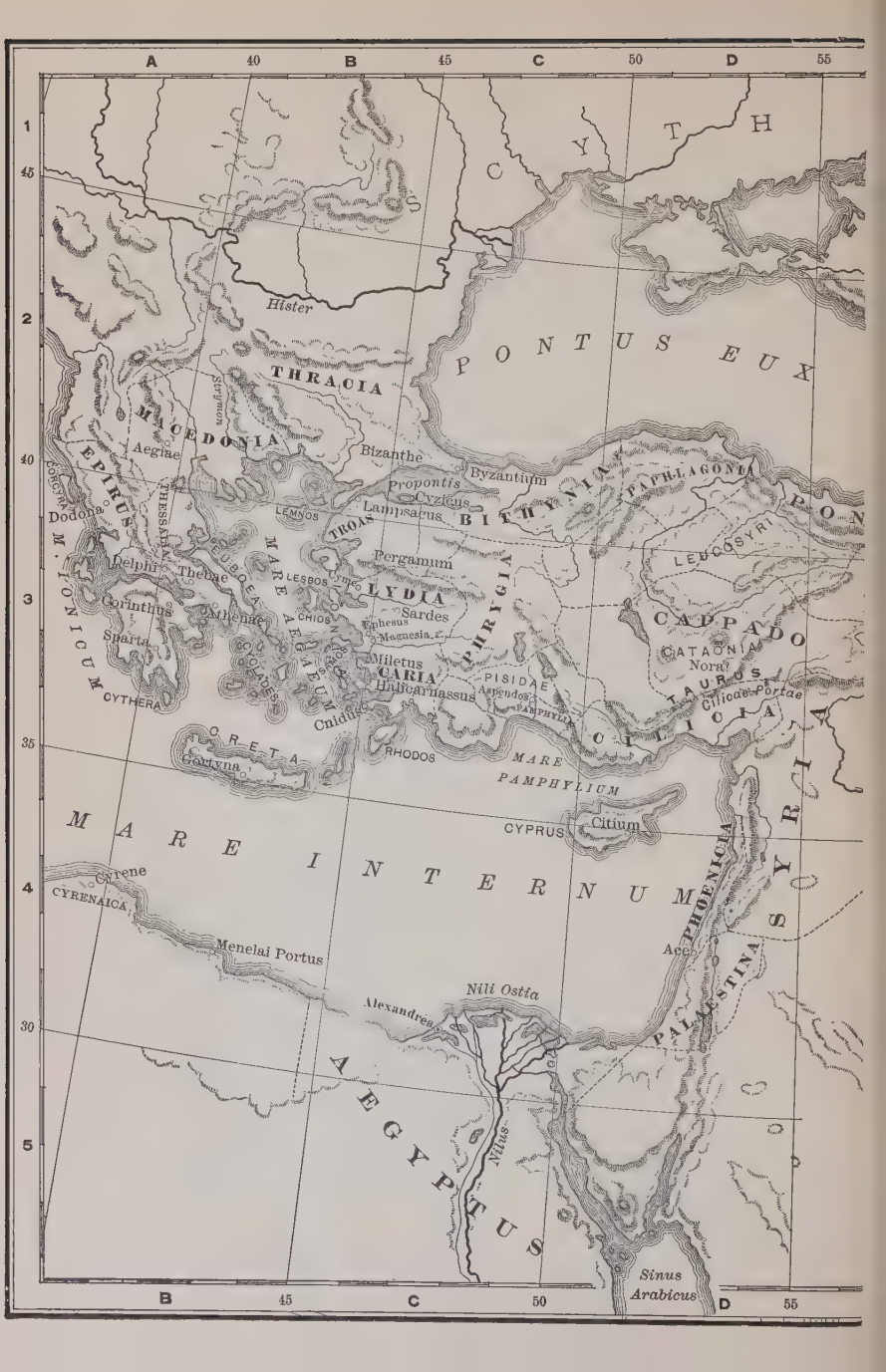
10. **L. Cornēliō . . . cōnsulibus**: 193 B.C.

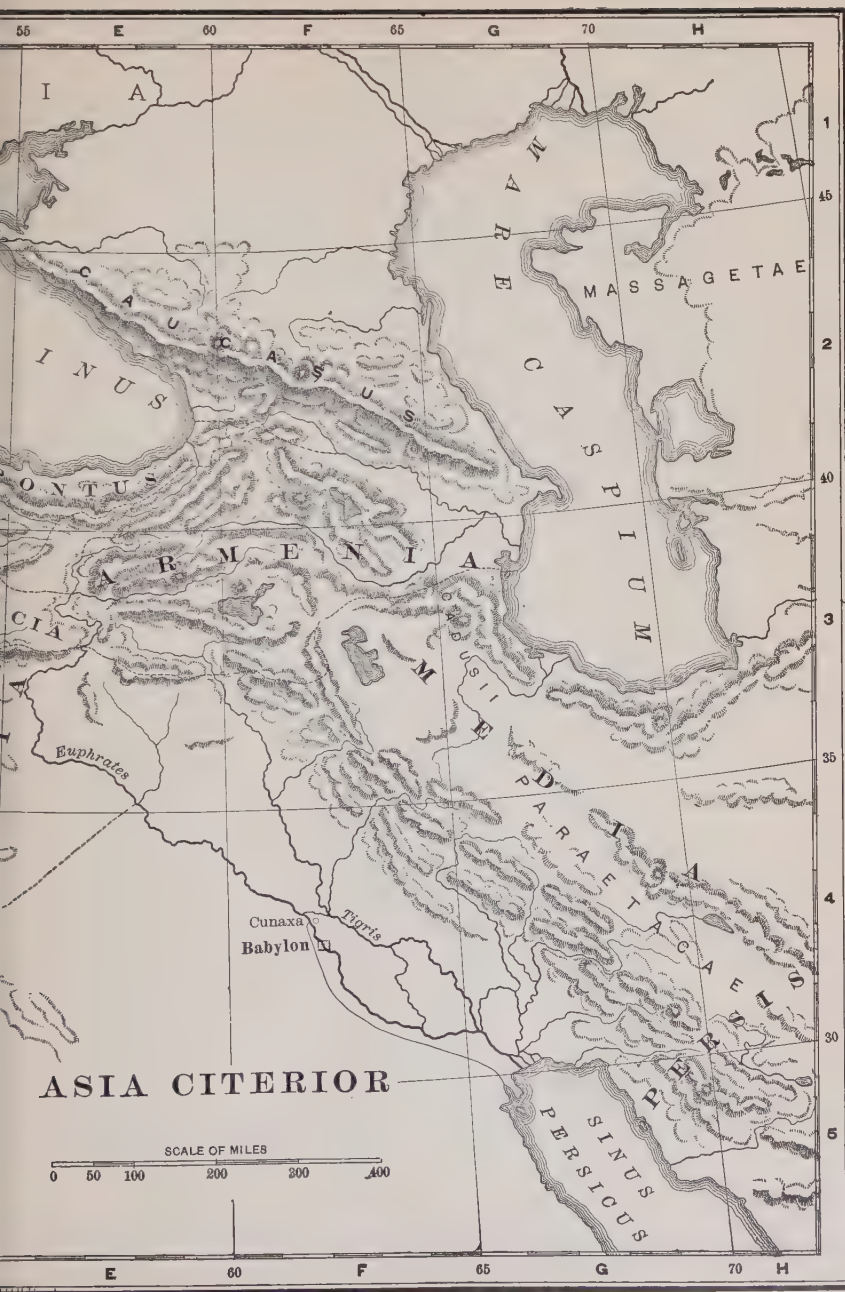
11. **Āfricam**: 132. **Cȳrēnaeōrum**: 'the people of Cyrene,' an important city on the northern coast of Africa, south of Greece. **sī forte . . . indūcere posset**: 'to see if he could induce'; 259.

12. **Antiochī**: objective gen., depending on *spē fīdūciāque*.

14. **Hūc**: *i.e. in fīnēs Cȳrēnaeōrum*.

15. **quā frātrem**: sc. *affēcerant*; cf. lines 6–8, above.


A
40
B
45
C
50
D
55
1
45
2
40
3
35
4
30
5
Hister
THRACIA
Strymon
MACEDONIA
Aegiae
EPIRUS
Dodona
CORCYRA
THESSALIA
Delphi
Thebae
Corinthus
Athenae
Sparta
MARE MYRTOUM
CYTHERA
CRETA
Gortyna
EUBOEA
LESBOS
CHIOS
CYCLADES
MARE AEGAEUM
Bizanthe
Propontis
Byzantium
Cyzicus
Lampsacus
LEMNOS
TROAS
BITHYNIA
PAPHLAGONIA
PONTUS EUXINUS
Pergamum
LYDIA
Sardes
Ephesus
Magnesia
Miletus
CARIA
Halicarnassus
Cnidus
PHRYGIA
PISIDAE
Aspendus
PAMPHYLIA
RHODOS
MARE PAMPHYLIUM
CYPRUS
Citium
CILICIA
Cilicae Portae
LEUCOSYRI
CAPPADOCIA
CATAONIA
Nora?
TAURUS
SYRIA
PHOENICIA
Acc
PALAESTINA
MARE INTERNUM
Cyrene
CYRENAICA
Menelai Portus
Nili Ostia
Alexandreia
AEGYPTUS
Nilus
Sinus Arabicus


55
E
60
F
65
G
70
H
I A
MARE CASPIUM
MASSAGETAE
CAUCASUS
INUS
ONTUS
ARMENIA
CIA
MEDI
Euphrates
Tigris
Cunaxa
Babylon
PARAETACAE
PERSIS
SINUS PERSICUS
ASIA CITERIOR
SCALE OF MILES
0 50 100 200 300 400
1
45
2
40
3
35
4
30
5

sentem affēcērunt poenā. Illī, dēspērātīs rēbus, cum solvissent nāvēs ac vēla ventīs dedissent, Hannibal ad Antiochum pervēnit.

Dē Māgōnis interitū duplex memoria prōdita est: namque aliī naufragiō, aliī ā servulīs ipsīus interfectum eum scrīptum relīquērunt. Antiochus autem sī tam in gerendō bellō cōnsiliīs eius pārēre voluisset, quam in suscipiendō īnstituerat, propius Tiberī quam Thermopylīs dē summā imperī dīmicāsset. Quem etsī multa stultē cōnārī vidēbat, tamen nūllā dēseruit in rē. Praefuit paucīs nāvibus, quās ex Syriā iussus erat in Asiam dūcere, eīsque adversus Rhodiōrum classem in Pamphȳliō marī cōnflīxit. In quō cum multitūdine adversāriōrum suī superārentur, ipse quō cornū rem gessit fuit superior.

---

1. **Illī**: *i.e. Hannibal et Māgō.*

4. **duplex memoria**: *i.e.* there are two accounts or versions.

5. **servulīs**: diminutives without any special force were common in the language of everyday life. **ipsīus**: 201. **interfectum**: a case of zeugma (291), since with *naufragiō* alone *perīsse* would have been used.

6. **scrīptum relīquērunt**: about equal to *scripsērunt.*

7. **eius**: = *Hannibalis*, a careless use.

8. **Tiberī**: dat. of nearness; cf. 157. The acc. is the usual construction with *propius.* **Thermopylīs**: locative; 176. Antiochus was defeated there in 191 B.C. **dē summā imperī**: 'for dominion'; *i.e.* for the rule of the world. For the case of *imperī* see 138; *summā* is of course the noun.

9. **Quem**: *i.e. Antiochum*, subject of *cōnārī.* **vidēbat . . . dēseruit**: sc. *Hannibal.*

11. **Asiam**: see note to p. 60, l. 8.

12. **Pamphȳliō marī**: see map of Asia, opp. p. 115. **In quō**: sc. *proeliō* implied in *cōnflīxit;* or *in quō* (*marī*) may be equivalent to *ubi*, 'there.'

13. **suī**: 'his own men.'

14. **quō cornū** = *eō cornū quō.*

Hannibal outwits the Cretan priests; he flees to Prusias.

9. Antiochō fugātō, verēns nē dēderētur, quod sine dubiō accidisset, sī suī fēcisset potestātem, Crētam ad Gortȳniōs vēnit, ut ibi quō sē cōnferret cōnsīderāret. Vīdit autem vir omnium callidissimus in magnō sē fore perīculō, nisi quid prōvīdisset, propter avāritiam Crētēnsium; magnam enim sēcum pecūniam portābat, dē quā sciēbat exīsse fāmam. Itaque capit tāle cōnsilium. Amphorās complūrēs complet plumbō, summās operit aurō et argentō. Hās, praesentibus prīncipibus, dēpōnit in templō Diānae, simulāns sē suās fortūnās illōrum fideī crēdere. Hīs in errōrem inductīs, statuās aēneās quās sēcum portābat omnī suā pecūniā complet eāsque in prōpatulō domī abicit. Gortȳniī templum magnā cūrā cūstōdiunt, nōn tam ā cēterīs quam ab Hannibale, nē ille, īnscientibus eīs, tolleret sua sēcumque dūceret.

---

9. 1. **fugātō**: the battle was fought near Magnesia, in 190 B.C. See map opp. p. 97. **dēderētur**: 'given up' to the Romans; 264. **quod**: the antecedent is *dēderētur*, without the negative.

2. **sī suī fēcisset potestātem**: *i.e.* if he had allowed himself to be taken. What is the literal trans.? **Crētam**: used as if it were the name of a small island; 132.

3. **quō sē cōnferret**: an ind. dubitative question; in the dir. form *quō mē cōnferam!* 259, *b*.

4. **omnium**: 138. **fore**: = *futūrum esse*.

5. **prōvīdisset**: 268; for a fut. perf. ind. of dir. disc.

7. **tāle**: 'the following.'

8. **summās**: sc. *amphorās*. He filled the jars nearly full of lead, and then put a little gold and silver on top of the lead.

9. **prīncipibus**: 'the leading men' of Gortyna.

10. **illōrum**: *i.e.* of the Gortynians.

12. **abicit**: *i.e.* as if they were of no value.

14. **eīs**: we should expect *sē*, but *eīs* is used in distinction from *sua* and *sēcum*, referring to Hannibal.

10. Sīc cōnservātīs suīs rēbus omnibus Poenus, illūsīs Crētēnsibus, ad Prūsiam in Pontum pervēnit. Apud quem eōdem animō fuit ergā Italiam neque aliud quicquam ēgit quam rēgem armāvit et exacuit adversus Rōmānōs. Quem cum vidēret domesticīs opibus minus esse rōbustum, conciliābat cēterōs rēgēs, adiungēbat bellicōsās nātiōnēs. Dissidēbat ab eō Pergamēnus rēx Eumenēs, Rōmānīs amīcissimus, bellumque inter eōs gerēbātur et marī et terrā; sed utrobīque Eumenēs plūs valēbat propter Rōmānōrum societātem. Quō magis cupiēbat eum Hannibal opprimī, quem sī remōvisset, faciliōra sibi cētera fore arbitrābātur.

In the service of Prusias, Hannibal defeats Eumenes; his extraordinary tactics.

Ad hunc interficiendum tālem iniit ratiōnem. Classe paucīs diēbus erant dēcrētūrī. Superābātur nāvium multitūdine; dolō erat pugnandum, cum pār nōn esset armīs. Imperāvit quam plūrimās venēnātās serpentēs vīvās colligī

---

10. 1. **Poenus, illūsīs Crētēnsibus**: it was a case of 'diamond cut diamond,' for both the Carthaginians and the Cretans were noted for their craft.

3. **neque aliud quicquam ēgit**: *i.e.* 'he devoted all his attention.'

5. **conciliābat . . . adiungēbat**: sc. *Prūsiae*.

7. **ab eō**: *i.e.* Prusias. This happened in 184 B.C. **Eumenēs**: Eumenes II. is meant. See Vocab.

8. **marī et terrā**: 175; the usual form is *terrā marīque*. **utrobīque**: *i.e. et marī et terrā*.

10. **quem sī remōvisset . . . arbitrābātur**: 'for he thought that if he got him out of the way.' For the mood and tense of **remōvisset**, cf. *prōvīdisset*, p. 116, l. 5.

12. **tālem**: cf. *tāle*, p. 116, l. 7.

13. **paucīs diēbus**: 182. **Superābātur**: 'he was inferior,' *i.e.* Hannibal to Eumenes.

15. **colligī**: the pass. inf. with *imperō* is found in Cicero, and is not uncommon. An *ut*-clause with the subj. is, however, the usual constr.

eāsque in vāsa fictilia conicī. Hārum cum effēcisset magnam multitūdinem, diē ipsō quō factūrus erat nāvāle proelium classiāriōs convocat eīsque praecipit, omnēs ut in ūnam Eumenis rēgis concurrant nāvem, ā cēterīs tantum satis habeant sē dēfendere: id illōs facile serpentium multitūdine cōnsecūtūrōs. Rēx autem in quā nāve veherētur ut scīrent, sē factūrum; quem sī aut cēpissent aut interfēcissent, magnō eīs pollicētur praemiō fore.

11. Tālī cohortātiōne mīlitum factā, classis ab utrīsque in proelium dēdūcitur. Quārum aciē cōnstitūtā, priusquam signum pugnae darētur, Hannibal, ut palam faceret suīs quō locō Eumenēs esset, tabellārium in scaphā cum cādūceō mittit. Quī ubi ad nāvēs adversāriōrum pervēnit epistulamque ostendēns sē rēgem professus est quaerere, statim ad Eumenem dēductus est, quod nēmō dubitābat quīn aliquid dē pāce esset scrīptum. Tabellārius, ducis nāve dēclārātā suīs, eōdem unde erat ēgressus sē recēpit. At Eumenēs, solūtā epistulā, nihil in eā repperit nisi quae ad irrīdendum eum pertinērent. Cuius reī etsī causam mīrā-

---

1. **Hārum**: refers to what? Note gender. **effēcisset**: 'had brought together.'

4. **ā cēterīs . . . sē dēfendere**: 'that they should be satisfied merely to defend themselves against the rest.'

6. **Rēx . . . sē factūrum**: note the order.

8. **eīs**: to be taken with *praemiō fore*. For the constr. of *praemiō* see 156 and Note.

11. 10. **Quārum**: *i.e. classium.*

11. **darētur**: 239.

13. **Quī**: 202. **pervēnit**: 234.

16. **esset scrīptum**: 263. **ducis**: *i.e. rēgis.*

17. **dēclārātā**: note deriv. and meaning.

18. **solūtā epistulā**: 'having opened the letter' by loosing the cord which fastened the tablet together. **quae . . . pertinērent**: 233.

19. **Cuius reī**: *i.e.* of sending the letter.

bātur neque reperiēbat, tamen proelium statim committere nōn dubitāvit.

Hōrum in concursū Bīthȳnī Hannibalis praeceptō ūniversī nāvem Eumenis adoriuntur. Quōrum vim rēx cum sustinēre nōn posset, fugā salūtem petiit, quam cōnsecūtus nōn esset, nisi intrā sua praesidia sē recēpisset, quae in proximō lītore erant collocāta. Reliquae Pergamēnae nāvēs cum adversāriōs premerent ācrius, repente in eās vāsa fictilia, dē quibus suprā mentiōnem fēcimus, conicī coepta sunt. Quae iacta initiō rīsum pugnantibus concitārunt, neque quā rē id fieret poterat intellegī. Postquam autem nāvēs suās opplētās cōnspexērunt serpentibus, novā rē perterritī, cum quid potissimum vītārent nōn vidērent, puppēs vertērunt sēque ad sua castra nautica rettulērunt. Sīc Hannibal cōnsiliō arma Pergamēnōrum superāvit, neque tum sōlum, sed saepe aliās pedestribus cōpiīs parī prūdentiā pepulit adversāriōs.

The Romans demand the surrender of Hannibal; his precautions against them; his death.

12. Quae dum in Asiā geruntur, accidit cāsū ut lēgātī Prūsiae Rōmae apud T. Quīnctium Flāminīnum cōnsulārem cēnārent, atque ibi dē Hannibale mentiōne factā, ex eīs ūnus

---

3. **Hōrum**: *of the combatants;* cf. *In quō*, p. 115, l. 12. **praeceptō**: 'at the command,' 166, *a*.

6. **sua praesidia**: *i.e.* his naval camp (*castra nautica*) on shore. See line 14 below.

7. **nāvēs**: subject of *premerent*, a common order.

9. **coepta sunt**: for the passive see *coepī* in Vocab.

12. **novā**: 'strange.'

16. **pedestribus cōpiīs**: as well as in this naval battle.

12. 17. **geruntur**: 236.

18. **apud**: 'at the house of.'

19. **ex eīs**: sc. *lēgātīs* and see 138, *a*.

dīceret eum in Prūsiae rēgnō esse. Id posterō diē Flāminīnus senātuī dētulit. Patrēs cōnscrīptī, quī, Hannibale vīvō, numquam sē sine īnsidiīs futūrōs exīstimārent, lēgātōs in Bīthȳniam mīsērunt, in eīs Flāminīnum, quī ab rēge peterent nē inimīcissimum suum sēcum habēret sibique dēderet. Hīs Prūsia negāre ausus nōn est; illud recūsāvit, nē id ā sē fierī postulārent, quod adversus iūs hospitī esset: ipsī, sī possent, comprehenderent; locum, ubi esset, facile inventūrōs. Hannibal enim ūnō locō sē tenēbat, in castellō quod eī ā rēge datum erat mūnerī, idque sīc aedificārat ut in omnibus partibus aedificī exitūs habēret, scīlicet verēns nē ūsū venīret quod accidit.

Hūc cum lēgātī Rōmānōrum vēnissent ac multitūdine domum eius circumdedissent, puer, ab iānuā prōspiciēns, Hannibalī dīxit plūrēs praeter cōnsuētūdinem armātōs appārēre. Quī imperāvit eī ut omnēs forēs aedificī cir-

---

2. **dētulit**: 'reported.'

3. **exīstimārent**: 242.

5. **suum . . . sibique**: refer to the Romans, while *sēcum* refers to Prusias.

6. **Hīs**: remember that *negō* means 'say no,' and see 148. **Prūsia**: another form of the nom. *Prūsiās*. **illud recūsāvit, nē . . . postulārent**: 'he objected to their asking.' **id ā sē fierī**: the usual constr. with *postulō* is *ut* with the subj.; the acc. with the inf. is rare, but is perhaps used here to avoid an *ut*-clause within a *nē*-clause.

7. **esset**: 272.

8. **comprehenderent**: 266. **inventūrōs**: sc. *eōs* and *esse*.

9. **locō**: 175.

12. **ūsū**: an old form of the dat., instead of *ūsuī*; 40, *b*; 156. **venīret**: the subject is *quod accidit*; for the mood see 264.

14. **puer**: 'a slave'; slaves were designated as *puer* without regard to age.

15. **plūrēs . . . cōnsuētūdinem**: 'more than usual.' Note the lit. trans.

16. **circumīret**: 'go around to,' 'make the round of.'

cumīret ac properē sibi nūntiāret num eōdem modō undique obsidērētur. Puer cum celeriter quid vīdisset renūntiāsset omnēsque exitūs occupātōs ostendisset, sēnsit id nōn fortuītō factum, sed sē petī neque sibi diūtius vītam esse retinendam. Quam nē aliēnō arbitriō dīmit-
5 teret, memor prīstinārum virtūtum, venēnum, quod semper sēcum habēre cōnsuērat, sūmpsit.

Conflicting views as to the date of his death; his literary works.

13. Sīc vir fortissimus, multīs variīsque perfūnctus labōribus, annō acquiēvit septuāgēsimō. Quibus cōnsulibus interierit nōn convenit. Namque Atticus M. Claudiō
10 Mārcellō Q. Fabiō Labeōne cōnsulibus mortuum in annālī suō scrīptum relīquit, at Polybius L. Aemiliō Paulō Cn. Baebiō Tamphilō, Sulpicius autem Blithō P. Cornēliō Cethēgō M. Baebiō Tamphilō.

Atque hīc tantus vir tantīsque bellīs dīstrictus nōn nihil
15 temporis tribuit litterīs. Namque aliquot eius librī sunt, Graecō sermōne cōnfectī, in eīs ad Rhodiōs dē Cn. Mānlī

---

1. **num**: expecting a negative answer, although that is not always the case in ind. questions. It implies that Hannibal had hope that not all the outlets were blockaded.

3. **sēnsit**: sc. *ille* = *Hannibal*.

4. **factum**: sc. *esse*. **sē petī**: *sē* is the emphatic word; 'that *he* was the object of the attack.'

5. **aliēnō arbitriō**: 166, *a*.

6. **prīstinārum virtūtum**: 'his former deeds of valor,' note the pl., and for the case see 143.

13. 9. **labōribus**: 163, *a*. **septuāgēsimō**: Hannibal was sixty-three years old at the earliest of the dates which Nepos gives.

10. **convenit**: be careful of the meaning; see Vocab. **M. Claudiō Mārcellō . . . cōnsulibus**: B.C. 183; the other dates are 182 and 181.

15. **nōn nihil**: 289.

16. **litterīs**: *i.e.* to composition.

17. **ad Rhodiōs**: sc. *ōrātiō* or *liber*.

Volsōnis in Asiā rēbus gestīs. Huius bellī gesta multī memoriae prōdidērunt, sed ex eīs duo, quī cum eō in castrīs fuērunt simulque vīxērunt, quam diū fortūna passa est, Sīlēnus et Sōsilus Lacedaemonius. Atque hōc Sōsilō Hannibal litterārum Graecārum ūsus est doctōre.

III. Catō

His early life.

1. M. Catō, ortus mūnicipiō Tusculō, adulēscentulus, priusquam honōribus operam daret, versātus est in Sabīnīs, quod ibi hērēdium ā patre relīctum habēbat. Inde hortātū L. Valerī Flaccī, quem in cōnsulātū cēnsūrāque habuit collēgam, ut M. Perpenna cēnsōrius nārrāre solitus est, Rōmam dēmigrāvit in Forōque esse coepit. Prī-

---

1. **rēbus gestīs**: Volso conquered the Galatians in 189 B.C. **Huius**: *i.e. Hannibalis.* **gesta**: neu. pl. used substantively. The more common expression is *rēs gestae*, which, however, has just been used. *Gesta* avoids repetition.

3. **simul**: = *cum eō*. **passa est**: 237.

4. **hōc Sōsilō . . . doctōre**: For the case of *Sōsilō* see 163, *a*; of *doctōre*, 121.

1. 6. **mūnicipiō**: a *mūnicipium* was a town to whose inhabitants Roman citizenship had been granted.

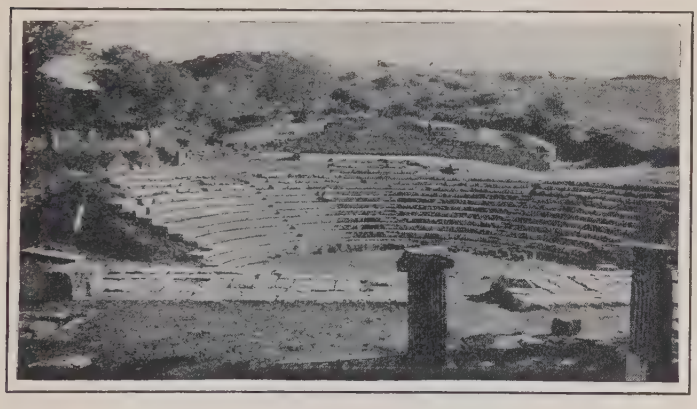
7. **honōribus**: *office; i.e.* political positions, the usual meaning of the word. **daret**: note the subj. with *priusquam*. The subj. is sometimes used, under the influence of *cum*, when there is little or no idea of anticipation.

8. **hērēdium**: 'an hereditary estate' of two *iūgera*, assigned to his father in the distribution of the land to the colonists by the Romans.

11. **in Forō esse**: 'to frequent the forum,' at first to get acquainted with public business and the method of conducting it; then to take an active part.

mum stīpendium meruit annōrum decem septemque. Q. Fabiō M. Claudiō cōnsulibus tribūnus mīlitum in Siciliā fuit.

Inde ut rediit, castra secūtus est C. Claudī Nerōnis, magnīque opera eius exīstimāta est in proeliō apud Sēnam, quō cecidit Hasdrubal, frāter Hannibalis. Quaestor obtigit P. Āfricānō cōnsulī, cum quō nōn prō sortis



Tusculum.

The birthplace of Cato. The view shows the theater and the hill on which the citadel stood.

---

1. **stīpendium meruit**: see Vocab. under *stīpendium*. **annōrum decem septemque**: 'at the age of seventeen'; 141. **Q. Fabiō . . . cōnsulibus**: in 214 B.C.

4. **castra secūtus est**: cf. *in castra proficīscī*, p. 105, l. 3.

5. **magnī**: 142. **in proeliō apud Sēnam**: known also as the battle of the Metaurus River. See map of Italy, opp. p. 1. The battle was fought in 207 B.C.

7. **obtigit**: 'fell to the lot of'; the quaestors were assigned by lot. This was in 205 B.C. **prō sortis necessitūdine**: for the meaning of *necessitūdine*, see Vocab. The relations of the consul and his quaestor were usually very intimate; Cicero says that they should be like those of father and son.

necessitūdine vīxit; namque ab eō perpetuā dissēnsit vītā. Aedīlis plēbeī factus est cum C. Helviō. Praetor prōvinciam obtinuit Sardiniam, ex quā quaestor superiōre tempore ex Āfricā dēcēdēns Q. Ennium poētam dēdūxerat, quod nōn minōris aestimāmus quam quemlibet amplissimum Sardiniēnsem triumphum.

His consulship and censorship; his severity.

2. Cōnsulātum gessit cum L. Valeriō Flaccō. Sorte prōvinciam nactus Hispāniam citeriōrem, ex eā triumphum dēportāvit. Ibi cum diūtius morārētur, P. Scīpiō Āfricānus, cōnsul iterum, cuius in priōre cōnsulātū quaestor fuerat, voluit eum dē prōvinciā dēpellere et ipse eī succēdere; neque hōc per senātum efficere potuit, cum quidem Scīpiō prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēret, quod tum nōn potentiā, sed iūre rēs pūblica administrābātur.

---

1. **perpetuā . . . vītā**: cf. 175.

2. **Aedīlis**: in 199 B.C. **Praetor**: in 198 B.C.

4. **ex Āfricā dēcēdēns**: 'on his way home from Africa.' That Ennius came back with Cato was mere chance. Cato had no love for poets, and was bitterly opposed to the tendencies which Ennius represented.

5. **minōris**: 142. **quemlibet amplissimum**: a strong superlative. Note the lit. meaning.

2. 7. **Cōnsulātum gessit**: in 195 B.C. **Sorte . . . nactus**: the provinces were assigned to the consuls by lot.

8. **triumphum dēportāvit**: in 194 B.C.

9. **Ibi**: in Spain.

10. **quaestor fuerat**: see p. 123, l. 7.

12. **cum quidem**: 'even although,' 'in spite of the fact that.'

13. **prīncipātum . . . obtinēret**: *i.e.* he was the most influential man in the state. Note the tense and meaning of *obtinēret*.

14. **tum**: 'in those days,' contrasted with the writer's own time. **potentiā**: 'personal influence.' Cf. *potestātī*, p. 125, l. 4.

Quā ex rē īrātus senātuī, cōnsulātū perāctō, prīvātus in urbe mānsit.

At Catō, cēnsor cum eōdem Flaccō factus, sevērē praefuit eī potestātī; nam et in complūrēs nōbilēs animadvertit et multās rēs novās in ēdictum addidit, quā rē lūxuria reprimerētur, quae iam tum incipiēbat pullulāre. Circiter annōs octōgintā, ūsque ad extrēmam aetātem ab adulēscentiā, reī pūblicae causā suscipere inimīcitiās nōn dēstitit. Á

Tusculum.

This modern house, into which numerous ancient marbles are built, is supposed to stand on the site of the Forum.

---

1. **prīvātus in urbe mānsit**: *i.e.* he refused to accept another province.

3. **cēnsor**: in 184 B.C.

4. **nōbilēs**: at that time the *nōbilēs* were those whose ancestors had held such offices as admitted them to senatorial rank.

5. **multās rēs novās . . . addidit**: *i.e.* he introduced many innovations into the usual edict which was published by the censors on their entrance to office.

6. **reprimerētur**: 230. *Quā rē* is relative, referring to *multās novās rēs*. **Circiter annōs octōgintā**: he died in 149 B.C., at the age of 85.

multīs temptātus, nōn modo nūllum dētrīmentum exīstimātiōnis fēcit, sed quoad vīxit virtūtum laude crēvit.

His energy and ability. His literary works.

3. In omnibus rēbus singulārī fuit industriā; nam et agricola sollers, et perītus iūris cōnsultus, et magnus imperātor, et probābilis ōrātor, et cupidissimus litterārum fuit. Quārum studium etsī senior arripuerat, tamen tantum prōgressum fēcit ut nōn facile reperīrī possit neque dē Graecīs neque dē Italicīs rēbus quod eī fuerit incognitum. Ab adulēscentiā cōnfēcit ōrātiōnēs. Senex historiās scrībere īnstituit. Eārum sunt librī septem. Prīmus continet rēs gestās rēgum populī Rōmānī, secundus et tertius unde quaeque cīvitās orta sit Italica; ob quam rem omnēs Orīginēs vidētur appellāsse. In quārtō autem bellum Poenicum est prīmum, in quīntō secundum. Atque haec omnia capitulātim sunt dicta. Reliqua quoque bella parī modō perse-

---

2. **fēcit**: we should say 'suffered.' **vīxit**: 237.

3. 4. **iūris cōnsultus**: 'jurist'; practically a compound noun, modified by *perītus*.

5. **probābilis**: note the derivation and meaning. Nepos is appraising Cato by the standard of his own times. Cato was the greatest orator of his day.

6. **arripuerat**: 'had taken up,' with the added idea of eagerness or energy.

7. **reperīrī possit**: sc. *aliquid*.

9. **historiās**: 'history.'

11. **unde quaeque cīvitās**: the first three books contained the origin of each state, including that of Rome, and also the history of Rome from the expulsion of the kings until the first Punic War.

12. **omnēs**: sc. *librōs, i.e.* 'the whole work.'

13. **vidētur**: with *ob quam rem*. Nepos feels no uncertainty as to what the name was, but only as to the reason for it.

cūtus est ūsque ad praetūram Ser. Galbae, quī dīripuit Lūsitānōs; atque hōrum bellōrum ducēs nōn nōminābit sed sine nōminibus rēs notāvit. In eīsdem exposuit quae in Italiā Hispāniīsque vidērentur admīranda; in quibus multa industria et dīligentia compāret, nūlla doctrīna.

Huius dē vītā et mōribus plūra in eō librō persecūtī sumus quem sēparātim dē eō fēcimus rogātū T. Pompōnī Atticī. Quā rē studiōsōs Catōnis ad illud volūmen dēlēgāmus.

---

1. **dīripuit Lūsitānōs**: in 150 B.C. In 149 Galba was impeached for his misconduct.

2. **hōrum bellōrum ducēs**: *i.e.* those after the second Punic War. He spoke of them merely as *cōnsul*, *praetor*, etc.

3. **quae . . . admīranda**: *i.e.* noteworthy things.

5. **compāret**: 'are shown'; note the lit. meaning. **doctrīna**: *elegance.* Used in the same sense as *doctus*, 'cultured.'

7. **fēcimus**: the work has not come down to us.

8. **studiōsōs Catōnis**: 'those who are interested in Cato.' **dēlēgāmus**: editorial plural.

THE ARGONAUTS

The celebrated voyage of the Argonauts was brought about as follows. Pelias had expelled his brother Aeson from his kingdom in Thessaly, and had attempted to take the life of Jason, the son of Aeson. Jason, however, escaped, and grew up to manhood in another country. At last he returned to Thessaly, and Pelias, fearing that he might attempt to recover the kingdom, sent him to fetch the Golden Fleece from Colchis, supposing this to be an impossible feat.

Jason, with a band of heroes, started in the ship Argo (called after Argus, its builder), and after many adventures reached Colchis. Here Aeëtes, king of Colchis, who was unwilling to give up the Fleece, set Jason to perform what seemed an impossible task, namely, to plough a field with certain fire-breathing oxen, and then to sow it with dragon's teeth.

Medea, the daughter of the king, however, assisted Jason by her skill in magic, first to perform the task appointed, and then to procure the Fleece. Medea then fled with Jason, and, in order to delay the pursuit of her father, sacrificed her brother Absyrtus. After reaching Thessaly, Medea caused the death of Pelias, and was, with her husband, expelled from Thessaly. They removed to Corinth, and here Medea, becoming jealous of Glauce, daughter of Creon, caused her death by means of a poisoned robe. After this Medea was carried off in a chariot sent by the sun-god, and Jason was soon afterwards accidentally killed.

The wicked uncle.

1. Erant ōlim in Thessaliā duo frātrēs, quōrum alter Aesōn, alter Peliās appellātus est. Aesōn prīmum rēgnum obtinuerat; at post paucōs annōs Peliās, rēgnī cupiditāte adductus, nōn modo frātrem suum expulit, sed etiam in animō habēbat Iāsonem, Aesonis fīlium, interficere. Quīdam tamen ex amīcīs Aesonis, ubi sententiam Peliae intellēxērunt, puerum ē tantō perīculō ēripere cōnstituērunt. Noctū igitur Iāsonem ex urbe abstulērunt et, cum posterō diē ad rēgem rediissent, eī renūntiāvērunt puerum mortuum esse. Peliās cum haec audīvisset, etsī rē vērā magnum

---

1. 1. **ōlim**: 'once upon a time.' The usual way of beginning a story. **in Thessaliā**: see Map opp. p. 97. **quōrum**: 138. **alter . . . alter**: why not *alius . . . alius?* See Vocab. under *alter*. With the first *alter* we must understand *appellātus est*. In English we use the verb with 'one' and omit it with 'the other.'

2. **Aesōn, Aesonis**, a prince of Thessaly. **Peliās, -ae**, half-brother of Aeson and son of Neptune. **prīmum**: the adv., 'at first.'

3. **rēgnī**: 137.

4. **expulit**: sc. *ē rēgnō*.

5. **in animō habēbat**: 'planned.' **Iāsōn, -onis**, *Jason*, the hero of the story. **fīlium**: 121.

6. **Quīdam ex amīcīs**: 'some of the friends'; 138, *a*. **tamen**: 'however.' **ubi . . . intellēxērunt**: 'when they knew,' a temporal clause; see 234. **sententiam**: 'the design.' **Peliae**: Cf. *rēgnī*, l. 3, and note the different relation of the two genitives to the words which they modify.

7. **puerum**: *i.e.* **Iāsonem.** **ē tantō perīculō**: 158.

8. **Noctū**: 181. **cum . . . rediissent**: 'having returned'; see 235 and cf. *ubi . . . intellēxērunt*, l. 6.

9. **puerum mortuum esse**: 'that the boy was dead'; see 265, and the note preceding 274.

10. **Peliās**: subject of *audīvisset*; *cum* frequently follows one or two words of its clause; for the mood cf. *rediissent*, l. 9.

gaudium percipiēbat, speciem tamen dolōris praebuit, et quae causa esset mortis quaesīvit. Illī tamen, cum bene intellegerent dolōrem eius falsum esse, nēscio quam fābulam dē morte puerī fīnxērunt.

The Oracle and its fulfillment.

2. Post breve tempus Peliās, veritus nē rēgnum suum tantā vī et dolō occupātum āmitteret, amīcum quendam Delphōs mīsit, quī ōrāculum cōnsuleret. Ille igitur quam celerrimē Delphōs sē contulit, et quam ob causam vēnisset dēmōnstrāvit. Respondit ōrāculum nūllum esse in prae-

---

1. **percipiēbat**: 'felt.' *Capiō* has many compounds; cf. Sample Word Group B, p. 539. **speciem . . . praebuit**: 'made a show.'

2. **quae causa esset**: an indirect question; see 259. Observe that an indirect question is a substantive clause; that is, it is the subject or object of a verb, here the object of *quaesīvit*. **Illī**: 'they,' referring to *Quīdam ex amīcīs Aesonis*, p. 129, l. 6. **cum**: 'since'; for the mood of *intellegerent*, see 240.

3. **eius**: sc. *Peliae*. **esse**: see note on *puerum mortuum esse*, p. 129, l. 9. **nēscio quam**: accusative of *nēscio-quis;* with *fābulam* = 'some story or other.' See Vocab. under *nēsciō* and note the quantity of the *o*. Do not trans. *nēscio* as a verb. **fābulam**: note the derivation; see 108, *c*. Observe that the translation 'fable' is not appropriate here. Why?

2. 5. **nē . . . āmitteret**: 'that he might lose'; 264.

6. **occupātum**: 'which had been gained'; a participle is often best translated by a relative clause. **amīcum quendam**: 'a friend (of his).' *Quīdam* often has about the force of the English indefinite article.

7. **Delphōs**: note the omission of the prep. and see 132. *Delphī* (*-ōrum*, m. pl.) was in Phocis (see Map opp. p. 97) and was the seat of the famous oracle of the Pythian Apollo. **quī . . . cōnsuleret**: 'to consult'; 230. **Ille**: 'he,' referring to *amīcum quendam* in l. 6. **quam celerrimē**: cf. 194 and 67. For the superlative form cf. 57.

8. **vēnisset**: cf. *quae causa esset*, l. 2. Why is the tense of *vēnisset* different from that of *esset;* study 219 carefully.

9. **nūllum**: to be taken with *perīculum*.

sentia perīculum; monuit tamen Peliam ut, sī quis venīret calceum unum gerēns, eum cavēret. Post paucōs annōs accidit ut Peliās magnum sacrificium factūrus esset; nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīserat, et certam diem conveniendī dīxerat. Diē cōnstitūtā magnus numerus hominum undique ex agrīs convēnit; inter aliōs autem vēnit etiam Iāsōn, quī

Delphi.

At the foot of Mt. Parnassus: seat of the famous oracle of Apollo. The picture shows in the foreground the ruins revealed by recent excavations.

---

1. **venīret**: 271. The words of the oracle were: '*Sī quis . . . veniet, eum cavē.*'

2. **cavēret**: 260. The clause *ut . . . cavēret* is the object of *monuit.*

3. **ut . . . factūrus esset**: 261; the clause is the subject of *accidit.* For the form of *factūrus esset* see 97 (1).

4. **certam diem**: for the gender see 45. **conveniendī**: we should say 'for assembling.'

5. **hominum**: 138.

ā puerō apud centaurum quendam vīxerat. Dum tamen iter facit, calceum alterum in trānseundō nēscio quō flūmine āmīsit.

The Golden Fleece.

3. Iāsōn igitur, cum calceum āmissum nūllō modō recipere posset, alterō pede nūdō in rēgiam pervēnit. Quem cum Peliās vīdisset, subitō timōre affectus est; intellēxit enim hunc esse hominem quem ōrāculum dēmōnstrāvisset. Hōc igitur iniit cōnsilium. Rēx erat quīdam nōmine Aeētēs, quī rēgnum Colchidis illō tempore obtinēbat. Huic commissum erat vellus illud aureum, quod Phrixus ōlim ibi

---

1. **ā puerō**: = *ā pueritiā*, 'from boyhood.' **centaurum**: the centaurs were a fabulous race of monsters, half-man and half-horse. The centaur in question, Cheiron by name, was also the teacher of Achilles and other heroes. **Dum . . . facit**: note the tense; 236.

2. **calceum alterum**: a Latin idiom; we should say '*one* shoe.' **nēscio quō flūmine**: 'some river or other.' See note on *nēscio quam*, p. 130, l. 3.

3. 4. **āmissum**: for the trans. cf. *occupātum*, p. 130, l. 6. Here the active form might be used, 'which he had lost.'

5. **alterō pede**: for the trans. cf. *calceum alterum*, l. 2. For the case see 169. **rēgiam**: sc. *domum*, 'palace'; see 195, *b*. **Quem**: be careful of the trans.; see 202. Begin the sentence with *cum*.

7. **quem . . . dēmōnstrāvisset**: see p. 131, l. 1, and for the mood of the verb, 268.

8. **quīdam**: 'a'; see note on *amīcum quendam*, p. 130, l. 6. **nōmine Aeētēs**: 'Aeëtes by name.' *Aeētēs*, (*-ae*, m.), was the child of the Sun by a daughter of Oceanus. For the case of *nōmine* see 171.

9. **Colchidis**: 139. *Colchis*, (*-idis*, f.), was in Asia, east of the Black Sea. **obtinēbat**: be careful of the meaning. Do not trans. by the corresponding English word.

10. **illud**: 199. **Phrixus**: When his stepmother attempted to sacrifice him to Zeus, *Phrixus* (*-ī*) with his sister Helle escaped through the air on a ram with golden fleece, the gift of Hermes. Helle fell into the sea, giving her name to the Hellespont, where she was

relīquerat. Cōnstituit igitur Peliās Iāsonī negōtium dare ut hōc vellere potīrētur; cum enim rēs esset magnī perīculī, spērābat eum in itinere peritūrum esse. Iāsonem igitur ad sē arcessīvit, et quid fierī vellet dēmōnstrāvit. Iāsōn autem, etsī bene intellegēbat rem esse difficillimam, negōtium libenter suscēpit.

The building of the good ship Argo.

4. Cum tamen Colchis multōrum diērum iter ab eō locō abesset, nōluit Iāsōn sōlus proficīscī; dīmīsit igitur nūntiōs in omnēs partēs, quī causam itineris docērent et diem certam conveniendī dīcerent. Intereā, postquam omnia quae sunt ūsuī ad armandās nāvēs comportārī iussit, negōtium dedit Argō cuidam, quī summam scientiam rērum nauticārum habēbat, ut nāvem aedificāret. In hīs rēbus circiter decem diēs cōnsūmptī sunt; Argus enim, quī operī

---

drowned. Phrixus arrived in Colchis and sacrificed the ram to Zeus. Aeëtes hung up the fleece in the grove of Ares. **ōlim**: see p. 129, l. 1.

2. **ut . . . potīrētur**: a substantive clause in apposition with *negōtium;* 260. **vellere**: 163, *a*. **cum**: 'since.' **magnī perīculī**: see 140 and the note to 142.

3. **peritūrum esse**: for what tense of the dir. disc.? See note preceding 274.

5. **etsī . . . intellegēbat**: 252. **difficillimum**: for the form of the superlative see 58.

4. 7. **multōrum diērum**: 141. **iter**: 130.

9. **docērent . . . dīcerent**: see note on **quī . . . cōnsuleret**, p. 130, l. 7.

11. **ūsuī**: 'of use'; lit. 'for use,' 156. **armandās**: be careful of the meaning; see Vocab. **iussit**: note the tense and see 234.

12. **Argō cuidam**: from *Argus*, *-ī*, 'one Argus,' or 'a man called Argus.'

13. **ut . . . aedificāret**: cf. **ut . . . potīrētur**, l. 2.

14. **circiter**: the following sentence shows that the meaning is *only* about.' **operī**: 149, *b*.

praeerat, tantam dīligentiam praebēbat, ut nē nocturnum quidem tempus ad labōrem intermitteret. Ad multitūdinem hominum trānsportandam nāvis paulō erat lātior quam quibus in nostrō marī ūtī cōnsuēvimus, et ad vim tempestātum perferendam tōta ē rōbore facta est.

The anchor is weighed.

5. Intereā ea diēs appetēbat, quam Iāsōn per nūntiōs ēdīxerat, et ex omnibus regiōnibus Graeciae multī, quōs aut reī novitās aut spēs glōriae movēbat, undique conveniēbant. Trādunt autem in hōc numerō fuisse Herculem, Orpheum, citharoedum clārissimum, Thēseum, Castorem et multōs aliōs, quōrum nōmina omnēs sciunt. Ex hīs Iāsōn, quōs arbitrātus est ad omnia subeunda perīcula parātissimōs

---

1. **praeerat**: 'was in charge of.'

2. **ad . . . trānsportandam**: 282 and 283.

3. **hominum**: 139. **paulō**: 'a little': 168.

4. **quibus**: for *eae, quibus*, 'those which.' **nostrō**: said from the point of view of a Roman writer.

5. **tōta**: 'throughout.' **ē rōbore**: abl. of material; we should say '*of* oak.'

5. 6. **appetēbat . . . conveniēbant**: note the tenses; see 209. **ea diēs**: note the gender and cf. p. 131, l. 4.

9. **Herculem**: see note to p. 63, l. 8.

10. **Orpheum**: *Orpheus* (*-ī*), a mythical poet and musician, who is said to have tamed wild beasts and moved rocks and trees with his music. **Thēseum**: *Thēseus* (*-ī*) was the national hero of Athens, who performed labors rivaling those of Heracles. **Castorem**: *Castor* (*-oris*) was the twin brother of Pollux and celebrated for his skill in managing horses. The brothers took part in many adventures and were later deified. Their worship was introduced into Rome from Tarentum and a temple in the Forum commemorated their help in the battle of Lake Regillus.

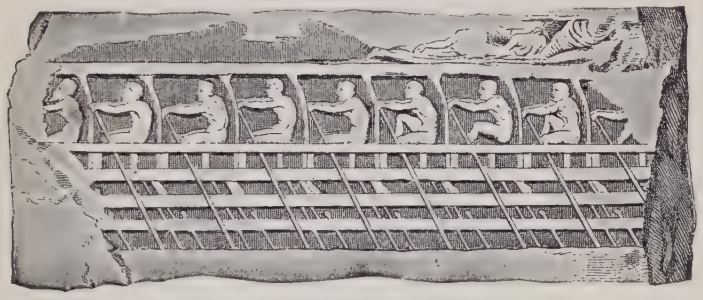
11. **omnēs**: the subst., 'all men,' 'everybody.'

12. **quōs . . . eōs**: a common order in Latin, with which the student should make himself familiar. Trans. as if *eōs* stood before *quōs*, 'Jason selected those who he thought,' etc.

esse, eōs ad numerum quīnquāgintā dēlēgit, et sociōs sibi adiūnxit; tum, paucōs diēs commorātus, ut ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparāret, nāvem dēdūxit et tempestātem ad nāvigandum idōneam nactus, magnō cum favōre omnium solvit.

A fatal mistake.

6. Haud multō post Argonautae (ita enim appellātī sunt quī in istā nāvī vehēbantur) īnsulam quandam nōmine Cȳzicum attigērunt, et ē nāvī ēgressī, ā rēge illīus regiōnis hospitiō exceptī sunt. Paucās hōrās ibi commorātī, ad sōlis



Trireme.

A relief found on the Acropolis at Athens, showing the waist of the vessel. We see the uppermost bank of rowers, but only the oars of the two lower banks.

1. **sociōs**: 'as companions': 121.

2. **diēs**: 130.

3. **dēdūxit**: 'launched'; note the literal meaning. The early ships could be drawn out on the beach, instead of lying at anchor or at a dock.

6. 6. **multō**: cf. *paulō*, p. 134, l. 3. **Argonautae, -ārum**, m. pl., *the Argonauts*, from *Argō* and *nauta*.

7. **istā**: the pronoun of the second person, 'that ship about which I have been telling you.' **nōmine**: cf. p. 132, l. 8.

8. **Cȳzicum**: *Cȳzicus* (-ī, f.) was situated on the southern shore of the Propontis (Sea of Marmora); it was later the site of a famous city of the same name; see Map opp. p. 115.

9. **hospitiō**: 'hospitality'; 166.

occāsum rūrsus solvērunt; at, postquam pauca mīlia passuum prōgressī sunt, tanta tempestās subitō coorta est, ut cursum tenēre nōn possent, et in eandem partem īnsulae unde nūper profectī erant magnō cum perīculō dēicerentur. Incolae tamen, cum nox esset obducta, Argonautās nōn agnōscēbant, et nāvem inimīcam vēnisse arbitrātī, arma rapuērunt et eōs ēgredī prohibēbant. Ācriter in lītore pugnātum est, et rēx ipse, quī cum aliīs dēcucurrerat, ab Argonautīs occīsus est. Mox tamen, cum iam lūx orerētur, sēnsērunt incolae sē errāre et arma abiēcērunt; Argonautae autem cum vidērent rēgem occīsum esse, magnum dolōrem percēpērunt.

The loss of Hylas.

7. Postrīdiē eius diēī Iāsōn, tempestātem satis idōneam esse arbitrātus (summa enim tranquillitās iam cōnsecūta erat), ancorās sustulit, et pauca mīlia passuum prōgressus, ante noctem Mȳsiam attigit. Ibi paucās hōrās in ancorīs

---

1. **solvērunt**: sc. *nāvem*.

3. **et**: 'but,' a meaning which this conjunction sometimes gets from the context.

5. **tamen**: cf. p. 129, l. 6. **cum**: 'since.' **obducta**: sc. *nūbibus*, 'with clouds' and trans. 'overcast.'

7. **ēgredī**: sc. *nāvem*. The infin. is common with *prohibēre*, although *quīn* with the subjunctive is also used. We should say 'from landing' or 'disembarking.' **pugnātum est**: 204. Do not trans. literally.

8. **dēcucurrerat**: 'had run down' to the shore.

10. **errāre**: note the tense.

7. 13. **Postrīdiē eius diēī**: in English *eius diēī* is superfluous. For its construction see 134. **tempestātem**: 'the weather.'

15. **sustulit**: see *tollō*.

16. **Mȳsiam**: *Mȳsia (-ae)*, a country in northwestern Asia Minor; see Map opp. p. 97. Note that *Mȳsiam* is not acc. of limit of motion, which would require a preposition, but the direct object. Base your trans. on the lit. meaning of the verb.

exspectāvit; ā nautīs enim cognōverat aquae cōpiam quam sēcum habērent iam dēficere; quam ob causam quīdam ex Argonautīs, in terram ēgressī, aquam quaerēbant. Hōrum in numerō erat Hylās quīdam, puer fōrmā praestantissimā; quī dum aquam quaerit, ā comitibus paulum sēcesserat. Nymphae autem quae rīvum colēbant cum iuvenem vīdissent, eī persuādēre cōnātae sunt ut sēcum manēret; et cum ille negāret sē hōc factūrum esse, puerum vī abstulērunt.

Comitēs eius postquam Hylam āmissum esse sēnsērunt, magnō dolōre affectī, diū frūstrā quaerēbant. Herculēs autem et Polyphēmus, quī vēstīgia puerī longius secūtī erant, ubi tandem ad lītus rediērunt, Iāsonem solvisse cognōvērunt.

The punishment of Phineus.

8. Post haec Argonautae ad Thrāciam cursum tenuērunt, et postquam ad oppidum Salmydessum nāvem appulērunt,

---

2. **dēficere**: note the tense and trans. accordingly. **ex Argonautīs**: 138, *a*.

4. **Hylās quīdam**: *Hylās* (*-ae*, m.) was a beautiful youth, son of a king of the Dryopes, an ancient people of Thessaly. For the trans. cf. *Argō cuidam*, p. 133, l. 12. **fōrmā praestantissimā**: 170. Note the derivation of *praestantissimā*.

5. **quī dum**: 'while he.' See 202 and note on p. 129, l. 10. **quaerit**: for the tense see note to p. 132, l. 1.

6. **colēbant**: 'dwelt in'; they were water-nymphs. **eī**: indirect obj. of *persuādēre* (149, *a*), while the direct object is the clause *ut . . . manēret* (260).

8. **negāret**: 'said that he would not.' *Negō* means 'say . . . not' and the negative should be transferred to the infinitive.

9. **Comitēs**: subject of *sēnsērunt;* cf. *quī dum*, l. 5, above.

10. **quaerēbant**: 205.

11. **Polyphēmus** (**-ī**): one of the Argonauts. **longius**: 'too far'; 193.

8. 14. **haec**: 'this'; lit., 'these things.' **Thrāciam**: for *Thrācia, -ae*, f., *Thrace*, see Map opp. p. 115.

in terram ēgressī sunt. Ibi cum ab incolīs quaesīssent, quis rēgnum eius regiōnis obtinēret, certiōrēs factī sunt Phīneum quendam tum rēgem esse. Cognōvērunt etiam hunc lūmina āmīsisse et immānī quōdam suppliciō afficī, quod ōlim sē crūdēlissimum in fīliōs suōs praebuisset. Cuius supplicī hōc erat genus. Missa erant ā Iove mōnstra quaedam speciē horribilī, quae capita virginum, corpora volucrum habēbant. Hae volucrēs, quae Harpȳiae appellābantur, Phīneō summam molestiam afferēbant; cum enim cibus illī appositus erat, veniēbant et id statim auferēbant. Quae cum ita essent, haud multum āfuit quīn Phīneus famē morerētur.

His deliverance.

9. Rēs igitur in hōc locō erant, cum Argonautae nāvem appulērunt. Phīneus autem simul atque audīvit eōs in suōs fīnēs ēgressōs esse, magnopere gāvīsus est. Sciēbat

---

1. **incolīs**: see Word Group 12. **quaesīssent**: = *quaesīvissent.*

2. **obtinēret**: be careful of the trans. Cf. p. 132, l. 9. **Phīneum**: *Phīneus* (-ī) put out his sons' eyes because of a false charge brought against them by their stepmother, Idaea.

3. **lūmina āmīsisse**: *had lost his sight;* the punishment fitted the crime.

4. **quōdam**: 'a.'

5. **crūdēlissimum**: 188.

8. **Harpȳiae, -ārum**, f. pl., *Harpies.*

9. **cum . . . appositum erat**: 'whenever food had been set before him'; see 235, *a.*

10. **id**: = *cibum.*

11. **Quae cum ita essent**: be careful of the trans. **haud multum . . . morerētur**: 'Phineus came near dying.' The subject of *āfuit* is the substantive clause *quīn . . . morerētur*, 263.

9. 13. **locō**: 'state,' 'condition.' **cum . . . appulērunt**: sc. *ad oppidum* (cf. l. 15, p. 137), 'at a time when the Argonauts landed'; note the temporal force of *cum* and see 235.

15. **gāvīsus est**: 96.

enim quantam opīniōnem virtūtis Argonautae habērent, nec dubitābat quīn sibi auxilium ferrent. Nūntium igitur ad nāvem mīsit, quī Iāsonem sociōsque ad rēgiam vocāret. Eō cum vēnissent, Phīneus dēmōnstrāvit quantō in perīculō suae rēs essent, et prōmīsit sē magna praemia datūrum esse, sī illī eī reī auxilium repperissent. Argonautae negōtium libenter suscēpērunt, et ubi hōra vēnit, cum rēge cēnāvērunt; at simul ac cēna apposita est, Harpȳiae domum intrāvērunt, et cibum auferre cōnābantur. Argonautae prīmum gladiīs volucrēs petiērunt; cum tamen vidērent hōc nihil prōdesse, Zētēs et Calais, quī ālīs īnstrūctī sunt, in āera sē sublevāvērunt, ut dēsuper impetum facerent. Quod cum sēnsissent

1. **opīniōnem virtūtis**: 'reputation for valor.'

2. **quīn . . . ferrent**: 263.

3. **rēgiam**: cf. p. 132, l. 5. **Eō**: *i.e. ad rēgiam.*

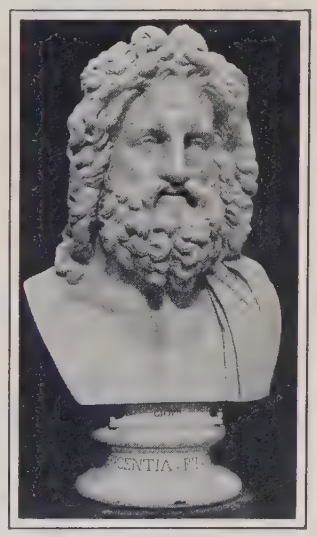
5. **suae rēs**: 'his affairs,' 'his fortunes.' Do not trans. *rēs* always by 'things.' **datūrum esse . . . repperissent**: see 270 (second example).

7. **ubi . . . vēnit**: 234.

8. **simul ac**: 'as soon as'; 234. **intrāvērunt . . . cōnābantur**: note the different tenses used of a single act and of a repeated action.

10. **petiērunt**: be careful of the meaning. **nihil**: 125, *a*.

11. **īnstrūctī**: 'provided.' *Zētēs* (*-ae*) and *Calais* (*-is*) were winged youths, sons of Boreas, the North Wind, and a nymph called Oreithyia. **āera**: from *āēr*, *āeris*, m., *air;* for the form see 38.



Jupiter.

A colossal mask found at Otricoli, the ancient Ocricolum, in Umbria, and now in the Vatican Museum. It represents the Greek Zeus, with whom the Roman Jupiter was identified.

Harpÿiae, reī novitāte perterritae statim aufūgērunt, neque posteā umquam rediērunt.

The Symplegades.

10. Hōc factō, Phīneus, ut prō tantō beneficiō grātiās referret, Iāsonī dēmōnstrāvit quā ratiōne Symplēgadēs vītāre posset. Symplēgadēs autem duae erant rūpēs ingentī magnitūdine, quae ā Iove in marī positae erant eō cōnsiliō, nē quis ad Colchida pervenīret. Hae parvō intervāllō nābant et, sī quid in medium spatium vēnerat, incrēdibilī celeritāte concurrēbant. Postquam igitur ā Phīneō doctus est quid faciendum esset, Iāsōn sublātīs ancorīs nāvem solvit, et lēnī ventō prōvectus, mox ad Symplēgadēs appropinquāvit. Tum in prōrā stāns, columbam, quam in manū tenēbat, ēmīsit. Illa rēctā viā per medium spatium iter fēcit et, priusquam rūpēs cōnflīxērunt, incolumis ēvāsit, caudā tantum āmissā. Tum rūpēs utrimque discessērunt; antequam tamen rūrsus concurrerent, Argonautae, bene

---

1. **neque . . . umquam**: 'and . . . never.'

10. 3. **grātiās referret**: distinguish *grātiam habēre*, *grātiās agere*, and *grātiam* (*grātiās*) *referre*. See Vocab. under *grātia*.

4. **Symplēgadēs, -um**, two fabulous rocky islands in the Euxine (Black) Sea.

7. **nē . . . pervenīret**: in apposition with *cōnsiliō*; 260, *a*. **Hae**: sc. *īnsulae*. **parvō intervāllō**: 'a short distance apart'; 169.

8. **nābant**: 'floated,' from *nō*, *nāre*. **sī quid**: 'if anything.'

10. **faciendum esset**: see 97 (2).

13. **rēctā viā**: 'straight'; somewhat similarly we say 'straightway,' but of time. **per medium spatium**: *i.e.* between the two islands.

15. **caudā tantum āmissā**: 'losing only its tail feathers'; abl. abs. Observe the lit. trans. In English we often use a present participle where the Latin with more exactness employs the perfect.

16. **concurrerent**: 239. The subjunctive represents the design

intellegentēs omnem spem salūtis in celeritāte positam esse, summā vī rēmīs contendērunt, et nāvem incolumem perdūxērunt. Hōc factō, dīs grātiās libenter ēgērunt, quōrum auxiliō ē tantō perīculō ēreptī essent; bene enim sciēbant nōn sine auxiliō deōrum rem ita fēlīciter ēvēnisse.

A difficult task.

11. Brevī intermissō spatiō, Argonautae ad flūmen Phāsim vēnērunt, quod in fīnibus Colchōrum erat. Ibi cum nāvem appulissent et in terram ēgressī essent, statim ad rēgem Aeētem sē contulērunt, et ab eō postulāvērunt ut vellus aureum sibi trāderētur. Ille cum audīvisset quam ob causam Argonautae vēnissent, īrācundiā commōtus est et diū negābat sē vellus trāditūrum esse. Tandem, quod sciēbat Iāsonem nōn sine auxiliō deōrum hōc negōtium suscēpisse, mūtātā sententiā, prōmīsit sē vellus trāditūrum, sī Iāsōn labōrēs duōs difficillimōs prius perfēcisset; et cum Iāsōn dīxisset sē ad omnia perīcula subeunda parātum esse, quid fierī vellet ostendit. Prīmum iungendī erant duo taurī speciē horribilī, quī flammās ex ōre ēdēbant; tum, hīs

---

of the Argonauts; cf. *cōnflīxērunt* (l. 14), which is merely temporal, since the dove knew nothing of the danger.

1. **in . . . positam esse**: 'depended upon'; note the lit. trans.

2. **summā vī rēmīs**: respectively abl. of manner and of means. **incolumem**: see note on *crūdēlissimum*, p. 138, l. 5.

3. **grātiās . . . ēgērunt**: see note on *grātiās referret*, p. 140, l. 3.

5. **nōn sine**: 289.

11. 6. **Phāsis, -idis**, m., *the Phasis*, a river of Colchis, flowing into the Euxine (Black) Sea.

9. **ut . . . trāderētur**: substantive clause, object of *postulāvērunt*. Why subjunctive?

10. **sibi**: 198. **Ille**: of what verb is *ille* the subject?

11. **negābat**: for the trans. see note on p. 137, l. 8.

12. **trāditūrum**: sc. *esse*.

17. **iungendī erant**: 97 (2).

iūnctīs, ager quīdam arandus erat, et dentēs dracōnis serendī. Hīs rēbus audītīs, Iāsōn, etsī rem esse summī perīculī intellegēbat, tamen, nē hanc occāsiōnem reī bene gerendae āmitteret, negōtium suscēpit.

Love finds a way.

12. At Mēdēa, rēgis fīlia, Iāsonem adamāvit, et ubi audīvit eum tantum perīculum subitūrum esse, rem aegrē ferēbat. Intellegēbat enim patrem suum hunc labōrem prōposuisse eō ipsō cōnsiliō, ut Iāsōn morerētur. Quae cum ita essent, Mēdēa (quae summam scientiam medicīnae habēbat) hōc cōnsilium iniit. Mediā nocte clam patrem ex urbe ēvāsit, et postquam in montēs fīnitimōs vēnit, herbās quāsdam lēgit; tum, sūcō expressō unguentum parāvit, quod vī suā corpus aleret nervōsque cōnfīrmāret. Hōc factō, Iāsonī unguentum dedit; praecēpit autem, ut eō diē quō istī labōrēs cōnficiendī essent, corpus suum et arma māne

---

1. **quīdam**: remember the force of *quīdam*.

2. **serendī**: sc *erant*. **rem**: 'task'; see note on p. 139, l. 5, above.

3. **reī bene gerendae**: 'of achieving success'; note the lit. trans. and see the preceding note.

12. 5. **Mēdēa**, **-ae**, f., *Medea*, a celebrated sorceress, as well as a beautiful woman.

6. **rem aegrē ferēbat**: 'she was displeased.' In a more literal trans. *rem* might be rendered 'circumstances' or 'situation.'

8. **ut . . . morerētur**: cf. p. 140, l. 7. **Quae . . . essent**: cf. p. 130, l. 2.

10. **hōc**: 'the following.' **clam**: the prep. 'without the knowledge of.'

12. **lēgit**: 'gathered.' **sūcō**: from *sūcus*, (**-ī**), m., *juice;* cf. Eng. 'succulent.' **unguentum**, **-ī**, n., *ointment;* Eng. 'unguent.'

13. **aleret . . . cōnfīrmāret**: 233. **quō**: sc. *diē*.

15. **istī**: see note on *ista*, p. 135, l. 7, above. **cōnficiendī essent**: a part of the injunction of Medea; 271.

īnficeret. Iāsōn, etsī paene omnēs magnitūdine et vīribus corporis praecēdēbat (vīta enim omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiīs reī mīlitāris cōnstiterat), tamen hōc cōnsilium nōn neglegendum esse cēnsēbat.

Sowing the dragon's teeth.

13. Ubi is diēs vēnit quem rēx ad arandum agrum ēdīxerat, Iāsōn, ortā lūce cum sociīs ad locum cōnstitūtum sē contulit. Ibi stabulum ingēns repperit, in quō taurī inclūsī erant; tum, portīs apertīs, taurōs in lūcem trāxit, et summā cum difficultāte iugum imposuit. At Aeētēs, cum vidēret taurōs nihil contrā Iāsonem valēre, magnopere mīrātus est; nēsciēbat enim fīliam suam auxilium eī dedisse. Tum Iāsōn, omnibus aspicientibus, agrum arāre coepit; quā in rē tantam dīligentiam praebuit, ut ante merīdiem opus cōnfēcerit. Hōc factō, ad locum ubi rēx sedēbat adiit, et dentēs dracōnis postulāvit; quōs ubi accēpit, in agrum quem arāverat magnā cum dīligentiā īnsēvit. Hōrum autem dentium nātūra erat

---

1. **īnficeret**: sc. *unguentō*, 'anoint.' **omnēs**: substantive, 'all men.' Observe that *praecēdēbat*, although compounded with *prae-*, does not govern a dat.; see 149, note.

2. **vēnātiōnibus**: 'hunting'; properly, 'hunting expeditions,' the force of the plural.

3. **reī mīlitāris**: 'military service,' or 'military life.' **cōnstiterat**: 'had been spent in'; lit. 'had consisted in.'

13. 5. **arandum**: from *arō*, *-āre*, plow; cf. Eng. 'arable.'

6. **ortā lūce**: 'at sunrise.'

7. **stabulum**: note the deriv. and primary meaning (108, *c*); also the English derivative. **ingēns**: note the deriv. of this word also; see Vocab. How does it differ in meaning from *magnus*?

9. **imposuit**: sc. *eīs*.

10. **nihil**: 125, *a*.

15. **quōs**: 'them'; 202.

16. **īnsēvit**: sc. *eōs*, 'he sowed them.'

tālis ut in eō locō ubi īnsitī essent virī armātī mīrō quōdam modō gignerentur.

A strange harvest.

14. Nōndum tamen Iāsōn tōtum opus cōnfēcerat; imperāverat enim eī Aeētēs, ut armātōs virōs quī ē dentibus gignerentur sōlus interficeret. Postquam igitur omnēs dentēs in agrum īnsēvit, Iāsōn, lassitūdine exanimātus, quiētī sē trādidit, dum virī istī gignerentur. Paucās hōrās quiētī dedit; sub vesperum tamen ē somnō subitō excitātus, rem ita ēvēnisse ut praedictum erat cognōvit; nam in omnibus agrī partibus virī ingentī magnitūdine corporis, gladiīs galeīsque armātī, mīrum in modum ē terrā oriēbantur. Hōc cognitō, Iāsōn cōnsilium quod Mēdēa dedisset nōn omittendum esse putābat; saxum igitur ingēns (ita enim Mēdēa praecēperat) in mediōs virōs coniēcit. Illī undique ad locum concurrērunt, et cum quisque sibi id saxum (nēscio quā causā) habēre vellet, magna contrōversia orta est. Mox, strictīs gladiīs, inter sē pugnāre coepērunt, et cum hōc modō plūrimī occīsī essent, reliquī vulneribus cōnfectī ā Iāsone nūllō negōtiō interfectī sunt.

---

1. **mīrō quōdam modō**: cf. p. 130, l. 6, and p. 138, l. 4.

14. 4. **ut . . . interficeret**: object of *imperāvit*, while *eī* is the indirect obj. (149, *a*). Why is the verb in the subjunctive?

6. **quiētī . . . trādidit**: 'went to sleep.'

7. **gignerentur**: 238.

8. **rem**: be careful in translating this word.

10. **galeīs**: see Introd. p. xxxi.

11. **oriēbantur**: note the tense.

14. **mediōs**: 'the midst of.' **ad locum**: *i.e.* the place where the stone fell.

15. **nēscio quā causā**: 'for some reason or other'; cf. *nēscio quam*, p. 130, l. 3.

18. **nūllō negōtiō**: 'without difficulty.'

The flight of Medea.

15. At rēx Aeētēs ubi cognōvit Iāsonem labōrem prōpositum cōnfēcisse, īrācundiā graviter commōtus est; intellegēbat enim id per dolum factum esse, nec dubitābat quīn Mēdēa auxilium eī tulisset. Mēdēa autem, cum intellegeret sē in magnō fore perīculō sī in rēgiā mānsisset, fugā salūtem petere cōnstituit. Omnibus igitur rēbus ad fugam parātīs, mediā nocte, īnsciente patre, cum frātre Absyrtō ēvāsit, et quam celerrimē ad locum ubi Argō subducta erat sē contulit. Eō cum vēnisset, ad pedēs Iāsonis sē prōiēcit, et multīs cum lacrimīs obsecrāvit eum nē in tantō perīculō mulierem dēsereret quae eī tantum prōfuisset. Ille, quod memoriā tenēbat sē per eius auxilium ē magnō perīculō ēvāsisse, libenter eam excēpit, et postquam causam veniendī audīvit, hortātus est nē patrem timēret. Prōmīsit autem sē quam prīmum eam in nāve suā ablātūrum.

The winning of the fleece.

16. Postrīdiē eius diēī Iāsōn cum sociīs suīs ortā lūce nāvem dēdūxērunt, et tempestātem idōneam nactī, ad eum locum rēmīs contendērunt quō in locō Mēdēa vellus cēlātum esse dēmōnstrāvit. Eō cum vēnissent, Iāsōn in terram

---

15. 1. **prōpositum**: for the trans. cf. *occupātum*, p. 130, l. 6.

5. **fore**: = *futūram esse*.

7. **Absyrtō**: Absyrtus, brother of Medea, was a young child.

11. **prōfuisset**: an essential part of the clause **nē . . . dēsereret**: 272. **Ille**: 'he,' or 'Jason.'

14. **nē . . . timēret**: object of *hortātus est*.

15. **ablātūrum**: sc. *esse*. For the meaning cf. p. 129, l. 8.

16. 16. **Postrīdiē eius diēī**: cf. p. 136, l. 13.

18. **quō in locō**: 'where.' The antecedent is sometimes repeated in the rel. clause.

ēgressus est, et sociīs ad mare relīctīs, quī praesidiō nāvī essent, ipse cum Mēdēā in silvās viam cēpit. Pauca mīlia passuum per silvam prōgressus, vellus quod quaerēbat in arbore quādam vīdit. Id tamen auferre rēs erat summae difficultātis; nōn modo enim locus ipse ēgregiē et nātūrā et arte mūnītus erat, sed etiam dracō quīdam speciē terribilī arborem cūstōdiēbat. At Mēdēa, quae, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, medicīnae summam scientiam habuit, rāmum, quem ex arbore proximā arripuerat, venēnō īnfēcit. Hōc factō, ad locum appropinquāvit, et dracōnī, quī faucibus apertīs adventum exspectābat, venēnum dedit; deinde, cum dracō somnō oppressus esset, Iāsōn vellus aureum ex arbore arripuit, et cum Mēdēā quam celerrimē pedem rettulit.

The return to the Argo.

17. Dum ea geruntur, Argonautae, quī ad mare relīctī erant, animō dēmissō reditum Iāsonis exspectābant; bene enim intellegēbant, id negōtium summī esse perīculī. Postquam igitur ad occāsum sōlis frūstrā exspectāvērunt, dē eius salūte dēspērāre coepērunt, nec dubitābant quīn aliquī cāsus accidisset. Quae cum ita essent, mātūrandum sibi cēnsuērunt, ut auxilium ducī ferrent; et, dum proficīscī parant,

---

1. **ad**: 'by' or 'at.' **praesidiō nāvī**: 156, note.
3. **in**: 'on.'
4. **rēs**: 'a feat.'
5. **et . . . et**: 'both . . . and.'
10. **adventum**: sc. *eius* = *Mēdēae*.

17. 15. **dēmissō**: 'downcast.'

18. **nec**: 'and . . . not.' **aliquī**: the adj. 'some.'

19. **Quae . . . essent**: 'this being so,' 'accordingly.' **mātūrandum sibi**: sc. *esse*, 'that they ought to make haste'; see 155 and 204.

20. **ut auxilium . . . ferrent**: 'to lend aid.'

lūmen quoddam subitō cōnspiciunt mīrum in modum inter silvās nitēns, et magnopere mīrātī quae causa esset eius reī, ad locum concurrunt. Quō cum vēnissent, Iāsonī et Mēdēae advenientibus occurrērunt, et vellus aureum lūminis eius causam esse cognōvērunt. Omnī timōre sublātō, magnō cum gaudiō ducem suum excēpērunt, et dīs grātiās summās ēgērunt, quod rēs ita fēlīciter ēvēnisset.

The Vale of Tempe.

This celebrated gorge, between Mt. Olympus and Mt. Ossa, formed the outlet of the river Peneus to the sea. It was so famous that the name Tempe was applied to other beautiful valleys.

---

1. **quoddam** : 'a.'

2. **nitēns**: 'shining'; from *niteō*, as is shown by the quantity of the *i*.

3. **reī**: how should this word be translated here? **Quō cum vēnissent**: trans. as if it were *eō cum vēnissent*.

The flight from Colchis. The pursuit.

18. Hīs rēbus gestīs, omnēs sine morā nāvem rūrsus cōnscendērunt, et sublātīs ancorīs prīmā vigiliā solvērunt; neque enim satis tūtum esse arbitrātī sunt in eō locō manēre. At rēx Aeētēs, quī iam ante inimīcō in eōs fuerat animō, ubi cognōvit fīliam suam nōn modo ad Argonautās sē recēpisse, sed etiam ad vellus auferendum auxilium tulisse, hōc dolōre gravius exārsit. Nāvem longam quam celerrimē dēdūcī iussit, et mīlitibus impositīs, fugientēs īnsecūtus est. Argonautae, quī bene sciēbant rem in magnō perīculō esse, summīs vīribus rēmīs contendēbant; cum tamen nāvis quā vehēbantur ingentī esset magnitūdine, nōn eādem celeritāte quā Colchī prōgredī poterant. Quae cum ita essent, minimum āfuit quīn ā Colchīs sequentibus caperentur; neque enim longius aberant quam quō tēlum adicī posset. At Mēdēa cum vīdisset quō in locō rēs essent, paene omnī spē dēpositā, nefārium hōc cōnsilium cēpit.

---

18. 2. **prīmā vigiliā**: see 183 (last paragraph).

3. **satis**: 'altogether,' 'quite.'

4. **inimīcō**: with *animō;* 170.

6. **auxilium tulisse**: sc. *eīs* = *Argonautīs*. **hōc dolōre**: 'because of resentment at this'; *hōc* is equivalent in meaning to an objective genitive.

7. **exārsit**: from *exārdēscō*.

8. **fugientēs**: substantive, 'the fugitives.'

9. **rem . . . esse**: 'that the situation was critical.'

12. **quā**: instrumental abl. **Colchī**: sc. *prōgredīēbantur*. **Quae cum ita essent**: see p. 146, l. 19. **minimum āfuit . . . caperentur**: cf. p. 138, l. 11, and model your trans. on the one given there. The subject of *āfuit* is *quīn . . . caperentur*.

14. **quō . . . posset**: a spear's throw; 233. *Quō* = '(the point) to which.' The subject of *aberant* and *caperentur* is *eī* (= *Argonautae*) understood.

A fearful expedient.

19. Erat in nāve Argonautārum fīlius quīdam rēgis Aeētae, nōmine Absyrtus, quem, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus Mēdēa, ex urbe fugiēns, sēcum abdūxerat. Hunc puerum Mēdēa cōnstituit interficere, eō cōnsiliō ut, membrīs eius in mare coniectīs, cursum Colchōrum impedīret; prō certō enim sciēbat Aeētem, cum membra fīlī vīdisset, nōn longius prōsecūtūrum esse. Neque opīniō eam fefellit; omnia enim ita ēvēnērunt ut Mēdēa spērāverat. Aeētēs ubi prīmum membra vīdit, dum ea colligerentur nāvem manēre iussit. Dum tamen ea geruntur, Argonautae, nōn intermissō rēmigandī labōre, mox (quod necesse fuit) ē cōnspectū hostium remōtī sunt, neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Ēridanum pervēnērunt. At Aeētēs, nihil sibi prōfutūrum esse arbitrātus sī longius prōgressus esset, animō dēmissō domum revertit, ut fīlī corpus ad sepultūram daret.

The bargain with Pelias.

20. Tandem post multa perīcula Iāsōn in eundem locum pervēnit unde ōlim profectus erat. Tum ē nāvī ēgressus, ad

---

19. 3. **fugiēns**: trans. by a temporal clause.

5. **impedīret**: the subject is *ea* understood, = *Mēdēa*.

7. **Neque . . . fefellit**: 'and she was not mistaken' (in so thinking). Observe the lit. trans. **omnia**: 'everything'; cf. *haec*, p. 137, l. 14, above. **ita**: omit, or trans. *ita . . . ut* by 'just as.'

8. **ubi prīmum**: 'as soon as.'

9. **dum . . . colligerentur**: 238.

11. **quod necesse fuit**: 'as was inevitable.'

12. **prius**: to be taken with *quam* = *priusquam*. **Ēridanum**: the mythical and poetical name of the *Padus*, or Po.

13. **nihil**: 'not . . . at all'; adverbial acc.

14. **prōgressus esset**: for the fut. perf. ind. of direct discourse. **domum**: 132.

rēgem Peliam (quī rēgnum adhūc obtinēbat), statim sē contulit, et vellere aureō mōnstrātō, ab eō postulāvit ut rēgnum sibi trāderētur; Peliās enim pollicitus erat, sī Iāsōn vellus rettulisset, sē rēgnum eī trāditūrum. Postquam Iāsōn quid fierī vellet ostendit, Peliās prīmum nihil respondit, sed diū in eādem trīstitiā tacitus permānsit; tandem ita locūtus est: "Vidēs mē aetāte iam esse cōnfectum, neque dubium est quīn diēs suprēmus mihi adsit. Liceat igitur mihi, dum vīvam, hōc rēgnum obtinēre; tum, postquam ego ē vītā discesserō, tū in meum locum veniēs." Hāc ōrātiōne adductus, Iāsōn respondit sē id factūrum quod ille rogāsset.

Medea shows her magic powers.

21. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, Mēdēa rem aegrē tulit et rēgnī cupiditāte adducta, cōnstituit mortem rēgī per dolum īnferre. Hōc cōnstitūtō, ad fīliās rēgis vēnit atque ita locūta est: "Vidētis patrem vestrum aetāte iam esse cōnfectum neque ad labōrem rēgnandī perferendum satis valēre. Vultisne eum rūrsus iuvenem fierī?" Tum fīliae rēgis, hīs audītīs, ita respondērunt. "Num hōc fierī potest? Quis enim umquam ē sene iuvenis factus est?" At Mēdēa respondit:

---

20. 1. **adhūc**: 'still.'

2. **mōnstrātō**: trans. as an active present participle in English; for the meaning cf. *dēmōnstrāvimus*, p. 149, l. 2 above.

4. **rettulisset**: for the fut. perf. of the direct discourse.

7. **neque dubium**: 'and there is no doubt.'

8. **Liceat**: 'Let it be allowed me,' 226; *liceat* is impersonal, the subject being the clause *hōc . . . obtinēre*. **dum vīvam**: 'as long as I live'; 237. *Vīvam* is subj. by attraction (272) for the fut. ind. of direct discourse.

11. **ille**: 'Pelias.' *Ille* is often best translated by a noun.

21. 12. **rem aegrē tulit**: see p. 142, l. 6.

15. **neque**: 'and . . . not.'

16. **perferendum**: 'to endure,' with *labōrem*.

"Scītis mē medicīnae summam habēre scientiam. Nunc igitur vōbīs dēmōnstrābō quō modō haec rēs fierī possit." Hīs dictīs, cum arietem aetāte iam cōnfectum interfēcisset, membra eius in vās aēneum coniēcit, et īgne suppositō, aquae herbās quāsdam addidit. Tum, dum aquam fervefaceret, carmen magicum cantābat. Post breve tempus ariēs ē vāse dēsiluit et vīribus refectīs per agrōs currēbat.

The king's daughters try to imitate her.

22. Dum fīliae rēgis hōc prōdigium magnopere mīrātae intuentur, Mēdēa ita locūta est: "Vidētis quantum valeat medicīna. Vōs igitur, sī vultis patrem vestrum in adulēscentiam redūcere, id quod fēcī ipsae faciētis. Vōs patris membra in vās conicite; ego herbās magicās praebēbō." Hīs verbīs audītīs, fīliae rēgis cōnsilium quod dedisset Mēdēa nōn omittendum putāvērunt. Patrem igitur Peliam necāvērunt, et membra eius in vās aēneum coniēcērunt; nihil enim dubitābant quīn hōc maximē eī prōfutūrum esset. At rēs omnīnō aliter ēvēnit ac spērāverant; Mēdēa enim nōn

---

4. **īgne suppositō**: sc. *vāsī*. **aquae**: dat. with *addidit*.

5. **dum fervefaceret**: 'while she was heating the water'; *i.e.* until the water should become hot; cf. *gignerentur*, p. 144, l. 7.

6. **carmen . . . incantābat**: charms and incantations were in metrical form, hence the terms *carmen* and *incantābat* (from *canō*, 112, *b*).

7. **dēsiluit . . . currēbat**: note the different tenses and their meaning.

22. 8. **magnopere mīrātī**: cf. p. 143, l. 10.

9. **quantum**: 125, *a*.

10. **Vōs**: emphatic by its position and in being expressed other than by the verb ending.

11. **ipsae**: 'yourselves,' *i.e.* 'for yourselves.' **Vōs . . . ego**: contrasted.

14. **omittendum**: sc. *esse*.

17. **omninō aliter**: 'altogether differently.' **ac**: 'than.'

eāsdem herbās dedit quibus ipsa ūsa erat. Itaque postquam diū frūstrā exspectāvērunt, patrem suum rē vērā mortuum esse intellēxērunt. Hīs rēbus gestīs, Mēdēa spērābat sē cum coniuge suō rēgnum acceptūram esse. At cīvēs cum intellegerent quō modō Peliās periisset, tantum scelus aegrē tulērunt; itaque, Iāsone et Mēdēā ē rēgnō expulsīs, Acastum rēgem creāvērunt.

A fatal gift.

23. Post haec Iāsōn et Mēdēa, ē Thessaliā expulsī, ad urbem Corinthum vēnērunt, cuius urbis Creōn quīdam rēgnum tum obtinēbat. Erat autem Creontī fīlia ūna, nōmine Glaucē; quam cum vīdisset, Iāsōn cōnstituit Mēdēam uxōrem suam repudiāre, eō cōnsiliō, ut Glaucēn in mātrimōnium dūceret. At Mēdēa ubi intellēxit quae ille in animō habēret, īrācundiā graviter commōta, iūreiūrandō cōnfīrmāvit sē tantam iniūriam ultūram. Hōc igitur cōnsilium cēpit. Vestem parāvit summā arte contextam et variīs colōribus ōrnātam; hanc perniciōsō quōdam īnfēcit venēnō, cuius vīs tālis erat ut, sī quis eam vestem induisset, corpus eius quasi īgne ūrerētur. Hōc factō, vestem ad Glaucēn

---

5. **scelus aegrē tulērunt**: cf. *rem aegrē tulit*, p. 150, l. 12.

6. **Acastum rēgem**: 127. *Acastus* (-ī) was the son of Pelias.

23. 9. **Corinthum**: *Corinthus*, (-ī, f.), *Corinth;* see Map opp. p. 97. **cuius urbis**: see note on p. 145, l. 18. **Creōn, -ontis**: one of the early kings of Corinth.

10. **Creontī**: 154.

11. **Glaucē, -ēs**: *Glauce*, also called Creüsa. **quam**: trans. by a conjunction and a personal pronoun.

12. **eō cōnsiliō, ut . . . dūceret**: 'with the intention of marrying.'

14. **iūreiūrandō cōnfīrmāvit**: 'she took oath,' 'she swore.'

15. **ultūram**: sc. *esse*.

mīsit; illa autem, nihil malī suspicāns, dōnum libenter accēpit, et vestem novam (mōre fēminārum) statim induit.

Flight of Medea and death of Jason.

24. Vix vestem induerat Glaucē, cum dolōrem gravem per omnia membra sēnsit, et post paulum dīrō cruciātū affecta ē vītā excessit. Hīs rēbus gestīs, Mēdēa furōre atque āmentiā impulsa fīliōs suōs necāvit; tum magnum sibi fore perīculum arbitrāta sī in Thessaliā manēret, ex eā regiōne fugere cōnstituit. Hōc cōnstitūtō, Sōlem ōrāvit ut in tantō perīculō auxilium sibi praebēret. Sōl autem, hīs precibus commōtus, currum quendam mīsit, cui draCōnēs ālīs īnstrūctī iūnctī erant. Mēdēa non omittendam tantam occāsiōnem arbitrāta, currum cōnscendit, itaque per āera vecta, incolumis ad urbem Athēnās

Athena.

The patron goddess of Athens, identified with the Roman Minerva. She wears the Aegis with the Gorgon's head. The serpent was sacred to Athenae.

1. **malī**: 138.

2. **mōre**: 166, *a*.

24. 3. **Vix . . . cum . . . sēnsit**: the so-called *cum inversum*, which regularly takes an indicative.

10. **Sōlem . . . ut . . . praebēret**: cf. 128. The place of the second acc. is taken by the substantive clause; for the mood see 260.

12. **ālīs īnstrūctī**: cf. p. 139, l. 11.

13. **omittendam**: sc. *esse*.

15. **itaque**: *ita* + *-que*, 'and . . . thus.' *Ita* modifies *vecta* and *-que* connects *cōnscendit* and *pervēnit*.

āera: cf. p. 139, l. 11.

pervēnit. Iāsōn autem post breve tempus mīrō modō occīsus est. Ille enim (sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum) iūxtā nāvem suam, quae in lītus subducta erat, quiētī sē trādiderat. At nāvis, quae adhūc ērēcta steterat, in eam partem ubi Iāsōn iacēbat subitō dēcidit et virum miserum oppressit.

---

2. **cāsū**: abl. of cause; so also *cōnsiliō*, 'through the design.'

3. **quiētī sē trādiderat**: cf. p. 144, l. 6.

4. **ērēcta steterat**: the ships were usually held upright by props, one of which gave way or slipped from its place. **in eam partem**: 'towards that side.'

6 Longitude 4 West from 2 Greenwich 0 Longitude

4
6
8
10
50
48
46
44
Insula Batavorum
USIPETES
TENCTERI
Lupia Fl.
Mosa Fl.
Vacalus
Rura Fl.
Visurgis Fl.
MENAPII
SUGAMBRI
CHERUSCI
AMBIVARITI
CEUTRONES
EBURONES
Caesaris
Castra Sabini & Cottae
Adnatuca (Tongres)
Siga Fl.
Bacenis Silva
Scaldis Fl.
Rhenus Fl.
Logana
Ardu
Genna Silva
Castra Cicerones
Oppidum (Namur)
Moenus Fl.
MARCOMANI
TREVERI
Castra Labieni
Mosella Fl.
VANGIONES
SUEBI
Noviodunum
SUESSIONES
Bibrax
Axona
Durocortorum (Rheims)
REMI
Mosa Fl.
MEDIOMATRICI
NEMETES
TRIBOCES
Nicer Fl.
Hercynia Silva
Matrona Fl.
Danuvius Fl.
Lisus Fl.
LEUCI
Vosegus Mons.
LATOBRIGI
SUEBI
Agedincum (Sens)
Sequana
HARUDES
TULINGI
Lac. Venetus
LINGONES
Alesia (Alise St. Reine)
MANDUBII
(Vingeanne)
Vesontio (Besançon)
RAURICI
Oenus Fl.
RHÆTIA
AEDUI
Noviodunum (Nevers)
Bibracte
Dubis
Cabillonum
Tigurinus pagus
Verbigenus pagus
Rhenus Fl.
LEPONTII
Decetia (Decize)
Arar Fl.
Jura Mons.
Lacus Lemannus
Rhodanus
BOII
Elaver Fl.
Matisco (Mâcon)
AMBARRI
Genava
NANTUATES
VERAGRI
SEDUNI
Octodurus (Martigny)
Gergovia
SEGUSIAVI
Liger Fl.
Vienna
ALLOBROGES
Morginum
CEUTRONES
Mediolanum (Milan)
Laus Pompei
Ticinum (Pavia)
Cremona
Mantua
Padus Fl.
Cularo
Catorissum
CRAIOCELI
Mellosecum
Segusio
Augusta Taurinorum (Turin)
CISALPINA
VELLAVII
Isara Fl.
Ocelum (Usseau)
Durotincum
Stabatio
Brigantium
Mt. Genèvre
Tanarus Fl.
LIGURIA
Genua
HELVII
Rhodannus Fl.
VOCONTII
Cebenna Mons
VOLCAE
ARECOMICI
ALBICI
Pisæ
Portus Herculis Monoeci
Arelate (Arles)
SALLYES
Aquæ Sextiae (Aix)
Massilia (Marseille)
MASSILIENSES
Narbo (Narbonne)
MARE INTERNUM
CORSICA
East from 4 Greenwich 6 8

C. IULI CAESARIS

DE BELLO GALLICO

COMMENTARII RERUM GESTARUM

BOOK I

The Helvetian War

The geography and inhabitants of Gaul.

1. Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam, quī ipsōrum lin-

---

Title. C. Iūlī Caesaris: Practically every Roman citizen of Caesar's day had three names, (1) a *praenomen*, or first name, like *Gaius* (or Marcus or Publius), (2) a *nomen*, or family name, like *Iūlius*, and (3) a *cognomen*, corresponding somewhat to our middle name, like *Caesar*. Notice that Caesar's first name, when abbreviated (most first names were abbreviated), was written C. (really an old form of G), but that when expressed in full it was spelled *Gaius*. **Rērum Gestārum**: 'achievements.' What is the lit. meaning? **Commentāriī**: 'memoir,' 'notes.' The "Commentaries" is the name by which Caesar's famous history has been known to generations of students.

Gallic Trumpets.

On a coin of Albinus, son of Brutus (*Albinus, Bruti, F.*).

1. 1 and 2. **Gallia**: before beginning his story Caesar describes briefly in the first chapter the geography of Gaul. Ancient Gaul was larger than modern France, comprising in addition to France also western Switzerland, western Germany, Belgium, and southern Holland; it did not include the Provincia Romana in the south. **est dīvīsa**: 'is divided.' This is not a pf. pass. tense but *dīvīsa* is a pf. part. used like

guā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit.

Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, propterea quod

---

a pred. adj. **omnis**: 'as a whole.' **in**: 'into.' Why? See 186, 1 (*a*). **trēs**: there were three grand geographical divisions of Gaul: (1) Aquitania in the southwest, corresponding roughly to Gascony, (2) the Belgian country, occupying approximately what is now modern Belgium and a portion of northeastern France, (3) between these the country of the Celtae or Gauls proper, by far the largest of the three. **quārum**: the antecedent is *partēs*. How can you tell from its form what the antecedent of any rel. pron. is? See 122. This whole sentence may be expanded as follows: *quārum* (*partium*) *ūnam* (*partem*) *incolunt Belgae, aliam* (*partem*) *incolunt Aquītānī, tertiam* (*partem incolunt eī*) *quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae* (*appellantur*), *nostrā* (*linguā*) *Gallī appellantur*. The words in parentheses are not in the text but they are supplied in order to make the sentence clear. **Belgae**: the name has survived to our day in the English form, Belgians, which is familiar to us now. **tertiam**: the constr. of this word will be understood by studying the expanded sentence as it is given above. **quī**: for the antecedent see the expanded sentence above. **ipsōrum**: 'their own,' 135.

1. **nostrā**: *i.e. Rōmānōrum linguā*. **linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus**: 171. These people did not, of course, speak Latin as their mother tongue; the language of the Gauls proper was Celtic, which survives to-day in certain dialects of the British Isles. The Aquitanians and Belgians spoke a dialect that apparently was not like Celtic. Caesar probably did not speak the Celtic language; he talked with the representatives of the Gauls and of the other races by the aid of interpreters.

2. **inter sē**: the lit. trans. is oftentimes not permitted by English usage; say 'differ from one another.' **Gallōs . . . dīvidit**: trace the course of the rivers on the Map opp. p. 155, and learn their modern names. (See the Vocab.)

4. **fortissimī**: the Belgians of modern times have shown themselves to be worthy descendants of their brave ancestors. **propterea**: lit. 'on account of this,' but the two words *propterea quod* may be trans. 'because.'

ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant, atque ea, quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent, important; proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs

---

1. **cultū**: 'civilization.' **hūmānitāte**: 'refinement.' **prōvinciae**: the Provincia Romana in southern Gaul (see Map), established in 120 B.C. This part of France is now sometimes called the Provence. The manners and customs of the mother country had as a matter of course been introduced into the Province; and it is suggested here that civilization impairs the natural courage of a people!

2. **minimē**: limits *saepe*; 'not very often.' *minimē saepe* limits *important* also. **mercātōrēs**: nom. case. Roman traders penetrated into nearly every part of Gaul carrying their wares, which consisted of cloth-stuffs, wines, and ornaments of various kinds. **ea**: the antecedent of *quae*. In general avoid expressing the neut. idea by the trans. "things"; use rather a noun suggested by the connection, *e.g.* here, 'those wares, which.'

3. **ad effēminandōs animōs**: can you distinguish readily the gerund and gerundive? Which is this? Note that the gerund ends only in *-i*, *-ō*, *-um*, that it is active voice and a noun; while the gerundive is an adj. having all the forms of an adj. and it is pass. voice. Generally the gerundive may be best trans. by the Eng. verbal noun ending in *-ing*, the noun which it limits being the object; translate here: 'to weaken the courage.' See 283.

4. **Germānīs**: see 157. In Caesar's day also the Germans were the neighbors of the Belgians on their eastern border and these two peoples were almost constantly at war with each other. **quibuscum**: For the form see 185, 2 (*a*), note.

5. **Quā dē causā**: what was the reason? See 202, *a*. **Helvētiī**: the Helvetians lived north of Lake Geneva in what is now western Switzerland. They acted somewhat as a "buffer" to Roman interests by keeping the Germans from descending into Italy. **quoque**: *i.e.* as well as the Belgians.

6. **virtūte**: 'courage.' The Latin word is rarely to be trans. by the Eng. deriv. For the case see 171. **praecēdunt**: 'surpass.' What is its meaning from the deriv.?

proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt.

Orgetorix, a Helvetian, persuades his countrymen to migrate.

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorīx. Is, M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, et cīvitātī persuāsit, ut dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent; perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrī.

---

1. **proeliīs**: see 163, *d*. **fīnibus**: for the case see 158.

2. **prohibent . . . gerunt**: for the mood see 235. **eōs, eōrum**: the Germans. Study the use of *suus* and *is* in this sentence. See 197 and 79.

2. In Chaps. 2 and 3 Caesar tells us of the ambitious designs and subsequent death of a Helvetian nobleman, named Orgetorix.

3. **Apud**: 'among,' a prep. **longē**: 'by far.' **nōbilissimus**: there was an aristocracy among these northern peoples also.

4. **M.**: = *Mārcō* (abl. case). **M. Messālā . . . cōnsulibus**: 'in the consulship of M. Messala and M. Piso.' This was in 61 B.C. Since the consuls held office for one year, it was convenient to date the year by their names. Sometimes (see note on p. 25, l. 9), though not in the Commentaries, the year was dated by reckoning from 753 B.C., the year of the traditional founding of Rome. On the constr. see 173 and on methods of dating, 183. **rēgnī**: Orgetorix wished to be king. What use of the gen.? See 137.

5. **cupiditāte**: see 165. **inductus**: 276 and note. Trans. by a clause introduced by 'because.' **coniūrātiōnem**: determine the meaning from the deriv. **nōbilitātis**: what use of the gen.? See 136. Trans. 'among the nobility.' **fēcit**: 'organized.' **cīvitātī**: 149, *a*.

6. **ut . . . exīrent**: a subst. clause, 260. Orgetorix wanted his people to undertake a national emigration. The *ut*- clause following *persuādeō* should be expressed in Eng. by an inf. clause; thus here 'to emigrate.'

7 and 8. **esse**: the inf. because it is in ind. disc. and expresses what Orgetorix said. See 265. The idea of saying is implied in

Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō, lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā, lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. Hīs rēbus fīēbat, ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī magnō dolōre afficiēbantur. Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis

---

persuāsit. Trans. '(saying) that it was very easy.' **virtūte . . . praestārent**: see p. 157, l. 6, and 268. **tōtīus**: what case? See 49. **Galliae**: 137. **imperiō**: why abl. case? 163, *a*. **potīrī**: the subj. of esse; 274.

1. **Id**: Orgetorix persuaded them to do 'this' (*i.e. ut dē fīnibus suīs exīrent*). *Id* is the dir. obj. of *persuāsit.* **hōc**: 'for this reason,' *i.e. quod . . . continentur*. 165. **facilius**: adv., 'more easily,' 67. **eīs**: 149, *a*. **locī nātūrā**: a glance at the map will show that the country of the Helvetians was hemmed in by mountains, rivers, and by Lake Geneva.

2. **continentur**: why indic.? 241. **ūnā ex parte**: 'on one side,' 185, 4 (*b*). **flūmine Rhēnō, monte Iūrā, lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō**: sc. *Helvētiī continentur.*

3. **quī**: is masculine, instead of neuter, because of *Rhēnō.* Cf. *quī* below, l. 6.

7. **Hīs rēbus**: 165. **fīēbat ut**: lit. 'it happened that'; trans. 'the result was that.' What voice is *fīēbat?* **vagārentur, possent**: 261. **facile**: adv.; cf. *facilius* above, l. 1.

8. **fīnitimīs**: 149, *b*. **quā ex parte**: equivalent in meaning to *quā dē causā* above, p. 157, l. 5.

9. **bellandī**: depends on *cupidī.* Is this a gerund or gerundive? See note to p. 157, l. 3. **cupidī**: gives another reason for *magnō dolōre afficiēbantur.* **Prō . . . hominum**: 'considering the large number of people.'

10. **glōriā**: 'reputation.' **bellī et fortitūdinis**: perhaps a case of hendiadys (288), to be trans. 'reputation for bravery in war.'

angustōs sē fīnēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem mīlia passuum CCXL, in lātitūdinem CLXXX patēbant.

They make preparations; Orgetorix plots, is caught, dies.

3. Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī cōnstituērunt ea, quae ad proficīscendum pertinērent, comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coëmere, sēmentēs quam maximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfīrmāre. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās biennium

---

1. **sē . . . habēre**: 'that they had.' **quī . . . patēbant**: a statement added by Caesar, not in ind. disc., dependent on *arbitrābantur*, 269. The indic. is, therefore, used.

2. **mīlia**: 130. Perhaps the real reason why the Helvetians wished to emigrate is to be found in the fact that the Germans were persistently pressing them on their northern border. At any rate it was because of the encroachments of the Germans that Caesar later required the Helvetians to return to their old home.

3. 3. **Hīs rēbus**: see note on these words, p. 159, l. 7. **adductī, permōtī**: 276. **auctōritāte**: 'commanding influence.'

4. **cōnstituērunt**: sc. *Helvētiī*. **ea**: see note on this word, p. 157, l. 2. Sometimes as here a noun may be supplied from the verb; thus trans. 'to make these preparations.' **quae . . . pertinērent**: 271, 'which (they thought) were necessary.' **proficīscendum**: gerund governed by the prep. *ad*; 282.

5. **comparāre, coëmere, facere, cōnfīrmāre**: complementary infinitives depending on *cōnstituērunt*. **iūmentōrum**: draft animals, such as mules, oxen, and horses. **quam maximum numerum, sēmentēs quam maximās**: for the meaning of *quam* with the superlative see 194.

6. **sēmentēs**: the Helvetians were not savages, they raised wheat and other kinds of grain. **ut . . . suppeteret**: 229. **in itinere**: *i.e.* during the emigration.

7. **frūmentī**: wheat and other kinds of grain.

8. **cōnfīrmāre**: 'establish.' **Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās**: 'to complete these preparations.' See 283.

sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōnfīrmant.

Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās Orgetorīx dēligitur. Is sibi lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscēpit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantāloedis fīliō, Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnum in Sē- quanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorīgī Aeduō, frātrī

1. **satis**: pred. adj. **dūxērunt**: 'believed.' **in tertium annum**: 'for the third year (following).' According to the Roman method of counting the first and last number of a series this would be the year 59 B.C.

2. **lēge**: 'by law,' 166, *a*. **cōnfīrmant**: 'fix.' For the tense see 208.

3. **dēligitur**: why present tense? See 208. **sibi suscēpit**: 'undertook.' **lēgātiōnem**: 'mission.'

4. **In eō itinere**: *i.e.* in his visit to the several states. **persuādet**: the historical present occurs several times in this chapter. **Casticō**: 149, *a*.

5. **fīliō**: 121. **Sēquanō**: find on the map the location of the Sequani. They were an influential state of eastern Gaul but stood in great fear of the Germans, large numbers of whom had settled in their country. **rēgnum**: 'sovereign rule.' He had been king.

6. **annōs**: 130. **ā senātū**: 160.

7. **ut . . . occupāret**: depends upon *persuādet*, (l. 4), 260. For the tense see 222. **suā**: refers to the subject (sc. *Casticus*) of *occupāret*, 198. **occupāret**: 'seize.'

8. **quod**: always use care to determine whether *quod* is the conj., 'because,' or the rel. pron., 'which.' The sense will help; one must also look to see if there is an antecedent to which *quod*, if it is a rel. pron., may refer and with which it agrees. See 122. **ante**: an adv. Why is it not a prep.? **quod . . . habuerat**: the indic. is used because this is what Caesar himself added to the sentence, not what Orgetorix originally said. Cf. also *quī . . . acceptus erat*, p. 162, l. 2. **Dumnorīgī**: 149, *a*. **Aeduō**: the Aeduans were a powerful state lying west of the Sequani and separated from them by a great waterway, the river Arar. Among the Aedui was a strong pro-Roman party. **frātrī**: 121.

Dīviciācī, quī eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat ac maximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur, persuādet, eīque fīliam suam in mātrimōnium dat.

Perfacile factū esse illīs probat cōnāta perficere, propterea quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus esset; nōn esse dubium, quīn tōtīus Galliae plūrimum Helvētiī possent; sē suīs cōpiīs suōque exercitū illīs rēgna conciliātūrum cōnfīrmat. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant, et rēgnō occupātō per trēs potentissimōs ac fīrmissimōs populōs tōtīus Galliae imperiō sēsē potīrī posse spērant.

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōri-

---

1. **eō tempore**: when Orgetorix went on his mission.

2. **plēbī**: 157, but *plēbī acceptus* (equivalent to a pred. adj.) may be trans. 'popular with the common people.' **ut . . . cōnārētur**: with *persuādet*, 260. **idem**: with *cōnārētur*, 'to make the same attempt.' See note to p. 160, l. 4 and 125, *b*.

4. **esse**: ind. disc. with *probat*, 'shows.' The subj. of *esse* is the inf. *perficere* (274). *Perfacile* is a pred. adj. **factū**: 287. **cōnāta**: obj. of *perficere*. **propterea quod**: see note on p. 156, l. 4.

5. **ipse**: *i.e.* Orgetorix. **obtentūrus esset**: 268, 213, *a*. On the periphrastic conjugation see 97. **esse**: see note on *esse* above.

6. **quīn . . . possent**: 263. **tōtīus Galliae**: 138. **plūrimum**: neut. acc. used adv., with *possent*, 'had the most power.' See 125, *a*. **sē, suīs, suō**: emphasizes the confidence of Orgetorix to swing this project even alone.

7. **conciliātūrum**: sc. *esse*.

8. **ōrātiōne**: 'discourse,' 'eloquence'; do not trans. by the Eng. deriv. **inter sē**: see note on these words, p. 156, l. 2. They swore mutual fidelity.

9. **rēgnō occupātō**: 173; expresses time. **trēs**: the Helvetii, the Sequani, and the Aedui.

10. **Galliae**: with *imperiō*, for which see 137. On the case of *imperiō* see 163, *a*. **posse**: has the force of a future tense.

4. 12. **Ea rēs**: *i.e.* this ambitious and treasonable design of Orgetorix, in league with Casticus and Dumnorix, to seize the supreme

bus suīs Orgetorīgem ex vinculīs causam dīcere coēgērunt; damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat, ut īgnī cremārētur. Diē cōnstitūtā causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, nē causam dīceret, sē ēripuit. Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitūdinemque hominum ex

---

power. **Helvētiīs**: 148. **est . . . ēnūntiāta**: for the sake of variety the two parts of the verb are sometimes separated. **per indicium**: = *per indicēs*, 'through informers' or 'spies.' **Mōribus**: 166, *a*.

1. **ex**: in English we should say 'in,' 185, 4 (*b*). **causam dīcere**: 'to plead his cause.'

2. **damnātum**: sc. *eum* (= *Orgetorīgem*), the obj. of *sequī*. The part. expresses a condition, 'in case he were condemned,' 276 and Note. **poenam**: subj. of *sequī* ('be inflicted upon'). **oportēbat**: an impersonal verb; 204. **ut . . . cremārētur**: explains *poenam*, 261 and Note. Caesar elsewhere tells of other instances among the Gauls of the cruel practice of burning to death as a form of punishment. **Diē cōnstitūtā**: *diēs* is masc. gender except when it means, as here, an appointed time, 45.

3. **causae**: depends on *dictiōnis*, which in turn depends on *diē*, 137. **dictiōnis**: in Eng. we should say 'for the pleading.' **omnem**: what does it limit?

4. **familiam**: 'household,' including slaves. The Eng. deriv. is more restricted in its meaning. **ad**: 'about' with *mīlia decem*. See Vocab. under *ad*. **hominum**: 138.

5. **clientēs obaerātōsque**: these persons were in various ways under obligations to Orgetorix and were bound to support him.

6. **eōdem**: adv. **nē . . . ēripuit**: 'he escaped pleading his cause.' What is the lit. translation? 229.

7. **cīvitās**: sc. *Helvētiōrum*. **ob eam rem**: the attempt of Orgetorix to secure his acquittal by making a show of force with his crowd of retainers. **armīs**: abl. of means, 163. **iūs suum exsequī**: 'to assert their rights.'

8. **cōnārētur, cōgerent**: 235.

agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est; neque abest suspīciō, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnscīverit.

The Helvetii get ready; they plan to go through the province.

5. Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id, quod cōnstituerant, facere cōnantur, ut ē fīnibus suīs exeant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt, frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut domum reditiōnis spē

---

1. **magistrātūs**: 'authorities'; nom. case. **neque abest suspīciō**: 'and there is some reason to suspect.' How is it lit.? 289.

2. **ut**: with the indic. means 'as.' **quīn . . . cōnscīverit**: 'that he committed suicide.' Translate literally. 263.

5. 4. In chaps. 5 and 6 we learn that the Helvetians continued making preparations to migrate. **nihilō minus**: see Vocab. for lit. trans. **id**: obj. of *facere* and the antecedent of *quod;* it is explained by the clause, *ut . . . exeant* (260). The Helvetians did not condemn Orgetorix because he had urged them to leave their country (they also wanted to migrate), but because of his treasonable designs.

5. **Ubi**: 'when.' 234.

6. **ad eam rem**: *i.e. ut ē fīnibus suīs exeant.* **oppida, vīcōs**: the Helvetians were not distinctively a migratory or nomadic people, for they had 'walled-towns' and settled 'villages.'

7. **numerō**: 171. **ad**: (occurring twice) see note above, p. 163, l. 4.

8. **incendunt**: sc. *et* connecting it with *combūrunt* (208). The grain was spoiled by the action of fire so that it could not be used by an enemy. **praeter quod**: = *praeter id frūmentum quod.*

9. **sēcum**: 185, 2 (*a*), Note. **portātūrī erant**: the fut. periphrastic; 'they were going to take,' 97. **domum**: 'home,' with the idea of motion in *reditiōnis*, 132. **reditiōnis**: depends upon *spē*, which with *sublātā* is in the abl. abs. constr., 173.

sublātā parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent; trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent. Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrīgīs fīnitimīs, utī eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exūstīs, ūnā cum eīs proficīscantur; Boiōsque, qui trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōreiamque oppugnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi ascīscunt.

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō

---

1. **sublātā**: 'taken away.' What are the prin. parts of this verb? **parātiōrēs**: pred. adj. Notice the degree of the adj. **ad . . . subeunda**: What is *subeunda*? See note on *effēminandōs*, p. 157, l. 3 and on *ad . . . cōnficiendās*, p. 160, l. 8; as is often the case, the infin. in Eng. gives the best trans. Say 'to face every danger.' **essent**: 229.

2. **mēnsium**: 141. **molita cibāria**: see Vocab. under *molō*. What is the lit. trans.? A three months' supply of flour for each person of the 368,000 Helvetians and allies who migrated would require in itself an enormous number of carts reaching for many miles, as they often had to proceed single file. **sibi**: refers to *quemque*, the subject of *efferre* (see 260, *a*, Note). **domō**: 178.

3. **Rauracīs, Tulingīs, Latobrīgīs**: 149, *a*. Locate these peoples on the Map.

4. **fīnitimīs**: 121. **utī** (= *ut*) . . . **proficīscantur**: 260. **eōdem**: 'the same' as their own. **cōnsiliō**: 163, *a*. Notice the position of *ūsī* (from *ūtor*). **oppidīs . . . exūstīs**: 173.

5. **ūnā**: an adv. **eīs**: refers to the Helvetians. Trans. *ūsī* and *exūstīs* as coördinate to *proficīscantur*: 'they persuade (them) to adopt, . . . to burn . . . and to set out . . .'

7. **oppugnārant**: a contracted form for *oppugnāverant*. **receptōs** (agreeing with *Boiōs*). **ascīscunt**: 'they received and admitted to alliance with themselves.' A part. should often be trans. thus as coördinate with the main verb. **sociōs**: 127.

6. 8. **Erant**: 'there were.' **omnīnō**: 'only.' **duo**: with high mountains on the east and west and the hostile Germans at their northern frontier the Helvetians had an outlet only in the south; even there a river and a lake hindered their passage. **itineribus**: repeated for the sake of clearness.

exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expedītius, propterea quod inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nūllīs locīs vadō trānsītur.

Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvē-

---

1. **possent**: 233. **ūnum**: sc. *iter*. This was the narrow pass, now called the Pas de l'Écluse, by which the Rhone forces its way through the Jura range. See the Map opp. p. 155 and the picture on p. 167 showing the appearance of the pass at the present day. **angustum**: to-day a carriage road and a railroad (partly tunneled in the rock) traverse this pass.

2. **vix**: 'barely' limits *dūcerentur;* its unusual position makes it emphatic. Place the corresponding Eng. word also in an emphatic position in the Eng. sentence. **quā** (*ut eā viā*) . . . **dūcerentur**: a clause of characteristic, 233; trans. 'so that carts could be driven along it (the road).' **singulī**: 'one at a time.'

3. **mōns . . . impendēbat**: look at the picture of the pass.

4. **facile**: adv.; see note on *vix* above. **perpaucī**: the *per* is emphatic; 'very few.' **prohibēre**: used absolutely, 205. An object (*eōs*) is necessary in Eng. **possent**: 232. **alterum**: sc. *iter*. **prōvinciam nostram**: the Roman Province south of Gaul (see Map opp. p. 155), which for over sixty years had belonged to Rome. By this route the migration of the Helvetians would be towards the southwest, through a comparatively peaceful and level country.

5. **multō facilius**: 'much easier,' 168. **facilius, expedītius**: neut. adjectives in the comparative degree limiting *iter* to be supplied. **propterea quod**: see note on these words, p. 156, l. 4.

6. **nūper**: the Allobroges had been defeated by a Roman army in 61 B.C., three years before this, and, as might be expected, their mood was not altogether friendly to Rome.

7. **is**: *i.e. Rhodanus*. **nōn nūllīs**: 'some.' **vadō**: 163.

9. **Extrēmum**: 'the most remote' from Rome.

tiōrum fīnibus Genava. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs, quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur, exīstimābant,

Pas de l'Écluse.

The pass of the Jura mountain, the *unum iter per Sequanos*, through which the Helvetians went. The river is the Rhone.

1. **fīnibus**: 157. **Genava**: the old part of the town is to-day on the south side of the Rhone. The modern city of Geneva is on the north side. **pōns**: as we see from the next chapter this bridge was undoubtedly a timber bridge built on piles. To-day a fine stone bridge spans the river at about the same point. **ad Helvētiōs**: the bridge connected Genava with the northern Helvetian bank.

2. **Allobrogibus**: 149, *a*. **vel . . . vel** (connected with *volō*, 'wish'): 'either . . . or'; it did not matter which plan they followed. **persuāsūrōs, coāctūrōs**: sc. *esse*. **nōndum bonō animō**: 'not yet well-disposed'; see note on *nūper*, above. For the abl. case of *animō* see 170. The abl. of quality may usually be lit. trans. by the prep. 'of.'

3. **in**: 'towards' and hence the acc. case following. **vidērentur**: 268.

vel vī coāctūrōs, ut per suōs fīnēs eōs īre paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs diem dīcunt, quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pīsōne, A. Gabīniō cōnsulibus.

Caesar hastens to Geneva; he keeps the Helvetii from crossing the Rhone river.

7. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī

---

1. **vī**: 163. **ut . . . paterentur**: 260. **suōs**: the Allobroges. **eōs**: the Helvetians. **Omnibus . . . comparātīs**: 173; expresses time and should be trans. by a clause introduced by 'when.'

2. **ad**: 'for.' **dīcunt**: 'they fixed.' **quā diē** (= *ut eā diē*): see note on *diē cōnstitūtā*, p. 163, l. 2 and 181.

3. **conveniant**: 230. Trans. 'They appointed a time at which all were to assemble.' **diēs**: the word is masc. gender because used here in a general sense, 45. **a. d. v. Kal. Apr.**: = *ante diem quīntum Kalendās Aprīlīs*, 'the fifth day before the Kalends of April,' *i.e.* March 28. Read carefully 183.

4. **L. Pīsōne . . . cōnsulibus**: 173 and note on p. 158, l. 4.

7. Caesar now appears upon the scene! He was in Rome when the news of the Helvetian restlessness reached him. He instantly left the capital and hurried northward, traveling, it is said, ninety miles a day, and he arrived at Genava in eight days.

5. **Caesarī**: although Caesar wrote the Commentaries, he almost always refers to himself in the third person. **id**: subj. of *nūntiātum essent* and explained by the infin. clause, *eōs* (= *Helvētiōs*) *cōnārī*. **per prōvinciam . . . facere**: Caesar felt that he was justified in proceeding against the Helvetians because their contemplated passage through the Roman Province would be harmful to Roman interests. This, then, was the entering wedge in his interference in the affairs of Gallia ulterior, or Gaul beyond the Alps, for his governorship officially did not extend beyond Gallia Cisalpina, or Gaul south of the Alps.

6. **iter facere**: 'to march,' a common phrase from now on. **urbe**: 'Rome,' *the* city.

et, quam maximīs potest itineribus, in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem, quī erat ad Genavam, iubet rescindī.

Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cuius lēgātiōnis Nammeius et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant, quī dīcerent sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habērent nūl-

---

1. **quam . . . itineribus**: 'as fast as he could travel'; lit. 'by as long marches (roads) as possible,' 194 and Note. **Galliam ulteriōrem**: *i.e.* Transalpine Gaul, or Gaul beyond the Alps.

2. **ad Genavam pervenit**: 'reached the neighborhood of Geneva.' What would *Genavam* alone mean? 132 and 133. **Prōvinciae**: 149, *a*. **tōtī**: 49. **quam . . . numerum**: 'as many troops as possible.' Cf. the note above on *quam . . . itineribus*.

3. **imperat**: 'levies.'

4. **legiō**: on the size of the legion see Introd., p. xxviii. This was the Tenth legion. **ad**: 'at.'

5. **rescindī**: pres. pass. inf. The use of the word shows that the bridge was made of wood. See note on *pōns*, p. 167, l. 1.

6. **Ubi**: 234. **eius** = *Caesaris*. **certiōrēs factī sunt**: 'had been informed,' a frequent idiom in Caesar. **lēgātōs**: *lēgātus* sometimes denotes the military officer, 'lieutenant,' and sometimes, as here, it means 'delegate,' 'representative,' 'envoy'; cf. the deriv. from *lēgō*, 'appoint.' On the use of the word see 121.

7. **nōbilissimōs**: adj. used as noun, 195, *a*.

8. **quī . . . dīcerent**: rel. clause of purpose, depending on *mittunt*, 230. Trans., 'sent to say.'

9. **sibi . . . animō**: 'that it was their intention (to march).' How literally? The inf. is in ind. disc. after *dīcerent*. **maleficiō**: meaning from deriv.?

10. **facere**: subj. of *esse*. **nūllum**: separated from *aliud iter* to make it emphatic.

lum; rogāre, ut eius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat, L. Cassium cōnsulem occīsum exercitumque eius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimīcō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciundī, temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficiō exīstimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum mīlitēs, quōs imperāverat, convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit, diem sē ad dēlīberandum sūmptūrum; sī quid vellent, ad Īd. Aprīl. reverterentur.

---

1. **rogāre** (sc. *sē*): in same constr. as *esse* above. **ut . . . liceat**: 260. This tells what they were to ask for. **eius**: Caesar. **sibi**: the Helvetians. **id**: obj. of *facere*, which is the subj. of the impersonal verb, *liceat;* but trans. 'that it be permitted . . . to do.' **Caesar**: in Latin when the subj. of both a dependent and independent clause is the same, it is often placed first in the sentence, but this is not permissible in the English translation; 'because he remembered that . . ., Caesar did not think.'

2. **memoriā tenēbat**: how lit.? **occīsum, pulsum, missum**: sc. *esse*, ind. disc. after *memoriā tenēbat*. This humiliating defeat took place in 107 B.C., nearly 50 years previously.

3. **sub iugum**: two spears were set up and a third placed across on top; this was the 'yoke,' and conquered soldiers were made to pass under it, one by one, as a token of complete submission and humiliation.

4. **concēdendum**: sc. *esse*. Caesar thought that their request to go through the Province 'ought not to be granted.'

5. **datā facultāte**: 173, expresses condition; trans. by a clause introduced by 'if.' **facultāte**: 'opportunity.' **itineris faciundī**: depends on *facultāte*, 283.

6. **ab**: 158 and Note. **ut . . . posset**: depends on *respondit*, 229.

7. **dum** ('until') . . . **convenīrent**: 238.

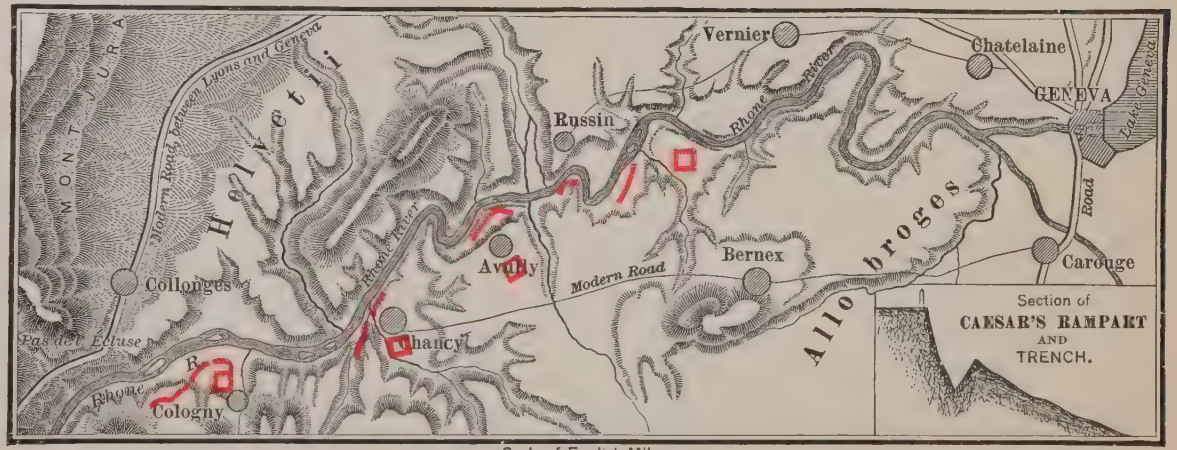
8. **diem**: 'a little time.' Caesar was playing a part; he really wanted the 'time' to use in fortifying his position on the south bank of the river. **dēlīberandum**: 282.

9. **sūmptūrum**: sc. *esse*. **sī . . . reverterentur**: in ind. disc., a part of what Caesar replied to the Helvetian delegates. In Latin he said, "*sī quid volētis, ad Īdus Aprīlēs* (= Apr. 13) *revertiminī*," 266, 268, 270. **ad**: 'about.'

CAESAR'S LINE OF WORKS ALONG THE RHONE FROM GENEVA TO PAS DE L'ÉCLUSE

Lib. I, 8

PLAN I



8. Intereā eā legiōne, quam sēcum habēbat, mīlitibusque, quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit, ad montem Iūram, quī fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia passuum XVIIII mūrum in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invītō trānsīre cōnārentur, prohibēre possit.

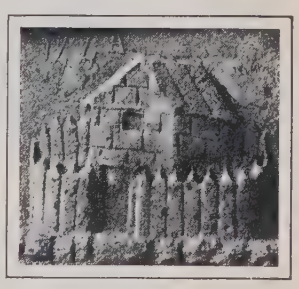
Ubi ea diēs, quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs, vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat, sē mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare; et, sī vim facere

---

8. 1. **legiōne, mīlitibus**: 163.

4. **mīlia passuum XVIIII**: 130. This distance is equivalent to about 17½ Eng. miles.

5. **mūrum, fossam**: it is probable that Caesar protected the south bank of the Rhone in the vicinity of easy fording places only. Where the banks were high and precipitous, a rampart and trench would have been unnecessary. See Plan I opp. p. 171. **pedum sēdecim**: 141.



A Castellum.

From a picture in relief on the column of Trajan at Rome.

6. **Eō . . . perfectō**: 173. Trans. by a clause expressing time. **praesidia**: 'garrisons.' **castella**: 'redoubts.' **quō . . . possit**: 229, *a*. *Quō* usually introduces a clause of purpose when it contains a comparative; as here, *facilius*.

7. **sē invītō**: 'against his will.' How lit.? 173.

8. **lēgātīs**: mentioned in the previous chapter.

9. **negat, sē . . . posse**: 'he says that he can not.' When *negō* is thus followed by an infin. clause in ind. disc. its negative is in Eng. transferred to the infin. **mōre, exemplō**: 166, *a*.

10. **iter**: obj. of *dare*, which depends on *posse*. **ūllī**: case? See 49. **vim facere**: 'to use force.' **prohibitūrum** (*esse*): sc. *sē* as the subj. and *eōs* as the obj.

cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Helvētiī, eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūnctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī perrumpere possent, cōnātī, operis mūnītiōne et mīlitum concursū et tēlīs repulsī hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

They get permission to go through the country of the Sequani.

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustiās īre nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Aeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent.

---

1. **ostendit**: Caesar pointed to the recently raised fortifications. He had outwitted the Helvetians. **spē**: 158 and note.

2. **nāvibus . . . factīs**: 173. Trans. by coördinate clauses. **iūnctīs**: 'lashed together.' **aliī**: *i.e.* some tried to cross the river on rafts, 'others' by the fords.

3. **quā**: 'where.' **nōn numquam**: 'sometimes.'

4. **sī . . . possent**: with *cōnātī;* 'tried (to see) whether they could,' 259.

5. **mīlitum concursū**: 'the rapid concentration of troops.' **cōnātū**: 158.

9. 7. **ūna . . . via**: this was along the north bank of the Rhone and so presumably outside the sphere of Roman "interests." Examine the Map opp. p. 155 to see where the country of the Sequani lay. **per Sēquanōs**: 'through (the country of) the Sequani.' **Sēquanīs invītīs**: see note on *sē invītō*, p. 171, l. 7.

8. **angustiās**: see the pictures, pp. 173 and 175. **Hīs**: with *persuādēre*, 149, *a.* **cum . . . possent**: 235. **suā sponte**: 'by their own efforts.' They did not themselves possess sufficient influence; it was necessary to employ a mediator, Dumnorix, of the Aeduan state.

9. **lēgātōs**: see note on this word, p. 169, l. 6.

10. **eō dēprecātōre**: lit., 'he being intercessor,' that is, 'by his intercession,' 173. **impetrārent**: the obj. is understood; 'might obtain (this permission),' *i.e.* to go through the pass.

Dumnorīx grātiā et largītiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat, et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat, et cupiditāte rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat, et quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem susci-5 pit, et ā Sēquanīs impetrat, ut per fīnēs suōs Helvētiōs

The Jura.

A view down the canyon east of Nantua.

1. **grātiā**: ('popularity'), **largītiōne**: 165. **apud**: 'among.' **plūrimum**: used as an adv.; with *poterat*, 'was very powerful.'

2. **Helvētiīs**: 157. **ex eā cīvitāte**: *i.e. ex Helvētiīs.*

4. **adductus**: expresses the cause of *studēbat*, 276 and note. **novīs rēbus**: 'for a revolution.' How lit.? 149, *a.* **quam plūrimās**: 194.

5. **obstrictās**: limits *cīvitātēs;* 'under obligations,' lit., 'bound (by his kindness).' As to its use with *habēre* see 281. **rem**: 'matter.'

6. **ut . . . patiantur, utī . . . dent**: 261.

īre patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent, perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant.

Caesar returns to Italy and gets five legions.

10. Caesarī renūntiātur, Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum fīnēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium fīnibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat magnō cum perīculō prōvinciae futūrum, ut hominēs bellicōsōs,

---

1. **obsidēsque**: the *-que* connects *impetrat* and *perficit*. The 'hostages,' often mentioned in the Gallic War, were prominent personages (men, women, and children) who were held as a guarantee of good faith. Their lives were endangered if the promises made by the people giving the hostages were not fulfilled. **Sēquanī**: following are the terms of agreement. With *Sēquanī* and *Helvētiī* sc. *obsidēs dant*.

2. **itinere**: 158 and note. **nē . . . prohibeant, ut . . . trānseant**: in Eng. it is better to use the phrase, 'not to keep them from . . ., to pass through. . . .'

10. 4. **renūntiātur**: 'word is brought back (*re-*) to Caesar,' by scouts, who had been sent to reconnoitre. **Helvētiīs . . . animō**: see note on *sibi . . . animō*, p. 169, l. 9. *Esse* is in ind. disc. dependent on *renūntiātur*. The subj. of *esse* is *facere* (l. 6).

5. **Santonum**: the Santones lived in the southwestern part of Gaul. See Map opp. p. 155. The Helvetians gave as their reason for migrating their desire to live in the more open lands of the west. From the dawn of history migration and empire have ever taken their way westward.

7. **Id sī fieret**, etc.: Caesar again has as a plausible reason for thwarting the desired migration of the Helvetians the protection of Roman "interests." **intellegēbat**: sc. *Caesar*. On the expression of the condition in ind. disc., see 270. What Caesar thought was, *Id sī fīet, magnō cum perīculō prōvinciae erit*. **magnō**: separated from its noun, as often, by the prep.; this makes it emphatic.

8. **prōvinciae**: dat. case, with *perīculō*. **ut . . . habēret**: 261.

populī Rōmānī inimīcōs, locīs patentibus maximēque frūmentāriīs fīnitimōs habēret. Ob eās causās eī mūnītiōnī, quam fēcerat, T. Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit; ipse in Italiam magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs

The Jura.

The view shows the nature of the country which separated the Sequani from the Helvetians.

1. **locīs**: with *fīnitimōs*, 157.

2. **fīnitimōs**: limits *hominēs*. **mūnītiōnī**: with *praefēcit*, 149, *b*.

3. **T. Labiēnum**: one of the ablest and most frequently mentioned of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic War; but he deserted Caesar's cause in the Civil War that followed the Gallic War.

4. **Italiam**: *i.e.* Cisalpine Gaul, his province. **magnīs itineribus**: 'by forced marches,' 169. **contendit**: Caesar knew of course that he never could check the advance of the Helvetians with his present meager forces; his only way, therefore, was to hurry back to his own province, and exercising his right as governor, to raise an adequate force. **duās**: these were numbered XI and XII.

cōnscrībit, et trēs, quae circum Aquileiam hiemābant, ex hībernīs ēdūcit et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre contendit. Ibi Ceutronēs et Graiocelī et Caturīgēs locīs superiōribus occupātīs itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in fīnēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum fīnēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segūsiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī.

The Aedui and other states ask for protection against the Helvetii.

11. Helvētiī iam per angustiās et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Aeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Aeduī, cum sē suaque ab

---

1. **trēs**: numbered VII, VIII, and IX. See Introd., p. xxviii. **Aquileiam**: Caesar's official residence, near the modern Austrian city of Triest (see Map).

4. **locīs . . . occupātīs**: *i.e.* the Alpine heights, 173.

5. **complūribus**, etc.: trans. in the order, *hīs* (the Alpine peoples) *pulsīs complūribus proeliīs*.

6. **ab**: 'from.'

7. **extrēmum** (sc. *oppidum*): from the point of view of Rome. Find Ocelum on the Map.

8. **diē**: 181.

9. **Hī**: *i.e.* the Segusiavi, who were 'the first people outside the Roman Province across the Rhone.' In from 40 to 50 days Caesar had mobilized his army and returned northward; he intercepted the Helvetians at the Arar river about 100 miles west of the Rhone pass.

11. 11. **iam**: *i.e.* while Caesar had been mobilizing.

13. **populābantur**: trans. by the progressive form, 'were laying waste,' 209. **Aeduī**: see note on **Caesar**, p. 170, l. 1. **cum**: 'since,' 240. **sē suaque**: 'themselves and their possessions.' *sua* is the neut. pl. acc.

eīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium: Ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse, ut, paene in cōnspectū exercitūs nostrī, agrī vāstārī, līberī eōrum in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expugnārī nōn dēbuerint. Eōdem tempore, quō Aeduī, Ambarrī, necessāriī et cōnsanguineī Aeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt, sēsē dēpopulātīs agrīs nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt, et dēmōnstrant, sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit, dum omnibus fortūnīs sociōrum cōnsūmptīs in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenīrent.

---

1. **eīs**: the Helvetians.

2. **rogātum**: 'to ask for,' the supine expressing purpose, 286. **Ita . . . dēbuerint**: ind. disc. depending on an idea of saying contained in *rogātum*. **Ita**: 'to such a degree.' **dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse**: 'that they had deserved well of the Roman people.'

3. **nostrī**: *i.e. Rōmānī*. **agrī, līberī, oppida**: subjects of *dēbuerint*. **vāstārī, abdūcī, expugnārī**: depend on *dēbuerint*.

4. **abdūcī**: 'carried off.'

5. **dēbuerint**: for the mood, 232, and tense, 223. **quō Aeduī**: = *quō tempore Aeduī Caesarem certiōrem faciunt*. **necessāriī, cōnsanguineī**: 121.

8. **Item**: as well as the Aedui and Ambarri.

9. **fugā sē recipiunt**: 'fled.' How lit.?

10. **nihil**: subj. of *esse*.

11. **reliquī**; the neut. adj. used as a noun (195, *a*); a partitive gen. depending on *nihil*, 'nothing left'; 138. The Allobroges alleged that their fields had been completely stripped by the invaders, leaving nothing but the bare ground. **exspectandum**: sc. *esse*. See note on *concēdendum*, p. 170, l. 4.

12. **sibi**: 155. **dum . . . pervenīrent**: explain the subjunctive mood; 238. **omnibus . . . cōnsūmptīs**: 173. Trans. by a clause. **sociōrum**: another plausible reason for Caesar's interference, — the allies of Rome must not be allowed to suffer.

Caesar destroys one division of the Helvetii at the Arar.

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per fīnēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit, incrēdibilī lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs, in utram partem fluat, iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus iūnctīs trānsībant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est, trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus ad eam partem pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impedītōs

---

12. Caesar intercepts the Helvetian host and destroys a portion of them.

1. **Flūmen**, etc. : 'there is a river (called) the Arar.' **Arar** : now the Saône river, which joins the Rhone at the city of Lyons. Examine the Map opp. p. 155 and locate the Aedui and Sequani.

2. **lēnitāte** : 170. With *ita* the phrase may be trans. 'is so incredibly sluggish that,' etc. The point where the Helvetians crossed the river is believed to be at the modern town of Trévoux, about 8 miles north of Lyons. Here even to-day the current of the Saône is so sluggish that Caesar's description is still applicable. See the picture on p. 179.

3. **ut . . . possit** : 232. **oculīs** : *i.e.* by looking at it. **utram** : Exact meaning? See Vocab. **partem** : 'direction.' The clause *in utram partem fluat* is really the subj. of *possit*. **fluat** : 259. Explain the tense; 219. The Helvetians were crossing the river when Caesar arrived; they did not all get across.

5. **explōrātōrēs** : every good army must have them. **trēs partēs** : 'three-fourths.' **partēs, flūmen** : 129.

6. **Helvētiōs** : subj. of *trādūxisse*. **trādūxisse** : Why inf.? **quārtam partem** : 'one-fourth.'

7. **citrā** : on the east side of the river. **dē** : 'in,' 185, 3 (*c*). For the expression see 183 (end). What time was it?

8. **eam partem** : *i.e.* the *quārtam partem*. This division of the enemy was encamped in a valley near the river and the approach of the Roman army was screened by a high hill overlooking the valley.

9. **impedītōs** : they were getting ready to cross.

et inopīnantēs aggressus magnam partem eōrum concīdit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est.

Hīc pāgus ūnus, cum domō exīsset, patrum nostrōrum memoriā L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. Ita sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium, quae pars cīvitātis Helvētiae īnsignem ca-

The Arar.

A view of the place where, in all probability, the Helvetians crossed, pursued by Caesar. The current is so slight that the trees are mirrored in the water.

---

2. **sēsē . . . mandārunt** (= *mandāvērunt*): about equivalent to *sēsē in fugam dedērunt.* **in . . . silvās**: the acc. because of the idea of motion in *abdidērunt.*

3. **Is pāgus**: the *quārta pars.* **omnis**: 'entire.'

4. **dīvīsa est**: cf. the note on the words, p. 155, l. 1.

5. **cum exīsset**: 'having gone forth'; 235.

6. **memoriā**: 'within the memory.' **interfēcerat**: see notes to p. 170, lines 2 and 3.

7. **cāsū, cōnsiliō**: 165.

8. **pars**: attracted into the rel. clause; trans. it with the *ea* following.

lamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn sōlum pūblicās, sed etiam prīvātās iniūriās ultus est, quod eius socerī L. Pīsōnis avum, L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō quō Cassium interfēcerant.

The Helvetii send delegates to Caesar.

13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōnsequī posset, pontem in Arare faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentīnō eius adventū commōtī, cum id, quod ipsī diēbus xx aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsīrent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cuius lēgātiōnis Dīvicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit:

---

1. **populō Rōmānō**: 149, *b*. **prīnceps**: '(was) the first (to pay the penalty).' See 191.

4. **L. Pīsōnem**: obj. of *interfēcerant*. The order for trans. is *L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, avum eius* (= *Caesaris*) *socerī, L. Pīsōnis*. The family name was Calpurnius and Calpurnia is the familiar name of Caesar's wife. **quō Cassium**: sc. *interfēcerant*.

13. The long pursuit of the Helvetians begins.

6. **cōpiās**: obj. of *cōnsequī;* it is made prominent by the unusual position of *ut*. **ut . . . posset**: expresses the purpose of *faciendum cūrat*, 229.

7. **pontem**: probably a pontoon bridge. See cut, p. 187. **in**: 'over.' **faciendum cūrat**: 'he had a bridge built,' 285.

9. **commōtī**: 'alarmed.' **id**: antecedent of the fol. *quod* ('that which') and explained by *ut . . . trānsīrent*. **ipsī**: the Helvetians. **diēbus XX**: 182.

10. **illum**: Caesar. **ūnō diē**: within 24 hours Caesar had conveyed his army of about 25,000 men across the river; the Helvetians had been three weeks in crossing.

12. **prīnceps**: pred. noun. **bellō Cassiānō**: referred to above, l. 4. See 181.

13. **cum Caesare ēgit**: lit., 'he treated with Caesar,' *i.e.* 'he ad-

Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōnstituisset atque esse voluisset; sīn bellō persequī persevērāret, reminīscerētur et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod improvīsō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum eī, quī flūmen trānsīssent, suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtūtī tribueret aut ipsōs dēspiceret; sē ita ā patribus maiōribusque suīs didicisse, ut magis virtūte contenderent, quam dolō aut īnsidiīs nīterentur. Quā rē nē committeret, ut is locus, ubi cōnsti-

---

dressed Caesar.' The remainder of the chap. quotes the speech of Divico in ind. disc. Study carefully 265–271. It would be fine practice for the pupil to reproduce first in English and then in Latin the exact words of Divico.

1. **faceret**: *faciet* in dir. disc. **in eam partem, ibi**: the antecedent of *ubi*.

2. **itūrōs, futūrōs**: sc. *esse*.

3. **cōnstituisset, voluisset**: for the fut. perf. (*cōnstitueris, volueris*) of dir. disc. to express an action *completed* at the time of the action of the main verb, 217. **sīn**: 'but if.'

4. **persevērāret**: sc. *Caesar*. **reminīscerētur**: for *reminīscere* (imper.) of dir. disc. **veteris incommodī**: a covert reference to the *bellum Cassiānum*. **incommodī, virtūtis**: 144.

5. **Quod . . . adortus esset**: 'As to his having attacked,' 258.

6. **improvīsō**: meaning from deriv.? **ūnum pāgum**: referred to p. 178, lines 9 ff.

7. **suīs**: 'to their friends.' **nē . . . dēspiceret**: 'let him not on that account exaggerate his own prowess or look down upon them'; for *nōlī tribuere, dēspicere* of dir. disc.

9. **ā**: 'from.'

10. **dolō aut īnsidiīs**: implying that this was the way that Caesar fought. See 163, *b*. **nīterentur**: 'rely upon.'

11. **nē . . . committeret**: 'let him not suffer,' for *nōlī committere* of dir. disc. This speech of Divico (now an old man, since he had been a Helvetian officer at the defeat of Cassius fifty years before) may seem boastful, but it is the speech of a brave man.

tissent, ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.

They reject Caesar's terms.

14. Hīs Caesar ita respondit:

Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis darī, quod eās rēs, quās lēgātī Helvētiī commemorāssent, memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre, quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent; quī sī alicuius iniūriae sibi cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellegeret, quā rē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī vellet, num

---

14. 3. **Hīs**: *i.e. lēgātīs Helvētiōrum.*

4. **Eō sibi . . . esse factūrum**: the speech of Caesar in reply to Divico's is also expressed in ind. disc. The pupil should reproduce it in Caesar's own words. **Eō**: 'for this reason,' *i.e.* the *quod-clause* following; 165. **sibi**: with *darī*, 148. **minus dubitātiōnis**: subj. of *darī*. *minus* is the neut., comp. degree, used like a noun. For the case of *dubitātiōnis* see 138; lit., 'less of hesitation,' *i.e.* in Eng., 'less hesitation.'

5. **memoriā tenēret**: 'he remembered.' **eō, quō**: 168; Caesar remembered with 'the' more indignation, 'the' less the Roman people had deserved this treatment.

6. **ferre**: sc. *eās rēs* as obj. **accidissent**: sc. *eae rēs* as subj. **quī**: *i.e. populus Rōmānus*, 'they.'

7. **alicuius**: case? See 86. **iniūriae**: 143. **sī . . . fuisset, nōn fuisse**: cond. contrary to fact, 270; cf. 247.

8. **cavēre**: 'to be on their guard.' **dēceptum** (*esse*): sc. *populum Rōmānum*. **eō**: cf. *eō* above, l. 4. **neque commissum**: 'they did not know that they had done anything to cause them to be alarmed.'

9. **timendum**: sc. *esse;* 'that they should feel alarm.'

10. **Quod sī**: 'but if.' **contumēliae**: 144. **vellet**: sc. *Caesar*. **num**: is used to ask a question to which the answer, "no," is expected. It is not translated.

etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse? Quod suā victōriā tam īnsolenter glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūnē iniūriās tulisse admīrārentur, eōdem pertinēre. Cōnsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ab eīs sibi dentur, utī ea, quae polliceantur, factūrōs intellegat, et sī Aeduīs dē iniūriīs, quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satis faciant, sēsē cum eīs pācem esse factūrum.

---

1. **recentium**: described in the previous chapter. **iniūriārum**: depends on *memoriam*, l. 3. **quod**: 'the fact that.' The word is repeated below for emphasis. **eō invītō**: see note on *sē invītō*, p. 171, l. 7.

2. **per vim temptāssent**: 'had tried to force.'

3. **Allobrogas**: acc. case, 38. **posse**: why infin.? See 267.

4. **Quod**: like *quod*, p. 181, l. 5, 258. **victōriā**: 165.

5. **sē** := *Caesarem*. The Helvetians wondered that Caesar had so long put up with the outrages they had committed. **eōdem pertinēre**: 'pointed in the same direction,' *i.e.* the threatened destruction of the Helvetians.

6. **quō . . . doleant**: 229, *a*. **ex**: 'in consequence of.'

7. **quōs**: antecedent is *hominēs*. **prō**: 'for,' 'in retaliation of.'

8. **hīs**: *i.e. hominibus*. **secundiōrēs rēs**: 'prosperity.' How lit.?

9. **concēdere**: depends on *Cōnsuēsse*, l. 6. Heaven, says Caesar, gives criminals a long period of prosperity so that punishment, when it does come, will bring bitter suffering. **Cum**: 'although,' 251. **obsidēs**: see note on this word, p. 174, l. 1.

10. **factūrōs**: sc. *esse eōs* (= *Helvētiōs*).

11. **dē**: 'for.' **ipsīs** := *Aeduīs*, 149, *b*.

12. **intulerint**: 'have inflicted.' **satis faciant**: 'give satisfaction.' Divico's brief reply is also in ind. disc.

Dīvicō respondit: Ita Helvētiōs ā maiōribus suīs īnstitūtōs esse, utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint; eius reī populum Rōmānum esse testem. Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

The Helvetii march on and Caesar follows.

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor mīlium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Aeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat, praemittit, quī videant, quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum agmen īnsecūtī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt. Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam multitūdinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn numquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat, ac satis habēbat in praesentia hostem rapīnīs, pābulātiōnibus populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt, utī inter novissi-

---

15. 5. **movent**: sc. *Helvētiī*. **Idem**: neut. acc. sing.

7-8. **coāctum habēbat**: see 281. Caesar's cavalry was recruited largely from the friendly allies. **quī videant**: 230 and 123, *b*.

9. **faciant**: 259. **Quī**: = *equitēs;* do not trans. lit. but see 202, *a*. **cupidius**: 'too eagerly,' 193. **novissimum agmen**: see Introd., p. xl.

10. **aliēnō**: 'unfavorable.'

11. **dē nostrīs**: 185, 3 (*d*). **proeliō**: 165. **sublātī**: 'elated.'

13. **audācius**: 'quite boldly'; 193, and cf. *cupidius* above. **subsistere**: 'halt.' **novissimō agmine**: 'with their rearguard.'

14. **nostrōs**: sc. *mīlitēs*.

15. **satis**: (sc. *esse*) **habēbat in praesentia**: 'regarded it as sufficient for the time.'

16. **rapīnīs**: 158.

17. **diēs**: 130.

mum hostium agmen et nostrum prīmum non amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum interesset.

The Aedui neglect to bring the promised grain; Caesar learns of the reasons for it.

16. Interim cotīdiē Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum, quod essent pūblicē pollicitī, flāgitāre. Nam propter frīgora nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant sed nē pābulī quidem satis magna cōpia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō, quod flūmine Arare nāvibus subvexerat, propterea minus ūtī poterat, quod iter ab Arare Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus

---

1. **prīmum** (sc. *agmen*): 'vanguard.' See Introd., p. xl.

2. **mīlibus**: 161. During this time the march of both armies was probably along or near the west bank of the Arar river.

16. Caesar's food supply gets short.

3. **Aeduōs, frūmentum**: 128. The Aedui, as allies of Rome, would be expected to contribute to the support of the Roman army which was ostensibly operating in Gaul for their benefit. But there was a strong anti-Roman party among the Aedui, which accounts for Caesar's difficulties in getting a supply of grain promptly. **frūmentum**: 'grain,' mostly wheat. See the Introd., p. xxx.

4. **essent pollicitī**: the subjunctive because it is in ind. disc. depending on the idea of saying implied in *flāgitāre;* 'which (Caesar said) they had promised.' 271. **pūblicē**: 'in the name of their state.' **flāgitāre**: why inf.? 275. **frīgora**: *i.e.* relatively, as compared with the warmer climate of Italy.

5. **frūmenta**: 'standing grain.' **nē . . . quidem**: 'not even,' always incloses the emphatic word. **pābulī**: grass and hay for the pack-animals: depends upon *cōpia*. This was the month of June.

6. **frūmentō**: with *ūtī* (l. 8); 163, *a*.

7. **flūmine**: the supply of grain on hand was more easily carried on the river. **nāvibus**: 163. **propterea**: to be taken with the following *quod*. **minus**: = *nōn*.

8. **poterat**: sc. *Caesar*. **āverterant**: the Helvetians were bearing off toward the northwest, away from the Arar. **quibus**: *i.e.* the Helvetians.

discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Aeduī; cōnferrī, comportārī, adesse dīcere.

Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem īnstāre, quō diē frūmentum mīlitibus mētīrī oportēret, convocātīs eōrum prīncipibus, quōrum magnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, in hīs Dīviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātuī praeerat, quem 'vergobretum' appellant Aeduī, quī creātur annuus et vītae necisque in suōs habet potestātem, graviter eōs accūsat, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī posset, tam necessāriō tempore, tam propinquīs hostibus, ab eīs nōn sublevētur, praesertim cum magnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit; multō etiam gravius, quod sit dēstitūtus, queritur.

---

1. **Diem ex diē**: 'from day to day.' **dūcere, dīcere**: 275. **cōnferrī, comportārī, adesse**: sc. *frūmentum* as subj.; the infinitives are in ind. disc. with *dīcere*. *Cōnferrī* refers to the gathering of the grain in the fields, *comportārī* to the bringing together of the different crops, and *adesse* to delivery in the near future.

3. **intellēxit**: sc. *Caesar*. **īnstāre**: 'was at hand.'

4. **frūmentum . . . mētīrī**: the soldiers received their rations at stated times. **eōrum**: = *Aeduōrum*.

5. **prīncipibus**: 'leading men.' **cōpiam**: 'number.'

6. **Dīviciācō, Liscō**: sc. *convocātīs*. **magistrātuī**: 149, *b*.

7. **vergobretum**: a native Celtic word, here Latinized for Roman readers. **annuus**: an adj., but trans. by an adv., 'annually,' 190.

8. **vītae . . . potestātem**: an autocratic ruler. **in suōs**: 'over his people.'

9. **posset**: sc. *frūmentum* as subj.

9-11. **quod . . . sublevētur**: Caesar's reason; 'because he was not helped (as he complained),' 241.

10. **necessāriō**: 'critical.' **tam propinquīs hostibus**: 173, but trans. by a clause expressing time.

12. **multō**: 168.

13. **sit dēstitūtus**: see 241 and note above on *sublevētur*.

17. Tum dēmum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus, quod anteā tacuerat, prōpōnit:

Esse nōn nūllōs, quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī prīvātim plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitūdinem

A Pontoon Bridge.

A relief on the column of Trajan at Rome. It was probably by such a pontoon bridge that Caesar's army crossed the Arar river.

---

17. 1. **quod**: see 125, *b*. Its antecedent is *id*, to be supplied as the obj. of *prōpōnit*.

3. **Esse nōn nūllōs**: the remainder of the chap. gives Liscus's speech in ind. disc. 'There are some, etc.' **plūrimum valeat**: 'is very great,' 125, *a*.

4. **plūs possint**: 'have more power,' 125, *a*. These influential Aeduans were naturally anti-Roman and sought in every way to embarrass the Roman expedition.

dēterrēre, nē frūmentum cōnferant, quod dēbeant: praestāre, sī iam prīncipātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitāre dēbēre, quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Aeduīs lībertātem sint ēreptūrī. Ab eīsdem nostra cōnsilia, quaeque in castrīs gerantur, hostibus ēnūntiārī; hōs ā sē coercērī nōn posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessāriam rem coāctus Caesarī ēnūntiārit, intellegere sēsē, quantō id cum perīculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam, quam diū potuerit, tacuisse.

The treachery of Dumnorix, who is anti-Roman.

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Dīviciācī frātrem, dēsignārī sentiēbat; sed, quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Lis-

---

1. **ne . . . cōnferant**: 262. Trans. '(kept) from contributing the grain.' **dēbeant**: sc. *cōnferre*. **praestāre . . . ēreptūrī**: ind. disc. within ind. disc., expressing the opinion of *Hōs* and depending on an idea of saying implied in *ōrātiōne*. **praestāre**: 'it was better'; the subject is *perferre*.

2. **possint**: sc. *Aeduī*.

4. **quīn . . . sint ēreptūrī**: 263.

5. **Aeduīs**: 153.

6. **eīsdem**: the *nōn nūllōs* above (p. 187, l. 3); see 160.

7. **Quīn etiam**: 'nay even.' **quod . . . ēnūntiārit**: 258.

9. **quantō**: with **cum perīculō**. **fēcerit**: 259. **quam diū potuerit**: 'as long as he could.'

18. 11. **Dumnorīgem** (subj. of *dēsignārī*): friendly to the Helvetians, as we saw above in chap. 9. Diviciacus, his brother, who is mentioned here, was strongly pro-Roman.

12. **plūribus praesentibus**: 173.

13. **iactārī**: 'to be discussed.' **dīmittit**: a connective (*et*) between this word and *retinet* is omitted; 290.

cum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea, quae in conventū dīxerat; dīcit līberius atque audācius.

Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit, reperit esse vēra: Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem propter līberālitātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Aeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō redēmpta habēre, propterea quod illō licente contrā licērī audeat nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāsse; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre, neque sōlum domī, sed etiam

---

1. **ex sōlō**: sc. *Liscō*. **Quaerit ea, quae**: 'he questioned him about what (lit. those things which).'

2. **dīcit**: sc. *Liscus*.

3. **Ipsum esse** to **dēspērāre** (p. 190, l. 12): in ind. disc. **Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem**: 'that Dumnorix was the very man referred to.'

4. **audāciā, grātiā**: 170.

6. **annōs**: 130. **portōria**: 'customs tolls,' levied on merchandise passing through the country, particularly along its water routes; *vectīgālia* were taxes in general.

7. **pretiō**: 164. **redēmpta habēre**: 281. Practically equivalent to *redēmisse*.

8. **illō licente**: abl. abs. expressing condition 'if he made a bid, no one dared to bid against him.' It was customary all over the Roman world for the public taxes to be "farmed out"; that is, the highest bidder at a general auction paid a lump sum to the state, which was thereby saved the trouble and expense of collecting the taxes, but the taxes were collected mercilessly by the contractor, for whom all that he could extort over and above the amount paid to the state was clear gain. These collectors were the *pūblicānī* or "publicans" of the New Testament. Thus the influence of Dumnorix was so great that in this matter of bidding he had things his own way. **et . . . et**: 'both . . . and.'

9. **auxisse, comparāsse**: sc. *eum* (= *Dumnorīgem*).

11. **domī**: 176.

apud fīnitimās cīvitātēs largiter posse, atque huius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illīc nōbilissimō ac potentissimō collocāsse; ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitātēs collocāsse. Favēre et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam affīnitātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Dīviciācus frāter in antīquum locum grātiae atque honōris sit restitūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā, quam habeat, grātiā dēspērāre.

Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset factum, initium eius fugae factum ā Dumnorīge atque eius equitibus (nam equitātuī, quem auxiliō Caesarī Aeduī mīserant, Dumnorīx

1. **largiter posse**: 'he had great influence.' **huius potentiae causā**: 'for the sake of (strengthening) this influence.'

2. **mātrem collocāsse** (= *collocāvisse*): 'had arranged a marriage for his mother.'

4. **sorōrem ex mātre**: 'sister on his mother's side,' *i.e.* a half-sister. **nūptum collocāsse**: 'had sent to be married'; see 236, Note.

5. **cupere**: 'was well-disposed to.'

6. **suō nōmine**: 'on his own account,' 'personally.'

7. **dēminūta**: sc. *sit*.

9. **Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs**: *i.e.* if the Romans should be defeated and driven out of the country. **summam in spem venīre**: 'he entertained the highest hopes.'

10. **rēgnī obtinendī**: depends on *spem*, 283. **imperiō**: *i.e.* if the Romans were supreme, 169.

13. **in quaerendō**: 'in the course of his investigation,' 282. **quod proelium esset factum**: 'as to the unsuccessful cavalry battle that had taken place,' 258.

14. **paucīs diēbus**: 168. 15. **factum**: sc. *esse*.

16. **equitātuī**: 149, *b*. **auxiliō Caesarī**: 156 and Note.

praeerat), eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perteritum.

Caesar consults Diviciacus and for the time pardons Dumnorix.

19. Quibus rēbus cognitīs, cum ad hās suspīciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, quod per fīnēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāsset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniussū suō et cīvitātis, sed etiam īnscientibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Aeduōrum accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur, quā rē in eum aut ipse animadverteret, aut cīvitātem animadvertere iubēret.

Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat, quod Dīviciācī frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cognōverat; nam, nē eius suppliciō Dīviciācī animum

---

19. 4. **accēderent**: lit. meaning (derived from *ad* and *cēdō*) in successive stages is 'go to,' 'approach,' 'become a part of,' 'be added to.' The word is commonly used with the latter meaning; thus here, 'when to these suspicions positive facts were added,' or 'when in addition to these suspicions there were the positive facts.' **quod**: 'the fact that'; the four substantive clauses (257) following are in apposition with *rēs* and specify the 'facts.'

5. **trādūxisset** (and three fol. verbs): sc. *Dumnorīx* as subj. **dandōs cūrāsset**: 'had effected an exchange, etc.,' 285.

6. **suō**: *i.e.* Caesar's. **cīvitātis**: also with *iniussū*.

7. **ipsīs**: Caesar and the Aedui. **magistrātū**: *i.e.* Liscus.

8. **satis**: used as a noun, with *causae* (138); 'sufficient reason.'

9. **animadvertere**: 'punish,' 233.

11. **ūnum repugnābat**: 'one thing stood in the way of,' *i.e.* 'there was one objection.' *Ūnum* is explained by the fol. *quod* clause; 257.

12. **studium**: 'devotion.'

14. **cognōverat**: sc. *Caesar*. **nē . . . offenderet**: 264. **eius**: = *Dumnorīgis*.

offenderet, verēbātur. Itaque prius, quam quicquam cōnārētur, Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet et, cotīdiānīs interpretibus remōtīs, per C. Valerium Troucillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō colloquitur; simul commonefacit, quae ipsō praesente in conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnorīge sint dicta, et ostendit, quae sēparātim quisque dē eō apud sē dīxerit. Petit atque hortātur, ut sine eius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō causā cognitā statuat, vel cīvitātem statuere iubeat.

20. Dīviciācus multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus obsecrāre coepit, nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret:

Scīre sē, illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plus quam

---

1. **prius, quam**: 'before.'

2. **cotīdiānīs**: 'ordinary,' lit. 'everyday.' **interpretibus**: Caesar probably could not yet speak Celtic, and he had to depend upon the services of friendly natives who knew Latin. An especially trustworthy friend was the interpreter, C. Valerius Troucillus (l. 3), whom Caesar retained for the interview with Diviciacus.

5. **eō**: = *Dīviciācō*.

6. **ipsō**: Diviciacus. **sint dicta, dīxerit**: 259.

7. **eō**: Dumnorix. **apud sē**: 'in his (Caesar's) presence.'

8. **offēnsiōne**: Caesar was extremely careful not to hurt the sensitive feelings of the friendly Aeduan. **ipse**: Caesar.

9. **eō**: Dumnorix. **statuere**: 260, *a*, Note.

20. 10. **multīs cum lacrimīs complexus**: the Celtic, like the Latin, peoples were and are very emotional. It is frequently observed to-day in scenes of parting at railroad stations.

11. **nē . . . statueret**: 260. These clauses are not as a rule to be translated literally; so here, 'beg him not to take too severe measures, etc.' **quid**: *quis* and *quid* following *nē* or *sī* have an indefinite force, 'anyone,' 'anything.' **gravius**: 193.

12. **Scīre . . . āverterentur**: gives in ind. disc. the substance of what Diviciacus said. **illa**: what Caesar had discovered (Chap. 18). **ex eō**: 'on that account.' **plūs**: used as a noun (see 54); with *dolōris* (138), 'more pain,' obj. of *capere*.

sē dolōris capere, proptereā quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscentiam posset, per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus ac nervīs nōn sōlum ad minuendam grātiam, sed paene ad perniciem suam ūterētur. Sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne vulgī commovērī. Quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amīcitiae apud eum tenēret, nēminem exīstimātūrum, nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum, utī tōtīus Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur.

Haec cum plūribus verbīs flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram prēndit; cōnsōlātus rogat, fīnem ōrandī faciat; tantī eius apud sē grātiam esse ostendit, utī et reī pūblicae

---

1. **cum**: 'at the time when.' **ipse**: Diviciacus. **plūrimum**: with *posset* supplied from the fol. clause.

2. **ille**: Dumnorix. **minimum**: 'had very little power,' contrasted with *plūrimum*.

3. **crēvisset**: sc. *Dumnorīx* as subj. **sē**: means whom? **quibus**: 'which' resources, *i.e.* the resources and strength gained through the position of his brother, Diviciacus. **opibus, nervīs**: 163, *a*.

4. **ad minuendam grātiam**: 282 and 283.

5. **suam**: (of Diviciacus) also limits *grātiam*. **frāternō**: 'for his brother.' **exīstimātiōne vulgī**: *i.e.* public opinion.

6. **Quod sī**: 'but if.' **quid**: see note on this word, p. 192, l. 11. **ā**: 'at the hands of.' **gravius**: limits *quid*, 193.

7. **accidisset**: the expression is softened. Diviciacus means to imply that Caesar might punish Dumnorix severely or even take his life. The verb would be fut. pf. in dir. disc. **eum locum**: referred to on p. 191, l. 12. **apud eum**: Caesar.

8. **factum** (*esse*): i.e. *sī quid gravius accidisset*.

9. **futūrum utī**: 'the result would be that.' 261.

11. **dextram prēndit**: the manner of expressing good-will then as now. **rogat**: sc. *ut* introducing *faciat*. **ōrandī**: What form? 282.

12. **tantī**: 'worth so much,' 142. **eius**: = *Dīviciācī*. **reī pūblicae**: '(harm) done to the state,' 137.

iniūriam et suum dolōrem eius voluntātī ac precibus condōnet. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat, ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvitās querātur, prōpōnit; monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspīciōnēs vītet; praeterita sē Dīviciācō frātrī condōnāre dīcit. Dumnorīgī cūstōdēs pōnit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit.

Caesar plans an attack on the Helvetii; his plan is frustrated by a false report.

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus, hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsīus castrīs octō, quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsus, quī cognōscerent, mīsit. Renūntiātum est, facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā Titum Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et eīs ducibus, quī iter cognōverant, sum-

---

1. **voluntātī, precibus**: 149, *a*; 'out of regard for his wishes and entreaties.'

3. **eō**: Dumnorix.

4. **in reliquum tempus**: 'for the future.'

5. **praeterita**: obj. of *condōnāre*; for *frātrī* see note on *voluntātī* above.

21. 9. **sub monte**: 'at the foot of a hill.' **mīlia octō**: 130. **ipsīus**: Caesar's.

10. **quālis esset**: depends (259) on *quī cognōscerent*, which in turn depends on *mīsit*. **quī**: antecedent is *explōrātōrēs* to be supplied. **in circuitū**: lit. 'in the going around.' Caesar means that he wished to find out what the ascent of the hill was like from the rear. He wanted to see if it was feasible to surprise the enemy by an attack in the rear from the top of the hill, at the same time that he made a frontal attack.

11. **Renūntiātum**: trans. the *re-*. **esse**: sc. *ascēnsum* as subj. **Dē tertiā vigiliā**: about what time? 183.

12. **prō praetōre**: 'with the powers of a general.'

mum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid suī cōnsilī sit, ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere, quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī reī mīlitāris perītissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et posteā in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explō-5 rātōribus praemittitur.

22. Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mīlle et quīngentīs passibus abesset, neque, ut posteā ex captīvīs comperit, aut ipsīus adventus aut Labiēnī cognitus esset, Cōnsidius equō 10 admissō ad eum accurrit, dīcit montem, quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit, ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicīs armīs

---

1. **cōnsilī**: 138; with *quid*, 'what his plan was.' On the form see 18.

4. **reī mīlitāris**: 143. **perītissimus**: but on this occasion, as we shall see, he was badly scared. **habēbātur**: 'was regarded.' Cf. our English phrase, "was held to be."

5. **L. Sullae**: the famous Roman general, who died in 78 B.C. **in M. Crassī**: sc. *exercitū*. M. Crassus, a general of great ability, noted for his wealth; with Pompey the Great and Caesar he was a member of the first Triumvirate, in 60 B.C. Caesar thought it necessary to give this account of the military experience of Considius to justify his unfortunate selection of him on this occasion.

22. 7. **Prīmā lūce**: 'at daybreak,' about four o'clock in the morning. **summus mōns**: 192. **tenērētur**: Labienus had taken position above and back of the Helvetian camp, but his presence was of course not known to the enemy.

8. **mīlle et quīngentīs passibus**: 'a mile and a half.'

9. **neque**: trans. the negative with *aut . . . aut*: 'and . . . neither . . . nor.'

10. **ipsīus**: = *Caesaris*. **adventus**: nom. case. **equō admissō**: 'at full gallop,' 173.

11. **accurrit**: 'hurried up.'

12. **voluerit**: sc. *Caesar*. **ab hostibus tenērī**: of course Considius was mistaken. **id**: i.e. *montem ab hostibus tenērī*. **ā**: 'from.'

atque īnsignibus cognōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem īnstruit.

Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum ā Caesare, nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsīus cōpiae prope hostium castra vīsae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cognōvit, et montem ā suīs tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium, timōre perterritum, quod nōn vīdisset prō vīsō sibi renūntiāsse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervāllō, hostēs sequitur et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

---

1. **īnsignibus**: 'crests' of helmets and standards. **Caesar . . . īnstruit**: Caesar, not knowing that Considius was wrong, did the only safe thing, namely, formed his army in line on an elevation ready to fight.

3. **ut**: 'as.' **eī**: 150; 'as he had been instructed.' His instructions are given in the following *nē . . . committeret* ('not to engage') *nisi . . . vīsae essent.*

4. **ipsīus**: Caesar's.

5. **ut . . . fieret** (229): the Helvetians were to be caught in a trap between the simultaneous attacks of the two divisions of Caesar's army.

6. **proeliō abstinēbat**: Caesar did not appear owing to the report of Considius, and naturally Labienus did not make a move. Meantime the Helvetians, unsuspecting, broke camp and left.

7. **Multō diē**: 'late in the day.'

8. **Cōnsidium . . . renūntiāsse**: a grim remark. Considius never appears again in the story of the Gallic War.

9. **quod**: antecedent is *id* supplied as the obj. of *renūntiāsse.* **prō vīsō**: 'as (something) seen.' Considius *thought* the soldiers of Labienus were Gauls.

10. **quō cōnsuērat intervāllō**: 'at the customary interval,' about five or six miles. *Cōnsuērat* is for *cōnsuēverat.*

Caesar turns toward Bibracte; the Helvetii follow to attack.

23. Postrīdiē eius diēī, quod omnīnō bīduum supererat, cum exercituī frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum XVIII aberat, reī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum exīstimāvit; iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit ac Bibracte īre contendit.

Ea rēs per fugitīvōs L. Aemilī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē exīstimārent, eō magis quod prīdiē superiōribus locīs occupātīs proelium nōn commīsissent, sīve eō, quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōn-

---

23. 1. **Postrīdiē eius diēī**: 'on the next day,' 134.

2. **frūmentum**: see note to p. 185, l. 3. **ā**: 'from.'

3. **oppidō**: 121. **Bibracte**: the capital city of the Aedui, situated on a high plateau, now called Mt. Beuvray. Excavations have revealed its city-walls and private and public buildings. It was well known for its manufacture of iron tools and other objects. In this town in the last year of the war Vercingetorix was made commander-in-chief of the allied Gallic forces, and there is reason to believe that in the winter of 52–51 B.C. the story of the Gallic War was written there by Caesar in the form in which you are now reading it.

4. **reī frūmentāriae**: 149, *b* and 150.

6. **Bibracte**: 132.

7. **Ea rēs**: that Caesar was leaving the Helvetian pursuit and going toward Bibracte. **fugitīvōs**: deserters from a squad of cavalry commanded by L. Aemilius. See Introd., p. xxxv. On the form *Aemilī* see 18.

8. **perterritōs**: thinking that the Romans were cowards.

9. **exīstimārent**: for this and the fol. subjunctives see 241. **eō**: 165.

10. **commīsissent**: the Helvetians evidently had heard of Caesar's scheme but either they did not know the whole story or they discredited it.

11. **rē frūmentāriā**: 158. **posse**: sc. *Rōmānōs* as subj.

fīderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine īnsequī ac lacessere coepērunt.

Both sides prepare to fight. The battle begins.

24. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūcit equitātumque, quī sustinēret hostium impetum, mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; atque suprā sē in summō iugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōnscrīpserat, et omnia auxilia collocārī ac tōtum montem hominibus complērī, et intereā sarcinās

---

1. **itinere conversō**: 'reversed their march.'

2. **ā**: 'on.' On the night before the battle the Romans were encamped near Toulon on the west bank of the Arroux river (see Plan II, opp. p. 198) and the Helvetians were three miles along the trail to the northwest. In the morning the latter continued their journey northwesterly and Caesar marched rapidly toward the north to replenish his supplies at Bibracte and later pick up the pursuit of the Helvetians, but the enemy misinterpreted Caesar's move.

24. 3. **Postquam . . . advertit**: 'after he (Caesar) noticed this.' **animum** is obj. of *advertit* and *id* is governed by *ad* in *advertit*.

4. **collem**: the hill above Armecy (see Plan II). It must have been 18 Roman miles south of Bibracte. Caesar always chose a position, if possible, on an elevation. **quī sustinēret**: 230. The cavalry was used to bear the brunt of the first charge of the enemy.

5. **in colle mediō**: 'half-way up the hill.' **triplicem aciem**: see Introd., p. xli.

6. **veterānārum**: the legions numbered VII, VIII, IX, and X. These had already seen fighting and could be relied upon.

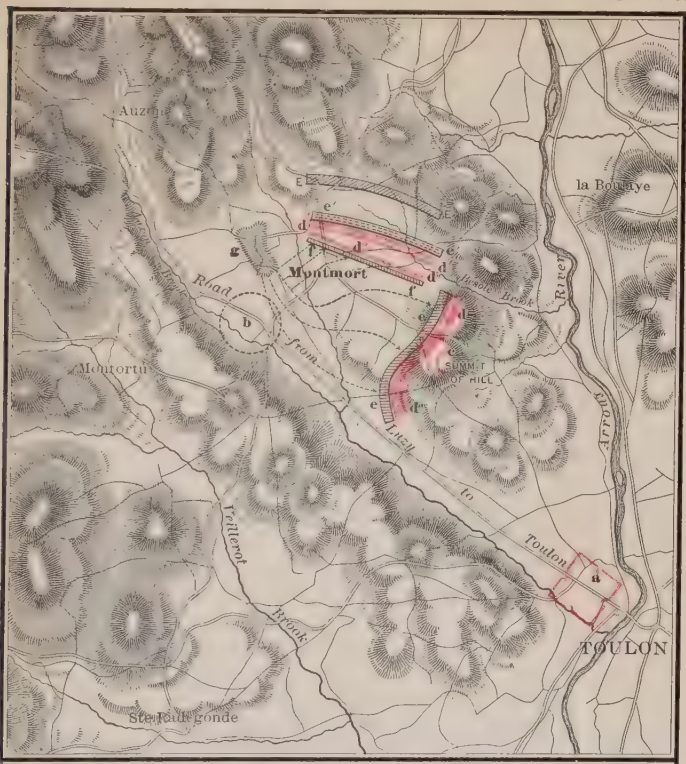
7. **suprā sē**: Caesar was, therefore, near the front. **in summō iugō**: 'at the top of the hill.' **duās legiōnēs**: XI and XII, just enlisted; they were held as a reserve force. **quās . . . cōnscrīpserat**: see p. 175, l. 4.

8. **auxilia**: see Introd., p. xxxv. The *auxilia* were not "regulars"; they were non-Roman light-armed troops, as were also the slingers and archers. **collocārī**: 'to be posted.'

9. **sarcinās**: the soldiers' individual 'packs'; see Introd., p. xxxii.

BATTLE BETWEEN CAESAR AND THE HELVETII

Lib. I, 24–29 PLAN II



SCALE OF ROMAN MILES

0 ½ 1 ½ 2

SCALE OF ENGLISH MILES

0 ½ 1 ½ 2

EXPLANATION.

a Camp of Caesar the night before the battle.

b Camp of the Helvetii.

c Intrenchment made to protect the two Legions of recruits, the Auxiliaries and the baggage, on the summit of the hill (*p. 198, 7*).

dd The four old Legions in line of battle (*p. 198, 6*).

ee The Helvetii in line of battle (*p. 199, 4*).

EE The Helvetii thrown back upon the heights a mile from the first position (*p. 200, 7*).

e′e′ Second position of the Helvetii, having returned to the attack (*p. 201, 2*).

ff The Boii and Tulingi, having approached from the left side, attacking the rear of the Roman force (*p. 200, 11*).

d′d′ First and second Roman lines, facing the Helvetii (*p. 201, 4*).

d″d″ Third Roman line, facing the Boii and Tulingi (*p. 201, 5*).

g Enclosure formed by the carts of the Helvetii (*p. 199, 3; p. 202, 7*).

Romans Helvetii

in ūnum locum cōnferrī et eum ab hīs, quī in superiōre aciē cōnstiterant, mūnīrī iussit. Helvētiī cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī, cōnfertissimā aciē rēiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

25. Caesar, prīmum suō, deinde omnium ex cōnspectū remōtīs equīs, ut aequātō omnium perīculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commīsit. Mīlitēs ē locō superiōre pīlīs missīs facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā, gladiīs dēstrictīs in eōs impetum fēcērunt.

---

1. **eum**: sc. *locum*, where the packs were collected.

3. **impedīmenta**: the general army baggage.

4. **aciē**: 166. **rēiectō . . . equitātū**: 173. **phalange factā**: 173. This was a close formation in which those in front held their shields before them overlapping each other and those behind held their shields also overlapping above their heads. We shall see how the active Roman fighters disorganized this formation.

5. **sub**: 'up against.'

25. 6. **suō**; sc. *equō ex cōnspectū remōtō*, 173. Trans. by a clause coördinate with the main clause. The horses were perhaps tethered below the brow of the hill at the east.

7. **aequātō omnium perīculō**: 173, but trans. 'by making the danger of all equal.' **spem fugae tolleret**: they had to fight or die, they could not escape on horseback; but Caesar was no better off than his men.

8. **cohortātus**: this was their first real battle in Gaul and Caesar wanted them to win it.

9. **ē locō superiōre**: *i.e.* the Romans stood on higher ground and their missiles fell with more force. **pīlīs**: see Introd., p. xxxii. They could be hurled with effect from 40 to 60 feet.

10. **Eā**: *i.e. phalange.* **disiectā**: 'disorganized,' 173. **gladiīs dēstrictīs**: 173. The battle became a hand-to-hand struggle and resembled a modern bayonet charge. See the picture on p. 201, which in imagination reproduces this scene.

Gallīs magnō ad pugnam erat impedīmentō, quod plūribus eōrum scūtīs ūnō ictū pīlōrum trānsfīxīs et colligātīs, cum ferrum sē īnflexisset, neque ēvellere neque sinistrā impedītā satis commodē pugnāre poterant, multī ut diū iactātō bracchiō praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pugnāre. Tandem vulneribus dēfessī et pedem referre et, quod mōns suberat circiter mīlle passuum spatiō, eō sē recipere coepērunt.

Captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs, Boiī et Tulingī, quī hominum mīlibus circiter xv agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimīs praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere

---

1. **Gallīs impedīmentō**: 156 and Note. Trans. 'The Gauls were greatly hindered in fighting.'

2. **scūtīs . . . trānsfīxīs et colligātīs** ('pinned together'): 173. **ictū**: 163.

3. **ēvellere**: sc. *pīla*. **sinistrā**: *manū*, 'fore-arm,' on which each carried his shield.

4. **satis commodē**: 'very conveniently.' Since their shields overlapped in the phalanx formation (see note above, p. 199, l. 4), the wrought iron point of the Roman *pīla* in many instances pierced the overlapping edges and bent, holding the shields together, so that in the end the shields had to be thrown away. See p. xxxiii. **multī**: emphatic position; subj. of *praeoptārent*. **iactātō**: 'jerked back and forth.' **bracchiō**: *i.e. sinistrō*.

5. **nūdō**: 'exposed.'

6. **pedem referre**: see Vocab.

7. **eō**: 'there' (*i.e.* 'thither'), = *ad montem*. This *mōns* is believed to be just north of the village of Montmort. See Plan II.

9. **Captō**: 'reached.' **succēdentibus**: the prep. shows that the Romans were pursuing them hotly.

10. **agmen claudēbant**: 'were bringing up the rear.'

11. **novissimīs** (= *novissimō agminī*) **praesidiō**: 156 and note. **ex itinere**: 'on the march,' without stopping to rest or re-form their line. **ab latere apertō**: 'on the exposed flank,' which would be on the right side of the Roman line, unprotected by the shield. In order to do this the Boii and Tulingi went around the Roman rear (*circumvenīre*).

apertō aggressī circumvenīre, et id cōnspicātī Helvētiī, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūrsus īnstāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa signa bipertītō intulērunt; prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victīs ac summōtīs resisteret, tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

The Helvetii are defeated. Some escape.

26. Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācriter pugnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn

The Battle between the Romans and the Helvetians.
An imaginative restoration of the scene at the very beginning of the battle.

2. **rūrsus īnstāre**: the Helvetians were encouraged by the appearance of their allies

3. **Rōmānī . . . intulērunt**: 'The Romans changed front (lit. standards) and advanced in two divisions.' In reality only one line wheeled to meet the Boii and Tulingi (*venientēs*), the other two lines continued to engage the Helvetians (*victīs ac summōtīs*).

26. 6. **ancipitī**: 'double.' Do not trans. the remainder of this sentence literally.

possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedīmenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem, etiam ad impedīmenta pugnātum est, proptereā quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēcerant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant, et nōn nūllī inter carrōs rotāsque matarās ac trāgulās subiciēbant nostrāsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedīmentīs castrīsque nostrī potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus est.

Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia cxxx superfuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt; nūllam partem noctis itinere intermissō, in fīnēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera mīlitum et propter sepultūram occīsōrum nostrī trīduum morātī eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litterās nūntiōsque mīsit,

---

1. **possent**: sc. *hostēs* as subj. **alterī** . . . **alterī**: 'one division (the Helvetians) . . . the other division (the Boii and Tulingi).'

2. **impedīmenta et carrōs**: marked *G* on Plan II.

3. **proeliō**: 180. **cum**: 251. **ab hōrā septimā**: from about one o'clock. See 183 (end).

4. **āversum**: not one of the enemy was seen running away. Caesar admired bravery even in an enemy. **Ad multam noctem**: 'until late at night.'

5. **ad**: 'by.'

6. **ē locō superiōre**: from the top of the rampart of wagons.

9. **impedīmentīs, castrīs**: 163, *a*.

10. **ē fīliīs**: 185, 4, (*d*).

11. **superfuērunt**: 'survived.'

12. **nocte**: 180. **continenter**: 'without stopping.' **partem**: 130.

14. **cum**: 240.

15. **occīsōrum**: victory was hard earned. **trīduum**: 130.

16. **Lingonas**: acc. case, 38. **nē eōs . . . habitūrum**: the substance of Caesar's message in ind. disc.

nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent; quī sī iūvissent, sē eōdem locō, quō Helvētiōs, habitūrum. Ipse trīduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petīssent, atque eōs in eō locō, quō tum essent, suum adventum exspectāre iussisset, pāruērunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs, quī ad eōs perfūgissent, poposcit.

Dum ea conquīruntur et cōnferuntur, nocte intermissā, circiter hominum mīlia VI eius pāgī, quī Verbigenus appellātur, sīve timōre perterritī, nē armīs trāditīs suppliciō afficerentur, sīve spē salūtis inductī, quod in tantā multitūdine dēditīciōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō ignōrārī posse exīstimārent, prīmā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum fīnēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

The terms of surrender.

28. Quod ubi Caesar resciit, quōrum per fīnēs ierant, hīs utī conquīrerent et redūcerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse

---

1. **nē . . . iuvārent** (sc. *Lingonēs*): 266. **iūvissent**: *iūveritis* (fut. pf. ind.) of dir. disc.

2. **eōdem locō**: *i.e.* Caesar would regard their act as hostile. **quō Helvētiōs**: sc. *habēret.*

27. 4. **dē dēditiōne**: 'to negotiate for surrender.'

7. **eōs**: = *omnēs Helvētiōs.*

8. **iussisset**: sc. *Caesar.*

11. **ea**: *obsidēs, arma, servī.* **conquīruntur**: 'searched for,' 236.

13. **nē . . . afficerentur**: depends on *timōre;* cf. 264. **suppliciō afficerentur**: '(lest) they be punished.'

16. **exīstimārent**: why subjunctive? 241. **prīmā nocte**: 'early in the night.'

28. 19. **hīs**: 149, *a*; it is the antecedent of *quōrum* (l. 18). **sibi**: 'in his sight,' 152. **pūrgātī**: 'guiltless.'

vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs in dēditiōnem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrīgōs in fīnēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iussit; et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmissīs domī nihil erat, quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit, ut eīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vīcōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit.

Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit, eum locum, unde Helvētiī discesserant, vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suīs fīnibus in Helvētiōrum fīnēs trānsīrent et fīnitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Boiōs, petentibus Aeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cognitī, ut in fīnibus suīs collocārent, concessit; quibus illī agrōs dedērunt, quōsque posteā in parem iūris lībertātisque condiciōnem, atque ipsī erant, recēpērunt.

---

1. **reductōs . . . habuit**: *i.e.* they were all put to the sword without mercy. This was war, and war justified General Sherman's description of it then as now.

5. **āmissīs**: they had destroyed their excess grain (p. 164, l. 8). **domī**: 176. **tolerārent**: 233.

6. **facerent**: 'provide.'

7. **ipsōs**: = *Helvētiōs*.

8. **Id**: making the Helvetians return to their mountain home and occupy it again. **ratiōne**: 165.

9. **vacāre**: 'to be unoccupied.' **trānsīrent**: 229. Caesar here expressly says that he forced the Helvetians to return in order to offer an obstruction to the advance of the Germans southward. In this he was safeguarding the interests of Italy.

12. **Boiōs**: obj. of *collocārent*. **Aeduīs**: ind. obj. of *concessit*, 148.

13. **ut collocārent**: with *petentibus*, 260. **virtūte**: 170.

14. **quibus, quōs**: the Boii. **illī**: = *Helvētiī*.

15. **parem atque**: 'the same as.' The Helvetian population had become greatly depleted by the war and they needed the help of the Boii in combating the Germans.

The Helvetian roster.

29. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litterīs Graecīs cōnfectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulīs nōmināti̇m ratiō cōnfecta erat, quī numerus domō exīsset eōrum, quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātim puerī, senēs mulierēsque. Quārum omnium rērum summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum mīlia CCLXIII, Tulingōrum mīlia XXXVI, Latobrīgōrum XIIII, Rauracōrum XXIII, Boiōrum XXXII; ex hīs, quī arma ferre possent, ad mīlia nōnāgintā duo.

Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia CCCLXVIII. Eōrum, quī domum rediērunt, cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium c et x.

Gallic chieftains congratulate Caesar.

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō tōtīus ferē Galliae lēgātī, prīncipēs cīvitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt:

---

29. 1. **tabulae**: 'lists.' **litterīs Graecīs**: the Greek alphabet was used, but the language was undoubtedly that native to the Helvetians, namely, the Celtic.

3. **nōmināti̇m**: 'by items,' referring to what follows. **ratiō**: 'statement.' **exīsset**: 259.

4. **sēparātim**: 'under separate heads.'

5. **summa**: 'total.' **omnium summa**: 'grand total.'

10. **cēnsū habitō**: 'a census having been taken.' According to these figures less than a third of the original number of emigrants survived the experiences of the summer. War statistics, however, are likely to be somewhat inaccurate.

30. Caesar's operations in Gaul during this summer did not end with the defeat of the Helvetians. Certain Gallic states, oppressed by the westward migrations of the Germans, appealed to Caesar for help in driving out the hateful invaders. He promptly complied and found in this an excellent excuse for remaining longer in Gaul.

13. **grātulātum**: 286.

Intellegere sēsē, tametsī prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriīs populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō repetīsset, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū terrae Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse, proptereā quod eō cōnsiliō flōrentissimīs rēbus domōs suās Helvētiī relīquissent, utī tōtī Galliae bellum īnferrent imperiōque potīrentur locumque domiciliō ex magnā cōpiā dēligerent, quem ex omnī Galliā opportūnissimum ac frūctuōsissimum iūdicāssent, reliquāsque cīvitātēs stīpendiāriās habērent.

Petiērunt, utī sibi concilium tōtīus Galliae in diem certam indīcere idque Caesaris voluntāte facere licēret; sēsē habēre quāsdam rēs, quās ex commūnī cōnsēnsū ab eō petere vel-

---

1. **Intellegere** to **habērent** (l. 9): ind. disc. depending on the idea of saying implied in *grātulātum*. **sēsē**: (the duplicated form) referring back to *lēgātī* who represented *tōta ferē Gallia*. **Helvētiōrum**: 136.

2. **populī Rōmānī**: 137 and Note. Study these two uses of the gen. case carefully. **tametsī . . . repetīsset** (= *repetīvisset*): 'although for the past wrongs which the Helvetians had done to the Roman people he (Caesar) had exacted punishment from them (the Helvetians) in war,' 252.

3. **eam rem**: *i.e. poenās repetīsse*. **ex ūsū**: lit. 'from advantage,' *i.e.* 'to the advantage of.' *terrae* is gen. case depending on *ūsū*.

4. **accidisse**: ind. disc. depending on *intellegere*. **eō cōnsiliō**: 'with this intention,' explained by the clause *utī . . . habērent* (see 260, *a*).

5. **rēbus**: 173. **Galliae**: 149, *b*.

6. **imperiō**: 163, *a*. **domiciliō**: 156.

7. **ex magnā cōpiā** (sc. *locōrum*): 'out of numerous localities.' **quem**: antecedent is *locum*.

8. **iūdicāssent** (= *iūdicāvissent*): for the fut. perf. of dir. disc.

9. **stīpendiāriās**: a pred. adj.

10. **Petiērunt**: sc. *lēgātī*. **certam**: 'particular.'

11. **indīcere**: 'appoint.' **licēret**: 260. **habēre**: ind. disc. depending on an idea of saying in *Petiērunt*.

lent. Eā rē permissā, diem conciliō cōnstituērunt et iūre iūrandō, nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōnsiliō mandātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt.

They entreat him to defend Gaul against the German king, Ariovistus.

31. Eō conciliō dīmissō, īdem prīncipēs cīvitātum, quī ante fuerant, ad Caesarem revertērunt petiēruntque, ut sibi sēcrētō dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere licēret. Eā rē impetrātā, sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt: Nōn minus sē id contendere et labōrāre, nē ea, quae dīxissent, ēnūntiārentur, quam utī ea, quae vellent, impetrārent; propterea quod, sī ēnūntiātum esset, summum in cruciātum sē ventūrōs vidērent. Locūtus est prō hīs Dīviciācus Aeduus:

1. **Eā rē**: *i.e.* permission to call a general council of Gaul.

2. **nē . . . ēnūntiāret**: depends on *sānxērunt* (260). **quis**: meaning after *nē?* **nisi** (sc. *ut eī ēnūntiārent*) **quibus**: 'except those to whom,' *i.e.* only those having official authority should disclose the proceedings of the council. **cōnsiliō**: 166, *a*.

3. **mandātum esset**: = fut. perf. of dir. disc. **inter sē sānxērunt**: 'they bound themselves mutually.'

31. 4. **īdem**: nom. pl. masc. Note the length of the first vowel.

5. **ante**: an adv.

6. **sibi, suā**: refers to whom? 197. **sēcrētō**: adv. modifying *agere*. The Gauls were extremely anxious to keep Ariovistus, king of the Germans, from hearing of their action.

7. **rē**: 'request.' **Caesarī**: trans. by the gen. case; 151, *a*.

8. **Nōn minus . . . vidērent**: ind. disc. **id**: obj. of the fol. infinitives, and explained by *nē . . . ēnūntiārentur* (note the voice).

9. **quam**: 'than' after *minus* above. **ea**: 'those things' (=favors).

10. **ēnūntiātum esset**: fut. perf. of dir. disc. **summum . . . ventūrōs**: 'that they would suffer the most cruel torture.'

11. **prō**: 'on behalf of.' The speech of Diviciacus, occupying the rest of the chap., is quoted in ind. disc. Study 265–271 while reading it.

Galliae tōtīus factiōnēs esse duās; hārum alterius prīncipātum tenēre Aeduōs, alterius Arvernōs. Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum esse, utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanīsque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum prīmō circiter mīlia xv Rhēnum trānsīsse; posteā quam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac barbarī adamāssent, trāductōs plūrēs; nunc esse in Galliā ad centum et xx mīlium numerum.

Cum hīs Aeduōs eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum armīs contendisse; magnam calamitātem pulsōs accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum āmīsisse. Quibus proeliīs calamitātibusque frāctōs, quī et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī hospitiō atque amīcitiā plūrimum ante in Galliā potuissent, coāctōs esse Sēquanīs

---

1. **factiōnēs**: 'parties.' **hārum**: sc. *factiōnum*. **alterius, alterius**: 'of the one (party), of the other.' The Aedui and Arverni between them controlled the affairs of Celtic Gaul.

3. **annōs**: 130.

4. **factum esse, utī**: 'it happened that.' **mercēde**: the Germans were hired to come.

5. **Hōrum**: = *Germānōrum*, 138. **Rhēnum**: 129. The Rhine River has practically always been the dividing line between the Celts and the Teutons.

6. **cultum**: 'civilization.' **posteā quam**: = *postquam*.

7. **adamāssent**: 'had taken a liking to.' **trāductōs**: sc. *esse*.

8. **ad**: with *numerum*. **mīlium**: 139.

9. **hīs**: = *Germānīs*. **semel atque iterum**: 'again and again.'

10. **pulsōs**: modifies *eōs* (= *Aeduōs*) to be supplied as the subj. of *accēpisse*. Trans. by two coördinate verbs, 'had been beaten and had suffered.'

12. **Quibus**: 202. **frāctōs**: see note on *pulsōs* above. The *eōs* to be supplied is antecedent of *quī* and subj. of *coāctōs esse* (l. 14).

13. **virtūte, hospitiō, amīcitiā**: 165. **populī Rōmānī**: with both *hospitiō* and *amīcitiā*. **plūrimum potuissent**: see note on *plūrimum*, p. 173, l. 1.

14. **ante**: adv.

obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs cīvitātis et iūre iūrandō cīvitātem obstringere, sēsē neque obsidēs repetītūrōs neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrātūrōs, neque recūsātūrōs, quō minus perpetuō sub illōrum diciōne atque imperiō essent. Ūnum sē esse ex omnī cīvitāte Aeduōrum, quī addūcī nōn potuerit, ut iūrāret aut līberōs suōs obsidēs daret. Ob eam rem sē ex cīvitāte profūgisse et Rōmam

The Rhine.

Showing one of the numerous castles which crown the hills and the vineyards which clothe their slopes.

---

1. **obsidēs**: 121.

2. **sēsē . . . recūsātūrōs**: ind. disc. depending on *iūre iūrandō obstringere*. What is the meaning of *re-* in *repetītūrōs*?

4. **quō minus . . . essent**: 262. **illōrum**: *Sēquanōrum*.

5. **Ūnum**: 'the only man.'

6. **potuerit**: would be subjunctive in dir. disc., 233. **obsidēs**: 121.

7. **Rōmam**: 132.

ad senātum vēnisse auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrandō neque obsidibus tenērētur.

Sed peius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Aeduīs victīs accidisse, propterea quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum fīnibus cōnsēdisset tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī esset optimus tōtīus Galliae, occupāvisset, et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere iubēret, propterea quod paucīs mēnsibus ante Harūdum mīlia hominum XXIIII ad eum vēnissent, quibus locus ac sēdēs parārentur. Futūrum esse paucīs annīs, utī omnēs ex Galliae fīnibus pellerentur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsīrent; neque enim cōnferendum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō, neque hanc cōnsuētūdinem victūs cum illā comparandam.

Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vīcerit, quod proelium factum sit Admagetobrigae, superbē et crūdēliter imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimī cuiusque līberōs

---

1. **postulātum**: 286. **quod**: 'because.'

3. **peius**: 60. **peius . . . accidisse**: 'a worse fate had happened to.' How lit.? **Sēquanīs**: this state was nearest the German borders. See Map opp. p. 155. **quam**: 'than.'

7. **Sēquanōs dēcēdere**; 260, Note.

8. **mēnsibus**: with *ante*, 168.

9. **locus ac sēdēs**: 'a place to settle,' 288. **parārentur**: 'must be made.' What is the lit. meaning?

10. **annīs**: 182. **omnēs**: sc. *Gallī*. **pellerentur, trānsīrent**: 261.

12. **cōnferendum esse Gallicum** (sc. *agrum*): 'the land of the Gauls is not to be compared with,' etc. In Eng. we should reverse the order.

13. **hanc**: of the Gauls. **illā**: of the Germans. **comparandam**: see note above on *cōnferendum*.

14. **ut semel**: 'as soon as.'

15. **factum sit**: 'took place.' **Admagetobrigae**: 176.

16. **nōbilissimī cuiusque** (from *quisque*): 'every one of high rank,' 203.

poscere et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdere, sī qua rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem eius facta sit. Hominem esse barbarum, īrācundum, temerārium; nōn posse eius imperia diūtius sustinēre. Nisi quid in Caesare populōque Rōmānō sit auxilī, omnibus Gallīs idem esse faciendum, quod Helvētiī fēcerint, ut domō ēmigrent, aliud domicilium, aliās sēdēs, remōtās ā Germānīs, petant fortūnamque, quaecumque accidat, experiantur.

The Rhine.

Another view, showing the beauty of its banks and the swift current of the river.

---

1. **exempla cruciātūsque**: 'every species of cruelty,' 288. **qua**: meaning after *sī*?

3. **posse**: sc. *Gallōs* as subj.

5. **auxilī**: with *quid*, 138. **Gallīs**: 155. **idem**: subj. of *esse faciendum*. *idem* is explained by the fol. *ut . . . ēmigrent, petant, experiantur*. What is shown by the quantity of the first syllable? See 81.

8. **quaecumque**: indefinite rel. pron. referring to *fortūnam*.

Haec sī ēnūntiāta Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre, quīn dē omnibus obsidibus, quī apud eum sint, gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Caesarem vel auctōritāte suā atque exercitūs vel recentī victōriā vel nōmine populī Rōmānī dēterrēre posse, nē maior multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā posse dēfendere.

Caesar espouses the cause of the Gauls.

32. Hāc ōrātiōne ab Dīviciācō habitā, omnēs, quī aderant, magnō flētū auxilium ā Caesare petere coepērunt. Animadvertit Caesar, ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil eārum rērum facere, quās cēterī facerent, sed trīstēs capite dēmissō terram intuērī. Eius reī quae causa esset mīrātus, ex ipsīs quaesiit. Nihil Sēquanī respondēre, sed in eādem trīstitiā tacitī permanēre. Cum ab hīs saepius quaereret neque ūllam omnīnō vōcem exprimere posset, īdem Dīviciācus Aeduus respondit:

---

1. **Haec**: the fact that Diviciacus was giving Caesar this information. **dubitāre**: sc. *sē* as subj., referring to Diviciacus.

3. **exercitūs**: sc. *auctōritāte* ('prestige').

4. **recentī victōriā**: the one gained over the Helvetians.

5. **nē . . . trādūcātur**: 262.

6. **dēfendere**: 'protect.'

32. 8. **ōrātiōne**: do not trans. by the English deriv.; 'when Diviciacus had made this speech.'

10. **ūnōs**: 'alone.'

11. **facerent**: 268. **trīstēs**: trans. as an adv.; 190.

12. **dēmissō**: 'bowed.' **Eius reī**: depend on *causa*. **esset**: 259.

13. **Nihil**: emphatic position, 'not a word.' **respondēre, permanēre**: 275.

14. **saepius**: 'repeatedly.'

15. **neque**: = *et nōn*. **īdem Dīviciācus**: 'Diviciacus again.' What is *īdem* literally?

Hōc esse miseriōrem et graviōrem fortūnam Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre audērent absentisque Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, velut sī cōram adesset, horrērent, propterea quod reliquīs tamen fugae facultās darētur, Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā fīnēs suōs Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte eius essent, omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendī.

33. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbīs cōnfīrmāvit pollicitusque est, sibi eam rem cūrae futūram; magnam sē habēre spem, et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte adductum Ariovistum fīnem iniūriīs factūrum. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā concilium dīmīsit.

Et secundum ea multae rēs eum hortābantur, quā rē sibi

---

1. **Hōc esse** to the end of the chap. is in ind. disc. **Hōc**: 165; looks forward to the clause, *quod . . . audērent*. **fortūnam**: 'the lot.'

2. **reliquōrum**: sc. *fortūnam*. **sōlī**: sc. *Sēquanī*. **nē . . . quidem**: 'not even,' followed immediately in the English sentence by the trans. of the emphasized words placed between *nē* and *quidem*.

3. **absentis**: has an idea of concession, 'though he was away.'

4. **horrērent**: 'dreaded.'

5. **reliquīs**: in contrast with *Sēquanīs* following. This sentence has a concessive force; although the rest had a chance of escaping, the Sequani had to submit. **tamen**: 'at any rate.' **Sēquanīs**: with *essent perferendī*, 155.

33. 10. **sibi, cūrae**: dat. case, 156 and Note; 'that he would give attention to this matter.' **futūram**: sc. *esse*.

11. **magnam**: note the position of this word. **sē habēre**: ind. disc. To whom do *sē* and *suō* refer?

12. **Ariovistum . . . factūrum** (*esse*): depends upon *habēre spem*, which is equivalent to *spērāre*.

14. **secundum**: prep. governing *ea;* 'besides these (considerations).' **quā rē . . . putāret**: 230; '(forced him) to think.' **sibi**: 155.

eam rem cōgitandam et suscipiendam putāret, in prīmīs, quod Aeduōs, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque saepe numerō ā senātū appellātōs, in servitūte atque in diciōne vidēbat Germānōrum tenērī, eōrumque obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum ac Sēquanōs intellegēbat; quod in tantō imperiō populī Rōmānī turpissimum sibi et reī pūblicae esse arbitrābātur.

Paulātim autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum trānsīre, et in Galliam magnam eōrum multitūdinem venīre, populō Rōmānō perīculōsum vidēbat; neque sibi hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs temperātūrōs exīstimābat quīn, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, ut ante Cimbrī Teutonīque fēcissent, in prōvinciam exīrent atque inde in Italiam contenderent, praesertim cum Sēquanōs ā prōvinciā nostrā Rhodanus dīvideret; quibus rēbus quam mātūrrimē occurrendum putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi spīritūs, tantam arrogantiam sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn vidērētur.

---

2. **Aeduōs**: subj. of *tenērī* (l. 4). **quod**: 'a situation which'; refers to the facts stated in the preceding sentence.

8. **magnam**: with *multitūdinem*.

9. **populō Rōmānō**: 157. **perīculōsum**: pred. adj. with *esse* to be supplied, the subj. of *esse* being the infin. clauses preceding. **vidēbat**: sc. *Caesar*.

10. **quīn . . . exīrent, . . . contenderent**: 262. '(would not refrain) from going into the Province, etc.'

11. **ut**: 'as.'

12. **fēcissent**: for *fēcerant* of dir. disc., 268. The event had happened in 102 B.C. **in Italiam contenderent**: there was undoubtedly a real danger of this happening and Caesar was, therefore, justified in taking early measures against the Germans.

14. **Rhodanus**: *i.e.* the Rhone would be the only barrier to the progress of the invaders. **quibus rēbus**: dat. with *occurrendum*, 149, *b*. **quam mātūrrimē**: 194. **occurrendum**: sc. *sibi*.

15. **sibi sūmpserat**: 'had assumed.'

16. **ut . . . vidērētur**: 'that he seemed unbearable.'

He invites Ariovistus to a conference; Ariovistus declines and to Caesar's demands sends back a haughty reply.

34. Quam ob rem placuit eī, ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret, quī ab eō postulārent, utī aliquem locum medium utrīusque colloquiō dēligeret; velle sēsē dē rē pūblicā et summīs utrīusque rēbus cum eō agere. Eī lēgātiōnī Ariovistus respondit:

Sī quid ipsī ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse; sī quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venīre oportēre. Praetereā sē neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venīre audēre, quās Caesar possidēret, neque exercitum sine magnō commeātū atque mōlīmentō in ūnum locum contrahere posse. Sibi autem mīrum vidērī, quid in suā Galliā, quam bellō vīcisset, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtī esset.

---

34. 1. **placuit eī**: 'he resolved'; how lit.? **ut . . . mitteret**: subj. of *placuit*, 261.

2. **postulārent**: 230. **medium utrīusque**: 'midway between each' (*i.e.* Caesar and Ariovistus), 134.

3. **rē pūblicā**: 'political matters.'

4. **summīs . . . rēbus**: also governed by *dē;* 'matters of the greatest importance to each of them.'

6. **Sī quid . . . esset**: 'if he had wanted anything from Caesar.' **ipsī**: dat. case, referring to Ariovistus. **sēsē**: Ariovistus. Who is *eum?* **ventūrum fuisse**: for *vēnissem* of dir. disc. This is a cond. contrary to fact. See 270.

7. **sī . . . velit**: 'if he (Caesar) wanted anything from him.' **quid, sē**: for the two accusatives see 128. **velit**: for *vīs* (pres. indic.) of dir. disc., a simple cond. To whom do *illum* and *sē* refer?

11. **mīrum**: pred. adj., the subj. of *vidērī* being the clause *quid . . . esset. quid* is used with *negōtī* (l. 13); 'what business,' 138. **in suā Galliā**: 'in his (part of) Gaul.'

12. **Caesarī, populō Rōmānō**: 154. Trans. 'what business Caesar or the Roman people in general had.'

Caesar sends an ultimatum.

35. Hīs respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātīs, iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mittit:

Quoniam tantō suō populīque Rōmānī beneficiō affectus, cum in cōnsulātū suō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus esset, hanc sibi populōque Rōmānō grātiam referret, ut in colloquium venīre invītātus gravārētur neque dē commūnī rē dīcendum sibi et cognōscendum putāret, haec esse, quae ab eō postulāret: prīmum, nē quam multitūdinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret; deinde, obsidēs, quōs habēret ab Aeduīs, redderet, Sēquanīsque permitteret, ut, quōs illī habērent, voluntāte eius reddere illīs licēret; nēve Aeduōs iniūriā lacesseret, nēve hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum īnferret.

---

35. 1. **respōnsīs**: trans. by the sing., 'reply.'

3. **Quoniam**: ind. disc. to the end of the chap. **beneficiō**: with both *suō* and *populī Rōmānī;* 'kindness on his (Caesar's) part and that of the Roman people.' **affectus**: 'treated.'

4. **in cōnsulātū suō**: in the previous year, 59 B.C. **rēx atque amīcus appellātus**: this was a political expedient to gain the goodwill of Ariovistus, but, as we shall see, Ariovistus was shrewd enough to understand it. **senātū**: the Roman senate.

5. **hanc grātiam referret**: 'he showed his gratitude in this.' *Hanc* is explained by the fol. *ut*-clause.

6. **invītātus**: expresses time, 276 and Note. **neque**: = *et nōn*. **commūnī rē**: 'a matter of common interest.'

7. **dīcendum, cognōscendum**: sc. *esse;* 'that he should speak or learn.' **haec . . . postulāret**: Caesar's ultimatum, which follows, *nē . . . trādūceret, . . . (ut) . . . redderet, . . . permitteret, . . . nēve . . . lacesseret, . . . īnferret*, clauses which explain *haec* and depend upon *postulāret*, 260.

8. **quam**: meaning after *nē?*

10. **Sēquanīs**: 148.

11 **ut . . . licēret**: 260. **illī, illīs**: the Sequani. **eius**: = *Ariovistī*.

12. **iniūriā**: 'wrongfully,' 166.

Sī id ita fēcisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō perpetuam grātiam atque amīcitiam cum eō futūram; sī nōn impetrāret, sēsē, quoniam M. Messālā, M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus senātus cēnsuisset, utī, quīcunque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō reī pūblicae facere posset, Aeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, sē Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum.

The haughty reply of Ariovistus.

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit:

Iūs esse bellī, ut quī vīcissent, eīs quōs vīcissent, quem ad modum vellent, imperārent; item populum Rōmānum victīs nōn ad alterius praescrīptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōnsuēsse. Sī ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescrī-

---

1. **fēcisset**: fut. perf. of dir. disc., 270. **sibi populōque Rōmānō**: 154.

2. **eō**: = *Ariovistō*. **impetrāret**: subj. = *Caesar*.

3. **M. Messālā . . . cōnsulibus**: see note to p. 158, l. 4. The date was 61 B.C.

4. **utī . . . dēfenderet**: with *cēnsuisset*, 260. **quīcumque**: indefinite rel. pron., having as its antecedent the subj. of *dēfenderet*. **Galliam prōvinciam**: 127. **obtinēret**: as governor.

5. **quod**: 'in so far as.' **commodō**: 166, *a*.

6. **sē**: repeats the *sēsē* above (l. 3).

7. **neglēctūrum** (*esse*): 'would not allow to go unpunished.'

36. 8. **respondit**: the rest of the chapter is again expressed in ind. disc. The pupil will find interest in putting into English the exact text of these diplomatic "notes" that passed between Caesar and Ariovistus.

9. **Iūs esse bellī**: 'that it is the right of war.' **quī**: antecedent is subj. of *imperārent*. **eīs**: with *imperārent;* 149, *a*. What is the modern view of the rights of conquerors over the conquered?

11. **victīs**: see note on *eīs* above. **ad**: 'according to.' **alterius**: *i.e.* a third party.

12. **populō Rōmānō**: 149, *b*.

beret, quem ad modum suō iūre ūterētur, nōn oportēre sēsē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impedīrī.

Aeduōs sibi, quoniam bellī fortūnam temptāssent et armīs congressī ac superātī essent, stīpendiāriōs esse factōs. Magnam Caesarem iniūriam facere, quī suō adventū vectīgālia sibi dēteriōra faceret. Aeduīs sē obsidēs reddidisse, neque hīs neque eōrum sociīs iniūriā bellum illātūrum, sī in eō manērent, quod convēnisset, stīpendiumque quotannīs penderent; sī id nōn fēcissent, longē eīs frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī āfutūrum.

Quod sibi Caesar dēnūntiāret, sē Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum, nēminem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse. Cum vellet, congrederētur; intellēctūrum, quid invictī Germānī, exercitātissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs XIIII tēctum nōn subīssent, virtūte possent.

---

1. **suō**: refers to *populus Rōmānus*, the subj. of *ūterētur*. **sēsē, suō**: refer to Ariovistus.

4. **stīpendiāriōs**: 129, *a*. **Magnam**: note the position of this word and explain it.

5. **quī . . . faceret**: rel. clause expressing cause; 'since he made,' 242. To whom do *suō* and *sibi* refer?

6. **dēteriōra**: pred. adj.

7. **iniūriā**: see note on this word above (p. 216, l. 12).

8. **sī . . . convēnisset**: 'if they should abide by that which had been agreed upon.'

9. **longē eīs āfutūrum**: 'would be of little help to them.' **frāternum**: 'of brothers.'

11. **Quod . . . dēnūntiāret**: 'as for Caesar's threatening him.' **sē**: refers to Caesar.

12. **sēcum**: refers to Ariovistus. **suā**: refers to *nēminem*; 198, Note.

13. **congrederētur**: 266. **intellēctūrum**: sc. *sē* (= *Caesarem*) *esse*. **quid . . . virtūte possent**: 'what their mettle was.' How lit.?

14. **inter**: 'during.' **tēctum nōn subīssent**: 'had not had the

Caesar hastens to Vesontio.

37. Haec eōdem tempore Caesarī mandāta referēbantur, et lēgātī ab Aeduīs et ā Trēverīs veniēbant: Aeduī questum, quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Galliam trānsportātī essent, fīnēs eōrum populārentur; sēsē nē obsidibus quidem datīs pācem Ariovistī redimere potuisse; Trēverī autem, pāgōs centum Suēbōrum ad rīpās Rhēnī cōnsēdisse, quī Rhēnum trānsīre cōnārentur; hīs praeesse Nasuam et Cimberium frātrēs. Quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus mātūrandum sibi exīstimāvit, nē, sī nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiīs Ariovistī sēsē coniūnxisset, minus facile resistī posset. Itaque rē frūmentāriā, quam celerrimē

---

shelter of a roof.' The tone of Ariovistus's message throughout is boastful and insolent. He becomes more reasonable when Caesar gets nearer.

37. 1. **eōdem tempore**: applies to *referēbantur* and *veniēbant;* 'at the same time that this message was delivered, delegates came, etc.'

2. **Aeduī**: sc. *veniēbant*, naturally omitted in Eng. as in Latin. **questum**: 286.

4. **eōrum**: = *Aeduōrum*. **populārentur**: explain the mood, 241. **sēsē . . . frātrēs**: ind. disc. depending on an idea of saying implied in *questum*. **nē . . . quidem**: see note on these words, p. 213, l. 2. For the case of *obsidibus*, see 173. Trans. 'not even by giving hostages.'

5. **Trēverī**: sc. *veniēbant questum*.

6. **ad**: 'by,' 'on.' The Suebi were at present on the east bank of the river and were trying to cross to the west or Gallic side.

7. **hīs**: 149, *b*.

8. **vehementer commōtus**: the situation was serious. **mātūrandum**: sc. *esse*.

9. **Suēbōrum**: a nomadic German people occupying extensively the country east of the lower Rhine. Cf. the modern Swabians.

10. **cōpiīs Ariovistī**: already on the west side of the river.

11. **resistī posset**: used impersonally, but trans. 'resistance could be made less easily.'

potuit, comparātā, magnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

38. Cum trīduī viam prōcessisset, nūntiātum est eī, Ariovistum cum suīs omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum maximum Sēquanōrum, contendere, trīduīque viam ā suīs fīnibus prōcessisse. Id nē accideret, magnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar exīstimābat. Namque omnium rērum, quae ad bellum ūsuī erant summa erat in eō oppidō facultās, idque nātūrā locī sīc mūniēbātur, ut magnam ad dūcendum bellum daret facultātem, propterea quod flūmen Dubis, ut circinō circumductum, paene tōtum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum MDC, quā flūmen intermittit, mōns continet

1. **magnīs itineribus**: how many miles did Caesar's army march in a day? See Introd., p. xxxix.

38. 3. **trīduī**: 141. **prōcessisset**: sc. *Caesar*.

4. **ad occupandum Vesontiōnem**: gerundive expressing purpose; 'to seize Vesontio.'

5. **quod**: neut. gender to agree with *oppidum*. **contendere, prōcessisse**: note the different tenses in translating; see note preceding 274.

6. **Id**: *i.e.* the seizing of Vesontio. This report of Ariovistus's approach was probably false. He was at this time too far away to attempt to get possession of Vesontio. **nē accideret**: depends on *praecavendum* (*esse*), a strong word, 'that he ought to make every effort to prevent.'

8. **rērum**: with *facultās*. **ūsuī**: 156.

9. **nātūrā locī**: 'its natural location.'

10. **daret**: 232.

11. **Dubis**: now called the Doubs. **ut**: 'as if.' Besançon, the modern name of Vesontio, is now a French fortress of the first class. The present-day picture, on page 221, shows how the river Doubs winds in a loop about three sides of the town, the remaining portion between the banks of the river being occupied by a high mountain of rock. Thus the town is *nātūrā locī* admirably protected.

12. **pedum**: 162 and 141. **quā . . . intermittit**: 'where the river leaves a gap.'

magnā altitūdine, ita, ut rādīcēs montis ex utrāque parte rīpae flūminis contingant. Hunc mūrus circumdatus arcem efficit et cum oppidō coniungit. Hūc Caesar magnīs nocturnīs diurnīsque itineribus contendit occupātōque oppidō ibi praesidium collocat.

Panic spreads in the Roman camp.

39. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem reī frūmentāriae commeātūsque causā morātur, ex percontātiōne nostrōrum vōcibusque Gallōrum ac mercātōrum, quī ingentī

Besançon.

A town in France, the site of ancient Vesontio. It is still a strongly fortified place and the seat of an artillery school.

1. **altitūdine**: 170. **ita**: 'in such a way.' **rādīcēs**: 'base.'

2. **rīpae**: subj. of *contingant*. **Hunc**: refers to what? **arcem**: 127.

39. 7. **diēs**: 130. **ad**: 'in the vicinity of.'

7. **causā**: 'for the sake of,' used with the two genitives preceding. **morātur**: sc. *Caesar*. Explain the tense, 236. **ex**: 'as a result of.'

8. **vōcibus**: 'talk.' **mercātōrum**: 'traders,' who naturally had traveled about a good deal.

magnitūdine corporum Germānōs, incrēdibilī virtūte atque exercitātiōne in armīs esse praedicābant (saepe numerō sēsē cum hīs congressōs nē vultum quidem atque aciem oculōrum dīcēbant ferre potuisse), tantus subitō timor omnem exercitum occupāvit, ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret. Hīc prīmum ortus est ā tribūnīs mīlitum, praefectīs reliquīsque, quī ex urbe amīcitiae causā Caesarem secūtī nōn magnum in rē mīlitārī ūsum habēbant; quōrum alius aliā causā illātā, quam sibi ad proficīscendum necessāriam esse dīceret, petēbat, ut eius voluntāte discēdere licēret; nōn nūllī pudōre adductī, ut timōris suspīciōnem vītārent, remanēbant. Hī neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimās tenēre poterant;

---

1. **magnitūdine, virtūte, exercitātiōne**: 170, used in the pred. The people of the North were and are generally taller and bigger men than the Romans and Italians of the South. Besides, unseen dangers are always more terrifying.

2. **saepe numerō . . . potuisse**: ind. disc.

3. **cum hīs congressōs**: 'when they had met them.' **aciem**: 'piercing glance.'

5. **nōn mediocriter**: 'in no small degree,' that is, a good deal, 289.

6. **Hīc**: sc. *timor*.

7. **tribūnīs mīlitum**: read p. xxix. **praefectīs**: 'the auxiliary officers.' **urbe**: Rome.

8. **causā**: see note on *causā* above (p. 221, l. 7). **secūtī**: young, inexperienced fellows went to Gaul with Caesar out of curiosity or for adventure, but they were of little (*nōn magnum*, 289) real service.

9. **alius . . . illātā**: 'one giving one reason, another giving another reason.' The Latin use of *alius* is condensed; in Eng. we may say, 'each giving a different reason.' **causā**: 173.

10. **dīceret**: why subjunctive? 271, 'which, as he said, made it imperative for him to leave.'

11. **eius**: i.e. *Caesaris*.

13. **vultum fingere**: *i.e.* pretend to be indifferent.

abditī in tabernāculīs aut suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus suīs commūne perīculum miserābantur. Vulgō tōtīs castrīs testāmenta obsignābantur.

Hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulātim etiam eī, quī magnum in castrīs ūsum habēbant, mīlitēs centuriōnēsque, quīque equitātuī praeerant, perturbābantur. Quī sē ex hīs minus timidōs exīstimārī volēbant, nōn sē hostem verērī, sed angustiās itineris et magnitūdinem silvārum, quae intercēderent inter ipsōs atque Ariovistum, aut rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē supportārī posset, timēre dīcēbant. Nōn nūllī etiam Caesarī nūntiābant, cum castra movērī ac signa ferrī iussisset, nōn fore dictō audientēs mīlitēs neque propter timōrem signa lātūrōs.

---

1. **tabernāculīs**: the tents of the soldiers, made of leather. See Plate IV, 3.

3. **tōtīs castrīs**: for the omission of the preposition see 175. **obsignābantur**: their wills were made with strict formality, having been duly witnessed and sealed; this shows how seriously they took the situation.

5. **centuriōnēs**: these officers (see p. xxix) were brave men, but they were unnerved by this talk about the formidable Germans. **quīque**: = *et quī*, the antecedent *eī* (to be supplied) being one of the subjects of *perturbābantur*.

6. **Quī**: sc. *eī* as antecedent and subj. of *dīcēbant* (l. 10). **ex hīs**: 185, 4, (*d*).

7. **verērī, timēre**: ind. disc. depending on *dīcēbant*. They were not afraid of the Germans, no, but only of the roads and food supply! It is an amusing touch of human nature.

9. **ipsōs**: 201.

10. **ut . . . posset**: 264. How is *ut* to be trans.? Supply *rēs frūmentāria* as the subj. of *posset*.

12. **signa ferrī**: 'the army to advance.' What is the lit. meaning? See p. xxxiv. **nōn fore**: = *nōn futūrōs esse*. **nōn fore dictō audientēs**: 'would not obey.'

13. **latūrōs**: sc. *esse*.

Caesar addresses his soldiers.

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō omniumque ōrdinum ad id cōnsilium adhibitīs centuriōnibus, vehementer eōs incūsāvit:

Prīmum, quod, aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur, sibi quaerendum aut cōgitandum putārent. Ariovistum sē cōnsule cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amīcitiam appetīsse; cūr hunc tam temere quisquam ab officiō discessūrum iūdicāret? Sibi quidem persuādērī, cognitīs suīs postulātīs atque aequitāte condiciōnum perspectā, eum neque suam neque populī Rōmānī grātiam repudiātūrum.

Quod sī furōre atque āmentiā impulsus bellum intulisset,

---

40. 1. **animadvertisset**: sc. *Caesar*. How many *ōrdinēs* were there in each legion? See p. xxviii. Since at this time Caesar had **six** legions, how many centurions were present at the council?

3. **incūsāvit**: the remainder of the chap. quotes Caesar's speech (from *Ariovistum*) in ind. disc. It is a model of clearness and persuasiveness. Like other young Romans Caesar had had training in public speaking and was accounted by his contemporaries as an orator of unsurpassed ability. The pupil should write out the exact English text in dir. disc. of this speech of Caesar. It had the immediate effect of stopping the panic among his men and of filling them with increased courage.

4. **quod**: 'because' introduces *putārent*. **dūcerentur**: 259. With the following gerundives supply *esse*.

6. **sē cōnsule**: Caesar was consul in 59 B.C. **cupidissimē**: an exaggeration. Do political speeches in modern times contain exaggerated statements?

7. **cūr . . . iūdicāret**: 267. **officiō**: 'loyalty.'

8. **quidem**: emphatic; 'that *he* (Caesar) for his part was convinced.' **cognitīs . . . perspectā**: ablative abs. expressing time, 173. Caesar was sure that Ariovistus would be reasonable when he knew what he (Caesar) wanted and how fair his terms were.

9. **eum**: = *Ariovistum*.

11. **Quod sī**: 'but if.' **impulsus**: 'carried away.'

quid tandem verērentur? aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsīus dīligentiā dēspērārent? Factum eius hostis perīculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbrīs et Teutonīs ā Gaiō Mariō pulsīs nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritus vidēbātur; factum etiam nūper in Italiā servīlī tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus ac disciplīna, quae ā nōbīs accēpissent, sublevārent. Ex quō iūdicārī posse, quantum habēret in sē bonī cōnstantia, propterea quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermōs sine causā timuissent, hōs posteā armātōs ac victōrēs superāssent.

Dēnique hōs esse eōsdem Germānōs, quibuscum saepe numerō Helvētiī congressī nōn sōlum in suīs, sed etiam in

---

1. **quid tandem**: 'what, pray.'

2. **ipsīus**: = *Caesaris*. **perīculum**: 'trial,' subj. of *Factum esse*. This was not the first time that the Romans had met the Germans in battle.

3. **Cimbrīs . . . pulsīs**: 173. It was in 102 B.C. that these German nations planned an invasion of Italy and were prevented from carrying out their plan by a crushing defeat inflicted by Marius.

4. **exercitus**: nom. case, subj. of *vidēbātur*.

5. **meritus**: sc. *esse*. **factum**: sc. *esse eius hostis perīculum*.

6. **servīlī tumultū**: 'at the time of the rebellion of the slaves,' in 73–71 B.C., when a serious uprising of gladiators and slaves took place in Italy under the leadership of Spartacus; many of those who took part in the rebellion were Germans. **quōs**: antecedent is *servōrum*, the equivalent of *servīlī*. **tamen**: and yet in that slave war the rebels were harder to overcome than are these Germans of Ariovistus, for the former had learned from the Romans something about the science of war. **aliquid**: 'in some respect,' 125, *a*. **ūsus**: 'experience.'

7. **accēpissent**: 'learned.' **sublevārent**: why pl.? 123, *b*.

8. **posse**: the subj. is the clause, *quantum . . . cōnstantia*. **bonī**: 138. **cōnstantia**: 'steadfastness.'

9. **hōs**: antecedent of *quōs*; refers to the slaves.

12. **congressī**: 'met in battle.'

illōrum fīnibus, plērumque superārint, quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercituī nōn potuerint. Sī quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovēret, hōs, sī quaererent, reperīre posse, diūturnitāte bellī dēfatīgātīs Gallīs, Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsēs castrīs sē ac palūdibus tenuisset neque suī potestātem fēcisset, dēspērantēs iam dē pugnā et dispersōs subitō adortum, magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vīcisse. Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperītōs locus fuisset, hāc nē ipsum quidem spērāre nostrōs exercitūs capī posse.

Quī suum timōrem in reī frūmentāriae simulātiōnem angustiāsque itineris cōnferrent, facere arroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre aut praescrībere vidērentur. Haec sibi esse cūrae; frūmentum Sēquanōs, Leucōs, Lingonēs sumministrāre, iamque esse in agrīs frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsōs brevī tempore iūdicātūrōs.

---

1. **illōrum** : = *Germānōrum*.

2. **exercituī** : 157. Caesar tells his men that they have a "line" on these Germans, for the Helvetians usually vanquished the Germans and the Roman army had just vanquished the Helvetians. **quōs** : 'any.' **adversum proelium** : described on p. 208.

3. **fuga Gallōrum** : see p. 208. **commovēret** : see note on *sublevārent* above, p. 225, l. 7.

4. **diūturnitāte** : with *dēfatīgātīs*, 165.

5. **castrīs, palūdibus** : 175. **neque . . . fēcisset** : 'and did not give them (the Gauls) a chance at him.' **suī** : 137.

6. **dēspērantēs, dispersōs** : sc. *Gallōs*, the obj. of *adortum*. **dispersōs** : 'scattered.'

7. **ratiōne et cōnsiliō** : 'by craft and strategy.'

8. **Cui ratiōnī . . . hāc** : trans. in the order *hāc ratiōne cui*, etc.

9. **ipsum** : Ariovistus.

12. **cōnferrent** : 'ascribe.' **facere** : sc. *eōs* as subj. and antecedent of the preceding *Quī*.

13. **praescrībere** : sc. *officium*.

14. **cūrae** : 156 and Note.

Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque signa lātūrī dīcantur, nihil sē eā rē commovērī; scīre enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortunam dēfuisse, aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictam; suam innocentiam perpetuā vītā, fēlīcitātem Helvētiōrum bellō esse perspectam.

Itaque sē, quod in longiōrem diem collātūrus fuisset, repraesentātūrum et proximā nocte dē quārtā vigiliā castra mōtūrum, ut quam prīmum intellegere posset, utrum apud eōs pudor atque officium an timor valēret. Quod sī praetereā nēmō sequātur, tamen sē cum sōlā decimā legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitāret, sibique eam praetōriam cohortem futūram. Huic legiōnī Caesar et indulserat praecipuē et propter virtūtem cōnfīdēbat maximē.

Confidence returns to the soldiers.

41. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā mīrum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentēs, summaque alacritās et cupiditās bellī

---

1. **Quod**: 'as for the fact that'; with *dīcantur* trans. 'as for the report that they would not,' etc.

2. **nihil**: 'not at all,' 125, *a*.

3. **male rē gestā**: 'because of poor management,' 173. **fortūnam**: 'luck.'

4. **dēfuisse**: sc. *eīs*, the antecedent of *quibuscumque*. The mutiny of soldiers is caused, Caesar says, either by the bad luck or the wrongdoing of the general.

7. **collātūrus esset**: 'he was going to postpone'

8. **repraesentātūrum**: 'he would do at once.'

9. **quam prīmum**: 194; 'as soon as possible.' **utrum . . . an . . . valēret**: 259, *a*.

10. **valēret**: 'was stronger.'

12. **praetōriam cohortem**: 'body-guard.'

13. **legiōnī**: 149, *a*.

41. 15. **mīrum in modum**: 'in a marvelous manner.'

16. **bellī gerendī**: 283.

gerendī innāta est, prīncepsque decima legiō per tribūnōs mīlitum eī grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcisset, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum parātissimam cōnfīrmāvit. Deinde reliquae legiōnēs cum tribūnīs mīlitum et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnibus ēgērunt, utī Caesarī satis facerent; sē neque umquam dubitāsse neque timuisse, neque dē summā bellī suum iūdicium, sed imperātōris esse exīstimāvisse.

Eōrum satisfactiōne acceptā et itinere exquīsītō per Dīviciācum, quod ex Gallīs eī maximam fidem habēbat, ut mīlium amplius quīnquāgintā circuitū locīs apertīs exercitum dūceret, dē quārtā vigiliā, ut dīxerat, profectus est. Septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explōrātōribus certior factus est, Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs mīlibus passuum quattuor et XX abesse.

---

1. **prīnceps**: 'first of all,' 191.

2. **fēcisset**: 'expressed.'

3. **parātissimam**: agreeing with *sē*, which stands for *decimam legiōnem*.

5. **ēgērunt**: 'arranged.' **satis facerent**: 'apologize.'

6. **sē . . . exīstimāvisse**: ind. disc.

7. **summā bellī**: 'the management of the war.' **suum, imperātōris**: pred. with *esse*, the subj. of which is *iūdicium*.

10. **ex Gallīs**: i.e. 'of *all* the Gauls.'

11. **mīlium** (sc. *passuum*): depends on *circuitū*. See 162 and 139. **circuitū**: 'by a detour.' The detour was toward the northwest (see Map opp. p. 155) and was made in order to avoid the mountainous country which lay across the direct line of march toward the point where Ariovistus was said to be; cf. *locīs apertīs*.

12. **dē quārtā vigiliā**: 'in the fourth watch'; see 183, end.

13. **iter nōn intermitteret**: *i.e.* he marched every day.

14. **nostrīs**: sc. *cōpiīs*. **mīlibus**: 168. This march of the Romans northward into an unknown country and against a hostile army appeals strongly to our imagination.

Ariovistus requests an interview.

42. Cognitō Caesaris adventū Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit: quod anteā dē colloquiō postulāsset, id per sē fierī licēre, quoniam propius accessisset, sēque id sine perīculō facere posse exīstimāre. Nōn respuit condiciōnem Caesar, iamque eum ad sānitātem revertī arbitrābātur, cum id, quod anteā petentī dēnegāsset, ultrō pollicērētur, magnamque in spem veniēbat, prō suīs tantīs populīque Rōmānī

Country near Belfort.

Through this Caesar made his detour (*milium amplius quinquaginta*, page 228, line 11) to avoid the wooded and mountainous districts.

---

42. 2. **quod . . . exīstimāre**: ind. disc. **postulāsset**: sc. *Caesar*. **per sē**: 'as far as he was concerned.'

3. **accessisset**: sc. *Caesar*.

4. **condiciōnem**: 'offer.'

5. **ad sānitātem**: 'to reason.'

6. **petentī**: sc. *sibi* (= *Caesarī*). **dēnegāsset, pollicērētur**: sc. *Ariovistus*.

in eum beneficiīs, cognitīs suīs postulātīs fore, utī pertināciā dēsisteret. Diēs colloquiō dictus est ex eō diē quīntus.

Interim saepe cum lēgātī ultrō citrōque inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus postulāvit, nē quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar addūceret: Verērī sē, nē per īnsidiās ab eō circumvenīrētur; uterque cum equitātū venīret; aliā ratiōne sēsē nōn esse ventūrum. Caesar, quod neque colloquium interpositā causā tollī volēbat neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equitātuī committere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equīs Gallīs equitibus dētrāctīs, eō legiōnāriōs mīlitēs legiōnis decimae, cui quam maximē cōnfīdēbat, impōnere, ut praesidium quam amīcissimum, sī quid opus factō esset, habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn irrīdiculē quīdam ex mīlitibus decimae legiōnis dīxit: Plūs, quam pollicitus esset, Caesarem facere; pollicitum, sē in cohortis praetōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum, ad equum rescrībere.

---

1. **fore**: = *futūrum esse*. **utī . . . dēsisteret**: 261.

5. **Verērī . . . ventūrum**: ind. disc. **sē**: Ariovistus. Meaning of *nē* after *Verērī?* 264. **per īnsidiās**: 'treacherously.' **eō**: = *Caesare*.

6. **venīret**: = *veniāmus* of dir. disc., 266. **ratiōne**: 'condition.'

8. **tollī**: 'to be stopped.' **neque**: = *et nōn*.

9. **Gallōrum**: Caesar's cavalry consisted of Gauls and Germans. He could not trust them in an emergency like this. **commodissimum**: 'best'; pred. adj.; the subj. of *esse* is *impōnere*.

10. **eō**: = *in equōs*. Caesar mounted the legionaries of the tenth legion on the horses of his Gallic cavalry.

12. **quid opus factō**: 'any need for action'; *factō* is abl.

13. **nōn irrīdiculē**: 'not without humor,' *i.e.* 'rather humorously,' 289. Caesar could enjoy a joke! The point of the joke lies in the phrase, *ad equum rescrībere*, which may mean 'to mount on horseback' or 'to enroll among the *equitēs* or knights,' a Roman title of rank.

The conference of Caesar and Ariovistus.

43. Plānitiēs erat magna et in eā tumulus terrēnus satis grandis. Hīc locus aequō ferē spatiō ā castrīs Ariovistī et Caesaris aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium vēnērunt. Legiōnem Caesar, quam equīs dēvexerat, passibus ducentīs ab eō tumulō cōnstituit. Item equitēs Ariovistī parī intervāllō cōnstitērunt. Ariovistus, ex equīs ut collo-

The Conference between Caesar and Ariovistus.

An imaginative representation of the famous interview. Ariovistus is speaking.

43. 1. **tumulus**: half way between the Roman and German camps, as Caesar states in the next sentence; it has been identified with the hill of Plettig near the village of Dambach. **terrēnus**: formed of soil, not rock. **satis grandis**: it rises to a height of more than 170 ft. above the surrounding plain.

2. **spatiō**: 168.

3. **ut erat dictum**: 'as had been agreed.'

4. **passibus ducentīs**: what fraction of a mile was this? See p. xxxix.

6. **ex equīs**: 'on horseback.'

querentur et praeter sē dēnōs ut ad colloquium addūcerent, postulāvit.

Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar initiō ōrātiōnis sua senātūsque in eum beneficia commemorāvit, quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amīcus, quod mūnera amplissimē missa; quam rem et paucīs contigisse et prō magnīs hominum officiīs cōnsuēsse tribuī docēbat; illum, cum neque aditum neque causam postulandī iūstam habēret, beneficiō ac līberālitāte suā ac senātūs ea praemia cōnsecūtum.

Docēbat etiam, quam veterēs quamque iūstae causae necessitūdinis ipsīs cum Aeduīs intercēderent, quae senātūs cōnsulta quotiēns quamque honōrifica in eōs facta essent, ut omnī tempore tōtīus Galliae prīncipātum Aeduī tenuissent, prius etiam, quam nostram amīcitiam appetīssent. Populī Rōmānī hanc esse cōnsuētūdinem, ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn modo suī nihil dēperdere, sed grātiā, digni-

---

1. **dēnōs**: 'ten each.'

3. **Ubi eō ventum est**: impersonal use; trans. 'when they reached there.'

4. **eum**: Ariovistus. **beneficia**: with both *sua* and *senātūs*. Ariovistus undoubtedly understood with what political purpose these 'marks of kindness' had been so grandly bestowed on him. **quod**: 'the fact that.'

5. **amīcus**: sc. *appellātus esset*. **missa**: sc. *essent*.

6. **prō**: 'in return for.'

7. **docēbat**: sc. *Caesar*. **illum**: Ariovistus; subj. of *cōnsecūtum* (*esse*). **aditum**: 'right of approach.'

9. **ea praemia**: just referred to (ll. 4 ff.).

11. **necessitūdinis**: 'alliance.' **ipsīs** . . . **intercēderent**: 'existed between them (the Romans) and the Aedui.' On *ipsīs* see 151. For the mood and that of *essent* (l. 12) and *tenuissent* (l. 13) see 259.

13. **ut**: 'how.'

14. **prius etiam, quam**: 'even before.'

15. **cōnsuētūdinem**: 'policy.'

16. **suī** (138) **nihil dēperdere**: 'to lose none of their own power.'

tāte, honōre auctiōrēs velit esse; quod vērō ad amīcitiam populī Rōmānī attulissent, id eīs ēripī quis patī posset?

Postulāvit deinde eadem, quae lēgātīs in mandātīs dederat: nē aut Aeduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum īnferret; obsidēs redderet; sī nūllam partem Germānōrum domum remittere posset, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsīre paterētur.

44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit, dē suīs virtūtibus multa praedicāvit:

Trānsīsse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessītum ā Gallīs; nōn sine magnā spē magnīsque praemiīs domum propinquōsque relīquisse; sēdēs habēre in Galliā ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stīpendium capere iūre bellī, quod victōrēs victīs impōnere

---

1. **velit**: sc. *populus Rōmānus*. **quod**: antecedent is the fol. *id*, which is subj. of *ēripī*.

2. **eīs**: 'from them,' 153.

4. **Postulāvit eadem**: 'he made the same demands,' explained by the fol. clauses, *nē . . . īnferret, redderet, nē . . . paterētur*, 266.

7. **at**: 'at any rate.'

44. 9. **pauca**: obj. of *respondit;* trans. 'briefly.'

10. **multa**: 'a great deal.' The remainder of the chap. quotes Ariovistus's reply in ind. disc. It is most clever and a model of clear thinking and argument. The pupil should ask himself, as he reads on, whether this "*barbarus*" was not reasonable in his point of view.

11. **suā sponte**: 'on his own initiative.' **rogātum, arcessītum**: express cause.

12. **spē, praemiīs**: before translating see 288.

14. **ipsīs, ipsōrum**: the Gauls. **concessās**: 'ceded,' limits *sēdēs*. **obsidēs**: obj. of *sē habēre* to be supplied.

15. **victōrēs victīs**: placed together for rhetorical effect; read the sentence in Latin to appreciate this. For *victīs* see 149, *b*.

cōnsuērint. Nōn sēsē Gallīs, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs ad sē oppugnandum vēnisse ac contrā sē castra habuisse; eās omnēs cōpiās ā sē ūnō proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse. Sī iterum experīrī velint, sē iterum parātum esse dēcertāre; sī pāce ūtī velint, inīquum esse dē stīpendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad id tempus pependerint.

Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī sibi ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrīmentō esse oportēre, atque sē hāc spē petīsse. Sī per populum Rōmānum stīpendium remittātur et dēditīciī subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populī Rōmānī amīcitiam, quam appetierit.

Quod multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id sē suī mūniendī, nōn Galliae impugnandae causā facere; eius reī testimōnium esse, quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit, et quod bellum nōn intulerit, sed dēfenderit. Sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum. Numquam

---

1. **Nōn**: note the emphatic position; 'it was not *he* who had made war on the Gauls, but, etc.' See 149, *b*.

3. **castra habuisse**: 'had taken the field.' **ūnō**: with *proeliō*. See p. 210, l. 15.

4. **velint**: sc. *Gallī*.

5. **dēcertāre**: with *parātum*. **ūtī**: 'have,' 'enjoy'.

6. **recūsāre**: subj. of *esse; inīquum* is pred. adj. **suā voluntāte**: this is hardly true.

8. **sibi . . . dētrīmentō**: 156 and note. Do not trans. literally.

9. **hāc spē**: hope of what?

10. **per**: 'through the efforts of.'

13. **Quod**: 'as to the fact that,' but trans. with *trādūcat*, 'as to his bringing over.'

14. **suī mūniendī**: with *causā* also. See 282 and note.

15. **quod . . . vēnerit, quod . . . dēfenderit**: these clauses are the subj. of *esse*, 257. Trans. *quod* by 'that.' **nisi rogātus**: 'without being asked.'

16. **dēfenderit**: 'warded off' war.

ante hōc tempus exercitum populī Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae fīnibus ēgressum. Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās possessiōnēs venīret? Prōvinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sīcut illam nostram. Ut ipsī concēdī nōn oportēret, sī in nostrōs fīnēs impetum faceret, sīc item nōs esse inīquōs, quod in suō iūre sē interpellārēmus.

Quod frātrēs Aeduōs appellātōs dīceret, nōn sē tam barbarum neque tam imperītum esse rērum, ut nōn scīret, neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Aeduōs Rōmānīs auxilium tulisse, neque ipsōs in hīs contentiōnibus, quās Aeduī sēcum et cum Sēquanīs habuissent, auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse.

Dēbēre sē suspicārī, simulātā Caesarem amīcitiā, quod exercitum in Galliā habeat, suī opprimendī causā habēre. Quī nisi dēcēdat atque exercitum dēdūcat ex hīs regi-

---

2. **fīnibus**: 177 and 178. **Quid sibi vellet**: 'What did he (Caesar) mean? 267.

3. **venīret**: 267. **hanc . . . Galliam**: 'this part of Gaul' around them; subj. of *esse*.

4. **illam**: the *Prōvincia Rōmāna*. **nostram**: = *Rōmānam*. **Ut**: 'as.' **ipsī**: Ariovistus, with *concēdī*, 149, *a*. **concēdī . . . oportēret**: 'no favor ought to be shown.' How lit.?

5. **impetum**: 'raid.' **nōs**, and fol.: 'we were acting unfairly in blocking him'; *nōs* = *Rōmānōs*.

7. **Quod**: see note on *Quod* above, p. 234, l. 13. **frātrēs**: pred.

8. **rērum**: 143.

9. **proximō**: three years before.

10. **tulisse, ūsōs esse**: ind. disc. depending on *scīret* (l. 8). **ipsōs**: = *Aeduōs*.

13. **Dēbēre . . . suspicārī**: 'he could not help suspecting.' **simulātā**: Ariovistus did not mince matters. **Caesarem**: separates the two parts of the abl. abs. constr.

14. **suī opprimendī**: with *causā*, expressing the purpose of *habēre*. See 282 and note.

15. **Quī**: 'and if he (Caesar).'

ōnibus, sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō, sed hoste habitūrum. Quod sī eum interfēcerit, multīs sēsē nōbilibus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum (id sē ab ipsīs per eōrum nūntiōs compertum habēre), quōrum omnium grātiam atque amīcitiam eius morte redimere posset. Quod sī dēcessisset et līberam possessiōnem Galliae sibi trādidisset, magnō sē illum praemiō remūnerātūrum et, quaecumque bella gerī vellet, sine ūllō eius labōre et perīculō cōnfectūrum.

45. Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt, quā rē negōtiō dēsistere nōn posset:

Neque suam neque populī Rōmānī cōnsuētudinem patī, utī optimē merentēs sociōs dēsereret, neque sē iūdicāre, Galliam potius esse Ariovistī quam populī Rōmānī. Bellō superātōs esse Arvernōs et Rutēnōs ab Quīntō Fabiō

---

1. **nōn**: only with *prō amīcō*. **habitūrum**: 'regard.'

2. **Quod sī**: 'and if.' **eum**: Caesar.

3. **grātum esse factūrum**: 'would do a favor.' Ariovistus is courageous and outspoken. **id**: namely, *grātum esse factūrum*.

4. **ipsīs**: *nōbilibus prīncipibusque*, to which *eōrum* likewise refers. **compertum habēre**: = *comperisse*, 281.

5. **eius**: = *Caesaris*. No doubt what Ariovistus says here was true.

6. **dēcessisset, trādidisset**: what tense of dir. disc.? The subj. is *Caesar* to be supplied.

7. **remūnerātūrum**: this was said to the great Caesar! Let the pupil imagine this striking historical scene of a famous Roman general and a barbarian German king facing each other in conference on the lonely hill in modern Alsace. See the illustration, p. 231.

45. 10. **in eam sententiam**: 'to this effect.' The gist of what he said was to show *quā rē . . . posset*.

11. **negōtiō**: 158. *Neque suam* to the end of the chap. is ind. disc.

12. **suam**: sc. *cōnsuētūdinem* ('policy').

13. **utī . . . dēsereret**: 260. **optimē merentēs**: 'most deserving.'

14. **Ariovistī, populī Rōmānī**: pred. gen. of possession, 135, *a*.

15. **superātōs esse**: in 121 B.C. How long before this was it?

Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvisset neque in prōvinciam redēgisset neque stīpendium imposuisset. Quod sī antīquissimum quodque tempus spectārī oportēret, populī Rōmānī iūstissimum esse in Galliā imperium; sī iūdicium senātūs observārī oportēret, līberam dēbēre esse Galliam, quam bellō victam suīs lēgibus ūtī voluisset.

Treachery of the Germans.

46. Dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est, equitēs Ariovistī propius tumulum accēdere et ad nostrōs adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conicere. Caesar loquendī fīnem facit sēque ad suōs recēpit suīsque imperāvit, nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs rēicerent. Nam etsī sine ūllō perīculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equitātū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat, ut pulsīs hostibus dīcī posset, eōs ab sē per fidem in colloquiō circumventōs. Posteā quam in vulgus mīlitum ēlā-

1. **quibus**: 149, *a*. With *redēgisset* supply *quōs* (= *Arvernōs et Rutēnōs*) and with *imposuisset* supply *quibus*.

2. **Quod sī . . . oportēret**: *i.e.* if one should consider the earliest occupation of Gaul in determining who had rightful possession. On *antīquissimum quodque tempus* see 203.

6. **suīs lēgibus ūtī**: 'to be independent.' How lit.? **voluisset**: sc. *senātus*.

46. 7. **geruntur**: explain the tense, 236.

8. **propius**: used like a prep., 'nearer' the hill. The Germans were showing bad faith.

11. **quod**: meaning after *nē*? It was important that the Romans should not retaliate.

12. **legiōnis**: 'to the legion,' 137. **cum equitātū**: with *proelium*.

13. **committendum** (*esse*): lit., 'that it ought to be allowed,' *i.e.* 'that occasion ought to be given.'

14. **ut . . . posset**: the clause is subj. of *committendum*. **pulsīs hostibus**: trans. by a conditional clause, 173. **per fidem**: 'when he had given his word.'

tum est, quā arrogantiā in colloquiō Ariovistus ūsus omnī Galliā Rōmānīs interdīxisset, impetumque ut in nostrōs eius equitēs fēcissent, eaque rēs colloquium ut dirēmisset, multō maior alacritās studiumque pugnandī maius exercituī iniectum est.

Ariovistus detains two envoys of Caesar.

47. Bīduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mittit: Velle sē dē hīs rēbus, quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque perfectae essent, agere cum eō; utī aut iterum colloquiō diem cōnstitueret aut, sī id minus vellet, ē suīs lēgātīs aliquem ad sē mitteret.

Colloquendī Caesarī causa vīsa nōn est, et eō magis, quod prīdiē eius diēī Germānī retinērī nōn potuerant, quīn in nostrōs tēla conicerent. Lēgātum ē suīs sēsē magnō cum perīculō ad eum missūrum et hominibus ferīs obiectūrum exīstimābat. Commodissimum vīsum est Gaium Valerium

---

1. **arrogantiā**: with *ūsus*. **Galliā**: 158.

2. **Rōmānīs**: 151. With *interdīxisset* trans. 'had forbidden the Romans to be in Gaul at all.' **interdīxisset, fēcissent, dirēmisset**: indirect questions, 259. **ut** (occurring twice): 'how.'

3. **eius**: = *Ariovistī*.

4. **multō**: 168. **maius**: with *studium*. **exercituī**: 149, *b*.

47. 6. **Bīduō post**: 'on the following day,' 168.

7. **Velle . . . mitteret**: ind. disc. **coeptae**: sc. *essent*. **neque**: = *et nōn*.

8. **eō**: = *Caesare*. **utī . . . cōnstitueret, mitteret**: 266; supply *Caesar* as subj.

9. **minus**: = *nōn*.

11. **Colloquendī . . . est**: 'there seemed to Caesar to be no good reason for a conference.' **eō**: 165; looks forward to the *quod* clause.

12. **quīn . . . conicerent**: 262.

13. **magnō cum perīculō**: *magnō* is in an emphatic position, 'he thought that it would be a *great* risk for him to send, etc.'

14. **obiectūrum**: 'expose to the mercy of.'

15. **Commodissimum**: 'best,' a pred. adj.

Procillum, C. Valerī Cabūrī fīlium, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte adulēscentem, cuius pater ā Gaiō Valeriō Flaccō cīvitāte dōnātus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, quā multā iam Ariovistus longinquā cōnsuētūdine ūtēbātur, et quod in eō peccandī Germānīs causa nōn esset, ad eum mittere, et ūnā Mārcum Metium, quī hospitiō Ariovistī ūtēbātur. Hīs mandāvit, ut, quae dīceret Ariovistus, cognōscerent et ad sē referrent. Quōs cum apud sē in castrīs Ariovistus cōnspexisset, exercitū suō praesente conclāmāvit: Quid ad sē venīrent? an speculandī causā? Cōnantēs dīcere prohibuit et in catēnās coniēcit.

---

1. **Procillum**: obj. of mittere (l. 6). **virtūte, hūmānitāte**: 170.

2. **Flaccō**: a former governor of Gaul. When he used his influence to have *Cabūrus* made a Roman citizen, the latter, following the customary procedure, took the *praenomen* and *nomen* of his patron and became *C. Valerius Cabūrus.*

3. **linguae Gallicae scientiam**: this made him invaluable as an interpreter.

4. **quā** (*linguā*) . . . **ūtēbātur**: Ariovistus had learned to speak Celtic and it was probably in this language that his conference with Caesar was conducted. **multā**: limits *quā* (*linguā*), but trans. as an adv., 'well,' 'fluently.'

5. **cōnsuētūdine**: 165 **quod**: 'because.' **in eō**: 'in his case.' **peccandī**: with *causa.* **Germānīs**: 154. The Germans would have no reason to harm Procillus, because he was of Gallic, not of Roman, birth.

6. **esset**: why subjunctive? 241. **mittere**: subj. of *vīsum est* (p. 238, l. 15). **ūnā**: adv.

7. **hospitiō . . . ūtēbātur**: 'was on friendly terms with Ariovistus.'

10. **praesente**: so that the German soldiers might hear and believe that these men were spies. **Quid . . . venīrent**: 267. **speculandī causā**: sc. *venīrent.* See 282 and note.

11. **Cōnantēs**: sc. *eōs.*

Ariovistus moves nearer Caesar; the German cavalry.

48. Eōdem diē castra prōmōvit et mīlibus passuum sex ā Caesaris castrīs sub monte cōnsēdit. Postrīdiē eius diēī praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et mīlibus passuum duōbus ultrā eum castra fēcit eō cōnsiliō, utī frūmentō commeātūque, quī ex Sēquanīs et Aeduīs supportārētur, Caesarem interclūderet. Ex eō diē diēs continuōs quīnque Caesar prō castrīs suās cōpiās prōdūxit et aciem īnstrūctam habuit, ut, sī vellet Ariovistus proeliō contendere, eī potestās nōn deesset.

Ariovistus hīs omnibus diēbus exercitum castrīs continuit, equestrī proeliō cotīdiē contendit. Genus hōc erat pugnae, quō sē Germānī exercuerant. Equitum mīlia erant sex, totidem numerō peditēs velōcissimī ac fortissimī, quōs

---

48. 1. **prōmōvit**: sc. *Ariovistus*.

2. **monte**: the Vosges mountains (Latin, *Vosegus*) that bound the Rhine Valley on the west. See Map.

3. **praeter**: 'past.' Ariovistus marched past on the higher ground near the mountain and for that reason Caesar could not prevent him.

4. **ultrā castra fēcit**: toward the southwest of the Roman camp, which would cut Caesar off from his base of supplies. The German camp was near the modern village of Zellenberg. See Plan. **eō cōnsiliō, utī interclūderet**: 'with the intention of cutting off.' How lit.? See 260, *a*.

5. **supportārētur**: 272.

6. **diēs**: 130.

7. **castrīs**: Caesar's camp was a little north of the modern village of Ostheim. See Plan. **aciem . . . habuit**: 'kept them in line formation ready to fight.'

11. **equestrī proeliō**: cavalry skirmishes frequently preceded the general engagement. **hōc**: trans. as pred.; 'as follows.'

13. **numerō**: 171, but trans. with *totidem peditēs*, 'the same number of infantry.' **quōs singulī singulōs**: 'from which (*i.e.* the infantry) each (cavalryman) had chosen one.'

ex omnī cōpiā singulī singulōs suae salūtis causā dēlēgerant; cum hīs in proeliīs versābantur. Ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant; hī, sī quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant, sī quī, graviōre vulnere acceptō, equō dēciderat, circumsistēbant; sī quō erat longius prōdeundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne celeritās, ut iubīs equōrum sublevātī cursum adaequārent.

A Roman General addressing his Army.

The general, attended by his staff, wears the *paludamentum*. Observe the eagle, or standard, the *signa*, the shields, and the crests of the soldiers' helmets.

---

1. **cōpiā**: 'host.'

2. **eōs**: = *equitēs*.

3. **hī**: = *peditēs*. **sī . . . dūrius**: 'if there was any difficulty.' On *dūrius* (nom. case) see 193. **concurrēbant**: 'they rallied' to their assistance. **quī**: = *quis*.

4. **graviōre**: 193. **equō**: 178.

5. **quō**: 'to any place.' **longius, celerius**: 193. **recipiendum**: 'obliged to retreat.'

6. **ut . . . adaequārent**: *i.e.* they clung to the horses' manes and so kept up with their speed.

7. **sublevātī**: has a reflexive or middle meaning, 'supported themselves.'

Caesar builds another camp beyond Ariovistus.

49. Ubi eum castrīs sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum, quō in locō Germānī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sexcentōs ab hīs, castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit aciēque triplicī īnstrūctā ad eum locum vēnit. Prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iussit. Hīc locus ab hoste circiter passūs sexcentōs, utī dictum est, aberat. Eō circiter hominum numerō sēdecim mīlia expedīta cum omnī equitātū Ariovistus mīsit, quae cōpiae nostrōs perterrērent et mūnītiōne prohibērent. Nihilō sētius Caesar, ut ante cōnstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus perficere iussit. Mūnītīs castrīs, duās ibi legiōnēs relīquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra maiōra redūxit.

---

49. 1. **eum** : = *Ariovistum*, subj. of *tenēre*. **nē . . . prohibērētur** : expresses the purpose of *dēlēgit* and *vēnit* later in the sentence.

2. **ultrā eum locum** : about a half-mile (*passūs sexcentōs*) to the south of the German camp. By fortifying this position Caesar was able to checkmate Ariovistus and reopen communication with his supplies.

4. **castrīs** : 157 ; marked C on the Plan. **aciē triplicī** : for an explanation of this line formation see p. xli.

5. **in armīs** : 'under arms' ; Caesar did not expect to secure this position without opposition from Ariovistus.

7. **Eō** : = *ad eum locum*.

8. **expedīta** : trans. with *hominum ;* '16,000 light-armed troops.'

9. **quae cōpiae** : = *ut eae cōpiae*, 230.

10. **Nihilō sētius** : 'Nevertheless,' 168. **ut** : meaning with the indic. ?

11. **duās** : i.e. *prīmam et secundam aciem*. **opus** : fortifying the new camp.

13. **castra maiōra** : Caesar's main camp, marked A on the Plan. The new camp was called the *castra minōra*.

The Germans avoid battle.

50. Proximō diē īnstitūtō suō Caesar ē castrīs utrīsque cōpiās suās ēdūxit paulumque ā maiōribus castrīs prōgressus aciem īnstrūxit, hostibus pugnandī potestātem fēcit. Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdīre intellēxit, circiter merīdiem exercitum in castra redūxit. Tum dēmum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum, quae castra minōra oppugnāret, mīsit. Ācriter utrimque ūsque ad vesperum pugnātum est. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus, multīs et illātīs et acceptīs vulneribus, in castra redūxit.

Cum ex captīvīs quaereret Caesar, quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō nōn dēcertāret, hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germānōs ea cōnsuētūdō esset, ut mātrēs familiae eōrum sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus dēclārārent, utrum proelium committī ex ūsū esset necne; eās ita dīcere, nōn esse

---

50. 1. **īnstitūtō suō**: 'according to his custom.'

3. **potestātem**: 'opportunity.'

4. **nē . . . quidem**: see note on these words, p. 185, l. 5.

5. **quae . . . oppugnāret**: 230. Do not trans. literally. **castra minōra**: the new and smaller camp to the south.

7. **Ācriter . . . pugnātum est**: before translating, see 204. **ūsque ad**: 'up until.' **vesperum**: 'late afternoon.' What Eng. word is derived from it?

11. **proeliō dēcertāret**: 'fight it out in battle,' *i.e.* 'fight a decisive battle.' **quod . . . esset**: in apposition with **causam**, 'namely, that, etc.'

12. **apud**: 'among.' **ut . . . dēclārārent**: explains *ea cōnsuētūdō*; 261.

13. **sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus**: 'by their lots and divinations.' **utrum . . . necne**: 259, *a*.

14. **ex ūsū**: 'of advantage.' **necne**: 'or not.' **dīcere**: *i.e.* on this particular occasion. **esse**: the subject is *Germānōs superāre*, but begin the trans. with 'it.'

fās Germānōs superāre, sī ante novam lūnam proeliō contendissent.

Caesar forces a battle and the Germans are routed.

51. Postrīdiē eius diēī Caesar praesidiō utrīsque castrīs, quod satis esse vīsum est, relīquit, omnēs ālāriōs in cōnspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōnstituit, quod minus multitūdine mīlitum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat, ut ad speciem ālāriīs ūterētur; ipse triplicī īnstrūctā aciē ūsque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum dēmum necessāriō Germānī suās cōpiās castrīs ēdūxērunt generātimque cōnstituērunt paribus intervāllīs, Harūdēs, Marcomanōs, Tribocēs, Vangionēs, Nemetēs, Sedusiōs, Suēbōs, omnemque aciem suam raedīs et carrīs circumde-

---

1. **ante novam lūnam**: we still have superstitious ideas connected with the new moon. For example, one should see the new moon first over the right shoulder; again, there are people who believe that certain crops should be planted only when the moon is new. The exact day of this battle can be very nearly determined, for the new moon appeared in 58 B.C. on September 18.

51. 3. **praesidiō**: 156.

4. **relīquit**: sc. *id* (*praesidium*) as the obj., and also antecedent of *quod*. **ālāriōs**: 'auxiliary troops,' so named because they were posted on the wings (*ālae*) of the army.

5. **quod . . . valēbat**: Caesar's regular infantry was not very strong numerically 'in comparison with' (*prō*) the enemy.

7. **ad speciem**: 'to make a show' and so to call attention away from the comparatively small number of his regular troops. **triplicī aciē**: see p. xli.

8. **ūsque ad**: 'clear up to.'

10. **intervāllīs**: 169. **Harūdēs**, etc.: find the location of these peoples on the Map.

12. **raedīs et carrīs**: 148, *a*. The *raeda* was a large, four-wheeled wagon, probably with a covered top, used by people traveling long

BATTLE BETWEEN CAESAR AND ARIOVISTUS

Lib. I, 42–54 PLAN III

SCALE OF ROMAN MILES

0 1 2 3

SCALE OF ENGLISH MILES

0 1 2 3

EXPLANATION.

a Main camp of Caesar (*p. 240, 2*).
b Camp of Ariovistus (*p. 240, 4*).
c Caesar's small camp (*p. 242, 6*).
dd The Six Legions in line of battle, in the order assigned them by Colonel Stoffel (*p. 244, 8*).
e The Auxiliaries in line of battle (*p. 244, 7*).
ff The line of battle of the Germans (*p. 244, 9*)
gg Caesar's Cavalry in two detachments.
h The German Cavalry.
iii Wagons of the Germans (*p. 244, 12*).

Romans Germans

dērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. Eō mulierēs imposuērunt, quae in proelium proficīscentēs passīs manibus flentēs implōrābant, nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent.

52. Caesar singulīs legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et quaestōrem praefēcit, utī eōs testēs suae quisque virtūtis habēret; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē fīrmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commīsit. Ita nostrī ācriter in hostēs signō datō impetum fēcērunt, itaque hostēs repente celeriterque prōcurrērunt, ut spatium pīla in hostēs coniciendī nōn darētur. Rēiectīs pīlīs comminus gladiīs pugnātum est. At Germānī celeriter ex cōnsuētūdine suā phalange factā impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Repertī sunt complūrēs nostrī, quī in phalanga īnsilīrent et scūta manibus revellerent et dēsuper vulnerārent. Cum hostium

---

distances. The *carrus* was a two-wheeled cart, on which baggage or merchandise could be carried.

1. **Eō** : = *in raedās et carrōs.*

2. **proficīscentēs** : sc. *eōs* (= *mīlitēs*).

3. **flentēs** : modifies the subj. of *implōrābant.*

52. 4. **Caesar . . . praefēcit** : 'Caesar put individual lieutenants and his quaestor each in command of a legion,' *i.e.* each of five *legati* was in command of a legion and the one quaestor was in command of a sixth legion.

5. **testēs** : pred. **quisque** : sc. *mīles.*

6. **eam partem** : this would be the enemy's left wing.

9. **spatium** : = *tempus.* **pīla** : obj. of *coniciendī*, which depends on *spatium.*

10. **Rēiectīs pīlīs** : the javelins could be hurled with effect only when the enemy was 40 to 60 feet away; but the Germans came on with such a rush that the Romans threw aside javelins and drew their swords, which were dangerous weapons in a hand-to-hand encounter.

12. **phalange** : see note on this word, p. 199, l. 4.

13. **quī . . . īnsilīrent, . . . vulnerārent** : 233. This struggle proves the efficiency of the Roman soldier. Active as wild animals,

aciēs ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam conversa esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitūdine suōrum nostram aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset Pūblius Crassus adulēscēns, quī equitātuī praeerat, quod expedītior erat quam eī, quī inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō mīsit.

53. Ita proelium restitūtum est, atque omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt neque prius fugere dēstitērunt, quam ad flūmen Rhēnum, mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnquāgintā, pervēnērunt. Ibi perpaucī aut vīribus cōnfīsī trānāre contendērunt aut lintribus inventīs sibi salūtem repperērunt. In hīs fuit Ariovistus, quī nāviculam dēligātam ad rīpam nactus eā profūgit; reliquōs omnēs cōnsecūtī equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt.

Duae fuērunt Ariovistī uxōrēs, ūna Suēba nātiōne, quam domō sēcum dūxerat, altera Nōrica, rēgis Vocciōnis soror, quam in Galliā dūxerat, ā frātre missam; utraeque in eā fugā

---

some of them leaped up on the shields that were upheld by the stout Germans in the phalanx formation, tore them apart, and stabbed the enemy from above. How did the phalanx formation of the Helvetians succeed (see p. 199, l. 9)?

1. **ā sinistrō cornū**: their weak place. **pulsa**: sc. *essent;* 'beaten.'

2. **ā dextrō cornū**: opposite the Roman left. See the Plan.

3. **Crassus**: this was the son of the triumvir.

4. **expedītior**: 'freer to observe.'

6. **subsidiō**: 156 and note.

53. 8. **prius**: with *quam*, 'before.'

10. **perpaucī**: *per-* intensifies the *paucī*.

13. **eā**: sc. *nāviculā*. **profūgit**: Ariovistus apparently got away successfully. He is never heard of again.

15. **ūna, altera**: sc. *uxor*. **nātiōne**: 171.

16. **dūxerat**: 'had brought.'

17. **dūxerat**: sc. *in mātrimōnium*, 'had married.' **utraeque**: sc. *uxōrēs*.

periērunt. Duae fīliae; hārum altera occīsa, altera capta est.

C. Valerius Procillus, cum ā cūstōdibus in fugā trīnīs catēnīs vinctus traherētur, in ipsum Caesarem hostēs equitātū īnsequentem incidit. Quae quidem rēs Caesarī nōn minōrem quam ipsa victōria voluptātem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et hospitem, ēreptum ē manibus hostium, sibi restitūtum vidēbat, neque eius calamitāte dē tantā voluptāte et grātulātiōne quicquam fortūna dēminuerat. Is sē praesente dē sē ter sortibus cōnsultum dīcēbat, utrum īgnī statim necārētur an in aliud tempus reservārētur; sortium beneficiō sē esse incolumem. Item M. Metius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

Winter quarters.

54. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō Suēbī, quī ad rīpās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertī coepērunt; quōs ubi, quī proximī Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs sēnsērunt, īnsecūtī magnum ex hīs numerum occīdērunt.

---

1. **fīliae**: sc. *erant*.

3. **Procillus**: see p. 239, l. 1.

4. **hostēs**: obj. of *īnsequentem*. **Quae . . . attulit**: shows the human side of Caesar. He no doubt was sincere in saying this.

7. **honestissimum**: 'most honorable.'

9. **eius**: = *Procillī* Bad luck in the death (*calamitās*) of his friend had not lessened Caesar's joy in his victory.

10. **Is**: Procillus. **sē praesente**: 'in his own presence.'

11. **sortibus cōnsultum** (sc. *esse*): 'that the lots had been cast.' **utrum**: '(to determine) whether.'

54. 16. **domum**: 132.

17. **quī**: antecedent is *eī* to be supplied as subj. of *sēnserunt*. **proximī Rhēnum**: 'nearest the Rhine.' The adj. is used with the force of a prep. **perterritōs** (sc. *esse*): the subj. is *quōs* (= *et eōs*).

Caesar, ūnā aestāte duōbus maximīs bellīs cōnfectīs, mātūrius paulō, quam tempus annī postulābat, in hīberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit; hībernīs Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

2. **hīberna**: see p. xxxix.

3. **hībernīs**: 149, *b*.

4. **in citeriōrem Galliam**: he perhaps went to Aquileia, his official headquarters. **ad conventūs agendōs**: 'to hold court,' one of the governor's duties being to administer justice in his province.

BOOK II

The Campaign against the Belgae

The Belgae rise against Rome.

1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, ita utī suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs afferēbantur, litterīsque item Labiēnī certior fīēbat, omnēs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dīxerāmus, contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare. Coniū- 5

In the first year of the Gallic War Caesar's operations were confined to the southeastern part of Gaul, in which he gained a foothold and where his army spent the winter, probably at Vesontio. During the second year, the events of which are described in Book II, the Roman army was engaged in vigorous campaigns against the Belgae and their allies. The country of the Belgae (see the Map) corresponds in general to modern Belgium, but on the southwest it extended beyond Belgium's present border.

1. 1. **esset Caesar . . . Galliā**: Caesar spent the winter performing administrative duties in his province, 235. **suprā**: see the end of Book I. What is the meaning of *utī* with the indic.?

2. **dēmōnstrāvimus**: as the author, Caesar speaks of himself in the 1st pers. pl. (= the editorial "we"). **afferēbantur, fīēbat**: Why the imperf. tense? 209. **litterīs**: 'dispatches.'

3. **Labiēnī**: 'from Labienus'; 136. Labienus (see p. 248, l. 3) was in command of the winter camp. **certior fīēbat**: 'he was informed.' How lit.? See 105. **quam**: refers to *Belgās* but it is put in the sing. on account of *partem*.

4. **dīxerāmus**: Caesar said this in the first chap. of Book I (p. 155, l. 2).

5. **inter sē dare**: 'exchange hostages.' What was the purpose of exchanging hostages? **coniūrāre, dare, esse**: ind. disc. depending on the idea of saying contained in *certior fīēbat*. Caesar calls the

randī hās esse causās: prīmum, quod verērentur, nē omnī pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde, quod ab nōn nūllīs Gallīs sollicitārentur, partim quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferēbant, partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs imperiīs studēbant; ab nōn nūllīs etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque eīs, quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant, vulgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōnsequī poterant.

Caesar marches toward their territory.

2. Hīs nūntiīs litterīsque commōtus, Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōnscrīpsit et initā aestāte,

---

action of the Belgae a "conspiracy" against Rome, but from their point of view they were patriotically uniting to drive out a common enemy.

1. **verērentur**: sc. *Belgae*. **nē . . . addūcerētur**: 264. **omnī . . . Galliā**: 173. *Gallia* here means Celtic Gaul.

2. **deinde**: 'in the second place.'

3. **partim**: sc. *ab eīs*. **quī**: subj. of *ferēbant*. **ut**: see note on *utī* above.

6. **molestē ferēbant**: 'were angry.' How lit.? **partim**: sc. *ab eīs*. **mōbilitāte et levitāte**: 165. These qualities are characteristic of the Gauls; they were unstable and volatile.

7. **novīs imperiīs**: 'a change of government,' 149, *a*. **studēbant**: 'were eager for.' **ab nōn nūllīs**: sc. *sollicitārentur*.

8. **ā potentiōribus atque eīs**: with *occupābantur*. **quī . . . habēbant**: 'who had the means of hiring mercenaries (lit., men),' 283.

9. **rēgna**: 'royal authority.'

10. **imperiō**: 169.

2. 11. **duās legiōnēs novās**: numbered XIII and XIV. Caesar now had eight legions, or about 30,000 legionary soldiers.

12. **initā aestāte**: 'at the beginning of summer'; 173.

in ulteriōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret, Quīntum Pedium lēgātum mīsit. Ipse, cum prīmum pābulī cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Dat negōtium Senonibus reliquīsque Gallīs quī fīnitimī Belgīs erant, utī ea, quae apud eōs gerantur, cognōscant sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī cōnstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt, manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō dubitandum nōn exīstimāvit, quīn ad eōs proficīscerētur. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā castra movet diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad fīnēs Belgārum pervēnit.

The friendly Remi.

3. Eō cum dē improvīsō celeriusque omnī opīniōne vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt, ad eum

---

1. **in ulteriōrem Galliam**: with *dēdūceret*, the obj. of which is *eās* to be supplied (= *duās legiōnēs*). On the mood see 230; do not trans. literally.

2. **cum prīmum . . . inciperet**: 235. Trans. *cum prīmum*, 'as soon as.' **pābulī cōpia**: in the early spring when grass began to be abundant for horses and draft animals.

3. **Senonibus, Gallīs**: 148. These peoples were outwardly friendly to the Romans.

4. **Belgīs**: 157. **utī cognōscant, . . . faciant**: 'to find out, . . . and inform him'; 260. **eōs** = *Belgās.*

6. **cōnstanter**: 'uniformly.'

7. **dubitandum**: sc. *esse sibi.*

8. **quīn . . . proficīscerētur**: 263; 'did not think that he should hesitate about starting.'

9. **diēbus**: 182.

3. 11. **Eō**: = *ad fīnēs Belgārum.* **dē improvīsō**: 'unexpectedly'; Deriv. of *improvīsō?* **celerius . . . opīniōne**: 'more quickly than anyone would have supposed (that he could).' What is the lit. trans.? 161.

12. **Rēmī**: a state loyal to the Romans. The famous cathedral city of Rheims (a city named from the Remi) is located on the site of their ancient capital. **Galliae**: 157. **ex Belgīs**: 138, *a.*

lēgātōs Iccium et Andecumborium, prīmōs cīvitātis, mīsērunt, quī dīcerent, sē suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestātem populī Rōmānī permittere, neque sē cum Belgīs reliquīs cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterīsque rēbus iuvāre; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque, quī cis Rhēnum incolant, sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem, ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque suōs, quī eōdem iūre et īsdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsīs habeant, dēterrēre potuerint, quīn cum hīs cōnsentīrent.

---

2. **quī dīcerent**: 230. Do not trans. literally. The remainder of the chap. is in ind. disc. depending on *dīcerent*. **sē suaque omnia**: 'themselves and all their possessions,' obj. of *permittere*, the subj. of which is *sē* to be supplied. **fidem**: 'protection.'

3. **neque**: = *et nōn*.

4. **coniūrāsse**: *coniūrāvisse*.

5. **dare** and the three fol. infinitives: depend on *parātōs esse*, 'are ready to give, to carry out, etc.'

6. **recipere, iuvāre**: sc. *eum* (= *Caesarem*) as obj.

7. **reliquōs**: all besides the Remi. **Germānōs**: again we hear of the Germans. They threatened all the western bank of the Rhine.

8. **cis**: 'on this (*i.e.* the west) side of'; from the point of view of the Roman army.

9. **furōrem**: subj. of *esse*. **Suessiōnēs**: obj. of *dēterrēre* (l. 12).

10. **suōs**: of the Remi. **iūre, lēgibus**: 163, *a*. **iūre**: 'right'; the principles of right as distinguished from *lēgēs*, the statutes or enacted 'laws.' **īsdem**: = *eīsdem*; 81.

11. **ūtantur**: 'enjoy,' 'have.'

12. **ipsīs**: = *Rēmīs*. **potuerint**: 232. **quīn . . . cōnsentīrent**: 262.

The origin of the Belgae; their forces and their allies.

4. Cum ab hīs quaereret, quae cīvitātēs quantaeque in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sīc reperiēbat:

Plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ā Germānīs Rhēnumque antīquitus trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdisse, Gallōsque, quī ea loca incolerent, expulisse, sōlōsque esse, quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā omnī Galliā vexātā Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs fīnēs ingredī prohibuerint; quā ex rē fierī, utī eārum rērum memoriā magnam sibi auctōritātem magnōsque spīritūs in rē mīlitārī sūmerent.

Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explōrāta Rēmī dīcēbant, propterea quod, propinquitātibus affīnitātibusque coniūnctī, quantam quisque multitūdinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit, cognōverint.

---

4. 1. **ab hīs**: = *ab Rēmīs*. **quaereret**: sc. *Caesar*.

2. **essent, possent**: 259. **quid**: 125, *a*; 'what strength they had.' **sīc**: 'the following.'

3. **Plērōsque . . . sūmerent**: ind. disc. **ā Germānīs**: 159, *a*. **Rhēnum**: with *trāductōs*, 129. The Belgae, as the Belgians of to-day, probably had both Celtic and Germanic blood in their veins.

4. **antīquitus**: 71.

5. **Gallōs**: obj. of *expulisse*. **sōlōs**: 'the only people.'

6. **memoriā**: 182. **vexātā**: by the incursions of the Germans (the Teutoni and Cimbri), 173. **Teutonōs . . . prohibuerint**: 'had kept the Teutoni and Cimbri from invading their country.' See note to p. 225, l. 3.

7. **suōs**: = *Belgārum*. On the mood of *prohibuerint* see 233.

8. **memoriā**: 165.

9. **magnōs spīritūs**: 'high airs.' **in rē mīlitārī**: 'in the science of war.' **sūmerent**: 'assumed,' 261.

10. **habēre explōrāta**: = *explōrāvisse*, 281.

11. **propinquitātibus affīnitātibusque**: 'by ties of blood-relationship and of intermarriage.'

12. **quisque**: each state (through its representative).

Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valēre; hōs posse cōnficere armāta mīlia centum, pollicitōs ex eō numerō ēlēcta sexāgintā, tōtīusque bellī imperium sibi postulāre. Suessiōnēs suōs esse fīnitimōs; fīnēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā Dīviciācum, tōtīus Galliae potentissimum, quī cum magnae partis hārum regiōnum, tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit; nunc esse rēgem Galbam; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque suam summam tōtīus bellī omnium voluntāte dēferrī; oppida habēre numerō XII, pollicērī mīlia armāta quīnquāgintā; totidem Nerviōs, quī maximē ferī inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint; quīndecim mīlia Atrebātēs, Ambiānōs decem mīlia, Morinōs XXV mīlia, Menapiōs VII mīlia, Caletōs X mīlia, Veliocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem, Aduatucōs decem et novem mīlia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs,

---

1. **Plūrimum . . . valēre**: see note on these words, p. 187, l. 3. Ind. disc. from this point to the end of the chap. **Bellovacōs**: a brave and turbulent race.

2. **cōnficere**: 'muster.'

3. **ēlēcta**: 'picked men.' **tōtīus**: what case? 49.

4. **imperium**: 'general management.' **suōs**: of the Remi.

6. **nostrā**: *i.e.* of those still living. **Dīviciācum**: of course not the same as the Aeduan (p. 162, l. 1).

7. **cum . . . tum**: 'not only . . . but also.' **partis**: depends on *imperium*.

8. **etiam**: 'even.' **nunc**: 'at the present time.'

10. **summam**: a noun, 'the chief command.'

11. **habēre**: sc. *Suessiōnēs*. **numerō**: 171.

12. **totidem**: *i.e. mīlia armāta quīnquāgintā*. **Nerviōs**: sc. *pollicērī*.

13. **Atrebātēs**: and the fol. proper names: sc. *pollicērī*. Find the location of these peoples on the Map opp. p. 155.

15. **totidem**: *i.e. X mīlia*.

Caerōsōs, Caemanōs, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrārī ad XL mīlia.

Caesar encamps north of the Axona river.

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus līberāliterque ōrātiōne prōsecūtus omnem senātum ad sē convenīre prīncipumque līberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab hīs dīligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Dīviciācum Aeduum

Site of Caesar's Camp.
By the river Axona (Aisne), looking towards the river.

1. **quī appellantur**: Caesar's own statement; it is, therefore, put in the indic.; 269.

2. **arbitrārī**: sc. *sē* (= *Rēmōs*); *i.e.* the Remi thought that the Condrusi, etc. promised about 40,000 men. **ad**: 'about.' The total number of men promised for the war amounted to 296,000.

5. 3. **prīncipumque līberōs**: why were they chosen particularly as hostages?

5. **obsidēs**: trans. in the pred. **Quae**: 202.

6. **dīligenter ad diem**: 'punctually to the day.' **Dīviciācum**:

māgnopere cohortātus, docet quantō opere reī pūblicae commūnisque salūtis intersit, manūs hostium distinērī, nē cum tantā multitūdine ūnō tempore cōnflīgendum sit. Id fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās Aeduī in fīnēs Bellovacōrum introdūxerint et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint. Hīs mandātīs eum ab sē dīmittit.

Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venīre vīdit, neque iam longē abesse, ab eīs, quōs mīserat explōrātōribus et ab Rēmīs cognōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum fīnibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs et

---

obj. of both *cohortātus* and *docet*. This is Diviciacus, the Aeduan, not the Divĭciacus mentioned above.

1. **quantō opere**: 'how greatly.' **reī pūblicae, . . . salūtis**: the gen. with *intersit*. See 147. 'It is to the interest of the state and the general welfare.'

2. **manūs**: 'forces.' **distinērī**: 'kept apart,' subj. of *intersit*, 274.

3. **nē . . . cōnflīgendum sit** (sc. *sibi*): 'that he might not have to fight,' 229.

4. **Id**: refers to what? **posse**: ind. disc. depending on *docet* (= *dīxit*).

5. **introdūxerint, coeperint**: would be fut. perf. indic. in dir. disc. **Hīs mandātīs**: 'with these instructions,' 169.

7. **Postquam . . . vīdit**: 234. Trans. *vīdit* by 'he found.' **coāctās**: trans. by a verb coördinate with *venīre*; 'had concentrated . . . and were approaching.'

8. **neque**: trans. the negative (*nōn*) with *abesse*, which depends on *cognōvit*. The subj. of *abesse*, to be supplied, is *Belgās*. **ab eīs**: with *explōrātōribus* and *cognōvit*.

9. **Axonam**: 129. This is the modern Aisne river, which in the present European war also has been within the firing line.

10. **quod . . . fīnibus**: about 7 or 8 miles north of Rheims.

11. **ibi**: the Roman camp was on rising ground on the north bank of the river. See Plan IV. **Quae rēs**: 'now this movement,' 202. **et**: omit.

latus ūnum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat, et post eum quae erant, tūta ab hostibus reddēbat, et commeātūs ab Rēmīs reliquīsque cīvitātibus ut sine perīculō ad eum portārī possent, efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Quīntum Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit; castra in altitūdinem pedum duodecim vāllō fossāque duodēvīgintī pedum mūnīre iubet.

The Belgae attack the town of Bibrax, which Caesar relieves.

6. Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum octō. Id ex itinere magnō impetū

1. **latus**: obj. of *mūniēbat;* what gender? A river is always a barrier against the approach of an enemy. **post . . . reddēbat**: 'made his rear safe,' lit. 'made safe from the enemy that (sc. *ea*) which was behind him.' The rear of the camp was the northeast side. See Plan IV.

2. **commeātūs**: subj. of *possent;* here *ut* is not the first word in its sentence.

3. **ut . . . possent, efficiēbat**: 'made it possible for supplies to be brought up,' 261. **eum**: = *Caesarem*.

4. **In**: 'over.' **pōns**: A fine, stone bridge at this point now carries a national highway over the river.

5. **praesidium**: at the north end of the bridge. At the present time there is a little village, Berry-au-Bac, on the site of the *praesidium*. **in alterā parte**: 'on the other (*i.e.* south) side.'

6. **Sabīnum relinquit**: in this way Caesar kept communication open with his supplies which came from the south. **sex cohortibus**: what part of a legion and about how many men? See p. xxviii.

8. **pedum**: 141. **fossā**: it was 18 ft. wide across the top.

6. 9. **hīs castrīs**: Caesar's camp north of the Aisne river and the fortifications at the bridge have been excavated and a portion of the trenches discovered. They have been measured and much of our information about the shape and size of Caesar's camps has been obtained from this site. See p. xxxvii, and for a description of the method of excavating, p. xlvi. **nōmine**: 'by name,' 171.

10. **mīlia**: 130. **Id**: sc. *oppidum*. **ex itinere**: 'on the march,'

Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppugnātiō est haec. Ubi, circumiectā multitūdine hominum tōtīs moenibus, undique in mūrum lapidēs iacī coeptī sunt, mūrusque dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, testūdine factā portās succendunt mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fīēbat. Nam cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōnsistendī potestās erat nūllī. Cum fīnem oppugnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus, summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, quī tum oppidō praefuerat, ūnus ex eīs quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum mittit,

---

expecting to capture it quickly without much interruption to their march toward the Romans. **magnō impetū**: 'with a furious charge.'

1. **Aegrē . . . sustentātum est**: 'they held out with difficulty.' The verb is passive and impersonal, 204.

2. **Gallōrum, Belgārum**: 136. **eadem atque**: 'the same as.' **oppugnātiō**: 'method of storming.'

3. **haec**: 'following.' **circumiectā multitūdine**: 173, but trans. by a coördinate clause. **tōtīs**: *i.e.* of the entire town. **moenibus**: 149, *b*.

4. **coeptī sunt**: the pass. is used when the infin. depending on it is also pass.

5. **dēfēnsōribus**: 158. **testūdine**: the word means 'tortoise,' but in the military sense it was a close formation of men holding their shields, overlapping, above their heads. If missiles were hurled down upon them, they were protected, as the back of a tortoise is protected by its hard shell. See Plate IV.

6. **subruunt**: 'undermine.' **Quod**: 202. **facile**: 'easily,' 69.

7. **conicerent**: Why pl.? 123, *b*. **cōnsistendī**: with *potestās*, 282.

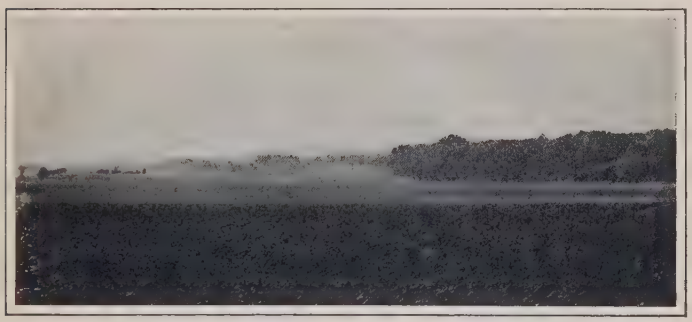
8. **nūllī**: What case? See 49 and 154, 'no one had a chance of keeping his place on the wall.'

9. **Rēmus**: 'one of the Remi.' **nōbilitāte, grātiā**: 170.

10. **oppidō**: 149, *b*. **ūnus**: in apposition with *Iccius*, 121. **ex eīs**: 138, *a*.

nisi subsidium sibi summittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar, īsdem ducibus ūsus, quī nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētās sagittāriōs et funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō oppidānīs mittit; quōrum ad-5 ventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpugnandī accessit, et hostibus eādem dē causā spēs potiundī oppidī



Site of Battle on the Axona (Aisne).

A view down the slope occupied by Caesar's legions towards the Miette brook (behind the trees).

---

1. **nisi . . . posse**: this is what the messenger was instructed to say. What were the exact words of the message?

7. 3. **Eō**: *i.e.* to Bibrax. **dē mediā nocte**: 'in the middle of the night.' **īsdem**: = *eīsdem*, used as a noun. **ducibus**: 163, *a*.

4. **nūntiī**: pred. nom., 120. **Numidās**: Numidia was in northern Africa. **Crētās**: Crete is a large island in the eastern part of the Mediterranean Sea.

5. **Baleārēs**: the Balearic islands were east of Spain. See Map. Caesar's army was made up of men from different parts of the world. **subsidiō oppidānīs**: 156 and Note, but trans., 'to relieve the townspeople.'

6. **Rēmīs**: 149, *b*.

7. **hostibus**: 153. **eādem dē causā**: 'for the same reason.' **spēs potiundī oppidī**: 'the hope of getting possession of the town,' 283. This sentence (from *Rēmīs*) has a balanced order of words. It

discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque, quōs adīre potuerant, incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ā mīlibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque īgnibus significābātur amplius mīlibus passuum octō in lātitūdinem patēbant.

Caesar strengthens his position.

8. Caesar prīmō et propter multitūdinem hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit; cotīdiē tamen equestribus proeliīs, quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent, perīclitābātur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse īnferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castrīs ad aciem īnstruendam nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō, quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex plānitiē ēditus tantum

---

is only an accident that the last two words of each part end in the same two syllables.

1. **morātī**: sc. *hostēs*.

3. **cōpiīs**: 167.

4. **ā mīlibus . . . duōbus**: 'less than two miles away.' The use of *ā* is unusual. **castra**: marked D on the Plan.

6. **patēbant**: the length of the Belgian front could be roughly determined at night by the camp fires.

8. 7. **et . . . et**: 'both . . . and.'

8. **opīniōnem virtūtis**: 'reputation for courage,' 137. **proeliō**; 149, *b*.

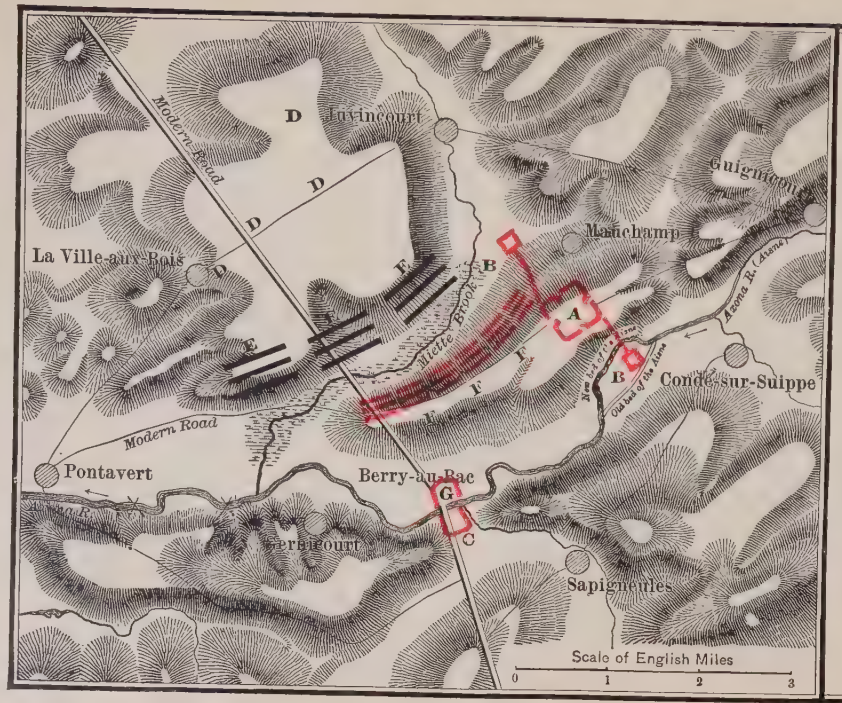
9. **equestribus proeliīs**: 'skirmishes with the cavalry,' 'cavalry skirmishes.' **quid . . . posset**: see note to p. 218, l. 13; 'tried (to see) what they could do,' 259. **virtūte**: 171.

11. **locō**: limited by *opportūnō atque idōneō*, 175. The remainder of the sentence is long and has many subordinate clauses. It should be read through carefully in the Latin before translating. Do not trans. by a single sentence in English, but express the thought in several independent sentences. **prō**: 'in front of.'

12. **nātūrā**: 'naturally (suited for forming a line of battle),' 171.

13. **ēditus**: 'rising.' **tantum . . . poterat**: 'extended facing

THE BATTLE AT THE AISNE (AXONA)



EXPLANATION.

A. Roman Camp (p. 257, 7).

B, B. Redoubts, *castella* (p. 261, 6).

C. Redoubt at the bridge, held by Q. Titurius Sabinus; *castellum* (p. 257, 5; p. 262, 11).

D, D, D. Camp of the Belgians (p. 260, 5).

E, E, E. Line of battle of the Belgians (p. 261, 12).

F, F, F. Line of battle of the Romans (p. 261, 11).

G. Garrison at the bridge, *praesidium* (p. 257, 5).

adversus in lātitūdinem patēbat, quantum locī aciēs īnstrūcta occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte lateris dēiectūs habēbat et in frontem lēniter fastīgātus paulātim ad plānitiem redībat, ab utrōque latere eius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum quadringentōrum et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōnstituit ibique tormenta collocāvit, nē, cum aciem īnstrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitūdine poterant, ab lateribus pugnantēs suōs circumvenīre possent. Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus quās proximē cōnscrīpserat, in castrīs relictīs, ut, sī quō opus esset, subsidiō dūcī possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōnstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās īnstrūxerant.

(the enemy) over a space as wide as the line of battle, when drawn up, would occupy.' See the Plan. Southwest of the camp site was a rising slope which was wide enough to accommodate the battle line formation.

1. **locī**: 138; with *quantum*.

2. **ex utrāque parte**: 'on either side' of this slope. **lateris** (gen. case) **dēiectūs**: 'an abrupt descent.'

3. **habēbat**: sc. *collis*. **in frontem**: toward the southwest. **lēniter fastīgātus**: 'sloping gently.'

4. **trānsversam**: 'crosswise,' at right angles to the ridge of the hill. See the Plan.

5. **passuum**: 141. What fraction of a mile is *passuum quadringentōrum?* See pp. xxxix–xl.

6. **extrēmās fossās**: 'ends of the trenches,' 192. **tormenta**: for a description of these 'hurling engines' see pp. xliv–xlv.

7. **īnstrūxisset**: sc. *Caesar*.

8. **ab lateribus**: 'on the flanks,' with *circumvenīre*. His purpose in building the trenches and redoubts was to prevent a flank or rear attack by one of the numerous divisions of the enemy, while his army was engaged on the other side of the camp. **pugnantēs**: with *suōs*.

9. **proximē**: 'recently,' mentioned in chap. 2.

10. **relictīs**: with *legiōnibus*, 173. As usual, the raw recruits were held as a reserve; they could not yet be relied upon for service at the opening of the engagement. **quō**: 'anywhere.' **subsidiō**: 156.

The Belgae attempt to ford the river and are repulsed; they disperse.

9. Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsīrent, hostēs exspectābant; nostrī autem, sī ab illīs initium trānseundī fieret, ut impedītōs aggrederentur, parātī in armīs erant. Interim proeliō equestrī inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. Ubi neutrī trānseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre equitum proeliō nostrīs, Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadīs repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt, eō cōnsiliō, ut, sī possent, castellum, cui praeerat Quīntus Titūrius lēgātus, expugnā-

---

9. 1. **Palūs**: the long hill on which Caesar drew up his line formation sloped down on the south toward the Aisne river and on the north toward a 'marsh' through which to-day struggles a brook, the Miette, which finds its way into the Aisne about two miles below the bridge. Caesar's line faced northward towards this marsh; on the other side of the marsh the hills rise again and it was on these hills that the Belgae were encamped.

2. **sī . . . trānsīrent, . . . exspectābant**: 'waited (to see) whether our men would cross,' 259.

3. **illīs**: = *hostibus*. **initium**: subj. of *fieret* (which stands for a fut. indic.). **impedītōs**: the enemy.

5. **contendēbātur**: 204. **neutrī**: 'neither side,' pl. because referring to both Belgae and Romans.

6. **nostrīs**: with *secundiōre*, 157. See 173.

7. **Hostēs**: the Belgae were trained warriors. They knew better than to cross the marsh under the fire of Roman missiles; they now were going to try a trick of their own.

9. **Ibi vadīs repertīs**: somewhere not far below the place where the Miette empties into the Aisne (indicated by crossed swords on the Plan).

10. **eō cōnsiliō, ut . . . expugnārent, . . . interscinderent**: See note on p. 240, l. 4 and 260, *a*.

11. **expugnārent**: how different in meaning from *oppugnāre*?

rent pontemque interscinderent; sī minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī magnō nōbīs ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

10. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque pon- 5

Bridge at Berry-au-Bac.

Over the Axona (Aisne) near here the Belgians attempted to ford the river.

1. **interscinderent**: the bridge was of wood. Notice the strategy of the Belgians. Their main purpose was to cut Caesar off from his supplies by getting possession of the bridge. **minus**: = *nōn*.

2. **populārentur**, **prohibērent**: in the same constr. as *expugnārent* and introduced by *ut* to be supplied. **magnō ūsuī**: 156; 'of great service to us.'

10. 4. **Titūriō**: the watchful eyes of the officer at the bridge had spied the movement of the Belgae and he sent an orderly flying to Caesar with the news.

5. **levis armātūrae**: 140; 'light-armed' Numidians. The Roman troops that were immediately dispatched to the ford were unencumbered by heavy arms and could move rapidly. They crossed the

tem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pugnātum est. Hostēs impedītōs nostrī in flūmine aggressī magnum eōrum numerum occīdērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsīre cōnantēs multitūdine tēlōrum reppulērunt; prīmōs, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt.

Hostēs, ubi et dē expugnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse intellēxērunt neque nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem prōgredī pugnandī causā vīdērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, cōnsiliō convocātō cōnstituērunt, optimum esse, domum suam quemque revertī, et, quōrum in fīnēs prīmum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfendendōs undique convenīrent, ut potius in suīs quam in aliēnīs fīnibus dēcertārent et domesticīs cōpiīs reī frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reli-

---

bridge and hurried down the south bank of the river to meet the Belgians who were coming across.

1. **Ācriter . . . pugnātum est**: 204.

2. **Hostēs**: acc. case, modified by *impedītōs*.

3. **per**: 'over.' **eōrum**: = *hostium occīsōrum*.

4. **reliquōs**: obj. of *reppulērunt*. **audācissimē**: Caesar often praises a brave enemy. Read again what is said about the Belgians, p. 156, l. 4. **trānsīre**: depends on *cōnantēs*, which modifies *reliquōs*.

5. **circumventōs interfēcērunt**: 'they surrounded and killed.'

8. **spem**: subj. of *fefellisse;* 'hope both of (*dē*) capturing the town (Bibrax) and of crossing the river.'

9. **pugnandī causā**: 282, Note.

10. **ipsōs**: = *hostēs*.

11. **domum** (132) . . . **revertī**: the subj. of *esse;* 'that it was best, etc.'

12. **quōrum**: antecedent is *eōs* in the next line.

13. **convenīrent**: introduced by *ut* to be supplied, dependent on *cōnstituērunt* (260).

14. **dēcertārent**: 'fight a decisive (*dē-*) battle.' **cōpiīs**: 'supplies.'

15. **cum**: 'along with.'

quīs causīs haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Dīviciācum atque Aeduōs fīnibus Bellovacōrum appropinquāre cognōverant. Hīs persuādērī, ut diūtius morārentur neque suīs auxilium ferrent, nōn poterat.

11. Eā rē cōnstitūtā, secundā vigiliā magnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castrīs ēgressī nūllō certō ōrdine neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque prīmum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenīre properāret, fēcērunt, ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cognitā, īnsidiās veritus, quod, quā dē causā discēderent, nōndum perspexerat, exercitum equitātumque castrīs continuit. Prīmā lūce cōnfīrmātā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum, quī novissimum agmen morārētur, praemīsit.

---

1. **ratiō**: 'consideration.' **quod . . . cognōverant**: explains *haec ratiō*, 257.

2. **fīnibus**: 149, *b*.

3. **Hīs**: 149, *a* and 150.

11. 5. **secundā vigiliā**: at about what time was this? See 183, end.

6. **ōrdine neque imperiō**: *i.e.*, they did not march in line or in any particular military order, and they were not under the command of any special officer; there was only one thing to do, — to get to their respective homes as quickly as possible. For the abl. see 169.

7. **cum . . . peteret**: every one was trying to be ahead of the rest.

8. **cōnsimilis**: pred. adj. **fugae**: 157.

9. **vidērētur**: subst. clause, 261. Trans. 'they made their departure seem like a flight.' **statim per speculātōrēs**: Caesar had spies constantly watching the enemy; it was often dangerous work, but the movements and the safety of the army depended on the accuracy of their information. **Caesar**: note the position of this word between *rē* and *cognitā* (abl. abs.).

10. **īnsidiās**: they had resorted to stratagem before. **discēderent**: why subjunctive? If you do not know, see 259.

12. **Prīmā lūce**: 'at daybreak.' **cōnfīrmātā rē**: abl. abs.; *rē* is the fact that the enemy were really in retreat.

13. **quī . . . morārētur**: 230. **novissimum agmen**: see p. xl.

Hīs Quīntum Pedium et Lūcium Aurunculeium Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit; Titum Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequī iussit. Hī novissimōs adortī et multa mīlia passuum prōsecūtī magnam multitūdinem eōrum fugientium concīdērunt, cum ab extrēmō agmine, ad quōs ventum erat, cōnsisterent fortiterque impetum nostrōrum mīlitum sustinērent, priōrēs, quod abesse ā perīculō vidērentur, neque ūllā necessitāte neque imperiō continērentur, exaudītō clāmōre perturbātīs ōrdinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ūllō perīculō tantam eōrum multitūdinem nostrī interfēcērunt, quantum fuit diēī spatium; sub occāsum sōlis dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

Other states submit to Caesar. He learns about the Nervii.

12. Postrīdiē eius diēī Caesar, prius quam sē hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā reciperent, in fīnēs Suessiōnum, quī proximī

---

1. **Hīs** : = *equitātuī* (149, *b*).

3. **subsequī** : 260, *a*, Note. **novissimōs** : = *novissimum agmen.* **mīlia** : 130.

4. **fugientium** : pres. part.; 'as they were fleeing,' 'in their flight.'

5. **ab extrēmō agmine** : 'at the rear of the line,' 185, 1 (*b*). **quōs** : antecedent is *eī* to be supplied as subj. of *cōnsisterent.* For the mood of *cōnsisterent*, *sustinērent* and *pōnerent* see 240. **ventum erat** : 204.

7. **priōrēs** : 'those in the front ranks,' 'the van'; subj. of *pōnerent.* **vidērentur** : 'they seemed (as they thought),' 241. The mood of *continērentur* is explained in the same way.

9. **clāmōre** : of those fighting in the rear. This abl. abs. gives the reason for *perturbātīs.*

11. **quantum . . . spatium** : *i.e.* as long as they could see to kill. **sub occāsum sōlis** : 'toward sunset;' 186, 2 (*b*).

12. 13. **prius quam . . . reciperent** : to explain the mood see 239; 'before they should recover,' *i.e.* 'before they could recover.'

Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et magnō itinere cōnfectō ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrīque altitūdinem, paucīs dēfendentibus, expugnāre nōn potuit. Castrīs mūnītīs vīneās agere, quaeque ad oppugnandum ūsuī erant, comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitūdō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vīneīs ad oppidum āctīs, aggere iactō turribusque cōnstitūtīs, magnitūdine operum, quae neque vīderant ante Gallī neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī lēgātōs ad

---

1. **exercitum dūxit, contendit** : follow Caesar's movements on the Map opp. p. 155. **magnō itinere** : a forced march.

2. **Noviodūnum** : perhaps the capital city of the Suessiones. The word is of Celtic deriv. and means 'Newtown.' **ex itinere** : *i.e.* 'immediately after his arrival.'

3. **ab dēfēnsōribus** : with *vacuum*, 158 ; 'destitute of defenders,' *i.e.* 'undefended.'

4. **paucīs dēfendentibus** : abl. abs. expressing concession. Trans. by a clause introduced by 'although.'

5. **expugnāre** : cf. with *oppugnāre* above. On the Roman method of besieging a town read p. xliii. **Castrīs** : of the Romans. **vīneās** : 'movable sheds.' See p. xliv and Plate V.

6. **agere** : 'push forward.' The soldiers were protected under cover of the sheds. **quaeque** : the *-que* connects *agere* and *comparāre*. **ūsuī** : 156.

7. **in oppidum convēnit** : *i.e.* before Caesar could complete his siege operations.

8. **proximā nocte** : 'on the next night.'

9. **aggere** : a roadway to the town wall made by throwing earth and brush into the *fossa*. See p. xliii. **turribus** : the towers were also movable and they afforded an elevation from which missiles could be hurled.

10. **operum** : the siege works. **ante** : adv.

11. **et** : connects *magnitūdine* and *celeritāte*.

Caesarem dē dēditiōne mittunt et, petentibus Rēmīs, ut cōnservārentur, impetrant.

13. Caesar obsidibus acceptīs prīmīs cīvitātis atque ipsīus Galbae rēgis duōbus fīliīs, armīsque omnibus ex oppidō trāditīs, in dēditiōnem Suessiōnēs accēpit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Brātuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīlia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs maiōrēs nātū ex oppidō ēgressī manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepērunt, sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

---

1. **dē**: 'to negotiate for.' **petentibus Rēmīs**: abl. abs. but trans. 'at the request of the Remi.' **ut cōnservārentur**: depends on *petentibus*, 260.

13. 3. **obsidibus**: in apposition with *prīmīs* and *fīliīs*, 'having taken as hostages the leading men, etc.'

5. **trāditīs**: 'surrendered.' **in dēditiōnem . . . accēpit**: trans. 'he accepted the surrender of the Suessiones.'

6. **Quī**: 202. **sē suaque omnia**: see note to p. 176, l. 13.

7. **Brātuspantium**: perhaps the capital city of the Bellovaci. **contulissent, abesset**: 235.

9. **maiōrēs nātū**: 'older men.' On the abl., *nātū*, see 171; for the comp. see 63.

10. **tendere**: 'stretch out.' **vōce significāre**: they did not speak Latin, but they made their meaning clear. **sēsē . . . venīre**: 'that they placed themselves under his protection, etc.'

11. **neque**: = *et nōn*.

12. **accessisset, pōneret**: note the different tenses; 'had approached,' 'was making a camp.' See also *contulissent* and *abesset* above.

13. **passīs**: a synonym of *tendere* above.

14. **suō mōre**: 166, *a*.

14. Prō hīs Dīviciācus (nam post discessum Belgārum dīmissīs Aeduōrum cōpiīs ad eum reverterat) facit verba; Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitātis Aeduae fuisse; impulsōs ab suīs prīncipibus, quī dīcerent, Aeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indignitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Aeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī eius cōnsilī prīncipēs fuissent, quod intellegerent, quantam calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgisse. Petere nōn sōlum Bellovacōs, sed etiam prō hīs Aeduōs, ut suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod sī fēcerit, Aeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum, quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōnsuērint.

---

14. 1. **Prō hīs**: 'on behalf of these' (the Bellovaci). **Dīviciācus**: the Aeduan.

2. **eum**: = *Caesarem*. **facit verba**: 'spoke'; 208.

3. **Bellovacōs** to the end of the chap.: ind. disc. **omnī tempore**: 'at all times.'

4. **impulsōs**: 'instigated.'

5. **in servitūtem redāctōs**: 'reduced to slavery,' 'enslaved.'

6. **perferre**: ind. disc. depending on *dīcerent* (l. 4). **et . . . et**: 'both . . . and.' **dēfēcisse, intulisse**: sc. *Bellovacōs* as subj. modified by *impulsōs*.

7. **Quī**: antecedent is *eōs* to be supplied as subj. of *profūgisse*. **prīncipēs**: 'ring-leaders.'

8. **cīvitātī**: 149, *b*.

9. **intulissent**: 259. **in Britanniam**: across the channel.

10. **Bellovacōs**: subj. of *petere*. **Aeduōs**: sc. *petere*. **ut . . . ūtātur**: 260. **clēmentiā, mānsuētūdine**: Caesar was merciful to a fallen enemy who submitted; he was absolutely merciless to a treacherous foe.

11. **eōs**: who? **Quod**: obj. of *fēcerit* and refers to *ut . . . ūtātur*.

12. **amplificātūrum** (*esse*): sc. *eum* (= *Caesarem*) as subj.

13. **qua**: 'any.' **sustentāre**: 'hold out.'

14. **cōnsuērint**: sc. *Aeduī*.

15. Caesar honōris Dīviciācī atque Aeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōnservātūrum dīxit; et quod erat cīvitās magnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominum multitūdine praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs popo-
5 scit. Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō collātīs, ab eō locō in fīnēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit; quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt.

Eōrum fīnēs Nerviī attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sīc reperiēbat: Nūllum aditum
10 esse ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patī vīnī reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium īnferrī, quod hīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs eōrum et remittī virtūtem exīstimārent; esse hominēs ferōs magnaeque virtūtis; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdi-
15 dissent patriamque virtūtem prōiēcissent; cōnfīrmāre, sēsē

---

15. 1. **honōris**: with *causā*; 'out of respect for Diviciacus and the Aeduans.'

2. **eōs**: the Bellovaci.

3. **cīvitās**: of the Bellovaci. **magnā auctōritāte**: 170.

4. **sexcentōs obsidēs**: Caesar had to find a place for these in his camp and keep them at his own expense.

8. **Eōrum**: of the Ambiani. **attingēbant**: *i.e.* they lived next to the Ambiani.

9. **sīc**: 'the following.' From **Nūllum aditum** the rest of the chap. is expressed in ind. disc.

10. **mercātōribus**: dat. case, 154. **patī**: sc. *eōs* (= *Nerviōs*). They had a prohibition law! Read again p. 157, l. 3. **vīnī**: with *nihil*, 138.

11. **pertinentium**: agreeing with *rērum*; trans. by a rel. clause in English. **īnferrī**: depends on *patī*, 274. **rēbus**: 165.

12. **relanguēscere animōs eōrum**: 'that their courage was weakened.'

13. **esse** and the pres. infinitives following: sc. *eōs* (= *Nerviōs*). **virtūtis**: 140.

14. **quī . . . dēdidissent, prōiēcissent**: the rel. clause expresses cause, 'for having surrendered, . . . and cast aside.'

neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

He marches against the Nervii and prepares to fortify a camp.

16. Cum per eōrum fīnēs trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvīs, Sabim flūmen ā castrīs suīs nōn amplius mīlia passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nerviōs cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs, fīnitimīs suīs (nam hīs utrīsque persuāserant, utī eandem bellī fortūnam experīrentur); exspectārī etiam ab hīs Aduatucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere; mulierēs, quīque per aetātem ad pugnam inūtilēs vidērentur, in eum locum coniēcisse, quō propter palūdēs exercituī aditus nōn esset.

17. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque prae-

---

1. **neque . . . neque**: 'neither . . . nor.'

16. 3. **eōrum**: whose country? **trīduum**: 'for three days,' 130. **inveniēbat**: = *reperiēbat*, used before. Ind. disc. to the end of the chap.

4. **captīvīs**: a source of information commonly used in war. **Sabim**: now called the Sambre. Caesar was approaching from the north side of this river. See Plan V.

5. **trāns id flūmen**: on the south side.

6. **cōnsēdisse, exspectāre**: note the tenses in translating.

7. **ūnā**: adv.

8. **hīs utrīsque**: 'both of these peoples.' For the case see 149, *a*. **persuāserant**: sc. *Nerviī*. **utī . . . experīrentur**: 'to try,' 260.

9. **ab hīs**: 160. **Aduatucōrum**: we shall hear more about them in chaps. 29–33.

10. **mulierēs**: obj. of *coniēcisse* (sc. *Nerviōs* as subj.). **quīque**: = *et eōs* (also obj. of *coniēcisse*) *quī*. **per aetātem**: 'by reason of their age.'

11. **quō**: = *ad quem locum*.

12. **exercituī**: 154.

mittit, quī locum idōneum castrīs dēligant. Cum ex dēdi-
tīciīs Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs complūrēs Caesarem secūtī
ūnā iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs, ut posteā ex captīvīs
cognitum est, eōrum diērum cōnsuētūdine itineris nostrī
5 exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt atque
hīs dēmōnstrārunt, inter singulās legiōnēs impedīmentō-
rum magnum numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam
negōtī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque
legiōnēs magnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinīs
10 adorīrī; quā pulsā impedīmentīsque dīreptīs, futūrum ut
reliquae contrā cōnsistere nōn audērent.

---

17. 1. **quī . . . dēligant**: remember that this kind of clause (230) is best trans. in Eng. by an inf. clause; 'to select.' **castrīs**: 157. **ex . . . Belgīs . . . Gallīs**: with *complūrēs*. See 138, *a*. Cf. also *ex hīs* below.

2. **secūtī**: a pf. part. but trans. by a verb coördinate with *facerent*.

4. **eōrum diērum**: 'during these days.' **cōnsuētūdine . . . perspectā**: 'having observed the order of marching,' 173. **nostrī exercitūs**: depends on *itineris* which in turn depends on *cōnsuētūdine*.

5. **nocte**: 181.

6. **hīs**: 148. **inter singulās . . . audērent**: ind. disc. **impedīmentōrum**: Caesar is thinking of the pack-animals, as *numerum* shows.

7. **neque . . . negōtī**: 'and that there would be no difficulty.' For the case of *negōtī* see 138.

9. **spatium**: 130. **sub sarcinīs**: *i.e.* while the men were still carrying their packs (see p. xl).

10 **quā**: sc. *legiōne*. **futūrum ut . . . audērent**: 261.

11. **reliquae**: sc. *legiōnēs*. **contrā**: adv. The plan of the Nervii was a good one and might have succeeded, if Caesar, prudent and shrewd, had not made it a rule to proceed more cautiously when he was near an enemy. The Nervii were going to attack successively each legion as it came up and plunder the baggage that followed behind it, but on approaching the enemy's country Caesar changed his marching order and massed six legions together in one column (chap. 19).

Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōnsilium quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nerviī antīquitus, cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim ad hōc tempus eī reī student, sed, quicquid possunt, pedestribus valent cōpiīs), quō facilius fīnitimōrum equitātum, sī praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedīrent, tenerīs arboribus incīsīs atque īnflexīs crēbrīsque in lātitūdinem rāmīs ēnātīs et rubīs sentibusque interiectīs, effēcerant ut īnstar mūrī hae saepēs mūnīmentum praebērent, quō nōn modo nōn intrārī, sed nē perspicī quidem posset. Hīs rēbus

1. **Adiuvābat**: the obj. is *cōnsilium* and the subj. is the clause *quod . . . effēcerant*, 257. Ease of trans. may be gained by changing the voice of the main verb; *i.e.* 'the plan was favored by the circumstance that, etc.' The sentence in Latin is a long one and should be divided into several sentences in the English translation. **eōrum**: antecedent of *quī* (= the escaped prisoners mentioned above).

2. **antīquitus**: 71. **nihil possent** (and below **quicquid possunt**): see 125, *a*. **neque . . . student**: 'for up to the present time they give no attention to this branch of the army (*reī*),' *i.e.* the cavalry.

4. **quō . . . impedīrent**: *quō* is used because of *facilius*, 229, *a*.

5. **praedandī causā**: 282, Note. **vēnissent** stands for the fut. perf. indic. **tenerīs . . . interiectīs**: three instances of abl. abs. They express the means of *effēcerant*. They may be trans. by verbs coördinate with *effēcerant*. **tenerīs**: 'young.'

6. **crēbrīs . . . ēnātīs**: the trees when young were cut into on one side and bent over more or less horizontally. The branches of the trees then grew out thickly sideways (*in lātitūdinem*).

7. **rubīs . . . interiectīs**: brambles and brier bushes were planted in between. This made a hedge which hindered greatly the movements of cavalry. Thorn hedges are still seen in this part of France. **ut . . . praebērent**: 261.

8. **īnstar mūrī**: 'like a wall.' **mūnīmentum**: 'a barrier.' **quō . . . posset**: 'so that one not only could not penetrate it but could not even see through it.' *quō* = *in quod* referring to *mūnīmentum*.

9. **Hīs rēbus**: *i.e.* by the obstacles to advance presented by these thick hedges.

cum iter agminis nostrī impedīrētur, nōn omittendum sibi cōnsilium Nerviī exīstimāvērunt.

18. Locī nātūra erat haec, quem locum nostrī castrīs dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequāliter dēclīvis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōminávimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclīvitāte collis nāscēbātur adversus huic et contrārius, passūs circiter ducentōs īnfimus apertus, ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae statiōnēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium.

---

2. **cōnsilium**: the 'plan' mentioned above.

18. 3. **haec**: 'the following,' about to be described. **locum**: repeats the antecedent of *quem*.

4. **ab summō**: 'from the top,' where Caesar was, on the north bank. **aequāliter dēclīvis**: 'sloping evenly.'

5. **Ab eō flūmine**: *i.e.* on the other, or south, side.

6. **parī acclīvitāte**: the gradient on that side was the same as on the north side. **nāscēbātur**: 'arose.' **adversus huic et contrārius**: 'opposite to it (the hill on the north side) and facing it.'

7. **passūs**: 130. **apertus**: the ground was 'cleared,' *i.e.* not wooded, for about a thousand feet back from the river; above this it was thickly wooded (*ab superiōre . . . posset*).

8. **perspicī**: pass. voice. Do not trans. lit., but thus, 'so that one could not see through into it.'

10. **secundum**: 'along'; a prep. **statiōnēs**: 'pickets.' It was a peaceful scene along the river on which Caesar gazed, but thousands of barbarian eyes behind the trees on the height were watching his movements.

11. **pedum**: 141. The river has been canalized by the French government and it is now much deeper than in Caesar's day but also much narrower (Caesar calls it *lātissimum flūmen*, p. 286, l. 12). There is now at this point a busy iron manufacturing town, called Hautmont.

The enemy attack him unexpectedly.

19. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs; sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat, ac Belgae ad Nerviōs dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus appropinquābat, cōnsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expedītās dūcēbat; post eās tōtīus exercitūs impedīmenta collocārat; inde duae legiōnēs, quae proximē cōnscrīptae erant, tōtum

The Sambre.

A view of the river at Boussières just about or a little above where the Nervii crossed.

19. 1. **equitātū praemissō**: as usual, for a preliminary testing skirmish.

2. **cōpiīs**: 167. **aliter . . . ac**: 'was different from what.' How lit. ?

3. **hostibus**: why dat. case ?

4. **expedītās**: 'in light marching order,' *i.e.* with baggage reduced to a minimum. The word is used in the predicate.

5. **eās**: the *sex legiōnēs*.

6. **proximē**: in the spring (chap. 2). What were the numbers of these two legions ?

agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedīmentīs erant. Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittāriīsque flūmen trānsgressī cum hostium equitātū proelium commīsērunt. Cum sē illī identidem in silvās ad suōs reciperent ac rūrsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent neque nostrī longius, quam quem ad fīnem porrēcta loca aperta pertinēbant, cēdentēs īnsequī audērent, interim legiōnēs sex, quae prīmae vēnerant, opere dīmēnsō castra mūnīre coepērunt.

Ubi prīma impedīmenta nostrī exercitūs ab eīs, quī in silvīs abditī latēbant, vīsa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendī proelī convēnerat, ut intrā silvās aciem ōrdinēsque cōnstituerant atque ipsī sēsē cōnfīrmāverant, subitō omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile pulsīs ac prōturbātīs, incrēdibilī celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine et iam in manibus nostrīs hostēs

---

1. **praesidiō** : 156 and note. First came the six veteran legions, then all the baggage, then the two newly enlisted legions. The Roman victory in this battle, though it was dearly bought, might never have been won if Caesar had not changed the order of his marching column.

4. **illī** : = *hostium equitātus.*

5. **neque**: = *et nōn.*

6. **quam . . . pertinēbant** : *i.e.* than to the edge of the clearing.

7. **cēdentēs** : sc. *hostēs*, acc. case. **prīmae** : 191.

8. **dīmēnsō** : read pp. xxxvi f. on the making of the camp. The part. has a pass. meaning ; see 279, second note.

9. **prīma impedīmenta** : 'the first division of the baggage,' appearing immediately behind the column of the six legions. This was the signal agreed upon (*convēnerat*) by the enemy to rush to the attack.

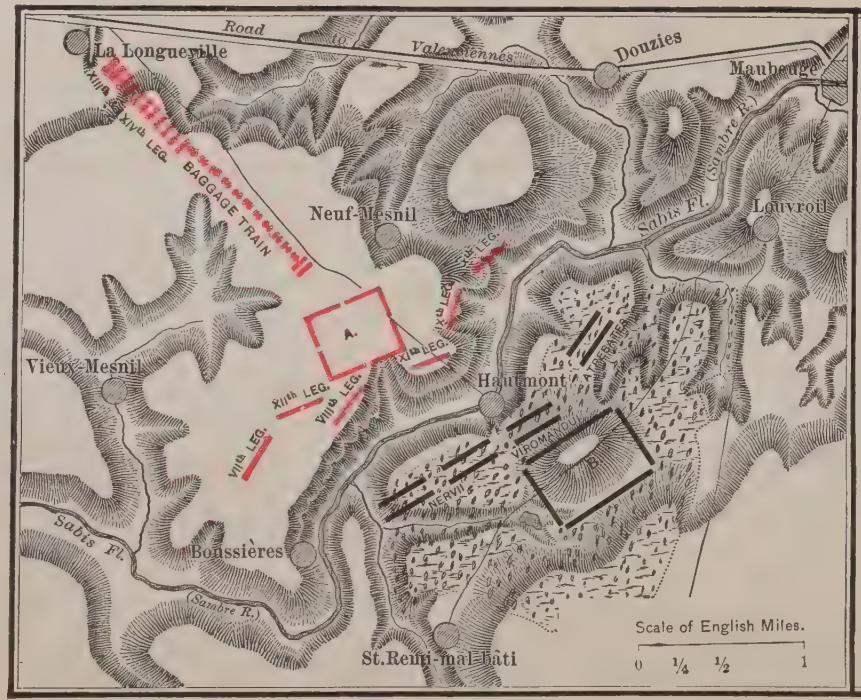
10. **vīsa sunt** : 'was seen.'

11. **ut** : 'just as.'

14. **Hīs** : = *equitibus.*

15. **ūnō** : 'the same.'

16. **in manibus nostrīs** : 'upon us.' How lit. ?



EXPLANATION.

A. Roman Camp (p. 274, 3).

Leg. The Roman Legions, arranged as indicated in the text (p. 275, 4, 6; p. 280, 3, 12—281, 2).

B. Camp of the Belgians. The dotted lines around it on all sides indicate the extent of the forest that covered the ground at the time of the battle (p. 274, 9; p. 285, 8).

Opposite the left of the Roman line stood the Atrebates; opposite the centre, the Viromandui; and opposite the right, the Nervii.

vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs, quī in opere occupātī erant, contendērunt.

Caesar hurriedly prepares to meet the attack.

20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum prōpōnendum, quod erat īnsigne, cum ad arma concurrī oportēret, signum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī mīlitēs, quī paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōcesserant, arcessendī, aciēs īnstruenda, mīlitēs cohortandī, signum dandum. Quārum rērum magnam partem temporis brevitās et incursus hostium impediēbat. Hīs difficultātibus duae rēs erat subsidiō, scientia atque ūsus mīlitum, quod supe-

1. **adversō colle**: 'up the opposite hill,' where the Romans were. **ad**: with both *castra* and *eōs*. Consult Plan V constantly as the details of the battle are described.

20. The situation was serious and tense. The Romans, scattered in the work of making the camp, were completely surprised. Perhaps at no other time in the Gallic war did the personality and commanding presence of Caesar count for so much.

3. **Caesarī**: dat. case (155) used with all the following gerundives. **vēxillum prōpōnendum** (sc. *erat*): 'he had to display the flag' (the signal for arming). See p. xxxiv on the flags of the army.

5. **tubā**: 'on the trumpet,' 163. This was the signal to form in line. See p. xxxiv on the musical instruments of the army. **dandum**; sc. *erat*. With the fol. gerundives also *erant* or *erat* is to be supplied. The sentence moves quickly, without connectives, as if reflecting the hurry of preparation. On the gerundives see 97 (2).

6. **quī**: antecedent is *eī mīlitēs*, the subj. to be supplied of *arcessendī* (*erant*). **paulō longius**: 'a little too far,' 193 and 168. **causā**: 282 and note.

7. **signum**: to begin fighting. Review the three kinds of signals mentioned in this chapter.

9. **incursus**: 'rush.' **difficultātibus, subsidiō**: 156 and note.

10. **scientia . . . mīlitum**: 'the knowledge and experience of the soldiers'; the first 'thing,' in apposition with *duae rēs*. The second 'thing' is the clause *quod . . . vetuerat*.

riōribus proeliīs exercitātī, quid fierī oportēret, nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praescrībere, quam ab aliīs docērī poterant, et quod ab opere singulīsque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnītīs castrīs vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē, quae vidēbantur, administrābant.

He passes from one part of the field of battle to another, inspiring and encouraging his men.

21. Caesar necessāriīs rēbus imperātīs, ad cohortandōs mīlitēs quam in partem fors obtulit dēcurrit et ad legiōnem decimam dēvēnit. Mīlitēs nōn longiōre ōrātiōne cohortātus, quam utī suae prīstinae virtūtis memoriam retinērent neu perturbārentur animō, hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius hostēs aberant, quam quō tēlum adigī posset, proelī committendī signum dedit.

---

1. **quid . . . oportēret**: with *praescrībere*, 259. The Roman soldiers did not have to be told what to do; they could take the initiative themselves, whenever it was necessary.

3. **singulīs**: 'respective.' **singulōs**: 'the individual.'

4. **nisi . . . castrīs**: 'before the camp was fortified.' How lit.?

5. **nihil**: 'not at all,' 125, *a*.

6. **vidēbantur**: sc. *administranda esse*.

21. 9. **quam in partem**: trans. as if *in eam partem dēcurrit in quam*.

11. **quam utī**, etc.: 'than to urge them to remember, etc.' **utī . . . . retinērent, . . . perturbārentur, . . . sustinērent**: express in ind. disc. Caesar's hurried injunction to his favorite legion. The subjunctives represent imperatives of the dir. disc., 266. Reproduce in English Caesar's exact orders.

12. **animō**: 171.

13. **quod . . . aberant**: gives the reason for *signum dedit*. **quam quō**: = *quam ut eō;* the enemy were now within javelin range.

Atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus pugnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus ad dīmicandum animus, ut nōn modo ad īnsignia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtīsque tegimenta dētrahenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit quaeque prīma signa cōnspexit, ad haec cōnstitit, nē in quaerendīs suīs pugnandī tempus dīmitteret.

22. Īnstrūctō exercitū, magis ut locī nātūra dēiectusque collis et necessitās temporis, quam ut reī mīlitāris ratiō atque ōrdō postulābat, cum dīversae legiōnēs aliae aliā in parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque dēnsissimīs, ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus, interiectīs prōspectus impedīrētur, neque certa subsidia collocārī neque, quid in quāque parte opus esset, prōvidērī, neque ab ūnō omnia imperia admi-

1. **in alteram partem**: 'in the opposite direction.' Study the Plan in order to understand the positions of the various legions.

2. **pugnantibus**: sc. *eīs*, 149, *b*.

3. **ut . . . dēfuerit**: 232.

4. **īnsignia**: probably the 'crests of their helmets.' **induendās**: how did the soldier carry his helmet on the march? See p. xl.

5. **scūtīs**: 158. For the way in which the shields were protected against the weather see p. xxxi. **Quam in partem**: = *in eā parte in quam*.

6. **quaeque**: = *et quae* (*signa*). **prīma**: pred.

7. **signa**: they identified the various divisions of the legion. See p. xxxiv. **haec**: sc. *signa*. **suīs**: sc. *signīs*. There was no time to find their right places.

22. 9. **ut**: meaning with the indic.?

10. **collis**: gen. case **reī mīlitāris**: 'military science.'

11. **aliae** (*legiōnēs*) **aliā in parte**: 'some in one place, others in another.' See note to p. 222, l. 9.

12. **hostibus**: 149, *a*.

14. **certa**: 'at fixed points.' On account of the thick hedges Caesar could not see where reënforcements were needed. **quid . . . esset**: depends on *prōvidērī* (sc. *poterat*), 259. **quāque**: from *quisque*.

nistrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum inīquitāte fortūnae quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae mīlitēs, ut in sinistrā parte aciē cōnstiterant, pīlīs ēmissīs cursū ac lassitūdine exanimātōs vulneribusque cōnfectōs Atrebātēs (nam hīs ea pars obvēnerat) celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen compulērunt et trānsīre cōnantēs īnsecūtī gladiīs magnam partem eōrum impedītam interfēcērunt. Ipsī trānsīre flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt et in locum inīquum prōgressī rūrsus resistentēs hostēs redintegrātō proeliō in fugam coniēcērunt. Item aliā in parte dīversae duae legiōnēs, ūndecima et octāva, prōflīgātīs Viromanduīs, quibuscum erant congressī, ex locō superiōre, in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs proeliābantur. At tōtīs ferē castrīs ā fronte et ā sinistrā

---

1. **fortūnae**: with *ēventūs*, 'issues of fortune.' Conditions in different parts of the field being so bad, things turned out differently in different places.

23. 3. **in sinistrā parte**: see the Plan.

4. **aciē**: a form of the gen. sing. for *aciēī*.

5. **exanimātōs, cōnfectōs**: with *Atrebātēs* (the obj. of *compulērunt*). **nam . . . obvēnerat**: *i.e.* the Atrebates were on the right of the enemy's line and therefore encountered the ninth and tenth legions of Caesar's left. See Plan. **hīs**: = *Atrebātibus*.

7. **cōnantēs**: sc. *eōs* (= *Atrebātēs*).

8. **impedītam**: in trying to get across the river. **Ipsī**: the Romans.

9. **in locum inīquum**: *i.e.* the Romans were now pursuing uphill.

10. **resistentēs**: limits *hostēs* (acc. case).

11. **aliā in parte**: in the center of the fighting line. Here the eleventh and eighth legions engaged the Viromandui. See Plan. **dīversae**: trans. as an adv., 'separately.'

13. **ex locō superiōre**: with *prōflīgātīs*. **in ipsīs rīpīs**: 'right on the banks,' 200, *a*.

14. **ā fronte, ā sinistrā parte**: see 185, 1 (*b*).

parte nūdātīs, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et nōn magnō ab eā intervāllō septima cōnstitisset, omnēs Nerviī cōnfertissimō agmine duce Boduognātō, quī summam imperī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenīre, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

The situation is desperate.

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae peditēs, quī cum eīs ūnā fuerant, quōs prīmō hostium impetū pulsōs dīxeram, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversīs hostibus occurrēbant ac rūrsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant, et cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā portā ac summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsīsse cōnspexerant, prae-

---

1. **nūdātīs**: 'exposed.' The four legions, the ninth, tenth, eleventh and eighth, in the course of the battle had shifted their positions forward, so that the front and left sides of the camp were left unprotected. The Nervii swarmed up the hill bent, some on entering the camp, others on engaging the remaining legions, the twelfth and the seventh, on Caesar's right wing. See Plan. **nōn magnō intervāllō**: 'at no great distance,' 168.

3. **cōnfertissimō**: 'most compact.' **duce Boduognātō**: 'under the leadership of Boduognatus,' 173. **summam imperī**: 'the chief command.'

5. **apertō latere**: 'on the exposed flank,' *i.e.* on the left flank, now left unprotected by the withdrawal of the other legions.

24. 9. **pulsōs**: sc. *esse*. **dīxeram**: see p. 276, l. 14. **adversīs hostibus**: 'face to face with the enemy,' 149, *b*. The cavalry and light-armed infantry returning to the Roman camp came unexpectedly upon the Nervii as they were entering it (see l. 5 above).

11. **cālōnēs**: 'camp-servants,' drivers and servants of the officers, some of them undoubtedly slaves. **ab decumānā portā**: 'from the rear gate.' See p. xxxviii on the streets and gates of the camp. **summō**: 192.

12. **victōrēs**: pred. These were the four legions stationed on the center and left of Caesar's line.

dandī causā ēgressī, cum respexissent et hostēs in nostrīs castrīs versārī vīdissent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum, quī cum impedīmentīs veniēbant, clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur, aliīque aliam in partem perterritī ferēbantur.

Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opīniō est singulāris, quī auxilī causā ā cīvitāte ad Caesarem missī vēnerant, cum multitūdine hostium castra nostra complērī, legiōnēs premī et paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās dīversōs dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vīdissent, dēspērātīs nostrīs rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedīmentīsque eōrum hostēs potītōs cīvitātī renūntiāvērunt.

---

1. **egressī**: thinking that the battle was over and that the Romans had won the victory. For the construction of *praedandī* see 282 and note. **respexissent**: meaning of *re-*?

2. **versārī**: 'moving about.' **praecipitēs**: 'precipitately,' 190.

3. **impedīmentīs**: the baggage train that followed the six legions was just coming up. Events followed each other in quick succession in this engagement.

4. **fremitus**: 'uproar,' a confused sound of voices. **aliī aliam in partem**: 'in different directions.' For this idiom see note to p. 222, l. 9.

5. **ferēbantur**: 'fled'; lit., 'were carried.'

6. **Trēverī**: a Belgian state of perhaps Germanic origin. Caesar's cavalry were mercenary troops from this state.

7. **virtūtis opīniō**: 'reputation for bravery.'

8. **ā cīvitāte**: with *missī*, 160. **cum**: introduces *vīdissent*.

9. **legiōnēs**: the Twelfth and Seventh.

11. **dīversōs**: a participle. **partēs**: 'directions.'

12. **domum**: 132.

13. **pulsōs, superātōs, potītōs**: sc. *esse*. **castrīs, impedīmentīs**: 163, *a*.

The tide of battle turns in favor of the Romans.

25. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgērī signīsque in ūnum locum collātīs duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs mīlitēs sibi ipsōs ad pugnam esse impedīmentō vīdit, quārtae cohortis omnibus centuriōnibus occīsīs signiferōque interfectō, signō āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē centuriōnibus aut vulnerātīs aut occīsīs, in hīs prīmipīlō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multīs gravibusque vulneribus cōnfectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset, reliquōs esse tardiōrēs et nōn nūllōs ab novissimīs dēsertō proeliō excēdere ac tēla vītāre, hostēs neque ā fronte ex īnferiōre locō subeuntēs intermit-

---

25. 1. **Caesar**: this is a long but not difficult sentence, though it has many subordinate clauses and phrases. Read it all through carefully in the Latin before attempting to translate. **cohortātiōne**: mentioned p. 278, ll. 10 and 11.

2. **urgērī**: 'hard pressed.' **signīs . . . collātīs**: 173.

3. **cōnfertōs**: 'crowded together'; they were becoming panic-stricken and were huddling together with no room to fight. **sibi, impedīmentō**: 156 and note. They were in the way of one another.

4. **ipsōs**: agrees with *mīlitēs*. **quārtae cohortēs**: with *centuriōnibus, signiferō*, and *signō*. On the divisions of the legion see p. xxviii; on the standards, p. xxxiv; on the centurions, p. xxix.

6. **reliquārum cohortium**: with *centuriōnibus*.

7. **in hīs**: sc. *centuriōnibus*. **prīmipīlō**: 'chief centurion.' See p. xxix. **Baculō**: mentioned several times in the Gallic war and frequently praised for his bravery.

8. **ut . . . posset**: result of *cōnfectō*, 232. From loss of blood Baculus was unable to stand up.

9. **esse** and the following pres. infinitives: ind. disc. depending on *vīdit* (l. 4).

10. **novissimīs**: 'the rear'; they could more easily leave their posts. **vītāre**: 'dodge.'

11. **neque subeuntēs intermittere**: 'did not cease coming up,' *i.e.* the enemy were advancing up the hill in an unbroken stream.

tere et ab utrōque latere īnstāre et rem esse in angustō vīdit, neque ūllum esse subsidium, quod summittī posset; scūtō ab novissimīs ūnī mīlitī dētrāctō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in prīmam aciem prōcessit centuriōnibusque nōminātim appellātīs reliquōs cohortātus mīlitēs signa īnferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiīs ūtī possent. Cuius adventū spē illātā mīlitibus ac redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōnspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmīs suīs rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

26. Caesar, cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōnstiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs mīlitum

---

1. **ab**: see 185, 1 (*b*). **rem . . . angustō**: 'that matters were in a critical condition.'

2. **subsidium**: the two newly enlisted legions, following the baggage train, were still too far away.

3. **scūtō . . . dētrāctō**: Caesar saved the day by plunging into the fight like a common soldier and inspiring his men to follow. **ab**: see note on *ab* above. **ūnī**: 'a.' **mīlitī**: 153. **quod . . . vēnerat**: implying that Caesar had a shield, which he sometimes carried.

4. **in prīmam aciem**: where the fighting was hottest. He was fearless, although the danger to his person must have been great.

5. **nōminātim**: he knew them by name. **signa īnferre**: 'to advance.' See p. xxxiv.

6. **manipulos laxāre**: 'to open up the ranks.' They had been huddling together (p. 283, l. 3). **quō . . . possent**: with *facilius;* 229, *a*.

7. **adventū**: the cause of *spē illātā*, 165. **mīlitibus**: 149, *b*.

8. **in cōnspectū imperātōris**: this inspired them to do their best.

9. **operam nāvāre**: 'to give a good account of themselves.' How lit.?

10. **tardātus est**: 'was checked.'

26. 11. **septimam legiōnem**: on the extreme right. See Plan.

12. **tribūnōs**: on these officers see p. xxix.

monuit, ut paulātim sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa signa in hostēs īnferrent. Quō factō cum aliīs aliī subsidium ferrent, neque timērent, nē āversī ab hoste circumvenīrentur, audācius resistere ac fortius pugnāre coepērunt.

Interim mīlitēs legiōnum duārum, quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedīmentīs fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō cursū incitātō in summō colle ab hostibus cōnspiciēbantur, et Titus Labiēnus castrīs hostium potītus et ex locō superiōre, quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur, cōnspicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs mīsit. Quī cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā, quō in locō rēs esset, quantōque in perīculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versārētur, cognōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta,

---

1. **sēsē coniungerent**: the two legions were apparently fighting separately. On the mood of the verb (and *īnferrent*) see 260. **conversa . . . īnferrent**: 'face about and charge the enemy.'

2. **aliīs aliī**: 'each to the other.'

3. **nē**: meaning? 264. **āversī**: 'in the rear.'

5. **legiōnum duārum**: the Thirteenth and Fourteenth.

6. **proeliō nūntiātō**: this abl. abs. gives the reason for *cursū incitātō*.

7. **in summō colle**: they were on higher ground and could be seen.

8. **castrīs . . . potītus**: Labienus, in command of the tenth legion, had crossed the river and taken possession of the enemy's camp (see p. 271, l. 5). **ex locō superiōre**: from the top of the hill on the south side of the river, where the enemy's camp was located, he could look across the river and see how desperately the Roman legions on that side were fighting.

10. **Quī**: the soldiers of the tenth legion. **cum . . . cognōvissent**: 235.

13. **nihil fēcērunt**: lit., 'they left nothing undone in regard to speed'; *i.e.* 'they went at their utmost speed.' **reliquī**: with *nihil*, 138.

27. 14. **est facta**: 'was wrought.'

ut nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus cōnfectī prōcubuissent, scūtīs innīxī proelium redintegrārent, cālōnēs perterritōs hostēs cōnspicātī etiam inermēs armātīs occurrerent, equitēs vērō, ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlērent, omnibus in locīs pugnandō sē legiōnāriīs mīlitibus praeferrent. At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt, ut, cum prīmī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus īnsisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus pugnārent; hīs dēiectīs et coacervātīs cadāveribus, quī superessent, ut ex tumulō tēla in nostrōs conicerent et pīla intercepta remitterent; ut nōn nēquīquam tantae virtūtis hominēs iūdicārī dēbēret ausōs esse trānsīre lātissimum flūmen, ascendere

---

1. **etiam**: 'even.' **prōcubuissent**: for the mood see 272.

2. **scūtīs**: 163, *b*. **redintegrārent, occurrerent, praeferrent**: introduced by *ut* (l. 1), 232.

3. **hostēs**: acc. case. **etiam inermēs** (nom. case): 'even unarmed.' **armātīs**: sc. *hostibus*. Why dat.?

4. **ut . . . dēlērent**: expresses the purpose of *praeferrent*, 229.

5. **pugnandō**: the gerund, 282. **sē . . . praeferrent**: 'vied with the legionary soldiers in showing themselves superior.' **mīlitibus**: 149, *b*.

7. **prīmī, proximī**: used like nouns. **iacentibus**: sc. *eīs*; 'their prostrate bodies.' How lit.? For the case see 149, *b*.

8. **īnsisterent, pugnārent**: 232. **ex**: 'on.' **hīs**: = the subj. of *īnsisterent* and *pugnārent*.

9. **quī . . . superessent**: antecedent is *eī* (= *hostēs*) to be supplied as the subj. of *conicerent* and *remitterent*; with the last two verbs supply *ut* (same constr. as *īnsisterent*, *pugnārent* above). **ut ex tumulō**: 'as from a mound of dead bodies.'

10. **intercepta remitterent**: make two verbs in Eng., 'picked up and threw back.'

11. **ut . . . dēbēret**: result clause, 232. **nōn nēquīquam**: with *ausōs esse*, the subj. of which is *hominēs*. The order of words is, *ut dēbēret iūdicārī hominēs tantae virtūtis nōn nēquīquam ausōs esse*, etc. **virtūtis**: 140.

altissimās rīpās, subīre inīquissimum locum, quae facilia ex difficillimīs animī magnitūdō redēgerat.

The Nervii surrender.

28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente ac nōmine Nerviōrum redāctō, maiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria ac palūdēs coniectōs dīxerāmus, hāc pugnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil impedītum, victīs nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnium, quī supererant, cōnsēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt, et in commemorandā cīvitātis calamitāte ex sexcentīs ad trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum mīlibus LX vix ad quīngentōs, quī arma ferre possent, sēsē redāctōs esse dīxērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, dīligentissimē cōnservāvit suīsque fīnibus atque oppidīs ūtī iussit et fīnitimīs imperāvit, ut ab iniūriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.

---

1. **facilia**: pred.

2. **animī**: 'courage.' Trans. the clause, 'which things, in themselves most difficult (lit., 'from most difficult things'), their greatness of courage had made easy.'

28. 3. **interneciōnem**: 'annihilation.'

5. **puerīs**: 'children.'

6. **dīxerāmus**: p. 271, l. 10. **cum**: introduces *arbitrārentur*? **victōribus . . . tūtum**: 'that there was no obstacle in the way of the victors and no safety for the conquered.' Sc. *esse*. For the case of *victōribus* and *victīs* see 151.

9. **cīvitātis**: 137.

10. **vix**: limits *quīngentōs*. **ex hominum . . . redāctōs**: this statement is probably exaggerated. At any rate the Nervii joined in the general uprising in Gaul five years later.

12. **misericordiā**: with *ūsus (esse)*, 163, *a*. On the case of *ūsus*, 274, *a*.

14. **fīnitimīs**: 149, *a*.

The Aduatuci gather in one stronghold, which Caesar besieges.

29. Aduatucī, dē quibus suprā scrīpsimus, cum omnibus cōpiīs auxiliō Nerviīs venīrent, hāc pugnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūnctīs oppidīs castellīsque dēsertīs sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnītum contulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimās rūpēs dēiectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter acclīvis aditus in lātitūdinem nōn amplius ducentōrum pedum relinquēbātur; quem locum duplicī altissimō mūrō mūnierant; tum magnī ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabēs in mūrō collocābant.

Ipsī erant ex Cimbrīs Teutonīsque prōgnātī, quī, cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, eīs impedīmentīs, quae sēcum agere ac portāre nōn poterant, citrā

---

29. 1. **suprā**: p. 271, l. 9. **cum**: this is not the prep. How do we know?

2. **auxiliō Nerviīs**: 156 and note.

3. **ex itinere**: *i.e.* immediately, without halting.

4. **ēgregiē**: limits *mūnītum* which in turn limits *oppidum* and should be trans. by a rel. clause in English. The Aduatuci were preparing to resist Caesar.

5. **Quod**: antecedent is *oppidum*. **cum**: 'although,' 251. **ex omnibus . . . partibus**: 'around it on all sides.'

7. **lēniter**: limits *acclīvis*, 'gently sloping.'

8. **pedum**: see both 141 and 162. There were high rocks all around except on one side, where there was an approach 200 feet wide.

9. **praeacūtās**: 'sharpened at the end,' so that they were pointed. This *oppidum Aduatucōrum* has been identified by some with the modern fortress-town of Namur, situated at the confluence of the Sambre and the Meuse, but others do not regard this identification as proved. See the Plan.

11. **Cimbrīs Teutonīsque**: mentioned before p. 253, l. 6. **prōgnātī**: 'descended.'

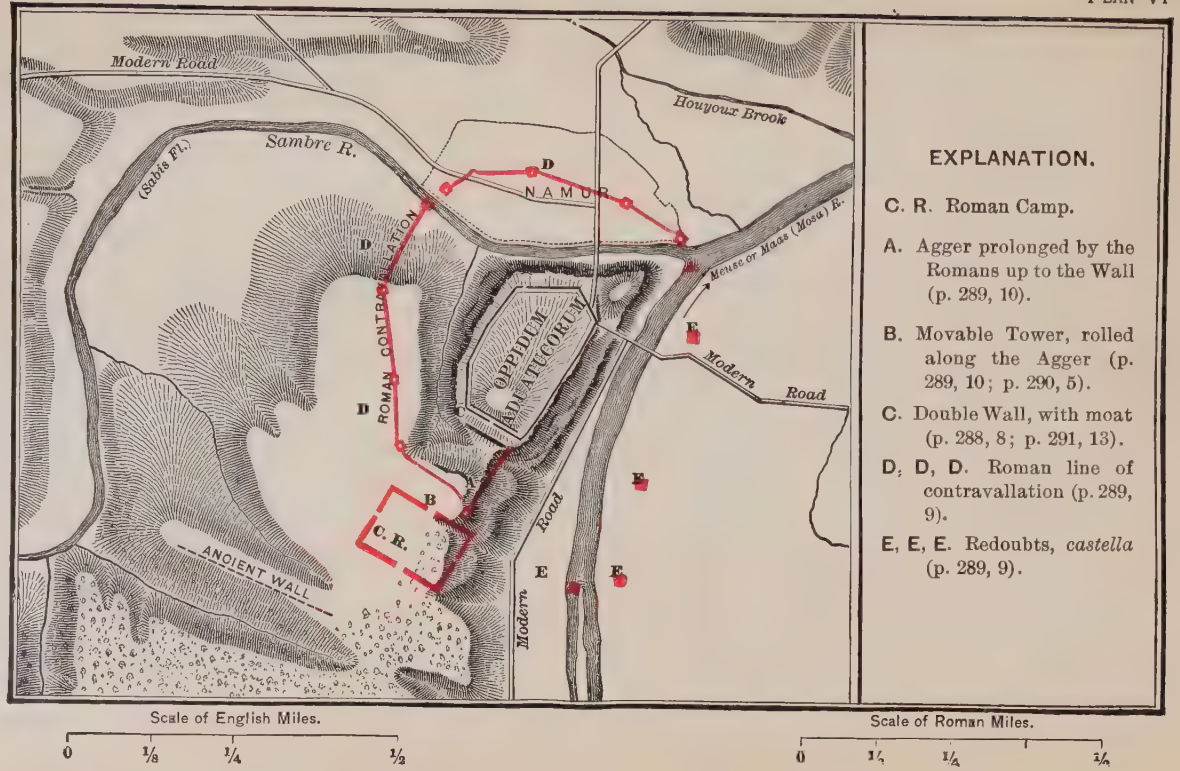
12. **impedīmentīs dēpositīs**: 173.

13. **agere**: refers to cattle. **portāre**: refers to baggage. **citrā**: the west side.

SIEGE OF THE STRONGHOLD OF THE ADUATUCI

Lib. II, 29–33

PLAN VI



flūmen Rhēnum dēpositīs cūstōdiam ex suīs ac praesidium sex mīlia hominum ūnā relīquērunt. Hī post eōrum obitum multōs annōs ā fīnitimīs exagitātī, cum aliās bellum īnferrent, aliās illātum dēfenderent, cōnsēnsū eōrum omnium pāce factā, hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgērunt.

30. Ac prīmō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulīsque proeliīs cum nostrīs contendēbant; posteā vāllō pedum XII, in circuitū XV mīlium crēbrīsque castellīs circummūnītī oppidō sēsē continēbant. Ubi vīneīs āctīs aggere exstrūctō turrim procul cōnstituī vīdērunt, prīmum irrīdēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcibus, quod tanta machinātiō ā tantō spatiō īnstituerētur: Quibusnam manibus aut quibus vīribus praesertim hominēs

---

1. **cūstōdiam, praesidium**: pred.

2. **eōrum**: those who went on in the invading army.

3. **annōs**: 130. **aliās . . . aliās**: adv. 'at one time . . . at another time.'

4. **illātum**: sc. *bellum*. The Aduatuci were the descendants of an original guard of 6000 Cimbri and Teutoni left here with their superfluous baggage. **eōrum**: = *fīnitimōrum*.

5. **domiciliō**: 156.

30. 6. **adventū**: 181. **nostrī**: with *exercitūs*.

7. **faciēbant**: sc. *Aduatucī*. **parvulīs**: 'insignificant.' On the meaning of the suffix, *-ulus*, see 109, *d*.

9. **circummūnītī**: the fortification was built by Caesar's army.

10. **vīneīs, aggere, turrim**: see notes on these words in chap. 12 and read pp. xliii f. **turrim cōnstituī**: 'that a tower was being built at a distance.' The tower was built out of range of the enemy's fire and was then moved on rollers up to the town. For the form *turrim* see 29.

11. **irrīdēre, increpitāre**: historical infinitives, 275. **irrīdēre**: 'jeered.'

12. **ā tantō spatiō**: 'at so great a distance.' **quod . . . īnstituerētur**: 'because, as they said, it was being erected, etc.,' 241.

13. **Quibusnam manibus**: 'with what hands, pray?' *-nam* expresses their taunting manner. **vīribus**: what is the nom. case?

tantulae statūrae (nam plērumque omnibus Gallīs prae magnitūdine corporum suōrum brevitās nostra contemptuī est) tantī oneris turrim in mūrō sēsē collocāre posse cōnfīderent?

They surrender, attempt treachery, and are sold into slavery.

31. Ubi vērō movērī et appropinquāre moenibus vīdērunt, novā atque inūsitātā speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī:

Nōn sē exīstimāre, Rōmānōs sine ope deōrum bellum gerere, quī tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre possent, sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī permittere dīxērunt. Ūnum petere ac dēprecārī: sī forte prō suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine, quam ipsī ab aliīs audīrent, statuisset, Aduatucōs esse cōnservandōs, nē sē armīs dēspoliāret. Sibi omnēs ferē fīnitimōs esse inimīcōs ac suae virtūtī invidēre; ā quibus sē dēfendere trāditīs armīs nōn

---

1. **tantulae**: 'so small.' **statūrae**: 140. The Romans were such little fellows! **plērumque**: 'as a rule.' **omnibus Gallīs**: 'in the estimation of all the Gauls'; 152. **prae**: 'in comparison with.'

2. **brevitās**: 'short stature.' **contemptuī**: 156, but trans. 'an object of contempt.' The Italians of southern Italy are to-day of short stature.

3. **oneris**: 140.

4. **cōnfīderent**: sc. *Rōmānī*, 267. *Quibusnam . . . cōnfīderent* expresses in ind. disc. what they said.

31. 5. **movērī et appropinquāre**: sc. *turrim* as subj.

6. **speciē**: 'sight,' 'spectacle.'

7. **locūtī**: sc. *sunt*. The remainder of the chap. is in ind. disc.

8. **ope**: 'help.'

9. **quī . . . possent**: the rel. clause expresses cause. **tantā celeritāte**: 'with so great speed,' 166.

11. **Ūnum**: 'one thing.' **prō**: 'in accordance with.'

13. **nē . . . dēspoliāret**: explains *Ūnum* above. **armīs**: 158.

15. **virtūtī**: 149, *a*. **trāditīs armīs**: expresses a condition, 173.

possent. Sibi praestāre, sī in eum cāsum dēdūcerentur, quamvīs fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī, quam ab hīs per cruciātum interficī, inter quōs dominārī cōnsuēssent.

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit:

Sē magis cōnsuētūdine suā quam meritō eōrum cīvitātem cōnservātūrum, sī prius, quam mūrum ariēs attigisset, sē dēdidissent; sed dēditiōnis nūllam esse condiciōnem nisi armīs trāditīs. Sē id, quod in Nerviīs fēcisset, factūrum fīnitimīsque imperātūrum, nē quam dēditīciīs populī Rōmānī iniūriam īnferrent.

Rē nūntiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur, facere dīxērunt. Armōrum magnā multitūdine dē mūrō in fossam, quae erat ante oppidum, iactā, sīc ut prope summam mūrī aggerisque altitūdinem acervī armōrum adaequārent, et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut posteā perspectum est, cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā, portīs patefactīs eō diē pāce sunt ūsī.

---

1. **Sibi praestāre**: 'that it was better for them.' **cāsum**: *i.e.* the surrender of their arms.

2. **quamvīs fortūnam**: 'any fate whatever.' **patī, interficī**: subj. of *praestāre*.

32. 5. **Sē magis . . . īnferrent**: ind. disc.

6. **ariēs**: see p. xliii for a description of the battering ram.

7. **dēdidissent**: for the fut. perf. of dir. disc. **sed dēditiōnis . . . trāditīs**: no good general could decide otherwise.

8. **in**: 'in the case of.'

9. **fīnitimīs, dēditīciīs**: why dat. case? **quam**: 'any.'

10. **īnferrent**: 260.

11. **dīxērunt**: sc. *Aduatucī*. **facere**: sc. *sē* as subj. and *ea* as obj., the antecedent of *quae*.

12. **multitūdine . . . iactā**: abl. abs. expressing time.

13. **prope summam adaequārent**: 'were almost as high as the top.'

14. **acervī**: subj. of *adaequārent*.

16. **ūsī**: 'kept.'

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī mīlitēsque ex oppidō exīre iussit, nē quam noctū oppidānī ā mīlitibus iniūriam acciperent. Illī, ante initō, ut intellēctum est, cōnsiliō, quod dēditiōne factā nostrōs praesidia dēductūrōs aut dēnique indīligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant, partim cum eīs, quae retinuerant et cēlāverant, armīs partim scūtīs ex cortice factīs aut vīminibus intextīs, quae subitō, ut temporis exiguitās postulābat, pellibus indūxerant, tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnītiōnēs ascēnsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiīs repente ex oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt.

Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperāverat, īgnibus significātiōne factā, ex proximīs castellīs eō concursum est, pugnātumque ab hostibus ita ācriter est, ut ā virīs fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtis inīquō locō contrā eōs, quī ex vāllō turribusque tēla iacerent, pugnārī dēbuit, cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs salūtis cōnsisteret. Occīsīs ad hominum mīlibus quattuor, reliquī in oppidum rēiectī sunt. Postrīdiē eius diēī refrāctīs portīs, cum iam dēfenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissīs mīlitibus nostrīs, sectiōnem eius oppidī ūniver-

---

33. 1. **sub vesperum**: 'toward evening,' or late afternoon.

2. **quam**: cf. the same word above, p. 291, l. 9. **noctū**: adv.

4. **dēductūrōs** (sc. *esse*): 'would withdraw.'

6. **quae**: antecedent is *armīs*.

9. **quā** ('where') . . . **vidēbātur**: to be taken closely with *ēruptiōnem*.

12. **ante**: what part of speech? **imperāverat**: apparently the watchful general anticipated some surprise. **īgnibus**: 'by signal fires,' 163.

13. **eō**: adv. **concursum est, pugnātum est**: 204.

14. **ut**: 'as.'

15. **eōs**: the Romans.

16. **cum** . . . **cōnsisteret**: they knew that they were fighting for their lives, 240.

sam Caesar vēndidit. Ab eīs, quī ēmerant, capitum numerus ad eum relātus est mīlium quīnquāgintā trium.

Several states along the coast are subdued by P. Crassus.

34. Eōdem tempore ā Pūbliō Crassō, quem cum legiōne ūnā mīserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitas, Esuviōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae cīvitātēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est, omnēs eās cīvitātēs in diciōnem potestātemque populī Rōmānī esse redāctās.

Envoys come from the Germans; winter quarters; a thanksgiving at Rome.

35. Hīs rēbus gestīs omnī Galliā pācātā, tanta huius bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est utī ab eīs nātiōnibus, quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent, lēgātī ad Caesarem mitterentur, quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesar, quod in Italiam Īllyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē revertī iussit.

---

1. **Caesar vēndidit**: the survivors were sold into slavery, 53,000 of them, as were also all their possessions. Traders and slave dealers accompanying the army no doubt quickly purchased the entire booty. Caesar had no mercy to show to those who proved treacherous.

2. **eum** : = *Caesarem*. **relātus est** : 'reported.' **mīlium** : 141.

34. 3. **Pūbliō Crassō** : the triumvir's son, mentioned in the campaign against Ariovistus (p. 246, l. 3).

4. **mīserat** : sc. *Caesar*. **Venetōs**, etc. : states along the west coast. Find their location on the Map. **Coriosolitas** : Greek acc. See 38.

6. **Ōceanum** : the Atlantic.

35. 10. **incolerent** : for the mood see 272.

11. **datūrās, factūrās** : sc. *esse*. The fem. form is used in agreement with *sē* (= *nātiōnēs*). **pollicērentur** : 230.

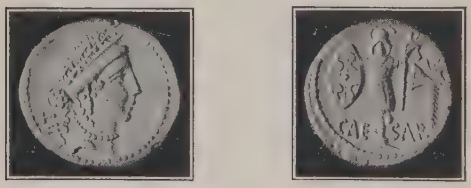
13. **properābat** : to perform his administrative duties as governor of Gaul. **initā . . . aestāte** : 'at the beginning of the next summer.'

Ipse, in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonōs, quaeque cīvitātēs propinquae hīs locīs erant, ubi bellum gesserat, legiōnibus in hīberna dēductīs, in Italiam profectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris in diēs quīndecim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūllī.

1. **in Carnutēs . . . Turonōs**: with *dēductīs*. **quaeque cīvitātēs**: = *et in eās cīvitātēs quae*.

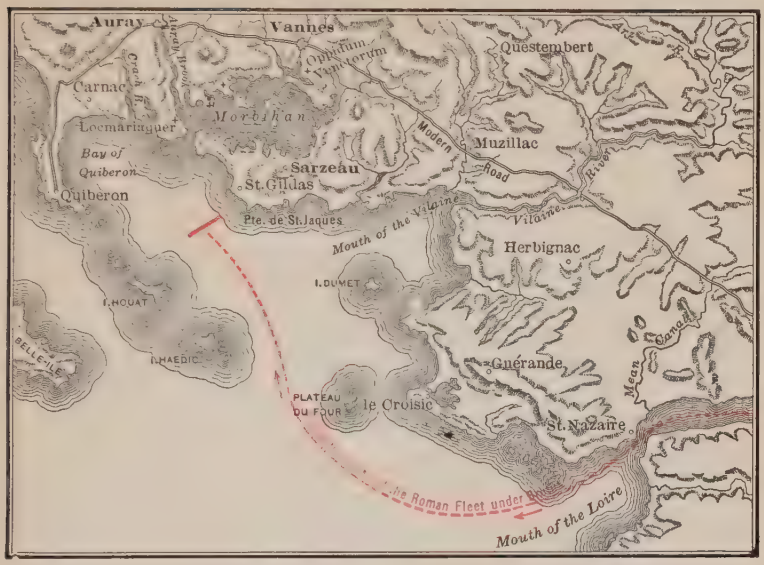
4. **litterīs**: 'despatches' reporting the victories of the army. **supplicātiō**: celebrated by holidays and thanksgiving services in the temples at Rome.

5. **quod**: 'a thing which.' **nūllī**: what case? 49.



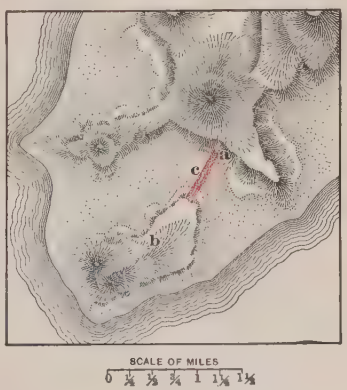
A Silver Denarius.

This coin, struck about 49 B.C., represents on one side a head of Pietas and on the other a trophy of Gallic arms.



EXPLANATION

Caesar's fleet was built on the Loire (Liger) and placed in command of Brutus. From the mouth of the Loire it followed a northerly course till it met the fleet of the Veneti (chap. 14).



OPERATIONS AGAINST A TOWN OF THE VENETI (III, 12)

a. Mainland.

b. Stronghold, *oppidum*, surrounded by water at high tide.

c. Parallel dikes over land submerged except at low tide. The dikes, or embankments, were high enough to keep out the water at high tide.

BOOK III

The War with the Veneti

Necessity compels Caesar to make war on the Veneti.

10. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendī, quās suprā ostendimus, sed multa tamen Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant: iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, rebelliō facta post dēditiōnem, dēfectiō datīs obsidibus, tot cīvitātum coniūrātiō, in prīmīs nē, hāc parte neglēctā, reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrārentur. Itaque cum intellegeret omnēs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbiliter celeriterque excitārī, omnēs autem hominēs nātūrā lībertātī studēre et condiciōnem servitūtis ōdisse, priusquam plūrēs cīvitātēs cōnspīrārent, partiendum sibi ac lātius distribuendum exercitum putāvit.

---

10. 1. **bellī ġerendī**: 283. We say '*in* waging war.'

2. **multā**: 'many considerations'; lit. 'many things,' explained by *iniūria*, *rebelliō*, *dēfectiō*, *coniūrātiō*, and *nē . . . arbitrārentur*. Note that *nē . . . arbitrārentur* is the equivalent of a noun; sc. *timor* and see 264.

3. **retentōrum**: see 280 and trans. accordingly. **equitum**: here means 'knights,' the order to which Caesar's tribunes commonly belonged (see note to p. 82, l. 3); not the cavalry, who were foreigners (see Introd. p. xxxv).

4. **datīs obsidibus**: the abl. abs. has the same general force as *post dēditiōnem* and the participle is used like *retentōrum*, l. 3.

5. **hāc . . . neglēctā**: equivalent to a condition.

6. **idem**: 'the same conduct.' We might have expected a plural, referring to the acts included in *multa*, l. 2.

8. **nātūrā**: 166. *Nātūrā* has the force of an adverb, 'naturally.'

9. **priusquam . . . cōnspīrārent**: that is, *to prevent* their conspiring; see 239.

He distributes his forces, giving Brutus command of the fleet and himself leading the land forces.

11. Itaque Titum Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, quī proximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huic mandat Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō contineat Germānōsque, quī auxiliō ā Belgīs arcessītī dīcēbantur, sī per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsīre cōnentur, prohibeat.

Pūblium Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnāriīs XII et magnō numerō equitātūs in Aquītaniam proficīscī iubet, nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur. Quīntum Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitas Lexoviōsque mittit, quī eam manum distinendam cūret. Decimum Brūtum adulēscentem classī Gallicīsque nāvibus, quās ex Pictonibus et Santonīs reliquīsque pācātīs regiōnibus convenīre iusserat, praeficit et cum prīmum possit in Venetōs proficīscī iubet. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiīs contendit.

The strongholds of the Veneti and their formidable ships.

12. Erant eius modī ferē sitūs oppidōrum, ut posita in extrēmīs lingulīs prōmunturiīsque neque pedibus aditum

---

11. 3. **adeat . . . contineat**: 260.
4. **auxiliō**: 156. **arcessītī**: sc. *esse;* **274, *a***.
5. **nāvibus**: 163, *d*.
12. **distinendam**: 285.
16. **pedestribus cōpiīs**: 167.

12. 18. **eius modī**: 'such'; lit. 'of such a kind,' 140. **ferē**: 'as a rule.' **posita**: agreeing with *oppida* understood, implied in *oppidōrum*.
19. **extrēmīs**: 192.

habērent, cum ex altō sē aestus incitāvisset, quod bis accidit semper hōrārum XII spatiō, neque nāvibus, quod rūrsus minuente aestū nāvēs in vadīs afflīctārentur. Ita utrāque rē oppidōrum oppugnātiō impediēbātur; ac sī quandō, magnitūdine operis forte superātī, extrūsō marī aggere ac

A Roman War-ship.

It is filled with armed soldiers. The ship was propelled by oars. Notice the beaked prow for ramming a hostile vessel.

---

1. **incitāvisset**: we might have expected the indic. (235, *a*), but the verb is attracted to the mood of *habērent*. **quod**: the antecedent is the preceding clause. **bis accidit**: according to our reckoning a high tide occurs but *once* every twelve hours, but Caesar is counting in the inclusive Roman fashion; cf. 183.

2. **neque nāvibus**: sc. *aditum habērent*.

3. **afflīctārentur**: 'would be wrecked,' sc. *sī cōnātī essent*. A future condition transferred to past time. **utrāque rē**: that is, both by the rise and the fall of the tide.

5. **aggere ac mōlibus**: 'huge dikes'; 288. For the meaning of *mōlēs* see Vocab.

mōlibus atque hīs oppidī moenibus adaequātīs, suīs fortūnīs dēspērāre coeperant, magnō numerō nāvium appulsō, cuius reī summam facultātem habēbant, sua dēportābant omnia sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant; ibi sē rūrsus īsdem opportūnitātibus locī dēfendēbant.

Haec eō facilius magnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae nāvēs tempestātibus dētinēbantur, summaque erat vāstō atque apertō marī, magnīs aestibus, rārīs ac prope nūllīs portibus, difficultās nāvigandī.

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae armātaeque erant: carīnae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam nostrārum nāvium, quō facilius vada ac dēcessum aestūs excipere possent; prōrae admodum ērēctae atque item puppēs, ad magnitūdinem flūctuum tempestātumque accommodātae; nāvēs tōtae factae ex rōbore ad quamvīs vim et contumēliam perferendam; trānstra ex pedālibus in altitūdinem trabibus,

---

1. **fortūnīs**: dative with *dēspērāre;* 149, *a.*

2. **cuius reī**: = *quārum*, referring to *nāvium.*

4. **īsdem**: for *īīsdem.*

5. **opportūnitātibus**: 169.

6. **faciēbant**: 'continued to do'; 209.

7. **summaque**: agreeing with *difficultās*, the position gives emphasis.

8. **vāstō . . . portibus**: abl. abs. denoting cause; 173.

13. 10. **ipsōrum**: 'their own,' referring to the Veneti.

11. **aliquantō**: from *aliquantum;* 168. **plāniōrēs**: 'flatter'; that is, the line from stem to stern was less curved. **nostrārum nāvium**: sc. *carīnae.*

12. **excipere**: 'encounter, cope with.'

15. **tōtae**: 'throughout.' **ad . . . perferendam**: 28[3]. **quamvīs**: the pronoun, from *quīvīs.* **contumēliam**: 'buffeting.'

16. **trānstra**: 'cross-beams,' to strengthen the hull and support the deck; not 'thwarts,' since the ships had no rowers. **in altitūdinem**: we should say 'in thickness.' *In altitūdinem* really means 'in height,' from bottom to top of the beams.

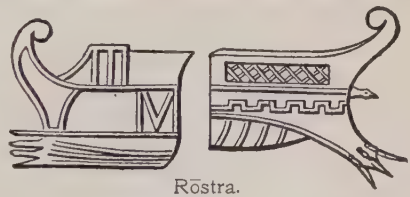
cōnfīxa clāvīs ferreīs digitī pollicis crassitūdine; ancorae prō fūnibus ferreīs catēnīs revinctae; pellēs prō vēlīs alūtaeque tenuiter cōnfectae, hae sīve propter līnī inopiam atque eius ūsūs īnscientiam, sīve eō, quod est magis vērī simile, quod tantās tempestātēs Ōceanī tantōsque impetūs ven- 5
tōrum sustinērī ac tanta onera nāvium regī vēlīs nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur.

Cum hīs nāvibus nostrae classī eius modī congressus erat, ut ūnā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum praestāret, reliqua prō locī nātūrā, prō vī tempestātum illīs essent aptiōra et accom- 10
modātiōra. Neque enim hīs nostrae rōstrō nocēre poterant (tanta in eīs erat fīrmitūdō), neque propter altitūdinem

---

1. **crassitūdine**: 170. The gen. *digitī pollicis* takes the place of the usual adjective.

2. **pellēs**: 'hides.' **alutae tenuiter cōnfectae**: 'leather dressed so as to be thin.' This would be lighter than the *pellēs*. Apparently both were used.



Rōstra.

Beaks of Roman warships, fastened to the prow and used for ramming the enemy's vessel.

4. **vērī simile**: 'probable'; lit., 'like the truth.' *Simile* is used as a subst. and governs a gen. As an adj. it takes the dat.

5. **tantōs impetūs ventōrum**: 'such violent winds.' In the same way trans. *tanta onera nāvium*.

6. **regī**: note the quantity, which shows that the word is from *regō*. What part of the verb? **nōn satis commodē**: modifies *posse*. Hence it is to be taken with *sustinērī*, as well as with *regī*.

8. **classī**: 154. **eius modī**: see note on p. 296, l. 18, above.

9. **ūnā**: 'alone.' **pulsū rēmōrum**: *i.e.* in having oars, since the ships of the Veneti were without them; see p. 302, l. 3, below. **reliqua**: 'but everything else'; 290.

10. **prō**: 'considering'; that is, 'because of.'

11. **hīs**: 148, *a*. **nostrae**: sc. *nāvēs*. **rōstrō**: the prow of the Roman warship had a brazen beak, for ramming hostile vessels.

facile tēlum adigēbātur, et eādem dē causā minus commodē cōpulīs continēbantur. Accēdēbat ut, cum saevīre ventus coepisset et sē ventō dedissent, et tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadīs cōnsisterent tūtius et ab aestū relictae nihil saxa et cautēs timērent; quārum rērum omnium nostrīs nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

Brutus cripples the enemy's fleet and wins a decisive victory.

14. Complūribus expugnātīs oppidīs Caesar, ubi intellēxit frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī, neque hostium fugam captīs oppidīs reprimī neque eīs nocērī posse, statuit exspectandam classem. Quae ubi convēnit ac prīmum ab hostibus vīsa est, circiter CCXX nāvēs eōrum parātissimae atque omnī genere armōrum ōrnātissimae, profectae ex portū nostrīs adversae cōnstitērunt: neque satis Brūtō, quī classī praeerat, vel tribū-

---

1. **minus commodē**: that is, 'less conveniently' than if the enemy's ships were not so high.

2. **cōpulīs**: the Romans endeavored to make the contest as much like a battle on land as possible.

3. **coepisset . . . dedissent**: 272; cf. *incitāvisset*, p. 297, l. 1. **ferrent . . . cōnsisterent . . . timērent**: 261.

4. **in vadīs cōnsisterent**: 'came to anchor in shoal water.' **ab aestū**: abl. of agent; personification of *aestū*.

5. **nihil**: 125, *a*.

6. **nāvibus**: 155. **cāsus**: 'occurrence,' with the idea of disaster.

14. 8. **sūmī**: 'undertaken,' 'expended.' **captīs oppidīs**: the abl. abs. denotes means; 173.

9. **eīs nocērī**: 150. **exspectandam**: sc. *esse* and *sibi*.

10. **Quae**: 202.

11. **parātissimae . . . ōrnātissimae**: 'well prepared and provided'; 193.

12. **armōrum**: used generally, 'equipment.'

13. **neque satis Brūtō . . . vel tribūnīs . . . cōnstābat**: 'and Brutus and the tribunes were not quite sure'; note the lit. trans.

nīs mīlitum centuriōnibusque, quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtae, cōnstābat quid agerent aut quam ratiōnem pugnae īnsisterent. Rōstrō enim nocērī nōn posse cognōverant; turribus autem excitātīs, tamen hās altitūdō puppium ex barbarīs nāvibus superābat, ut neque ex īnferiōre locō satis commodē tēla adigī possent et missa ā Gallīs gravius acciderent.

Ūna erat magnō ūsuī rēs praeparāta ā nostrīs, falcēs praeacūtae īnsertae affīxaeque longuriīs, nōn absimilī fōrmā mūrālium falcium. Hīs cum fūnēs quī antemnās ad mālōs dēstinābant comprehēnsī adductīque erant, nāvigiō rēmīs

2. **agerent . . . īnsisterent**: 259, *a*; for *quid agāmus . . . īnsistāmus?*

3. **Rōstrō**: 163; with *nocērī*, sc. *eīs*. **turribus . . . excitātīs**: what does the abl. denote? observe *tamen* and see 173.

4. **ex barbarīs nāvibus**: equivalent in meaning to *barbarārum nāvium*.

6. **missa**: sc. *tēla*. **gravius**: 'with greater force,' because thrown from a higher position.

7. **Ūna**: with *rēs*. **ūsuī**: 156.

8. **praeacūtae**: *prae-* has intensive force, 'very sharp.' **absimilī fōrmā**: 170.

9. **falcium**: sc. *eī* (= *fōrmae*): cf. *plāniōrēs quam nostrārum nāvium*, p. 298, l. 11. For the *falx mūrālis*, used for tearing down walls, see Plate IV, 5. **fūnēs . . . dēstinābant**: 'the halyards,' by which the sails were hoisted and which were made fast at or near the gunwale. It is inconceivable, however, that Caesar should have described the halyards as *fūnēs quī antemnās ad mālōs dēstinābant*. Viewing the battle from a distance, he did not clearly see what was done and assumed that the ropes which bound the yards to the masts were cut. See *Classical Weekly*, vol. XI, pp. 106 f.

10. **adductī erant**: 'drawn taut'; lit. '*towards*' the Roman ships. For the mode see 235, *a*.

Falx mūrālis.

A wall-hook, used for pulling down walls or for dragging the besieged from the walls.

incitātō praerumpēbantur. Quibus abscīsīs antemnae necessāriō concidēbant ut, cum omnis Gallicīs nāvibus spēs in vēlīs armāmentīsque cōnsisteret, hīs ēreptīs omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur. Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostrī mīlitēs facile superābant atque eō magis, quod in cōnspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius factum latēre posset; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra, unde erat propinquus dēspectus in mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur.

15. Dēiectīs, ut dīximus, antemnīs, cum singulās bīnae ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, mīlitēs summā vī trānscendere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbarī fierī animadvertērunt, expugnātīs complūribus nāvibus, cum eī reī nūllum reperīrētur auxilium, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Ac iam conversīs in eam partem nāvibus quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia ac tranquillitās exstitit, ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negōtium cōnficiendum maximē fuit opportūna; nam singulās nostrī cōnsectātī expugnāvērunt, ut perpaucae

---

1. **praerumpēbantur**: 'were rent apart.' *Prae-* seems to be intensive, as in *praeacūtae*.

2. **concidēbant**: 'fell in a heap'; the imperf. denotes several occurrences of the act; 212: **nāvibus**: 151, *a*.

3. **in vēlīs armāmentīsque**: that is, they had no oars; see note to p. 299, l. 9, above.

4. **erat . . . positum in**: 'depended upon.'

7. **fortius**: 193.

15. 11. **bīnae ac ternae**: we should say 'two *or* three ships at a time.'

12. **circumsteterant**: see note on *adductī erant*, p. 301, l. 10.

15. **eī reī**: that is, the capture of their ship by the device described.

17. **quō**: = *in quam* (*partem*).

20. **singulās**: 'one by one'; sc. *nāvēs*.

ex omnī numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervēnerint, cum ab hōrā ferē quārtā ūsque ad sōlis occāsum pugnārētur.

16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtīusque ōrae maritimae cōnfectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventūs, omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis, in quibus aliquid cōnsilī aut dignitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum, nāvium quod ubīque fuerat, in ūnum locum coēgerant; quibus āmissīs reliquī neque quō sē reciperent, neque quem ad modum oppida dēfenderent, habēbant. Itaque sē suaque omnia Caesarī dēdidērunt. In quōs eō gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quō dīligentius in reliquum tempus ā barbarīs iūs lēgātōrum cōnservārētur. Itaque omnī senātū necātō reliquōs sub corōnā vēndidit.

---

1. **pervēnerint**: 223.

2. **cum**: 'although.' **hōrā . . . quārtā**: about ten o'clock; see 183.

16. 4. **cum . . . tum**: 'not only . . . but also.' **iuventūs**: the men of military age.

6. **nāvium . . . fuerant**: 'all the ships that they had anywhere'; for the case of *nāvium* see 138.

8. **reciperent . . . dēfenderent**: 'a place to which to retreat or any means of defending'; a rel. clause of purpose.

10. **gravius**: 'with special severity'; 193. **vindicandum**: sc. *esse* and *sibi*, 'that he ought to punish them.'

12. **sub corōnā**: 'as slaves.' When slaves were offered for sale garlands were put upon their heads.

Antemna.

In the Roman ships the yards were not lowered with the sails, but the sails were brailed up upon the yards.

BOOK IV

First Invasion of Britain

Caesar prepares to invade Britain.

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsī in hīs locīs, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriōnēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficīscī contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallicīs bellīs hostibus nostrīs inde sumministrāta auxilia intellegēbat et, sī tempus annī ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen magnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābātur,

---

In the third year of the Gallic War, 56 B.C., the events of which are described in Book III, Caesar directed operations in western Gaul, the account of which is enlivened by the narration of an exciting sea battle with the maritime state of the Veneti. In the fourth year of the war, 55 B.C., the events of which are described in Book IV, Caesar entered Germany, crossing the Rhine river on a pile bridge which took him ten days to build. But particularly attractive, because of its romantic interest, is the account of Caesar's first invasion of Britain, a land which then seemed to the Romans to be at the very end of the world.

20. 1. **parte . . . reliquā**: abl. abs. expressing cause.

2. **ad septentriōnēs vergit**: 'lies to the north.' Examine the word, *septentriō*, in the Vocab.

4. **hostibus**: with *sumministrāta*. The undoubted fact that Gaul received reënforcements from Britain would be a sufficient excuse for invading the country. Possibly Caesar thought that the political effect in Rome of the news of the invasion would be good. But besides this he had the spirit of an explorer, and he wished to see with his own eyes this all but unknown land. He was the first Roman to do so, and the recorded history of Britain virtually begins with his account.

5. **sī**: 'even though.'

6. **sibi ūsuī**: 156.

sī modo īnsulam adīsset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cognōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallīs erant incognita. Neque enim temere praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque eīs ipsīs quicquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs, quae sunt contrā Galliās, nōtum est. Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique mercātōribus, neque quanta esset īnsulae magnitūdō, neque quae aut

Cliffs near Dover.

The chalk cliffs (*colles*) rise perpendicularly to a height of from 350 to 400 feet and prevented Caesar's landing at this point.

---

1. **adīsset, perspexisset, cognōvisset**: would be fut. perf. indic. in dir. disc.

3. **illō**: adv.; 'to that country.'

4. **eīs**: the traders.

5. **contrā**: 'opposite.' **Galliās**: read the first sentence of Book I, chap. 1.

7. **quanta esset**: this and the fol. indirect questions depend on *reperīre* (p. 306, l. 3). 259.

quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus īnstitūtīs ūterentur, neque quī essent ad maiōrum nāvium multitūdinem idōneī portūs, reperīre poterat.

21. Ad haec cognōscenda, prius quam perīculum faceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus Gaium Volusēnum cum nāvī longā praemittit. Huic mandat, ut, explōrātīs omnibus rēbus, ad sē quam prīmum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in Morinōs proficīscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trāiectus. Hūc nāvēs undique ex fīnitimīs regiōnibus et, quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum effēcerat classem, iubet convenīre.

Interim cōnsiliō eius cognitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus īnsulae cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt, quī polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus audītīs, līberāliter pollicitus hortātusque, ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit et cum eīs ūnā Commium, quem ipse

---

1. **incolerent**: sc. *eam* (= *Britanniam*).

2. **quibus īnstitūtīs**: 163, *a*. **quī**: with *portūs*. *quī* is the interrogative adj.; see 84.

3. **idōneī**: pred.

21. 5. **perīculum**: 'attempt.' **faceret**: 239.

6. **idōneum**: pred.; 'competent.' **nāvī longā**: 'a galley,' or war-ship, propelled by oars. They were light and swift.

8. **quam prīmum**: 'as soon as possible,' 194. **revertātur**: 260.

9. **brevissimus**: the channel was narrowest here. The place from which Caesar sailed to Britain was probably Portus Itius, the modern Boulogne. See Map.

11. **quam**: antecedent is *classem*. **superiōre**: 'previous.'

13. **eius**: = *Caesaris*.

15. **quī polliceantur**: 'to promise,' 230. **imperiō**: 149, *b*.

17. **permanērent**: 260.

18. **quem, rēgem**: 127.

Atrebātibus superātīs rēgem ibi cōnstituerat, cuius et virtūtem et cōnsilium probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur, cuiusque auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus magnī habēbātur, mittit. Huic imperat, quās possit, adeat cīvitātes hortēturque, ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur, sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus, perspectīs regiōnibus omnibus, quantum eī facultātis darī potuit, quī nāvī ēgredī ac sē barbarīs committere nōn audēret, quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur, quaeque ibi perspexisset, renūntiat.

22. Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex magnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vēnērunt, quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōnsiliō excūsārent, quod hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōnsuētūdinis imperītī bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea, quae imperāsset, factūrōs pollicērentur. Hōc sibi Caesar satis opportūnē accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem

---

1. **ibi**: *i.e.* among the Atrebates. **cuius**: antecedent is *Commium* (p. 306, l. 18).

3. **magnī**: pred. gen. of value. See 142 and note.

4. **Huic**: 149, *a*. **quās**: antecedent is *cīvitātēs*. **possit**: sc. *adīre*. **adeat, hortētur**: sc. *ut*, 260.

5. **sē**: Caesar.

7. **quantum . . . potuit**: 'as far as opportunity could be afforded one.' **eī**: antecedent of *quī*. **facultātis**: with *quantum*, 138.

8. **audēret**: why subjunctive? See 242. Trans. *quī* by 'since he.'

9. **renūntiat**: notice the large number of cases of historical pres. in this chap., 208.

22. 10. **causā**: 282, note.

11. **morātur**: 236.

12. **cōnsiliō**: refers to matters described in Book III. **excūsārent**: why subjunctive?

13. **barbarī, imperītī**: in the pred., give the reason for *bellum fēcissent*. **cōnsuētūdinis**: 143. For the mood of *fēcissent* see 241.

15. **Hōc**: subj. of *accidisse*.

16. **hostem**: obj. of *relinquere*.

relinquere volēbat neque bellī gerendī propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs Britanniae antepōnendās iūdicābat, magnum eīs numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductīs eōs in fidem recēpit.

Nāvibus circiter LXXX onerāriīs coāctīs contrāctīsque, quod satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs exīstimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat, quaestōrī, lēgātīs praefectīsque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant XVIII onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā mīlibus passuum VIII ventō tenēbantur, quō minus in eundem portum venīre possent; hās equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Q. Titūriō Sabīnō et L. Aurunculeiō Cottae lēgātīs in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum, ā quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant, dūcendum dedit; P. Sulpicium Rūfum lēgātum cum

---

1. **bellī**: with *facultātem*.

2. **tantulārum**: note the meaning of the diminutive ending, *-ulus*, 109, *d*.

3. **Britanniae**: dat. case with *antepōnendās* (sc. *esse*). 149, *b*.

6. **Nāvibus onerāriīs**: 'transports.'

7. **quod**: rel. pron. having as its antecedent the whole idea contained in *Nāvibus . . . onerāriīs;* trans. 'a number which, etc.' **satis**: pred. There were perhaps about 100 men on each transport. The Tenth and the Seventh legions were taken.

8. **quod . . . habēbat**: 'What galleys he had besides' he assigned to the quaestor, etc. **nāvium**: 138.

9. **Hūc accēdēbant**: 'in addition to these there were.' How lit.? See note to p. 191, l. 4.

10. **eō locō**: Portus Itius. **ā**: 'away.'

11. **tenēbantur**: the cavalry transports were held by contrary winds at a port, now called Ambleteuse, eight Roman miles up the coast. **quō . . . possent**: 'from being able to make the same port' (*i.e.* where Caesar was, at Portus Itius). See 262.

15. **dūcendum**: gerundive with *exercitum* (l. 12). For the trans. see 285.

eō praesidiō, quod satis esse arbitrābātur, portum tenēre iussit.

He sets sail.

23. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus, nactus idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit equitēsque in ulteriōrem portum prōgredī et nāvēs cōnscendere et sē sequī iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēī circiter quārtā cum prīmīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspexit. Cuius locī haec erat nātūra, atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbātur, utī ex locīs superiōribus in lītus tēlum adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum

---

1. **portum tenēre**: to insure a safe landing on their return.

23. 3. **idōneam tempestātem**: 'favorable weather.'

4. **tertiā ferē vigiliā**: it was about midnight. **solvit**: sc. *nāvēs*, 'weighed anchor,' 'set sail.' This was on the night of August 25. "It was just five days before the full moon; and high tide that evening was about six o'clock. About midnight the moon set, and we may suppose that, like the ships of William when he sailed to encounter Harold, each vessel carried a lantern," Holmes, *Ancient Britain*, p. 314.

5. **ulteriōrem portum**: see note on *tenēbantur* above (p. 308, l. 11). **cōnscendere**: 'board.'

6. **Ā quibus . . . administrātum**: the cavalry were slow in carrying out Caesar's orders.

7. **ipse**: Caesar with his fleet. **hōrā . . . quārtā**: about nine o'clock in the morning. See 183 (end). **prīmīs nāvibus**: the swifter galleys.

8. **in . . . collibus**: they approached Britain at Dover (see Plan); above the strand and for several miles to the northeast and southwest rise precipitous cliffs of chalk; see p. 305. Standing on these (*expositās*) Caesar saw groups of armed natives; they had heard long before of Caesar's preparations (see p. 306, l. 13).

9. **haec**: 'such.'

12. **dum** ('until') . . . **convenīrent**: with *expectāvit*, 238.

reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent, ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs exspectāvit.

Interim lēgātīs tribūnīsque mīlitum convocātīs, et quae ex Volusēnō cognōvisset, et quae fierī vellet, ostendit monuitque, ut reī mīlitāris ratiō, maximē ut maritimae rēs postulārent, ut quae celerem atque īnstabilem mōtum habērent, ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab eīs administrārentur. Hīs dīmissīs et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātīs ancorīs circiter mīlia passuum septem ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō ac plānō lītore nāvēs cōnstituit.

The natives resist his landing.

24. At barbarī, cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō equitātū et essedāriīs, quō plērumque genere in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs

---

1. **ad hōram nōnam**: until nearly three o'clock in the afternoon. **in ancorīs**: 'at anchor.'

3. **convocātīs**: to come on board his own boat for a council.

5. **ut**: 'as.'

6. **postulārent**: for the mood see 272. **ut quae**: 'since they,' *i.e. maritimae rēs*, the antecedent.

7. **habērent**: 'involved.' **ad nūtum**: *i.e.* orders were to be carried out on the instant. **administrārentur**: sc. *ut*, depends on *monuit* (l. 4), 260.

8. **aestum**: the tide turned up channel toward the northeast.

9. **secundum**: adj., 'favorable.' **sublātīs**: 'weighed.'

10. **ab eō locō**: at Dover. **apertō ac plānō lītore**: in the neighborhood of Deal. The chalk cliffs had disappeared and there was a level strand here suitable for landing.

24. 12. **cōnsiliō**: the 'intention' of Caesar to find a good landing place.

13. **essedāriīs**: the Britons' method of fighting with chariots is described in detail later, chap. 33. **quō genere**: 'a kind of warriors (*i.e. essedāriī*), which they are accustomed to use, etc.'

nāvibus ēgredī prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter magnitūdinem nisi in altō cōnstituī nōn poterant, mīlitibus autem, ignōtīs locīs, impedītīs manibus, magnō et gravī onere armōrum oppressīs simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in flūctibus cōnsistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum, cum illī aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressī, omnibus membrīs expedītīs, nōtissimīs locīs, audācter tēla conicerent et equōs īnsuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterritī atque huius omnīnō generis pugnae imperītī nōn eādem alacritāte ac studiō, quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliīs cōnsuērant, ūtēbantur.

But the Romans succeed in disembarking.

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitātior et mōtus ad ūsum expedītior, paulum removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōnstituī atque inde fundīs, sagittīs, tormentīs hostēs prōpellī ac summovērī

---

1. **nāvibus ēgredī**: 'from landing.' The inf. is sometimes used with *prohibēre*, but see 262. **prohibēbant**: an attempted action, 'they tried to prevent.'

2. **nisi in altō**: 'except in deep water.'

3. **mīlitibus**: with *dēsiliendum* (l. 5) and the fol. gerundives, 155. **locīs**: 175. **impedītīs**: by their shields and javelins.

4. **oppressīs**: with *mīlitibus*.

5. **cōnsistendum**: 'keep their foothold.'

6. **cum**: 'while.' **illī**: the enemy.

9. **īnsuēfactōs**: 'trained,' *i.e.* to go into the water.

10. **generis**: with *imperītī*, 143.

25. 13. **Quod**: *i.e.* the way in which his men were handicapped.

14. **inūsitātior**: 'quite unfamiliar,' 193. The *nāvēs longae* were narrower and longer and were propelled by oars.

16. **latus apertum**: the enemy's right flank.

17. **tormentīs**: see pp. xliv f.

iussit; quae rēs magnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit. Nam et nāvium figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitātō genere tormentōrum permōtī barbarī cōnstitērunt ac paulum modo pedem rettulērunt.

Atque nostrīs mīlitibus cunctantibus, maximē propter altitūdinem maris, quī decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, obtestātus deōs, ut ea rēs legiōnī fēlīciter ēvenīret, 'Dēsilīte,' inquit, 'commīlitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego certē meum reī pūblicae atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō.' Hōc cum vōce magnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē, nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus cum cōnspexissent, subsecūtī hostibus appropinquārunt.

26. Pugnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque fīrmiter īnsistere neque

---

1. **ūsuī**: 156.

3. **cōnstitērunt**: 'stood still.'

5. **maximē**: 'especially.'

6. **quī**: antecedent is *is* to be supplied as subj. of *inquit* (l. 8). **ferēbat**: he was the *aquilifer* of the legion. On the *aquila* see p. xxxiv.

8. **commīlitōnēs**: 'comrades,' a most effective term of address. **vultis**: see 100. **prōdere**: 'surrender.' The 'eagle' meant as much to the Roman soldier as the flag to a modern army. Is the eagle still used by any country as a national symbol?

9. **officium praestiterō**: 'I shall have performed *my* duty.' The *meum* is emphatic. Why does Caesar give here the exact words of the *aquilifer* instead of expressing it in ind. disc.?

10. **magnā**: 'loud.'

12. **inter sē**: 'one another.' **tantum dēdecus**: see note above on *prōdere*. **ūniversī**: 'all together.'

13. **ex . . . nāvibus**: to be taken closely with the subj. of *cōnspexissent*; 'those on the nearest ships.'

26. 15. **Pugnātum est**: 204.

16. **ōrdinēs servāre**: 'to keep the ranks.'

signa subsequī poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvī, quibuscumque signīs occurrerat, sē aggregābat, magnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō, nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi ex lītore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōnspexerant, incitātīs equīs impedītōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant.

Desilite, Commilitones!

An imaginative reproduction of the scene of the eagle-bearer jumping boldly into the water and urging his comrades to follow.

---

1. **signa subsequī**: 'to follow their own maniples.' See pp. xxxiv. **alius . . . nāvī**: 'one from one ship, another from another,' *i.e.* 'soldiers from different ships.' **quibuscumque** (indef. rel. pron.) **. . . signīs**: = *eīs signīs* (*sē aggregābat*) *quibuscumque*, etc. *occurrerat* and *aggregābat* are sing. number because of *alius*.

4. **aliquōs singulārēs**: 'some by themselves,' *i.e.* groups of a few disembarking.

5. **plūrēs**: the enemy. **paucōs**: the Romans.

6. **ab latere apertō**: which side of a Roman soldier was 'exposed'? **ūniversōs**: as contrasted with *singulārēs*.

Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia mīlitibus complērī iussit et, quōs labōrantēs cōnspexerat, hīs subsidia summittēbat. Nostrī simul in āridō cōnstitērunt, suīs omnibus cōnsecūtīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt; neque longius prōsequī potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque īnsulam capere nōn potuerant. Hōc ūnum ad prīstinam fortūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

The Britons sue for peace.

27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs de pāce mīsērunt; obsidēs datūrōs, quaeque imperāsset, factūrōs esse pollicitī sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem suprā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illī ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcerant; tum proeliō factō remīsērunt. In petendā pāce eius

---

1. **scaphās**: the 'small boats' carried on the galleys.

2. **speculātōria nāvigia**: 'spy-boats.' Both kinds of boats were small and could come close in to shore.

4. **simul**: = *simul ac*, 'as soon as.' **suīs**: referring to *Nostrī*.

7. **capere**: 'reach.' It will be remembered that they had difficulty in getting away from port.

27. 11. **datūrōs** (*esse*), **factūrōs esse**: sc. *sē*. **quaeque**: = *et ea quae*.

12. **Atrebās**: adj., 'one of the Atrebates.'

13. **suprā**: p. 306, l. 18.

14. **illī**: the Britons. **ēgressum**: expresses time. **ōrātōris**: in its lit. meaning, 'pleader,' from *ōrō*; with *modō* (abl. case of *modus*), 'in the character of an envoy.'

16. **remīsērunt**: sc. *eum*. **eius reī**: *i.e.* the seizure of Commius, to be taken with *culpam*.

reī culpam in multitūdinem contulērunt et, propter imprūdentiam ut ignōscerētur, petīvērunt.

Caesar questus, quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātīs missīs pācem ab sē petīssent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere imprūdentiae dīxit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus locīs arcessītam paucīs diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt. Intereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, prīncipēsque undique convenīre et sē cīvitātēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

Caesar's cavalry transports are driven back to the continent.

28. Hīs rēbus pāce cōnfīrmātā, post diem quārtum, quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs XVIII, dē quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum appropinquārent Britanniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō

---

1. **in multitūdinem contulērunt**: 'laid upon the people.' Responsibility for a wrong has often been shifted in this manner.

2. **ut ignōscerētur**: sc. *sibi* (149, *a* and 150); the verb is impersonal, 'that they be pardoned.'

3. **questus**: not from *quaerō*. **ultrō**: 'voluntarily' without his requiring them.

4. **intulissent**: Caesar's own reason, 241.

5. **ignōscere**: sc. *sē*. **imprūdentiae**: what case? Why?

7. **diēbus**: 182.

8. **suōs**: subj. of *remigrāre*.

28. 11. **post diem quārtum quam** : = *quārtō diē postquam*.

13. **ex superiōre portū**: now Ambleteuse.

14. **solvērunt**: 'weighed anchor.'

15. **ex castrīs**: from the Roman camp on shore. **vidērentur**: 'were seen.' This was on the morning of August 30. **tempestās**: 'storm.' The word means simply 'time' or 'weather,' sometimes 'good weather' (as p. 309, l. 4), or, as here, 'bad weather.'

coorta est, ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae eōdem, unde erant profectae, referrentur, aliae ad īnferiōrem partem īnsulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, magnō suī cum perīculō dēicerentur; quae tamen ancorīs iactīs cum flūctibus complērentur, necessāriō adversā nocte in altum prōvectae continentem petiērunt.

Caesar's fleet is damaged by a heavy storm.

29. Eādem nocte accidit, ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs maritimōs aestūs maximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōnsuēvit, nostrīsque id erat incognitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, quibus Caesar exercitum trānsportandum cūrāverat,

---

1. **nūlla**: sc. *nāvis*. **aliae** (*nāvēs*) . . . **aliae**: 'some . . . others.'

2. **eōdem**: adv. **ad īnferiōrem partem**: along the coast to the southwest.

3. **propius**: prep., 'nearer.' **suī**: 137.

4. **dēicerentur**: 'were driven along.' **cum flūctibus**: with *complērentur*. They tried to weather the storm by riding at anchor near the island, but it proved too dangerous and they were forced to put to sea and get in deeper water.

5. **necessāriō**: adv. **adversā nocte**: 'in the face of the night.' This made the danger so much the greater. **in altum**: = *in mare*.

6. **prōvectae**: 'putting out.'

29. 7. **Eādem nocte**: August 30. **accidit . . . plēna**: 'it happened to be full moon.' **quī diēs**, etc.: 'a time (of the month) which usually causes very high tides in the ocean.' It was high tide a little before midnight that night.

9. **nostrīs . . . incognitum**: there is almost no tide in the Mediterranean Sea, but it is strange that during his preparations for the expedition Caesar had not learned from some source of the connection between moon and tide.

10. **quibus**: abl. of means, 163. **trānsportandum cūrāverat**: see 285.

quāsque in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēverat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās afflīctābat, neque ūlla nostrīs facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur.

Complūribus nāvibus frāctīs, reliquae cum essent, fūnibus, ancorīs reliquīsque armāmentīs āmissīs, ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, magna, id quod necesse erat accidere, tōtīus exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae, quibus reportārī possent, et omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī, et, quod omnibus cōnstābat,

Roman Baths in Britain.

Among the Roman remains in Britain are these baths at Aquae Solis, the modern Bath in southern England.

1. **complēverat**: 'had filled' with water.
2. **afflīctābat**: 'was racking.'
5. **frāctīs**: 'wholly wrecked.'
7. **inūtilēs**: pred. with *reliquae* (sc. *nāvēs*) *essent*.
8. **perturbātiō**: 'panic.'
9. **quibus**: cf. *quibus* above, p. 316, l. 10.
10. **ūsuī**: 156. **quod . . . oportēre**: 'as it was clear to all that they would have to pass the winter in Gaul.'

hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in hīs locīs in hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat.

The Britons make a treacherous attack.

30. Quibus rēbus cognitīs prīncipēs Britanniae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē collocūtī, cum equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deesse intellegerent et paucitātem mīlitum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cognōscerent, quae hōc erant etiam angustiōra, quod sine impedīmentīs Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat, optimum factū esse dūxērunt, rebelliōne factā frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōdūcere, quod hīs superātīs aut reditū interclūsīs nēminem posteā bellī īnferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōnfīdēbant. Itaque rūrsus, coniūrātiōne factā, paulātim ex castrīs discēdere ac suōs clam ex agrīs dēdūcere coepērunt.

31. At Caesar, etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cognōverat,

---

1. **in hīs locīs**: *i.e.* in Britain.

30. 3. **Quibus . . . cognitīs**: 'when this (the damage to the Roman fleet) became known (to the Britons).' **prīncipēs**: subj. of *dūxērunt* (l. 8).

7. **hōc**: 'on this account,' 165. **etiam**: 'even.'

8. **optimum . . . dūxērunt**: 'thought that the best thing to do was,' *optimum* is pred. adj.; the subj. of *esse* is *prohibēre* and *prōdūcere*. On the supine *factū* with *optimum*, see 287.

9. **rebelliōne factā**: 'to renew hostilities.' Trans. the abl. abs. coördinate with the fol. infinitives. Note the deriv. of the noun. The word *rebelliōne* should not be trans. by "rebellion," for this would describe the uprising of a subject state, which Britain was not.

10. **rem**: 'campaign.' **hīs**: the Romans already in Britain.

13. **paulātim**: a few at a time so that their departure would be noticed less. **ex castrīs**: they had come to the Roman camp (l. 6 above).

tamen et ex eventū nāvium suārum et ex eō, quod obsidēs dare intermīserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicābātur. Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agrīs cotīdiē in castra cōnferēbat et, quae gravissimē afflictae erant nāvēs, eārum māteriā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur et, quae ad eās rēs erant ūsuī ex continentī comportārī iubēbat. Itaque, cum summō studiō ā mīlitibus administrārētur, XII nāvibus āmissīs, reliquīs ut nāvigārī commodē posset, effēcit.

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque ūllā ad id tempus bellī suspīciōne interpositā, cum pars hominum in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, eī, quī

---

31. 1. **ex eō quod**: 'from the fact that'

2. **fore**: = *futūrum esse.* **quod**: rel. pronoun.

3. **omnēs cāsūs**: 'every emergency.'

4. **cōnferēbat**: note the tense, 209. **quae . . . nāvēs, eārum**: = *eārum nāvium quae.*

5. **afflictae**: 'damaged.' **māteriā**: 'timber.' **aere**: used for the beaks and certain parts of the frames of the ships; the sides were not sheathed with metal plates as are modern war vessels.

6. **ad reliquās** (sc. *nāvēs*) **reficiendās**: 'to repair the rest of the ships,' 283. **quae**: antecedent is *ea; (ea) . . . . comportārī* is obj. of *iubēbat.* Some of the ships were in such condition that they could cross to the mainland for the necessary supplies.

7. **ūsuī**: 156.

8. **XII . . . āmissīs**: expresses concession.

9. **ut . . . posset**: 261.

32. 10. **geruntur**: why pres. tense? **frūmentātum**: the supine, 286.

11. **neque ūllā . . . interpositā**: there had been no good reason thus far for suspecting the good faith of the natives.

12. **hominum**: the Britons.

13. **ventitāret**: *i.e.* they kept coming and going. For the frequentative form (from *veniō*) see 112, *b.* **eī**: soldiers of the Tenth legion.

prō portīs castrōrum in statiōne erant, Caesarī nūntiāvērunt, pulverem maiōrem, quam cōnsuētūdō ferret, in eā parte vidērī, quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id, quod erat, suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbarīs initum cōnsilī, cohortēs, quae in statiōnibus erant, sēcum in eam partem proficīscī, ex reliquīs duās in statiōnem cohortēs succēdere, reliquās armārī et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī iussit.

Cum paulō longius ā castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conicī animadvertit. Nam quod, omnī ex reliquīs partibus dēmessō frūmentō, pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs, hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs, noctū in silvīs dēlituerant; tum dispersōs dēpositīs armīs in

---

1. **in statiōne**: 'on guard.'

2. **maiōrem . . . ferret**: 'more than usual.' How lit. ?

3. **parte**: 'direction.'

4. **id . . . suspicātus**: 'having suspected the true reason.' How lit. ? The following clause *aliquid novī . . . cōnsilī* (138) is in apposition with *id;* trans. 'namely, that,' etc. **initum**: sc. *esse.*

6. **reliquīs**: sc. *cohortibus.* **duās cohortēs**: about how many men ? See p. xxviii.

7. **reliquās**: sc. *cohortēs.* **armārī**: 'to arm themselves.' Caesar ordered the cohorts on guard duty (perhaps there were two of them, since they were relieved by two others) to go with him, two (of the remaining eight cohorts) to relieve the guard, and the remainder (six cohorts) to follow him immediately. Sentries stood night and day at the four gates of the camp and no one was allowed to enter unchallenged.

8. **paulō longius**: 'quite a distance,' 168.

9. **cōnfertā**: 'crowded together.'

10. **quod**: introduces *erat* (l. 11).

12. **hūc**: *i.e.* to the one place where the grain had not yet been cut. Did Caesar have any right to take this grain ?

13. **dēlituerant**: from *dēlitēscō.* **dispersōs, occupātōs, reliquōs**: sc. *Rōmānōs.*

mētendō occupātōs subitō adortī, paucīs interfectīs reliquōs incertīs ōrdinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

The war chariots of the Britons.

33. Genus hōc est ex essedīs pugnae. Prīmō per omnēs partēs perequitant et tēla coniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ōrdinēs plērumque perturbant, et cum sē inter equitum turmās īnsinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurīgae interim paulātim ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs collocant, ut, sī illī ā multitūdine hostium premantur, expedītum ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliīs praestant, ac tantum ūsū cotīdiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt, utī in dēclīvī ac praecipitī locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī ac flectere et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō īnsistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōnsuērint.

---

1. **paucīs**: of the Romans.
2. **incertīs ōrdinibus**: 169.

33. 4. **hōc**: 'the following.'

5. **terrōre equōrum**: 'by the fear inspired by their horses,' 136.

6. **strepitū**: 'rattling.' **ōrdinēs**: of the enemy.

8. **Aurīgae**: 'the drivers.' Each chariot carried the driver and several warriors. The chariot was at first driven all over the field making a great clatter; meantime the warriors threw their missiles. Then the warriors dismounted and the driver withdrew the chariot, ready, in case the warriors were hard pressed, to return and pick them up.

9. **illī**: the warriors.

10. **receptum**: a noun.

12. **praestant**: 'exhibit.'

14. **brevī**: 'in an instant.'

The Britons are routed and give hostages; Caesar returns to Gaul.

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātīs nostrīs novitāte pugnae tempore opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque eius adventū hostēs cōnstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō ad lacessendum hostem et ad committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus, suō sē locō continuit et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātīs, quī erant in agrīs reliquī, discessērunt. Secūtae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in castrīs continērent et hostem ā pugnā prohibērent.

Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum mīlitum suīs praedicāvērunt et, quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī līberandī facultās darētur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent, dēmōnstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus celeriter magnā multitūdine peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā, ad castra vēnērunt.

35. Caesar, etsī idem, quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat, fore vidēbat, ut, sī essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte

---

34. 1. **rēbus** expresses the means (163) and **novitāte** the cause (165) of *perturbātīs*. **nostrīs**: ind. obj. of *tulit*.

5. **aliēnum**: 'unfavorable.'

6. **suō sē locō continuit**: 'he held his ground.'

8. **quī**: antecedent is *eī*, to be supplied as subj. of *discessērunt*.

9. **continuōs**: 'without ceasing.' **diēs**: 130. **tempestātēs**: 'storms.'

10. **continērent**; **prohibērent**: why subjunctive? See 233.

13. **quanta**: with *facultās* on which *praedae* and *suī* depend. See 283. **in perpetuum**: 'forever.'

14. **darētur**: 259. **expulissent**: stands for the fut. pf. indic. of ind. disc.

35. 17. **idem**: for the form study 81. **superiōribus**: 'preceding.'

18. **ut . . . effugerent**: explains *idem* above, 'namely, that,' etc. **essent pulsī**: see note on *expulissent* above (l. 14). **celeritāte**:

perīculum effugerent, tamen nactus equitēs circiter xxx, quōs Commius Atrebās, dē quō ante dictum est, sēcum trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōnstituit. Commissō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum mīlitum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūtī, quantum cursū et vīribus efficere potuērunt, complūrēs ex eīs occīdērunt, deinde, omnibus longē lātēque aedificiīs incēnsīs, sē in castra recēpērunt.

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vēnērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum, quem

Roman Baths at Bath.

See cut on page 317.

read again what is said p. 321, ll. 4 f. about the combination of infantry and chariot fighting.

2. **ante**: p. 314, l. 12. **sēcum trānsportāverat**: since his cavalry transports had not been able to make a landing (chap. 28), Caesar had been greatly handicapped in his operations against the Britons.

5. **Quōs**: the enemy.

6. **secūtī**: sc. *nostrī*. **tantō . . . potuērunt**: 'as far as their speed and strength permitted.' How lit. ?

ante imperāverat, duplicāvit eōsque in continentem addūcī iussit, quod propinquā diē aequinoctī īnfīrmīs nāvibus hiemī nāvigātiōnem subiciendam nōn exīstimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam noctem nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervēnērunt; sed ex eīs onerāriae duae eōsdem portūs, quōs reliquae, capere nōn potuērunt, et paulō īnfrā dēlātae sunt.

Caesar's sailors are attacked by the Morini. The attack fails.

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositī mīlitēs circiter trecentī atque in castra contenderent, Morinī, quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficīscēns pācātōs relīquerat, spē praedae adductī prīmō nōn ita magnō suōrum numerō circumstetērunt ac, sī sēsē interficī nōllent, arma pōnere iussērunt.

---

36. 1. **in**: 'to.' **addūcī iussit**: only two states complied with this request.

2. **propinquā diē aequinoctī**: 'the period of the equinox being near,' 173. Note the gender of *diē* (45). Caesar sailed back probably about the middle of September.

3. **hiemī**: 'stormy weather.' For the case see 149, *b*. **subiciendam**: 'exposed.'

5. **incolumēs**: see 190.

6. **eōsdem portūs**: undoubtedly Portus Itius, whence they had sailed.

7. **reliquae**: sc. *nāvēs cēpērunt*. **īnfrā**: westward down the coast. Caesar apparently had not accomplished much in this first expedition to Britain, but he had learned a good deal and besides he was going again.

37. 9. **Quibus ex nāvibus**: the two transports mentioned at the end of the last chapter. **expositī**: 'landed.'

12. **nōn ita**: 'not so very.'

13. **nōllent**: 270. In dir. disc. a simple condition in the pres. indic. **pōnere**: with the force of *dēpōnere*. For the constr. see 260, Note.

Cum illī orbe factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum circiter mīlia sex convēnērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā, Caesar omnem ex castrīs equitātum suīs auxiliō mīsit. Interim nostrī mīlitēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius hōrīs quattuor fortissimē pugnāvērunt et paucīs vulneribus acceptīs complūrēs ex hīs occīdērunt. Posteā vērō quam equitātus noster in cōnspectum vēnit, hostēs abiectīs armīs terga vertērunt magnusque eōrum numerus est occīsus.

38. Caesar posterō diē Titum Labiēnum lēgātum cum eīs legiōnibus quās ex Britanniā redūxerat in Morinōs, quī rebelliōnem fēcerant, mīsit. Quī cum propter siccitātēs palūdum quō sē reciperent nōn habērent, omnēs ferē in potestātem Labiēnī pervēnērunt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgātī, quī in Menapiōrum fīnēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agrīs vāstātīs, frūmentīs succīsīs, aedificiīs incēnsīs, quod Menapiī sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt. Caesar in Belgīs omnium legiōnum hīberna cōnstituit. Eō duae omnīnō cīvitātēs ex Britanniā obsidēs mīsērunt, reliquae neglēxērunt.

---

1. **orbe**: *a circle* formed on the same principle as a hollow square. **ad clāmōrem**: that is, attracted by the shouts of the combatants.

6. **Posteā . . . quam**: = *postquam*.

38. 12. **rebelliōnem**: 'a rebellion,' since they had submitted to Caesar before he left for Britain. **siccitātēs**: 'dryness'; 'because the marshes were dried up.' The plural of the abstract noun is used because of the plural in *palūdum*. In English we use the singular.

13. **quō . . . reciperent**: see note on p. 303, l. 8, above.

17. **quod . . . abdiderant**: the reason for the following *sē recēpērunt*.

19. **Eō**: that is, to his winter quarters.

Hīs rēbus gestīs, ex litterīs Caesaris diērum vīgintī supplicātiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.

---

1. **diērum vīgintī supplicātiō**: the longest previous thanksgiving had been one of fifteen days, also in Caesar's honor; see p. 294, l. 4. Suetonius (*Julius*, 24) says that Caesar had more thanksgivings decreed in his honor than any previous commander and for longer periods. His opponents at Rome, however, severely criticized his conduct. The senate decreed that a commission be appointed to inquire into the condition of the Gallic provinces, and some even recommended that he be surrendered to the enemy because of his treatment of the Usipetes and Tencteri.

BOOK V

The Second Invasion of Britain

Caesar sails to Britain on his second expedition.

8. Hīs rēbus gestīs, Labiēnō in continentī cum tribus legiōnibus et equitum mīlibus duōbus relictō, ut portūs

---

The summer of 54 B.C. was devoted chiefly to the second expedition into Britain. More extensive and careful preparations were made by Caesar, who naturally profited by his experiences of the preceding year. Before he left winter quarters for Italy, he had ordered his lieutenants during the winter to have the old fleet repaired and to have as many new ships as possible built. They were to be made a little shallower and wider than those that sailed the Mediterranean so that they could be loaded rapidly and hauled up on shore and could better carry horses and supplies. They were to be equipped with oars and sails. The tackle for rigging the ships was ordered from Spain. When he returned to camp the following spring, Caesar found about 600 ships of the type described above and 28 war galleys practically ready for launching. All were ordered to assemble at Portus Itius (the modern Boulogne) from which place the expedition was to start, the distance from there to Britain being estimated to be about thirty miles. All but 60 ships, which had been built in the country of the Meldi and were unable on account of rough weather to reach Portus Itius, reported at this harbor ready for service. About 4000 cavalry from all Gaul had also assembled there. Caesar's infantry comprised the eight legions that had seen service for the first two years, and a large number of auxiliaries, slingers, and archers. He was obliged to wait more than three weeks for a favorable wind.

8. 1. **Hīs rēbus**: during the past four years Caesar had often been caused anxiety by Dumnorix, the Aeduan chieftain (Book I, chaps. 18 ff.), and he decided to keep an eye on this insurgent by taking him along to Britain. Dumnorix refused to go and escaped with a detachment of cavalry; he was overtaken and put to death. **Labiēnō relictō**: to guard the army's base at Portus Itius.

tuērētur et rem frūmentāriam prōvidēret, quaeque in Galliā gererentur, cognōsceret, cōnsiliumque prō tempore et prō rē caperet, ipse cum quīnque legiōnibus et parī numerō equitum, quem in continentī relīquerat, ad sōlis occāsum nāvēs solvit; et lēnī Āfricō prōvectus, mediā circiter nocte ventō intermissō, cursum nōn tenuit et longius dēlātus aestū ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam relīctam cōnspexit. Tum rūrsus aestūs commūtātiōnem secūtus rēmīs contendit, ut eam partem īnsulae caperet, quā optimum esse ēgressum superiōre aestāte cognōverat. Quā in rē admodum fuit mīlitum virtūs laudanda, quī vectōriīs gravibusque nāvigiīs nōn intermissō rēmigandī labōre longārum nāvium cursum adaequārunt.

---

1. **quaeque** : = *et ea quae.*

2. **prō** : 'according to.' Action on matters in Gaul was left to the discretion of Labienus, Caesar's trusted and able officer.

3. **quīnque legiōnibus** : over 20,000 men.

4. **parī numerō** : *i.e.* as many as he was leaving with Labienus, namely, 2000 cavalry.

5. **nāvēs solvit** : 'set sail.' It was towards sunset on July 6. **Āfricō** : a southwest wind would take the fleet almost straight on its course. Consult the Plan throughout the account. **mediā nocte** : in these latitudes in July there is no difficulty in sailing at night.

6. **ventō intermissō** : 'the wind dropped.' **cursum nōn tenuit** : because the wind died down and a strong tide (*aestū*) was running northeasterly up the channel.

7. **longius dēlātus** : 'drifting too far,' 193. **ortā lūce**: 'at daybreak,' of July 7, at about half-past three A.M. **sub** : 'on.'

8. **relīctam cōnspexit** : the fleet had been carried up the channel past the landing place of the preceding year; at daybreak they could see the shore of Britain off toward the left. See Plan. **aestūs . . . contendit** : they waited for the ebb tide to set in, which would carry them back in a southwesterly direction, and by the aid of oars they tried to make a landing at the same place (near Deal) where they had disembarked the year before.

13. **adaequārunt** : the soldiers earned Caesar's praise because they

Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus merīdiānō ferē tempore, neque in eō locō hostis est vīsus; sed, ut posteā Caesar ex captīvīs cognōvit, cum magnae manūs eō convēnissent, multitūdine nāvium perterritae, quae cum annōtinīs prīvātīsque, quās suī quisque commodī fēcerat, amplius octingentae ūnō erant vīsae tempore, ā lītore discesserant ac sē in superiōra loca abdiderant.

He puts the Britons to flight.

9. Caesar, expositō exercitū et locō castrīs idōneō captō, ubi ex captīvīs cognōvit, quō in locō hostium cōpiae cōnsēdissent, cohortibus X ad mare relīctīs et equitibus CCC, quī praesidiō nāvibus essent, dē tertiā vigiliā ad hostēs contendit, eō minus veritus nāvibus, quod in lītore mollī atque apertō dēligātās ad ancorās relinquēbat; eī praesidiō nāvibusque Q. Ātrium praefēcit. Ipse noctū prōgressus mīlia passuum circiter XII hostium cōpiās cōnspicātus est.

---

rowed with so much energy that they made even their heavily loaded transports keep up with the galleys.

1. **Accessum . . . Britanniam**: 'they reached Britain,' 204.

3. **cum**: 'although.'

4. **eō**: = *ad eum locum*. **quae amplius octingentae . . tempore**: 'of which more than 800 were visible at the same time.' **cum**: 'counting.'

prīvātīs (sc. *nāvibus*): 'ships built by individuals.' **quās . . . fēcerat**: 'which they (lit. 'each') had made for their own convenience.' **commodī**: sc. *causā*.

9. 8. **expositō**: 'landed.' **castrīs**: 157.

9. **ubi**: 'when.'

10. **cohortibus X**: probably selected from the different legions.

11. **praesidiō**: why dat. case? **dē tertiā vigiliā**: between midnight and 3 A.M.

12. **contendit**: Caesar lost no time in starting on the campaign.

13. **dēligātās**: sc. *nāvēs*. **praesidiō, nāvibus**: 149, *b*.

Illī equitātū atque essedīs ad flūmen prōgressī ex locō superiōre nostrōs prohibēre et proelium committere coepērunt. Repulsī ab equitātū sē in silvās abdidērunt, locum nactī ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnītum, quem domesticī bellī, ut vidēbātur, causā iam ante praeparāverant; nam crēbrīs arboribus succīsīs omnēs introitūs erant praeclūsī. Ipsī ex silvīs rārī prōpugnābant nostrōsque intrā mūnītiōnēs ingredī prohibēbant. At mīlitēs legiōnis septimae, testūdine factā et aggere ad mūnītiōnēs adiectō, locum cēpērunt eōsque ex silvīs expulērunt, paucīs vulneribus acceptīs. Sed eōs fugientēs longius Caesar prōsequī vetuit, et quod locī nātūram ignōrābat, et quod magnā parte diēī cōnsūmptā, mūnītiōnī castrōrum tempus relinquī volēbat.

His fleet is again damaged by a storm; he repairs it.

10. Postrīdiē eius diēī māne tripertītō mīlitēs equitēsque in expedītiōnem mīsit, ut eōs, quī fūgerant, persequerentur. Hīs aliquantum itineris prōgressīs, cum iam extrēmī essent

---

1. **essedīs**: see Book IV, chap. 33. **ad flūmen**: this was the Great Stour River. **ex locō superiōre**: with *prōgressī*.

5. **bellī**: depends on *causā*.

6. **praeclūsī**: 'blocked.'

7. **rārī**: 'in small groups.' **ex silvīs prōpugnābant**: 'they came out of the woods and fought in defense (of the stronghold).'

8. **ingredī prohibēbant**: 'they kept from entering.'

9. **testūdine**: see note on this word, p. 258, l. 5. **aggere**: see note to p. 267, l. 9.

10. **eōs**: the Britons. **fugientēs**: acc. case.

13. **castrōrum**: this 'camp' was the one made for the night in the vicinity of the enemy's stronghold.

10. 17. **aliquantum itineris**: 'for some distance,' 138. **extrēmī**: 'the rear' of the divisions ordered to pursue the fugitives was still in sight when word from Atrius arrived.

in prōspectū, equitēs ā Q. Ātriō ad Caesarem vēnērunt, quī nūntiārent, superiōre nocte maximā coortā tempestāte prope omnēs nāvēs afflictās atque in lītus ēiectās esse, quod neque ancorae fūnēsque subsisterent, neque nautae gubernātōrēsque vim tempestātis patī possent; itaque ex eō concursū nāvium magnum esse incommodum acceptum.

11. Hīs rēbus cognitīs Caesar legiōnēs equitātumque revocārī atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad nāvēs revertitur; eadem ferē, quae ex nūntiīs litterīsque cognōverat, cōram perspicit, sīc ut āmissīs circiter XL nāvibus reliquae tamen reficī posse magnō negōtiō vidērentur.

Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs dēligit et ex continentī aliōs arcessī iubet; Labiēnō scrībit, ut, quam plūrimās posset, eīs legiōnibus, quae sint apud eum, nāvēs īnstituat. Ipse, etsī rēs erat multae operae ac labōris, tamen commodissi-

---

1. **Q. Atriō**: the officer in command of the shore camp. See p. 329, l. 14.

2. **quī nūntiārent**: 'to report,' 230. **superiōre nocte**: 'on the night before.'

3. **afflictās**: 'damaged.' **in lītus ēiectās**: 'dashed ashore.'

4. **subsisterent**: 'held.' **nautae**: see 14.

6. **concursū**: 'collision.'

11. 8. **in itinere resistere**: 'to defend themselves (while) on the march.' On receiving news of the shipwreck Caesar started back to the shore camp with all possible speed, ordering the main body of his army to follow him cautiously, for this new disaster to the ships would inspire the enemy with renewed courage.

10. **cōram**: 'in person.' **āmissīs** . . . **nāvibus**: the abl. abs. expresses concession, as *tamen* shows. Trans. by a clause introduced by 'although.'

11. **magnō negōtiō**: 'with a good deal of trouble.'

14. **eīs legiōnibus**: 'with those legions.' **īnstituat**: 'build.'

15. **rēs** . . . **labōris**: 'the matter involved much trouble and labor.' The genitives, *operae* and *labōris* are pred., 140. **commodissimum**: 'best.'

mum esse statuit, omnēs nāvēs subdūcī et cum castrīs ūnā mūnītiōne coniungī. In hīs rēbus circiter diēs x cōnsūmit, nē nocturnīs quidem temporibus ad labōrem mīlitum intermissīs.

Subductīs nāvibus castrīsque ēgregiē mūnītīs, eāsdem cōpiās, quās ante, praesidiō nāvibus relinquit, ipse eōdem, unde redierat, proficīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, maiōrēs iam undique in eum locum cōpiae Britannōrum convēnerant, summā imperī bellīque administrandī commūnī cōnsiliō permissā Cassivellaunō; cuius fīnēs ā maritimīs cīvitātibus flūmen dīvidit, quod appellātur Tamesis, ā marī circiter mīlia passuum LXXX. Huic superiōre tempore cum reliquīs cīvitātibus continentia bella intercesserant; sed nostrō adventū permōtī Britannī hunc tōtī bellō imperiōque praefēcerant.

---

1. **subdūcī**: 'hauled up.'

2. **coniungī**: 'connected.' The site of the camp and the space where the ships lay were surrounded by one intrenchment.

3. **nē nocturnīs . . . intermissīs**: by appointing several shifts of men the work was carried on night and day. The indomitable Roman met and remedied the disaster in a comparatively short time. Caesar has been criticized for not having beached his ships at once, before striking a blow at the enemy, for he could not have forgotten the disaster of the preceding year. The beach, however, he says, was open and nearly level, and it would have taken a good deal of valuable time to haul the ships up; besides there was no full moon, as in the previous year, to cause an excessively high tide.

6. **quās ante**: sc. *relīquerat*. See p. 329, l. 10. **eōdem**: adv.

7. **maiōrēs**: with *cōpiae*, 'reënforcements.'

9. **summā**: a noun.

10. **Cassivellaunō**: the Latinized form of Caswallon.

11. **Tamesis**: the historic Thames. The country of Cassivellaunus lay on the north side of this river.

12. **Huic . . . intercesserant**: Cassivellaunus had before this carried on incessant warfare with the other tribes.

14. **bellō imperiōque**: why dat. case?

The geography and inhabitants of Britain.

12. Britanniae pars interior ab eīs incolitur, quōs **nātōs** in īnsulā ipsā memoriā prōditum dīcunt, maritima pars ab eīs, quī praedae ac bellī īnferendī causā ex Belgiō trānsiērunt (quī omnēs ferē eīs nōminibus cīvitātum appellantur, quibus ortī ex cīvitātibus eō pervēnērunt), et bellō illātō ibi permānsērunt atque agrōs colere coepērunt. Hominum est īnfīnīta multitūdō crēberrimaque aedificia ferē Gallicīs cōnsimilia, pecorum magnus numerus. **Ūtuntur** aut aere

---

12. Chaps. 12–14 give a fragmentary but entertaining account of the geography and inhabitants of Britain. Doubtless it is faulty in many particulars, for Caesar could hardly have had the time to make a thorough investigation of the topics on which he touched.

Map of Britain.

According to Caesar's description of the island and its surroundings.

1. **pars interior**: 'the interior.' **nātōs**: sc. *esse*, dependent in ind. disc. on *prōditum* (*esse*), which in turn depends on *dīcunt*. The Britons according to tradition were aboriginal.

2. **dīcunt**: indefinite subject; 'they say.'

3. **trānsiērunt**: *i.e.* the coast tribes were descended from Celtic emigrants who came from the mainland.

4. **eīs nōminibus**: *e.g.* the Atrebates.

5. **quibus**: with *ex cīvitātibus*. **eō**: *i.e.* to Britain.

6. **Hominum**: 'people,' 'population.'

7. **Gallicīs**: sc. *aedificiīs*. Similarity of architecture suggests identity of race.

8. **pecorum**: 'of cattle.' **Ūtuntur . . . nummō**: 'they use bronze (as currency) or gold coins or they use as coins iron bars measured according to a fixed weight.'

aut nummō aureō aut tāleīs ferreīs ad certum pondus examinātīs prō nummō.

Nāscitur ibi plumbum album in mediterrāneīs regiōnibus, in maritimīs ferrum, sed eius exigua est cōpia; aere ūtuntur importātō. Māteria cuiusque generis, ut in Galliā, est praeter fāgum atque abietem. Leporem et gallīnam et ānserem gustāre fās nōn putant; haec tamen alunt animī voluptātisque causā. Loca sunt temperātiōra quam in Galliā, remissiōribus frīgoribus.

13. Īnsula nātūrā triquetra, cuius ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. Huius lateris alter angulus, quī est ad Cantium, quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs appelluntur, ad orientem sōlem, īnferior ad merīdiem spectat. Hōc pertinet circiter mīlia passuum quīngenta.

---

1. **nummō aureō**: many gold coins have been discovered in Britain, some dating from a period 150 years before Caesar's invasions. **tāleīs ferreīs**: a large number of these 'iron bars' also have been found.

3. **Nāscitur**: 'is produced.' **plumbum album**: 'tin.' Britain was the chief source of this metal in antiquity. **mediterrāneīs**: 'midland.'

4. **maritimīs**: sc. *regiōnibus*. **eius**: = *ferrī*. **cōpia**: 'supply.' **aere**: 'bronze,' a composition of copper and tin.

5. **Māteria**: 'timber.' **cuiusque**: 'every.'

6. **fāgum**: Caesar is incorrect in this statement.

7. **fās** (an indeclinable noun): sc. *esse*, of which *gustāre* is the subj. **animī**: 'pastime.'

8. **temperātiōra**: on account of the influence of the Gulf Stream.

9. **remissiōribus**: 'less severe.'

13. This chapter contains a description of the shape and relative position of Britain as crudely known in Caesar's day. See Map, p. 333, which conforms to this description.

10. **nātūrā**: 'in shape.' **contrā**: 'opposite.'

11. **ad Cantium**: 'by Cantium.' The modern deriv. is Kent.

12. **appelluntur**: use care in identifying this verb.

13. **īnferior**: sc. *angulus*. The 'lower' or southwestern corner. **ad**

Alterum vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem sōlem; quā ex parte est Hibernia, dīmidiō minor, ut exīstimātur, quam Britannia, sed parī spatiō trānsmissūs atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc mediō cursū est īnsula, quae appellātur Mona; complūrēs praetereā minōrēs sub- 5
iectae īnsulae exīstimantur; dē quibus īnsulīs nōn nūllī scrīpsērunt, diēs continuōs xxx sub brūmā esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōnibus reperiēbāmus, nisi certīs ex aquā mēnsūrīs breviōrēs esse quam in continentī noctēs

---

. . . **spectat**: 'faces.' **Hōc**: sc. *latus īnsulae*. The south coast of Britain is in reality about 545 miles long.

1. **Alterum**: sc. *latus*; 'a second side.' **vergit ad**: practically equivalent to *spectat ad* above. This statement that Spain lay west of Britain is perhaps the most astonishing of any in the chapter.

2. **dīmidiō**: 168.

3. **parī . . . atque**: 'the same as.' **trānsmissūs**: 'passage'; gen. case with *spatiō*; *i.e.* the width of the channel between Britain and Ireland is the same as that between Britain and Gaul.

4. **In hōc** (sc. *latere*): 'on this side.' **mediō cursū**: 'halfway across,' between Britain and Ireland.

5. **Mona**: probably the Isle of Man. **subiectae** (sc. *esse*): 'lie near by.'

6. **nōn nūllī scrīpsērunt**: evidently Caesar had been reading up on Britain in the works of earlier writers; a good deal of what he found, however, was untrustworthy and based on hearsay.

7. **diēs**: 130. **sub brūmā**: 'about the winter solstice.' **noctem**: this statement as applied to the latitudes of Britain is, of course, incorrect. It must have been derived from traditional accounts of lands lying farther north.

8. **Nōs**: the editorial "we." **certīs**: 'accurate.'

9. **ex aquā**: 'with a water clock.' The water clock was constructed on the principle of the sand-glass. It had at the bottom a small perforation through which a certain amount of water could trickle within a certain time; the divisions of the hour might be roughly determined in this way. **breviōrēs . . . noctēs**: this fact has struck the attention of every visitor to England.

vidēbāmus. Huius est longitūdō lateris, ut fert illōrum opīniō, DCC mīlium.

Tertium est contrā septentriōnēs; cui partī nūlla est obiecta terra, sed eius angulus lateris maximē ad Germāniam spectat. Hōc mīlia passuum DCCC in longitūdinem esse exīstimātur. Ita omnis īnsula est in circuitū vīciēs centum mīlium passuum.

14. Ex hīs omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī, quī Cantium incolunt, quae regiō est maritima omnis, neque multum ā Gallicā differunt cōnsuētūdine. Interiōrēs plērīque frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vīvunt pellibusque sunt vestītī. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō īnficiunt, quod caerùleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc horridiōrēs sunt in pugnā aspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō atque omnī parte corporis rāsā praeter caput et labrum superius. Uxōrēs habent dēnī duodēnīque inter sē commūnēs, et maximē

---

1. **illōrum**: of the Britons.

3. **Tertium**: sc. *latus*. **est contrā**: 'faces.'

4. **angulus**: its eastern 'corner.'

5. **Hōc**: sc. *latus*.

6. **vīciēs centum**: as a matter of fact the coast line of Britain, following roughly its deep indentations, is about 4650 miles.

14. 8. **hīs**: the natives of Britain. **sunt**: sc. *eī*. **hūmānissimī**: 'most civilized.'

10. **Interiōrēs**: 'those who live in the interior.'

11. **nōn serunt**: only relatively true, for we know that grain was cultivated in the interior even in the Bronze Age. **lacte et carne**: 163. On the decl. of *carne* see 34. **pellibus vestītī**: also only relatively true, since woolen cloth and linen were worn (in Yorkshire) in the Bronze Age.

12. **vitrō**: 'woad,' a plant from which a bluish dye was obtained.

13. **hōc**: 165. **horridiōrēs . . . aspectū**: 'they have a wilder look in battle.'

14. **capillō . . . prōmissō**: 170; 'their hair is long.'

16. **dēnī duodēnīque**: subj. of *habent*. **commūnēs**: with *Uxōrēs*.

frātrēs cum frātribus parentēsque cum līberīs; sed, quī sunt ex eīs nātī, eōrum habentur līberī, quō prīmum virgō quaeque dēducta est.

The Britons resist bravely.

15. Equitēs hostium essedāriīque ācriter proeliō cum equitātū nostrō in itinere cōnflīxērunt, ita tamen, ut nostrī omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuerint atque eōs in silvās collēsque compulerint; sed complūribus interfectīs cupidius īnsecūtī nōn nūllōs ex suīs āmīsērunt. At illī intermissō spatiō, imprūdentibus nostrīs atque occupātīs in mūnītiōne castrōrum, subitō sē ex silvīs ēiēcērunt impetūque in eōs factō, quī erant in statiōne prō castrīs collocātī, ācriter pugnāvērunt, duābusque missīs subsidiō cohortibus ā Caesare, atque hīs prīmīs legiōnum duārum, cum hae perexiguō intermissō locī spatiō inter sē cōnstitissent, novō genere pugnae perterritīs nostrīs per mediōs audācissimē perrūpērunt sēque inde incolumēs recēpērunt. Eō diē Q.

---

1. **quī**: antecedent is *līberī*.

2. **eōrum**: antecedent of *quō* (= *ad quōs*). This is the custom called polyandry. The correctness of Caesar's statement has been called in question.

15. The account of Caesar's military operations, interrupted in chaps. 12–14, is here resumed.

7. **cupidius**: 193.

8. **īnsecūtī**: the Romans. **illī**: the enemy. **intermissō spatiō**: 'after a little time.'

10. **eōs**: antecedent of *quī*.

13. **hīs prīmīs**: sc. *cohortibus;* 'and these the first cohorts of the two legions.' **hae**: sc. *cohortēs*. **perexiguō . . . spatiō**: 'a very short distance away.' On the force of *per-* see p. 166, l. 4.

14. **locī**: with *spatiō*. **novō genere**: not having been in Britain the year before these men were not familiar with the Britons' method of fighting with chariots.

Laberius Dūrus, tribūnus mīlitum, interficitur. Illī plūribus summissīs cohortibus repelluntur.

16. Tōtō hōc in genere pugnae, cum sub oculīs omnium ac prō castrīs dīmicārētur, intellēctum est, nostrōs propter gravitātem armōrum, quod neque īnsequī cēdentēs possent neque ab signīs discēdere audērent, minus aptōs esse ad huius generis hostem, equitēs autem magnō cum perīculō proeliō dīmicāre, proptereā quod illī etiam cōnsultō plērumque cēderent et, cum paulum ab legiōnibus nostrōs remōvissent, ex essedīs dēsilīrent et pedibus disparī proeliō contenderent. Equestris autem proelī ratiō et cēdentibus et īnsequentibus pār atque idem perīculum īnferēbat. Accēdēbat hūc, ut numquam cōnfertī, sed rārī magnīsque intervāllīs proeliārentur statiōnēsque dispositās habērent, atque aliōs aliī deinceps exciperent, integrīque et recentēs dēfatīgātīs succēderent.

17. Posterō diē procul ā castrīs hostēs in collibus cōnstitērunt rārīque sē ostendere et lēnius, quam prīdiē, nostrōs equitēs proeliō lacessere coepērunt. Sed merīdiē, cum Caesar pābulandī causā trēs legiōnēs atque omnem equitātum cum C. Trebōniō lēgātō mīsisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pābulātōrēs advolāvērunt sīc, utī ab

---

16. 5. **cēdentēs**: sc. *hostēs*; 'when they were retreating.'

6. **minus**: = *nōn*.

8. **illī**: the Britons. **cōnsultō**: 'purposely.'

11. **Equestris ratiō . . . īnferēbat**: 'the manner in which the (Britons') cavalry fought, was the same (in its effect on the Romans) whether they (the Romans) were retreating or pursuing and it exposed them to the same danger.'

13. **Accēdēbat . . . proeliārentur**: 'besides this, they fought.' How lit.?

17. 17. **castrīs**: of the Romans.

98. **rārī**: 'in groups here and there.'

signīs legiōnibusque nōn absisterent. Nostrī ācriter in eōs impetū factō reppulērunt neque fīnem sequendī fēcērunt, quoad subsidiō cōnfīsī equitēs, cum post sē legiōnēs vidērent, praecipitēs hostēs ēgērunt, magnōque eōrum numerō interfectō neque suī colligendī neque cōnsistendī aut ex essedīs dēsiliendī facultātem dedērunt. Ex hāc fugā prōtinus, quae undique convēnerant, auxilia discessērunt, neque post id tempus umquam summīs nōbīscum cōpiīs hostēs contendērunt.

Caesar marches inland.

18. Caesar, cognitō cōnsiliō eōrum, ad flūmen Tamesim in fīnēs Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ūnō omnīnō locō pedibus, atque hōc aegrē, trānsīrī potest. Eō cum vēnisset, animadvertit, ad alteram flūminis rīpam magnās esse cōpiās hostium īnstrūctās. Rīpa autem erat acūtīs sudibus praefīxīs mūnīta, eiusdemque generis sub aquā dēfīxae sudēs flūmine tegēbantur.

Hīs rēbus cognitīs ā captīvīs perfugīsque, Caesar, prae-

---

1. **signīs**: the standards suggest the ordered ranks. **absisterent**: lit., 'stand away from,' *i.e.* they were bold enough even to attack the legionaries as they stood in line.

3. **subsidiō**: sc. *legiōnum*. **Fīdō** and **cōnfīdō** govern the abl.

4. **praecipitēs**: pred., with *hostēs*.

6. **Ex**: 'after,' and implying 'as a result of.'

7. **auxilia**: of the Britons.

8. **summīs cōpiīs**: 'with all their forces.'

18. 10. **cōnsiliō**: the 'plan' set forth in the fol. chap.

13. **hōc**: sc. *locō*. **trānsīrī**: it is impossible to say just where Caesar crossed the Thames; possibly it was near Brentford.

15. **acūtīs sudibus praefīxīs**: 'sharp stakes fastened along the edge (of the bank).' The stakes projected out toward the river and made a landing on the bank difficult. **eiusdem generis**: *i.e. acūtae.*

16. **tegēbantur**: 'were covered.'

missō equitātū, cōnfestim legiōnēs subsequī iussit. Sed eā celeritāte atque eō impetū mīlitēs ierunt, cum capite sōlō ex aquā exstārent, ut hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinēre nōn possent rīpāsque dīmitterent ac sē fugae mandārent.

19. Cassivellaunus, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, omnī dēpositā spē contentiōnis, dīmissīs ampliōribus cōpiīs, mīlibus circiter quattuor essedāriōrum relictīs, itinera nostra servābat paulumque ex viā excēdēbat locīsque impedītīs ac silvestribus sēsē occultābat atque eīs regiōnibus, quibus nōs iter factūrōs cognōverat, pecora atque hominēs ex agrīs in silvās compellēbat et cum equitātus noster līberius praedandī vāstandīque causā sē in agrōs ēiēcerat, omnibus viīs sēmitīsque essedāriōs ex silvīs ēmittēbat et magnō cum perīculō nostrōrum equitum cum eīs cōnflīgēbat atque hōc metū lātius vagārī prohibēbat. Relinquēbātur, ut neque longius ab agmine legiōnum discēdī Caesar paterētur, et tantum in agrīs vāstandīs incendiīsque faciendīs hostibus

---

2. **eā, eō** : = *tālī*. **cum** : 'although.'

19. 7. **dēpositā** : 'given up.' **contentiōnis** : *i.e.* of fighting in the open field. **dīmissīs** : 'disbanded.'

9. **viā** : 'the main track' or 'trail.' **impedītīs** : 'difficult of access.'

10. **regiōnibus** : 175.

12. **compellēbat** : 'drove.'

13. **sē ēiēcerat** : 'made a dash.'

15. **equitum** : 137. **eīs** : = *equitibus*. **hōc metū** : 'through fear of this,' *i.e.* of his sudden attacks.

16. **Relinquēbātur ut** : 'there was nothing left for Caesar but to.' **neque . . . paterētur** · trans. 'forbid.' See 261.

17. **longius** : 'very far,' 193.

18. **hostibus**: dat. case (149, *a*) with *nocērētur*, an impersonal verb (see 150). The cavalry had always been of service to Caesar in making swift raids upon the enemy's property; but since they fared so ill in their encounters with the enemy's chariot warriors, their

nocērētur, quantum labōre atque itinere legiōnāriī mīlitēs efficere poterant.

Many tribes submit to Caesar.

20. Interim Trinobantēs, prope fīrmissima eārum regiōnum cīvitās, ex quā Mandubracius adulēscēns Caesaris fidem secūtus ad eum in continentem Galliam vēnerat (cuius pater in eā cīvitāte rēgnum obtinuerat interfectusque erat ā Cassivellaunō, ipse fugā mortem vītāverat), lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque, sēsē eī dēdi-

Roman Ruins in Britain.

At St. Albans, about twenty miles from London, near the site of the ancient Verulamium, one of the chief towns of Roman Britain.

activity was greatly curtailed. One should remember that the Romans were fighting in unfamiliar country, while their adversaries knew every foot of it well.

20. 3. **Trinobantēs**: a prominent state in Britain antagonistic to the state over which Cassivellaunus ruled; it was located east of the latter.

4. **Caesaris . . . secūtus**: 'put himself under the protection of Caesar.'

tūrōs atque imperāta factūrōs; petunt, ut Mandubracium ab iniūriā Cassivellaunī dēfendat atque in cīvitātem mittat, quī praesit imperiumque obtineat. Hīs Caesar imperat obsidēs quadrāgintā frūmentumque exercituī Mandubraciumque ad eōs mittit. Illī imperāta celeriter fēcērunt, obsidēs ad numerum frūmentumque mīsērunt.

21. Trinobantibus dēfēnsīs atque ab omnī mīlitum iniūriā prohibitīs, Cēnimagnī, Segontiācī, Ancalitēs, Bibrocī, Cassī lēgātiōnibus missīs sēsē Caesarī dēdunt. Ab hīs cognōscit, nōn longē ex eō locō oppidum Cassivellaunī abesse silvīs palūdibusque mūnītum, quō satis magnus hominum pecorisque numerus convēnerit. Oppidum autem Britannī vocant, cum silvās impedītās vāllō atque fossā mūniērunt, quō incursiōnis hostium vītandae causā convenīre cōnsuērunt. Eō proficīscitur cum legiōnibus. Locum reperit ēgregiē nātūrā atque opere mūnītum; tamen hunc duābus ex partibus oppugnāre contendit. Hostēs paulisper morātī mīlitum nostrōrum impetum nōn tulērunt sēsēque aliā ex parte oppidī ēiēcērunt. Magnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus, multīque in fugā sunt comprehēnsī atque interfectī.

22. Dum haec in hīs locīs geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōnstrāvimus,

2. **Cassivellaunī**: 'at the hands of Cassivellaunus,' 136. **mittat**: sc. *eum* (= *Mandubracium*).

3. **praesit, obtineat**: 230.

21. 7. **mīlitum**: what use of the gen. case? The *Cēnimagnī* and the following were more distant tribes.

10. **oppidum**: it is not known with certainty where the stronghold of Cassivellaunus was located or what its name was.

11. **quō**: = *ad quod* (*oppidum*). **satis**: 'quite.'

12. **Oppidum**: sc. *id* and see 127.

22. 22. **in hīs locīs**: at the stronghold of Cassivellaunus.

23. **ad mare**: 'by the sea.'

quibus regiōnibus quattuor rēgēs praeerant, Cingetorīx, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nūntiōs mittit atque hīs imperat, utī, coāctīs omnibus cōpiīs, castra nāvālia dē improvīsō adoriantur atque oppugnent. Eī cum ad castra vēnissent, nostrī ēruptiōne factā multīs eōrum interfectīs, captō etiam nōbilī duce Lugotorīge, suōs incolumēs redūxērunt.

Cassivellaunus, hōc proeliō nūntiātō, tot dētrīmentīs acceptīs, vāstātīs fīnibus, maximē etiam permōtus dēfectiōne cīvitātum, lēgātōs per Atrebātem Commium dē dēditiōne ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar, cum cōnstituisset hiemāre in continentī propter repentīnōs Galliae mōtūs, neque multum aestātis superesset, atque id facile extrahī posse intellegeret, obsidēs imperat et, quid in annōs singulōs vectīgālis populō Rōmānō Britannia penderet, cōnstituit; interdīcit atque imperat Cassivellaunō, nē Mandubraciō neu Trinobantibus noceat.

Caesar returns safely to Gaul with his army.

23. Obsidibus acceptīs exercitum redūcit ad mare, nāvēs invenit refectās. Hīs dēductīs, quod et captīvōrum magnum numerum habēbat et nōn nūllae tempestāte dēperierant

---

1. **quibus regiōnibus**: the antecedent is contained in *Cantium*.

11. **cōnstituisset**: perhaps Caesar had at first planned to quarter a part of his army in Britain for the winter.

13. **neque . . . superesset**: 'and not much of the summer was left.' **id**: *i.e.* what was left of the summer.

14. **quid**: with *vectīgālis*, 138. **in annōs singulōs**: 'yearly.' This tribute was never paid, or, at least, not for long. Britain was not completely subdued until 84 A.D., or 138 years after Caesar's second invasion.

23. 19. **refectās**: after the storm. **dēductīs**: 'launched.' **quod . . . nāvēs**: the reasons for *īnstituit*.

20. **nōn nūllae**: sc. *nāvēs*.

nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus exercitum reportāre īnstituit. Ac sīc accidit, utī ex tantō nāvium numerō tot nāvigātiōnibus neque hōc neque superiōre annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis, quae mīlitēs portāret, dēsīderārētur, at ex eīs, quae inānēs ex continentī ad eum remitterentur priōris commeātūs expositīs mīlitibus, et quās posteā Labiēnus faciendās cūrāverat, numerō LX, perpaucae locum caperent, reliquae ferē omnēs rēicerentur. Quās cum aliquam diū Caesar frūstrā expectāsset, nē annī tempore ā nāvigātiōne exclūderētur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessāriō angustius mīlitēs collocāvit ac, summā tranquillitāte cōnsecūtā, secundā initā cum solvisset vigiliā, prīmā lūce terram attigit omnēsque incolumēs nāvēs perdūxit.

* * * * * * *

---

1. **commeātibus**: 'trips.'

2. **tot nāvigātiōnibus**: 'after so many voyages.'

4. **portāret**: 233. **dēsīderārētur**: 'lost.' **at**: 'while.' **ex eīs**: sc. *nāvibus*. **inānēs**: after carrying over the first shipload.

5. **ad eum**: Caesar evidently did not return on the first ship.

6. **quās**: sc. *ex eīs nāvibus* as antecedent. Labienus had had 60 new ships built after the shipwreck.

7. **locum caperent**: 'reached their destination,' *i.e.* Britain, on the return trip to take the second shipload. *caperent* is in the same constr. as *dēsīderārētur* above.

8. **rēicerentur**: to the continent.

10. **suberat**: 'was at hand.'

11. **collocāvit**: on the transports. **secundā initā vigiliā**: 'at the beginning of the second watch.'

While Caesar did not actually bring Britain under the yoke of Rome, the results of his two expeditions are notable. He called the attention of his countrymen to a new world and opened the way for a complete conquest of it. The coming of the Romans gave a new turn to British history.

The winter camp of Cicero is attacked.

38. Hāc victōriā sublātus, Ambiorīx statim cum equitātū in Aduatucōs, quī erant eius rēgnō fīnitimī, proficīscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit, peditātumque sēsē subsequī iubet. Rē dēmōnstrātā Aduatucīsque concitātīs, posterō diē in Nerviōs pervenit hortāturque, nē suī in perpetuum līberandī atque ulcīscendī Rōmānōs prō eīs, quās accēperint, iniūriīs occāsiōnem dīmittant; interfectōs esse lēgātōs duōs magnamque partem exercitūs interīsse dēmōnstrat; nihil esse negōtī, subitō oppressam legiōnem,

In the winter of 54–53 B.C., following the second British expedition, Caesar was forced by the inadequate food supply to distribute his legions in various places. One legion and five cohorts were stationed in the country of the Eburones, under the command of two *lēgātī*, Q. Titurius Sabinus, who had held the bridge at the Aisne River (see p. 257, l. 5), and Arunculeius Cotta. Sabinus, weakly yielding to the representations of a wily Gaul named Ambiorix, who posed as a friend of the Romans and who said that the Gauls were to make a simultaneous attack on all the Roman camps and that the Germans were on the way to help the Gauls, unwisely abandoned the camp, in spite of the protests of Cotta, and marched out with his troops with the intention of reaching the other camps. They were attacked in ambush by the Eburones and virtually annihilated; only a handful of men escaped to the camp of Labienus to tell the story. Elated by his success, Ambiorix enlisted the interest of the Aduatuci and the Nervii; in the country of the latter one legion had been quartered under the command of Q. Cicero, the younger brother of the orator, M. Tullius Cicero. Hurrying to the camp of Cicero the Gauls tried in vain to frighten him as they had frightened Sabinus. The story is told in a most dramatic way in the following selection.

38. 1. **Hāc victōriā**: over Sabinus and Cotta.

4. **Rē**: *i.e.* what had happened at the other camp.

5. **Nerviōs**: these were the people who had suffered so disastrous a defeat at the Sabis River (book II, chap. 27). **nē . . . dīmittant**: 'not to lose.'

8. **lēgātōs duōs**: Sabinus and Cotta.

9. **nihil esse negōtī**: 'that there would be no difficulty.'

quae cum Cicerōne hiemet, interficī; sē ad eam rem profitētur adiūtōrem. Facile hāc ōrātiōne Nerviīs persuādet.

39. Itaque cōnfestim dīmissīs nūntiīs ad Ceutronēs, Grudiōs, Levacōs, Pleumoxiōs, Geidumnōs, quī omnēs sub eōrum imperiō sunt, quam maximās possunt manūs cōgunt, et dē improvīsō ad Cicerōnis hīberna advolant, nōndum ad eum fāmā dē Titūrī morte perlātā. Huic quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut nōn nūllī mīlitēs, quī lignātiōnis mūnītiōnisque causā in silvās discessissent, repentīnō equitum adventū interciperentur. Hīs circumventīs, magnā manū Eburōnēs, Nerviī, Aduatucī atque hōrum omnium sociī et clientēs legiōnem oppugnāre incipiunt. Nostrī celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vāllum cōnscendunt. Aegrē is diēs sustentātur, quod omnem spem hostēs in celeritāte pōnēbant atque hanc adoptī victōriam in perpetuum sē fore victōrēs cōnfīdēbant.

Cicero prepares to defend his camp.

40. Mittuntur ad Caesarem cōnfestim ā Cicerōne litterae, magnīs prōpositīs praemiīs, sī pertulissent; obsessīs omnibus viīs missī intercipiuntur. Noctū ex māteriā, quam mūnītiōnis causā comportāverant, turrēs admodum cxx excitantur incrēdibilī celeritāte; quae deesse operī

---

1. **sē, adiūtōrem**: 127.

39. 5. **eōrum**: = *Nerviōrum.*

7. **eum**: Cicero. **fāmā**: 'report.' **Titūrī**: *i.e.* Sabinus. **Huic quoque**: to Cicero as well as to Sabinus and Cotta.

40. 17. **ad Caesarem**: Caesar was at Samarobriva (the modern Amiens). **litterae**: 'a dispatch.'

18. **pertulissent**: sc. *eās litterās nūntiī*: 'carry through (*per-*) to Caesar.' **obsessīs**: Cicero's camp had been completely surrounded by the enemy.

19. **missī**: the part. is used like a noun, = *nūntiī.*

20. **turrēs . . . excitantur**: to give a longer range to their missiles.

vidēbantur, perficiuntur. Hostēs posterō diē multō maiōribus coāctīs cōpiīs castra oppugnant, fossam complent. Eādem ratiōne, quā prīdiē, ā nostrīs resistitur.

Hōc idem reliquīs deinceps fit diēbus. Nūlla pars nocturnī temporis ad labōrem intermittitur; nōn aegrīs, nōn vulnerātīs facultās quiētis datur. Quaecumque ad proximī diēī oppugnātiōnem opus sunt, noctū comparantur; multae praeūstae sudēs, magnus mūrālium pīlōrum numerus īnstituitur; turrēs contabulantur, pinnae lōrīcaeque ex crātibus

Tongres.

A town of Belgium near the site of Cicero's camp.

1. **perficiuntur**: sc. *ea*.

4. **deinceps**: 'following.'

6. **quiētis**: gen. case with *facultās*.

8. **praeūstae**: 'burned at the ends' to harden them. **mūrālium pīlōrum**: very heavy pikes hurled from the walls.

9. **contabulantur**: 'were provided with platforms.' **pinnae lōrīcaeque**: for the protection of the soldiers hurling missiles.

attexuntur. Ipse Cicerō, cum tenuissimā valētūdine esset, nē nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quiētem relinquēbat, ut ultrō mīlitum concursū ac vōcibus sibi parcere cōgerētur.

The enemy ask for a conference; Cicero's reply.

41. Tunc ducēs prīncipēsque Nerviōrum, quī aliquem sermōnis aditum causamque amīcitiae cum Cicerōne habēbant, colloquī sēsē velle dīcunt. Factā potestāte, eadem, quae Ambiorīx cum Titūriō ēgerat, commemorant: omnem esse in armīs Galliam; Germānōs Rhēnum trānsīsse; Caesaris reliquōrumque hīberna oppugnārī. Addunt etiam dē Sabīnī morte; Ambiorīgem ostentant fideī faciundae causā. Errāre eōs dīcunt, sī quicquam ab hīs praesidī spērent, quī suīs rēbus diffīdant; sēsē tamen hōc esse in Cicerōnem populumque Rōmānum animō, ut nihil nisi hīberna recūsent atque hanc inveterāscere cōnsuētūdinem nōlint; licēre illīs per sē incolumibus ex hībernīs discēdere et, quāscumque in partēs velint, sine metū proficīscī.

---

1. **cum . . . esset**: 'although he was in very poor health.' See 170 and 251.

3. **ultrō**: the soldiers did it of their own accord; trans. 'actually.' **sibi**: Cicero, 149, *a*.

41. 10. **ostentant**: 'point to.' **causā**: 282 and Note.

11. **eōs**: Cicero and his men. **quī . . . diffīdant**: *i.e.* Caesar and his army.

12. **rēbus**: 149, *a*. **hōc animō**: 170.

13. **nihil . . . nōlint**: the Nervii would do anything for Cicero and the Roman army except to allow them to quarter troops for the winter in their country, especially if this is to be a permanent arrangement.

14. **licēre**: why infin.?

15. **per sē**: 'as far as they were concerned.' **incolumibus**: limits *illīs* (= *Rōmānīs*). See 190. **discēdere, proficīscī**: the Nervii wished to play upon their fears and lure them out of the camp.

Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo respondit: Nōn esse cōnsuētūdinem populī Rōmānī, accipere ab hoste armātō condiciōnem; sī ab armīs discēdere velint, sē adiūtōre ūtantur lēgātōsque ad Caesarem mittant; spērāre, prō eius iūstitiā, quae petierint, impetrātūrōs.

The enemy renew the attack with great vigor.

42. Ab hāc spē repulsī Nerviī vāllō pedum x et fossā pedum xv hīberna cingunt. Haec et superiōrum annōrum cōnsuētūdine ā nōbīs cognōverant et, quōsdam dē exercitū nactī captīvōs, ab hīs docēbantur; sed nūllā ferrāmentōrum cōpiā, quae esset ad hunc ūsum idōnea, gladiīs caespitēs circumcīdere, manibus sagulīsque terram exhaurīre cōgēbantur. Quā quidem ex rē hominum multitūdō cognōscī potuit; nam minus hōrīs tribus mīlium passuum xv in circuitū mūnītiōnem perfēcērunt. Reliquīs diēbus turrēs

---

1. **ūnum modo**: 'only one thing.' Cicero's reply was that of a brave soldier and met the full approval of Caesar.

2. **condiciōnem**: 'terms.'

3. **ab armīs discēdere**: 'lay down their arms.' **adiūtōre**: pred.

4. **spērāre**: sc. *sē*. **prō**: 'in view of.'

5. **impetrātūrōs** (*esse*): sc. *eōs*.

42. 6. **hāc spē**: the hope of deceiving Cicero. **pedum x**: in height.

7. **pedum xv**: wide at the top. **Haec**: *i.e.* how to invest a besieged site with a rampart and trench.

8. **exercitū**: the Roman army.

9. **nactī captīvōs**: 'having taken prisoners.' **hīs**: *i.e. captīvīs*. **nūllā . . . cōpiā**: 'because they did not have a supply of iron tools,' shovels, etc.

10. **quae esset idōnea**: 'such as were suitable,' 233. **caespitēs**: 'sod.'

11. **exhaurīre**: 'take up.'

ad altitūdinem vāllī, falcēs testūdinēsque, quās īdem captīvī docuerant, parāre ac facere coepērunt.

43. Septimō oppugnātiōnis diē, maximō coortō ventō, ferventēs fūsilī ex argillā glandēs fundīs et fervefacta iacula in casās, quae mōre Gallicō strāmentīs erant tēctae, iacere coepērunt. Hae celeriter īgnem comprehendērunt et ventī magnitūdine in omnem locum castrōrum distulērunt. Hostēs maximō clāmōre, sīcutī partā iam atque explōrātā victōriā, turrēs testūdinēsque agere et scālīs vāllum ascendere coepērunt. At tanta mīlitum virtūs atque ea praesentia animī fuit ut, cum undique flammā torrērentur maximāque tēlōrum multitūdine premerentur, suaque omnia impedīmenta atque omnēs fortūnās cōnflagrāre intellegerent, nōn modo dēmigrandī causā dē vāllō dēcēderet nēmō, sed paene nē respiceret quidem quisquam, ac tum omnēs ācerrimē fortissimēque pugnārent.

---

1. **ad . . . vāllī**: 'in proportion to the height of the (Roman) rampart.' **falcēs**: wooden beams with a hook-shaped iron on the end, used to tear down the enemy's wall or rampart. **testūdinēs**: moveable sheds under the protection of which the soldiers might work. **īdem**: 'likewise.' What case?

2. **coepērunt**: sc. *hostēs*.

43. 4. **ferventēs . . . glandēs**: 'red-hot balls of plastic clay.' **fundīs**: perhaps the slings were lined with metal to prevent them from being burned.

5. **casās**: 'huts,' a more permanent structure built for the winter camp. **strāmentīs tēctae**: 'thatched.' Thus they caught fire easily.

6. **Hae**: *i.e. casae*.

7. **distulērunt**: sc. *īgnem*. The burning straw thatch of the roofs was carried by the wind and spread the flames all over the camp.

9. **agere**: 'push forward.'

10. **ea**: = *tālis*.

11. **cum**: 'although.' **torrērentur**: 'scorched.'

13. **fortūnās**: 'their personal belongings.'

15. **respiceret**: 'looked back' toward the camp and the destroy-

Hīc diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit ēventum, ut eō diē maximus numerus hostium vulnerārētur atque interficerētur, ut sē sub ipsō vāllō cōnstīpāverant recessumque prīmīs ultimī nōn dabant. Paulum quidem intermissā flammā et quōdam locō turrī adāctā et contingente vāllum, tertiae cohortis centuriōnēs ex eō, quō stābant, locō recessērunt suōsque omnēs remōvērunt, nūtū vōcibusque hostēs, sī introīre vellent, vocāre coepērunt; quōrum prōgredī ausus est nēmō. Tum ex omnī parte lapidibus coniectīs dēturbātī, turrisque succēnsa est.

The bravery of two centurions.

44. Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs, quī prīmīs ōrdinibus appropinquārent, T. Pullō et L. Vorēnus. Hī perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās habēbant, uter alterī anteferrētur, omnibusque annīs dē locō summīs simultātibus contendēbant. Ex hīs Pullō, cum ācerrimē ad mūnītiōnēs pugnārētur, 'Quid dubitās,' inquit, 'Vorēne? Aut quem locum tuae probandae virtūtis exspectās? Hīc diēs dē nostrīs contrōversiīs iūdicābit.' Haec cum dīxisset,

---

ing flames; practically every man kept at his post facing toward the enemy, — so great was their self-control.

3. **sub**: 'at the foot of.'

4. **ultimī**: 'those in the rear ranks.'

5. **turrī**: a tower of the enemy's.

44. 13. **prīmīs ōrdinibus appropinquārent**: 'were getting close to the first rank' (of centurions). For the mood see 233.

14. **uter**: 'which of the two.'

15. **alterī**: what case? See 49 and 149, *b*. **omnibus annīs**: 'every year.' **dē locō**: 'for the position' of chief centurion.

18. **locum**: 'opportunity.' **tuae . . . virtūtis**: 'for showing your courage.'

prōcēdit extrā mūnītiōnēs, quaeque pars hostium cōnfertissima est vīsa, irrumpit.

Nē Vorēnus quidem sēsē vāllō continet, sed omnium veritus exīstimātiōnem subsequitur. Mediocrī spatiō relictō Pullō pīlum in hostēs immittit atque ūnum ex multitūdine prōcurrentem trāicit; quō percussō et exanimātō, hunc scūtīs prōtegunt hostēs, in illum ūniversī tēla coniciunt neque dant prōgrediendī facultātem. Trānsfīgitur scūtum Pullōnī et verūtum in balteō dēfīgitur. Avertit hīc cāsus vāgīnam et gladium ēdūcere cōnantī dextram morātur manum, impedītumque hostēs circumsistunt. Succurrit inimīcus illī Vorēnus et labōrantī subvenit.

Ad hunc sē cōnfestim ā Pullōne omnis multitūdō convertit; illum verūtō trānsfīxum arbitrantur. Gladiō comminus rem gerit. Vorēnus atque ūnō interfectō reliquōs paulum prōpellit; dum cupidius īnstat, in locum dēiectus īnferiōrem concidit. Huic rūrsus circumventō subsidium

---

1. **quaeque pars**: = *et in eam partem (irrumpit) quae*, etc.

3. **Nē . . . quidem**: 'nor . . . either.' **omnium . . . exīstimātiōnem**: he was afraid of what every one would think of him.

4. **subsequitur**: he also went outside of the rampart. **spatiō**: 'distance.'

6. **prōcurrentem**: trans. by a rel. clause in Eng. **quō, hunc**: = the *unum prōcurrentem*.

7. **illum**: Pullo.

9. **Pullōnī**: 151, *a*. **balteō**: 'sword-belt.'

10. **vāgīnam**: the lance struck his sword-belt and knocked his 'scabbard' around so that he could not draw his sword easily. **cōnantī**: sc. *eī* (= *Pullōnī*). For the case and trans. see 151, *a*.

11. **impedītum**: Pullo.

13. **hunc**: Vorenus.

14. **illum**: who?

16. **cupidius**: 'too eagerly,' 193. **in locum . . . concidit**: Vorenus stumbled and fell.

fert Pullō, atque ambō incolumēs, complūribus interfectīs, summā cum laude sēsē intrā mūnītiōnēs recipiunt.

Sīc fortūna in contentiōne et certāmine utrumque versāvit, ut alter alterī inimīcus auxiliō salūtīque esset, neque dīiūdicārī posset, uter utrī virtūte anteferendus vidērētur.

Cicero succeeds in getting a message to Caesar.

45. Quantō erat in diēs gravior atque asperior oppugnātiō, et maximē quod, magnā parte mīlitum cōnfectā vulneribus, rēs ad paucitātem dēfēnsōrum pervēnerat, tantō crēbriōrēs litterae nūntīique ad Caesarem mittēbantur; quōrum pars dēprehēnsa in cōnspectū nostrōrum mīlitum cum cruciātū necābātur.

Erat ūnus intus Nervius, nōmine Verticō, locō nātus honestō, quī ā prīmā obsidiōne ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat suamque eī fidem praestiterat. Hīc servō spē lībertātis magnīsque persuādet praemiīs, ut litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hās ille in iaculō illigātās effert et Gallus inter

---

3. **utrumque versāvit**: 'changed them about,' exhibiting the bravery now of one, now of the other.

4. **inimīcus**: 'rival.' **auxiliō salūtīque**: 156 and Note.

5. **utrī**: case? See 49.

45. 6. **Quantō . . . tantō**: 'the more burdensome . . . the more frequently,' 168.

8. **rēs . . . pervēnerat**: the number of men who could stand the tremendous strain of service on the rampart was becoming small.

10. **quōrum**: = *nūntiōrum*. **dēprehēnsa**: 'intercepted.'

12. **Erat**: 'there was.' **intus**: 'in the camp.' **nōmine**: 171.

13. **ā prīmā obsidiōne**: 'after the beginning of the siege.'

14. **Hīc**: Vertico. **servō**: sc. *suō*, 'a slave of his.'

16. **illigātās**: the dispatch was undoubtedly concealed in some way, perhaps by winding cord about it on the javelin. The plan succeeded and Caesar was informed of the grave situation in Cicero's camp.

Gallōs sine ūllā suspīciōne versātus ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eō dē perīculīs Cicerōnis legiōnisque cognōscitur.

Caesar quickly starts to relieve Cicero.

46. Caesar, acceptīs litterīs hōrā circiter ūndecimā diēī, statim nūntium in Bellovacōs ad M. Crassum quaestōrem mittit, cuius hīberna aberant ab eō mīlia passuum xxv; iubet mediā nocte legiōnem proficīscī celeriterque ad sē venīre. Exit cum nūntiō Crassus. Alterum ad C. Fabium lēgātum mittit, ut in Atrebātium fīnēs legiōnem addūcat, quā sibi iter faciendum sciēbat. Scrībit Labiēnō, sī reī pūblicae commodō facere posset, cum legiōne ad fīnēs Nerviōrum veniat. Reliquam partem exercitūs, quod paulō aberat longius, nōn putat exspectandam; equitēs circiter cccc ex proximīs hībernīs cōgit.

47. Hōrā circiter tertiā ab antecursōribus dē Crassī adventū certior factus, eō diē mīlia passuum xx prōcēdit.

---

46. Caesar acts quickly and surely.

3. **hōrā ūndecimā**: it was late afternoon, toward 5 o'clock, when Caesar got the dispatch.

4. **nūntium**: he was mounted on horseback. **in Bellovacōs**: not far from Caesar, who was at Samarabriva. See Map.

7. **cum nūntiō**: 'immediately on receipt of the message.' **Alterum**: sc. *nūntium*.

9. **quā . . . sciēbat**: Fabius was to join Caesar on his way to the relief of Cicero. **Labiēnō**: this officer was some distance away, near the country of the Treveri. **reī pūblicae commodō**: 'consistently with the public interest.'

10. **ad fīnēs Nerviōrum**: to join Caesar.

47. 14. **Hōrā tertiā**: shortly after nine o'clock. Caesar waited merely to learn from the advance guard (*antecursōribus*) of Crassus that he was coming and then at once set out, about 16 hours after he received Cicero's message. The long march of 20 miles on that day indicated his anxiety.

Crassum Samarabrīvae praeficit legiōnemque eī attribuit, quod ibi impedīmenta exercitūs, obsidēs cīvitātum, litterās pūblicās frūmentumque omne, quod eō tolerandae hiemis causā dēvexerat, relinquēbat. Fabius, ut imperātum erat, nōn ita multum morātus, in itinere cum legiōne occurrit. Labiēnus, interitū Sabīnī et caede cohortium cognitā, cum omnēs ad eum Trēverōrum cōpiae vēnissent, veritus, nē, sī ex hībernīs fugae similem profectiōnem fēcisset, hostium impetum sustinēre nōn posset, praesertim quōs recentī victōriā efferrī scīret, litterās Caesarī remittit, quantō cum perīculō legiōnem ex hībernīs ēductūrus esset; rem gestam in Eburōnibus perscribit; docet, omnēs equitātūs peditātūsque cōpiās Trēverōrum tria mīlia passuum longē ab suīs castrīs cōnsēdisse.

---

1. **Samarobrīvae**: 149, *b*.

2. **quod . . . relinquēbat**: Samarobriva was the headquarters for the winter. **litterās pūblicās**: 'state papers,' accounts and documents relating to army business.

5. **occurrit**: sc. *eī* (= *Caesarī*). **nōn ita multum morātus**: 'with very little delay,' 289.

6. **interitū . . . cohortium**: see introductory note to chap. 38.

7. **vēnissent**: with hostile intent. Labienus did not think it wise under the circumstances to leave his camp.

8. **fēcisset**: 271; for the fut. perf. ind. of dir. disc.

9. **praesertim quōs . . . scīret**: 'especially since he knew that, etc.,' 242.

10. **quantō**: introduce this clause with 'saying.'

11. **rem . . . perscrībit**: 'he described in detail (*per-*) what had happened in the country of the Eburones,' *i.e.* the fate of Sabinus and Cotta and of his legion and a half. The story is told that when Caesar heard of the disaster he let his hair and beard grow long and swore that he would not cut them again until he had avenged the death of his men.

12. **tria mīlia**: with *longē*, 130.

He reaches the vicinity of Cicero's camp and sends him a cheering message.

48. Caesar, cōnsiliō eius probātō, etsi opīniōne trium legiōnum dēiectus ad duās redierat, tamen ūnum commūnis salūtis auxilium in celeritāte pōnēbat. Vēnit magnīs itineribus in Nerviōrum fīnēs. Ibi ex captīvīs cognōscit, quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur, quantōque in perīculō rēs sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallīs magnīs praemiīs persuādet, utī ad Cicerōnem epistulam dēferat.

Hanc Graecīs cōnscrīptam litterīs mittit, nē interceptā epistulā nostra ab hostibus cōnsilia cognōscantur. Sī adīre nōn possit, monet, ut trāgulum cum epistulā ad āmentum dēligātā intrā mūnītiōnem castrōrum abiciat. In litterīs scrībit, sē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter affore; hortātur, ut prīstinam virtūtem retineat. Gallus perīculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, trāgulam mittit.

Haec cāsū ad turrim adhaesit neque ā nostrīs bīduō ani-

---

48. 1. **etsī . . . redierat**: Caesar had only two legions, whereas he had expected to have three.

6. **cuidam**: 'one.'

7. **utī . . . dēferat**: it was important to get word to Cicero at once that Caesar was hurrying to his relief.

8. **Hanc**: sc. *epistulam*. **Graecīs . . . litterīs**: he wrote the letter in Latin using Greek letters. Some of the Nervii might have understood Latin but apparently Caesar believed that they were not familiar with the Greek letters.

9. **Sī . . . possit**: 'if he (the messenger) could not enter (the camp of Cicero).'

10. **cum**: prep.; trans. the sentence by two coördinate clauses, 'tie the letter to the thong of his javelin and throw it over inside the intrenchments of the camp.' **āmentum**: a 'thong' of leather fastened to the handle of the javelin near the middle; by means of it the javelin could be thrown with greater force and accuracy.

15. **Haec**: *i.e. trāgula*. **adhaesit**: 'lodged,' the point sticking into the wood.

madversa tertiō diē ā quōdam mīlite cōnspicitur, dēmpta ad Cicerōnem dēfertur. Ille perlēctam in conventū mīlitum recitat maximāque omnēs laetitiā afficit. Tum fūmī incendiōrum procul vidēbantur; quae rēs omnem dubitātiōnem adventūs legiōnum expulit.

The Gauls turn upon Caesar.

49. Gallī, rē cognitā per explōrātōrēs, obsidiōnem relinquunt, ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiīs contendunt. Haec erant armāta circiter mīlia LX. Cicerō datā facultāte Gallum ab eōdem Verticōne, quem suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, repetit, quī litterās ad Caesarem dēferat; hunc admonet, iter cautē dīligenterque faciat; perscrībit in litterīs, hostēs ab sē discessisse omnemque ad eum multitūdinem convertisse. Quibus litterīs circiter mediā nocte Caesar allātīs, suōs facit certiōrēs eōsque ad dīmicandum animō cōnfīrmat.

Posterō diē lūce prīmā movet castra et circiter mīlia passuum quattuor prōgressus trāns vallem et rīvum multitūdinem hostium cōnspicātur. Erat magnī perīculī rēs, tantulīs cōpiīs inīquō locō dīmicāre; tum, quoniam obsidi-

3. **maximā laetitiā**: we can easily imagine that their 'joy' was 'very great.'

4. **incendiōrum**: the smoke of burning villages marking Caesar's advance.

49. 6. **rē**: Caesar's approach.

8. **Gallum**: the slave of Vertico mentioned above, p. 353, l. 14, apparently had returned safely to Cicero's camp.

10. **dēferat**: why subjunctive? **hunc**: = *Caesarem*.

11. **faciat**: 260. **perscrībit**: the purpose of this dispatch was to inform Caesar that the Gauls had raised the siege and were now marching against him in full force.

17. **magnī perīculī**: pred. gen. of quality (140); 'involved great danger.'

18. **tantulīs**: Caesar had less than 7000 men; the enemy had 60,000.

ōne līberātum Cicerōnem sciēbat, aequō animō remittendum dē celeritāte exīstimābat. Cōnsēdit et, quam aequissimō potest locō, castra commūnit atque haec, etsī erant exigua per sē, vix hominum mīlium septem, praesertim nūllīs cum impedīmentīs, tamen angustiīs viārum, quam maximē potest, contrahit, eō cōnsiliō, ut in summam contemptiōnem hostibus veniat. Interim speculātōribus in omnēs partēs dīmissīs explōrat, quō commodissimē itinere vallēs trānsīrī possit.

They are beaten and flee.

50. Eō diē parvulīs equestribus proeliīs ad aquam factīs utrīque sēsē suō locō continent: Gallī, quod ampliōrēs cōpiās, quae nōndum convēnerant, exspectābant; Caesar, sī forte timōris simulātiōne hostēs in suum locum ēlicere posset, ut citrā vallem prō castrīs proeliō contenderet; sī id efficere nōn posset, ut explōrātīs itineribus minōre cum perīculō vallem rīvumque trānsīret.

Prīmā lūce hostium equitātus ad castra accēdit proeli-

---

2. **aequissimō**: 'most favorable.'

4. **mīlium**: 141. Since Caesar had two legions with him, there was an average of 3500 men in each. See p. xxviii.

6. **contrahit**: Caesar reduced the width of the streets of the camp and diminished the size of the entire camp, with the intention of making the enemy despise him and become overconfident.

7. **hostibus**: 151, *a*.

50. 10. **parvulīs**: 'rather unimportant.' What does the suffix *-ulus* mean?

11. **Gallī**: sc. *sē suō locō continent.* **ampliōrēs cōpiās**: 'reënforcements.'

12. **Caesar**: sc. *sē suō locō continet.*

13. **timōris simulātiōne**: 'through pretence of fear'; read again, lines 2–7. **in suum locum**: 'to his own ground.'

14. **ut . . . contenderet** (229): trans. before *sī forte . . . posset.* **citrā vallem**: 'on his side of the valley.'

umque cum nostrīs equitibus committit. Caesar cōnsultō equitēs cēdere sēque in castra recipere iubet; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiōre vāllō mūnīrī portāsque obstruī atque in hīs administrandīs rēbus quam maximē concursārī et cum simulātiōne agī timōris iubet.

51. Quibus omnibus rēbus hostēs invītātī cōpiās trādūcunt aciemque inīquō locō cōnstituunt; nostrīs vērō etiam dē vāllō dēductīs, propius accēdunt et tēla intrā mūnītiōnem ex omnibus partibus coniciunt praecōnibusque circummissīs prōnūntiārī iubent, seu quis Gallus seu Rōmānus velit ante hōram tertiam ad sē trānsīre, sine perīculō licēre; post id tempus nōn fore potestātem. Ac sīc nostrōs contempsērunt, ut, obstrūctīs in speciem portīs, singulīs ōrdinibus caespitum, quod eā nōn posse intrōrumpere vidēbantur, aliī vāllum manū scindere, aliī fossās complēre inciperent. Tum Caesar omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā equitātūque ēmissō celeriter hostēs in fugam dat, sīc utī

---

2. **cēdere**: 'to retreat,' in order to create the impression of fear.

4. **obstruī**: 'blocked,' by filling up the gateways with piles of sod.

5. **concursārī . . . agī**: pass. and impersonal; 'he ordered them to rush about as hurriedly as possible and to work with a pretence of fear,' 204. Caesar wished to make the enemy think that he and his men were panic-stricken. That would draw them across the river, they would be forced to attack uphill, and their overconfidence would be their undoing.

51. 6. **trādūcunt**: across the river.

7. **inīquō**: because they were on lower ground.

8. **dē vāllō dēductīs**: as if they were afraid.

13. **in speciem**: 'for show' merely. **singulīs . . . caespitum**: 'each with a single row of sod.'

14. **eā**: 'that way,' *i.e.* by the gates.

16. **Tum**: 'then' Caesar showed his hand. **ēruptiōne**: the slight barrier of sod was flung aside and a sudden 'sally' was made from each gate. A cool head and good strategy prevailed over the force of a great army.

omnīnō pugnandī causā resisteret nēmō, magnumque ex eīs numerum occīdit atque omnēs armīs exuit.

Caesar inspects Cicero's camp.

52. Longius prōsequī veritus, quod silvae palūdēsque intercēdēbant neque etiam parvulō dētrīmentō illōrum locum relinquī vidēbat, omnibus suīs incolumibus cōpiīs eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervēnit. Īnstitūtās turrēs, testūdinēs mūnītiōnēsque hostium admīrātur; legiōne prōductā cognōscit, nōn decimum quemque esse reliquum mīlitem sine vulnere; ex hīs omnibus iūdicat rēbus, quantō cum perīculō et quantā cum virtūte rēs sint administrātae. Cicerōnem prō eius meritō legiōnemque collaudat; centuriōnēs singillātim tribūnōsque mīlitum appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtūtem testimōniō Cicerōnis cognōverat. Dē cāsū Sabīnī et Cottae certius ex captīvīs cognōscit.

Posterō diē cōntiōne habitā rem gestam prōpōnit, mīlitēs cōnsōlātur et cōnfīrmat; quod dētrīmentum culpā et temeritāte lēgātī sit acceptum, hōc aequiōre animō ferendum docet, quod, beneficiō deōrum immortālium et virtūte eōrum expiātō incommodō, neque hostibus diūtina laetitia neque ipsīs longior dolor relinquātur.

---

52. 8. **nōn . . . vulnere**: 'that not one man in ten had escaped unwounded.'

11. **collaudat, appellat**: let the pupil dwell on this scene in his imagination. It will afford him one means of understanding why Caesar was popular with his soldiers.

15. **rem gestam**: the story of Sabinus and Cotta.

17. **lēgātī**: Sabinus. **hōc**: subj. of *ferendum* (*esse*). **aequiōre animō**: 'more calmly.'

18. **eōrum**: the soldiers to whom Caesar was speaking.

19. **incommodō**: 'the loss' of that part of the army commanded by Sabinus and Cotta.

20. **ipsīs**: the Romans.

BOOK VI

The Second Invasion of Germany

Caesar again invades Germany, bridging the Rhine. The Ubii send envoys to him.

9. Caesar postquam ex Menapiīs in Trēverōs vēnit, duābus dē causīs Rhēnum trānsīre cōnstituit: quārum ūna erat, quod Germānī auxilia contrā sē Trēverīs mīserant; altera,

The Rhine.

The so-called 'Place of the Four Lakes.'

In 53 B.C., the sixth year of the war, the events of which are described in Book VI, Caesar made a second invasion into Germany. In the following chapters he gives an interesting account of the great Hercynian Forest and the animals that are found in it. To appreciate the extent of this Forest see the Map.

9. 1. **vēnit**: 234. **duābus dē causīs**: 185, 3, *d.*

2. **ūna**: sc. *causa*.

3. **altera**: sc. *causa*.

nē ad eōs Ambiorīx receptum habēret. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus, paulum suprā eum locum quō ante exercitum trādūxerat facere pontem īnstituit. Nōtā atque īnstitūtā ratiōne, magnō mīlitum studiō, paucīs diēbus opus efficitur. Fīrmō in Trēverīs ad pontem praesidiō relīctō, nē quis ab hīs subitō mōtus orerētur, reliquās cōpiās equitātumque trādūcit.

Ubiī, quī ante obsidēs dederant atque in dēditiōnem vēnerant, pūrgandī suī causā ad eum lēgātōs mittunt, quī doceant neque auxilia ex suā cīvitāte in Trēverōs missa neque ab sē fidem laesam; petunt atque ōrant ut sibi parcat, nē commūnī odiō Germānōrum innocentēs prō nocentibus poenās pendant; sī amplius obsidum velit darī, pollicentur. Cognitā Caesar causā, reperit ab Suēbīs auxilia missa esse; Ubiōrum satisfactiōnem accipit, aditūs viāsque in Suēbōs perquīrit.

The Suebi prepare for war.

10. Interim paucīs post diēbus fit ab Ubiīs certior Suēbōs omnēs in ūnum locum cōpiās cōgere atque eīs nātiōni-

---

1. **Hīs . . . rēbus**: 'this course of action.'

2. **quō**: the rel. pron.; sc. *locō* and see 175. **ante . . . trādūxerat**: in his first invasion of Germany, described in Book IV, chapters 14 ff.

3. **Nōtā . . . ratiōne, magnō . . . studiō**: 290. The ablatives absolute denote the cause. It was easy to build a bridge because it had already been done. The method is fully described in IV, 17.

5. **quis**: with *mōtus*.

6. **hīs**: the Treveri.

7. **trādūcit**: sc. *Rhēnum* or *pontem*.

9. **quī doceant**: 230.

10. **missa . . . laesam**: sc. *esse*.

12. **commūnī odiō**: 165. **Germānōrum**: 137.

10. 17. **fit**: sc. *Caesar*.

18. **cōgere**: note the tense and trans. accordingly.

bus quae sub eōrum sint imperiō dēnūntiāre ut auxilia peditātūs equitātūsque mittant. Hīs cognitīs rēbus rem frūmentāriam prōvidet, castrīs idōneum locum dēligit; Ubiīs imperat ut pecora dēdūcant suaque omnia ex agrīs in oppida cōnferant, spērāns barbarōs atque imperītōs hominēs, inopiā cibāriōrum adductōs, ad inīquam pugnandī condiciōnem posse dēdūcī; mandat ut crēbrōs explōrātōrēs in Suēbōs mittant quaeque apud eōs gerantur cognōscant.

Illī imperāta faciunt et paucīs diēbus intermissīs referunt: Suēbōs omnēs, posteā quam certiōrēs nūntiī dē exercitū Rōmānōrum vēnerint, cum omnibus suīs sociōrumque cōpiīs quās coēgissent penitus ad extrēmōs fīnēs sē recēpisse; silvam esse ibi īnfīnītā magnitūdine, quae appellātur Bācēnis; hanc longē intrōrsus pertinēre et prō nātīvō mūrō obiectam Chēruscōs ab Suēbīs Suēbōsque ab Chēruscīs prohibēre; ad eius silvae initium Suēbōs adventum Rōmānōrum exspectāre cōnstituisse.

The customs of the Gauls and Germans. Party strife among the Gauls.

11. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, nōn aliēnum esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus, et quō differant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē, prōpōnere.

---

1. **eōrum**: sc. *Suēbōrum*.
2. **peditātūs equitātūsque**: 139.
3. **castrīs**: 157.
9. **Illī**: sc. *Ubiī*.
11. **vēnerint**: why subjunctive? Note the tense and cf. *coēgissent*, which takes its tense from *recēpisse*; 221.
14. **nātīvō**: 'natural.'
16. **ad**: 'near' or 'at.'

11. 18. **ad hunc locum**: 'to this point' in the narrative. **aliēnum**: 'out of place,' 'inappropriate.'

In Galliā nōn sōlum in omnibus cīvitātibus atque in omnibus pāgīs partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulīs domibus factiōnēs sunt, eārumque factiōnum prīncipēs sunt quī summam auctōritātem eōrum iūdiciō habēre exīstimantur, quōrum ad arbitrium iūdiciumque summa omnium rērum cōnsiliōrumque redeat.

Idque eius reī causā antīquitus īnstitūtum vidētur, nē quis ex plēbe contrā potentiōrem auxilī egēret; suōs enim quisque opprimī et circumvenīrī nōn patitur, neque, aliter sī faciat, ūllam inter suōs habet auctōritātem. Haec eadem ratiō est in summā tōtīus Galliae; namque omnēs cīvitātēs in partēs dīvīsae sunt duās.

The Sequani, aided by the Germans, obtain the leadership in Gaul. Caesar's arrival gives first place to the Aeduans and second to the Remi.

12. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis prīncipēs erant Aeduī, alterius Sēquanī. Hī cum per sē minus valērent, quod summa auctōritās antīquitus erat in Aeduīs magnaeque eōrum erant clientēlae, Germānōs atque Ariovistum sibi adiūnxerant eōsque ad sē magnīs iactūrīs pollicitātiōnibusque perdūxerant. Proeliīs vērō complūri-

---

4. **iūdiciō**: 166, *a*.

5. **summa . . . rērum**: 'the final decision in all matters'; *summa* is the noun.

7. **antīquitus**: an adv. from *antīquus*.

8. **ex plēbe**: 138, *a*. **auxilī**: gen. with *egēret*. Some verbs denoting *plenty* and *want* govern a genitive.

11. **ratiō**: 'state of affairs.' **Galliae**: with *ratiō*, while *in summā* means 'in general.' *Galliae* may be trans. 'throughout Gaul.'

12. 13. **Cum . . . vēnit**: '*at the time when* Caesar came'; 235.

16. **clientēlae**: 'dependencies,' referring to the states which were subject to them.

bus factīs secundīs, atque omnī nōbilitāte Aeduōrum interfectā, tantum potentiā antecesserant ut magnam partem clientium ab Aeduīs ad sē trādūcerent, obsidēsque ab eīs prīncipum fīliōs acciperent, et pūblicē iūrāre cōgerent nihil sē contrā Sēquanōs cōnsilī initūrōs, et partem fīnitimī agrī per vim occupātam possidērent, Galliaeque tōtīus prīncipātum obtinērent.

Quā necessitāte adductus Dīviciācus auxilī petendī causā Rōmam ad senātum profectus imperfectā rē redierat. Adventū Caesaris factā commūtātiōne rērum, obsidibus Aeduīs redditīs, veteribus clientēlīs restitūtīs, novīs per Caesarem comparātīs, quod hī quī sē ad eōrum amīcitiam aggregāverant meliōre condiciōne atque aequiōre imperiō sē ūtī vidēbant, reliquīs rēbus eōrum grātiā dignitāteque amplificātā, Sēquanī prīncipātum dīmīserant.

In eōrum locum Rēmī successerant; quōs quod adaequāre apud Caesarem grātiā intellegēbātur, eī quī propter veterēs inimīcitiās nūllō modō cum Aeduīs coniungī pote-

---

1. **nōbilitāte**: 'nobles'; the abstract for the concrete.
2. **potentiā**: 171.
4. **iūrāre**: sc. *Aeduōs*.
6. **occupātam**: trans. by a rel. clause, 'which they had forcibly seized.'
8. **adductus**: gives the reason for *profectus*.
9. **imperfectā rē**: 'without accomplishing his purpose'; abl. abs.
10. **Aeduīs**: dative.
12. **eōrum**: sc. *Aeduōrum*.
13. **ūtī**: note the quantity, which shows that the word is from *ūtor*.
14. **reliquīs rēbus**: with *amplificātā*. **eōrum**: sc. *Aeduōrum*.
16. **adaequāre . . . grātiā**: 'to stand equally high in Caesar's favor'; lit., 'to equal (the Aeduans) in respect to favor with Caesar.'
17. **intellegēbātur**: the subject is *quōs . . . adaequāre*. **quī . . . poterant**: that is, their hostility to the Aeduans was too great to allow them to unite with them.

rant sē Rēmīs in clientēlam dicābant. Hōs illī dīligenter tuēbantur; ita et novam et repente collēctam auctōritātem tenēbant. Eō tum statū rēs erat, ut longē prīncipēs habērentur Aeduī, secundum locum dignitātis Rēmī obtinērent.

Condition of the common people in Gaul. The power of the Druids.

13. In omnī Galliā eōrum hominum quī aliquō sunt numerō atque honōre genera sunt duo; nam plēbēs paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē, nūllī adhibētur cōnsiliō. Plērīque, cum aut aere aliēnō aut magnitūdine tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant nōbilibus, quibus in hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra quae dominīs in servōs.

Sed dē hīs duōbus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum. Illī rēbus dīvīnīs intersunt, sacrificia pūblica ac prīvāta prōcūrant, religiōnēs interpretantur; ad eōs magnus adulēscentium numerus disciplīnae causā concurrit,

---

1. **Rēmīs**: 151, *a*. **dicābant**: note the form and quantity; can it come from *dīcō*?

3. **Eō . . . statū**: 'in such a condition.' **longe**: the adv. modifies the verbal idea implied in *prīncipēs*, as if it were *longē praestāre*.

13. 6. **aliquō . . . numerō**: 'of any account.'

7. **plēbēs**: nom. sing.; see Vocab. and 123, *b*.

8. **quae**: the antecedent is *plēbēs* and the rel. clause denotes cause. Observe that this does not require the subjunctive and see 242.

11. **nōbilibus**: cf. *Rēmīs*, line 1, above. **quibus . . . sunt**: 'who have'; 154. **in hōs**: 'over them,' with *iūra*.

12. **quae**: 'as'; lit. 'which'; sc. *iūra*. **dominīs**: 154. **in servōs**: cf. *in hōs*, line 11, above.

13. **druidum . . . equitum**: 139.

15. **prōcūrant**: note the deriv. and meaning. **religiōnēs interpretantur**: 'explain religious matters'; that is, the various rites and ceremonies, the meaning of oracles and portents, and the like.

magnōque hī sunt apud eōs honōre. Nam ferē dē omnibus contrōversiīs pūblicīs prīvātīsque cōnstituunt et, sī quod est admissum facinus, sī caedēs facta, sī dē hērēditāte, dē fīnibus contrōversia est, īdem dēcernunt, praemia poenāsque cōnstituunt; sī quī aut prīvātus aut populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit, sacrificiīs interdīcunt. Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hī numerō

"Druid Stones" in France.

These huge stones, from six to nineteen feet high, are found in Great Britain, France, and some other countries. Though often called "Druid Stones" or "Druidical Rings" they seem to have no connection with the Druids.

1. **hī**: the Druids. **eōs**: the Gauls.

4. **dēcernunt**: 'pass judgment'; see 205.

6. **stetit**: 'abide by'; lit. 'stand by.' **sacrificiīs interdīcunt**: sc. *eī* (dat. of indirect object), 'exclude him from the sacrifices.' *Sacrificiīs* is abl. of separation.

7. **Quibus**: dat., like *eī* in *sacrificiīs eī interdīcunt*, above. The relative precedes its antecedent *hī*.

impiōrum ac scelerātōrum habentur, hīs omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum sermōnemque dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgiōne incommodī accipiant, neque hīs petentibus iūs redditur neque honōs ūllus commūnicātur.

Hīs autem omnibus druidibus praeest ūnus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctōritātem. Hōc mortuō, aut sī quī ex reliquīs excellit dignitāte succēdit, aut sī sunt plūrēs parēs, suffrāgiō druidum dēligitur; nōn numquam etiam armīs dē prīncipātū contendunt. Hī certō annī tempore in fīnibus Carnutum, quae regiō tōtīus Galliae media habētur, cōnsīdunt in locō cōnsecrātō. Hūc omnēs undique quī contrōversiās habent conveniunt eōrumque dēcrētīs iūdiciīsque pārent.

Disciplīnā in Britanniā reperta atque inde in Galliam trānslāta esse exīstimātur, et nunc quī dīligentius eam rem cognōscere volunt plērumque illō discendī causā proficīscuntur

The privileges of the Druids; their training and beliefs.

14. Druidēs ā bellō abesse cōnsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt, mīlitiae vacātiōnem omniumque

---

1. **hīs**: 153.

2. **incommodī**: with *quid;* 138.

4. **honōs**: the old form of *honor*, with its usual meaning in Latin of 'public office.'

6. **Hōc mortuō**: 'when he dies.' **sī quī ex reliquīs**: 'any one of the rest who'; lit. 'if any one of the rest.'

8. **dēligitur**: sc. *successor* or *quī succēdat.*

9. **certō**: be careful of the meaning.

12. **eōrum**: = *druidum.*

13. **reperta . . . trānslāta**: 274, *a.* Caesar seems to be wrong in supposing that Druidism originated in Britain, although in his time it was stronger in Britain than in Gaul.

14. **nunc**: 'to-day.'

15. **illō**: 'thither'; *i.e.* to Britain: *illō* is the adverb.

rērum habent immūnitātem. Tantīs excitātī praemiīs, et suā sponte multī in disciplīnam conveniunt et ā parentibus propinquīsque mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum versuum ēdiscere dīcuntur. Itaque annōs nōn nūllī vīcēnōs in disciplīnā permanent. Neque fās esse exīstimant ea litterīs mandāre, cum in reliquīs ferē rēbus, pūblicīs prīvātīsque ratiōnibus, Graecīs litterīs ūtantur. Id mihi duābus dē causīs īnstituisse vidēntur, quod neque in vulgus disciplīnam efferrī velint neque eōs quī discunt litterīs cōnfīsōs minus memoriae studēre; quod ferē plērīsque accidit ut praesidiō litterārum dīligentiam in perdiscendō ac memoriam remittant.

In prīmīs hōc volunt persuādēre, nōn interīre animās sed ab aliīs post mortem trānsīre ad aliōs, atque hōc maximē ad virtūtem excitārī putant, metū mortis neglēctō.

---

14. 1. **praemiīs**: 'privileges.'

2. **in disciplīnam**: 'for a course of training.' **et ā parentibus**: we should say '*or* are sent by their parents' or 'and *others* are sent.'

4. **ēdiscere**: 'to learn by heart'; *ē-* gives the idea of 'thoroughly.' **vīcēnōs**: 'twenty each'; 72.

5. **ea**: 'those things,' referring to the contents of the verses.

6. **cum**: 'although.'

7. **ratiōnibus**: 'accounts'; see p. 205, l. 3, above. **Graecīs litterīs**: that is, 'Greek characters,' in which they wrote their own (Celtic) language. Inscriptions of that kind have come down to us.

8. **in vulgus . . . efferrī**: that is, to become generally known.

9. **velint**: 271. **litterīs**: abl. with *cōnfīsōs*. *Fīdō* and its compounds govern an abl.

10. **memoriae**: 149, *a*. **studēre**: 'train,' 'give attention to,' depending on *velint*. **quod**: for *id quod*, referring to the preceding sentence and further explained by the appositional clause *ut . . . remittant*; 261.

13. **interīre animās**: 274; in apposition with the preceding *hōc*.

14. **hōc**: abl.

15. **excitārī**: sc. *homines*. **metū . . . neglēctō**: the abl. abs. denotes cause.

Multa praetereā dē sīderibus atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundī ac terrārum magnitūdine, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortālium vī ac potestāte disputant et iuventūtī trādunt.

The Knights.

15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hī, cum est ūsus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod ante Caesaris adventum ferē quotannīs accidere solēbat, utī aut ipsī iniūriās īnferrent aut illātās prōpulsārent), omnēs in bellō versantur; atque eōrum ut quisque est genere cōpiīsque amplissimus, ita plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs clientēsque habet. Hanc ūnam grātiam potentiamque nōvērunt.

Human sacrifices.

16. Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita religiōnibus, atque ob eam causam quī sunt affectī graviōribus morbīs quīque in proeliīs perīculīsque versantur aut prō victimīs hominēs immolant aut sē immolātūrōs vovent, ad-

---

1. **sīderibus**: 'the heavenly bodies,' more comprehensive than *stella*. **mundī**: 'the universe.'

2. **terrārum**: = *orbis terrārum*, 'the earth.' **rērum nātūrā**: 'nature'; *rērum* should not be translated.

15. 4. **equitum**: see note on *equitum*, p. 82, l. 3. **cum**: 'whenever.'

6. **utī . . . īnferrent . . . prōpulsārent**: the *utī*-clauses explain *quod;* cf. p. 369, l. 10.

8. **genere**: 'family'; 171.

9. **ambactōs**: 'retainers'; they seem to have been hired servants, inferior in rank to the *clientēs*. **Hanc . . . nōvērunt**: 'this is the only kind . . . that they know.'

16. 11. **admodum dēdita**: 'remarkably addicted.' **religiōnibus**: 'religious ceremonies.'

12. **quī . . . quīque**: sc. *eī*, subject of *immolent* and *vovent*.

13. **prō**: 'as.'

14. **immolātūrōs**: sc. *esse*. **administrōs**: in apposition with *druidibus;* 'they rely upon the help of the Druids.'

ministrīsque ad ea sacrificia druidibus ūtuntur, quod, prō vītā hominis nisi hominis vīta reddātur, nōn posse deōrum immortālium nūmen plācārī arbitrantur, pūblicēque eiusdem generis habent īnstitūta sacrificia. Aliī immānī magnitūdine simulācra habent, quōrum contexta vīminibus membra vīvīs hominibus complent; quibus succēnsīs circumventī flammā exanimantur hominēs. Supplicia eōrum quī in fūrtō aut in lātrōciniō aut aliquā noxā sint comprehēnsī grātiōra dīs immortālibus esse arbitrantur; sed cum eius generis cōpia dēfēcit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

Their gods.

17. Deum maximē Mercurium colunt. Huius sunt plūrima simulācra; hunc omnium inventōrem artium fe-

---

4. **habent īnstitūta**: 281.

5. **simulācra**: these were great cages of wickerwork (*contexta vīminibus*), made in the shape of the human figure.

6. **quibus**: the antecedent is *simulācra*.

10. **eius generis**: i.e. *eōrum quī in furtō aut lātrōciniō sunt comprehēnsī*.

11. **dēscendunt**: 'resort.'

17. 12. **Deum**: for the form see 19 and 21. **Mercurium**: this and the other gods whom Caesar mentions were of course Celtic deities with Gallic names, whom he identifies with the Roman gods, just as the Romans identified Mercury with the Greek Hermes, etc.

Mercury.

A bronze statue from Herculaneum, representing the messenger god, with his winged sandals, awaiting a summons from Jupiter.

13. **simulācra**: these were probably huge standing stones, rather than actual statues.

runt, hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestūs pecūniae mercātūrāsque habēre vim maximam arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem et Minervam. Dē hīs eandem ferē quam reliquae gentēs habent opīniōnem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiōrum initia trādere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Mārtem bella regere. Huic, cum proeliō dīmicāre cōnstituērunt, ea quae bellō cēperint plērumque dēvovent; cum superāvērunt, animālia capta immolant reliquāsque rēs in ūnum locum cōnferunt. Multīs in cīvitātibus hārum rērum exstrūctōs cumulōs locīs cōnsecrātīs cōnspicārī licet; neque saepe accidit ut neglēctā quispiam religiōne aut capta apud sē occultāre aut posita tollere audēret, gravissimumque eī reī supplicium cum cruciātū cōnstitūtum est.

Their method of reckoning time. Relation of father and son.

18. Gallī sē omnēs ab Dīte patre prōgnātōs praedicant idque ab druidibus prōditum dīcunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum, sed noctium fīniunt; diēs nātālēs et mēnsium et annōrum initia sīc observant, ut noctem diēs subsequātur.

---

3. **Apollinem . . . Minervam**: sc. *colunt.*
4. **quam**: 'as': lit. 'which,' sc. *habent.*
6. **trādere**: = *docēre.* **caelestium**: 137.
7. **cum**: 'whenever'; note the mood of the verb and see 235, *a.*
8. **cēperint**: 233.
11. **locīs cōnsecrātīs**: 175.
13. **capta**: = *quae bellō cēperit*: see line 8. **posita**: the things deposited in the *locīs cōnsecrātīs*, l. 11.
14. **eī reī**: 'such an action.'

18. 15. **ab Dīte**: 159, *a.* **prōgnātōs . . . prōditum**: sc. *esse.*

17. **noctium**: the Germans also had the same method of reckoning, which survives in our 'fortnight.'

In reliquīs vītae īnstitūtīs hōc ferē ab reliquīs differunt, quod suōs līberōs, nisi cum adolēvērunt ut mūnus mīlitiae sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adīre nōn patiuntur, fīliumque puerīlī aetāte in pūblicō in cōnspectū patris assistere turpe dūcunt.

Marriage customs; funerals.

19. Virī, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine accēpērunt, tantās ex suīs bonīs aestimātiōne factā cum dōtibus commūnicant. Huius omnis pecūniae coniūnctim ratiō habētur frūctūsque servantur; uter eōrum vītā supe-

1. **ferē**: 'in general.' **ab reliquīs**: 'from all other peoples', repetition of *reliquīs* is rather awkward.

2. **ut . . . possint**: result clause without an introductory word meaning 'so,' which may be supplied.

4. **assistere**: 'to appear.'

5. **turpe dūcunt**: 'they consider it disgraceful.' *Turpe* agrees with the subst. clause *fīlium assistere;* 274.

19. 6. **Virī**: 'husbands.' **quantās pecūniās . . . tantās**: for *tantās pecūniās, quantās. Pecūniās* here means 'property,' which among primitive peoples was reckoned in cattle (*pecus*). **dōtis . . . nōmine**: 'by way of dowry.'

7. **cum dōtibus commūnicant**: that is, a common fund is formed from the wife's dowry and an equal sum furnished by the husband.

9. **frūctūs**: 'the income.' **vītā**: 171; the meaning is, 'whichever outlives the other.'

Apollo.

The god is represented in his capacity of Citharoedos, player upon the lyre or zither.

rāvit, ad eum pars utrīusque cum frūctibus superiōrum temporum pervenit.

Virī in uxōrēs, sīcutī in līberōs, vītae necisque habent potestātem; et cum pater familiae illūstriōre locō nātus dēcessit, eius propinquī conveniunt et, dē morte sī rēs in suspīciōnem venit, dē uxōribus in servīlem modum quaestiōnem habent et, sī compertum est, īgnī atque omnibus tormentīs excruciātās interficiunt.

Fūnera sunt prō cultū Gallōrum magnifica et sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae vīvīs cordī fuisse arbitrantur in īgnem īnferunt, etiam animālia, ac paulō suprā hanc memoriam servī et clientēs quōs ab eīs dīlēctōs esse cōnstābat iūstīs fūneribus cōnfectīs ūnā cremābantur.

Gossip about public affairs forbidden.

20. Quae cīvitātēs commodius suam rem pūblicam administrāre exīstimantur habent lēgibus sānctum, sī quis

3. **in**: 'over.'

4. **cum**: 'whenever.' **locō**: 'rank,' 'position.'

5. **dē morte . . . venit**: that is, if there is any suspicious circumstance connected with the death.

6. **dē uxōribus . . . quaestiōnem habent**: 'they examine his wives under torture,' as was usual among the Romans in the case of slaves under similar circumstances.

7. **sī compertum est**: 'if they are found guilty'; cf. 205.

9. **prō cultū**: 'considering the (degree of) civilization.'

10. **cordī**: 'dear to'; 156 and Note.

11. **supra hanc memoriam**: 'before our time'; that is, before the recollection of men still living (*hanc*).

12. **iūstīs cōnfectīs**: 'when the funeral rites had been duly completed.'

20. 14. **Quae cīvitātēs**: = *eae cīvitātēs, quae*. **commodius**: 'to best advantage'; more lit. 'to better advantage' (than the rest). **rem pūblicam**: 'public affairs.'

15. **habent . . . sānctum**: 281. The phrase might be translated 'have laws which provide.'

quid dē rē pūblicā ā fīnitimīs rūmōre aut fāmā accēperit, utī ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō aliō commūnicet, quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs atque imperītōs falsīs rūmōribus terrērī et ad facinus impellī et dē summīs rēbus cōnsilium capere cognitum est. Magistrātūs quae vīsa sunt occultant, quaeque esse ex ūsū iūdicāvērunt multitūdinī prōdunt. Dē rē pūblicā nisi per concilium loquī nōn concēditur.

Customs of the Germans: their religion; manner of assigning land.

21. Germānī multum ab hāc cōnsuētūdine differunt. Nam neque druidēs habent, quī rēbus dīvīnīs praesint, neque sacrificiīs student. Deōrum numerō eōs sōlōs dūcunt, quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē opibus iuvantur, Sōlem et Vulcānum et Lūnam; reliquōs nē fāmā quidem accēpērunt.

Vīta omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiīs reī mīlitāris cōnsistit; ā parvīs labōrī ac dūritiae student.

22. Agrī cultūrae nōn student, maiorque pars eōrum vīctūs in lacte, cāseō, carne cōnsistit. Neque quisquam

---

1. **rūmōre aut fāmā**: by 'rumor or report.'

3. **hominēs temerāriōs . . . cognitum est**: trans. as if it were the personal construction, *hominēs temerāriī cognitī sunt.*

5. **quae vīsa sunt**: sc. *occultanda*, 'what (it) has seemed best (to conceal).'

6. **ex ūsū**: 'advantageous'; for the meaning of *ex* see 185, 4, *d.*

7. **per concilium**: 'in a council'; more lit. 'through the medium of a council.'

21. 11. **Deōrum numerō . . . Lūnam**: that is, the Germans had a more primitive worship of the forces of nature, while the Gauls had personified them, perhaps under Greek influence (from Massilia). Tacitus' account of gods corresponding to Mars and Mercury (*Germania*, 9) represents conditions a century later.

22. 18. **in**: we should say 'of.'

agrī modum certum aut fīnēs habet propriōs, sed magistrātūs ac prīncipēs in annōs singulōs gentibus cognātiōnibusque hominum, quīque ūnā coiērunt, quantum et quō locō vīsum est agrī attribuunt, atque annō post aliō trānsīre cōgunt.

Eius reī multās afferunt causās: nē assiduā cōnsuētūdine captī studium bellī gerendī agrīcultūrā commūtent; nē lātōs fīnēs parāre studeant, potentiōrēsque humiliōrēs possessiōnibus expellant; nē accūrātius ad frīgora atque aestūs vītandōs aedificent; nē qua oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēnsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut animī aequitāte plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimīs aequārī videat.

Their frontiers.

23. Cīvitātibus maxima laus est quam lātissimē circum sē vāstātīs fīnibus sōlitūdinēs habēre. Hōc proprium virtū-

---

1. **certum**: be careful of the meaning. **propriōs**: 'of his own,' emphatic position.

2. **gentibus cognātiōnibusque hominum**: 'clans and groups of kinsmen.'

3. **ūnā**: 'with them'; that is, their clients and dependents.

4. **agrī**: with *quantum*, 'as much . . . as,' the relative, as is shown by the mood of the verb. **annō post**: 'a year later'; 168. **aliō**: the adv.

5. **Eius reī**: 'for this custom.' **causās**: enumerated in the following substantive clauses.

6. **agricultūrā**: abl. of association (an instrumental use); we say 'exchange *for*.'

8. **accūrātius**: 'with too great care'; note the derivation. **frīgora atque aestūs**: 'cold and heat'; the plu. of the abstract nouns means lit. 'seasons of cold and heat'; cf. *siccitātēs*, p. 325, l. 12.

11. **aequitāte**: 'contentment'; abl. of means, 'that they may control (*contineant*) the people by keeping them contented.'

12. **aequārī**: 'put on an equality'; cf. p. 199, l. 7.

23. 13. **Cīvitātibus**: 151, *a*.

14. **vāstātīs fīnibus**: the abl. abs. denotes cause. **proprium**

tis exīstimant, expulsōs agrīs fīnitimōs cēdere neque quemquam prope audēre cōnsistere; simul hōc sē fore tūtiōrēs arbitrantur, repentīnae incursiōnis timōre sublātō. Cum bellum cīvitās aut illātum dēfendit aut īnfert, magistrātūs quī eī bellō praesint et vītae necisque habeant potestātem dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est commūnis magistrātus, sed prīncipēs regiōnum atque pāgōrum inter suōs iūs dīcunt.

* * * * * * *

The Hercynian forest, and the wonderful animals found in it.

25. Huius Hercyniae silvae, quae suprā dēmōnstrāta est, lātitūdo novem diērum iter expedītō patet; nōn enim aliter fīnīrī potest, neque mēnsūrās itinerum nōvērunt. Oritur ab Helvētiōrum et Nemetum et Rauracōrum fīnibus, rēctāque flūminis Dānuvī regiōne pertinet ad fīnēs Dācōrum et Anartium; hinc sē flectit sinistrōrsus dīversīs ā flūmine

---

virtūtis: 'a sign of courage'; *proprium* is used as a subst.: for the gen. cf. *vērī*, p. 299, l. 4.

1. **cēdere . . . audēre**: in apposition with *hōc*.

2. **hōc**: 'on this account,' explained by the causal abl. abs. which follows.

4. **bellum . . . illātum dēfendit aut īnfert**: 'repels an invasion or makes offensive war'; *illātum* is taken only with *dēfendit*, *bellum* with both verbs.

5. **quī . . . praesint**: 230.

6. **commūnis**: 'general' or 'central,' that is, common to a whole nation.

7. **pāgōrum**: 'cantons,' probably explanatory of *regiōnum*, or perhaps referring to the inhabitants rather than to the district itself.

25. 8. **suprā**: in the preceding (omitted) chap.

9. **diērum**: with *iter*, 141. **expedītō**: dat. case; 'for a man traveling light (*i.e.* without unnecessary baggage).' **aliter**: you cannot tell its extent in miles.

10. **nōvērunt**: sc. as subj. in Eng., 'the people who live there.' **Oritur**: 'it starts.'

11. **rēctā . . . regiōne**: 'straight along the Danube River.'

13. **flūmine**: the Danube.

regiōnibus multārumque gentium fīnēs propter magnitūdinem attingit; neque quisquam est huius Germāniae quī sē aut adīsse ad initium eius silvae dīcat, cum diērum iter LX prōcesserit, aut quō ex locō oriātur accēperit; multaque in eā genera ferārum nāscī cōnstat quae reliquīs in locīs vīsa nōn sint; ex quibus quae maximē differant ā cēterīs et memoriae prōdenda videantur, haec sunt.

26. Est bōs cervī figūrā, cuius ā mediā fronte inter aurēs ūnum cornū exsistit excelsius magisque dērēctum hīs quae nōbīs nōta sunt cornibus; ab eius summō sīcut palmae rāmīque lātē diffunduntur. Eadem est fēminae marisque nātūra, eadem fōrma magnitūdōque cornuum.

27. Sunt item quae appellantur alcēs. Hārum est cōnsimilis caprīs figūra et varietās pellium, sed magnitūdine paulō antecēdunt mutilaeque sunt cornibus et crūra sine nōdīs articulīsque habent, neque quiētis causā prōcumbunt, neque, sī quō afflictae cāsū concidērunt, ērigere sēsē aut sublevāre possunt. Hīs sunt arborēs prō cubīlibus; ad eās sē applicant atque ita paulum modo reclīnātae quiētem

---

3–4. **dīcat, accēperit**: 233. Note the difference in tense. **cum**: 'although.'

5. **in eā**: sc. *silvā*.

6. **sint, differant, videantur**: 233.

7. **haec**: 'the following.'

26. 8. **fronte**: 'forehead.'

9. **excelsius**: comp. degree of the adj., limits *cornū*.

10. **cornibus**: 161. **sīcut**: 'just as,' 'like.' Perhaps the animal was a reindeer.

27. 14. **caprīs**: 157. **varietās pellium**: 'spotted coats,' *i.e.* with patches of black and white.

15. **antecēdunt**: sc. *caprās*. **cornibus**: 171.

16. **quiētis causā**: 'to sleep.'

17. **quō**: 'any,' with *cāsū*.

19. **sē applicant**: 'they lean.'

capiunt. Quārum ex vēstīgiīs cum est animadversum ā vēnātōribus quō sē recipere cōnsuērint, omnēs eō locō aut ab rādīcibus subruunt aut accīdunt arborēs, tantum ut summa speciēs eārum stantium relinquātur. Hūc cum sē cōnsuētūdine reclīnāvērunt, īnfīrmās arborēs pondere afflīgunt.

28. Tertium est genus eōrum, quī ūrī appellantur. Hī sunt magnitūdine paulō īnfrā elephantōs, speciē et colōre et figūrā taurī. Magna vīs eōrum est et magna vēlōcitās, neque hominī neque ferae quam cōnspexērunt parcunt. Hōs studiōsē foveīs captōs interficiunt. Hōc sē labōre dūrant adulēscentēs atque hōc genere vēnātiōnis exercent, et quī plūrimōs ex hīs interfēcērunt, relātīs in pūblicum cornibus, quae sint testimōniō, magnam ferunt laudem. Sed assuēscere ad hominēs et mānsuēfierī nē parvulī quidem exceptī possunt. Amplitūdō cornuum et figūra et speciēs multum ā nostrōrum boum cornibus differt. Haec studiōsē conquīsīta ab labrīs argentō circumclūdunt atque in amplissimīs epulīs prō pōculīs ūtuntur.

---

3. **arborēs**: the obj. of *subruunt* also. The natives either partly uproot the trees or they cut a deep notch in them.

4. **eārum**: = *arborum*. On the gender of this word see 37.

28. 6. **ūrī**: "The *urus*, or aurochs, was the ox known as *Bos primigenius*, which in our own country (England) survived into the Bronze Age." — Holmes (see *Ancient Britain*, p. 68).

9. **hominī, ferae**: 149, *a*.

10. **foveīs**: 'pits.' Deep holes were dug and concealed by means of loose brush. The heavy animal fell crashing into the pit and was unable to get out.

13. **quae sint**: = *ut ea sint*, 230.

14. **parvulī**: sc. *ūrī*. They cannot be tamed.

16. **Haec**: sc. *cornua*.

17. **ab labrīs**: 'on their rims.'

18. **prō pōculīs**: cf. the phrase, 'drinking-horn.' **ūtuntur**: sc. *eīs*.

BOOK VII

The Revolt of the Gauls

Believing that Caesar is detained by troubles in Rome, the Gauls form conspiracies.

1. Quiētā Galliā, Caesar, ut cōnstituerat, in Italiam ad conventūs agendōs proficīscitur. Ibi cognōscit dē Clōdī caede; dē senātūsque cōnsultō certior factus ut omnēs iūniōrēs Italiae coniūrārent, dīlēctum tōtā prōvinciā habēre īnstituit. Eae rēs in Galliam Trānsalpīnam celeriter perferuntur. Addunt ipsī et affingunt rūmōribus Gallī quod

---

After the events of the preceding six years the various Gallic states became convinced that Caesar's purpose was the complete subjugation of their country. Gradually they realized that their only hope lay in a united effort to fight the common foe. A leader, one of great strategic ability and a foeman worthy of Caesar himself, rose to their need from among the Arverni. His name was Vercingetorix. He told his people that against a united Gaul the whole world could not stand in arms. At a general council held at Bibracte, the capital of the Aedui, he was elected commander-in-chief of the allied Gallic forces. The struggle culminated at Alesia, the stronghold of the Mandubii, and was most desperate on both sides.

1. 1. **Quiētā Galliā**: the abl. abs. denotes time. **Italiam**: Caesar includes Cisalpine Gaul under this term, although in reality at this time Italy extended only to the Rubicon. **ad conventūs agendōs**: 'to hold court,' part of the duty of the governor of a province.

2. **Clōdī**: refers to P. Clodius Pulcher, murdered in 52 B.C. by T. Annius Milo, a partisan of Pompey, on the Appian Way.

3. **ut . . . coniūrārent**: a substantive clause in apposition with *cōnsultō*. *Coniūrarent* here means to take the oath of military service, 'enlist.' **iūniōrēs**: men between the ages of 17 and 46.

4. **tōtā prōvinciā**: 175; the reference is to Cisalpine Gaul.

6. **affingunt rumōribus**: 'exaggerate in their gossip.' *Rumōribus* is abl. of means.

rēs poscere vidēbātur, retinērī urbānō mōtū Caesarem neque in tantīs dissēnsiōnibus ad exercitum venīre posse.

Hāc impulsī occāsiōne, quī iam ante sē populī Rōmānī imperiō subiectōs dolērent, līberius atque audācius dē bellō cōnsilia inīre incipiunt. Indictīs inter sē prīncipēs Galliae cōnsiliīs silvestribus ac remōtīs locīs queruntur dē Accōnis

The Roman Forum.

1. **rēs**: 'the circumstances.' **urbānō mōtū**: 'disturbances in the city,' *i.e.* at Rome.

3. **quī . . . dolērent**: 242.

4. **līberius . . . audācius**: the comparatives suggest that the plot was already on foot and was brought to a head by the death of Clodius. This is also suggested by the rapidity with which the rebellion spread.

5. **prīncipēs**: on the position of the word see note on p. 113, l. 6.

6. **Accōnis**: Acco had led a rebellion during the previous year and been put to death by Caesar.

morte; posse hunc cāsum ad ipsōs recidere dēmōnstrant; miserantur commūnem Galliae fortūnam; omnibus pollicitātiōnibus ac praemiīs dēposcunt quī bellī initium faciant et suī capitis perīculō Galliam in lībertātem vindicent. In prīmīs ratiōnem esse habendam dīcunt, prius quam eōrum clandestīna cōnsilia efferantur, ut Caesar ab exercitū interclūdātur. Id esse facile, quod neque legiōnēs audeant absente imperātōre ex hībernīs ēgredī neque imperātor sine praesidiō ad legiōnēs pervenīre possit. Postrēmō, in aciē praestāre interficī, quam nōn veterem bellī glōriam lībertātemque quam ā maiōribus accēperint recuperāre.

The Carnutes are first to rebel.

2. Hīs rēbus agitātīs, profitentur Carnutēs sē nūllum perīculum commūnis salūtis causā recūsāre, prīncipēsque ex omnibus bellum factūrōs pollicentur et, quoniam in praesentia obsidibus cavēre inter sē nōn possint, nē rēs efferātur, at iūre iūrandō ac fidē sanciātur petunt, collātīs

---

2. **omnibus**: 'all kinds of.'

3. **quī . . . faciant**: sc. *eōs*, a rel. clause of purpose.

4. **perīculō**: 'at the risk'; 169.

5. **ratiōnem . . . habendam**: 'that plans ought to be made.' **eōrum**: we might have expected *sua*, which, however, is rarely used in the nominative.

10. **praestāre**: for *praestat* (impersonal) of the dir. disc.; the subject is *interficī*.

2. 12. **agitātīs**: in the various meetings referred to in l. 5, p. 381. **profitentur**: in a general meeting.

13. **prīncipēs**: acc. agreeing with *sē* (understood) subject of *factūrōs*; for the meaning of *prīncipēs* see 191.

15. **cavēre inter sē**: 'bind one another.' **nē . . . efferātur**: 'for fear that the act (of exchanging hostages) might become known.'

16. **at**: 'at least.' **iūre iūrandō . . . sanciātur**: object of *petunt*. The subject of *sanciātur* is the clause *nē . . . dēserantur*. **collātīs**

mīlitāribus signīs, quō mōre eōrum gravissima caerimōnia continētur, nē factō initiō bellī ab reliquīs dēserantur. Tum collaudātīs Carnutibus, datō iūre iūrandō ab omnibus quī aderant, tempore eius reī cōnstitūtō ā conciliō discēditur. 5

They massacre the Romans at Cenabum.

3. Ubi ea diēs vēnit, Carnutēs Gutruātō et Conconnetodumnō ducibus, dēspērātīs hominibus, Cēnabum signō

Gergovia.

Slopes of the hill on which the town lies, seen from the neighboring ridge.

. . . **signīs** : 'by interlocking their military standards.' The Gauls went armed to their councils.

1. **quō** : not to be taken with *mōre;* the antecedent is *collātīs . . . signīs.*

2. **dēserantur** : sc. *Carnutēs.*

4. **eius reī** : that is, of beginning the war.

3. 6. **ea diēs** : note the gender. The words refer to *tempore eius reī* in l. 4.

datō concurrunt cīvēsque Rōmānōs, quī negōtiandī causā ibi cōnstiterant, in hīs C. Fūfium Citam, honestum equitem Rōmānum, quī reī frūmentāriae iussū Caesaris praeerat, interficiunt bonaque eōrum dīripiunt. Celeriter ad omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs fāma perfertur. Nam ubi quae maior atque illūstrior incidit rēs, clāmōre per agrōs regiōnēsque significant; hunc aliī deinceps excipiunt et proximīs trādunt, ut tum accidit. Nam quae Cēnabī oriente sōle gesta essent, ante prīmam cōnfectam vigiliam in fīnibus Arvernōrum audīta sunt, quod spatium est mīlium passuum circiter CLX.

Vercingetorix collects a numerous force, which he rules with great severity.

4. Similī ratiōne ibi Vercingetorīx, Celtillī fīlius, Arvernus, summae potentiae adulēscēns, cuius pater prīncipātum tōtīus Galliae obtinuerat et ob eam causam, quod

---

1. **negōtiandī causā**: the business of the Roman *negōtiātōrēs* was for the most part money-lending.

2. **honestum**: 'distinguished'; note the deriv.

3. **reī frūmentāriae . . . praeerat**: that is, was charged with the duty of supplying the army with provisions.

6. **clāmōre**: that is, the news was passed along by shouting it from one place to another. **regiōnēs**: probably = *pāgī;* cf. p. 377, l. 7.

7. **hunc**: sc. *clāmōrem.*

8. **quae**: with concessive force; 254.

9. **ante prīmam . . . vigiliam**: that is, before eight in the evening, since the time was winter.

10. **mīlium passuum**: 141.

4. 12. **ibi**: = *in fīnibus Arvernōrum.*

13. **prīncipātum**: 'a position of leadership'; not actual sovereignty, as is shown by the words *quod rēgnum appetēbat.*

14. **Galliae**: here refers to the central one of the three divisions mentioned in Book I, Chap. 1. **ob eam causam**: referring to the following clause *quod . . . appetēbat.*

rēgnum appetēbat, ā cīvitāte erat interfectus, convocātīs suīs clientibus facile incendit. Cognitō eius cōnsiliō, ad arma concurritur. Prohibētur ā Gobannitiōne, patruō suō reliquīsque prīncipibus, quī hanc temptandam fortūnam nōn exīstimābant; expellitur ex oppidō Gergoviā; nōn dēstitit tamen, atque in agrīs habet dīlēctum egentium ac perditōrum. Hāc coāctā manū, quōscumque adit ex cīvitāte ad suam sententiam perdūcit; hortātur ut commūnis lībertātis causā arma capiant, magnīsque coāctīs cōpiīs adversāriōs suōs, ā quibus paulō ante erat ēiectus, expellit ex cīvitāte. Rēx ab suīs appellātur. Dīmittit quōque versus lēgātiōnēs; obtestātur ut in fidē maneant.

Celeriter sibi Senonēs, Parīsiōs, Pictonēs, Cadūrcōs, Turonōs, Aulercōs, Lemovīcēs, Andōs reliquōsque omnēs, qui Ōceanum attingunt, adiungit; omnium cōnsēnsū ad eum dēfertur imperium. Quā oblātā potestāte, omnibus hīs cīvitātibus obsidēs imperat, certum numerum mīlitum ad sē celeriter addūcī iubet, armōrum quantum quaeque cīvitās domī quodque ante tempus efficiat cōnstituit; in prīmīs equitātuī studet. Summae dīligentiae summam imperī sevēritātem addit; magnitūdine supplicī dubitantēs cōgit. Nam maiōre commissō dēlictō īgnī atque omnibus

---

2. **incendit**: 'spreads the flame' of revolt; used absolutely, 205.

3. **Prohibētur**: 'he is opposed.'

7. **quōscumque adit**: 'all those to whom he has access.'

12. **in fidē**: 'loyal'; lit. 'in loyalty.'

16. **imperium**: 'the chief command.'

18. **armōrum quantum**: 'how great a quantity of arms.'

19. **quodque ante tempus**: 'and before what date.' **in prīmīs . . . studet**: 'gives special attention to.'

21. **dubitantēs**: 'those who hesitated,' used as a noun.

22. **cōgit**: he coerces, 'forces to enlist.'

tormentīs necat, leviōre dē causā auribus dēsectīs aut singulīs effossīs oculīs domum remittit, ut sint reliquīs documentō et magnitūdine poenae perterreant aliōs.

Vercingetorix arouses the Bituriges to revolt. The Aeduans refuse to join them.

5. Hīs suppliciīs celeriter coāctō exercitū, Lucterium Cadūrcum, summae hominem audāciae, cum parte cōpiārum in Rutēnōs mittit; ipse in Biturīgēs proficīscitur. Eius adventū Biturīgēs ad Aeduōs, quōrum erant in fidē, lēgātōs mittunt subsidium rogātum, quō facilius hostium cōpiās sustinēre possint. Aeduī, dē cōnsiliō lēgātōrum quōs Caesar ad exercitum relīquerat, cōpiās equitātūs peditātūsque subsidiō Biturīgibus mittunt. Quī cum ad flūmen Ligerim vēnissent, quod Biturīgēs ab Aeduīs dīvidit, paucōs diēs ibi morātī neque flūmen trānsīre ausī, domum revertuntur lēgātīsque nostrīs renūntiant, sē Biturīgum perfidiam veritōs revertisse, quibus id cōnsilī fuisse cognōverint ut, sī flūmen trānsīssent, ūnā ex parte ipsī, alterā Arvernī sē circumsisterent. Id eāne dē causā quam

---

1. **necat**: sc. *eōs quī commīsērunt*, implied in *commissō dēlictō*. **leviōre dē causā**: for a slighter offense; 185, 3, *d*.

3. **documentō**: 'a lesson'; note the deriv.

5. 7. **in fidē**: here means 'under the protection,' but cf. p. 385, l. 12.

8. **rogātum**: 286.

9. **dē cōnsiliō**: 185, 3, *d*.

15. **quibus . . . cognōverint**: 'whose design, as they had learned, was this.' *Id* is the subject of *fuisse*, *quibus* is dat. of the possessor, and *cōnsilī* is a partitive gen.

16. **trānsīssent**: representing the thought of the Bituriges; for the fut. perf. of the dir. disc.

17. **eāne dē causā**: cf. *dē cōnsiliō*, line 9.

lēgātīs prōnūntiārunt an perfidiā adductī fēcerint, quod nihil nōbīs cōnstat, nōn vidētur prō certō esse pōnendum. Biturīgēs eōrum discessū statim sē cum Arvernīs coniungunt.

Caesar returns to his army.

6. Hīs rēbus in Italiam Caesarī nūntiātīs, cum iam ille urbānās rēs virtūte Cn. Pompeī commodiōrem in statum

Gergovia.
View of the plateau from Orcet.

1. **quod . . . cōnstat**: 'since it is not at all clear to me.'

2. **vidētur**: the subject is the double indir. question *id . . . fēcerint.* **prō certō . . . pōnendum**: 'that a decided opinion ought to be expressed.'

6. 5. **in Italiam**: the acc. instead of the abl. because of the idea of motion in *nūntiātīs*, 'when news was brought.'

6. **urbānās rēs**: 'affairs at Rome.' **Cn. Pompeī**: Pompey had just been elected consul without a colleague.

pervēnisse intellegeret, in Trānsalpīnam Galliam profectus est. Eō cum vēnisset, magnā difficultāte afficiēbātur quā ratiōne ad exercitum pervenīre posset. Nam sī legiōnēs in prōvinciam arcesseret, sē absente in itinere proeliō dīmicātūrās intellegēbat; sī ipse ad exercitum contenderet, nē eīs quidem eō tempore quī quiētī vidērentur suam salūtem rēctē committī vidēbat.

7. Interim Lucterius Cadūrcus in Rutēnōs missus eam cīvitātem Arvernīs conciliat. Prōgressus in Nitiobrogēs et Gabalōs ab utrīsque obsidēs accipit et magnā coāctā manū, in prōvinciam Narbōnem versus irruptiōnem facere contendit. Quā rē nūntiātā, Caesar omnibus cōnsiliīs antevertendum exīstimāvit ut Narbōnem proficīscerētur. Eō cum vēnisset, timentēs cōnfīrmat, praesidia in Rutēnīs prōvinciālibus, Volcīs Arecomicīs, Tolōsātibus circumque Narbōnem, quae loca hostibus erant fīnitima, cōnstituit, partem cōpiārum ex prōvinciā supplēmentumque quod ex Italiā addūxerat in Helviōs, quī fīnēs Arvernōrum contingunt, convenīre iubet.

---

2. **magnā . . . afficiēbātur**: 'he was confronted by the difficult problem.' Note the lit. meaning.

4. **prōvinciam**: the Roman 'Province.'

6. **eīs . . . quī**: sc. *Gallīs*.

7. **rēctē**: 'properly.'

7. 11. **in . . . versus**: 'in the direction of.'

13. **antevertendum**: sc. *esse*. The subject is the following *ut . . . proficīscerētur*, 'that the march to Narbo ought to take precedence of all (other) plans.'

14. **timentēs**: used as a subst.: cf. *dubitantēs*, p. 385, l. 21.

15. **prōvinciālibus**: 'in the (Roman) Province.' Only a part of the Ruteni were in the Province.

17. **supplēmentum**: 'the draft,' referring to the levy mentioned at p. 380, l. 4. Its purpose was to fill gaps in the legions already enrolled.

He attacks the Arverni; Vercingetorix comes to their aid.

8. Hīs rēbus comparātīs, repressō iam Lucteriō et remōtō, quod intrāre intrā praesidia perīculōsum putābat, in Helviōs proficīscitur. Etsī mōns Cebenna, quī Arvernōs ab Helviīs disclūdit, dūrissimō tempore annī altissimā nive iter impediēbat, tamen discussā nive sex in altitūdinem pedum atque ita viīs patefactīs, summō mīlitum sūdōre ad fīnēs Arvernōrum pervēnit. Quibus oppressīs inopīnantibus, quod sē Cebennā ut mūrō mūnītōs exīstimābant ac nē singulārī quidem umquam hominī eō tempore annī sēmitae patuerant, equitibus imperat ut quam lātissimē possint vagentur et quam maximum hostibus terrōrem īnferant.

Celeriter haec fāmā ac nūntiīs ad Vercingetorīgem perferuntur; quem perterritī omnēs Arvernī circumsistunt atque obsecrant ut suīs fortūnīs cōnsulat neu sē ab hostibus dīripī patiātur, praesertim cum videat omne ad sē bellum trānslātum. Quōrum ille precibus permōtus castra ex Biturīgibus movet in Arvernōs versus.

---

8. 1. **Hīs rēbus comparātīs**: giving the cause of *repressō . . . remōtō*, 'when Lucterius was checked by these preparations,' etc.

2. **putābat**: sc. *Lucterius*.

3. **proficīscitur**: sc. *Caesar*.

4. **dūrissimō**: 'most rigorous'; it was mid-winter.

5. **discussā**: 'cleared away.' **sex . . . pedum**: gen. of measure with *nive*.

9. **nē singulārī quidem**: 'not even to a single person,' not to mention an army.

13. **fāmā ac nūntiīs**: first by rumor, then by messengers.

15. **suīs . . . sē**: referring to the Arverni.

16. **sē**: referring to Vercingetorix, 'that the charge of the whole war had been committed to him.'

18. **in . . . versus**: cf. p. 388, l. 11.

Caesar assembles legions and cavalry. Vercingetorix besieges the Boii.

9. At Caesar, bīduum in hīs locīs morātus, quod haec dē Vercingetorīge ūsū ventūra opīniōne praecēperat, per causam supplēmentī equitātūsque cōgendī ab exercitū discēdit, Brūtum adulēscentem hīs cōpiīs praeficit; hunc monet ut in omnēs partēs equitēs quam lātissimē pervagentur; datūrum sē operam nē longius trīduō ā castrīs absit.

Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus, suīs inopīnantibus, quam maximīs potest itineribus Viennam pervenit. Ibi nactus recentem equitātum, quem multīs ante diēbus eō praemīserat, neque diurnō neque nocturnō itinere intermissō, per fīnēs Aeduōrum in Lingonēs contendit, ubi duae legiōnēs hiemābant, ut, sī quid etiam dē suā salūte ab Aeduīs inīrētur cōnsilī, celeritāte praecurreret. Eō cum pervēnisset, ad reliquās legiōnēs mittit priusque omnēs in ūnum locum cōgit, quam dē eius adventū Arvernīs nūntiārī posset.

---

9. 1. **haec dē Vercingetorīge**: 'these movements of Vercingetorix.'

2. **ūsū ventūra**: sc. *esse*, 'would happen'; more lit. 'would come about in practice.' **opīniōne praecēperat**: 'had conjectured.' **per causam**: 'under pretense,' the invariable meaning of *per causam* in Caesar.

6. **datūrum . . . operam absit**: '(saying) that he would take pains not to be.'

8. **Viennam**: a town on the Rhone about twenty miles south of Lyons, modern *Vienne*, the chief city of the Allobroges. **recentem equitātum**: 'a fresh force of cavalry,' probably from the Province.

10. **diurnō . . . nocturnō**: with the force of adverbs, 'neither by day nor by night.'

12. **etiam dē suā salūte**: 'even against his personal safety'; he was suspicious of the Aedui, cf. p. 386, ll. 9, fol. **cōnsilī**: with *quid*.

14. **priusque**: with *quam*.

15. **posset**: 239.

Hāc rē cognitā, Vercingetorīx rūrsus in Biturīgēs exercitum redūcit atque inde profectus Gorgobinam, Boiōrum oppidum, quōs ibi Helvēticō proeliō victōs Caesar collocāverat Aeduīsque attribuerat, oppugnāre īnstituit.

Caesar goes to the rescue of the Boii.

10. Magnam haec rēs Caesarī difficultātem ad cōnsilium capiendum afferēbat: sī reliquam partem hiemis ūnō locō legiōnēs continēret, nē stīpendiāriīs Aeduōrum expugnātīs cūncta Gallia dēficeret, quod nūllum amīcīs in eō praesidium vidēret positum esse; sī mātūrius ex hībernīs ēdūceret, nē ab rē frūmentāriā dūrīs subvectiōnibus labōrāret.

Praestāre vīsum est tamen omnēs difficultātēs perpetī, quam tantā contumēliā acceptā omnium suōrum voluntātēs aliēnāre. Itaque cohortātus Aeduōs dē supportandō com-

---

3. **quōs**: the antecedent is *Boiōrum*. **collocāverat**: see p. 204, ll. 12, fol.

10. 5. **haec rēs**: 'this movement' of the enemy. **ad**: 'with reference to.'

7. **stīpendiāriīs . . . dēficeret**: trans. by two finite verbs, 'the dependents of the Aedui should be captured and (in consequence) all Gaul should revolt.'

9. **vidēret**: the subj. represents the thought of the Gauls.

10. **ab rē frūmentāriā**: that is, suffer from *the lack* of provisions; *ab* may be translated 'with respect to.' **dūrīs subvectiōnibus**: 'because of the difficulties of transportation,' it being the winter season.

11. **tamen**: in spite of the danger of leaving the winter quarters too soon.

12. **tantā contumēliā**: 'such a disgrace' as the defeat of the Boii would bring upon him. **suōrum**: 'his allies,' an unusual use of the word. Perhaps Caesar wrote *sociōrum*, as has been suggested. **voluntātēs**: 'good will,' the plural because it refers to many states.

meātū, praemittit ad Boiōs quī dē suō adventū doceant hortenturque ut in fidē maneant atque hostium impetum magnō animō sustineant.

Duābus Agēdincī legiōnibus atque impedīmentīs tōtīus exercitūs relictīs, ad Boiōs proficīscitur.

* * * * * * *

The revolt of the Gauls. Vercingetorix is made commander-in-chief.

63. Dēfectiōne Aeduōrum cognitā, bellum augētur. Lēgātiōnēs in omnēs partēs circummittuntur; quantum grātiā, auctōritāte, pecūniā valent, ad sollicitandās cīvitātēs nītuntur; nactī obsidēs quōs Caesar apud eōs dēposuerat, hōrum suppliciō dubitantēs territant. Petunt ā Vercingetorīge Aeduī ut ad sē veniat ratiōnēsque bellī gerendī commūnicet. Rē impetrātā, contendunt ut ipsīs summa imperī trādātur, et rē in contrōversiam dēductā tōtīus Galliae concilium Bibracte indīcitur. Eōdem conveniunt undique frequentēs. Multitūdinis suffrāgiīs rēs permittitur; ad ūnum omnēs Vercingetorīgem probant imperātōrem.

Ab hōc conciliō Rēmī, Lingonēs, Trēverī āfuērunt: illī, quod amīcitiam Rōmānōrum sequēbantur; Trēverī, quod

---

1. **quī**: = *eōs quī*.

4. **Agēdincī**: with *relictīs*. **impedīmentīs**: referring to the heavy baggage, which was not actually needed on the march.

63. 7. **quantum . . . valent**: 'so far as they are able.'

10. **dubitantēs**: cf. p. 385, l. 21.

12. **commūnicet**: sc. *sēcum*, 'make known to them.' **Rē impetrātā**: 'when this was granted.'

13. **rē in contrōversiam dēductā**: that is, when Vercingetorix opposed the leadership of the Aeduans.

15. **Multitūdinis**: refers to the members of the council, not, as often, to the common people.

17. **illī**: 'the former,' including the Remi and the Lingones, as is shown by the following sentence.

aberant longius et ā Germānīs premēbantur, quae fuit causa quārē tōtō abessent bellō et neutrīs auxilia mitterent. Magnō dolōre Aeduī ferunt sē dēiectōs prīncipātū, queruntur fortūnae commūtātiōnem et Caesaris in sē indulgentiam requīrunt, neque tamen susceptō bellō suum cōnsilium ab reliquīs sēparāre audent. Invītī summae speī adulēscentēs, Eporēdorīx et Viridomārus, Vercingetorīgī pārent.

64. Ille imperat reliquīs cīvitātibus obsidēs itemque eī reī cōnstituit diem; omnēs equitēs, xv mīlia numerō, celeriter convenīre iubet. Peditātū quem anteā habuerit sē fore contentum dīcit, neque fortūnam temptātūrum aut in aciē dīmicātūrum; sed, quoniam abundet equitātū, perfacile esse factū frūmentātiōnibus pābulātiōnibusque Rōmānōs prohibēre; aequō modo animō sua ipsī frūmenta corrumpant aedificiaque incendant, quā reī familiāris iactūrā perpetuum imperium lībertātemque sē cōnsequī videant.

Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus, Aeduīs Segusiāvīsque, quī sunt fīnitimī prōvinciae, decem mīlia peditum imperat; hūc addit equitēs octingentōs. Hīs praeficit frātrem Eporēdorīgis bellumque īnferrī Allobrogibus iubet. Alterā ex parte Gabalōs proximōsque pāgōs Arvernōrum in Helviōs,

---

2. **tōtō bellō**: 180.
3. **dēiectōs**: sc. *esse*.
5. **requīrunt**: 'miss.'
6. **summae speī**: 'of the highest promise.'

64. 8. **Ille**: Vercingetorix.

9. **eī reī**: *i.e.* for the delivery of the hostages.
10. **Peditātū**: 165, *a*.
12. **perfacile . . . factū**: 'a very easy thing to do'; 287.
14. **aequō animō**: 'cheerfully, willingly.'
15. **corrumpant . . . incendant**: 266. **quā**: = *cum* ('since') *ea*.
18. **hūc**: 'to these,' referring to *peditum*.
20. **Alterā ex parte**: on the western side.

item Rutēnōs Cadūrcōsque ad fīnēs Volcārum Arecomicōrum dēpopulandōs mittit. Nihilō minus clandestīnīs nūntiīs lēgātiōnibusque Allobrogas sollicitat, quōrum mentēs nōndum ab superiōre bellō resēdisse spērābat. Hōrum prīncipibus pecūniās, cīvitātī autem imperium tōtīus prōvinciae pollicētur.

Caesar levies cavalry in Germany.

65. Ad hōs omnēs cāsūs prōvīsa erant praesidia cohortium duārum et vīgintī, quae ex ipsā coācta prōvinciā ab L. Caesare lēgātō ad omnēs partēs oppōnēbantur. Helviī suā sponte cum fīnitimīs proeliō congressī pelluntur et C. Valeriō Donnotaurō, Cabūrī fīliō, prīncipe cīvitātis, complūribusque aliīs interfectīs intrā oppida mūrōsque compelluntur. Allobrogēs crēbrīs ad Rhodanum dispositīs praesidiīs magnā cum cūrā et dīligentiā suōs fīnēs tuentur.

Caesar, quod hostēs equitātū superiōrēs esse intellegēbat et interclūsīs omnibus itineribus nūllā rē ex prōvinciā atque Italiā sublevārī poterat, trāns Rhēnum in Germāniam mittit ad eās cīvitātēs quās superiōribus annīs pācāverat,

---

3. **Allobrogas**: a Greek accusative form; 38.

4. **superiōre bellō**: they had been subdued in 61 B.C. Cf. p. 163, l. 6 and the note.

65. 6. **cāsūs**: 'emergencies.'

8. **L. Caesare**: consul in 64 B.C. He was a distant relative of Julius Caesar.

9. **suā sponte**: 'of their own accord.'

11. **oppida mūrōsque**: 'the walls of their towns,' 288.

13. **magnā cum cūrā**: 166.

14. **equitātū**: 171.

15. **interclūsīs . . . itineribus**: the abl. abs. has conditional force; 173.

16. **poterat**: the subject is Caesar.

17. **quās . . . pācāverat**: the Ubii and several others, as told in the early (omitted) part of Book IV.

equitēsque ab hīs arcessit et levis armātūrae peditēs, quī inter eōs proeliārī cōnsuērant. Eōrum adventū, quod minus idōneīs equīs ūtēbantur, ā tribūnīs mīlitum reliquīsque equitibus Rōmānīs atque ēvocātīs equōs sūmit Germānīsque distribuit.

66. Intereā, dum haec geruntur, hostium cōpiae ex Arvernīs equitēsque quī tōtī Galliae erant imperātī conveniunt. Magnō hōrum coāctō numerō, cum Caesar in Sēquanōs per extrēmōs Lingonum fīnēs iter faceret, quō facilius subsidium prōvinciae ferrī posset, circiter mīlia passuum decem ab Rōmānīs trīnīs castrīs Vercingetorīx cōnsēdit convocātīsque ad concilium praefectīs equitum vēnisse tempus victōriae dēmōnstrat: fugere in prōvinciam Rōmānōs Galliāque excēdere. Id sibi ad praesentem obtinendam lībertātem satis esse; ad reliquī temporis pācem atque ōtium parum prōficī; maiōribus enim coāctīs cōpiīs reversūrōs neque fīnem bellandī factūrōs. Proinde in agmine impedītōs adoriantur.

Conclāmant equitēs sānctissimō iūre iūrandō cōnfīrmārī oportēre, nē tēctō recipiātur, nē ad līberōs, nē ad parentēs, nē ad uxōrem aditum habeat, quī nōn bis per agmen hostium perequitārit.

---

1. **inter eōs**: for a description of this manner of fighting see i. 48, p. 240, ll. 12, fol.

2. **minus idōneīs**: the German horses were small and ugly (*dēfōrmia*, iv. 2).

3. **reliquīs equitibus Rōmānīs**: 'the Roman knights,' as well as the tribunes, who belonged to that order.

4. **ēvocātīs**: 'volunteer veterans,' serving on Caesar's staff.

66. 10. **trīnīs**: 74.

13. **Id**: i.e. *Rōmānōs Galliā excēdere.*

14. **reliquī temporis**: 'for the future.'

15. **parum prōficī**: 'little was accomplished.'

17. **adoriantur**: 266.

21. **perequitārit**: = *perequitāverit*, perf. subj.

The Gauls are defeated in a cavalry engagement.

67. Probātā rē atque omnibus iūre iūrandō adāctīs, posterō diē in trēs partēs distribūtō equitātū duae sē aciēs ab duōbus lateribus ostendunt, ūna ā prīmō agmine iter impedīre coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā, Caesar suum quoque equitātum tripertītō dīvīsum contrā hostem īre iubet. Pugnātur ūnā omnibus in partibus. Cōnsistit agmen; impedīmenta intrā legiōnēs recipiuntur. Sī quā in parte nostrī labōrāre aut gravius premī vidēbantur, eō signa īnferrī Caesar aciemque convertī iubēbat; quae rēs et hostēs ad īnsequendum tardābat et nostrōs spē auxilī cōnfīrmābat.

Tandem Germānī ab dextrō latere summum iugum nactī hostēs locō dēpellunt; fugientēs ūsque ad flūmen, ubi Vercingetorīx cum pedestribus cōpiīs cōnsēderat, persequuntur complūrēsque interficiunt. Quā rē animadversā reliquī, nē circumīrentur veritī, sē fugae mandant. Omnibus locīs fit caedēs. Trēs nōbilissimī Aeduī captī ad Caesarem perdūcuntur: Cotus, praefectus equitum, quī contrōversiam cum Convictolitave proximīs comitiīs habuerat, et Cavarillus, quī post dēfectiōnem Litaviccī pedestribus cōpiīs praefuerat, et Eporēdorīx, quō duce ante adventum Caesaris Aeduī cum Sēquanīs bellō contenderant.

---

67. 3. **iter**: sc. *Rōmānōrum.*

4. **Quā rē nūntiātā**: Caesar was evidently taken by surprise.

6. **cōnsistit**: 'halted.'

7. **intrā legiōnēs**: that is, the legions formed a hollow square about the baggage.

10. **spē**: 'through the hope'; 165.

13. **fugientēs**: 'in their flight,' sc. *Gallōs.*

Vercingetorix takes refuge in Alesia. Caesar lays siege to the town.

68. Fugātō omnī equitātū, Vercingetorīx cōpiās, ut prō castrīs collocāverat, redūxit prōtinusque Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubiōrum, iter facere coepit celeriterque impedīmenta ex castrīs ēdūcī et sē subsequī iussit. Caesar impedīmentīs in proximum collem dēductīs, duābus legiōnibus praesidiō relictīs, secūtus hostēs, quantum diēī tempus est passum, circiter tribus mīlibus ex novissimō agmine interfectīs, alterō diē ad Alesiam castra fēcit. Perspectō urbis sitū perterritīsque hostibus, quod equitātū, quā

Alesia.

Marked by the monument to Vercingetorix on the summit of the hill.

---

68. 1. **ut**: 'just as'; *i.e.* in the same order.
6. **quantum**: = *tantum spatium quantum*, 'as far as.'
7. **ex novissimō agmine**: 138, *a*.
8. **alterō**: = *posterō*.

maximē parte exercitūs cōnfīdēbant, erant pulsī, adhortātus ad labōrem mīlitēs circumvāllāre īnstituit.

Description of Alesia. A preliminary cavalry skirmish.

69. Ipsum erat oppidum Alesia in colle summō admodum ēditō locō, ut nisi obsidiōne expugnārī nōn posse vidērētur; cuius collis rādīcēs duo duābus ex partibus flūmina subluēbant. Ante oppidum plānitiēs circiter mīlia passuum tria in longitūdinem patēbat; reliquīs ex omnibus partibus collēs, mediocrī interiectō spatiō, parī altitūdinis fastīgiō oppidum cingēbant. Sub mūrō, quae pars collis ad orientem sōlem spectābat, hunc omnem locum cōpiae Gallōrum complēverant fossamque et māceriam sex in altitūdinem pedum praedūxerant.

70. Opere īnstitūtō fit equestre proelium in eā plānitiē, quam intermissam collibus tria mīlia passuum in longitūdinem patēre suprā dēmōnstrāvimus. Summā vī ab utrīsque contenditur. Labōrantibus nostrīs Caesar Ger-

---

2. **circumvāllāre**: sc. *urbem*. Note the derivation of the word.

69. 3. **in colle summō**: to follow Caesar's detailed description of Alesia and its surroundings consult the Plan opp. p. 400.

5. **cuius . . . partibus**: 'the base of this hill on two sides.' **rādīcēs**: acc. case. **flūmina**: the Ose on the north side and the Oserain on the south. Both are now mere brooks. Their waters unite at a point about two miles west of the hill.

6. **Ante**: *i.e.* west of the town. **plānitiēs**: now called the plain of Les Laumes.

8. **mediocrī . . . spatiō**: *i.e.* at a short distance from Alesia. **parī . . . fastīgiō**: the surrounding hills are of about the same elevation as Alesia.

9. **quae pars**: its antecedent is *hunc omnem locum*.

11. **māceriam**: 'a wall of stones.'

70. 13. **Opere**: the work of investing the town.

16. **Germānōs**: Caesar's best cavalry were Germans. See p. 394.

mānōs summittit legiōnēsque prō castrīs cōnstituit, nē qua subitō irruptiō ab hostium peditātū fīat.

Praesidiō legiōnum additō nostrīs animus augētur; hostēs in fugam coniectī sē ipsī multitūdine impediunt atque angustiōribus portīs relictīs coartantur. Germānī ācrius ūsque ad mūnītiōnēs sequuntur. Fit magna caedēs; nōn nūllī, relictīs equīs, fossam trānsīre et māceriam trānscen-

The Country about Alesia.

A view from the town looking northwest toward Puy de Dome.

---

1. **prō castrīs** : ' in front of the camp.'

3. **nostrīs** : trans. as if *nostrōrum*. **animus** : ' confidence.'

4. **in fugam** : the cavalry of the Gauls in their flight galloped back to the east end of the town where the gates (*portīs*, l. 5) were.

5. **angustiōribus** : the gateways were so narrow that the Gauls in trying frantically to enter got jammed (*coartantur*) in the passages. **Germānī** : cf. the note above on this word.

6. **nōn nūllī** : the Gauls.

dere cōnantur. Paulum legiōnēs Caesar, quās prō vāllō cōnstituerat, prōmovērī iubet. Nōn minus, quī intrā mūnītiōnēs erant, Gallī perturbantur; venīrī ad sē cōnfestim exīstimantēs ad arma conclāmant; nōn nūllī perterritī in oppidum irrumpunt. Vercingetorīx iubet portās claudī, nē castra nūdentur. Multīs interfectīs, complūribus equīs captīs, Germānī sēsē recipiunt.

Vercingetorix sends a secret message to his countrymen for reinforcements.

71. Vercingetorīx, prius quam mūnītiōnēs ab Rōmānīs perficiantur, cōnsilium capit, omnem ab sē equitātum noctū dīmittere. Discēdentibus mandat, ut suam quisque eōrum cīvitātem adeat omnēsque, qui per aetātem arma ferre possint, ad bellum cōgant. Sua in illōs merita prōpōnit obtestāturque, ut suae salūtis ratiōnem habeant, neu sē optimē dē commūnī lībertāte meritum hostibus in cruciātum dēdant. Quod sī indīligentiōrēs fuerint, mīlia hominum dēlēcta LXXX ūnā sēcum interitūra dēmōnstrat. Ratiōne initā sē exiguē diērum XXX habēre frūmentum, sed paulō etiam longius tolerārī posse parcendō.

Hīs datīs mandātīs, quā erat nostrum opus intermissum,

---

3. **venīrī**: 'that the enemy were coming.'

6. **castra**: the Gallic camp at the east of the town. See the Plan.

71. 9. **perficiantur**: before trans. see 239. **cōnsilium capit**: 'determined.'

10. **Discēdentibus**: sc. *eīs*, the Gallic messengers.

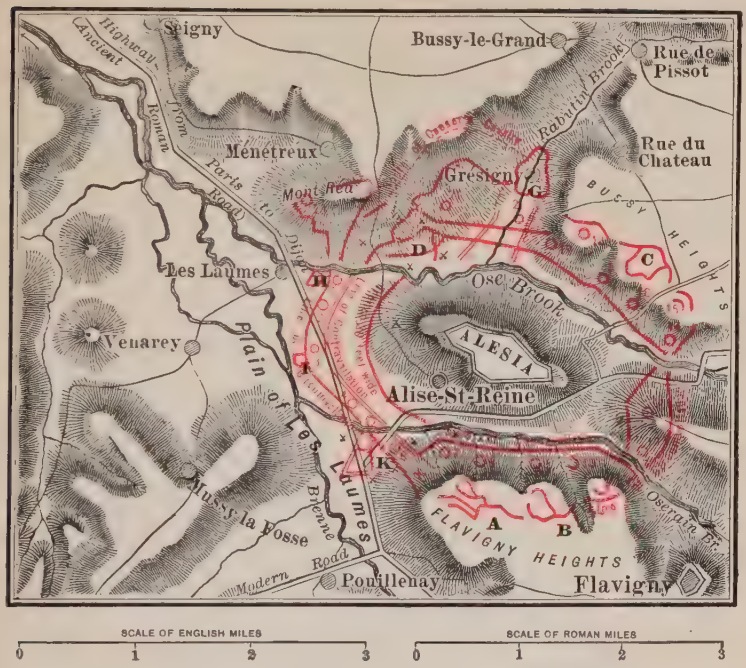
12. **illōs**: = *Gallōs*.

14. **optimē . . . meritum**: 'who had served most unselfishly (the cause of) their common liberty.'

15. **mīlia LXXX**: this was the number of men that Vercingetorix had with him in Alesia. Caesar had an army of about 50,000.

17. **Ratiōne initā**: 'by a careful calculation,' 173.

19. **intermissum**: there was a gap in the Roman lines; the Romans



EXPLANATION

Caesar's lines of works about Alesia encompassed a circuit of 11 Roman miles on the inside, 14 miles on the outside.

In the plain west of the city, and at other points where required, there were two systems of defenses, one to protect Caesar's men against the attacks of Vercingetorix in the city, the other as a defense against the relieving army.

Camps of infantry were probably located at **A**, **B**, **C**, **D**; of cavalry at **G**, **H**, **I**, **K**. The redoubts, *castella* (chap. 69), are numbered 1 to 23.

On the west, along the edge of the plain, a trench, or moat, 20 feet wide, with vertical sides, was constructed (chap. 72, ll. 3–5). Further west, in this order, 'goads,' *stimulī*; 'wolf-holes,' *līlia*; 'boundary posts,' *cippī*; two V-shaped 'trenches,' *fossae*; 'rampart,' *agger*, and 'palisade,' *vallus*, with a 'breastwork,' *lōrica*, and 'battlements,' *pinnae*; also 'towers,' *turrēs*, at intervals of 80 feet. These defenses formed the LINE OF CONTRAVALLATION (chap. 72–73).

The same defenses, in a reverse series, the 'goads' being furthest outside, the rampart inside, formed the LINE OF CIRCUMVALLATION (chap. 74).

secundā vigiliā silentiō equitātum dīmittit. Frūmentum omne ad sē referrī iubet; capitis poenam eīs, quī nōn pāruerint, cōnstituit; pecus, cuius magna erat cōpia ā Mandubiīs compulsa, virītim distribuit, frūmentum parcē et paulātim mētīrī īnstituit. Cōpiās omnēs, quās prō oppidō collocāverat, in oppidum recēpit. Hīs ratiōnibus auxilia Galliae exspectāre et bellum parat administrāre

Caesar builds fortifications and lines of investment.

72. Quibus rēbus cognitīs ex perfugīs et captīvīs, Caesar haec genera mūnītiōnis īnstituit.

Fossam pedum xx dērēctīs lateribus dūxit, ut eius fossae solum tantundem patēret, quantum summae fossae labra distārent. Reliquās omnēs mūnītiōnēs ab eā fossā pedēs cccc redūxit, id hōc cōnsiliō, quoniam tantum esset necessāriō spatium complexus, nec facile tōtum opus corōnā

---

had not yet had time to draw a line of investment completely around the town.

1. **dīmittit** and the fol. verbs: sc. *Vercingetorīx.*

2. **capitis poenam**: 'penalty of death.' Vercingetorix took every precaution to husband his resources until the army of relief should come. He sent word to the Gallic states that he could hold out for a month; but it was more than a month before reinforcements arrived.

72. 10. **dērēctīs**: 'vertical,' further defined by *ut . . . distārent.*

11. **solum**: 'bottom.' **labra**: 'edges.' Ordinarily the Roman trenches were made V-shaped, but this one was [_]-shaped, the sides being perpendicular. It was twenty feet deep and was dug across the west approach to the hill (marked f. f. f. on the Plan), and was an effective barrier against the enemy. This trench was found during the excavations on the site. Most of the fighting took place on the level plain to the west.

14. **complexus**: by the line of investment. **corōnā**: 'ring.' Caesar did not have an army large enough to man the entire works with an unbroken line of troops.

mīlitum cingerētur, nē dē improvīsō aut noctū ad mūnītiōnēs multitūdō hostium advolāret, aut interdiū tēla in nostrōs operī dēstinātōs cōnicere possent.

Hōc intermissō spatiō duās fossās XV pedēs lātās, eādem altitūdine, perdūxit; quārum interiōrem campestribus ac dēmissīs locīs aquā ex flūmine dērīvātā complēvit.

Post eās aggerem ac vāllum XII pedum exstrūxit. Huic lōrīcam pinnāsque adiēcit, grandibus cervīs ēminentibus ad commissūrās pluteōrum atque aggeris, quī ascēnsum hostium tardārent, et turrēs tōtō opere circumdedit, quae pedēs LXXX inter sē distārent.

73. Erat eōdem tempore et māteriārī et frūmentārī et tantās mūnītiōnēs fierī necesse dēminūtīs nostrīs cōpiīs, quae longius ā castrīs prōgrediēbantur; ac nōn numquam opera nostra Gallī temptāre atque ēruptiōnem ex oppidō plūribus portīs summā vī facere cōnābantur. Quā rē ad

---

3. **operī dēstinātōs**: 'while they were busy with the work of fortification.'

4. **Hōc . . . spatiō**: *i.e.* 400 ft. **lātās**: 15 ft. wide at the top. **eādem altitūdine**: one trench was as deep as the other (about 8 ft.). Both trenches have been found. See p. xlvi.

5. **interiōrem**: the outer trench ran all about the town and on the lower level it was filled with water from the river.

7. **Post**: 'next' to the trenches, beyond them. **vāllum**: 'palisade.'

8. **lōrīcam pinnāsque**: 'breastwork and embattlements,' made of intertwined pliant branches. This protected the soldiers on the rampart from the enemy's missiles. **cervīs**: 'forked branches' (like a stag's horn). **ad**: 'at.'

9. **pluteōrum**: = *vāllum, lōrīca pinnaeque*. The *cervī* were placed along the line where the palisade and rampart joined.

11. **distārent**: the towers were placed near enough to each other (80 ft.) so that the spaces between them would be within the range of missiles. See illustration, p. 403.

73. 12. **māteriārī**: 'to get timber' for the works.

haec rūrsus opera addendum Caesar putāvit, quō minōre numerō mīlitum mūnītiōnēs dēfendī possent.

Itaque truncīs arborum aut admodum fīrmīs ramīs abscīsīs atque hōrum dēlibrātīs ac praeacūtīs cacūminibus perpetuae fossae quīnōs pedēs altae dūcēbantur. Hūc illī stīpitēs dēmissī et ab īnfimō revinctī, nē revellī possent, ab ramīs ēminēbant. Quīnī erant ōrdinēs, coniūnctī inter sē atque implicātī; quō quī intrāverant, sē ipsī acūtissimīs vāllīs induēbant. Hōs cippōs appellābant.

Caesar's Fortifications at Alesia.

Showing in order from the left: the *stimuli* ('goads'), *lilia* ('lilies'), *cippi* ('stakes'), *fossae* ('ditches'), *cervi* ('stags'), *vallum* ('rampart' surmounted by the *lorica* 'breastwork' and *pinnae* 'parapets') and the *turres* ('towers').

---

1. **quō**: why is this word used rather than *ut*? 229, *a*.

4. **cacūminibus**: 'ends.' They were made smooth by stripping off the bark (*dēlibrātīs*) and were sharpened to a point (*praeacūtīs*).

5. **perpetuae**: 'continuous.' **altae**: 'deep.' **Hūc**: = *in fossās*.

6. **ab īnfimō revinctī**: 'anchored at the bottom.'

7. **Quīnī ōrdinēs**: 'five rows (of boughs) in each (trench).'

9. **induēbant**: the attacking enemy would stumble and fall on the sharp points. **cippōs**: 'grave-stones,' a term facetiously applied by the soldiers.

Ante hōs oblīquīs ōrdinibus in quīncuncem dispositīs scrobēs in altitūdinem trium pedum fodiēbantur paulātim angustiōre ad īnfimum fastīgiō. Hūc teretēs stīpitēs feminis crassitūdine ab summō praeacūtī et praeūstī dēmittēbantur ita, ut nōn amplius digitīs quattuor ex terrā ēminērent; simul cōnfīrmandī et stabiliendī causā singulī ab īnfimō solō pedēs terrā exculcābantur; reliqua pars scrobis ad occultandās īnsidiās vīminibus ac virgultīs integēbātur. Huius generis octōnī ōrdinēs ductī ternōs inter sē pedēs distābant. Id ex similitūdine flōris līlium appellābant.

Ante haec tāleae pedem longae ferreīs hāmīs īnfīxīs tōtae in terram īnfodiēbantur mediocribusque intermissīs spatiīs omnibus locīs disserēbantur, quōs stimulōs nōminābant.

---

1. **oblīquīs . . . dispositīs**: 'in slanting rows arranged in a diamond pattern.' **quīncuncem**: the name of the five-spot on a die. Placed side by side several of these would form a diamond pattern.

2. **scrobēs**: 'pits.' Many of these were found in the course of the excavations. **paulātim . . . fastīgiō**: they gradually tapered to the bottom.

3. **feminis**: nom. case is *femur*.

4. **ab summo praeacūtī**: 'sharpened to a point at the top end.'

5. **digitīs quattuor**: the logs projected about three inches above the surrounding level.

7. **ab īnfimō**: earth was tamped in about the logs one foot in depth.

10. **līlium**: again a jesting appellation of the soldiers.

11. **tāleae . . . īnfīxīs**: blocks of wood a foot long into which barbed iron spikes were driven. A dreadful wound would be inflicted on any one who fell on them.

13. **stimulōs**: 'spurs,' cf. the names *cippōs* and *līlium* above. Several of these iron *stimulī* have been recovered and are now in the Museum at St. Germain. See p. xxxiii and Plate V, 1.

74. Hīs rēbus perfectīs, regiōnēs secūtus quam potuit aequissimās prō locī nātūrā, XIIII mīlia passuum complexus parēs eiusdem generis mūnītiōnēs, dīversās ab hīs, contrā exteriōrem hostem perfēcit, ut nē magnā quidem multitūdine, sī ita accidat, mūnītiōnum praesidia circumfundī possent; ac nē cum perīculō ex castrīs ēgredī cōgātur, diērum XXX pābulum frūmentumque habēre omnēs convectum iubet.

The Gauls muster a great army for the relief of Alesia.

75. Dum haec ad Alesiam geruntur, Gallī conciliō prīncipum indictō nōn omnēs, quī arma ferre possent, ut cēnsuit Vercingetorīx, convocandōs statuunt, sed certum numerum cuique cīvitātī imperandum, nē tantā multitūdine cōnfūsā nec moderārī nec discernere suōs nec frūmentandī ratiōnem habēre possent.

Imperant Aeduīs atque eōrum clientibus, Segusiāvīs,

---

74. 3. **parēs . . . mūnītiōnēs**: these were a similar line of fortifications, facing away from the town, and were made to protect the Romans from the assaults of the army of relief which was coming. **dīversās**: 'facing in the opposite direction,' *i.e.* outward. The line of fortifications already constructed was made to confine Vercingetorix and his army in the town. This is sometimes called the line of contravallation; the other is called the line of circumvallation. Between these two lines Caesar's army was encamped.

Vercingetorix.

A silver denarius, struck about 48 B.C., representing Vercingetorix with long, pointed beard. Behind is a shield.

7. **pābulum frūmentumque . . . iubet**: nevertheless the army suffered for lack of provisions.

75. 11. **imperandum** (*esse*): 'should be levied.'

14. **Segusiāvīs**: find the location of all of these states on the Map, in order to determine how wide-spread the movement was. Coins of many of these states were found in the trenches.

Ambivaretīs, Aulercīs Brannovīcibus, mīlia xxxv; parem numerum Arvernīs, adiūnctīs Eleutetīs, Cadūrcīs, Gabalīs, Vellaviīs, quī sub imperiō Arvernōrum esse cōnsuērunt; Sēquanīs, Senonibus, Biturīgibus, Santonīs, Rutēnīs, Carnutibus duodēna mīlia; Bellovacīs x; totidem Lemovīcibus; octōna Pictonibus et Turonīs et Parīsiīs et Helvētiīs; sēna Andibus, Ambiānīs, Mediomatricīs, Petrocoriīs, Nerviīs, Morinīs, Nitiobrogibus; quīna mīlia Aulercīs Cēnomanīs; totidem Atrebātibus; IIII Veliocassīs; Aulercīs Eburovīcibus III; Rauracīs et Boiīs bīna; xxx ūniversīs cīvitātibus, quae Ōceanum attingunt quaeque eōrum cōnsuētūdine Aremoricae appellantur, quō sunt in numerō Coriosolitēs, Redonēs, Ambibariī, Caletēs, Osismī, Venetī, Lexoviī, Venellī.

Ex hīs Bellovacī suum numerum nōn complēvērunt, quod sē suō nōmine atque arbitriō cum Rōmānīs bellum gestūrōs dīcerent neque cuiusquam imperiō obtemperātūrōs; rogātī tamen ā Commiō prō eius hospitiō duō mīlia ūnā mīsērunt.

76. Huius operā Commī, ut anteā dēmōnstrāvīmus, fidēlī atque ūtilī superiōribus annīs erat ūsus in Britanniā Caesar; quibus ille prō meritīs cīvitātem eius

---

5. **duodēna**: 'twelve each.'

6. **octōna**: 'eight each.'

7. **sēna**: 'six each.'

10. **bīna**: 'two each.'

11. **quaeque**: = *et quae*. The sum total of the levy according to this list is 287,000. The Bellovaci later decided to send only 2000, reducing this total to 279,000. The number actually sent apparently fell short of the levy, for we are told below (p. 407, l. 7) that 258,000 responded to the call.

76. 21. **in Britanniā**: see p. 306, l. 18.

22. **ille**: Caesar. **cīvitātem**: the Atrebates.

immūnem esse iusserat, iūra lēgēsque reddiderat atque ipsī Morinōs attribuerat. Tanta tamen ūniversae Galliae cōnsēnsiō fuit lībertātis vindicandae, et prīstinae bellī laudis recuperandae, ut neque beneficiīs neque amīcitiae memoriā movērentur, omnēsque et animō et opibus in id bellum incumberent.

Coāctīs equitum mīlibus VIII et peditum circiter CCL, haec in Aeduōrum fīnibus recēnsēbantur, numerusque inībātur, praefectī cōnstituēbantur. Commiō Atrebātī, Viridomārō et Eporēdorīgī Aeduīs, Vercassivellaunō Arvernō, cōnsobrīnō Vercingetorīgis, summa imperī trāditur. Hīs dēlēctī ex cīvitātibus attribuuntur, quōrum cōnsiliō bellum administrārētur. Omnēs alacrēs et fīdūciae plēnī ad Alesiam proficīscuntur, neque erat omnium quisquam, quī aspectum modo tantae multitūdinis sustinērī posse arbitrārētur, praesertim ancipitī proeliō, cum ex oppidō ēruptiōne pugnārētur, forīs tantae cōpiae equitātūs peditātūsque cernerentur.

---

2. **ipsī**: Commius.

3. **lībertātis vindicandae**: with *cōnsēnsiō*; 'to assert their liberty.'

4. **laudis**: in the same constr. as *lībertātis*.

5. **movērentur, incumberent**: sc. *Gallī*.

7. **CCL**: a huge army of a quarter of a million infantry; see note above on p. 406, l. 11.

11. **summa imperī**: the 'chief command' was intrusted to four generals.

12. **Hīs . . . administrārētur**: the four generals were not given unlimited authority but they were obliged to consult with representatives from the various states.

14. **ad**: see 133.

15. **modo**: 'merely,' with *aspectum*.

16. **arbitrārētur**: 233. **ancipitī proeliō**: 'battle on two fronts.' The Romans would have the enemy on both sides.

Speech of Critognatus in a council of the besieged in Alesia.

77. At eī, quī Alesiae obsidēbantur, praeteritā diē, quā auxilia suōrum exspectāverant, cōnsūmptō omnī frūmentō, īnsciī, quid in Aeduīs gererētur, conciliō coāctō dē exitū suārum fortūnārum cōnsultābant. Ac variīs dictīs sententiīs, quārum pars dēditiōnem, pars, dum vīrēs suppeterent, ēruptiōnem cēnsēbat, nōn praetereunda ōrātiō Critognātī vidētur propter eius singulārem et nefāriam crūdēlitātem.

Hīc, summō in Arvernīs ortus locō et magnae habitus auctōritātis, 'Nihil,' inquit, 'dē eōrum sententiā dictūrus sum, quī turpissimam servitūtem dēditiōnis nōmine appellant, neque hōs habendōs cīvium locō neque ad concilium adhibendōs cēnseō. Cum hīs mihi rēs sit, quī ēruptiōnem probant; quōrum in cōnsiliō omnium vestrum cōnsēnsū prīstinae residēre virtūtis memoria vidētur. Animī est ista mollitia, nōn virtūs, paulisper inopiam ferre nōn posse. Quī sē ultrō mortī offerant, facilius reperiuntur, quam quī dolōrem patienter ferant.

---

77. The story is told with remarkable clearness. While the great army of relief is on its way to Alesia we are given a glimpse of what was happening in the besieged town.

1. **praeteritā**: 'having passed.'

4. **dictīs**: part.; see 173.

6. **nōn . . . vidētur**: 'the speech of Critognatus, it seems (to me), should not be passed over.' The speech is given in dir. disc. Why is this more effective than ind. disc.?

10. **dictūrus sum**: 'it is my intention to speak,' 97 (1).

13. **Cum . . . sit**: 'let me have to do with those.'

15. **Animī mollitia**: 'weakness of spirit.'

16. **ista**: expresses contempt; it is explained by the clause, *paulisper . . . posse*, which is in apposition with it.

'Atque ego hanc sententiam probārem (tantum apud mē dignitās potest), sī nūllam praeterquam vītae nostrae iactūram fierī vidērem; sed in cōnsiliō capiendō omnem Galliam respiciāmus, quam ad nostrum auxilium concitāvimus. Quid hominum mīlibus LXXX ūnō locō interfectīs propinquīs cōnsanguineīsque nostrīs animī fore exīstimātis, sī paene in ipsīs cadāveribus proeliō dēcertāre cōgentur? Nōlīte hōs vestrō auxiliō exspoliāre, quī vestrae salūtis causā suum perīculum neglēxērunt, nec stultitiā ac temeritāte vestrā aut animī imbēcillitāte omnem Galliam prōsternere et perpetuae servitūtī subicere.

'An, quod ad diem nōn vēnērunt, dē eōrum fidē cōnstantiāque dubitātis? Quid ergō? Rōmānōs in illīs ulteriōribus mūnītiōnibus animīne causā cotīdiē exercērī putātis? Sī illōrum nūntiīs cōnfīrmārī nōn potestis omnī aditū praesaeptō, hīs ūtiminī testibus, appropinquāre eōrum adventum; cuius reī timōre exterritī diem noctemque in opere versantur.

---

1. **probārem, sī . . . vidērem**: see 246. **tantum**: 125, *a*.

2. **dignitās**: 'respect.' **nūllam . . . fierī**: 'that no loss of life was involved except that of ours.'

4. **respiciāmus**: 225.

5. **Quid**: with *animī*, 'what feelings.' **propinquīs cōnsanguineīs**: dat. case, 154.

8. **auxiliō**: 158.

10. **prōsternere, subicere**: depend on *Nōlīte*.

12. **An**: omit in trans. **quod**: 'as to the fact that,' 258. **ad diem**: 'at the appointed time.'

14. **animī causā**: 'for their amusement'; *-ne* appended to *animī* asks the question. Critognatus pointed down the hill to where the Romans were feverishly toiling to complete the outer line of fortifications; "there," he said, "is sufficient proof that our reinforcements are on the way."

15. **illōrum**: the Gauls.

16. **hīs**: the Romans.

'Quid ergō meī cōnsilī est? Facere, quod nostrī maiōrēs nēquāquam parī bellō Cimbrōrum Teutonumque fēcērunt; quī in oppida compulsī ac similī inopiā subāctī eōrum corporibus, quī aetāte ad bellum inūtilēs vidēbantur, vītam tolerāvērunt neque sē hostibus trādidērunt. Cuius reī sī exemplum nōn habērēmus, tamen lībertātis causā īnstituī et posterīs prōdī pulcherrimum iūdicārem.

'Nam quid illī simile bellō fuit? Dēpopulātā Galliā Cimbrī magnāque illātā calamitāte fīnibus quidem nostrīs aliquandō excessērunt atque aliās terrās petiērunt; iūra, lēgēs, agrōs, lībertātem nōbīs relīquērunt. Rōmānī vērō quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt, nisi invidiā adductī, quōs fāmā nōbilēs potentēsque bellō cognōvērunt, hōrum in agrīs cīvitātibusque cōnsīdere atque hīs aeternam iniungere servitūtem? Neque enim umquam aliā condiciōne bella gessērunt. Quod sī ea, quae in longinquīs nātiōnibus geruntur, ignōrātis, respicite fīnitimam Galliam, quae in prōvinciam redācta, iūre et lēgibus commūtātīs, secūribus subiecta perpetuā premitur servitūte.'

---

1. **Quid . . . est**: 'what, then, is my advice?' 138. **Facere**: subj. of *est* to be supplied from the preceding sentence.

2. **nēquāquam parī**: our situation is not to be compared with theirs.

4. **corporibus**: 163. It was a horrible suggestion. **aetāte**: 165.

6. **exemplum**: 'precedent.' **habērēmus, iūdicārem**: 246.

7. **īnstituī, prōdī**: subj. of *esse* to be supplied; *pulcherrimum* is pred. adj.

11. **Rōmānī**: emphatic position; 'as for the Romans.'

13. **quōs**: antecedent is *hōrum*.

18. **secūribus**: 'the lictor's ax,' symbol of authority: with *subiecta*, 149, *b*.

Wretched fate of the inhabitants of Alesia.

78. Sententiīs dictīs cōnstituunt, ut eī, quī valētūdine aut aetāte inūtilēs sint bellō, oppidō excēdant, atque omnia prius experiantur, quam ad Critognātī sententiam dēscendant; illō tamen potius ūtendum cōnsiliō, sī rēs cōgat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut dēditiōnis aut pācis subeundam condiciōnem. Mandubiī, quī eōs oppidō recēperant, cum līberīs atque uxōribus exīre cōguntur. Hī,

The Country about Alesia.
View looking from the plateau towards Gresigny.

78. 4. **dēscendant**: 239. **illō . . . cōnsiliō**: 'that they should rather adopt that plan.'

7. **cōguntur**: the Mandubii could not fight and the store of food for the army, which had to fight, was very small. The fate of the Mandubii forces upon the reader vividly one of the awful aspects of war. They presented themselves before Caesar's lines and begged for food, but the game of war did not permit him to grant their

cum ad mūnītiōnēs Rōmānōrum accessissent, flentēs omnibus precibus ōrābant, ut sē in servitūtem receptōs cibō iuvārent. At Caesar, dispositīs in vāllō cūstōdiīs, recipī prohibēbat.

The Gauls make a desperate attack and are repulsed.

79. Intereā Commius reliquīque ducēs, quibus summa imperī permissa erat, cum omnibus cōpiīs ad Alesiam perveniunt et colle exteriōre occupātō nōn longius mīlle passibus ab nostrīs mūnītiōnibus cōnsīdunt. Posterō diē equitātū ex castrīs ēductō omnem eam plānitiem, quam in longitūdinem tria mīlia passuum patēre dēmōnstrāvimus, complent pedestrēsque cōpiās paulum ab eō locō abditās in locīs superiōribus cōnstituunt. Erat ex oppidō Alesiā dēspectus in campum. Concurrunt hīs auxiliīs vīsīs; fit grātulātiō inter eōs atque omnium animī ad laetitiam excitantur. Itaque prōductīs cōpiīs ante oppidum cōnsīdunt et proximam fossam crātibus integunt atque aggere explent sēque ad ēruptiōnem atque omnēs cāsūs comparant.

---

prayer, and they slowly starved to death on the hillsides below their native town.

79. 7. **colle exteriōre**: the hill west of the town, now called Mussy-la-Fosse. See Plan.

12. **Erat . . . campum**: 'from the town of Alesia one could look down over the plain.'

13. **Concurrunt**: the besieged in Alesia.

14. **grātulātiō**: the sight of their brother Gauls bringing relief to them after so many days of weary waiting filled their hearts with joy and thankfulness. At the west end of the plateau of Alesia, which commands a view of the hill where the relief army encamped, Napoleon III erected a bronze statue of Vercingetorix. See p. 417.

16. **proximam fossam**: the twenty-foot trench described in chap. 72.

80. Caesar, omnī exercitū ad utramque partem mūnītiōnum dispositō, ut, sī ūsus veniat, suum quisque locum teneat et nōverit, equitātum ex castrīs ēdūcī et proelium committī iubet. Erat ex omnibus castrīs, quae summum undique iugum tenēbant, dēspectus, atque omnēs mīlitēs intentī pugnae prōventum exspectābant. Gallī inter equitēs rārōs sagittāriōs expedītōsque levis armātūrae interiēcerant, quī suīs cēdentibus auxiliō succurrerent et nostrōrum equitum impetūs sustinērent. Ab hīs complūrēs dē improvīsō vulnerātī proeliō excēdēbant.

Cum suōs pugnā superiōrēs esse Gallī cōnfīderent et nostrōs multitūdine premī vidērent, ex omnibus partibus et eī, quī mūnītiōnibus continēbantur, et hī, quī ad auxilium convēnerant, clāmōre et ululātū suōrum animōs cōnfīrmābant. Quod in cōnspectū omnium rēs gerēbātur neque rēctē aut turpiter factum cēlārī poterat, utrōsque et laudis cupiditās et timor ignōminiae ad virtūtem excitābat.

Cum ā merīdiē prope ad sōlis occāsum dubiā victōriā pugnārētur, Germānī ūnā in parte cōnfertīs turmīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt eōsque prōpulērunt; quibus in fugam coniectīs sagittāriī circumventī interfectīque sunt.

---

80. 1. **ad utramque partem**: 'on both lines of the fortifications,' *i.e.* one facing towards Alesia, the other towards the army of relief.

5. **dēspectus**: it was like a huge amphitheater; the plain where the battle raged was the stage, on the hills about were the spectators.

7. **rārōs**: 'here and there,' with the fol. nouns.

8. **suīs**: = *suōrum*, 151, *a*. On the subjunctives see 230.

9. **complūrēs**: of Caesar's men.

13. **continēbantur**: within Alesia.

14. **ululātū**: their barbarian yell; cf. the war-whoop of the American Indian.

16. **rēcte . . . factum**: the subj. of *poterat;* trans. (with *neque*) 'and no brave or cowardly act.' **utrōsque**: both Gauls and Romans.

19. **Germānī**: Caesar's cavalry.

Item ex reliquīs partibus nostrī cēdentēs ūsque ad castra īnsecūtī, suī colligendī facultātem nōn dedērunt. At eī, quī ab Alesiā prōcesserant, maestī, prope victōriā dēspērātā, sē in oppidum recēpērunt.

The Gauls make a second attack by night and are again repulsed.

81. Ūnō diē intermissō Gallī atque hōc spatiō magnō crātium, scālārum, harpagōnum numerō effectō, mediā nocte silentiō ex castrīs ēgressī ad campestrēs mūnītiōnēs accēdunt. Subitō clāmōre sublātō, quā significātiōnē, quī in oppidō obsidēbantur, dē suō adventū cognōscere possent, crātēs prōicere, fundīs, sagittīs, lapidibus nostrōs dē vāllō prōturbāre reliquaque, quae ad oppugnātiōnem pertinent, parant administrāre. Eōdem tempore, clāmōre exaudītō, dat tubā signum suīs Vercingetorīx atque ex oppidō ēdūcit.

Nostrī, ut superiōribus diēbus suus cuique erat locus attribūtus, ad mūnītiōnēs accēdunt; fundīs lībrīlibus sudibusque, quās in opere disposuerant, ac glandibus Gallōs prōterrent. Prōspectū tenebrīs adēmptō, multa utrimque

---

1. **cēdentēs**: sc. *Gallōs*.

3. **maestī**: they had been fully confident of being released from the siege that day.

81. 5. **Ūnō . . . intermissō**: 'after an interval of one day.' **atque**: connects *diē* and *numerō*. **hōc spatiō**: 180.

6. **harpagōnum**: 'grappling hooks' for pulling down the Roman breastworks.

7. **campestrēs**: those facing on the plain.

8. **sublātō**: sc. *ab Gallīs*. It was dark (*mediā nocte*) and the beleaguered Gauls could not see them.

9. **possent**: 230.

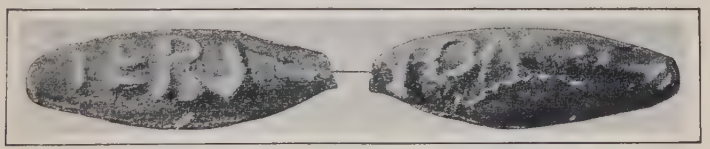
10. **crātēs**: brushwood for filling up the trenches.

15. **fundīs lībrīlibus**: 'slings throwing pound missiles.'

16. **glandibus**: see p. 415.

vulnera accipiuntur. Complūra tormentīs tēla coniciuntur. At M. Antōnius et C. Trebōnius lēgātī, quibus hae partēs ad dēfendendum obvēnerant, quā ex parte nostrōs premī intellēxerant, hīs auxiliō ex ulteriōribus castellīs dēductōs summittēbant.

82. Dum longius ā mūnītiōne aberant Gallī, plūs multitūdine tēlōrum prōficiēbant; posteā quam propius successērunt, aut sē stimulīs inopīnantēs induēbant aut in scrobēs dēlātī trānsfodiēbantur aut ex vāllō ac turribus trāiectī pīlīs mūrālibus interībant. Multīs undique vulneribus acceptīs, nūllā mūnītiōne perruptā, cum lūx appeteret, veritī, nē ab latere apertō ex superiōribus castrīs ēruptiōne circumvenīrentur, sē ad suōs recēpērunt. At interiōrēs, dum ea, quae ā Vercingetorīge ad ēruptiōnem praeparāta erant, prōferunt, priōrēs fossās explent, diūtius



Glandes.

Lead sling bullets, found near Asculum in Italy. The inscription says, 'strike Pompeius,' the besieger of the town.

---

2. **M. Antōnius**: the famous Mark Antony of history.

3. **quā ex parte**: 'where,' the general antecedent of *hīs*.

82. 7. **posteā quam**: = *postquam*.

8. **inopīnantēs**: on account of the darkness the Gauls could not see where they were going. These diabolical means of defense (described in chap. 73) may be compared to the modern use of barbed wire entanglements charged with electricity.

12. **ab . . . castrīs**: the soldiers from the Roman camps A, and B, on the Flavigny heights (see Plan) could attack the Gauls on their right, unprotected side.

15. **priōrēs**: 'nearer.'

in hīs rēbus administrandīs morātī, prius suōs discessisse cognōvērunt quam mūnītiōnibus appropinquārent. Ita rē īnfectā in oppidum revertērunt.

In a third attack they strike at one of the less protected camps of Caesar.

83. Bis magnō cum dētrīmentō repulsī Gallī, quid agant, cōnsulunt; locōrum perītōs adhibent; ex hīs superiōrum castrōrum sitūs mūnītiōnēsque cognōscunt. Erat ā septentriōnibus collis, quem propter magnitūdinem circuitūs opere circumplectī nōn potuerant nostrī; necessāriō paene inīquō locō et lēniter dēclīvī castra fēcerant. Haec C. Antistius Rēgīnus et C. Canīnius Rebilus lēgātī cum duābus legiōnibus obtinēbant.

Cognitīs per explōrātōrēs regiōnibus, ducēs hostium LX mīlia ex omnī numerō dēligunt eārum cīvitātum, quae maximam virtūtis opīniōnem habēbant; quid quōque pactō agī placeat, occultē inter sē cōnstituunt; adeundī tempus dēfīniunt, cum merīdiēs esse videātur. Hīs cōpiīs Vercassivellaunum Arvernum, ūnum ex quattuor ducibus, propinquum Vercingetorīgis, praeficiunt. Ille ex castrīs prīmā vigiliā ēgressus, prope cōnfectō sub lūcem itinere, post

1. **prius**: trans. with *quam*, 'before.'
2. **rē īnfectā**: a second bitter disappointment.

83. 4. **quid agant**: 259.

5. **locōrum perītōs**: = *eōs quī locōrum perītī sunt*, 143.
7. **collis**: now called Mont Réa.
9. **castra**: camp D on the Plan.
14. **quōque**: = *et quō*; note the quantity.
16. **cum merīdiēs esse videātur**: they could tell when it was about noon by the position of the sun. People who spend much of their time in the open are able with a fair degree of accuracy to tell the time of day from the sun.
18. **prīmā vigiliā**: early in the evening, so as to get a good start.
19. **itinere**: the probable route is given on the Plan.

montem sē occultāvit, mīlitēsque ex nocturnō labōre sēsē reficere iussit. Cum iam merīdiēs appropinquāre vidērētur, ad ea castra, quae suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, contendit; eōdemque tempore equitātus ad campestrēs mūnītiōnēs accēdere et reliquae cōpiae prō castrīs sēsē ostendere coepērunt. 5

84. Vercingetorīx, ex arce Alesiae suōs cōnspicātus, ex oppidō ēgreditur; crātēs, longuriōs, mūsculōs, falcēs reliquaque, quae ēruptiōnis causā parāverat, prōfert. Pugnātur ūnō tempore omnibus locīs, atque omnia temptantur; quae minimē vīsa pars fīrma est, hūc concurritur. Rōmānōrum manus tantīs mūnītiōnibus distinētur nec facile plūribus locīs occurrit. Multum ad terrendōs nostrōs valet clāmor, quī post tergum pugnantibus exsistit, quod suum 10

---

4. **campestrēs**: on the level plain immediately west of Alesia.

84. 7. **mūsculōs**: to protect the Gauls while they were filling up Caesar's trenches.

10. **hūc**: = *in eam partem*.

11. **distinētur**: the Roman forces were scattered because of the extent of the fortifications, which covered a circuit of 14 Roman miles around the hill of Alesia.

12. **occurrit**: 'move.'

13. **post tergum**: in either case, whether defending the inner or outer line of fortifications, the Romans could hear the shouts of the enemy behind them. This tended to unnerve them.

Vercingetorix.
A statue erected at Alesia by order of Napoleon III.

perīculum in aliēnā vident virtūte cōnstāre; omnia enim plērumque, quae absunt, vehementius hominum mentēs perturbant.

Caesar's generalship meets the test.

85. Caesar idōneum locum nactus, quid quāque in parte gerātur, cognōscit; labōrantibus summittit. Utrīsque ad animum occurrit, ūnum esse illud tempus quō maximē contendī conveniat: Gallī, nisi perfrēgerint mūnītiōnēs, dē omnī salūte dēspērant; Rōmānī, sī rem obtinuerint, fīnem labōrum omnium exspectant. Maximē ad superiōrēs mūnītiōnēs labōrātur, quō Vercassivellaunum missum dēmōnstrāvimus. Inīquum locī ad dēclīvitātem fastīgium magnum habet mōmentum. Aliī tēla coniciunt, aliī testūdine factā subeunt; dēfatīgātīs in vicem integrī succēdunt. Agger ab ūniversīs in mūnītiōnem coniectus et ascēnsum dat Gallīs et ea, quae in terrā occultāverant Rōmānī, contegit; nec iam arma nostrīs nec vīrēs suppetunt.

---

pugnantibus: trans. as if it were the gen. case with *clamor*, 151, *a*. **quod cōnstāre**: their safety depended on the courage of others.

1. **omnia . . . perturbant**: a general observation; it is interesting and of course correct.

85. 4. **idōneum locum**: on the Flavigny heights; the spot is marked with a cross on the Plan. From this commanding position Caesar could see and direct.

5. **Utrīsque**: both Gauls and Romans. For the trans. see 151, *a*. Both sides realized that the supreme moment had come.

8. **rem**: 'their position.'

11. **ad dēclīvitātem fastīgium**: 'downward slope.' The Roman camp D was on the side of the hill, not on its crest (see p. 416, l. 9). **magnum . . . mōmentum**: 'greatly affected the situation,' unfavorably for the Romans.

12. **Aliī**: sc. *hostēs*.

15. **ea**: the *cippī*, *līlia*, and *stimulī* (chap. 73).

86. Hīs rēbus cognitīs Caesar, Labiēnum cum cohortibus sex subsidiō labōrantibus mittit; imperat, sī sustinēre nōn possit, dēductīs cohortibus ēruptiōne pugnet; id nisi necessāriō nē faciat. Ipse adit reliquōs; cohortātur, nē labōrī succumbant; omnium superiōrum dīmicātiōnum frūctum in eō diē atque hōrā docet cōnsistere. Interiōrēs, dēspērātīs campestribus locīs propter magnitūdinem mūnītiōnum, loca praerupta ex ascēnsū temptant; hūc ea, quae parāverant, cōnferunt. Multitūdine tēlōrum ex turribus prōpugnantēs dēturbant, aggere et crātibus fossās explent, falcibus vāllum ac lōrīcam rescindunt.

87. Mittit prīmō Brūtum adulēscentem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliīs C. Fabium lēgātum; postrēmō ipse, cum vehementius pugnārētur, integrōs subsidiō addūcit. Restitūtō proeliō ac repulsīs hostibus, eō quō Labiēnum mīserat, contendit; cohortēs quattuor ex proximō castellō dēdūcit, equitum partem sē sequī, partem circumīre exteriōrēs mūnītiōnēs et ā tergō hostēs adorīrī iubet. Labiēnus, postquam neque aggerēs neque fossae vim hostium

---

86. 3. **id . . . faciat**: 'but not to do this except as a last resort.'

4. **Ipse**: Caesar.

6. **cōnsistere**: success or failure in the whole war hinged upon the events of the next hour.

7. **loca praerupta**: probably the works on the Flavigny heights. They attacked these, perhaps because the system of fortification here was not so complete.

9. **prōpugnantēs**: the Romans.

87. 12. **Mittit**: to the place where, as mentioned in the previous chap., the besieged were trying to break through the fortifications on the Flavigny heights. **Brūtum**: Decimus Junius Brutus, who was destined to be one of Caesar's assassins.

13. **post**: adv.

14. **integrōs**: 'fresh troops.'

15. **eō**: to Mont Réa.

sustinēre poterant, coāctīs ūnā XL cohortibus, quās ex proximīs praesidiīs dēductās fors obtulit, Caesarem per nūntiōs facit certiōrem, quid faciendum exīstimet. Accelerat Caesar ut proeliō intersit.

The Gauls go down in defeat.

88. Eius adventū ex colōre vestītūs cognitō, quō īnsignī in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuērat, turmīsque equitum et cohortibus vīsīs, quās sē sequi iusserat, ut dē locīs superiōribus haec dēclīvia et dēvexa cernēbantur, hostēs proelium committunt. Utrimque clāmōre sublātō, excipit rūrsus ex vāllō atque omnibus mūnītiōnibus clāmor. Nostrī omissīs pīlīs gladiīs rem gerunt.

Repente post tergum equitātus cernitur; cohortēs aliae appropinquant. Hostēs terga vertunt; fugientibus equitēs occurrunt. Fit magna caedēs. Sedulius, dux et prīnceps Lemovīcum, occīditur; Vercassivellaunus Arvernus vīvus in fugā comprehenditur; signa mīlitāria LXXIIII ad Caesarem referuntur; paucī ex tantō numerō sē incolumēs in castra recipiunt. Cōnspicātī ex oppidō caedem et fugam suōrum, dēspērātā salūte, cōpiās ā mūnītiōnibus redūcunt. Fit prōtinus hāc rē audītā ex castrīs Gallōrum fuga. Quod nisi crēbrīs subsidiīs ac tōtīus diēī labōre mīlitēs essent dēfessī, omnēs hostium cōpiae dēlērī potuissent. Dē mediā nocte missus equitātus novissimum agmen cōnse-

---

88. 5. **ex colōre vestītūs**: Caesar wore a scarlet cloak. See Plate II. 1.

7. **ut**: 'as,' 'since.' **haec**: sc. *loca*.

9. **excipit**: 'is taken up.'

12. **Repente**, etc.: the short, crisp sentences that follow betray the writer's intense feeling. **equitātus**: Caesar's.

18. **Cōnspicātī**: the besieged.

quitur; magnus numerus capitur atque interficitur, reliquī ex fugā in cīvitātēs discēdunt.

Surrender of Vercingetorix and the practical end of the entire war.

89. Posterō diē Vercingetorīx, conciliō convocātō, id bellum sē suscēpisse nōn suārum necessitātum, sed commūnis lībertātis causā dēmōnstrat, et quoniam sit fortūnae cēdendum, ad utramque rem sē illīs offerre, seu morte suā Rōmānīs satis facere seu vīvum trādere velint. Mittuntur dē hīs rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Iubet arma trādī, prīncipēs prōdūcī. Ipse in mūnītiōne prō castrīs cōnsēdit; eō ducēs prōdūcuntur. Vercingetorīx dēditur, arma prōiciuntur. Reservātīs Aeduīs atque Arvernīs, sī per eōs cīvitātēs recuperāre posset, ex reliquīs captīvīs tōtī exercituī capita singula praedae nōmine distribuit.

---

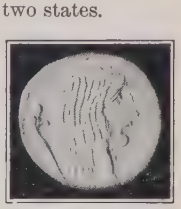
89. 5. **fortūnae**: dat. case.

6. **ad utramque rem**: 'for either alternative.'

11. **recuperāre**: 'regain' the good will of the two states.

12. **tōtī . . . distribuit**: 'he gave to every soldier in his army one prisoner as booty.'

The engagement at Alesia is one of the most decisive in the history of northern Europe and marks an epoch in the affairs of Gaul and of the future France. Caesar's 50,000 men conquered 338,000 of the enemy by superior strategy, superior discipline, hard work, and the ability to find some way of meeting emergencies, no matter how difficult.



Gallia Victa.

A silver denarius, struck in 48 B.C., representing *Gallia Victa*, with long, dishevelled hair; behind is a Gallic trumpet.

Vercingetorix was sent to Rome and was a prisoner for six years. In 46 B.C. he walked in the train of Caesar's triumph and then was put to death. His memory is still honored in France as her first great national hero.

Caesar sends his legions into winter quarters. A thanksgiving is decreed at Rome.

90. Hīs rēbus cōnfectīs in Aeduōs proficīscitur; cīvitātem recipit. Eō lēgātī ab Arvernīs missī quae imperāret sē factūrōs pollicentur. Imperat magnum numerum obsidum. Legiōnēs in hīberna mittit. Captīvōrum circiter xx mīlia Aeduīs Arvernīsque reddit.

T. Labiēnum duābus cum legiōnibus et equitātū in Sēquanōs proficīscī iubet; huic M. Semprōnium Rutilum attribuit. C. Fabium lēgātum et Lūcium Minucium Basilum cum legiōnibus duābus in Rēmīs collocat, nē quam ā fīnitimīs Bellovacīs calamitātem accipiant. C. Antistium Rēgīnum in Ambivaretōs, T. Sextium in Biturīgēs, C. Canīnium Rebilum in Rutēnōs cum singulīs legiōnibus mittit. Q. Tullium Cicerōnem et P. Sulpicium Cabillōnī et Matiscōne in Aeduīs ad Ararim reī frūmentāriae causā collocat. Ipse Bibracte hiemāre cōnstituit.

Hīs rēbus ex Caesaris litterīs cognitīs, Rōmae diērum vīgintī supplicātiō redditur.

---

90. 2. **recipit**: = *in dēditiōnem accipit.* **Eō**: = *in Aeduōs.*
10. **accipiant**: sc. *Rēmī.*
13. **Cabillōnī et Matiscōne**: names of towns.
17. **supplicātiō**: see note on p. 326, l. 1.

A Coin of Caesar.

The scene commemorates the conquest of Gaul. At the foot of a trophy adorned with two oval shields and two Gallic trumpets, sit Gallia weeping, at the left, and Vercingetorix with his arms bound behind his back.

C. IULI CAESARIS

DE BELLO CIVILI

COMMENTARII RERUM GESTARUM

I. Caesar and the Senate. (Book I, 1–7)

Bitter opposition to Caesar is manifested in the Senate.

1. Litterīs Caesaris cōnsulibus redditīs, aegrē ab hīs impetrātum est summā tribūnōrum plēbis contentiōne, ut in senātū recitārentur; ut vērō ex litterīs ad senātum referrētur, impetrārī nōn potuit.

Referunt cōnsulēs dē rē pūblicā. Incitat L. Lentulus cōnsul senātum: reī pūblicae sē nōn dēfutūrum pollicētur, sī audācter ac fortiter sententiās dīcere velint; sīn Caesarem respiciant atque eius grātiam sequantur, ut superiōribus

---

1. 1. **cōnsulibus**: L. Cornelius Lentulus Crus and C. Claudius Marcellus (49 B.C.), elected because of their hostility to Caesar. **ab hīs**: 'from these,' sc. *cōnsulibus*.

3. **ut . . . referrētur**: here in a technical sense, 'that a motion should be made with reference to the (contents of the) letters.' The *ut*-clause is the subject of *potuit*; 261.

5. **dē rē pūblicā**: 'about the condition of the state.' *Referunt* has the same meaning as *referrētur* in l. 3. **incitat**: 'puts pressure upon'; more lit. 'spurs on.'

7. **sententiās dīcere**: used technically, of giving votes in the Senate.

8. **respiciant**: 'have regard for.'

fēcerint temporibus, sē sibi cōnsilium captūrum neque senātūs auctōritātī obtemperātūrum; habēre sē quoque ad Caesaris grātiam atque amīcitiam receptum.

In eandem sententiam loquitur Scīpiō: Pompeiō esse in animō reī pūblicae nōn deesse, sī senātus sequātur; sī cunctētur atque agat lēnius, nēquīquam eius auxilium, sī posteā velit, senātum implōrātūrum.

His supporters are intimidated and he is ordered to disband his army. Two tribunes interpose a veto.

2. Haec Scīpiōnis ōrātiō, quod senātus in urbe habēbātur Pompeiusque aberat, ex ipsīus ōre Pompeī mittī vidēbātur. Dīxerat aliquis lēniōrem sententiam, ut prīmum M. Mārcellus, ingressus in eam ōrātiōnem, nōn oportēre ante dē eā rē ad senātum referrī, quam dīlēctūs tōtā Italiā habitī et exercitūs cōnscrīptī essent, quō praesidiō tūtō et līberē senātus quae vellet dēcernere audēret; ut M. Cali-

---

1. **fēcerint**: for an indic. of dir. disc. What then is the meaning of *ut?* **sē captūrum**: *i.e.* he would look out for his own personal interests; note the lit. trans.

2. **habēre sē . . . receptum**: 'he could take refuge in.'

4. **Scīpiō**: Q. Metellus Pius Scipio, Pompey's father-in-law.

5. **sequātur**: sc. *eum*, 'should follow his lead.'

6. **cunctētur . . . agat**: sc. *senātus*. **eius**: sc. *Pompeī*.

2. 8. **senātus**: 'the meeting of the Senate.'

10. **dīxerat aliquis**: 'some had expressed'; lit. *aliquis* is singular, but three such opinions are cited in what follows.

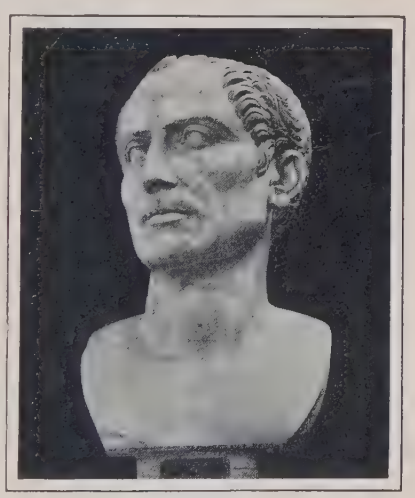
11. **Mārcellus**: consul in 51 B.C. and elder brother of the Marcellus mentioned in the note to p. 423, l. 1. **ingressus . . . ōrātiōnem**: *i.e.* who spoke to the following effect; note the lit. trans.

12. **ante**: with *quam*. **Italiā**: 175.

13. **quō praesidiō**: 'under whose protection'; note the lit. trans.

14. **Calidius**: a zealous supporter of Caesar, highly praised by Cicero as an orator. *Calidius* is in the same construction as *Mārcellus*.

dius, quī cēnsēbat ut Pompeius in suās prōvinciās proficīscerētur, nē qua esset armōrum causa; timēre Caesarem, ēreptīs ab eō duābus legiōnibus, nē ad eius perīculum reservāre et retinēre eās ad urbem Pompeius vidērētur; ut M. Rūfus, quī sententiam Calidī paucīs ferē mūtātīs verbīs sequēbātur. Hī omnēs convīciō L. Lentulī cōnsulis correptī exagitābantur. Lentulus sententiam Calidī prōnūntiātūrum sē omnīnō negāvit, Mārcellus perterritus convīciīs ā suā sententiā discessit.



Julius Caesar.

1. **cēnsēbat**: equivalent to *sententiam dīxit*, see note to p. 423, l. 7.

2. **timēre**: sc. *dīxit* (*Calidius*).

3. **eō . . . eius**: referring to Caesar.

4. **ad urbem**: 'near the city.'

5. **Rūfus**: M. Caelius Rufus, defended by Cicero in his *Prō Caeliō*; a man of dissolute character, who supported Caesar in the hope of getting rid of his great debts. When disappointed, he made a conspiracy against Caesar, in which he lost his life. In the same construction as *Mārcellus* and *Calidius*. **ferē**: here with the force of 'only.'

6. **convīciō correptī . . . exagitābantur**: 'were assailed with violent invective'; *convīciō* means 'abusive language,' *correptī* 'assailed' and *exagitābantur* 'violently attacked.'

7. **prōnūntiātūrum**: sc. *esse*, 'put to vote,' 'lay before the Senate.'

Sīc vōcibus cōnsulis, terrōre praesentis exercitūs, minīs amīcōrum Pompeī plērīque compulsī, invītī et coāctī Scīpiōnis sententiam sequuntur: utī ante certam diem Caesar exercitum dīmittat; sī nōn faciat, eum adversus rem pūblicam factūrum vidērī. Intercēdit M. Antōnius, Q. Cassius, tribūnī plēbis. Refertur cōnfestim dē intercessiōne tribūnōrum. Dīcuntur sententiae gravēs; ut quisque acerbissimē crūdēlissimēque dīxit, ita maximē ab inimīcīs Caesaris collaudātur.

Caesar's enemies, aided by Pompey, force the passage of an act designed to strip him of power. His friends try to gain time.

3. Missō ad vesperum senātū, omnēs quī sunt eius ōrdinis ā Pompeiō ēvocantur. Laudat Pompeius prōmptōs atque in posterum cōnfīrmat, sēgniōrēs castīgat atque incitat. Multī undique ex veteribus Pompeī exercitibus spē praemiōrum atque ōrdinum ēvocantur, multī ex duābus

---

1. **vōcibus**: 'language'; not quite the same as *verbīs*. **praesentis exercitūs**: 'the presence of the army.' *Praesentis* is in effect a participle; see 280. **minīs**: 'threats.'

5. **vidērī**: *i.e.* 'he should be considered as.' **Intercēdit**: used technically, 'entered a veto.' This was one of the fundamental rights of the tribunes. **Cassius**: Q. Cassius Longinus, of the same name as the leader with Brutus of the conspiracy against Caesar's life, but a different person; sc. *et* and see 290.

6. **Refertur**: see note to p. 423, l. 3. **intercessiōne**: 'veto': cf. *Intercēdit*, l. 5 above.

7. **gravēs**: 'weighty.' **ut quisque . . . collaudātur**: 'the more harshly . . . the more highly'; note the lit. trans.

3. 10. **Missō**: = **dimissō**.

11. **ēvocantur**: 'summoned' from the city.

12. **in posterum**: 'for the future.' **sēgniōrēs**: 'sluggards': lit. 'the slower, more backward.'

14. **ōrdinum**: 'promotions, commissions' as centurions. **ēvocantur**: 'induced to enlist,' a technical use of the word, see note on *ēvocātīs*, p. 427, l. 3.

legiōnibus, quae sunt trāditae ā Caesare, arcessuntur. Complētur urbs mīlitibus, comitium tribūnīs, centuriōnibus, ēvocātīs. Omnēs amīcī cōnsulum, necessāriī Pompeī atque eī quī veterēs inimīcitiās cum Caesare gerēbant, in senātum cōguntur; quōrum vōcibus et concursū terrentur īnfīrmiōrēs, dubiī cōnfīrmantur, plērīsque vērō līberē dēcernendī potestās ēripitur.

Pollicētur L. Pīsō cēnsor sēsē itūrum ad Caesarem, item L. Rōscius praetor, qui dē hīs rēbus eum doceant; sex diēs ad eam rem cōnficiendam spatī postulant. Dīcuntur etiam ab nōn nūllīs sententiae, ut lēgātī ad Caesarem mittantur, quī voluntātem senātūs ei prōpōnant.

---

3. **ēvocātīs**: 'reservists,' veterans who were induced to enlist again after serving their terms. **necessāriī**: 'adherents, supporters.'

4. **veterēs**: 'of long standing.'

5. **vōcibus et concursū**: 'noisy throngs'; 288.

6. **plērīsque**: 153.

8. **Pīsō**: Caesar's father-in-law, L. Cornelius Piso Censorinus, consul in 58 B.C.

9. **Rōscius**: one of Caesar's *lēgātī* during his campaigns in Gaul. **doceant**: 230.

10. **spatī**: 'time'; lit. 'of time,' gen. depending on *diēs*. **Dīcuntur . . . sententiae**: equivalent in meaning to *nōn nūllī cēnsēbant*, cf. p. 425, l. 1.

11. **prōpōnant**: note the mood.

Pompey.

This bust, if authentic, represents Pompey as younger than he was at the time of the Civil War.

The motives of Caesar's opponents. Pompey's jealousy and fears.

4. Omnibus hīs resistitur omnibusque ōrātiō cōnsulis, Scīpiōnis, Catōnis oppōnitur. Catōnem veterēs inimīcitiae Caesaris incitant et dolor repulsae. Lentulus aeris aliēnī magnitūdine et spē exercitūs ac prōvinciārum et rēgum appellandōrum largītiōnibus movētur, sēque alterum fore Sullam inter suōs glōriātur, ad quem summa imperī redeat. Scīpiōnem eadem spēs prōvinciae atque exercituum impellit, quōs sē prō necessitūdine partītūrum cum Pompeiō arbitrātur, simul iūdiciōrum metus atque ostentātiō suī et adūlātiō potentium quī in rē pūblicā iūdiciīsque tum plūrimum pollēbant.

Ipse Pompeius, ab inimīcīs Caesaris incitātus, et quod nēminem dignitāte sēcum exaequārī volēbat, tōtum sē ab eius amīcitiā āverterat et cum commūnibus inimīcīs in grātiam redierat, quōrum ipse maximam partem illō

---

4. 1. **Omnibus**: 149, *a*. **cōnsulis**: Lentulus; see note to p. 423, l. 1.

2. **Catōnis**: refers to M. Porcius Cato Uticensis, great-grandson of Cato the Censor.

3. **dolor repulsae**: *i.e.* resentment for his failure to be elected consul in 51 B.C.

4. **prōvinciārum**: 'a province.' The plural refers to the several provinces from which a selection would be made. **rēgum . . . largītiōnibus**: *i.e.* 'profits from king-making'; he hoped that the bribes offered to the Senate to induce it to confer the title of king on petty rulers (*appellandōrum* = 'naming') would pass through his hands.

8. **prō necessitūdine**: 'because of his relationship'; see note to p. 424, l. 4. **partītūrum**: sc. *esse*.

9. **iūdiciōrum**: 'the courts.' In the event of Caesar's victory he feared prosecution for bribery. **ostentātiō suī**: 'his ostentatious disposition.' *Suī* is an objective genitive with *ostentātiō*.

11. **pollēbant**: = *plūrimum poterant*.

13. **exaequārī**: 'to be made equal.'

affīnitātis tempore iniūnxerat Caesarī; simul īnfāmiā duārum legiōnum permōtus, quās ab itinere Asiae Syriaeque ad suam potentiam dominātumque converterat, rem ad arma dēdūcī studēbat.

The measures are rushed through, the rights of the tribunes are disregarded, the senatus consultum ultimum *is passed.*

5. Hīs dē causīs aguntur omnia raptim atque turbātē. Nec docendī Caesaris propinquīs eius spatium datur nec tribunīs plēbis suī perīculī dēprecandī neque etiam extrēmī iūris intercessiōnis retinendī, quod L. Sulla relīquerat, facultās tribuitur; sed dē suā salūte septimō diē cōgitāre cōguntur, quod illī turbulentissimī superiōribus temporibus tribūnī plēbis octo dēnique mēnsēs variārum āctiōnum respicere ac timēre cōnsuērant.

1. **affīnitātis**: *i.e.* during the lifetime of Julia, daughter of Caesar, whom Pompey had married; she died in 54 B.C. **iniūnxerat**: 'had saddled upon, imposed upon.' **īnfāmiā**: 'scandal, discredit.' The relative clause has the same relation to the sentence as the participle to the noun in 280. It might be translated: 'the scandal caused by the diversion of two legions,' etc.

5. 5. **raptim . . . turbātē**: 'in a hurried and disorderly (*i.e.* illegal) manner.'

7. **extrēmī iūris**: 'their most fundamental right.' See note to p. 426, l. 5.

8. **intercessiōnis**: 139. **quod**: Sulla curtailed the powers of the tribunes, but left them the right of veto.

9. **septimō diē**: *i.e.* 'within seven days.'

10. **quod**: 'whereas.' **illī . . . tribūnī**: such as Saturninus and the Gracchi; see notes to p. 434, lines 9 and 10.

11. **dēnique**: here with the force of 'at least.' **āctiōnum**: 'acts'; here 'official acts.' The meaning is that ordinarily the tribunes did not begin to fear prosecution until they failed of reëlection. The elections were held four months before the expiration of their term of office, so that they had the record of eight months to think over with apprehension.

Dēcurritur ad illud extrēmum atque ultimum senātūs cōnsultum, quō nisi paenē in ipsō urbis incendiō atque in dēspērātiōne omnium salūtis scelerātōrum audāciā numquam ante dēscēnsum est: dent operam cōnsulēs, praetōrēs, tribūnī plēbis, quīque prō cōnsulibus sint ad urbem, nē quid rēs pūblica dētrīmentī capiat. Haec senātūs cōnsulta perscrībuntur a. d. VII Īd. Iān. Itaque V prīmīs diēbus quibus habērī senātus potuit, quō ex diē cōnsulātum iniit Lentulus, bīduō exceptō comitiālī, et dē imperiō Caesaris et dē amplissimīs virīs, tribūnīs plēbis, gravissimē acerbissimēque dēcernitur.

The tribunes flee to Caesar.

Profugiunt statim ex urbe tribūnī plēbis sēsēque ad Caesarem cōnferunt. Is eō tempore erat Ravennae

---

1. **Dēcurritur**: 'recourse is had'; note the lit. trans.
2. **quō**: 'to which,' the adverb.
3. **audāciā**: 165.
4. **dēscēnsum est**: 'it was resorted,' or with *quō*, 'which was resorted to.'
5. **quīque . . . ad urbem**: 'whatever proconsuls are near the city.'
6. **perscrībuntur**: 'recorded, written out.' That is, these decrees of the Senate were formally recorded on January 7 and thereupon became laws.
8. **senātus**: as on p. 424, l. 8. **quō ex diē**: for *ex eō diē quō*. *Ex* means 'after.'
9. **bīduō exceptō comitiālī**: 'not counting two election days,' on which meetings of the Senate were not held.
10. **amplissimīs**: 'highly important.'
11. **dēcernitur**: 'decrees were passed.' What is the lit. trans.? See 204.
13. **Ravennae**: an important seaport of Cisalpine Gaul, in northeastern Italy. See the illustration on p. 431.

exspectābatque suīs lēnissimīs postulātīs respōnsa, sī quā hominum aequitāte rēs ad ōtium dēdūcī posset.

In accordance with Pompey's advice the Senate makes active preparations for war, regardless of order or precedent.

6. Proximīs diēbus habētur extrā urbem senātus. Pompeius eadem illa, quae per Scīpiōnem ostenderat, agit; senātūs virtūtem cōnstantiamque collaudat; cōpiās suās expōnit: legiōnēs habēre sēsē parātās x; praetereā cognitum

The Pine Grove at Ravenna.

This beautiful grove of stone pines lies between the modern city of Ravenna and the sea and extends for many miles along the shore. This *Pinētum* is mentioned as early as the fifth century A.D.

1. **sī . . . posset**: an indirect question depending on *exspectābat*: 'to see whether, etc.'

6. 4. **agit**: 'carries out,' or with *eadem illa*, 'follows exactly the line of conduct.'

5. **expōnit**: 'gives an account of,' showing their strength.

compertumque sibi aliēnō esse animō in Caesarem mīlitēs neque eīs posse persuādērī utī eum dēfendant aut sequantur saltem. Dē reliquīs rēbus ad senātum refertur: tōtā Italiā dīlēctūs habeantur; Faustus Sulla properē in Maurētāniam mittātur; pecūnia utī ex aerāriō Pompeiō dētur. Refertur etiam dē rēge Iubā, ut socius sit atque amīcus; Mārcellus cōnsul passūrum in praesentia negat. Dē Faustō impedit Philippus, tribūnus plēbis.

Dē reliquīs rēbus senātūs cōnsulta perscrībuntur. Prōvinciae prīvātīs dēcernuntur, duae cōnsulārēs, reliquae praetōriae. Scīpīonī obvenit Syria, L. Domitiō Gallia. Philippus et Cotta prīvātō cōnsiliō praetereuntur, neque

---

1. **aliēnō**: 'disloyal, disaffected.'

3. **saltem**: here 'only.'

4. **Faustus Sulla**: Faustus Cornelius Sulla, son of the famous dictator and son-in-law of Pompey. **Maurētāniam**: in northeastern Africa, modern Morocco.

6. **Iubā**: Juba I, king of Numidia. **ut . . . sit**: *i.e.* that he be formally called an Ally and Friend of the Roman people; cf. p. 232, l. 5.

7. **passūrum**: for *sē id passūrum esse*, referring to the alliance with Juba. **impedit**: = *intercēdit*, see p. 426, l. 5.

8. **Philippus**: L. Marcius Philippus, son of the ex-consul of l. 12.

9. **perscrībuntur**: see p. 430, l. 6.

10. **prīvātīs**: here means 'ex-magistrates,' at the time holding no office. **cōnsulārēs . . . praetōriae**: sc. *prōvinciae*, referring to provinces governed respectively by consuls and by praetors.

11. **Domitiō**: L. Domitius Ahenobarbus, brother-in-law of Cato Uticensis and consul in 54 B.C.; one of the ablest of Pompey's lieutenants.

12. **Philippus**: father of the tribune mentioned in l. 8. He had been consul in 56 B.C. and later became the stepfather of Augustus. **Cotta**: L. Aurelius Cotta, consul in 65 B.C. He was related to Caesar's mother. **prīvātō cōnsiliō**: 'by a private arrangement,' because of their relationship to Caesar.

eōrum sortēs dēiciuntur. In reliquās prōvinciās praetōrēs mittuntur. Neque exspectant, quod superiōribus annīs acciderat, ut dē eōrum imperiō ad populum ferātur, palūdātīque votīs nūncupātīs exeunt.

Cōnsulēs ex urbe proficīscuntur, quod ante id tempus accidit numquam, līctōrēsque habent in urbe et Capitōliō prīvātī contrā omnia vetustātis exempla. Tōtā Italiā dīlēctūs habentur, arma imperantur, pecūniae ā mūnicipiīs exiguntur, ē fānīs tolluntur, omnia dīvīna hūmānaque iūra permīscentur.

Caesar, at Ravenna, addresses his soldiers, complaining of the unconstitutional acts of his foes. The Thirteenth legion pledges its support.

7. Quibus rēbus cognitīs, Caesar apud mīlitēs cōntiōnātur. Omnium temporum iniūriās inimīcōrum in sē commemorat; ā quibus dēductum ac dēprāvātum Pompeium queritur invidiā atque obtrectātiōne laudis suae, cuius ipse honōrī et dignitātī semper fāverit adiūtorque fuerit. Novum in rem

1. **dēiciuntur**: sc. *in urnam*. They were not allowed to draw lots with the others for the provinces.

2. **quod**: the antecedent is the clause *ut . . . ferātur*.

3. **palūdātī**: 'clad in (scarlet) military cloaks (*palūdāmenta*).' Thus anticipating the action of the people, who must confirm their appointments.

4. **votīs nūncupātīs**: 'after offering their vows' as usual to Jupiter on the Capitoline Hill.

7. **prīvātī**: 'private citizens,' which they were until their appointments had been confirmed by the people.

10. **permīscentur**: 'thrown into confusion.'

7. 11. **cōntiōnātur**: 'makes an address'; *cōntiōnor* means literally 'to address an assembly.'

13. **dēprāvātum**: 'corrupted.'

14. **obtrectātiōne**: 'a desire to disparage.' **cuius**: with concessive force; the antecedent is *Pompeium*.

15. **fāverit . . . fuerit**: 254.

pūblicam intrōductum exemplum queritur, ut tribūnicia potestās armīs notārētur atque opprimerētur. Sullam, nūdātā omnibus rēbus tribūniciā potestāte, tamen intercessiōnem līberam relīquisse; Pompeium, quī āmissa restituisse videātur bona, etiam quae ante habuerint adēmisse. Quotiēnscumque sit dēcrētum darent operam magistrātūs nē quid rēs pūblica dētrīmentī caperet (quā vōce et quō senātūs cōnsultō populus Rōmānus ad arma sit vocātus), factum in perniciōsīs lēgibus, in vī tribūniciā, in sēcessiōne populī, templīs locīsque ēditiōribus occupātīs; atque haec superiōris aetātis exempla expiāta Sāturnīnī atque Gracchōrum cāsibus docet; quārum rērum illō tempore nihil factum, nē cōgitātum quidem. Hortātur, cuius imperātōris ductū VIIII annīs rem pūblicam fēlīcissimē gesserint plūrimaque proelia secunda fēcerint, omnem

---

2. **notārētur**: 'was being dishonored'; more lit. 'branded (with ignominy).'

3. **omnibus . . . relīquisse**: cf. p. 429, l. 8.

5. **bona**: 'privileges.'

9. **factum**: sc. *esse*, 'it was done.' **in**: 'in the case of.' **perniciōsīs lēgibus**: such as the agrarian laws of the Gracchi. **vī tribūniciā**: 'tribunicial violence,' *i.e.* violence on the part of a tribune such as that of Ti. Gracchus, who resorted to unconstitutional methods in his attempt to bring about his reforms.

10. **sēcessiōne**: The first secession was to the Sacred Mount (*Mōns Sacer*) in 494 B.C. Later instances were the occupation of the Capitoline by Ti. Gracchus and his followers in 133, of the Aventine by C. Gracchus in 121, and of the Capitoline by L. Saturninus in 100 B.C. **templīs . . . occupātīs**: explanatory of *sēcessiōne;* see the preceding note.

11. **expiāta**: sc. *esse*. **Saturnīnī**: L. Apuleius Saturninus, tribune in 100 B.C.; see note to p. 429, l. 10.

12. **quārum rērum . . . nihil**: 'nothing of that kind.'

13. **nē . . . quidem**: 'or even thought of'; sc. *esse*. **cuius imperātōris . . . eius**: = *eius imperātōris . . . cuius*.

Galliam Germāniamque pācāverint, ut eius exīstimātiōnem dignitātemque ab inimīcīs dēfendant.

Conclāmant legiōnis XIII, quae aderat, mīlitēs (hanc enim initiō tumultūs ēvocāverat, reliquae nōndum convēnerant) sēsē parātōs esse imperātōris suī tribūnōrumque plēbis iniūriās dēfendere.

II. The Second Sea-fight off Massilia (Book II, 3–7)

The Massilian fleet is reinforced with ships sent by Pompey; the Massilians repair their losses and the combined force sails forth confident of victory.

3. Interim L. Nāsīdius, ab Cn. Pompeiō cum classe nāvium XVI, in quibus paucae erant aerātae, L. Domitiō Massiliēnsibusque subsidiō missus, fretō Siciliae imprūdente atque inopīnante Cūriōne pervehitur, appulsīsque Messānam nāvibus atque inde propter repentīnum terrōrem prīncipum ac senātūs fugā factā, nāvem ex nāvālibus eōrum dēdūcit. Hāc adiūnctā ad reliquās nāvēs, cursum Massi-

---

3. 8. **aerātae**: 'armored'; *i.e.* provided with brazen beaks. **Domitiō**: see note to p. 432, l. 11.

A Coin of Q. Nasidius.

It shows a war-ship and a star.

9. **Massiliēnsibus**: 'the Massilians,' the people of Massilia in Gallia Narbonensis, modern Marseilles. **fretō Siciliae**: (or *Siciliēnsī*), 'the Strait of Messina,' between Italy and Sicily; *fretō* is abl. of the way by which; cf. 163, *d*.

10. **Cūriōne**: C. Scribonius Curio, tribune in 50 B.C.; pp. 442 ff. **pervehitur**: 'sails along'; lit. 'is carried.'

11. **Messānam**: a city of northeastern Sicily, modern Messina. **inde**: 'from there'; *i.e.* from Messana.

12. **senātūs**: referring to the local senate. **nāvālibus**: 'docks.'

13. **dēdūcit**: 'launches' and carries off.

liam versus perficit praemissāque clam nāviculā Domitium Massiliēnsēsque dē suō adventū certiōrēs facit eōsque magnopere hortātur ut rūrsus cum Brūtī classe additīs suīs auxiliīs cōnflīgant.

4. Massiliēnsēs post superius incommodum veterēs ad eundem numerum ex nāvālibus prōductās nāvēs refēcerant summāque industriā armāverant (rēmigum, gubernātōrum magna cōpia suppetēbat) piscātōriāsque adiēcerant atque contēxerant, ut essent ab ictū tēlōrum rēmigēs tūtī; hās sagittāriīs tormentīsque complēvērunt. Tālī modō īnstrūctā classe, omnium seniōrum, mātrum familiae, virginum precibus et flētū excitātī, extrēmō tempore cīvitātī subvenīrent, nōn minōre animō ac fīdūciā, quam ante dīmicāverant, nāvēs cōnscendunt.

Commūnī enim fit vitiō nātūrae, ut invīsitātīs atque incognitīs rēbus magis cōnfīdāmus vehementiusque exterreāmur; ut tum accidit. Adventus enim L. Nāsīdī summā spē et voluntāte cīvitātem complēverat. Nactī idōneum ventum ex portū exeunt et Tauroënta, quod est castellum

---

1. **versus**: 'towards, in the direction of.'

3. **Brūtī**: D. Junius Brutus Albinus, who defeated the Veneti in 56 B.C.; see pp. 296 ff. He later joined the conspiracy against Caesar, led by M. Junius Brutus and C. Cassius.

4. 5. **incommodum**: 'disaster,' referring to the defeat of their fleet by Brutus in a former sea-fight.

6. **eundem numerum**: 'the same number,' as that which they had lost.

8. **piscātōriās**: sc. *nāvēs*, 'fishing-boats.'

9. **contēxerant**: 'decked over,' 'provided with decks.'

12. **extrēmō . . . subvenīrent**: 'beseeching them to help the state in its extremity.' The clause depends upon the verbal idea in *precibus et flētū*.

17. **ut tum accidit**: referring only to *cōnfīdāmus*, not to *exterreāmur*.

19. **Tauroënta**: a town southeast of Massilia, modern Tarente. For

Massiliēnsium, ad Nāsīdium perveniunt ibique nāvēs expediunt rūrsusque sē ad cōnflīgendum animō cōnfīrmant et cōnsilia commūnicant. Dextra pars attribuitur Massiliēnsibus, sinistra Nāsīdiō.

Brutus goes to meet them. The Massilians rest all their hopes upon the outcome of the contest.

5. Eōdem Brūtus contendit, auctō nāvium numerō. Nam ad eās, quae factae erant Arelāte per Caesarem, captīvae Massiliēnsium accesserant VI. Hās superiōribus diēbus refēcerat atque omnibus rēbus īnstrūxerat. Itaque suōs cohortātus, quōs integrōs superāvissent, ut victōs contemnerent, plēnus spei bonae atque animī adversus eōs proficīscitur.

Facile erat ex castrīs C. Trebōnī atque omnibus superiōribus locīs prōspicere in urbem, ut omnis iuventūs quae

---

the form see 38. In Latin the accusative of limit of motion is used in such cases, but in English we should say 'at Taurois.'

1. **expediunt**: 'clear for action.'

2. **animō**: 171. *Animō cōnfīrmant*, 'they make up their minds.'

3. **cōnsilia commūnicant**: 'take counsel together'; note the lit. trans.

5. 6. **Arelāte**: 'at Arelate,' a town of southern Gaul on the Rhone, modern Arles. The word is indeclinable and usually neuter, rarely feminine.

7. **captīvae**: sc. *nāvēs;* they were ships captured from the Massilians.

9. **quōs . . . contemnerent**: = *ut eōs quōs integrōs superāvissent victōs contemnerent.*

12. **C. Trebōnī**: left in charge of the siege of Massilia by Caesar, when he went to Spain.

13. **ut**: introducing an indirect question, 'and see how.' **iuventūs**: 'young men,' referring to those of military age, under forty-five.

in oppidō remānserat, omnēsque superiōris aetātis cum līberīs atque uxōribus ex pūblicīs locīs cūstōdiīsque aut mūrō ad caelum manūs tenderent aut templa deōrum immortālium adīrent et ante simulācra prōiectī victōriam ab dīs exposcerent. Neque erat quisquam omnium, quīn in eius diēī cāsū suārum omnium fortūnārum ēventum cōnsistere exīstimāret. Nam et honestī ex iuventūte et cuiusque

Roman Amphitheater at Arles.

One of the best preserved of the Roman amphitheaters, at Arelate, modern Arles, in Southern France.

1. **superiōris aetātis**: 'of greater age,' i.e. *senēs*, men of forty-five and upwards.

2. **cūstōdiīs**: 'guard-houses.'

4. **simulācra**: 'images, likenesses,' in the shrines.

5. **quisquam omnium**: 'a single one.' **quīn**: 'who did not'; note the lit. meaning.

6. **cōnsistere**: 'rested.'

7. **honestī ex iuventūte**: 'the young men of good family'; 138, *a*.

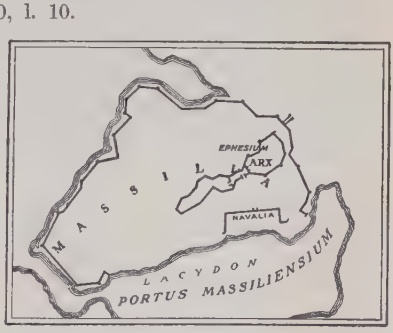
aetātis amplissimī, nōminātim ēvocātī atque obsecrātī, nāvēs cōnscenderant, ut, sī quid adversī accidisset, nē ad cōnandum quidem sibi quicquam reliquī fore vidērent; sī superāvissent, vel domesticīs opibus vel externīs auxiliīs dē salūte urbis cōnfīderent.

They fight with desperate valor, but the superior tactics and courage of the Romans win the day.

6. Commissō proeliō, Massiliēnsibus rēs nūlla ad virtūtem dēfuit; sed memorēs eōrum praeceptōrum quae paulō ante ab suīs accēperant, hōc animō dēcertābant, ut nūllum aliud tempus ad cōnandum habitūrī vidērentur et, quibus in pugnā vītae perīculum accideret, nōn ita multō sē reliquōrum cīvium fātum antecēdere exīstimārent, quibus urbe captā eadem esset bellī fortūna patienda. Dīductīsque nostrīs paulātim nāvibus, et artificiō gubernātōrum et mōbilitātī nāvium locus dabātur; et sī quandō nostrī facultātem nactī ferreīs manibus iniectīs nāvem religāverant, undique suīs

---

1. **amplissimī**: cf. p. 430, l. 10.
2. **adversī**: 138.
3. **vidērent**: 232.
6. 6. **Massiliēnsibus . . . dēfuit**: get the lit. meaning and then express in good English.
8. **hōc**: 'such.'
10. **vītae**: 137.
11. **antecēdere**: 'anticipated.' **quibus**: 155.
12. **Dīductīs**: *dis-* + *dūcō*.
13. **artificiō**: 'skill.'
15. **ferreīs manibus**: 'grappling-irons.' **nāvem religāverant**: 'had made a ship fast' to their own.



Massilia and the Harbor.

labōrantibus succurrēbant. Neque vērō coniūnctī Albicī comminus pugnandō dēficiēbant neque multum cēdēbant virtūte nostrīs.

Simul ex minōribus nāvibus magna vīs ēminus missa tēlōrum multa nostrīs dē improvīsō imprūdentibus atque impedītīs vulnera īnferēbant. Cōnspicātaeque nāvēs trirēmēs duae nāvem D. Brūtī, quae ex īnsignī facile agnōscī poterat, duābus ex partibus sēsē in eam incitāvērunt. Sed tantum, rē prōvīsā, Brūtus celeritāte nāvis ēnīsus est ut parvō mōmentō antecēderet. Illae adeō graviter inter sē incitātae cōnflīxērunt, ut vehementissimē utraque ex concursū labōrāret, altera vērō praefrāctō rōstrō tōta collabefieret. Quā rē animadversā, quae proximae eī locō ex Brūtī classe nāvēs erant, in eās impedītās impetum faciunt celeriterque ambās dēprimunt.

Nasidius renders little help. The brunt of the battle falls upon the Massilians.

7. Sed Nāsīdiānae nāvēs nūllī ūsuī fuērunt celeriterque pugnā excessērunt; nōn enim hās aut cōnspectus patriae

---

1. **succurrēbant**: sc. *hostēs*. **coniūnctī**: *i.e.* who fought on the side of the Massilians. **Albicī**: a people dwelling in the mountains above Massilia.

5. **multa**: with *vulnera*. **dē improvīsō imprūdentibus**: 'unexpectedly taken off their guard.'

7. **īnsignī**: a substantive, 'ensign,' the commander's *vexillum*.

8. **tantum . . . ēnīsus est**: 'drove his ship ahead with such speed'; lit. 'made such an effort with the speed of his ship.' **parvō mōmentō**: 'by an instant'; 168.

10. **Illae**: the attacking ships.

12. **altera**: we should say 'one of them.' **collabefieret**: 'collapsed, went to pieces.' **quae proximae . . . in eās**: for *in eās nāvēs, quae proximae erant*.

15. **dēprimunt**: 'sink.'

7. 16. **nūllī ūsuī**: 156; we should say 'of no use' or 'no use.'

aut propinquōrum praecepta ad extrēmum vītae perīculum adīre cōgēbant. Itaque ex eō numerō nāvium nūlla dēsīderāta est; ex Massiliēnsium classe v sunt dēpressae, IV captae, ūna cum Nāsīdiānīs profūgit; quae omnēs citeriōrem Hispāniam petīvērunt. At ex reliquīs ūna, praemissa Massiliam huius nūntī perferendī grātiā, cum iam appropinquāret urbī, omnis sēsē multitūdō ad cognōscendum effūdit, et rē cognitā tantus lūctus excēpit, ut urbs ab hostibus capta eōdem vēstīgiō vidērētur. Massiliēnsēs tamen nihilō sētius ad dēfēnsiōnem urbis reliqua apparāre coepērunt.

Marseilles.

The ancient Massilia, founded by Greek colonists about 600 B.C. The modern city is the principal seaport of France.

1. **perīculum** : 'risk.'
8. **excēpit** : 'ensued, followed.'
9. **eōdem vēstīgiō** : 'on the spot'; lit. 'at the same instant.'

III. Destruction of Curio's Army in Africa (Book II, 36–44)

Curio, having commenced the siege of Utica, learns of the approach of Juba.

36. Posterō diē Cūriō obsidēre Uticam vāllōque circumm ūnīre īnstituit. Erat in oppidō multitūdō īnsolēns bellī diūturnitāte ōtī: Uticēnsēs prō quibusdam Caesaris in sē beneficiīs illī amīcissimī, conventus is quī ex variīs generibus cōnstāret, terror ex superiōribus proeliīs magnus. Itaque dē dēditiōne omnēs iam palam loquēbantur et cum P. Attiō agēbant, nē suā pertināciā omnium fortūnās perturbārī vellet. Haec cum agerentur, nūntiī praemissī ab rēge Iubā vēnērunt, quī illum adesse cum magnīs cōpiīs dīcerent et dē cūstōdiā ac dēfēnsiōne urbis hortārentur. Quae rēs eōrum perterritōs animōs cōnfīrmāvit.

At first he is over-confident and incredulous, but finally prepares for defense.

37. Nūntiābantur haec eadem Cūriōnī, sed aliquam diū fidēs fierī nōn poterat; tantam habēbat suārum rērum fīdūciam. Iamque Caesaris in Hispāniā rēs secundae in Āfricam nūntiīs ac litterīs perferēbantur. Quibus omnibus rēbus sublātus nihil contrā sē rēgem ausūrum exīstimābat. Sed ubi certīs auctōribus comperit minus v et xx

---

36. 1. **Cūriō**: see note to p. 435, l. 10.

2. **īnsolēns**: note the derivation and trans. accordingly.

3. **bellī**: 143. **diūturnitāte**: 165.

4. **illī**: = *Caesarī*. **conventus . . . cōnstāret**: 'a body of (Roman) citizens made up of various classes.' These were corporations of traders. Since they were of different classes and political opinions, they could not all be counted upon. *Is quī* = 'such as.'

7. **Attiō**: P. Attius Varus, one of Pompey's ablest officers, in command at Utica.

mīlibus longē ab Uticā eius cōpiās abesse, relīctīs mūnītiōnibus sēsē in castra Cornēlia recēpit. Hūc frūmentum comportāre, castra mūnīre, māteriam cōnferre coepit statimque in Siciliam mīsit, utī duae legiōnēs reliquusque equitātus ad sē mitterētur.

Castra erant ad bellum dūcendum aptissima nātūrā locī et mūnītiōne et maris propinquitāte et aquae et salis cōpiā, cuius magna vīs iam ex proximīs erat salīnīs eō congesta. Nōn māteria multitūdine arborum, nōn frūmentum, cuius erant plēnissimī agrī, dēficere poterat. Itaque omnium suōrum cōnsēnsū Cūriō reliquās cōpiās exspectāre et bellum dūcere parābat.

Trusting to a false report that Juba had started back, Curio imprudently assumes the offensive. An attack by his cavalry is successful.

38. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus probātīsque cōnsiliīs, ex perfugīs quibusdam oppidānīs audit Iubam, revocātum fīnitimō bellō et contrōversiīs Leptitānōrum, restitisse in rēgnō; Saburram, eius praefectum, cum mediocribus cōpiīs missum, Uticae appropinquāre. Hīs auctōribus temere crēdēns cōnsilium commūtat et proeliō rem committere cōnstituit.

---

37. 1. **mīlibus**: 168; *minus* does not affect the construction, see 162.

2. **castra Cornēlia**: so called from P. Cornelius Scipio Africanus, who had a camp there in the latter part of the Second Punic War; it was on a point of land between Utica and the Bagrădas River.

6. **bellum dūcendum**: 'waging a prolonged war.'

8. **cuius**: the antecedent is *salis*. **salīnae**: 'salt-works,' an adj. used as a substantive (195, *b*), sc. *fodīnae*, 'pits, mines.'

9. **multitūdine**: 165.

38. 15. **Leptitānōrum**: the people of Leptis Minor, on the northern coast of Africa between Hadrumetum and Thapsus. We should say 'quarrels *with* the people of Leptis.'

Multum ad hanc rem probāndam adiuvat adulēscentia, magnitūdō animī, superiōris temporis prōventus, fīdūcia reī bene gerendae.

Hīs rēbus impulsus, equitātum omnem prīmā nocte ad castra hostium mittit ad flūmen Bagradam; quibus praeerat Saburra, dē quō ante erat audītum; sed rēx cum omnibus cōpiīs sequēbātur et VI mīlium passuum intervāllō ab Saburrā cōnsēderat. Equitēs missī nocte iter cōnficiunt, imprūdentēs atque inopīnantēs hostēs aggrediuntur. Numidae enim quādam barbarā cōnsuētūdine nūllīs ōrdinibus passim cōnsēderant. Hōs oppressōs somnō dispersōs adortī magnum eōrum numerum interficiunt; multī perterritī profugiunt. Quō factō, ad Cūriōnem equitēs revertuntur captīvōsque ad eum redūcunt.

Misled by the boastfulness of his cavalry, Curio orders a general attack.

39. Cūriō cum omnibus cōpiīs quārtā vigiliā exierat, cohortibus V castrīs praesidiō relīctīs. Prōgressus mīlia passuum VI, equitēs convenit, rem gestam cognōvit; ē captīvīs quaerit quis castrīs ad Bagradam praesit; respondent Saburram. Reliqua studiō itineris cōnficiendī quaerere praetermittit proximaque respiciēns signa, 'Vidētisne,' inquit, 'mīlitēs, captīvōrum ōrātiōnem cum perfugīs con-

---

2. **superiōris . . . prōventus**: *i.e.* the outcome of former enterprises.

3. **reī bene gerendae**: 'of success.'

5. **Bagradam**: the principal river in the Roman province of Africa, flowing into the Gulf of Carthage near Utica.

10. **cōnsuētūdine**: 166, *a*. **nūllīs . . . passim**: 'in random disorder.'

39. 19. **Reliqua**: 'further questions,' the adj. used as a substantive; 195, *a*.

venīre? abesse rēgem, exiguās esse cōpiās missās, quae paucīs equitibus parēs esse nōn potuerint? Proinde ad praedam, ad glōriam properāte, ut iam dē praemiīs vestrīs et dē referendā grātiā cōgitāre incipiāmus.'

Erant per sē magna quae gesserant equitēs, praesertim cum eōrum exiguus numerus cum tantā multitūdine Numidārum cōnferrētur. Haec tamen ab ipsīs īnflātius commemorābantur, ut dē suis hominēs laudibus libenter praedicant. Multa praetereā spolia praeferēbantur, captī hominēs equīque prōdūcēbantur, ut quicquid intercēderet temporis, hōc omne victōriam morārī vidērētur. Ita speī Cūriōnis mīlitum studia nōn deerant. Equitēs sequī iubet sēsē iterque accelerat, ut quam maximē ex fugā perterritōs adorīrī posset. At illī itinere tōtīus noctis cōnfectī subsequī nōn poterant atque aliī aliō locō resistēbant. Nē haec quidem rēs Cūriōnem ad spem morābātur.

Juba comes to the rescue of Saburra and Curio is lured into an advance against overwhelming odds.

40. Iuba, certior factus ā Saburrā dē nocturnō proeliō, II mīlia Hispānōrum et Gallōrum equitum, quōs suae cūstōdiae causā circum sē habēre cōnsuērat, et peditum eam partem cui maximē cōnfīdēbat, Saburrae summittit; ipse cum reliquīs cōpiīs elephantīsque LX lentius subsequitur. Sus-

---

5. **per sē**: 'in fact'; *i.e.* without exaggeration.
7. **īnflātius**: 'rather boastfully.'
8. **ut**: notice the mood of the following verb.
9. **praeferēbantur**: 'were displayed.'
11. **Ita . . . nōn deerant**: *i.e.* so far were they from falling short.
16. **ad**: 'with regard to.'

40. 18. **suae cūstōdiae**: *i.e.* as a bodyguard.

picātus, praemissīs equitibus, ipsum affore Cūriōnem, Saburra cōpiās equitum peditumque īnstruit atque hīs imperat, ut simulātiōne timōris paulātim cēdant ac pedem referant; sēsē, cum opus esset, signum proelī datūrum et quod rem postulāre cognōvisset imperātūrum. Cūriō, ad superiōrem spem additā praesentis temporis opīniōne, hostēs fugere arbitrātus, cōpiās ex locīs superiōribus in campum dēdūcit.

41. Quibus ex locīs cum longius esset prōgressus, cōnfectō iam labōre exercitū, XVI mīlium spatiō cōnstitit. Dat suīs signum Saburra, aciem cōnstituit et circumīre ōrdinēs atque hortārī incipit; sed peditātū dumtaxat procul ad speciem ūtitur, equitēs in aciem immittit.

Curio and his men show great valor, but they are outnumbered and surrounded.

Nōn deest negōtiō Cūriō suōsque hortātur ut spem omnem in virtūte repōnant. Nē mīlitibus quidem, ut dēfessīs, neque equitibus, ut paucīs et labōre cōnfectīs, studium ad pugnandum virtūsque deerat; sed hī erant numerō CC, reliquī in itinere substiterant. Hī quamcumque in partem

---

1. **affore** : = *affutūrum*.

3. **simultātiōne timōris** : 'feigning fear.'

5. **rem** : 'the occasion, the situation.' **cognōvisset** : for the fut. perf. ind. of dir. disc.

6. **praesentis . . . opīniōne** : *i.e.* his (false) idea of what was happening at the time.

41. 9. **longius** : 193.

10. **spatiō** : 'at a distance.'

12. **dumtaxat** : 'only'; note the derivation and lit. meaning.

14. **Nōn deest negōtiō** : 'is equal to the emergency.' **spem omnem . . . repōnant** : 'rely wholly upon.'

15. **ut . . . ut** : 'although'; more lit. 'as they were.'

impetum fēcerant, hostēs locō cēdere cōgēbant, sed neque longius fugientēs prōsequī neque vehementius equōs incitāre poterant. At equitātus hostium ab utrōque cornū circumīre aciem nostram et āversōs prōterere incipit. Cum cohortēs ex aciē prōcucurrissent, Numidae integrī celeritāte impetum nostrōrum effugiēbant, rūrsusque ad ōrdinēs suōs sē recipientēs circumībant et ab aciē exclūdēbant. Sīc neque in locō manēre ōrdinēsque servāre neque prōcurrere et cāsum subīre tūtum vidēbātur.

The Tomb of Juba.

2. **longius**: with *fugientēs*. **vehementius . . . incitāre**: 'urge to greater efforts.'

4. **aversōs**: 'from the rear'; lit., 'turned away,' sc. *nostrōs*. **prōterere**: 'ride down, trample under foot.'

5. **integrī**: with causal force.

6. **recipientēs**: sc. *nostrōs* or *cohortēs*.

7. **aciē**: 'the main body.'

Hostium cōpiae summissīs ab rēge auxiliīs crēbrō augēbantur; nostrōs vīrēs lassitūdine dēficiēbant, simul eī quī vulnera accēperant neque aciē excēdere neque in locum tūtum referrī poterant, quod tōta aciēs equitātū hostium circumdata tenēbātur. Hī dē suā salūte dēspērantēs, ut extrēmō vītae tempore hominēs facere cōnsuērunt, aut suam mortem miserābantur aut parentēs suōs commendābant, sī quōs ex eō perīculō Fortūna servāre potuisset. Plēna erant omnia timōris et lūctūs.

Curio refuses to leave the field and dies fighting; few escape.

42. Cūriō ubi, perterritīs omnibus, neque cohortātiōnēs suās neque precēs audīrī intellegit, ūnam, ut in miserīs rēbus, spem reliquam salūtis esse arbitrātus, proximōs collēs capere ūniversōs atque eō signa ferrī iubet. Hōs quoque praeoccupat missus ā Saburrā equitātus. Tum vērō ad summam dēspērātiōnem nostrī perveniunt et partim fugientēs ab equitātū interficiuntur, partim integrī prōcumbunt. Hortātur Cūriōnem Cn. Domitius, praefectus equitum, cum paucīs equitibus circumsistēns, ut fugā salūtem petat atque in castra contendat, et sē ab eō nōn discessūrum pollicētur. At Cūriō numquam sē, āmissō exercitū quem ā Caesare suae fidēī commissum accēperit, in eius cōnspectum reversūrum cōnfīrmat atque ita proeliāns interficitur.

Equitēs ex proeliō perpaucī sē recipiunt; sed eī quōs ad novissimum agmen equōrum reficiendōrum causā substitisse

---

1. **crēbrō**: 'frequently,' adv. from *crēber*.

7. **commendābant**: sc. *eīs; eīs, sī quōs* is about equivalent to *eīs quōs*.

42. 11. **audīrī**: 'were listened to.' They fell on deaf ears.

13. **ūniversōs**: 'in a body.' **Hōs**: sc. *collēs*.

16. **integrī prōcumbunt**: 'fall without a wound.'

dēmōnstrātum est, fugā tōtīus exercitūs procul animadversā, sēsē incolumēs in castra cōnferunt. Mīlitēs ad ūnum omnēs interficiuntur.

The soldiers in camp, after vainly attempting to escape by sea, fall into a panic.

43. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, Mārcius Rūfus quaestor, in castrīs relictus ā Cūriōne, cohortātur suōs nē animō dēficiant. Illī ōrant atque obsecrant ut in Siciliam nāvibus reportentur. Pollicētur magistrīsque imperat nāvium ut prīmō vespere omnēs scaphās ad lītus appulsās habeant. Sed tantus fuit omnium terror, ut aliī adesse cōpiās Iubae dīcerent, aliī cum legiōnibus īnstāre Vārum iamque sē pulverem venientium cernere (quārum rērum nihil omnīnō acciderat), aliī classem hostium celeriter advolātūram suspicārentur. Itaque, perterritīs omnibus, sibi quisque cōnsulēbat.

Quī in classe erant proficīscī properābant. Hōrum fuga nāvium onerāriārum magistrōs incitābat; paucī lēnunculī ad officium imperiumque conveniēbant. Sed tanta erat complētīs lītoribus contentiō, quī potissimum ex magnō numerō cōnscenderent, ut multitūdine atque onere nōn nūllī dēprimerentur, reliquī hōc timōre propius adīre tardārentur.

---

1. **dēmōnstrātum est**: see p. 445, l. 14.

43. 7. **magistrīs**: 'captains.'

8. **scaphās**: 'boats,' carried by the *nāvēs*.

10. **Vārum**: P. Attius Varus; see p. 442, l. 7.

14. **properābant**: 'made off,' 'hastened to depart.'

15. **lēnunculī**: here synonymous with *scaphās*, l. 8.

17. **quī . . . cōnscenderent**: an indirect question, '(to see) who.'

18. **multitūdine atque onere**: take together by hendiadys; 288. **nōn nūllī**: sc. *lēnunculī*.

19. **hōc timōre**: 'through fear of this.' **tardārentur**: 'hesitated'; about equal to *prohibērentur*. For the construction cf. p. 311, l. 1.

A few escape; the greater number surrender to Varus, but are put to the sword by Juba.

44. Quibus rēbus accidit ut paucī mīlitēs patrēsque familiae, quī aut grātiā aut misericordiā valērent aut nāvēs annāre possent, receptī in Siciliam incolumēs pervenīrent. Reliquae cōpiae, missīs ad Vārum noctū lēgātōrum numerō centuriōnibus, sēsē eī dēdidērunt. Quārum cohortium mīlitēs posterō diē ante oppidum Iuba cōnspicātus, suam esse praedicāns praedam, magnam partem eōrum interficī iussit, paucōs ēlēctōs in rēgnum remīsit, cum Vārus suam fidem ab eō laedī quererētur neque resistere audēret. Ipse equō in oppidum vectus, prōsequentibus complūribus senātōribus, quō in numerō erat Ser. Sulpicius et Licinius Damasippus, paucīs quae fierī vellet Uticae cōnstituit atque imperāvit, diēbusque post paucīs sē in rēgnum cum omnibus cōpiīs recēpit.

IV. Operations in Illyricum and Epirus (Book III, 12–18)

Caesar, having crossed the Adriatic, receives the submission of many cities.

12. Receptō Caesar Ōricō nūllā interpositā morā Apollōniam proficīscitur. Eius adventū audītō L. Staberius, quī ibi praeerat, aquam comportāre in arcem atque eam

---

44. 3. **receptī**: 'taken on board' the ships (*nāvēs*).

4. **lēgātōrum numerō**: 'as envoys, in the capacity of envoys.'

8. **cum**: 'while.' **suam fidem**: 'his honor.'

9. **eō**: = sc. *Iubā*. **neque . . . audēret**: 'yet did not dare.' **Ipse**: Juba.

12. **paucīs**: sc. *verbīs*.

12. 15. **Ōricō**: Oricum, a seaport in Epirus, on the bay formed by the promontory of Acroceraunia.

mūnīre obsidēsque ab Apollōniātibus exigere coepit. Illī vērō datūrōs sē negāre neque portās cōnsulī praeclūsūrōs neque sibi iūdicium sūmptūrōs contrā atque omnis Italia populusque Rōmānus iūdicāvisset. Quōrum cognitā voluntāte, clam profūgit Apollōniā Staberius. Illī ad Caesarem lēgātōs mittunt oppidōque recipiunt.

Hōs sequuntur Byllidēnsēs et Amantīnī et reliquae fīnitimae cīvitātēs tōtaque Ēpīrus et, lēgātīs ad Caesarem missīs, quae imperāret factūrōs sē pollicentur.

Pompey reaches Dyrrachium first, and there encamps. Caesar encamps near by.

13. At Pompeius, cognitīs hīs rēbus quae erant Ōricī atque Apollōniae gestae, Dyrrachiō timēns diurnīs eō nocturnīsque itineribus contendit. Simul Caesar appropinquāre dīcēbātur; tantusque terror incidit eius exercituī, quod properāns noctem diēī coniūnxerat neque iter intermīserat, ut paenē omnēs ex Ēpīrō fīnitimīsque regiōnibus signa relinquerent, complūrēs arma prōicerent, ac fugae simile iter vidērētur. Sed cum propē Dyrrachium Pompeius cōnstitisset castraque mētārī iussisset, perterritō etiam tum exercitū, prīnceps Labiēnus prōcēdit iūratque sē eum nōn

2. **cōnsulī praeclūsūrōs**: 'shut in the face of the consul.'

3. **sibi . . . sūmptūrōs**: *i.e.* come to any decision. **atque**: 'to what'; lit. 'than'; see Vocab.

6. **recipiunt**: sc. *eum*.

7. **Byllidēnsēs . . . Amantīnī**: inhabitants of the neighboring towns of Byllis and Amantia.

13. 11. **Dyrrachiō**: 'for Dyrrachium.' It was a town of Illyricum nearly opposite Brundisium.

13. **eius**: sc. *Pompeī*.

14. **coniūnxerat . . . intermīserat**: sc. *Pompeius*.

18. **mētārī**: 'to be measured off' for fortifying.

dēsertūrum eundemque cāsum subitūrum, quemcumque eī Fortūna tribuisset. Hōc idem reliquī iūrant lēgātī; hōs tribūnī mīlitum centuriōnēsque sequuntur, atque idem omnis exercitus iūrat.

Caesar, praeoccupātō itinere ad Dyrrachium, fīnem properandī facit castraque ad flūmen Apsum pōnit in fīnibus Apollōniātium, ut bene meritae cīvitātēs tūtae essent praesidiō, ibīque reliquārum ex Italiā legiōnum adventum exspectāre et sub pellibus hiemāre cōnstituit.

Hōc idem Pompeius fēcit et trāns flūmen Apsum positīs castrīs, eō cōpiās omnēs auxiliaque condūxit.

The rest of Caesar's army, at Brundisium, is unable to join him on account of the vigilance of Pompey's fleet. Caesar loses one ship, whose crew is massacred by Bibulus.

14. Calēnus, legiōnibus equitibusque Brundisī in nāvēs impositīs, ut erat praeceptum ā Caesare, quantam nāvium facultātem habēbat, nāvēs solvit, paulumque ā portū prōgressus litterās ā Caesare accēpit, quibus est certior factus portūs lītoraque omnia classibus adversāriōrum tenērī. Quō cognitō, sē in portum recipit nāvēsque omnēs revocat. Ūna ex hīs quae persevērāvit neque imperiō Calēnī obtemperā-

1. **eī**: sc. *Pompeiō*.

5. **praeoccupātō**: 'forestalled'; that is, by Pompey.

6. **Apsum**: the Apsus was a river of Illyricum, flowing into the Adriatic, north of Apollonia.

9. **sub pellibus**: 'in tents' (made of skins), instead of in the usual winter quarters.

14. 12. **Calēnus**: Q. Fufius Calenus, who had been a *lēgātus* of Caesar in the Gallic War also.

13. **quantam . . . habēbat**: *i.e.* so far as the number and capacity of his ships allowed.

17. **portum**: *i.e.* Brundisium.

18. **persevērāvit**: 'kept on.'

vit, quod erat sine mīlitibus prīvātōque cōnsiliō administrābātur, dēlāta Ōricum atque ā Bibulō expugnāta est; quī dē servīs līberīsque omnibus ad impūberēs supplicium sūmit et ad ūnum interficit. Ita in exiguō tempore magnōque cāsū tōtīus exercitūs salūs cōnstitit. 5

Bibulus and his fleet suffer from lack of fuel and water, but continue the blockade.

15. Bibulus, ut suprā dēmōnstrātum est, erat cum classe ad Ōricum et, sīcutī marī portibusque Caesarem prohibēbat,

The Harbor of Brundisium.

2. **dēlāta**: sc. *est*. **Bibulō**: L. Calpurnius Bibulus, Caesar's colleague in the aedileship, praetorship, and consulship.

3. **ad impuberēs**: 'including (down to) minors.' For the meaning of *ad* cf. *ad ūnum*, l. 4.

4. **magnō cāsū**: 'so (*ita*) great a piece of good fortune,' namely, the opportune arrival of Caesar's letter.

ita ipse omnī terrā eārum regiōnum prohibēbātur. Praesidiīs enim dispositīs omnia lītora ā Caesare tenēbantur, neque lignandī atque aquandī neque nāvēs ad terram dēligandī potestās fīēbat. Erat rēs in magnā difficultāte summīsque angustiīs rērum necessāriārum premēbantur, adeō ut cōgerentur, sīcutī reliquum commeātum, ita ligna atque aquam Corcȳrā nāvibus onerāriīs supportāre; atque etiam ūnō tempore accidit ut, difficiliōribus ūsī tempestātibus, ex pellibus quibus erant tēctae nāvēs nocturnum excipere rōrem cōgerentur; quās tamen difficultātēs patienter atque aequō animō ferēbant neque sibi nūdanda lītora et relinquendōs portūs exīstimābant.

Bibulus and Libo ask for a truce, holding out hopes of peace.

Sed cum essent in quibus dēmōnstrāvī angustiīs ac sē Libō cum Bibulō coniūnxisset, loquuntur ambō ex nāvibus cum M. Aciliō et Statiō Murcō lēgātīs, quōrum alter oppidī mūrīs, alter praesidiīs terrestribus praeerat: velle sē dē maximīs rēbus cum Caesare loquī, sī sibi eius facultās dētur. Hūc addunt pauca reī cōnfīrmandae causā, ut dē compositiōne āctūrī vidērentur. Interim postulant ut sint indūtiae, atque ab eīs impetrant. Magnum enim quod afferēbant

---

15. 1. **omnī terrā**: *i.e.* he was unable to land anywhere.

5. **angustiīs**: 'scarcity.'

6. **commeātum**: 'supplies.'

8. **ūnō tempore**: 'on one occasion.' **difficiliōribus**: 193. **ūsī**: 'experiencing.'

10. **rōrem**: 'dew,' which they were obliged to use for drinking water, since the bad weather made it impossible to go to Corcyra.

14. **Libō**: L. Scribonius Libo, father-in-law of Pompey's son Sextus.

18. **reī cōnfīrmandae**: 'of confirming the impression,' explained by the following final clause. **compositiōne**: 'an agreement, treaty of peace.'

20. **eīs**: the *lēgātī* of l. 15.

vidēbātur, et Caesarem id summē sciēbant cupere, et prōfectum aliquid Vībullī mandātīs exīstimābātur.

Libo has an interview with Caesar, but Bibulus is unable to confer with him because of personal hostility.

16. Caesar eō tempore, cum legiōne ūnā profectus ad recipiendās ulteriōrēs cīvitātēs et rem frūmentāriam expediendam (quā angustā ūtēbātur), erat ad Buthrōtum oppidum oppositum Corcȳrae. Ibi certior ab Aciliō et Murcō per litterās factus dē postulātīs Libōnis et Bibulī, legiōnem relinquit; ipse Ōricum revertitur.

Eō cum vēnisset, ēvocantur illī ad colloquium. Prōdit Libō atque excūsat Bibulum, quod is īrācundiā summā erat inimīcitiāsque habēbat etiam prīvātās cum Caesare ex aedīlitāte et praetūrā conceptās; ob eam causam colloquium vītāsse, nē rēs maximae speī maximaeque ūtilitātis eius īrācundiā impedīrentur. Suam summam esse ac fuisse semper voluntātem ut compōnerētur atque ab armīs discēderētur, sed potestātem eius reī nūllam habēre, propterea quod dē

---

1. **summē**: adv. from *summus*. **profectum**: sc. *esse*, 'had been accomplished.'

2. **Vībullī**: he had been sent to Pompey by Caesar with proposals for peace.

16. 4. **ulteriōrēs**: 'more remote.'

5. **quā . . . ūtēbātur**: 'which he was finding scanty'; cf. *ūsī*, p. 454, l. 8.

10. **īrācundiā summā**: 'of a very violent temper.'

12. **conceptās**: 'conceived, contracted.'

13. **speī**: 'promise.'

14. **Suam**: referring to the speaker, Libo.

15. **compōnerētur**: for the meaning cf. *compositiōne*, p. 454, l. 18.

16. **dē**: 'in accordance with.'

Pompey.

This coin with the trident and the inscription *Neptuni* represents Pompey as Ruler of the Sea.

cōnsilī sententiā summam bellī rērumque omnium Pompeiō permīserint. Sed postulātīs Caesaris cognitīs, missūrōs ad Pompeium, atque illum reliqua per sē āctūrum hortantibus ipsīs. Intereā manērent indūtiae, dum ab illō redīrī posset, nēve alter alterī nocēret. Hūc addit pauca dē causā et dē cōpiīs auxiliīsque suīs.

The negotiations for peace fail. Caesar prepares for war.

17. Quibus rēbus neque tum respondendum Caesar exīstimāvit, neque nunc ut memoriae prōdantur satis causae putāmus. Postulābat Caesar ut lēgātōs sibi ad Pompeium sine perīculō mittere licēret, idque ipsī fore reciperent, aut acceptōs per sē ad eum perdūcerent. Quod ad indūtiās pertinēret, sīc bellī ratiōnem esse dīvīsam, ut illī classe nāvēs auxiliaque sua impedīrent, ipse ut aquā terrāque eōs prohibēret. Sī hōc sibi remittī vellent, remitterent ipsī dē maritimīs cūstōdiīs; sī illud tenērent, sē quoque id retentūrum. Nihīlō minus tamen agī posse dē compositiōne, ut haec nōn remitterentur, neque hanc rem illī esse impedīmentō.

Libō neque lēgātōs Caesaris recipere neque perīculum praestāre eōrum, sed tōtam rem ad Pompeium rēicere;

2. **missūrōs**: sc. *sē*, referring to Libo and Bibulus.

4. **manērent**: 266.

5. **causā**: *i.e.*, of the war.

17. 7. **Caesar . . . putāmus**: note the use of the third and the first person of the same individual.

10. **fore**: = *futūrum esse*. **reciperent**: 'should guarantee, take upon themselves.'

11. **sē**: Libo and Bibulus. **eum**: Pompey. **Quod . . . pertinēret**: 'so far as a truce was concerned.'

12. **ratiōnem**: 'conduct.'

14. **hōc . . . remittī**: 'a concession to be made in this regard.'

16. **ut**: 'although.'

18. **recipere**, etc.: 275. **perīculum praestāre**: 'guarantee them from danger.'

ūnum īnstāre dē indūtiīs vehementissimēque contendere. Quem ubi Caesar intellēxit praesentis perīculī atque inopiae vītandae causā omnem ōrātiōnem īnstituisse neque ūllam spem aut condiciōnem pācis afferre, ad reliquam cōgitātiōnem bellī sēsē recēpit.

As a result of his privations Bibulus falls ill and dies. Pompey prevents further negotiations for peace.

18. Bibulus multōs diēs terrā prohibitus et graviōre morbō ex frīgore ac labōre implicitus, cum neque cūrārī posset neque susceptum officium dēserere vellet, vim morbī sustinēre nōn potuit. Eō mortuō, ad nēminem ūnum summa imperī rediit, sed sēparātim suam quisque classem ad arbitrium suum administrābat.

Vībullius, sēdātō tumultū quem repentīnus Caesaris adventus concitāverat, ubi prīmum ē rē vīsum est, adhibitō Libōne et L. Lucceiō et Theophane, quibuscum commūnicāre dē maximīs rēbus Pompeius cōnsuērat, dē mandātīs

---

1. **dē indūtiīs**: explanatory of *ūnum*.

4. **reliquam . . . bellī**: *i.e.*, to a consideration of plans for continuing the war.

18. 7. **morbō . . . implicitus**: we should say 'attacked by' or 'seized with.'

9. **nēminem ūnum**: 'no one person.'

10. **ad**: 'according to.'

12. **Vībullius**: see p. 455, l. 2.

13. **ē rē**: 'advantageous.' *Ē* here means 'in accordance with'; 185, 4, *d*.

14. **Lucceiō**: the writer of history whom Cicero asked to celebrate his consulship (Cic. *Ad Famil.* 5. 12. 1). He was a candidate for the consulship with Caesar in 59 B.C., but was unsuccessful. **Theophane**: a native of Mytilene, whom Pompey met during the Mithridatic war and made a Roman citizen. He wrote a history of Pompey's campaigns. **commūnicāre**: 'to consult.'

Caesaris agere īnstituit. Quem ingressum in sermōnem Pompeius interpellāvit et loquī plūra prohibuit. 'Quid mihi,' inquit, 'aut vītā aut cīvitāte opus est, quam beneficiō Caesaris habēre vidēbor? cuius reī opiniō tollī nōn poterit, cum in Italiam, ex quā profectus sum, reductus exīstimābor.' Bellō perfectō, ab eīs Caesar haec facta cognōvit quī sermōnī interfuērunt; cōnātus tamen nihilō minus est aliīs ratiōnibus per colloquia dē pāce agere.

V. The Battle of Pharsalia
(Book III, 82–99)

Pompey, having forced Caesar's withdrawal from Dyrrachium, effects a junction with Scipio's forces and enters Thessaly.

82. Pompeius paucīs post diēbus in Thessaliam pervēnit cōntiōnātusque apud cūnctum exercitum suīs agit grātiās, Scīpiōnis mīlitēs cohortātur ut, partā iam victōriā, praedae ac praemiōrum velint esse participēs, receptīsque omnibus in ūna castra legiōnibus, suum cum Scīpiōne honōrem partītur classicumque apud eum canī et alterum illī iubet praetōrium tendī.

---

3. **cīvitāte**: 'citizenship.'

4. **cuius reī**: i.e., *Pompeium vītam et cīvitātem Caesaris beneficiō habēre.*

5. **reductus**: sc. *esse.*

82. 10. **cōntiōnātus**: see note to p. 433, l. 11.

11. **Scīpiōnis**: see note to p. 424, l. 4.

12. **velint**: 'they should consent.'

14. **honōrem**: 'official dignity, rank.' **classicum . . . canī**: 'that the trumpet should be sounded.'

15. **praetōrium**: 'general's tent, headquarters.' He thus gave Scipio the outward and visible signs of a rank equal to his own.

Believing Caesar as good as conquered, the Pompeians arrange for the division of the spoils.

Auctīs cōpiīs Pompeī duōbusque magnīs exercitibus coniūnctīs, prīstina omnium cōnfīrmātur opīniō et spēs victōriae augētur, adeō ut, quicquid intercēderet temporis, id morārī reditum in Italiam vidērētur; et sī quandō quid Pompeius tardius aut cōnsīderātius faceret, ūnīus esse negōtium diēī, sed illum dēlēctārī imperiō et cōnsulārēs praetōriōsque servōrum habēre numerō dīcerent. Iamque inter sē palam dē praetūrīs ac dē sacerdōtiīs contendēbant in annōsque cōnsulātum dēfīniēbant, aliī domōs bonaque eōrum quī in castrīs erant Caesaris petēbant; magnaque inter eōs in cōnsiliō fuit contrōversia, oportēretne Lūcilī Hirrī, quod is ā Pompeiō ad Parthōs missus esset, proximīs comitiīs praetōriīs absentis ratiōnem habērī, cum eius necessāriī fidem implōrārent Pompeī, praestāret quod proficīscentī recēpisset, nē per eius auctōritātem dēceptus

---

2. **opīniō**: 'confidence' (opinion of success).

4. **sī quandō**: 'if ever, whenever.'

5. **tardius aut cōnsīderātius**: 'with some slowness or deliberation'; 193.

7. **dīcerent**: in the same construction as *vidērētur*, l. 4.

8. **sacerdōtiīs**: 'priesthoods.'

9. **in annōs**: *i.e.*, for years in advance.

10. **magna**: with *contrōversia*.

12. **Hirrī**: he had been sent by Pompey to Orodes, king of the Parthians, to ask for his help. The king demanded Syria as a recompense and when it was refused cast Hirrius into prison.

13. **absentis**: with *Hirrī*. **ratiōnem habērī**: 'account should be taken'; *i.e.*, whether he should be allowed to be a candidate.

14. **praestāret**: 260. Here we have the jussive subjunctive without *ut*.

15. **recēpisset**: for the meaning cf. p. 456, l. 10, and for the mood see 272.

vidērētur, reliquī in labōre parī ac perīculō nē ūnus omnēs antecēderet recūsārent.

They wrangle over the disposal of the offices and decide the fate of Caesar's adherents.

83. Iam dē sacerdōtiō Caesaris Domitius, Scīpiō Spintherque Lentulus cotīdiānīs contentiōnibus ad gravissimās verbōrum contumēliās palam dēscendērunt, cum Lentulus aetātis honōrem ostentāret, Domitius urbānam grātiam dignitātemque iactāret, Scīpiō affīnitāte Pompeī cōnfīderet. Postulāvit etiam L. Āfrānium prōditiōnis exercitūs Acūtius Rūfus apud Pompeium, quod gestum in Hispāniā dīceret. Et L. Domitius in cōnsiliō dīxit placēre sibi bellō cōnfectō ternās tabellās darī ad iūdicandum eīs quī ōrdinis essent senātōriī bellōque ūnā cum ipsīs interfuissent, sententiāsque dē singulīs ferrent quī Rōmae remānsissent, quīque intrā praesidia Pompeī fuissent neque operam in rē mīlitārī prae-

---

1. **vidērētur**: sc. *Hirrius.* **nē ūnus . . . recūsārent**: 'objected to one man's getting the advantage of all.'

83. 3. **sacerdōtiō Caesaris**: he had been *pontifex maximus* since 63 B.C.

4. **Lentulus**: P. Cornelius Lentulus Spinther, a former friend of Caesar.

5. **verbōrum**: 139.

6. **aetātis honōrem**: *i.e.*, he claimed it because of his age. **urbānam**: 'in the city.'

7. **affīnitāte**: see note to p. 424, l. 4.

8. **Postulāvit**: in a technical sense, 'arraigned, accused.'

9. **quod**: 'an act which.' *Quod* refers to **prōditiōnis** but does not agree with it in gender.

11. **ternās**: the distributive (72): 'three each.' **tabellās**: 'tablets,' diminutive of *tabula.*

13. **dē singulīs**: 'individually about those.'

14. **operam . . . praestitissent**: 'offered their services.'

stitissent: ūnam fore tabellam, quī līberandōs omnī perīculō cēnsērent; alteram, quī capitis damnārent; tertiam, quī pecūniā multārent. Postrēmō omnēs aut dē honōribus suīs aut dē praemiīs pecūniae aut dē persequendīs inimīcīs agēbant, neque quibus ratiōnibus superāre possent, sed quem ad modum ūtī victōriā dēbērent, cōgitābant.

Caesar draws up his army near Pompey's camp, challenging a general engagement. He trains his cavalry to meet the superior force of the enemy

84. Rē frūmentāriā praeparātā cōnfīrmātīsque mīlitibus et satis longō spatiō temporis ā Dyrrachīnīs proeliīs intermissō, quō satis perspectum habēre mīlitum animum vidērētur, temptandum Caesar exīstimāvit quidnam Pompeius prōpositī aut voluntātis ad dīmicandum habēret. Itaque exercitum ex castrīs ēdūxit aciemque īnstrūxit, prīmō suīs locīs paulōque ā castrīs Pompeī longius, continentibus vērō diēbus ut prōgrederētur ā castrīs suīs

---

1. **quī**: sc. *eīs*, 'for those who.' **līberandōs**: sc. *eōs* and *esse*.

2. **capitis**: 145.

3. **pecūniā**: 163. **Postrēmō**: 'finally, in short.' **dē . . . agēbant**: 'were discussing.'

84. 8. **Dyrrachīnīs**: 'at Dyrrachium,' in which the Pompeians had had the advantage. **intermissō**: 'allowed to elapse.'

9. **quō**: 'that'; lit., 'in which,' the antecedent is *spatiō* (*temporis*). **satis perspectum habēre**: 'to have sufficient assurance of'; note the lit. meaning.

10. **temptandum**: sc. *sibi* and *esse*.

11. **prōpositī**: 'plan, purpose.' For the case see 138.

13. **suīs**: *i.e.*, favorable to himself. **continentibus**: 'subsequent, following.'

14. **ut**: 'in such a way that.'

collibusque Pompeiānīs aciem subiceret. Quae rēs in diēs cōnfīrmātiōrem eius exercitum efficiēbat.

Superius tamen īnstitūtum in equitibus, quod dēmōnstrāvimus, servābat, ut, quoniam numerō multīs partibus esset īnferior, adulēscentēs atque expedītōs ex antesignānīs ēlēctōs, mūtātīs ad pernīcitātem armīs, inter equitēs proeliārī iubēret, quī cotīdiānā cōnsuētūdine ūsum quoque eius generis proeliōrum perciperent. Hīs erat rēbus effectum ut equitēs mīlle etiam apertiōribus locīs VII mīlium Pompeiānōrum impetum, cum adesset ūsus, sustinēre audērent, neque magnopere eōrum multitūdine terrērentur. Namque etiam per eōs diēs proelium secundum equestre fēcit atque ūnum Allobrogem ex duōbus, quōs perfūgisse ad Pompeium suprā docuimus, cum quibusdam interfēcit.

Pompey tries to induce Caesar to fight in an unfavorable place. Caesar plans to keep on the move, but sees an opportunity for battle.

85. Pompeius, quī castra in colle habēbat, ad īnfimās rādīcēs montis aciem īnstruēbat, semper, ut vidēbātur, exspectāns sī inīquīs locīs Caesar sē subiceret. Caesar nūllā ratiōne ad pugnam ēlicī posse Pompeium exīstimāns, hanc

---

1. **Pompeiānīs** : *i.e.*, on which Pompey was encamped.

2. **cōnfīrmātiōrem** : part. of *cōnfīrmō* used as an adj., 'more confident.' **eius** : sc. **Caesaris**.

3. **Superius . . . īnstitūtum** : 'previous custom.'

4. **multibus partibus** : 'many times fewer'; 168.

5. **adulēscentēs atque expedītōs** : 'lightly equipped young men'; lit., 'young and lightly equipped men.' **antesignānīs** : 'skirmishers'; those who fought in the van, 'before the standards.'

6. **ad pernīcitātem** : 'with reference to swiftness.'

7. **cōnsuētūdine** : 'practice.' **ūsum** : 'experience.'

10. **adesset ūsus** : 'they had gained experience'; cf. l. 7.

14. **quibusdam** : = *quibusdam aliīs*.

85. 16. **īnstruēbat** : the tense denotes repeated action ; 209.

sibi commodissimam bellī ratiōnem iūdicāvit, utī castra ex eō locō movēret semperque esset in itineribus, haec spectāns, ut movendīs castrīs plūribusque adeundīs locīs commodiōre rē frūmentāriā ūterētur, simulque in itinere ut aliquam occāsiōnem dīmicandī nancīscerētur et īnsolitum ad labōrem Pompeī exercitum cotīdiānīs itineribus dēfatīgāret.

Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus, signō iam profectiōnis datō tabernāculīsque dētēnsīs, animadversum est paulō ante extrā cotīdiānam cōnsuētūdinem longius ā vāllō esse aciem Pompeī prōgressam, ut nōn inīquō locō posse dīmicārī vidērētur. Tum Caesar apud suōs, cum iam esset agmen in portīs, 'Differendum est,' inquit, 'iter in praesentia nōbīs et dē proeliō cōgitandum, sīcut semper dēpoposcimus. Animō sīmus ad dīmicandum parātī; nōn facile occāsiōnem posteā reperiēmus.' Cōnfestimque expedītās cōpiās ēdūcit.

Pompey resolves to fight; he assures his followers of victory, counting upon his superiority in cavalry.

86. Pompeius quoque, ut posteā cognitum est, suōrum omnium hortātū statuerat proeliō dēcertāre. Namque etiam in cōnsiliō superiōribus diēbus dīxerat, prius quam concurrerent aciēs, fore utī exercitus Caesaris pellerētur.

---

3. **commodiōre . . . ūterētur**: *i.e.*, might get his supplies with less trouble.

5. **nancīscerētur**: 'meet, meet with.'

8. **dētēnsīs**: 'struck,' lit. 'unstretched.' **extrā**: 'contrary to.'

10. **nōn**: with *inīquō*.

12. **nōbīs**: 155.

14. **sīmus**: 225.

15. **expedītās**: 'in light marching order.'

86. 18. **etiam**: with *dīxerat*, 'he had actually said.'

19. **fore utī . . . pellerētur**: takes the place of the fut. pass. inf. of *pellō*.

Id cum essent plērīque admīrātī, 'Sciō mē,' inquit, 'paenē incrēdibilem rem pollicērī; sed ratiōnem cōnsilī meī accipite, quō fīrmiōre animō in proelium prōdeātis. Persuāsī equitibus nostrīs, idque mihi sē factūrōs cōnfīrmāvērunt, ut, cum propius sit accessum, dextrum Caesaris cornū ab latere apertō aggrederentur, et circumventā ā tergō aciē, prius perturbātum exercitum pellerent quam ā nōbīs tēlum in hostem iacerētur. Ita sine perīculō legiōnum et paenē sine vulnere bellum cōnficiēmus. Id autem difficile nōn est, cum tantum equitātū valeāmus.' Simul dēnūntiāvit ut essent animō parātī in posterum diem et, quoniam fieret dīmicandī potestās, ut saepe rogitāvissent, nē suam neu reliquōrum opīniōnem fallerent.

Labienus approves Pompey's tactics and expresses contempt for Caesar's present army.

87. Hunc Labiēnus excēpit et, cum Caesaris cōpiās dēspiceret, Pompeī consilium summīs laudibus efferret, 'Nōlī,' inquit, 'exīstimāre, Pompeī, hunc esse exercitum quī Galliam Germāniamque dēvīcerit. Omnibus interfuī proeliīs neque temere incognitam rem prōnūntiō. Perexigua pars illīus exercitūs superest; magna pars dēperiit (quod accidere tot proeliīs fuit necesse), multōs autumnī pestilentia in Italiā cōnsūmpsit, multī domum

---

1. **admīrātī**: 'expressed their surprise at.'
2. **ratiōnem cōnsilī meī**: 'the nature of my plan.'
7. **perturbātum . . . pellerent**: 'drive in confusion.'
10. **dēnūntiāvit**: 'urged.'
12. **rogitāvissent**: intensive of *rogō*; see 112, *b*.

87. 14. **excēpit**: for the meaning, see p. 441, l. 8. **cum . . . dēspiceret . . . efferret**: 'depreciating . . . extolling.'

18. **Perexigua**: taking the place of the superlative of *exiguus*.

21. **autumnī**: taking the place of an adj., 'autumnal.' Caesar's

discessērunt, multī sunt relictī in continentī. An nōn audīstis ex eīs quī per causam valētūdinis remānsērunt cohortēs esse Brundisī factās? Hae cōpiae quās vidētis ex dīlēctibus hōrum annōrum in citeriōre Galliā sunt refectae, et plērīque sunt ex colōniīs Trānspadānīs. Ac tamen, quod fuit rōboris duōbus proeliīs Dyrrachīnīs interiit.'

Haec cum dīxisset, iūrāvit sē nisi victōrem in castra nōn reversūrum, reliquōsque ut idem facerent hortātus est. Hōc laudāns Pompeius idem iūrāvit; nec vērō ex reliquīs fuit quisquam, quī iūrāre dubitāret. Haec tum facta sunt in cōnsiliō magnāque spē et laetitiā omnium discessum est; ac iam animō victōriam praecipiēbant,

Roman Soldiers forming a Testudo with their Shields.

troops had felt the change when they went to Apulia and Brundisium from the cooler climate of Gaul and Spain.

2. **per causam**: 'under pretence.'

3. **cohortēs**: 'whole cohorts.'

5. **tamen**: 'even so,' 'even as it is.'

6. **quod fuit roboris**: 'their flower.'

8. **idem**: note the quantity; what then is the gender?

13. **spē et laetitiā**: 169.

16. **praecipiēbant**: 'were anticipating.'

quod dē rē tantā et ā tam perītō imperātōre nihil frūstrā cōnfīrmārī vidēbātur.

Caesar makes ready for battle.

88. Caesar cum Pompeī castrīs appropinquāsset, ad hunc modum aciem eius īnstrūctam animum advertit. Erant in sinistrō cornū legiōnēs duae trāditae ā Caesare initiō dissēnsiōnis ex senātūs cōnsultō; quārum ūna prīma, altera tertia appellābātur. In eō locō ipse erat Pompeius. Mediam aciem Scīpiō cum legiōnibus Syriacīs tenēbat. Ciliciēnsis legiō coniūncta cum cohortibus Hispānīs, quas trāductās ab Āfrāniō docuimus, in dextrō cornū erant collocātae. Hās fīrmissimās sē habēre Pompeius exīstimābat.

Reliquās inter aciem mediam cornuaque interiēcerat numerōque cohortēs CX explēverat. Haec erant numerō mīlia XLV, ēvocātōrum circiter duo, quae ex beneficiāriīs superiōrum exercituum ad eum convēnerant; quae tōtā aciē disperserat.

Reliquās cohortēs VII in castrīs propinquīsque castellīs praesidiō disposuerat. Dextrum cornū eius rīvus quīdam

---

1. **nihil frūstrā . . . vidēbātur**: *i.e.* it did not seem possible that in such a crisis so skillful a general as Pompey would encourage his men without weighing his words carefully.

88. 9. **Ciliciēnsis**: 'Cilician,' of Cilicia, a country of southeastern Asia Minor. The legion was called *Gemella* ('Twin') because it was made up of two incomplete legions which had served under Cicero in 51–50 B.C.

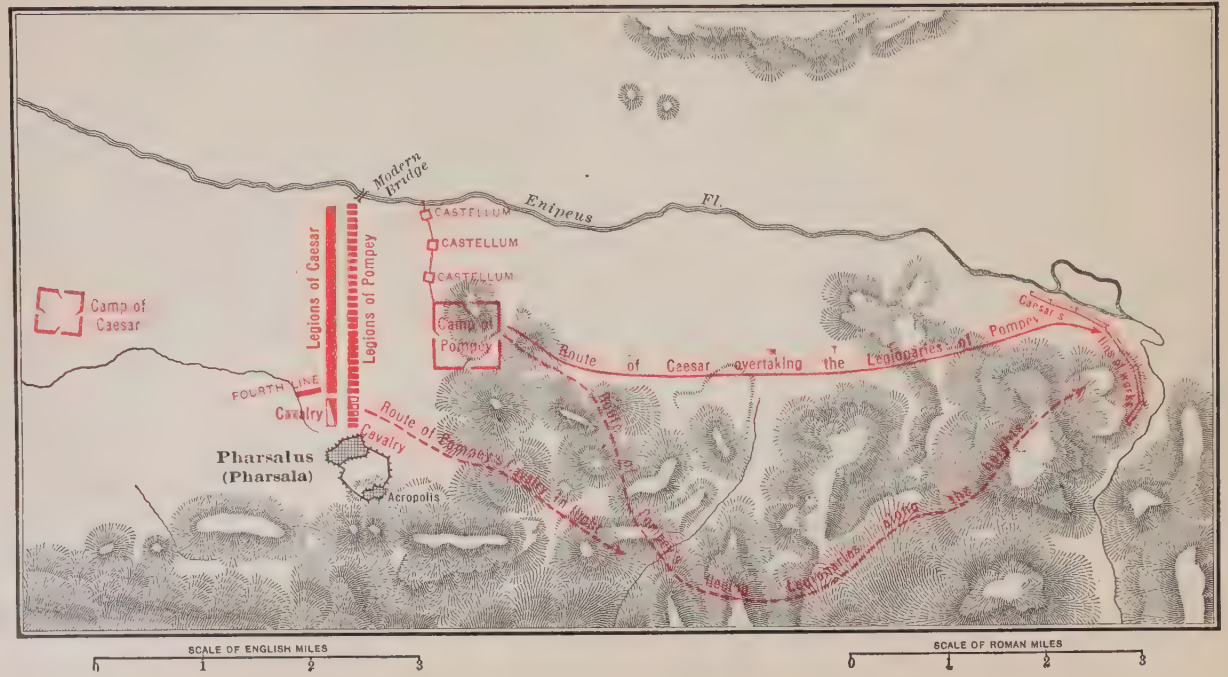
11. **Hās . . . habēre**: we should say 'the strongest which he had' or 'the strongest part of his forces.'

14. **ēvocātōrum**: see note to p. 427, l.3. **quae**: 'who': the antecedent is *duo* (*mīlia*). **beneficiāriīs**: 'privileged soldiers' of various grades, who owed their advancement to the personal interest of their commander. They commonly served as orderlies.

15. **quae**: 'these'; for the agreement see *quae* in l. 14.

18. **praesidiō**: 'as a garrison.' **eius**: sc. *Pompeī*.

THE BATTLE OF PHARSALUS



impedītīs rīpīs mūniēbat; quam ob causam cūnctum equitātum, sagittāriōs funditōrēsque omnēs sinistrō cornū adiēcerat.

He plans to offset the superiority of the enemy in horsemen. He commands his men not to advance until ordered.

89. Caesar superius īnstitūtum servāns, x legiōnem in dextrō cornū, nōnam in sinistrō collocāverat, tametsī erat Dyrrachīnīs proeliīs vehementer attenuāta, et huic sīc adiūnxit octāvam ut paenē ūnam ex duābus efficeret, atque alteram alterī praesidiō esse iusserat. Cohortēs in aciē LXXX cōnstitūtās habēbat, quae summa erat mīlium XXII; cohortēs VII castrīs praesidiō relīquerat. Sinistrō cornū Antōnium, dextrō P. Sullam, mediae aciēī Cn. Domitium praeposuerat. Ipse contrā Pompeium cōnstitit.

Simul hīs rēbus animadversīs quās dēmōnstrāvimus, timēns nē ā multitūdine equitum dextrum cornū circumvenīrētur, celeriter ex tertiā aciē singulās cohortēs dētrāxit atque ex hīs quārtam īnstituit equitātuīque opposuit, et quid fierī vellet ostendit monuitque eius diēī victōriam in eārum cohortium virtūte cōnstāre. Simul tertiae aciēī tōtīque exercituī imperāvit nē iniussū suō concurrerent; sē, cum id fierī vellet, vexillō signum datūrum.

---

89. 4. **superius īnstitūtum**: 'his former custom.'

9. **quae summa**: 'the total number of which.'

11. **Sullam**: P. Cornelius Sulla, nephew of the dictator, defended by Cicero in his *Prō Sullā*.

15. **singulās**: *i.e.* one from each legion.

16. **quārtam**: sc. *aciem*.

18. **cōnstāre**: 'depended upon.'

20. **vexillō**: a red flag; see Introd., p. xxxiv.

He addresses the soldiers, dwelling upon his attempts at a reconciliation.

90. Exercitum cum mīlitārī mōre ad pugnam cohortārētur suaque in eum perpetuī temporis officia praedicāret, in prīmīs commemorāvit:

Testibus sē mīlitibus ūtī posse, quantō studiō pācem petīsset, quae per Vatīnium in colloquiīs, quae per A. Clōdium cum Scīpiōne ēgisset, quibus modīs ad Ōricum cum Libōne dē mittendīs lēgātīs contendisset. Neque sē umquam abūtī mīlitum sanguine neque rem pūblicam alterutrō exercitū prīvāre voluisse.

Hāc habitā ōrātiōne, exposcentibus mīlitibus et studiō pugnae ārdentibus, tubā signum dedit.

Crastinus, a veteran centurion of the tenth legion, heads the charge.

91. Erat Crāstinus ēvōcātus in exercitū Caesaris, quī superiōre annō apud eum prīmum pīlum in legiōne x dūxerat, vir singulārī virtūte. Hīc signō datō, 'Sequiminī mē,' inquit, 'manipulārēs meī quī fuistis, et vestrō imperātōrī quam cōnsuēvistis operam date. Ūnum hōc proelium superest; quō cōnfectō et ille suam dignitātem et nōs nostram lībertā-

---

90. 2. **perpetuī . . . officia**: 'his invariable kindness.'

5. **quae . . . ēgisset**: 'what negotiations he had carried on.' **Vatīnium**: P. Vatinius, who as tribunus plebis in 59 B.C. proposed the bill by which Caesar was given the provinces of Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum. **Clōdium**: a friend of Caesar's of whom little is known.

7. **contendisset**: see p. 456, lines 7 ff.

9. **abūtī**: 'waste, squander.'

91. 13. **prīmum pīlum dūxerat**: *i.e.* he had been *prīmipīlus*; see Introd., p. xxix.

15. **manipulārēs**: 'comrades, fellow soldiers'; lit., members of the same maniple; see Introd., p. xxviii.

17. **dignitātem**: 'honor.'

tem recuperābimus.' Simul respiciēns Caesarem, 'Faciam,' inquit, 'hodiē, imperātor, ut aut vīvō mihi aut mortuō grātiās agās.' Haec cum dīxisset, prīmus ex dextrō cornū prōcucurrit atque eum ēlēctī mīlitēs circiter cxx voluntāriī sunt prōsecūtī.

Pompey orders his men to hold their ground and receive the enemy's charge. Caesar's criticism of his tactics.

92. Inter duās aciēs tantum erat relīctum spatī, ut satis esset ad concursum utrīusque exercitūs. Sed Pompeius suīs praedīxerat, ut Caesaris impetum exciperent neque sē locō movērent aciemque eius distrahī paterentur; idque admonitū C. Triārī fēcisse dīcēbātur, ut prīmus excursus vīsque mīlitum īnfringerētur aciēsque distenderētur, atque in suīs ōrdinibus dispositī dispersōs adorīrentur; leviusque cāsūra pīla spērābat, in locō retentīs mīlitibus, quam sī ipsī immissīs tēlīs occurrissent; simul fore ut duplicātō cursū Caesaris mīlitēs exanimārentur et lassitūdine cōnficerentur. Quod nōbīs quidem nūllā ratiōne factum ā Pompeiō vidētur, propterea quod est quaedam animī incitātiō atque alacritās

1. **Faciam**: 'I will give occasion.'

92. 9. **distrahī**: 'to be thrown into disorder.'

10. **admonitū**: 165. **Triārī**: a friend of Cicero, who speaks highly of Triarius as an orator. **excursus**: 'charge.'

11. **distenderētur**: with about the same force as *distrahī* in l. 9.

12. **dispositī**: sc. *Pompeiānī*.

13. **retentīs**: with conditional force.

14. **duplicātū cursū**: the meaning is that Caesar's men would have twice as far to run, if Pompey's did not run to meet them.

16. **nūllā ratiōne**: 'without reason'; in Caesar's opinion it was an error of judgment: 166.

17. **incitātiō**: cf. *incitat*, p. 426, l. 13.

nātūrāliter innāta omnibus, quae studiō pugnae incenditur. Hanc nōn reprimere, sed augēre imperātōrēs dēbent; neque frūstrā antīquitus īnstitūtum est, ut signa undique concinerent clāmōremque ūniversī tollerent; quibus rēbus et hostēs terrērī et suōs incitārī exīstimāvērunt.

Caesar's veterans halt during their charge, to take breath, then rush upon the foe. His fourth line routs Pompey's cavalry and executes a flank movement.

93. Sed nostrī mīlitēs datō signō cum īnfēstīs pīlīs prōcucurrissent atque animum advertissent nōn concurrī ā Pompeiānīs, ūsū perītī ac superiōribus pugnīs exercitātī suā sponte cursum repressērunt et ad medium fere spatium cōnstitērunt, nē cōnsūmptīs vīribus appropinquārent, parvōque intermissō temporis spatiō ac rūrsus renovātō cursū, pīla mīsērunt celeriterque, ut erat praeceptum ā Caesare, gladiōs strīnxērunt. Neque vērō Pompeiānī huic reī dēfuērunt. Nam et tēla missa excēpērunt et impetum legiōnum tulērunt et ōrdinēs cōnservārunt pīlīsque missīs ad gladiōs rediērunt.

Eōdem tempore equitēs ab sinistrō Pompeī cornū, ut erat imperātum, ūniversī prōcucurrērunt, omnisque multitūdō

---

1. **incenditur**: this verb and the preceding *est* are singular, because *incitātiō atque alacritās* form one idea. The two words might be joined by hendiadys (288).

3. **undique**: *i.e.* altogether, in all parts of the line.

93. 6. **īnfēstīs pīlīs**: 'with leveled pikes.'

8. **ūsū**: for the meaning cf. p. 462, l. 7.

9. **repressērunt . . . cōnstitērunt**: showing that Caesar's soldiers were not mere fighting machines, but could think and act for themselves.

13. **reī**: 'emergency, situation.'

14. **excēpērunt**: 'met (and parried).'

15. **rediērunt**: 'took to, turned to.'

sagittāriōrum sē prōfūdit. Quōrum impetum noster equitātus nōn tulit, sed paulātim locō mōtus cessit, equitēsque Pompeī hōc ācrius īnstāre et sē turmātim explicāre aciemque nostram ab latere apertō circumīre coepērunt.

Quod ubi Caesar animum advertit, quārtae aciēī, quam īnstituerat sex cohortium numerō, dedit signum. Illae celeriter prōcucurrērunt īnfēstīsque signīs tantā vī in Pompeī equitēs impetum fēcērunt, ut eōrum nēmō cōnsisteret omnēsque conversī nōn sōlum locō excēderent, sed prōtinus incitātī fugā montēs altissimōs peterent. Quibus summōtīs, omnēs sagittāriī funditōrēsque dēstitūtī inermēs sine praesidiō interfectī sunt. Eōdem impetū cohortēs sinistrum cornū, pugnantibus etiam tum ac resistentibus in aciē Pompeiānīs, circumiērunt eōsque ā tergō sunt adortae.

Caesar's third line enters the action; Pompey's infantry gives way, and he himself withdraws to his camp.

94. Eōdem tempore tertiam aciem Caesar, quae quiēta fuerat et sē ad id tempus locō tenuerat, prōcurrere iussit. Ita cum recentēs atque integrī dēfessīs successissent, aliī autem ā tergō adorīrentur, sustinēre Pompeiānī nōn potuērunt atque ūniversī terga vertērunt. Neque vērō Caesarem fefellit quīn ab eīs cohortibus quae contrā equi-

2. **cessit**: 'gave ground.'

3. **turmātim explicāre**: 'to deploy by squadrons.' Lit. *explicāre* is 'unfold, spread out.'

5. **quam īnstituerat**: see p. 467, l. 15.

7. **īnfēstīsque signīs**: 'with flying colors.'

10. **summōtīs**: 'dislodged.'

11. **dēstitūtī inermēs**: 'left defenseless.'

94. 16. **locō**: 'in its position.'

18. **sustinēre**: used absolutely (205), 'hold out, hold their ground.'

20. **Caesarem fefellit quīn**: 'was Caesar mistaken in thinking that'; observe the literal meaning of the words.

tātum in quārtā aciē collocātae essent initium victōriae orīrētur, ut ipse in cohortandīs mīlitibus prōnūntiāverat. Ab hīs enim prīmum equitātus est pulsus, ab īsdem factae caedēs sagittāriōrum ac funditōrum, ab īsdem aciēs Pompeiāna ā sinistrā parte circumita atque initium fugae factum.

Sed Pompeius ut equitātum suum pulsum vīdit atque eam partem cui maximē cōnfīdēbat perterritam animum advertit, aliīs diffīsus aciē excessit prōtinusque sē in castra equō contulit et eīs centuriōnibus, quōs in statiōne ad praetōriam portam posuerat, clārē, ut mīlitēs exaudīrent, 'Tuēminī,' inquit, 'castra et dēfendite dīligenter, sī quid dūrius acciderit. Ego reliquās portās circumeō et castrōrum praesidia cōnfīrmō.' Haec cum dīxisset, sē in praetōrium contulit summae reī diffīdēns et tamen ēventum exspectāns.

Caesar takes Pompey's camp.

95. Caesar, Pompeiānīs ex fugā intrā vāllum compulsīs, nūllum spatium perterritīs darī oportēre exīstimāns, mīlitēs cohortātus est ut beneficiō Fortūnae ūterentur castraque oppugnārent. Quī, etsī magnō aestū fatīgātī — nam ad

---

4. **factae**: sc. *sunt*.

5. **circumita . . . factum**: sc. *est*.

9. **aliīs**: 'of the rest (of his forces).' He had placed his entire reliance on the cavalry.

10. **praetōriam portam**: see Introd., p. xxxviii.

11. **clārē**: 'in a loud voice.'

13. **circumeō . . . cōnfīrmō**: presents with fut. force.

14. **praetōrium**: see Introd., p. xxxviii.

15. **diffīdēns . . . exspectāns**: 'doubtful of victory, yet awaiting the issue.'

95. 17. **nūllum . . . exīstimāns**: Caesar always followed up a

merīdiem rēs erat perducta — tamen ad omnem labōrem animō parātī, imperiō pāruērunt. Castra ā cohortibus quae ibi praesidiō erant relictae industriē dēfendēbantur, multō etiam ācrius ā Thracibus barbarīsque auxiliīs. Nam quī ex aciē refūgerant mīlitēs, et animō perterritī et lassitūdine cōnfectī, missīs plērīque armīs signīsque mīlitāribus, magis dē reliquā fugā quam dē castrōrum dēfēnsiōne cōgitābant. Neque vērō diūtius quī in vāllō cōnstiterant multitūdinem tēlōrum sustinēre potuērunt, sed cōnfectī vulneribus locum relīquērunt, prōtinusque omnēs, ducibus ūsī centuriōnibus tribūnīsque mīlitum, in altissimōs montēs, quī ad castra pertinēbant, cōnfūgērunt.

success. When Pompey failed to take advantage of his victory at Dyrrachium, Caesar said that his rival did not know how to conquer. **spatium**: 'time.'

1. **rēs**: 'the battle, the contest.'

3. **industriē**: 'vigorously.'

6. **plērīque**: 'in most cases,' with *mīlitēs;* on the position of *plērīque* see note to p. 113, l. 6.

7. **reliquā**: 'further.'

8. **quī**: as antecedent sc. *eī*, subject of *potuērunt.* **cōnstiterant**: note the tense, 'had taken their place,' *i.e.* 'were standing.'

10. **ducibus ūsī**: sarcastic: 'following the lead of' the officers, who were the first to flee, instead of trying to rally their men. On *ducibus* see 163, *a*, and on *centuriōnibus*, 121.

11. **quī . . . pertinēbant**: 'which were near the camp'; see p. 471, l. 10.

Fortuna.

Fortuna, or Fortune, was worshiped as a goddess by the Romans. Here she has her usual attributes of a cornucopia, or horn of plenty, in her left hand and a steering-oar, or rudder, in her right hand.

Its luxurious equipment, indicating the overconfidence of the Pompeians.

96. In castrīs Pompeī vidēre licuit trichilās strūctās, magnum argentī pondus expositum, recentibus caespitibus tabernācula cōnstrāta, L. etiam Lentulī et nōn nūllōrum tabernācula prōtēcta hederā, multaque praetereā quae nimiam lūxuriam et victōriae fīdūciam dēsignārent; ut facile exīstimārī posset nihil eōs dē ēventū eius diēī timuisse, quī nōn necessāriās conquīrerent voluptātēs. At hī miserrimō ac patientissimō exercituī Caesaris lūxuriam obiciēbant, cui semper omnia ad necessārium ūsum dēfuissent.

Pompey flees to Larisa and puts to sea.

Pompeius, cum iam intrā vāllum nostrī versārentur, equum nactus, dētrāctīs īnsignibus imperātōriīs, decumānā portā sē ex castrīs ēiēcit prōtinusque equō citātō Lārīsam contendit. Neque ibi cōnstitit, sed eādem celeritāte paucōs suōs ex fugā nactus, nocturnō itinere nōn intermissō, comitātū equitum XXX ad mare pervēnit nāvemque frūmentāriam

---

96. 1. **vidēre licuit**: 'one might see.' **trichilās**: 'arbors, bowers.'

2. **argentī**: 'silver plate.'

3. **cōnstrāta**: 'laid, paved.' **nōn nūllōrum**: sc. *aliōrum* and cf. p. 462, l. 14.

4. **prōtēcta**: 'overgrown.' **hederā**: 'ivy.'

5. **dēsignārent**: 'indicated.'

7. **nōn**: with *necessāriās*. **conquīrerent**: 242.

9. **cui**: the antecedent is *exercituī*. **dēfuissent**: 254.

11. **īnsignibus**: the scarlet cloak (*palūdāmentum*) and other indications of his rank.

12. **Lārīsam**: a city of Thessaly on the river Peneus, modern Larissa.

14. **nactus**: 'falling in with.'

cōnscendit, saepe, ut dīcēbātur, querēns tantum sē opīniōnem fefellisse ut, ā quō genere hominum victōriam spērāsset, ab eō initiō fugae factō paenē prōditus vidērētur.

Caesar follows up his victory.

97. Caesar castrīs potītus ā mīlitibus contendit nē in praedā occupātī reliquī negōtī gerendī facultātem dīmit-

Larisa.

A distant view of the town, showing the river Peneus and an old Roman road in the foreground.

1. **tantum . . . fefellisse** : 'that he had been so completely deceived' ; for the construction and literal meaning cf. p. 471, l. 20.

2. **ā quō genere . . . ab eō** : = *ab eō genere . . . ā quō*. *Eō genere hominum* refers of course to the cavalry.

3. **initiō factō** : the abl. abs. gives the reason (173) for *prōditus (esse) vidērētur*.

97. 4. **contendit** : 'urgently demanded.'

5. **reliquī . . . gerendī** : 'completing their victory.' **facultātem dīmitterent** : 'lose the opportunity' ; 260.

terent. Quā rē impetrātā, montem opere circummūnīre īnstituit. Pompeiānī, quod is mōns erat sine aquā, diffīsī eī locō, relictō monte, ūniversī iugīs eius Lārīsam versus sē recipere coepērunt. Quā rē animadversā, Caesar cōpiās suās dīvīsit partemque legiōnum in castrīs Pompeī remanēre iussit, partem in sua castra remīsit, IV sēcum legiōnēs dūxit commodiōreque itinere Pompeiānīs occurrere coepit, et prōgressus mīlia passuum VI aciem īnstrūxit. Quā rē animadversā, Pompeiānī in quōdam monte cōnstitērunt. Hunc montem flūmen subluēbat. Caesar mīlitēs cohortātus, etsī tōtīus diēī continentī labōre erant cōnfectī noxque iam suberat, tamen mūnītiōne flūmen ā monte sēclūsit, nē noctū aquārī Pompeiānī possent. Quō perfectō opere, illī dē dēditiōne missīs lēgātīs agere coepērunt. Paucī ōrdinis senātōriī, quī sē cum hīs coniūnxerant, nocte fugā salūtem petīvērunt.

The surviving Pompeians surrender and Caesar spares their lives and property.

98. Caesar prīmā lūce omnēs eōs qui in monte cōnsēderant ex superiōribus locīs in plānitiem dēscendere atque arma prōicere iussit. Quod ubi sine recūsātiōne fēcērunt passīsque palmīs prōiectī ad terram, flentēs ab eō salūtem

---

1. **montem**: one of the heights near Pompey's camp; cf. p. 473, l. 11.

3. **eī locō**: dat. with *diffīsī*; 149, *a*. This is the usual construction, while *fīdō* and *cōnfīdō* commonly govern an abl. **iugīs**: abl. of the way by which; cf. *fretō*, p. 435, l. 9. **Lārīsam versus**: 'towards Larisa, in the direction of Larisa.'

7. **occurrere**: 'to go to meet.'

98. 19. **sine recūsātiōne**: 'without demur.'

20. **passīs palmīs**: 169. **prōiectī ad terram**: 'throwing themselves on the ground.'

petīvērunt, cōnsōlātus cōnsurgere iussit et pauca apud eōs dē lēnitāte suā locūtus, quō minōri essent timōre, omnēs cōnservāvit mīlitibusque suīs commendāvit nē quī eōrum violārētur, neu quid suī dēsīderārent. Hāc adhibitā dīligentiā, ex castrīs sibi legiōnēs aliās occurrere et eās quās sēcum dūxerat in vicem requiēscere atque in castra revertī iussit, eōdemque diē Lārīsam pervēnit.

The losses on both sides. Caesar's include the valiant Crastinus.

99. In eō proeliō nōn amplius cc mīlitēs dēsīderāvit, sed centuriōnēs, fortēs virōs, circiter xxx āmīsit. Interfectus est etiam fortissimē pugnāns Crāstinus, cuius mentiōnem suprā fēcimus, gladiō in ōs adversum coniectō. Neque id fuit falsum, quod ille in pugnam proficīscēns dīxerat. Sīc enim Caesar exīstimābat, eō proeliō excellentissimam virtūtem Crāstinī fuisse, optimēque eum dē sē meritum iūdicābat.

Ex Pompeiānō exercitū circiter mīlia xv cecidisse vidēbantur, sed in dēditiōnem vēnērunt amplius mīlia xxiv (namque etiam cohortēs, quae praesidiō in castellīs fuerant, sēsē Sullae dēdidērunt), multī praetereā in fīnitimās cīvitātēs

---

3. **nē quī**: 'urging that none of them.'

4. **quid suī dēsīderārent**: 'be deprived of any of their belongings.' **Hāc . . . dīligentiā**: *i.e.* after having taken these precautions.

6. **in vicem**: 'in turn.'

99. 8. **dēsīderāvit**: 'lost.' *Āmīsit* has the same meaning and only one verb need be used in English.

11. **in ōs adversum**: 'full in the face.' **coniectō**: *con-* is intensive, 'having received a violent thrust.'

13. **Sīc**: leads up to *eō proeliō . . . fuisse* and need not be translated into English.

19. **Sullae**: see note to p. 467, l. 11.

refūgērunt, signaque mīlitāria ex proeliō ad Caesarem sunt relāta CLXXX et aquilae IX. L. Domitius ex castrīs in montem refugiēns, cum vīrēs eum lassitūdine dēfēcissent, ab equitibus est interfectus.

VI. The Death of Pompey (Book III, 103, 104)

Pompey, landing at Pelusium in Egypt, is treacherously murdered.

103. Quibus cognitīs rēbus, Pompeius, dēpositō adeundae Syriae cōnsiliō, pecūniā ā societātibus sublātā et ā quibusdam prīvātīs sūmptā et aeris magnō pondere ad mīlitārem ūsum in nāvēs impositō, duōbusque mīlibus hominum armātīs, partim quōs ex familiīs societātum dēlēgerat, partim ā negōtiātōribus coēgerat, quōs ex suīs quisque ad hanc rem idōneōs exīstimābat, Pēlūsium pervēnit.

Ibi cāsū rēx erat Ptolemaeus, puer aetāte, magnīs cōpiīs cum sorōre Cleopatrā bellum gerēns, quam paucīs ante mēnsibus per suōs propinquōs atque amīcōs rēgnō expulerat; castraque Cleopatrae nōn longō spatiō ab eius castrīs

---

103. 6. **societātibus**: 'the guilds of tax-collectors' (*pūblicāni*), who farmed the revenues in the Roman provinces.

7. **sūmptā**: *i.e.* borrowing, while he seized the funds of the tax-gatherers. **aeris**: 'bronze coinage,' for paying the soldiers.

9. **familiīs**: here = *servīs*, the slaves belonging to the establishments of the tax-collectors.

10. **negōtiātōribus**: 'traders, merchants,' Romans who had gone to the provinces to transact business. **coēgerat**: 'requisitioned.' **quōs . . . exīstimābat**: *i.e.* he left it to the tax-gatherers and the merchants to select the slaves whom they thought best fitted for his purpose.

11. **Pēlūsium**: a town of Lower Egypt at the eastern end of the Delta of the Nile.

distābant. Ad eum Pompeius mīsit, ut prō hospitiō atque amīcitiā patris Alexandrīam reciperētur atque illīus opibus in calamitāte tegerētur. Sed quī ab eō missī erant, cōnfectō lēgātiōnis officiō, līberius cum mīlitibus rēgis colloquī coepērunt eōsque hortārī ut suum officium Pompeiō praestārent nēve eius fortūnam dēspicerent. In hōc erant numerō complūrēs Pompeī mīlitēs, quōs ex eius exercitū acceptōs in Syriā Gabīnius Alexandrīam trādūxerat bellōque cōnfectō apud Ptolemaeum, patrem puerī, relīquerat.

104. Hīs tum cognitīs rēbus, amīcī rēgis, quī propter aetātem eius in prōcūrātiōne erant rēgnī, sīve timōre adductī, ut posteā praedicābant, sollicitātō exercitū rēgiō nē Pompeius Alexandrīam Aegyptumque occupāret, sīve dēspectā eius fortūnā, ut plērumque in calamitāte ex amīcīs inimīcī exsistunt, eīs quī erant ab eō missī palam līberāliter respondērunt eumque ad rēgem venīre iussērunt; ipsī clam cōnsiliō initō Achillam, praefectum rēgium, singulārī hominem audāciā, et L. Septimium, tribūnum mīlitum, ad

---

1. **eum**: sc. *Ptolemaeum.* **prō**: 'in consideration for, in return for.'

2. **patris**: objective gen., sc. *Ptolemaeī.* **illīus**: sc. *Ptolemaeī.*

3. **quī**: sc. *eī*, subject of *coepērunt.*

6. **In hōc . . . numerō**: sc. *mīlitibus rēgis.*

8. **Gabīnius**: A. Gabinius, tribune of the commons in 66 B.C., when he proposed the bill which gave Pompey sole command against the pirates.

104. 11. **in prōcūrātiōne**: 'in charge.'

12. **sollicitātō**: *i.e.* incited to treachery by bribery and other inducements. The abl. abs. modifies *occupāret* and is best translated after the *nē*-clause.

14. **ut**: note the mood of the verb and translate accordingly. **ex amīcīs . . . exīstunt**: *i.e.* friends become enemies.

16. **respondērunt**: the subject is *amīcī* in l. 10.

17. **cōnsiliō**: 'a plot.' **rēgium**: the adj. takes the place of a gen., *rēgis.*

interficiendum Pompeium mīsērunt. Ab hīs līberāliter ipse appellātus et quādam nōtitiā Septimī prōductus, quod bellō praedōnum apud eum ōrdinem dūxerat, nāviculam parvulam cōnscendit cum paucīs suīs; ibi ab Achillā et Septimiō interficitur. Item L. Lentulus comprehenditur ab rēge et in cūstōdiā necātur.

---

1. **līberāliter**: 'courteously.' **ipse**: Pompey.
2. **quādam**: 'some': *i.e.* 'a slight.' **prōductus**: 'led on, induced.'
3. **bellō praedōnum**: 'in the war with the pirates' (67 B.C.). **ōrdinem dūxerat**: cf. p. 426, l. 14, and p. 468, l. 13 with the notes.
4. **ibi**: temporal, 'thereupon.'

Cleopatra.

From an Egyptian relief representing the queen with divine attributes. Her cartouche (or name in hieroglyphics) is in the upper left-hand corner.

FABLES

1. Accipiter et Columbae

Columbae mīlvī metū accipitrem rogāvērunt, ut eās dēfenderet. Ille annuit. At in columbārium receptus, ūnō diē maiōrem strāgem ēdidit, quam mīlvus longō tempore potuisset ēdere.

Fābula docet, malōrum patrōcinium vītandum esse. 5

The Fables are a medieval prose paraphrase of various metrical versions of the so-called Aesopian fables. Of Aesop himself little is known. He appears to have lived in the sixth century B.C., and to have been born a slave. On gaining his freedom he was sent by Croesus, the famous Lydian king, to distribute a sum of money among the people of Delphi. When the Delphians objected to the principle of division, Aesop refused them the money, whereupon they threw him over a precipice. The details of his history are obscure and mythical, and his very existence has been called in question.

1. 1. **Columbae**: nom. pl., subject of *rogāvērunt*. **mīlvī**: objective gen., depending on *metū*. **metū**: 'because of fear,' 'through fear'; 165. **accipitrem**: the nom. case appears in the title of the fable. **rogāvērunt**: this verb may take two objects; see 128. In this instance *accipitrem* is one of the objects, while the other is the substantive clause *ut . . . dēfenderet*, 260. Trans. 'asked a hawk to defend them.' **eās**: 'them' (= *columbās*).

2. **Ille**: 'he': *i.e. accipiter*. **annuit**: note the deriv. and lit. meaning. **in columbārium**: note the meaning of *in* with the acc. 186, 1 (*a*). **receptus**: 'when he had been received.' **ūnō diē**: 'in a single day,' 182.

3. **quam**: 'than.' **longō tempore**: see note on *ūnō diē* above.

4. **potuisset**: 246. The condition is implied in *longō tempore*, which = 'if he had tried for a long time'; 248.

5. **malōrum**: 'of the wicked.' The adj. is here used as a noun. **patrōcinium . . . vītandum esse**: ind. disc., 265. **vītandum esse**: 'that one should shun.'

2. Mūs et Mīlvus

Mīlvus laqueīs irrētītus mūsculum exōrāvit, ut eum, corrōsīs plagīs, līberāret. Quō factō, mīlvus līberātus mūrem arripuit et dēvorāvit.

Haec fābula ostendit, quam grātiam malī prō beneficiīs reddere soleant.

3. Grūs et Pāvō

Pāvō, cōram grue pennās suās explicāns, "Quanta est," inquit, "fōrmōsitās mea et tua dēfōrmitās!" At grūs ēvolāns, "Et quanta est," inquit, "levitās mea et tua tarditās!"

Monet haec fābula, nē ob aliquod bonum, quod nōbīs

---

2. 1. **laqueīs**: for the case see 163. **irrētītus**: 'that had become entangled.' Cf. *receptus*, p. 481, l. 2. **mūsculum**: a dimin. of *mūs*. On the meaning of the suffix *-culus* see 109, *d*. **exōrāvit**: note the force of the prep. *ex-*. Cf. *exōrāre* with *ōrāre* in the Vocab. **ut . . . līberāret**: 'to free.' Cf. *ut . . . dēfenderet*, p. 481, l. 1. **eum**: *i.e. mīlvum*. **corrōsīs plagīs**: 'by gnawing the nets,' 173. Do not trans. the abl. abs. literally.

2. **Quō factō**: 'and when this had been done,' *i.e.* when the mouse had gnawed the nets. See note on *corrōsīs plagīs* above. Note the trans. of *quō;* we have here, as is often the case, a rel. pron. introducing a sentence where in Eng. we should have a dem. pron.; 202.

4. **ostendit**: what is the object of this verb; *i.e.* what does the fable show? **quam**: 'what,' the interrog. pron. used as an adj. **malī**: see note on *malōrum*, p. 481, l. 5. **prō**: 'in return for.' **beneficiīs**: deriv.?

5. **soleant**: a semi-deponent verb; see 96. For the mood see 259.

3. 6. **grue**: nom. case is *grūs*. **suās**: 197. **explicāns**: 'that was spreading out.' **Quanta**: takes its gen. and number from *fōrmōsitās*.

7. **inquit**: a defective verb. **fōrmōsitās**: this word, with *dēfōrmitās*, *levitās*, and *tarditās*, is a predicate noun.

9. **Monet . . . nē . . . contemnāmus**: 'warns us not to look down on.' Cf. *ut . . . dēfenderet*, p. 481, l. 1. **bonum**: 'good thing,' 'blessing.' **quod**: antecedent? 122.

nātūra tribuit, aliōs contemnāmus, quibus nātūra alia et fortasse maiōra dedit.

4. Pāvō

Pāvō graviter conquerēbātur apud Iūnōnem, dominam suam, quod vōcis suāvitās sibi negāta esset, dum luscinia, avis tam parum decōra, cantū excellat. Cui Iūnō, "Et meritō," inquit, "nōn enim omnia bona in ūnum cōnferrī oportuit."

5. Ānserēs et Gruēs

In eōdem quondam prātō pāscēbantur ānserēs et gruēs. Adveniente dominō prātī, gruēs facile āvolābant; sed ānserēs, impedītī corporis gravitāte, dēprehēnsī et mactātī sunt.

---

1. **alia maiōra**: for the trans. cf. *bonum*, p. 482, l. 9.

4. 3. **graviter**: for the formation of this adv. see 67. **apud**: 'in the presence of.' The peacock was sacred to Juno. **dominam**: for the construc. see 121.

4. **quod . . . negāta esset**: the subj. because the reason is given as that of the peacock, not of the writer of the fable, 241. **sibi**: see note on *suās*, p. 482, l. 6. **dum**: 'while.'

5. **avis**: see note on *dominam*, l. 3. **tam parum**: 'not very'; lit. 'so little.' **cantū**: for the case see 171. **Cui**: for the use of the rel. as a connective see note on *quō factō*, p. 482, l. 2. **Et meritō**: sc. *hōc ita est*, *i.e.* that the peacock excels in beauty but not in song, while the reverse is true of the nightingale.

6. **bona**: for the trans. see note on *bonum*, p. 482, l. 9. **in ūnum**: 'upon one (creature).' **cōnferrī oportuit**: 'ought not to have been bestowed.'

5. 8. **eōdem**: notice that only the first part of the word is declined. **quondam**: 'once upon a time.' Note the order, which is a common one in Latin.

9. **Adveniente dominō**: abl. abs. expressing time. How should it be translated? On the form of the part. see 55. **facile**: adv. **āvolābant**: 'flew away'; note the deriv.

10. **impedītī**: 276. **gravitātē**: for the case see 165. **dēprehēnsī**: sc. *sunt*.

Sīc saepe pauperēs cum potentiōribus in eōdem crīmine dēprehēnsī, sōlī dant poenam, dum illī salvī ēvādunt.

6. Capra et Lupus

Lupus capram in altā rūpe stantem cōnspicātus, "Cūr nōn," inquit, "relinquis nūda illa et sterilia loca, et hūc dēscendis in herbidōs campōs, quī tibi laetum pābulum offerunt?" Cui respondit capra, "Mihi nōn est in animō, dulcia tūtīs praepōnere."

7. Canis et Bovēs

Canis iacēbat in praesaepī, bovēsque lātrandō ā pābulō arcēbat. Cui ūnus boum, "Quanta ista," inquit, "invidia

---

1. **pauperēs**: used substantively; cf. *malōrum*, p. 481, l. 5. **cum potentiōribus**: 167.

2. **illī**: *i.e. potentiōrēs*. **salvī**: a pred. adj.

6. 3. **in**: 'upon.'

4. **inquit**: what is the subject? **loca**: note that *locus* has two forms for the nom. pl.; for the difference in meaning see Vocab. **hūc**: what is the difference in meaning between *hīc*, *hūc*, and *hinc*? See Vocab.

5. **in campōs**: see note on *in columbārium*, p. 481, l. 2.

6. **Cui**: see note on *Cui*, p. 483, l. 5. **Mihi nōn est in animō**: 'I do not intend'; note the lit. meaning.

7. **dulcia tūtīs praepōnere**: this phrase is the subject of *est*. On *dulcia* and *tūtīs* see note on *bonum*, p. 482, l. 9; on *tūtīs*, 149, *b*. *Dulcia* is the object of *-pōnere*, while *tūtīs* is governed by *prae-*.

7. 8. **iacēbat**: distinguish in meaning between *iaceō* and *iaciō*. **bovēs**: for the declension see 33. **lātrandō**: 'by barking,' a gerund expressing means, 282.

9. **boum**: for the constr. see 138. **Quanta**: see note on *Quanta*, p. 482, l. 6. **ista**: carries with it an idea of contempt.

est, quod nōn pateris ut eō cibō vescāmur, quem tū ipse capere nec velīs nec possīs!"

Haec fābula invidiae indolem dēclārat.

8. Bovēs

In eōdem prātō pāscēbantur trēs bovēs in maximā concordiā, et sīc ab omnī ferārum incursiōne tūtī erant. Sed, discidiō inter illōs ortō, singulī ā ferīs petītī et laniātī sunt.

Fābula docet, quantum bonī sit in concordiā.

9. Asinus

Asinus pelle leōnis indūtus territābat hominēs et bēstiās, tamquam leō esset. Sed forte, dum sē celerius movet, aurēs

---

1. **quod nōn pateris**: cf. *quod . . . negāta esset*, p. 483, l. 4. What mood and tense is *pateris?* What does the mood denote? **ut . . . vescāmur**: cf. *ut . . . dēfenderet*, p. 481, l. 1. **cibō**: for the case see 163, *a*. **ipse**: intensive; 'yourself.'

2. **velīs . . . possīs**: why subj.? 233. For the conjugation of *velīs* see 100.

8. 4. **In . . . pāscēbantur**: cf. the beginning of Fable 5. **concordiā**: deriv.?

5. **sīc**: 'so,' 'therefore,' *i.e.* because of the *maximā concordiā*. **ab . . . incursiōne**: 158. Note the position of *ferārum;* for the case see 136.

6. **discidiō . . . ortō**: what does the abl. abs. denote? **petītī**: sc. *sunt*.

7. **quantum bonī**: 'how much good.' See note on *boum*, p. 484, l. 9. **sit**: for the mood see note on *soleant*, p. 482, l. 5.

9. 8. **pelle**: see note on *laqueīs*, p. 482, l. 1. **indūtus**: 'clad.'

9. **tamquam**: 'just as if.' **dum . . . movet**: for the mood and tense see 236. **celerius**: 'rather quickly'; 193.

ēminēbant; unde agnitus in pīstrīnum abductus est, ubi poenās petulantiae dedit.

Haec fābula stolidōs notat, quī immeritīs honōribus superbiunt.

10. Mulier et Gallīna

Mulier quaedam habēbat gallīnam, quae eī cottīdiē ōvum pariēbat aureum. Hinc suspicārī coepit, illam aurī māssam intus cēlāre, et gallīnam occīdit. Sed nihil in eā repperit, nisi quod in aliīs gallīnīs reperīrī solet. Itaque dum maiōribus dīvitiīs inhiābat, etiam minōrēs perdidit.

11. Vulpēs et Ūva

Vulpēs ūvam in vīte cōnspicāta, ad illam subsiluit omnium vīrium suārum contentiōne, sī eam forte attingere posset.

---

1. **unde**: 'for this reason,' *i.e.* because *aurēs ēminēbant*. **agnitus . . . abductus est**: 'was recognized and taken away.'

2. **petulantiae**: gen. case modifying *poenās*. **poenās dedit**: see Vocab. under *poenās*.

3. **honōribus**: abl. of cause.

10. 5. **mulier quaedam**: 'a woman.' Notice that *quīdam* (see Vocab.) is very frequently equivalent to the Eng. indef. article.

6. **pariēbat**: principal parts? Cf. *parō* and *pāreō*. **Hinc**: 'from this circumstance,' 'for this reason,' *i.e.* because *cottīdiē ovum pariēbat aureum* (*gallīna*). **coepit**: sc. *mulier*. **illam . . . cēlāre**: in ind. disc. depending on *suspicārī*; see note on *patrōcinium . . . vītandum esse*, p. 481, l. 5. *illam* = *gallīnam*.

7. **repperit**: from *reperiō*. Notice the spelling of the perfect, which was originally *-peperī*; hence the *pp.*

8. **nisi**: 'except.' **quod**: = *id quod*.

9. **dīvitiīs**: for the case see note on *tūtīs*, p. 484, l. 7. **minōrēs**: sc. *dīvitiās*.

11. 10. **in**: 'upon.' **cōnspicāta**: note the gender, and see 6.

11. **sī . . . posset**: 'to see whether it could.'

Tandem dēfatīgāta inānī labōre discēdēns dīxit, "At nunc etiam acerbae sunt, nec eās in viā repertās tollerem."

Haec fābula docet, multōs ea contemnere quae sē assequī posse dēspērent.

12. Lupus et Grūs

In faucibus lupī os inhaeserat. Mercēde igitur condūcit gruem, quī illud extrahat. Hōc grūs longitūdine collī facile effēcit. Cum autem mercēdem postulāret, subrīdēns lupus et dentibus īnfrendēns, "Num tibi," inquit, "parva mercēs vidētur, quod caput incolume ex lupī faucibus extrāxistī?"

---

1. **dēfatīgāta**: sc. *vulpēs*.

2. **etiam**: 'also,' *i.e.* sour as well as hard to get. **acerbae**: sc. *eae* = *uvae*. **repertās . . . tollerem**: cf. *longō tempore . . . potuisset*, p. 481, l. 3. 'I would not pick them up (*tollerem*), if I found them (*repertās*) in the road.'

3. **multōs . . . contemnere**: ind. disc. with *docet*. **sē . . . posse**: ind. disc. with *dēspērent*.

12. 5. **os**: what two words of different meanings have this same form? Note the difference in quantity. See Vocab. **inhaeserat**: notice the tense. **Mercēde**: for the case see 164. **condūcit**: for the tense see 208.

6. **quī . . . extrahat**: 'to remove it'; a rel. clause of purpose, 230. **Hōc**: *i.e.* the removal of the bone. **longitūdine**: abl. of cause. **facile**: see note on *facile*, p. 483, l. 9.

7. **Cum . . . postulāret**: for the mood see 235.

8. **dentibus īnfrendēns**: 'gnashing his teeth.' Observe that in Latin the abl. of means is used; lit. 'gnashing *with* his teeth.' **Num**: introduces the question, to which the answer, "No," is implied. The word should not be translated. **mercēs**: a pred. noun. The clause, *quod . . . extrāxistī*, is the subject of *vidētur*, 257.

9. **vidētur**: for the special meaning of *videō* in the pass. see Vocab. **quod**: 'that.'

GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX

I. INFLECTIONS

A. NOUNS

1. Nouns are distinguished as **Abstract** and **Concrete.**

Abstract nouns designate qualities: **virtūs**, *valor;* **dīvitiae**, *riches.*

Concrete nouns designate individual objects: **domus**, *house;* **homō**, *man;* **exercitus**, *army.*

2. There are three Genders: Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter. Gender in Latin may be either *Natural* or *Grammatical.*

3. Natural Gender is based upon sex and is confined to the names of persons. These are Masculine, if they denote males: **agricola**, *farmer.* They are Feminine if they denote females: **virgō**, *maiden.*

4. Grammatical Gender is determined by the general signification of a word, or by the ending of the Nominative Singular. The latter is the more common and will be considered under the various declensions. The following nouns take their gender from their signification:

Masculine: names of *Rivers*, *Winds*, and *Months:* **Sēquana**, *Seine;* **Āfricus**, *southwest wind;* **Maius**, *May.*

Feminine: names of *Trees* and of *Countries*, *Towns*, and *Islands* ending in **-us**:[1] **quercus**, *oak;* **Corinthus**, *Corinth;* **Rhodus**, *Rhodes;* **Aegyptus**, *Egypt.*

Neuter: indeclinable nouns: **nihil**, *nothing;* **fās**, *right.*

5. Some nouns have Common Gender; that is, they are sometimes Masculine and sometimes Feminine: **cīvis**, *citizen.*

[1] Other names of Countries, Towns, and Islands follow the gender of their endings.

6. Names of animals commonly have Grammatical Gender, according to the ending of their Nominative Singular, but one form may designate either the male or the female: **aquila**, F., *eagle*; **ānser**, M., *goose*.

THE FIVE DECLENSIONS

7. There are Five Declensions in Latin, distinguished from each other by the final letter of the Stem, and also by the ending of the Genitive Singular:

Declension	Ending of Stem	Gen. Ending
First	ā	-ae
Second	o	-ī
Third	i Some consonant	-is
Fourth	u	-ūs
Fifth	ē	-eī

8. Certain cases are alike in form:

The Vocative is like the Nominative, except in the Singular of nouns in **-us** of the Second Declension.

The Dative and Ablative Plural are always alike.

In Neuters the Nominative and Accusative are always alike, and in the Plural end in **-a**.

In the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Declensions the Accusative Plural is regularly like the Nominative.

1. First Declension. ā-Stems

9. Nouns of the First Declension regularly end in the Nominative Singular in **-a** and are of the Feminine Gender. They are declined as follows:

causa, F., *cause*; stem **causā-**

	Singular	Case Ending	Plural	Case Ending
Nom.	causa	-a	causae	-ae
Gen.	causae	-ae	causārum	-ārum
Dat.	causae	-ae	causīs	-īs
Acc.	causam	-am	causās	-ās
Voc.	causa	-a	causae	-ae
Abl.	causā	-ā	causīs	-īs

a. Special Forms

10. An old form of the Genitive Singular in **-ās** is usually preserved in **pater familiās**, *the father of a family* (also in **māter familiās**), although **pater familiae** is also found.

11. The Locative Singular ends in **-ae**: **Rōmae**, *at Rome;* **mīlitiae**, *in war, in the field.*

12. A Genitive Plural in **-um**, instead of **-ārum**, is sometimes found.[1]

13. Besides the regular ending **-īs**, a Dative and Ablative Plural in **-ābus** occurs in **dea**, **fīlia**, and some other words, especially when it is necessary to distinguish those cases of **dea** and **fīlia** from the corresponding forms of **deus** and **fīlius**.

b. Exceptions to the Rule for Gender

14. Nouns denoting males are Masculine by signification: **nauta**, *sailor;* **agricola**, *farmer.*

c. Greek Nouns

15. These end in **-ās** or **-ēs**, Masculine. In the Plural they are declined like Latin nouns of the First Declension. In the Singular they always have the Latin form in the Dative and frequently throughout. But they are sometimes inflected as follows:

Nom.	Aenē**ās**	*Nom.*	Anchīsē**s**
Gen.	Aenea**e**	*Gen.*	Anchīsa**e**
Dat.	Aenea**e**	*Dat.*	Anchīsa**e**
Acc.	Aenea**m** (or **-ān**)	*Acc.*	Anchīsē**n**
Voc.	Aenē**ā**	*Voc.*	Anchīsē (or **-a**)
Abl.	Aenē**ā**	*Abl.*	Anchīsē (or **-ā**)

NOTE. — Feminine nouns end in **-ē** in Greek (Gen. **-ēs**, Acc. **-ēn**, Abl. **-ē**), but in Latin for the most part they have assumed the ending **-a** and are declined like **causa**.

2. SECOND DECLENSION. O-STEMS

16. Latin nouns of the Second Declension end in **-us**, **-er**, **-ir**, Masculine; **-um**, Neuter. They are declined as follows:

[1] This is *not* a contraction.

mūrus, M., *wall*; stem **muro-**			**puer**, M., *boy*; stem **puero-**	
		SINGULAR		
	Case Ending			Case Ending
Nom.	mūr**us**	**-us**	puer	wanting
Gen.	mūr**ī**	**-ī**	puer**ī**	**-ī**
Dat.	mūr**ō**	**-ō**	puer**ō**	**-ō**
Acc.	mūr**um**	**-um**	puer**um**	**-um**
Voc.	mūr**e**	**-e**	(same as nominative)	
Abl.	mūr**ō**	**-ō**	puer**ō**	**-ō**
		PLURAL		
Nom.	mūr**ī**	**-ī**	puer**ī**	**-ī**
Gen.	mūr**ōrum**	**-ōrum**	puer**ōrum**	**-ōrum**
Dat.	mūr**īs**	**-īs**	puer**īs**	**-īs**
Acc.	mūr**ōs**	**-ōs**	puer**ōs**	**-ōs**
Abl.	mūr**īs**	**-īs**	puer**īs**	**-īs**

	ager, M., *field*; stem **agro-**	**vir**, M., *man*; stem **viro-**	**bellum**, N., *war*; stem **bello-**
	SINGULAR		
Nom.	ager[1]	vir	bell**um**
Gen.	agr**ī**	vir**ī**	bell**ī**
Dat.	agr**ō**	vir**ō**	bell**ō**
Acc.	agr**um**	vir**um**	bell**um**
Abl.	agr**ō**	vir**ō**	bell**ō**
	PLURAL		
Nom.	agr**ī**	vir**ī**	bell**a**
Gen.	agr**ōrum**	vir**ōrum**	bell**ōrum**
Dat.	agr**īs**	vir**īs**	bell**īs**
Acc.	agr**ōs**	vir**ōs**	bell**a**
Abl.	agr**īs**	vir**īs**	bell**īs**

17. The following nouns in **-er** are declined like **puer**: **gener**, *son-in-law*; **socer**, *father-in-law*; **vesper**, *evening*; and compounds in **-fer** and **-ger**.

a. Special Forms

18. Proper names in **-ius** regularly form the Genitive Singular **in -ī**, instead of **-iī**, and the Vocative Singular in **-ī**, instead of **-ie**: **Licínī**, *of Licinius* or *O Licinius*.

[1] The Vocative will be omitted hereafter, unless it differs in form from the nominative.

Common nouns in **-ius** and **-ium** also formed the Genitive Singular in **-ī** until after the beginning of the reign of Augustus (B.C. 31): **ingéni, fīlī.** **Fīlius** formed the Vocative Singular in **-ī** (instead of **-ie**). *Genitives and Vocatives in* **-ī** *accent the penult even when it is short.*

19. **Deus**, *god*, has the Vocative Singular like the Nominative. The Plural is declined as follows:

Nom.	deī, diī, dī	*Acc.*	deōs
Gen.	deōrum, deum	*Abl.*	deīs, diīs, dīs
Dat.	deīs, diīs, dīs		

20. The Locative Singular ends in **-ī**: **Corinthī**, *at Corinth.*

21. A Genitive Plural in **-um**, instead of **-ōrum**, sometimes occurs.[1]

b. Exceptions to Gender

22. Some exceptions occur to the rule for Gender given in **16.**

The following nouns in **-us** are feminine:

Names of Countries, Towns, Islands, and Trees (see **4**), and **humus**, *ground.*

Vulgus, *crowd*, is neuter.

c. Greek Nouns

23. Greek nouns in **-os** are commonly Latinized to **-us**; occasionally they have **-os** in the Nominative and **-on** in the Accusative, but Nominatives in **-os** may also have **-um** in the Accusative.

3. Third Declension

24. Nouns of the Third Declension include several classes of stems: pure consonant stems; **i**-stems; consonant stems inflected in part like **i**-stems; stems ending in a long vowel or diphthong; **irregular nouns.**

a. Consonant Stems

25. Consonant Stems may be Mute, Liquid, Nasal, or Spirant, according to the kind of consonant with which they end. The stem appears unchanged in the oblique cases.

[1] See footnote to § 12.

(1) *Mute Stems*

26. Mute stems may be Labial, Guttural, or Dental, according to the kind of Mute in which they end. The Labial stems show the **-s** of the Nominative unchanged; in the Guttural stems it unites with the Guttural, forming **-x**; and in the Dental stems final **d** or **t** of the stem disappears before **-s**.

	prīnceps, M., *chief*	**lēx**, F., *law*	**mīles**, M., *soldier*	
		SINGULAR		CASE ENDINGS
Nom.	prīnceps	lēx	mīles	**-s**
Gen.	prīncipis	lēgis	mīlitis	**-is**
Dat.	prīncipī	lēgī	mīlitī	**-ī**
Acc.	prīncipem	lēgem	mīlitem	**-em**
Abl.	prīncipe	lēge	mīlite	**-e**
		PLURAL		
Nom.	prīncipēs	lēgēs	mīlitēs	**-ēs**
Gen.	prīncipum	lēgum	mīlitum	**-um**
Dat.	prīncipibus	lēgibus	mīlitibus	**-ibus**
Acc.	prīncipēs	lēgēs	mīlitēs	**-ēs**
Abl.	prīncipibus	lēgibus	mīlitibus	**-ibus**

(2) *Liquid and Nasal Stems*

	cōnsul, M., *consul*	**corpus**, N., *body*	**homō**, M., *man*
		SINGULAR	
Nom.	cōnsul	corpus	homō
Gen.	cōnsulis	corporis	hominis
Dat.	cōnsulī	corporī	hominī
Acc.	cōnsulem	corpus	hominem
Abl.	cōnsule	corpore	homine
		PLURAL	
Nom.	cōnsulēs	corpora	hominēs
Gen.	cōnsulum	corporum	hominum
Dat.	cōnsulibus	corporibus	hominibus
Acc.	cōnsulēs	corpora	hominēs
Abl.	cōnsulibus	corporibus	hominibus

(3) **s**-*Stems*

28. The final **s** of the stem becomes **r** between vowels, and in some words the **r** made its way into the Nominative by analogy; thus,

honōs became **honor**, although the form in **-ōs** is sometimes retained.

	mōs, M., *custom*	**tempus**, N., *time*	**honor**, M., *honor*
		SINGULAR	
Nom.	mōs	tempus	honor
Gen.	mōris	temporis	honōris
Dat.	mōrī	temporī	honōrī
Acc.	mōrem	tempus	honōrem
Abl.	mōre	tempore	honōre
		PLURAL	
Nom.	mōrēs	tempora	honōrēs
Gen.	mōrum	temporum	honōrum
Dat.	mōribus	temporibus	honōribus
Acc.	mōrēs	tempora	honōrēs
Abl.	mōribus	temporibus	honōribus

b. i-*Stems*

29. These regularly end in **-is** Masculine and Feminine, and **-e**, **-al**, and **-ar** Neuter. They always have **-ium** in the Genitive Plural. Masculines and Feminines originally had **-im** in the Accusative Singular, **-ī** in the Ablative Singular, and **-īs** in the Accusative Plural; but these endings have for the most part been displaced by **-em**, **-e**, and **-ēs**.

	turris, F., *tower*	**cīvis**, C., *citizen*	**mare**, N., *sea*	**vectīgal**, N., *revenue*
		SINGULAR		
Nom.	turris	cīvis	mare	vectīgal
Gen.	turris	cīvis	maris	vectīgālis
Dat.	turrī	cīvī	marī	vectīgālī
Acc.	turrim (-em)	cīvem	mare	vectīgal
Abl.	turrī (-e)	cīve	marī (-e)	vectīgālī
		PLURAL		
Nom.	turrēs	cīvēs	maria	vectīgālia
Gen.	turrium	cīvium	marium (marum)	vectīgālium
Dat.	turribus	cīvibus	maribus	vectīgālibus
Acc.	turrīs (-ēs)	cīvēs (-īs)	maria	vectīgālia
Abl.	turribus	cīvibus	maribus	vectīgālibus

30. Not all nouns in **-is** are **i**-stems. For example, **canis**, *dog*, and **iuvenis**, *youth*, are consonant stems. **Mēnsis**, *month*, although

originally a consonant stem, has in the Genitive Plural both **-um** and **-ium**.

31. On the other hand, some **i**-stems have become disguised in the Nominative Singular: so **pars**, *part*, for **par(ti)s**; **mors**, *death*; **dōs**, *dowry*; **nox**, *night*; **sors**, *lot*; **mēns**, *mind*; **ars**, *art*; **gēns**, *tribe*.

c. Consonant Stems with Partial i*-Stem Inflection*

32. These have **-ium** in the Genitive Plural and **-īs** in the Accusative Plural, but they never have **-im** in the Accusative Singular or **-ī** in the Ablative Singular.[1]

	sēdēs, F., *seat*		**arx**, F., *citadel*	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	sēdēs	sēdēs	arx	arcēs
Gen.	sēdis	sēdium	arcis	arcium
Dat.	sēdī	sēdibus	arcī	arcibus
Acc.	sēdem	sēdīs (-ēs)	arcem	arcīs (-ēs)
Abl.	sēde	sēdibus	arce	arcibus

33. *d. Nouns in* **-ī**, **-ū**, *and Diphthongs*

	vīs, F., *force*; stem **vī-**	**bōs**, C., *ox, cow*; stem **bou-**	**Iuppiter**; stem **Iou-**
		SINGULAR	
Nom.	vīs	bōs	Iuppiter
Gen.	vīs	bovis	Iovis
Dat.	vī	bovī	Iovī
Acc.	vim	bovem	Iovem
Abl.	vī	bove	Iove
		PLURAL	
Nom.	vīrēs	bovēs	wanting
Gen.	vīrium	bovum or boum	
Dat.	vīribus	bōbus or būbus	
Acc.	virēs (-īs)	bovēs	
Abl.	vīribus	bōbus or būbus	

[1] To this class belong nouns in **-ēs** with the Genitive in **-is** (**clādēs**); many monosyllables in **-s** or **-x** preceded by a consonant (**urbs**, **arx**); most nouns in **-ns** and **-rs** (**cliēns**, **cohors**); **ūter**, **venter**, **līs**, **mūs**; **faucēs**, **penātēs**, **Samnītēs**, **Quirītēs**, **Optimātēs**; and sometimes nouns in **-tās**, Gen. **-tātis**.

34. *e. Irregular Nouns*

	senex, M., *old man*	**carō**, F., *flesh*	**os**, N., *bone*
		SINGULAR	
Nom.	**senex**	**carō**	**os**
Gen.	**senis**	**carnis**	**ossis**
Dat.	**senī**	**carnī**	**ossī**
Acc.	**senem**	**carnem**	**os**
Abl.	**sene**	**carne**	**osse**
		PLURAL	
Nom.	**senēs**	**carnēs**	**ossa**
Gen.	**senum**	**carnium**	**ossium**
Dat.	**senibus**	**carnibus**	**ossibus**
Acc.	**senēs**	**carnēs**	**ossa**
Abl.	**senibus**	**carnibus**	**ossibus**

35. **Iter, itineris**, N., *way*, is inflected regularly from the stem **itiner-**.

f. Gender in the Third Declension

36. The following are the General Rules for Gender in the Third Declension:

(*a*) Nouns in **-ō**, **-or**, **-ōs**, **-er**, and **-ĕs** are Masculine.

(*b*) Nouns in **-ās**, **-ēs**, **-is**, **-ys**, **-x**, and **-s** (preceded by a consonant), **-dō**, **-gō** (Gen. **-inis**), **-iō** (abstract and collective), **-ūs** (Gen. **-ūtis** and **-ūdis**) are Feminine.

(*c*) Nouns ending in **-a**, **-e**, **-ī**, **-y**, **-c**, **-l**, **-n**, **-t**, **-ar**, **-ur**, and **-ŭs** are Neuter.

g. Exceptions to Gender

37. The principal exceptions to the above rules are the following:

(*a*) To the Rule for Masculines:

Nouns in **-ō**: **carō**, *flesh*, F.

Nouns in **-or**: **arbor**, *tree*, F.; **cor**, *heart*, N.

Nouns in **-ōs**: **ōs**, **ōris**, *mouth*, N.

Nouns in **-er**: **linter**, *boat*, F.; **cadāver**, *corpse*; **iter**, *way*; **ūber**, *udder*, N.

(*b*) To the Rule for Feminines:

Nouns in **-ās**: **vās**, *vessel*, N.

Nouns in **-ēs**: **abiēs**, *fir*; **ariēs**, *ram*; **pēs**, *foot*, M.

Nouns in **-is**: those in **-nis** and **-guis** are M.; also **collis**, *hill*; **lapis**, *stone*; **mēnsis**, *month*; **piscis**, *fish*; **postis**, *post*; **pulvis**, *dust*; **orbis**, *circle*.

Nouns in **-x**: **grex**, *flock*, M.

Nouns in **-s** preceded by a consonant: **dēns**, *tooth*; **fōns**, *fountain*; **pōns**, *bridge*; **mōns**, *mountain*, M.

Nouns in **-dō**: **ōrdō**, *order*, M.

(*c*) To the Rule for Neuters:

Nouns in **-l**: **sāl**, *salt*; **sōl**, *sun*, M.

h. Greek Nouns

38. These have the ending **-ă** in the Accusative Singular; **-ĕs** in the Nominative Plural; **-ăs** in the Accusative Plural. Proper names in **-ēs** form the Genitive Singular sometimes in **-is**, sometimes in **-ī**. But Greek nouns often have the regular Latin endings.

4. Fourth Declension. u-Stems

39. Nouns of the Fourth Declension end in **-us** Masculine and **-ū** Neuter. They are declined as follows:

	impetus, M., *attack*		**cornū**, N., *horn*	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	impet**us**	impet**ūs**	corn**ū**	corn**ua**
Gen.	impet**ūs**	impet**uum**	corn**ūs**	corn**uum**
Dat.	impet**uī**	impet**ibus**	corn**ū**	corn**ibus**
Acc.	impet**um**	impet**ūs**	corn**ū**	corn**ua**
Abl.	impet**ū**	impet**ibus**	corn**ū**	corn**ibus**

a. Special Forms

40. *a.* **Domus**, *house*, in the following cases has forms of the Second Declension in addition to those of the Fourth; the former express relations of place:

domī (Locative; Gen. **domūs**), *at home*; Abl. **domū**, **domō** (*from home*); Acc. **domum** (*homeward, to one's home*); Acc. Plur. **domūs**, **domōs** (*homeward, to their homes*).

b. A Dative in **-ū**, instead of **-uī**, sometimes occurs.

b. Exceptions to Gender

41. The following nouns of the Fourth Declension in **-us** are Feminine: **domus**, *house;* **manus**, *hand;* **porticus**, *colonnade;* **tribus**, *tribe;* **Īdūs** (Plural), *Ides.*

5. Fifth Declension. ē-Stems

42. Nouns of the Fifth Declension end in **-ēs** and are declined as follows:

	diēs, M. AND F., *day*		**rēs**, F., *thing*	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
Gen.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
Dat.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
Acc.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
Abl.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

a. Special Forms

43. The ending of the Genitive and Dative Singular is **-ĕī**, instead of **-ēī**, when a consonant precedes: **spĕī**, **rĕī**, **fidĕī**.

44. Only **diēs** and **rēs** are ordinarily declined in the Plural; but **aciēs**, **speciēs**, **spēs**, and a few others are used in the Nominative and Accusative Plural.

b. Gender in the Fifth Declension

45. Nouns of the Fifth Declension are regularly Feminine, except **diēs**, *day*, and **meridiēs**, *mid-day*. **Diēs** is sometimes Feminine in the Singular, especially when it means *an appointed day.*

B. ADJECTIVES

46. Adjectives are of two classes: those of the First and Second Declensions and those of the Third Declension.

1. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions

47. The Masculine is declined like **mūrus**, **puer**, or **ager (16)**, the Feminine like **causa (9)**, and the Neuter like **bellum (16)**.

magnus, *great*

SINGULAR

Nom.	**magnus**	**magna**	**magnum**
Gen.	**magnī**	**magnae**	**magnī**
Dat.	**magnō**	**magnae**	**magnō**
Acc.	**magnum**	**magnam**	**magnum**
Voc.	**magne**	**magna**	**magnum**
Abl.	**magnō**	**magnā**	**magnō**

PLURAL

Nom.	**magnī**	**magnae**	**magna**
Gen.	**magnōrum**	**magnārum**	**magnōrum**
Dat.	**magnīs**	**magnīs**	**magnīs**
Acc.	**magnōs**	**magnās**	**magna**
Abl.	**magnīs**	**magnīs**	**magnīs**

a. The Genitive Singular Masculine and Neuter of Adjectives **in -ius** ends in **-iī** (not in **-ī** as in the case of nouns; see **18**). The Vocative Singular ends in **-ie** (not in **-ī**; see **18**).

miser, *wretched*

SINGULAR

Nom.	**miser**	**misera**	**miserum**
Gen.	**miserī**	**miserae**	**miserī**
Dat.	**miserō**	**miserae**	**miserō**
Acc.	**miserum**	**miseram**	**miserum**
Abl.	**miserō**	**miserā**	**miserō**

PLURAL

Nom.	**miserī**	**miserae**	**misera**
Gen.	**miserōrum**	**miserārum**	**miserōrum**
Dat.	**miserīs**	**miserīs**	**miserīs**
Acc.	**miserōs**	**miserās**	**misera**
Abl.	**miserīs**	**miserīs**	**miserīs**

sacer, *sacred*

SINGULAR

Nom.	**sacer**	**sacra**	**sacrum**
Gen.	**sacrī**	**sacrae**	**sacrī**
Dat.	**sacrō**	**sacrae**	**sacrō**
Acc.	**sacrum**	**sacram**	**sacrum**
Abl.	**sacrō**	**sacrā**	**sacrō**

PLURAL

Nom.	**sacrī**	**sacrae**	**sacra**
Gen.	**sacrōrum**	**sacrārum**	**sacrōrum**
Dat.	**sacrīs**	**sacrīs**	**sacrīs**
Acc.	**sacrōs**	**sacrās**	**sacra**
Abl.	**sacrīs**	**sacrīs**	**sacrīs**

48. Most adjectives in **-er** are declined like **sacer.** Like **miser** are: **tener,** *tender;* **asper,** *rough;* **līber,** *free;* **prosper,** *prosperous;* compounds in **-fer** and **-ger**; and sometimes **dexter,** *right.*

49. Nine adjectives of this class have the Genitive Singular in **-īus** (**-ĭus**) and the Dative Singular in **-ī,** namely, **alius,** *another;* **alter,** *the other* (Gen. **alterĭus**); **ūllus,** *any;* **nūllus,** *none;* **uter,** *which* (*of two*); **neuter,** *neither;* **sōlus,** *alone;* **tōtus,** *whole;* **ūnus,** *one, alone.* They are declined as follows:

SINGULAR

Nom.	**sōlus**	**sōla**	**sōlum**	**uter**	**utra**	**utrum**
Gen.	**sōlīus**	**sōlīus**	**sōlīus**	**utrīus**	**utrīus**	**utrīus**
Dat.	**sōlī**	**sōlī**	**sōlī**	**utrī**	**utrī**	**utrī**
Acc.	**sōlum**	**sōlam**	**sōlum**	**utrum**	**utram**	**utrum**
Abl.	**sōlō**	**sōlā**	**sōlō**	**utrō**	**utrā**	**utrō**

PLURAL

Nom.	**sōlī**	**sōlae**	**sōla**	**utrī**	**utrae**	**utra**
Gen.	**sōlōrum**	**sōlārum**	**sōlōrum**	**utrōrum**	**utrārum**	**utrōrum**
Dat.	**sōlīs**	**sōlīs**	**sōlīs**	**utrīs**	**utrīs**	**utrīs**
Acc.	**sōlōs**	**sōlās**	**sōla**	**utrōs**	**utrās**	**utra**
Abl.	**sōlīs**	**sōlīs**	**sōlīs**	**utrīs**	**utrīs**	**utrīs**

2. Adjectives of the Third Declension

50. These fall into three classes: Adjectives of Three Terminations, of Two Terminations, and of One Termination. Except for Comparatives and a few other words,[1] all Adjectives of the Third Declension are inflected as i-stems, with **-ī** in the Ablative Singular, **-ium** in the Genitive Plural, **-īs** (as well as **-ēs**) in the Accusative Plural Masculine and Feminine, and **-ia** in the Nominative and Accusative Neuter.

[1] **vetus,** *old;* **dīves,** *rich* (Neut. pl., **dītia**); **particeps,** *sharing;* **pauper,** *poor;* **prīnceps,** *chief;* **superstes,** *surviving.*

a. Adjectives of Three Terminations

ācer, *sharp*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
Nom.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrēs (-īs)	ācrēs (-īs)	ācria
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

51. Like **ācer** are declined: **alacer**, *lively;* **celeber**, *famous;* **equester**, *equestrian;* **pedester**, *pedestrian;* **silvester**, *woody;* **terrester**, *terrestrial;* **volucer**, *winged;* and names of months in **-ber**.

Celer, **celeris**, **celere**, *swift*, retains the **e** before **r**, but lacks the Genitive Plural.

In the Nominative Singular of Adjectives of this class the Feminine form is sometimes used for the Masculine; regularly so **in terrestris** and **silvestris**.

52. *b. Adjectives of Two Terminations*

	fortis, *brave*		**fortior**, *braver*	
	SINGULAR			
Nom.	fortis	forte	fortior	fortius
Gen.	fortis	fortis	fortiōris	fortiōris
Dat.	fortī	fortī	fortiōrī	fortiōrī
Acc.	fortem	forte	fortiōrem	fortius
Abl.	fortī	fortī	fortiōre, -ī	fortiōre, -ī
	PLURAL			
Nom.	fortēs	fortia	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
Gen.	fortium	fortium	fortiōrum	fortiōrum
Dat.	fortibus	fortibus	fortiōribus	fortiōribus
Acc.	fortēs (-īs)	fortia	fortiōrēs (-īs)	fortiōra
Abl.	fortibus	fortibus	fortiōribus	fortiōribus

53. Observe that the first of these Adjectives differs from those of three terminations only in the Nom. Sing. Masc. The Ablative Singular is sometimes in **-e** when the Adjectives are used as Substantives. The Acc. Sing. in **-īs** is rare in Comparatives which have **-a** in the Nom. and Acc. Pl. Neut. and **-um** in the Gen. Pl.

54. *c. Adjectives of One Termination*

	praesēns, *present*		**audāx**, *bold*	
	SINGULAR			
Nom.	praesēns	praesēns	audāx	audāx
Gen.	praesentis	praesentis	audācis	audācis
Dat.	praesentī	praesentī	audācī	audācī
Acc.	praesentem	praesēns	audācem	audāx
Abl.	praesentī (-e)	praesentī (-e)	audācī	audācī
	PLURAL			
Nom.	praesentēs	praesentia	audācēs	audācia
Gen.	praesentium	praesentium	audācium	audācium
Dat.	praesentibus	praesentibus	audācibus	audācibus
Acc.	praesentēs (-īs)	praesentia	audācēs (-īs)	audācia
Abl.	praesentibus	praesentibus	audācibus	audācibus

	vetus, *old*		**plūs**, *more*	
	SINGULAR			
Nom.	vetus	vetus	—	plūs
Gen.	veteris		—	plūris
Dat.	veterī		—	—
Acc.	veterem	vetus	—	plūs
Abl.	vetere		—	plūre
	PLURAL			
Nom.	veterēs	vetera	plūrēs	plūra
Gen.	veterum		plūrium	
Dat.	veteribus		plūribus	
Acc.	veterēs	vetera	plūrēs	plūra
Abl.	veteribus		plūribus	

55. Participles in **-āns** and **-ēns** follow the declension of **i**-stems; but they have **-ī** in the Ablative Singular only when used as Adjectives. When used as Participles or as Substantives, they have **-e**.

3. Comparison of Adjectives

56. There are three degrees of Comparison: the Positive, Comparative, and Superlative. The Comparative is regularly formed by adding **-ior** (neut. **-ius**) and the Superlative by adding **-issimus (-a, -um)** to the stem of the Positive deprived of its final vowel.

lātus, *broad*	**lātior**	**lātissimus**
audāx, *bold*	**audācior**	**audācissimus**
fidēlis, *faithful*	**fidēlior**	**fidēlissimus**

So also Participles, when used as Adjectives:

doctus, *learned*	doctior	doctissimus

57. Adjectives in **-er** form the Superlative by adding **-rimus** to the Nominative of the Positive. The Comparative is regular:

ācer, *sharp*	ācrior	ācerrimus
miser, *wretched*	miserior	miserrimus

58. Several Adjectives in **-lis** form the Superlative by adding **-limus** to the stem of the Positive deprived of its final vowel. The Comparative is regular:

facilis, *easy*	facilior	facillimus
similis, *like*	similior	simillimus

So also **difficilis**, **dissimilis**, and **humilis**, *low*.

59. Adjectives in **-ficus** form the Comparative and Superlative as if from forms in **-ficēns**:

magnificus	magnificentior	magnificentissimus

a. Irregular Comparison

60. Several Adjectives vary the stem in Comparison:

bonus, *good*	melior	optimus
malus, *bad*	peior	pessimus
magnus, *great*	maior	maximus
parvus, *small*	minor	minimus
multus, *much*	plūs	plūrimus

b. Defective Comparison

61. Some Adjectives have the Positive only in special instances or lack it entirely:

exterus	exterior	extrēmus, extimus
īnferus	īnferior	īnfimus, īmus
posterus	posterior	postrēmus, postumus
superus	superior	suprēmus, summus
(prō, prae)	prior	prīmus
(prope)	propior	proximus
(ultrā)	ulterior	ultimus

62. Some Adjectives lack the Comparative:

vetus, *old*	——[1]	veter**rimus**
fīdus, *faithful*	——	fīd**issimus**
novus, *new*	——[2]	nov**issimus**
sacer, *sacred*	——	sacer**rimus**
falsus, *false*	——	fals**issimus**

63. Some lack the Superlative:

alacer, *lively*	alacr**ior**	——
ingēns, *great*	ingent**ior**	——
iuvenis, *young*	iūn**ior**	——[3]
senex, *old*	sen**ior** (ma**ior** nātū)	——[4]

64. The Superlative is also lacking in many Adjectives in **-ālis, -īlis, -ĭlis, -bilis**, and a few others.

c. Comparison by magis *and* maximē

65. Many Adjectives form their Comparative and Superlative with **magis** and **maximē**:

idōneus, *fit*	**magis** idōneus	**maximē** idōneus

66. Some Adjectives do not admit comparison because of their signification; for example, **mortālis**, *mortal*.

C. FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

67. Adverbs from Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions form the Positive by changing **-ī** of the Genitive Singular to **-ē**; those from Adjectives of the Third Declension by changing **-is** of the Genitive Singular to **-iter**. But Adjectives in **-ns** and a few others form the Adverb with **-ter**, instead of **-iter**.

The Comparative of all Adverbs regularly consists of the Accusative Singular Neuter of the Comparative of the Adjective. The

[1] Supplied by **vetustior**, from **vetustus**. [2] Supplied by **recentior**.
[3] Supplied by **minimus nātū**. [4] Supplied by **maximus nātū**.

Superlative of the Adverb is formed by changing **-ī** of the Genitive Singular of the Superlative of the Adjective to **-ē**.

lātē	lātius	lātissimē
fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
audācter	audācius	audācissimē
sapienter	sapientius	sapientissimē
aegrē	aegrius	aegerrimē
facile	facilius	facillimē
bene	melius	optimē
magnopere	magis	maximē
multum	plūs	plūrimum
parum	minus	minimē
diū	diūtius	diūtissimē

68. Some Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions form an Adverb in **-ō**, instead of in **-ē**:

continuō, *immediately*;[1] **subitō**, *suddenly*; **rārō**, *rarely*; and some others.

69. A few Adjectives use the Accusative Neuter Singular as the Positive or Superlative of the Adverb:

multum, *much*; **paulum**, *little*; **minimum**, *least*; **facile**, *easily*.

70. A few Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions form the Positive in **-iter**:

largiter, *copiously*; **aliter**, *otherwise*.

71. Other adverbial suffixes are **-tus** and **-tim**: **antīquitus**, *anciently*; **paulātim**, *gradually*.

D. NUMERALS

72. Numerals include Numeral Adjectives (the Cardinals, **ūnus**, *one*; **duo**, *two*, etc.; the Ordinals, **prīmus**, *first*; **secundus**, *second*, etc.; the Distributives, **singulī**, *one by one*; **bīnī**, *two by two*, etc.), and Numeral Adverbs (**semel**, *once*; **bis**, *twice*, etc.).

[1] Also **continuē**, *continually*.

CARDINALS	ORDINALS	DISTRIBUTIVES	ADVERBS
1. ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um [1]	singulī, -ae, -a [3]	semel
2. duo, -ae, -o	secundus, -a, -um	bīnī	bis
3. trēs, tria	tertius	ternī (trīnī)	ter
4. quattuor [2]	quārtus	quaternī	quater
5. quīnque	quīntus	quīnī	quīnquiēs
6. sex	sextus	sēnī	sexiēs
7. septem	septimus	septēnī	septiēs
8. octō	octāvus	octōnī	octiēs
9. novem	nōnus	novēnī	noviēs
10. decem	decimus	dēnī	deciēs
11. ūndecim	ūndecimus	ūndēnī	ūndeciēs
12. duodecim	duodecimus	duodēnī	duodeciēs
13. tredecim	tertius decimus	ternī dēnī	terdeciēs
14. quattuordecim	quārtus decimus	quaternī dēnī	quaterdeciēs
15. quīndecim	quīntus decimus	quīnī dēnī	quīnquiēs deciēs
16. sēdecim	sextus decimus	sēnī dēnī	sexiēs deciēs
17. septendecim	septimus decimus	septēnī dēnī	septiēs deciēs
18. duodēvīgintī (*two from twenty*)	duodēvīcēsimus	duodēvīcēnī	octiēs deciēs
19. ūndēvīgintī	ūndēvīcēsimus	ūndēvīcēnī	noviēs deciēs
20. vīgintī	vīcēsimus	vīcēnī	vīciēs
21. vīgintī ūnus [4]	vīcēsimus prīmus [4]	vīcēnī singulī [4]	vīciēs semel [4]
ūnus et vīgintī [4]	ūnus et vīcēsimus [4]	singulī et vīcēnī	
30. trīgintā	trīcēsimus	trīcēnī	trīciēs
40. quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus	quadrāgēnī	quadrāgiēs
50. quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus	quīnquāgēnī	quīnquāgiēs sexāgiēs
60. sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus	sexāgēnī	septuāgiēs
70. septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus	septuāgēnī	
80. octōgintā	octōgēsimus	octōgēnī	octōgiēs
90. nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus	nōnāgēnī	nōnāgiēs
100. centum	centēsimus	centēnī	centiēs

[1] The *ordinals* are all inflected in this way.

[2] The *cardinals* to which no terminations are appended are indeclinable.

[3] The *distributives* are all inflected in this way.

[4] The following numerals to 30 are formed in the same way.

CARDINALS	ORDINALS	DISTRIBUTIVES	ADVERBS
101. centum ūnus [1]	centēsimus prīmus [1]	centēnī singulī [1]	centiēs semel [1]
centum et ūnus [1]	centēsimus et prīmus [1]	centēnī et singulī [1]	
200. ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus	ducēnī	ducentiēs
300. trecentī, -ae, -a [2]	trecentēsimus	trecēnī	trecentiēs
400. quadringentī	quadringentēsimus	quadringēnī	quadringentiēs
500. quīngentī	quīngentēsimus	quīngēnī	quīngentiēs
600. sescentī	sescentēsimus	sescēnī	sescentiēs
700. septingentī	septingentēsimus	septingēnī	septingentiēs
800. octingentī	octingentēsimus	octingēnī	octingentiēs
900. nōngentī	nōngentēsimus	nōngēnī	nōngentiēs
1000. mīlle ; pl. mīlia, -ium	mīllēsimus	singula mīlia	mīliēs

73. 1. DECLENSION OF THE CARDINAL NUMERALS

ūnus (like the singular of **sōlus, 49**)

Nom.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria	mīlia [3]
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium	mīlium
Dat	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	mīlibus
Acc.	duōs (duo)	duās	duo	trēs (trīs)	tria	mīlia
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	mīlibus

74. The Distributives are used when nouns which are ordinarily Plural in form, but Singular in meaning, are employed in a Plural sense: **bīnae litterae**, *two letters*. But in such cases **ūnī** is ordinarily used for *one* and **trīnī** (not **ternī**) for *three*.

E. PRONOUNS

75. Pronouns are divided according to their uses into the following classes:

Personal	Demonstrative	Interrogative
Reflexive	Intensive	Indefinite
Possessive	Relative	

[1] The following numerals to 200 are formed in the same general way. The hundreds up to 1000 are declined in this way.

[3] Indeclinable in the singular.

76. The Personal Pronouns are **ego**, *I*, and **tū**, *thou* (Plur. *you*). For the third person the demonstrative pronoun **is, ea, id** is commonly used. **Ego** and **tū** are declined as follows:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
Nom.	ego	tū	nōs	vōs
Gen.	meī	tuī	nostrum, nostrī	vestrum, vestrī
Dat.	mihi	tibi	nōbīs	vōbīs
Acc.	mē	tē	nōs	vōs
Abl.	mē	tē	nōbīs	vōbīs

77. Reflexive Pronouns refer to the subject of the clause or sentence in which they stand. The First and Second Persons are supplied by the oblique cases of the personal pronouns **ego** and **tū**. The Third Personal Pronoun is **sē**, which serves for all genders and both numbers. It is declined as follows:

Gen.	suī
Dat.	sibi
Acc.	sē
Abl.	sē

78. The Possessive Pronouns are really adjectives of the First and Second Declensions, and are inflected accordingly. They are the following:

meus	mea	meum, *my*	etc., like magnus
tuus	tua	tuum, *thy*	
suus	sua	suum, *his, her, its*	
noster	nostra	nostrum, *our*	etc., like sacer
vester	vestra	vestrum, *your*	

79. Suus is used only reflexively: otherwise *his, her, its* are commonly expressed by **eius**, the Genitive Singular of **is**, and *their* by **eōrum**, the Genitive Plural of the same pronoun.

80. The Vocative Singular Masculine of **meus** is **mī**.

81. The Demonstrative Pronouns are **hīc**, *this;* **iste**, *that of yours;* **ille**, *that;* **is**, *that* (less strong than **ille**); **īdem**, *the same*. They are declined as follows:

	SINGULAR					
Nom.	hīc	haec	hōc	ille	illa	illud
Gen.	huius	huius	huius	illīus	illīus	illīus
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	illī	illī	illī
Acc.	hunc	hanc	nōc	illum	illam	illud
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	illō	illā	illō

	PLURAL					
Nom.	hī	hae	haec	illī	illae	illa
Gen.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs
Acc.	hōs	hās	haec	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs

	SINGULAR			PLURAL	
is	ea	id	iī (eī)	eae	ea
eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
eī	eī	eī	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)
eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
eō	eā	eō	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)

	SINGULAR		
Nom.	īdem	eadem	idem
Gen.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem

	PLURAL		
Nom.	iīdem (eīdem)	eaedem	eadem
Gen.	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	iīsdem (eīsdem)	iīsdem (eīsdem)	iīsdem (eīsdem)
Acc.	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	iīsdem (eīsdem)	iīsdem (eīsdem)	iīsdem (eīsdem)

a. Like **ille** is declined **iste**, *that of yours*, often referring to something previously mentioned by the person addressed, and frequently having a sarcastic force.

82. The Intensive Pronoun in Latin is **ipse**, *self*. It is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
Gen.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

83. The Relative Pronoun, **quī**, *who*, is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

84. The Interrogative Pronouns are the Substantive **quīs**, *who?* and the Adjective **quī**, *what kind of?* The latter is declined exactly like the Relative Pronoun **quī** (**83**). The former is inflected as follows:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL
	M. AND F.	N.	
Nom.	quis	quid	**like quī**
Gen.	cuius	cuius	
Dat.	cui	cui	
Acc.	quem	quid	
Abl.	quō	quō	

85. The Indefinite Pronouns, meaning in general *some one*, *any one*, with their corresponding Adjective forms, are the following:

SUBSTANTIVES			ADJECTIVES		
M. AND F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
quis	quid	*any one, anything.*	quī	quae *or* qua	quod, *any.*
aliquis	aliquid	*some one, something.*	aliquī	aliqua	aliquod, *any.*
quisquam	quidquam or quicquam	*any one, anything.*	No corresponding adjective.		
quisque	quidque, *each.*		quisque	quaeque	quodque, *each.*
quīvīs quīlibet	quaevīs quaelibet	quidvīs quidlibet *any one, anything you wish.*	quīvīs quīlibet	quaevīs quaelibet	quodvīs quodlibet *any you wish*
quīdam	quaedam	quiddam *a certain person or thing.*	quīdam	quaedam	quoddam *a certain.*

86. Only the pronominal part is declined, after the following models:

	SINGULAR		
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	aliquis, aliquī	aliqua	aliquid, aliquod
Gen.	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius
Dat.	alicui	alicui	alicui
Acc.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid, aliquod
Abl.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō
	PLURAL		
Nom.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
Gen.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
Dat.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Acc.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Abl.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

	SINGULAR		
Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam, quoddam
Gen.	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam
Dat.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
Acc.	quendam	quandam	quiddam, quoddam
Abl.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam
	PLURAL		
Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
Gen.	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
Dat.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
Acc.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
Abl.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

F. VERBS

1. Principal Parts

87. The Principal Parts of a Verb are those which contain the different stems, from which the entire conjugation of the Verb may be derived. These are the Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and the Perfect Participle. When the last named is lacking, the Future Active Participle is given in its place.

2. Conjugation of sum

88. The Irregular Verb **sum**, *be*, which enters into the inflection of all other verbs, is conjugated as follows:

Principal Parts: **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus**[1]

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
	Present		
sum	sumus	sim	sīmus
es	estis	sīs	sītis
est	sunt	sit	sint
	Imperfect		
eram	erāmus	essem	essēmus
erās	erātis	essēs	essētis
erat	erant	esset	essent
	Future		
erō	erimus		
eris	eritis		
erit	erunt		
	Perfect		
fuī	fuimus	fuerim	fuerīmus
fuistī	fuistis	fuerīs	fuerītis
fuit	fuērunt (fuēre)	fuerit	fuerint
	Pluperfect		
fueram	fuerāmus	fuissem	fuissēmus
fuerās	fuerātis	fuissēs	fuissētis
fuerat	fuerant	fuisset	fuissent
	Future Perfect		
fuerō	fuerimus		
fueris	fueritis		
fuerit	fuerint		

IMPERATIVE			INFINITIVES	
Pres.	es	este	*Pres.*	esse
Fut.	estō	estōte	*Perf.*	fuisse
	estō	suntō	*Fut.*	futūrus esse (fore)

PARTICIPLE

Fut. futūrus

[1] The Perfect Participle of **sum** is wanting.

THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

89. There are four regular conjugations, distinguished from one another by the vowel of the Present Infinitive Active, as follows:

Conjugation	Infinitive Ending	Characteristic Vowel
First	-āre	-ā
Second	-ēre	-ē
Third	-ĕre	-ĕ
Fourth	-īre	-ī

a. First Conjugation. ā-Stems

90. **laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātus,** *praise*

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
		Active	
		Present	
laudō	**laudāmus**	**laudem**	**laudēmus**
laudās	**laudātis**	**laudēs**	**laudētis**
laudat	**laudant**	**laudet**	**laudent**
		Imperfect	
laudābam	**laudābāmus**	**laudārem**	**laudārēmus**
laudābās	**laudābātis**	**laudārēs**	**laudārētis**
laudābat	**laudābant**	**laudāret**	**laudārent**
		Future	
laudābō	**laudābimus**		
laudābis	**laudābitis**		
laudābit	**laudābunt**		
		Perfect	
laudāvī	**laudāvimus**	**laudāverim**	**laudāverīmus**
laudāvistī	**laudāvistis**	**laudāverīs**	**laudāverītis**
laudāvit	**laudāvērunt** (-ēre)	**laudāverit**	**laudāverint**
		Pluperfect	
laudāveram	**laudāverāmus**	**laudāvissem**	**laudāvissēmus**
laudāverās	**laudāverātis**	**laudāvissēs**	**laudāvissētis**
laudāverat	**laudāverant**	**laudāvisset**	**laudāvissent**
		Future Perfect	
laudāverō	**laudāverimus**		
laudāveris	**laudāveritis**		
laudāverit	**laudāverint**		

PASSIVE

Present

laudor	laudāmur	lauder	laudēmur
laudāris (-āre)	laudāminī	laudēris (-ēre)	laudēminī
laudātur	laudantur	laudētur	laudentur

Imperfect

laudābar	laudābāmur	laudārer	laudārēmur
laudābāris (-ābāre)	laudābāminī	laudārēris (-ārēre)	laudārēminī
laudābātur	laudābantur	laudārētur	laudārentur

Future

laudābor	laudābimur
laudāberis (-ābere)	laudābiminī
laudābitur	laudābuntur

Perfect

laudātus sum	laudātī sumus	laudātus sim	laudātī sīmus
laudātus es	laudātī estis	laudātus sīs	laudātī sītis
laudātus est	laudātī sunt	laudātus sit	laudātī sint

Pluperfect

laudātus eram	laudātī erāmus	laudātus essem	laudātī essēmus
laudātus erās	laudātī erātis	laudātus essēs	laudātī essētis
laudātus erat	laudātī erant	laudātus esset	laudātī essent

Future Perfect

laudātus erō	laudātī erimus
laudātus eris	laudātī eritis
laudātus erit	laudātī erunt

IMPERATIVE

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
Pres.	laudā	laudāte	laudāre	laudāminī
Fut.	laudātō	laudātōte	laudātor	
	laudātō	laudantō	laudātor	laudantor

INFINITIVE

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Pres.	laudāre	laudārī
Perf.	laudāvisse	laudātus esse
Fut.	laudātūrus esse	laudātum īrī

PARTICIPLE

	Active	Passive
Pres.	laudāns	
Perf.		laudātus
Fut.	laudātūrus	laudandus

	Gerund	Supine
Gen.	laudandī	
Dat.	laudandō	
Acc.	laudandum	laudātum
Abl.	laudandō	laudātū

91. *b.* Second Conjugation. ē-Stems

doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus, *teach*

Indicative		Subjunctive	
Active			
Present			
doceō	docēmus	doceam	doceāmus
docēs	docētis	doceās	doceātis
docet	docent	doceat	doceant
Imperfect			
docēbam	docēbāmus	docērem	docērēmus
docēbās	docēbātis	docērēs	docērētis
docēbat	docēbant	docēret	docērent
Future			
docēbō	docēbimus		
docēbis	docēbitis		
docēbit	docēbunt		
Perfect			
docuī	docuimus	docuerim	docuerīmus
docuistī	docuistis	docuerīs	docuerītis
docuit	docuērunt (-ēre)	docuerit	docuerint
Pluperfect			
docueram	docuerāmus	docuissem	docuissēmus
docuerās	docuerātis	docuissēs	docuissētis
docuerat	docuerant	docuisset	docuissent

Future Perfect

docuerō	docuerimus
docueris	docueritis
docuerit	docuerint

PASSIVE

Present

doceor	docēmur	docear	doceāmur
docēris (-ēre)	docēminī	doceāris (-eāre)	doceāminī
docētur	docentur	doceātur	doceantur

Imperfect

docēbar	docēbāmur	docērer	docērēmur
docēbāris (-ēbāre)	docēbāminī	docērēris (-ērēre)	docērēminī
docēbātur	docēbantur	docērētur	docērentur

Future

docēbor	docēbimur
docēberis (-ēbere)	docēbiminī
docēbitur	docēbuntur

Perfect

doctus sum	doctī sumus	doctus sim	doctī sīmus
doctus es	doctī estis	doctus sīs	doctī sītis
doctus est	doctī sunt	doctus sit	doctī sint

Pluperfect

doctus eram	doctī erāmus	doctus essem	doctī essēmus
doctus erās	doctī erātis	doctus essēs	doctī essētis
doctus erat	doctī erant	doctus esset	doctī essent

Future Perfect

doctus erō	doctī erimus
doctus eris	doctī eritis
doctus erit	doctī erunt

IMPERATIVE

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
Pres.	docē	docēte	docēre	docēminī
Fut.	docētō	docētōte	docētor	
	docētō	docentō	docētor	docentor

INFINITIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE
Pres.	docēre	docērī
Perf.	docuisse	doctus esse
Fut.	doctūrus esse	doctum īrī

PARTICIPLE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE
Pres.	docēns	
Perf.		doctus
Fut.	doctūrus	docendus

GERUND		SUPINE
Gen.	docendī	
Dat.	docendō	
Acc.	docendum	doctum
Abl.	docendō	doctū

92. *c.* THIRD CONJUGATION. e-STEMS. VERBS IN **-ō**

regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus, *rule*

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
ACTIVE			
Present			
regō	**regimus**	**regam**	**regāmus**
regis	**regitis**	**regās**	**regātis**
regit	**regunt**	**regat**	**regant**
Imperfect			
regēbam	**regēbāmus**	**regerem**	**regerēmus**
regēbās	**regēbātis**	**regerēs**	**regerētis**
regēbat	**regēbant**	**regeret**	**regerent**
Future			
regam	**regēmus**		
regēs	**regētis**		
reget	**regent**		
Perfect			
rēxī	**rēximus**	**rēxerim**	**rēxerīmus**
rēxistī	**rēxistis**	**rēxerīs**	**rēxerītis**
rēxit	**rēxērunt** (-ēre)	**rēxerit**	**rēxerint**

Pluperfect

rēxeram	rēxerāmus	rēxissem	rēxissēmus
rēxerās	rēxerātis	rēxissēs	rēxissētis
rēxerat	rēxerant	rēxisset	rēxissent

Future Perfect

rēxerō	rēxerimus
rēxeris	rēxeritis
rēxerit	rēxerint

PASSIVE

Present

regor	regimur	regār	regāmur
regeris (-ere)	regiminī	regāris (-āre)	regāminī
regitur	reguntur	regātur	regantur

Imperfect

regēbar	regēbāmur	regerer	regerēmur
regēbāris (-ēbāre)	regēbāminī	regerēris (-erēre)	regerēminī
regēbātur	regēbantur	regerētur	regerentur

Future

regar	regēmur
regēris (-ēre)	regēminī
regētur	regentur

Perfect

rēctus sum	rēctī sumus	rēctus sim	rēctī sīmus
rēctus es	rēctī estis	rēctus sīs	rēctī sītis
rēctus est	rēctī sunt	rēctus sit	rēctī sint

Pluperfect

rēctus eram	rēctī erāmus	rēctus essem	rēctī essēmus
rēctus erās	rēctī erātis	rēctus essēs	rēctī essētis
rēctus erat	rēctī erant	rēctus esset	rēctī essent

Future Perfect

rēctus erō	rēctī erimus
rēctus eris	rēctī eritis
rēctus erit	rēctī erunt

IMPERATIVE

	Active		Passive	
Pres.	rege	regite	regere	regiminī
Fut.	regitō	regitōte	regitor	
	regitō	reguntō	regitor	reguntor

INFINITIVE

	Active	Passive
Pres.	regere	regī
Perf.	rēxisse	rēctus esse
Fut.	rēctūrus esse	rēctum īrī

PARTICIPLE

	Active	Passive
Pres.	regēns	
Perf.		rēctus
Fut.	rēctūrus	regendus

	GERUND	SUPINE
Gen.	regendī	
Dat.	regendō	
Acc.	regendum	rēctum
Abl.	regendō	rēctū

d. Third Conjugation. e-Stems. Verbs in -iō

93. Verbs in **-iō** retain **i** before the personal ending when the latter begins with a vowel.

capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, *take*

INDICATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

Active

Present

capiō	capimus	capiam	capiāmus
capis	capitis	capiās	capiātis
capit	capiunt	capiat	capiant

Imperfect

capiēbam	capiēbāmus	caperem	caperēmus
capiēbās	capiēbātis	caperēs	caperētis
capiēbat	capiēbant	caperet	caperent

Future

capiam	capiēmus
capiēs	capiētis
capiet	capient

Perfect

cēpī	cēpimus	cēperim	cēperīmus
cēpistī	cēpistis	cēperīs	cēperītis
cēpit	cēpērunt (-ēre)	cēperit	cēperint

Pluperfect

cēperam	cēperāmus	cēpissem	cēpissēmus
cēperās	cēperātis	cēpissēs	cēpissētis
cēperat	cēperant	cēpisset	cēpissent

Future Perfect

cēperō	cēperimus
cēperis	cēperitis
cēperit	cēperint

PASSIVE

Present

capior	capimur	capiar	capiāmur
caperis (-ere)	capiminī	capiāris (-iāre)	capiāminī
capitur	capiuntur	capiātur	capiantur

Imperfect

capiēbar	capiēbāmur	caperer	caperēmur
capiēbāris (-iēbāre)	capiēbāminī	caperēris (-erēre)	caperēminī
capiēbātur	capiēbantur	caperētur	caperentur

Future

capiar	capiēmur
capiēris (-iēre)	capiēminī
capiētur	capientur

Perfect

captus sum	captī sumus	captus sim	captī sīmus
captus es	captī estis	captus sīs	captī sītis
captus est	captī sunt	captus sit	captī sint

Pluperfect

captus eram	captī erāmus	captus essem	captī essēmus
captus erās	captī erātis	captus essēs	captī essētis
captus erat	captī erant	captus esset	captī essent

Future Perfect

captus erō	captī erimus
captus eris	captī eritis
captus erit	captī erunt

IMPERATIVE

	Active		Passive	
Pres.	cape	capite	capere	capiminī
Fut.	capitō	capitōte	capitor	
	capitō	capiuntō	capitor	capiuntor

INFINITIVE

	Active	Passive
Pres.	capere	capī
Perf.	cēpisse	captus esse
Fut.	captūrus esse	captum īrī

PARTICIPLE

	Active	Passive
Pres.	capiēns	
Perf.		captus
Fut.	captūrus	capiendus

	GERUND	SUPINE
Gen.	capiendī	
Dat.	capiendō	
Acc.	capiendum	captum
Abl.	capiendō	captū

94. *e.* Fourth Conjugation. ī-Stems

mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī, mūnītus, *fortify*

INDICATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

Active

Present

mūniō	mūnīmus	mūniam	mūniāmus
mūnīs	mūnītis	mūniās	mūniātis
mūnit	mūniunt	mūniat	mūniant

Imperfect

mūniēbam	mūniēbāmus	mūnīrem	mūnīrēmus
mūniēbās	mūniēbātis	mūnīrēs	mūnīrētis
mūniēbat	mūniēbant	mūnīret	mūnīrent

Future

mūniam	mūniēmus
mūniēs	mūniētis
mūniet	mūnient

Perfect

mūnīvī	mūnīvimus	mūnīverim	mūnīverīmus
mūnīvistī	mūnīvistis	mūnīverīs	mūnīverītis
mūnīvit	mūnīvērunt (-ēre)	mūnīverit	mūnīverint

Pluperfect

mūnīveram	mūnīverāmus	mūnīvissem	mūnīvissēmus
mūnīverās	mūnīverātis	mūnīvissēs	mūnīvissētis
mūnīverat	mūnīverant	mūnīvisset	mūnīvissent

Future Perfect

mūnīverō	mūnīverimus
mūnīveris	mūnīveritis
mūnīverit	mūnīverint

PASSIVE

Present

mūnior	mūnīmur	mūniar	mūniāmur
mūnīris (-īre)	mūnīminī	mūniāris (-iāre)	mūniāminī
mūnītur	mūniuntur	mūniātur	mūniantur

Imperfect

mūniēbar	mūniēbāmur	mūnīrer	mūnīrēmur
mūniēbāris (-iēbāre)	mūniēbāminī	mūnīrēris (-īrēre)	mūnīrēminī
mūniēbātur	mūniēbantur	mūnīrētur	mūnīrentur

Future

mūniar	mūniēmur
mūniēris (-ēre)	mūniēminī
mūniētur	mūnientur

Perfect

mūnītus sum	mūnītī sumus	mūnītus sim	mūnītī sīmus
mūnītus es	mūnītī estis	mūnītus sīs	mūnītī sītis
mūnītus est	mūnītī sunt	mūnītus sit	mūnītī sint

Pluperfect

mūnītus eram	mūnītī erāmus	mūnītus essem	mūnītī essēmus
mūnītus erās	mūnītī erātis	mūnītus essēs	mūnītī essētis
mūnītus erat	mūnītī erant	mūnītus esset	mūnītī essent

Future Perfect

mūnītus erō	mūnītī erimus
mūnītus eris	mūnītī eritis
mūnītus erit	mūnītī erunt

IMPERATIVE

	Active		Passive	
Pres.	mūnī	mūnīte	mūnīre	mūnīminī
Fut.	mūnītō	mūnītōte	mūnītor	
	mūnītō	mūniuntō	mūnītor	mūniuntor

INFINITIVE

	Active	Passive
Pres.	mūnīre	mūnīrī
Perf.	mūnīvisse	mūnītus esse
Fut.	mūnītūrus esse	mūnītum īrī

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	mūniēns	
Perf.		mūnītus
Fut.	mūnītūrus	mūniendus

	GERUND	SUPINE
Gen.	mūniendī	
Dat.	mūniendō	
Acc.	mūniendum	mūnītum
Abl.	mūniendō	mūnītū

f. Deponent Verbs

95. Deponent Verbs have as a rule Passive forms with Active meaning. They have the following Active forms: Future Infini-

tive, Present and Future Participles, Gerund, and the Supine; and the following Passive meanings: always in the Gerundive and sometimes in the Perfect Passive Participle.

The following are the synopses of Deponent Verbs of the four conjugations, in the Third Person Singular:

CONJ. I. mīror, mīrārī, mīrātus sum, *admire*
II. vereor, verērī, veritus sum, *fear*
III. sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow*
IV. partior, partīrī, partītus sum, *divide*

	I	II	III	IV
		INDICATIVE		
Pres.	mīrātur	verētur	sequitur	partītur
Imperf.	mīrābātur	verēbātur	sequēbātur	partiēbātur
Fut.	mīrābitur	verēbitur	sequētur	partiētur
Perf.	mīrātus est	veritus est	secūtus est	partītus est
Pluperf.	mīrātus erat	veritus erat	secūtus erat	partītus erat
Fut. Perf.	mīrātus erit	veritus erit	secūtus erit	partītus erit
		SUBJUNCTIVE		
Pres.	mīrētur	vereātur	sequātur	partiātur
Imperf.	mīrārētur	verērētur	sequerētur	partīrētur
Perf.	mīrātus sit	veritus sit	secūtus sit	partītus sit
Pluperf.	mīrātus esset	veritus esset	secūtus esset	partītus esset
		IMPERATIVE		
Pres.	mīrāre[1]	verēre[1]	sequere[1]	partīre[1]
Fut.	mirātor	verētor	sequitor	partītor
		INFINITIVE		
Pres.	mīrārī	verērī	sequī	partīrī
Perf.	mīrātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	partītus esse
Fut.	mīrātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	partītūrus esse
		PARTICIPLE		
Pres. Act.	mīrāns	verēns	sequēns	partiēns
Fut. Act.	mīrātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	partītūrus
Perf. Pass.	mīrātus	veritus	secūtus	partītus
Fut. Pass.	mīrandus	verendus	sequendus	partiendus

[1] Second person.

GERUND

mīrandī, -ō, -um, -ō	verendī, -ō, -um, -ō	sequendī, -ō, -um, -ō	partiendī, -ō, -um, -ō

SUPINE

mīrātum, -ū	veritum, -ū	secūtum, -ū	partītum, -ū

g. Semi-Deponents

96. Semi-Deponents have the Present System in the Active Voice and the Perfect System in the Passive without change of meaning. These are:

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, *dare*
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, *rejoice*
soleō, solēre, solitus sum, *be accustomed*
fīdō,[1] fīdere, fīsus sum, *trust*

h. The Periphrastic Conjugations

97. There are two Periphrastic Conjugations, Active and Passive. The former is made by combining the Future Active Participle with **sum**; the latter, by combining the Gerundive with the same auxiliary; as follows:

(1) First (Active) Periphrastic Conjugation

INDICATIVE

Pres.	laudātūrus sum,[2] *I am about to praise*		
Imperf.	laudātūrus eram	*Pluperf.*	laudātūrus fueram
Fut.	laudātūrus erō	*Fut. Perf.*	laudātūrus fuerō
Perf.	laudātūrus fuī		

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	laudātūrus sim	*Perf.*	laudātūrus fuerim
Imperf.	laudātūrus essem	*Pluperf.*	laudātūrus fuissem

INFINITIVE

Pres.	laudātūrus esse	*Perf.*	laudātūrus fuisse

[1] And compounds of **fīdō**.

[2] So also: **doctūrus sum**, *I am about to teach*; **rēctūrus sum**, *I am about to rule*; **captūrus sum**, *I am about to take*; **mūnītūrus sum**, *I am about to fortify*.

(2) SECOND (PASSIVE) PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

INDICATIVE

Pres.	laudandus sum,[1] *I must be praised (am to be praised)*		
Imperf.	laudandus eram	*Pluperf.*	laudandus fueram
Fut.	laudandus erō	*Fut. Perf.*	laudandus fuerō
Perf.	laudandus fuī		

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	laudandus sim	*Perf.*	laudandus fuerim
Imperf.	laudandus essem	*Pluperf.*	laudandus fuissem

INFINITIVE

Pres.	laudandus esse	*Perf.*	laudandus fuisse

i. Irregular Verbs

98. A number of Verbs are called Irregular. The most important are **sum**,[2] **dō**, **edō**, **ferō**, **volō**, **nōlō**, **mālō**, **eō**, **fīō**. The peculiarity of these Verbs is that they append the personal endings in many forms directly to the stem, instead of employing a connecting vowel; thus **fer-s** (2d Sing. of **fer-ō**) instead of **fer-is**. These are survivals of what was once in Latin a large class of Verbs.

99. (1) **possum, posse, potuī,** *be able*

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
	Present		
possum	possumus	possim	possīmus
potes	potestis	possīs	possītis
potest	possunt	possit	possint
	Imperfect		
poteram	poterāmus	possem	possēmus
poterās	poterātis	possēs	possētis
poterat	poterant	posset	possent

[1] So also: **docendus sum**, *I must be taught*; **regendus sum**, *I must be ruled*; **capiendus sum**, *I must be caught*; **mūniendus sum**, *I must be protected*.

[2] For the conjugation of **sum** see **88**.

Future

poterō	poterimus
poteris	poteritis
poterit	poterunt

Perfect

potuī, -istī, etc. potuerim, -erīs, etc.

Pluperfect

potueram, -erās, etc. potuissem, -issēs, etc.

Future Perfect

potuerō, -eris, etc.

INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
Pres. posse	potēns, -entis (only as adj.)
Perf. potuisse	

100. (2) **volō, velle, voluī,** *wish*

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Present			
volō	volumus	velim	velīmus
vīs	vultis	velīs	velītis
vult	volunt	velit	velint
Imperfect			
volēbam, -bās, etc.		vellem	vellēmus
		vellēs	vellētis
		vellet	vellent
Future			
volam, volēs, etc.			
Perfect			
voluī, -istī, etc.		voluerim, -erīs, etc.	
Pluperfect			
volueram, -erās, etc.		voluissem, -issēs, etc.	
Future Perfect			
voluerō, -eris, etc.			

INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
Pres. velle	volēns, -entis
Perf. voluisse	

101. (3) **nōlō, nōlle, nōluī,** *be unwilling*

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
	Present		
nōlō	nōlumus	nōlim	nōlīmus
nōn vīs	nōn vultis	nōlīs	nōlītis
nōn vult	nōlunt	nōlit	nōlint
	Imperfect		
nōlēbam, -bās, etc.		nōllem	nōllēmus
		nōllēs	nōllētis
		nōllet	nōllent
	Future		
nōlam, nōlēs, etc.			
	Perfect		
nōluī, -istī, etc.		nōluerim, -erīs, etc.	
	Pluperfect		
nōlueram, -erās, etc.		nōluissem, -issēs, etc.	
	Future Perfect		
nōluerō, -eris, etc.			

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	nōlī	nōlīte
Fut.	nōlītō	nōlītōte
	nōlītō	nōluntō

INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE
Pres.	nōlle	nōlēns, -entis
Perf.	nōluisse	

102. (4) **mālō, mālle, māluī,** *prefer*

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
	Present		
mālō	mālumus	mālim	mālīmus
māvīs	māvultis	mālīs	mālītis
māvult	mālunt	mālit	mālint
	Imperfect		
mālēbam, -bās, etc.		māllem	māllēmus
		māllēs	mālētis
		māllet	māllent

Future

mālam, mālēs, etc.

Perfect

māluī, -istī, etc. māluerim, -erīs, etc.

Pluperfect

mālueram, -erās, etc. māluissem, issēs, etc

Future Perfect

māluerō, -eris, etc.

INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE
Pres.	mālle	wanting
Perf.	māluisse	wanting

103. (5) **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus**, *bear*

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
	ACTIVE		
	Present		
ferō	ferimus	feram	ferāmus
fers	fertis	ferās	ferātis
fert	ferunt	ferat	ferant
	Imperfect		
ferēbam, -bās, etc.		ferrem	ferrēmus
		ferrēs	ferrētis
		ferret	ferrent
	Future		
feram, ferēs, etc.			
	Perfect		
tulī, -istī, etc.		tulerim, -erīs, etc.	
	Pluperfect		
tuleram, -erās, etc.		tulissem, -issēs, etc.	
	Future Perfect		
tulerō, -eris, etc.			
	PASSIVE		
	Present		
feror	ferimur	ferar	ferāmur
ferris	feriminī	ferāris (-āre)	ferāminī
fertur	feruntur	ferātur	ferantur

Imperfect

ferēbar, -bāris, etc. ferrer, -rēris, etc.

Future

ferar, -ēris, etc.

Perfect

lātus sum, es, etc. lātus sim, sīs, etc.

Pluperfect

lātus eram, erās, etc. lātus essem, essēs, etc.

Future Perfect

lātus erō, eris, etc.

IMPERATIVE

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
Pres.	fer	ferte	ferre	feriminī
Fut.	fertō	fertōte	fertor	
	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

INFINITIVE

Pres.	ferre	ferrī
Perf.	tulisse	lātus esse
Fut.	lātūrus esse	lātum īrī

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	ferēns, -entis	
Perf.		lātus
Fut.	lātūrus	ferendus

GERUND SUPINE

ferendī, ferendō, ferendum, ferendō lātum, lātū

104. (6) **eō, īre, īvī, itum,** *go*

INDICATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

eō	īmus	eam	eāmus
īs	ītis	eās	eātis
it	eunt	eat	eant

Imperfect

ībam, -bās, etc. īrem, -rēs, etc.

Future

ībō, -bis, etc.

Perfect

īvī (iī),[1] īvistī, etc.	īverim (ierim), -erīs, etc.

Pluperfect

īveram (ieram), -erās, etc.	īvissem (iisem, īssem), -sēs, etc.

Future Perfect

īverō (ierō), -eris, etc.

IMPERATIVE			INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE
Pres.	ī	īte	*Pres.*	īre	iēns, euntis, etc.
Fut.	ītō	ītōte	*Perf.*	īvisse (iisse, īsse)	
	ītō	euntō	*Fut.*	itūrus esse	itūrus

GERUND	SUPINE
eundī, eundō, eundum, eundō	itum, itū

105. (7) **fīō, fierī, factus sum,** *become*

(Used as the passive of **faciō**, from which all but the present system is supplied.)

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Present			
fīō	(fīmus)[1]	fīam	fīāmus
fīs	(fītis)	fīās	fīātis
fit	fīunt	fīat	fīant

Imperfect

fīēbam -bās, etc.	fierem, -rēs, etc.

Future

fīam, fīēs, etc.

Perfect

factus sum, es, etc.	factus sim, sīs, etc.

Pluperfect

factus eram, erās, etc.	factus essem, essēs, etc.

Future Perfect

factus erō, eris, etc.

[1] The forms in parenthesis are very rare.

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	fī	fīte
Fut.	(fītō)[1]	

	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
Pres.	fierī	
Perf.	factus esse	factus
Fut.	factum īrī	faciendus

106. (8) **dō, dare, dedī, datus**, *give*

(Irregular only in the present system, and there only in the quantity of the **a**; the supine also has **ă**.)

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
	Present		
dō	damus	dem	dēmus
dās	datis	dēs	dētis
dat	dant	det	dent

Imperfect

dabam, -bās, etc. darem, -rēs, etc.

Future

dabō, -bis, etc.

Perfect

dedī, -istī, etc. dederim, -erīs, etc.

Pluperfect

dederam, -erās, etc. dedissem, -issēs, etc.

Future Perfect

dederō, -eris, etc.

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	dā	date
Fut.	datō	datōte
	datō	dantō

	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
Pres.	dare	dāns
Perf.	dedisse	
Fut.	datūrus esse	datūrus

[1] The forms in parenthesis are very rare.

GERUND	SUPINE
dandī, etc.	datum, datū

PASSIVE

Formed regularly from the corresponding active forms. The synopsis in the third person singular is as follows:

Indicative, datur, dabātur, dabitur, datus est, datus erat, datus erit; *Subjunctive*, dētur, darētur, datus sit, datus esset; *Imperative* (*entire*), dare, daminī, dator, dator, dantor; *Infinitive*, darī, datus esse, datum īrī; *Participle*, datus, dandus.

II. WORD FORMATION

A. DERIVATIVES

107. Derivatives are formed by adding terminations called Suffixes to roots, or to stems of nouns, adjectives, or verbs. Words formed directly from roots or from verb stems are sometimes called *Primitives;* those formed from noun or adjective stems are called *Denominatives.*

1. *Nouns*

108. Nouns are derived from verbs by means of the following suffixes:[1]

a. **-tor** or **-sor** denotes the *agent* or *doer* of the action expressed by the verb: imperā**tor**, 'commander' (from **imperō**, 'command');[2] dēfēn**sor**, 'defender' (from **dēfendō**, 'defend').

b. The suffixes **-iō**, **-tiō** (**-siō**), **-tus** (**-sus**), **-ma**, and **-ium** denote the *action* expressed by the verb or the *result* of such action: legi**ō**, 'collection, legion' (from **legō**, 'collect'); ōrā**tiō**, 'plea, oration' (from **ōrō**, 'plead'); adi**tus**, 'approach' (from **adeō**, 'approach'); fā**ma**, 'report, fame' (from **for**, 'speak'); aedifi**cium**, 'building' (from **aedificō**, 'build').

c. The suffixes **-men**, **-mentum**, **-ulum**, **-culum**, **-bula** denote the *means* or *place* of an action, or its *result:* flū**men**, 'flowing stream, river' (from **fluō**, 'flow'); ōrnā**mentum**, 'ornament' (from **ōrnō**, 'adorn'); vin**culum**, 'bond' (from **vinciō**, 'bind'); perī**culum**, 'trial, danger' (from **perior**, 'try'[3]); fā**bula**, 'story' (from **for**, 'speak, tell').

[1] The lists are of course not complete; only a selection is given.

[2] That is, from **imperā-**, the stem of the verb, and so in the other examples in 108–113. The stem is sometimes modified, as in **magnitūdō** for **magno-tūdō**, etc.

[3] Found only in composition; cf. *experior.*

d. The suffix **-or** denotes a *state* or *condition:* tim**or** 'fear' (from **timeō**, 'fear').

109. Nouns are derived from adjectives or from other nouns by means of the following suffixes:

a. The suffixes **-ia, -tia, -tās, -tūdō** form abstract nouns denoting *qualities:* audā**cia**, 'boldness' (from **audāx**, 'bold'); amī**citia**, 'friendship' (from **amīcus**, 'friendly, friend'); cīvi**tās**, 'state' (from **cīvis**, 'citizen'); magni**tūdō**, 'greatness' (from **magnus**, 'great').

b. The suffix **-ārium** denotes *place:* aer**ārium**, 'treasury' (from **aes**, 'money').

c. The suffix **-ātus** denotes *position* or *office:* cōnsul**ātus**, 'consulship' (from **cōnsul**, 'consul').

d. The suffixes **-ulus, -a, -um** and **-culus, -a, -um** form Diminutives: adulēscen**tulus**, 'very young man' (from **adulēscēns**, 'young man'); nā**vicula**, 'boat' (from **nāvis**, 'ship').

2. *Adjectives*

110. Adjectives are derived from verbs by means of the following suffixes:

a. The suffix **-āx** denotes an *inclination* or *tendency:* aud**āx**, 'daring' (from **audeō**, 'dare').

b. The suffixes **-ilis, -bilis,** and **-tīvus** form adjectives with a *passive* meaning:[1] fa**cilis** 'capable of being done, easy' (from **faciō**, 'do'); capt**īvus**, 'captive' (from **capiō**, 'take').

c. The suffix **-idus** denotes a *state* or *condition:* cup**idus**, 'desirous' (from **cupiō**, 'desire').

111. Adjectives are derived from nouns by means of the following suffixes:

a. The suffix **-ōsus** denotes *fullness:* perīcul**ōsus**, 'full of danger' (from **perīculum**, 'danger').

b. The suffix **-eus** frequently denotes *material:* aur**eus** 'golden' (from **aurum**, 'gold'); ferr**eus**, 'of iron' (from **ferrum**, 'iron').

[1] The first two frequently denote *capability in a passive sense.*

c. The suffixes **-ānus** and **-ēnsis** mean *belonging to:* Rōmānus, 'Roman' (from **Rōma**, 'Rome'); Carthāginiēnsis, 'Carthaginian' (from **Carthāgō**, 'Carthage').

d. The suffixes **-ālis** or **-īlis** mean *pertaining to:* hostīlis, 'hostile' (from **hostis**, 'enemy'); līberālis, 'liberal' (from **līber**, 'freeman').

3. *Verbs*

112. Verbs are derived from other verbs by means of the following suffixes:

a. **-scō** forms *inceptives*, denoting the *beginning* of an action: concupīscō, 'begin to have an eager desire.'[1]

b. **-tō** or **-sō** (**-itō** with verbs of the First Conjugation) forms *frequentatives* or *intensives:* iactō, 'toss about, hurl' (from **iaciō**, 'throw'); volitō, 'flit about' (from **volō**, 'fly').

c. Some verbs in **-ssō** denote *vigorous action:* capessō, 'seize' (from **capiō**, 'take').

113. Verbs derived from nouns and adjectives are called *Denominatives.* Denominatives are most frequently of the First Conjugation and transitive. Those of the Second Conjugation are intransitive, while those of the Third and Fourth are sometimes transitive and sometimes intransitive: cūrō, **-āre**, 'care for' (from **cūra**, 'care'); laudō, **-āre**, 'praise' (from **laus**, 'praise'); līberō, **-āre**, 'free' (from **līber**, 'free').

B. COMPOUNDS

114. Compounds are formed by the union of simple words. The second member commonly contains the essential meaning of the compound, while the first member qualifies that meaning in various ways.

1. *Real Compounds*

115. In compound nouns the first part may be an adjective, an adverb, a preposition, or an inseparable prefix, modifying the second part: **dē-decus**, 'disgrace'; **aequi-noctium**, 'equinox.'

[1] **Con-** is intensive. The vowel before **-scō** is regularly long.

Or the first part may represent the oblique case of a noun and the second a verb stem: **agri-cola**, 'farmer' (**ager**, **colō**).

116. Adjectives may be formed by the union of a preposition or inseparable prefix with an adjective or noun, or of a noun or adjective with a verb stem: **dif-ficilis**, 'difficult'; **prae-clārus**, 'very famous'; **parti-ceps**, 'sharing.'

117. Verbs may be formed by the union of a verb with a noun, an adverb, a preposition, or an inseparable prefix: **aedi-ficō**, 'build'; **satis-faciō**, 'satisfy'; **ab-dūcō**, 'lead away'; **sē-iungō**, 'separate.'

2. *Apparent Compounds*

118. Apparent compounds are formed:

a. By the union of a noun and a modifying adjective, both parts being declined: **rēspūblica**, 'republic'; **iūsiūrandum**, 'oath.'

b. By the combination of two nouns, of which one has an unchanging case ending, while the other is declined: **agrī-cultūra**, 'agriculture' ('cultivation of the field').

The Derivation of words and their connection with one another may be illustrated by the following

WORD GROUPS

Note. — Sample groups are first given, with the meanings of all the words and with some references to various sections of the *Grammatical Appendix*. In those which follow, the meaning of the first word only is given except in cases of especial difficulty, and the student is expected to determine the other meanings from the force of the suffixes and prefixes, with the help of the Vocabulary, if he needs it.

SAMPLE GROUPS

A

līber, *free*. 48
  līberē, *freely*. 67
  līberālis, *liberal*. 111, *d*
    līberāliter, *liberally*. 67
    līberālitās, *liberality*. 109, *a*
  līberī, (freeborn) *children*. 195, *a*

līber (continued)
  lībertās, *freedom*. 109, *a*
  līberō, *to free*. 113
    lībertus (for **līberātus**), *freedman*. 195, *a*

B

dūcō, *lead*. 92
abdūcō, *lead away*.[1] 117
addūcō, *lead to*
condūcō, *lead together*
dēdūcō, *lead down* or *away*
ēdūcō, *lead out*
ēducō,[2] **-āre**, *educate*
indūcō, *lead into*
obdūcō, *lead before*
dūcō (continued)
perdūcō, *lead through*
redūcō, *lead back*
subdūcō, *lead under* or *up to*
trādūcō (for **trānsdūcō**), *lead across*
ductus, *leadership*. 108, *b*
dux, ducis,[2] *leader*. 26

---

1. **ācer**, *sharp*
ācriter. 67
acerbus,[3] *bitter*
acerbē. 67
acervus, (pointed) *heap*
aciēs, *sharp edge, line of battle*

2. **aedēs**, *temple, house*
aedīlis.[4] 111, *d*; 195, *a*
aedificō.[5] 117
aedificium. 108, *b*

3. **aequus**, *equal*
aequē. 67
aequālis. 111, *d*
aequāliter. 67
aequitās. 109, *a*
aequō, *make equal*. 113
aequinoctium. 115

4. **agō**, *lead, drive*
ager, *field*
agrīcultūra. 118, *b*
agricola. 115
agō (continued)
agitō, *drive about, agitate*. 112, *b*
agmen. 108, *c*

5. **alius**, *another*
aliter. 67
aliās, adv., *at another time*
aliō, adv.[6]
aliēnus
abaliēnō. 117

6. **audeō**, *dare*
audāx. 110, *a*
audācter
audācia. 109, *a*

7. **annus**, *year*
annuus
annālis. 111, *d*; 195, *b*
annōna, *year's provisions*
annōtinus, *of the preceding year*

[1] The primary force of these prefixes is practically the same in all instances; the derived meanings differ according to that of the primitive verb. Such compounds are formed, in greater or less number, from all the verbs in the following lists, but they are not included in the lists except in special instances. The form of the verb and the prefix are frequently changed; thus we have from **capiō**, 'take,' **accipiō**; from **cēdō**, 'yield,' **abscēdō**; from **ferō**, 'bear,' **afferō**; from **iaciō**, 'throw,' **abiciō**; and from **sequor**, 'follow,' **assequor**.

[2] The differences in quantity are due to different forms of the root (**dūc** and **duc**); cf. **dīcō** with **iūdicō**, **fīdō** with **fidēs**, etc. Sometimes the different forms of the root have different vowels; cf. **toga** and **tegō**.

[3] See footnote 2.

[4] For the connection with **aedēs** see Note to p. 64, l. 6.

[5] Originally, 'build a house'; then 'build.'

[6] For the meaning cf. **eō** and **quō**.

8. **arceō**, *ward off*
   exerceō, *exercise*[1]
   exercitus. 108, *b*
   (**exercitō**). 112, *b*
   exercitātus
   exercitātiō. 108, *b*
   arx, *citadel*

9. **brevis**, *short*
   brevī (sc. *tempore*), adv.
   brevitās
   brūma[2]

10. **capiō**, *take*
    captō. 112, *b*
    capessō. 112, *c*
    captīvus. 110, *b*
    acceptus[3]
    prīnceps
    praecipuus[3]
    praecipuē
    incipiō, *begin*
    inceptum

11. **caput**, *head*
    capillus, *hair*
    capitulātim, adv.
    Capitōlium
    capitālis
    anceps[4]
    praeceps
    praecipitō

12. **colō**, *cultivate*
    cultus
    cultūra[5]
    colōnus
    colōnia
    incolō[6]
    incola

13. **currō**, *run*
    currus
    cursus
    concursus. 108, *b*
    currō (continued)
    excursiō. 108, *b*
    incursus
    incursiō

14. **dīcō**, *say, tell*
    dictitō. 112, *b*
    dictātor. 108, *a*
    dictātūra
    dictiō. 108, *b*
    dictum
    ēdictum
    (**diciō**), **diciōnis**, *sway, rule*[7]
    condiciō
    index
    indicium. 108, *b*
    iūdex
    iūdicium. 108, *b*
    vindex
    vindicō

15. **decem**, *ten*
    decemvir
    decemplex
    December
    decimus
    Decimus

16. **equus**, *horse*
    eques
    equester
    equitō
    equitātus

17. **for, fārī**, *speak*
    fāma. 108, *b*
    fāmōsus. 111, *a*
    īnfāmis[8]
    fābula. 108, **c**
    (**fācundus**, *eloquent*)
    fācundia. 109, *a*
    fātum
    fātālis. 111, *d*

[1] Lit., *drive about, keep busy*. [2] See Vocab.
[3] For this and other compounds with prepositions see Sample Word Group, B. For the meanings see Vocab.
[4] See Vocab. [5] See under **ager**.
[6] For prepositional compounds see Sample Word Group B.
[7] From **dicō**, 'proclaim, assign': for the quantity see p. 539, footnote 2.
[8] **in-** is not the prep., but an inseparable particle with negative force.

fās
nefās
fānum
(**fateor**)
īnfitior
īnfitiae
cōnfiteor

18. **fidēs**, *faith*
fidēlis
fidēliter
fīdēns
fīdō [1]
cōnfīdō
(**fīdus**)
fīdūcia

19. **fluō**, *flow*
flūmen. 108, **c**
fluvius
flūctus

20. **eō**, *go* [2]
iter
comes
comitor
comitātus
comitium
exitus
exitium
initium
interitus
praetor [3]
praetōrius
praetūra
reditiō
reditus
sēditiō [4]
sēditiōsus

21. **fruor**, *enjoy*
frūctus
frūctuōsus
frūmentum
frūmentārius

22. **gignō**, *beget*, *bear* (root, **gen-**)
genus
generātim
generōsus
gener
gēns
ingenium, (inborn) *talent*
ingenuus
ingēns [5]

23. **honōs**, **honor**, *honor*
honestus
dēhonestō
honestās
honestē
honōrificus
honōrificē

24. **iūs**, *right*
iūstus
iūstē
iūstitia
iniūstus
iniūstē
iūdex [6]
iūdicō
iūdicium
iniūria
iūsiūrandum. 118, **a**
iūrō
coniūro
coniūrātus
coniūrātiō

25. **magnus**, *great*
magnitūdō
magnificus
magnificentia
magnopere. 115
maior
maiōrēs
maximus
maximē

[1] See p. 539, footnote 2.
[2] For compounds of **eo** with prepositions see p. 539, footnote 1, and Vocab.
[3] See Vocab.
[4] **sē-** is an inseparable prefix with negative force.
[5] See p. 540, footnote 8. [6] See **dīcō**.

magnus (continued)
magis
magister
magistrātus
mālō
māctō[1]

26. **māter**, *mother*
māteria
māterior
mātrimōnium
mātrōna
mātricīda. 115[2]

27. **nāvis**, *ship*
nāvicula. 109, *d*
nāvālis
nāvālia, *docks*
nauta (for **nāvita**)
nauticus
nāvigium.[3] 115
naufragium.[4] 115

28. **multus**, *much*, *many*
multimodīs.[5] 115
multiplex
multitūdō. 109, *a*

29. **nōscō**, *know*
nōtus
ignōtus[6]
ignōscō
ignōrō
cognōscō
cognōmen
nōbilis[7]
nōbilitās
nōmen
nōminō
nōminātim, adv.
notō[8]
nota[8]

30. **ōs**, *mouth*
ōsculor
ōstium
Ostia
ōrō
ōrātiō
ōrātor
ōrāculum. 108, c

31. **post**, *after*[9]
posteā, adv.[9]
postquam, conj.[9]
posthāc
posterus
posterius, adv.[10]
postrēmus
postrēmō, adv.[11]
posticum.[12] 195, *b*

32. **regō**, *direct*, *rule*
rēctus
regiō
dirigō
surgō[13]
rēx
rēgnō
rēgnum
rēgia.[14] 195 *b*

33. **sacer**, *sacred*
sacrum, **sacra**
sacellum, dimin.
sacerdōs
sacerdōtium
sacrārium, 109, *b*
sacrificō
cōnsecrō
sanciō

34. **simul**, *at the same time*, *together*, adv.[9]
simul atque, *as soon as*, conj.[9]
simultās, *encounter*; *anger*

[1] See Vocab. [2] The second part is **caedō**.
[3] The second part is **agō**.
[4] The second part is **frag-** from **frangō**.
[5] Abl. of manner used as adv. [6] See p. 540, footnote 8.
[7] See Vocab. [8] See Vocab. and p. 539, footnote 2.
[9] These should be carefully distinguished.
[10] Neuter acc. of the comp. as adv. [11] Abl. of **postrēmus** as adv.
[12] Sc. **ōstium**. [13] **sub**+**regō**. [14] Sc. **domus**.

similis
similiter
simulō
simulātiō
simulātim
simulācrum

35. **sedēs**, *seat*
sedeō
sella
obsideō
obses
īnsidiae
īnsidior
praesidium
cōnsul[1]
cōnsulāris. 195, *a*
cōnsulātus. 109, *c*
cōnsilium
cōnsulō

36. **sequor**, *follow*
sector. 112, *b*
secundus, *following*[2]
secundum, prep.[2]
socius[3]
sociālis
societās

37. **stō**, *stand*
cōnstō
cōnstāns
cōnstantia
cōnstanter
status
statuō
cōnstituō[4]
statim
statiō
statūra
praestō[4]
praestāns

[1] **Con** and **sedeō**, with change of *d* to *l*.

[2] Note the various meanings in the Vocab. all derived from the meaning 'following.'

[3] See p. 539, footnote 2 (last part).

[4] For other compounds with prepositions see Sample Word Group B.

III. SYNTAX

A. GENERAL RULES

119. The Subject of a finite verb is in the Nominative case.

Sāturnus in Italiam vēnisse dīcitur, 'Saturnus is said to have come into Italy.'

a. The subject may be a pronoun implied by the form of the verb.

Ibi arcem *condidit*, 'there he founded a citadel.'

120. A predicate noun, denoting the same person or thing as the subject, is in the Nominative case.

Numa *rēx* creātus est, 'Numa was made king.'

121. A noun or pronoun which describes another, and denotes the same person or thing, is called an appositive. An appositive is put in the same case as the word which it describes.

Flūmen est *Arar*, 'there is a river (called) the Arar.'

122. The case of a relative pronoun is determined by its construction within its own clause. It agrees with its antecedent in gender, person, and number.

Urbem condidērunt, *quam* Rōmulus Rōmam vocāvit, 'they founded a city, which Romulus called Rome.'

a. The relative sometimes agrees with a predicate nominative, instead of with its antecedent.

Rubicōnem flūmen, *quī* prōvinciae eius fīnis erat, trānsiit, 'he crossed the river Rubicon, which was the boundary of his province.'

123. A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

Rōmānī *respondērunt*, 'the Romans replied.'

a. In compound forms of the verb the participle agrees with the subject also in gender and in case.

Lēgātī ad Pyrrhum *missī sunt*, 'envoys were sent to Pyrrhus.'

b. When there are two subjects, the verb is commonly in the plural, but in some cases a singular verb is used. A collective noun regularly takes a singular verb, but a plural verb may be used.

Rōmulus et Remus puēritiam inter pāstōrēs *trānsigērunt*, 'Romulus and Remus spent their youth among the shepherds.'
Cīvitātī persuāsit ut . . . *exīrent*, 'he persuaded the state (*i.e.* the citizens) to go forth.'

124. Impersonal Verbs have no personal subject. They may have as subject an Infinitive, a Clause, or a Neuter Pronoun.

Rōmae *rēgnātum est* per septem rēgēs, 'the rule was carried on at Rome through seven kings.'

B. NOUNS

1. *The Accusative Case*

125. The direct object of a verb is in the Accusative case. The object may be (*a*) the Person or Thing Affected, or (*b*) the Result Produced by the action of the verb.

Duīlius *Carthāginiēnsēs* vīcit, 'Duilius defeated the Carthaginians.'
Urbem condidērunt, 'they founded a city.'

a. The Accusative of the Result Produced is sometimes used adverbially.

Cum equitātū *nihil* possent, 'since they are not at all strong in cavalry.'

b. Some verbs which are ordinarily intransitive take a Neuter Pronoun or Adjective used as an Accusative of Result.

Ut *idem* cōnārētur, 'to attempt the same thing.'

126. The subject of an infinitive is in the Accusative case.

Dīcēns *rēgem* grave vulnus accēpisse, 'saying that the king had suffered a severe wound.'

a. If the subject of the Infinitive is the same as that of the Finite Verb, it is in the Nominative case.

Rēx dīxisse fertur, 'the king is reported to have said.'

NOTE. — For the subject of an Historical Infinitive, see 275.

127. Many verbs meaning *make*, *choose*, *call*, *show*, and the like, take two Accusatives of the same person or thing.

Tullia *coniugem rēgem* salūtāvit, 'Tullia hailed her husband as king.'

a. The second Accusative may be an Adjective.

Rēx iuvenem *incolumem* dīmīsit, 'the king sent off the youth unharmed.'

128. Some verbs, meaning *ask*, *demand*, *teach*, *conceal*, and the like, take two Accusatives, one of the person and one of the thing.

Interim cotīdiē Caesar *Aeduōs frūmentum* flāgitāre, 'meanwhile Caesar daily demanded the grain from the Aeduans.'

Hīc *Italōs* prīmus agrī *cultūram* docuit, 'he was the first to teach the Italians agriculture.'

129. Transitive verbs sometimes take a second Accusative when compounded with *trāns.*, intransitive verbs a single Accusative.

Certior factus est, *trēs* iam *partēs* cōpiārum Helvētiōs *id flūmen* trādūxisse, 'he was informed that the Helvetians had already led three-fourths of their forces across that river.'

a. With the passive of the verbs mentioned in 127, 128, and 129 the Direct Object becomes the Subject and the Predicate Accusative becomes Predicate Nominative.

Amīcus appellātus est, 'he was called friend.'

130. Duration of Time and Extent of Space are denoted by the Accusative.

Cuius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs *multōs annōs* obtinuerat, 'whose father had been king among the Sequani for many years.'

131. Place to Which is usually denoted by the Accusative with the preposition **ad**, **in**, or **sub**.

Lēgātōs *ad eum* mittunt, 'they send envoys to him.'

Ad fīnēs Belgārum pervēnit, 'he arrived at the frontier of the Belgians.'

Ipsī . . . *sub prīmam nostram aciem* successērunt, 'they themselves advanced up to our van.'

132. But the Accusative of Limit of Motion, without a preposition, is used with names of towns and small islands, with **domum**

meaning *home*, and sometimes with verbs compounded with **ad, per, in,** or **sub.**

Posteā Pyrrhus Rōmam perrēxit, 'afterwards Pyrrhus proceeded to Rome.'
Eōrum quī *domum* rediērunt, 'of those who returned home.'
Urbem adiit, 'he visited the city.'

133. Motion *in the direction* or *to the vicinity of a town* is indicated by the Accusative with the preposition **ad.**

Ad Genavam pervēnit, 'he reached the neighborhood of Geneva.'
Ad Praeneste vēnit, 'he advanced in the direction of Praeneste.'

2. *The Genitive*

134. A noun or pronoun which limits another, and does not denote the same person or thing, is put in the Genitive.

This rule covers in a general way all the uses of the Genitive not included under 135–142.

Postrīdiē *eius diēī*, 'the day following that day.'
Honōris Diviciācī causā, 'for the sake of doing honor to Diviciacus.'
Aliquem locum medium *utrīusque*, 'some place midway between each.'
Angustiās *itineris* et magnitūdinem *silvārum*, 'the narrowness of the roads and the great size of the forests.'

135. The Possessive Genitive denotes possession or ownership.

Quī *ipsōrum* linguā Celtae appellantur, 'who in their own language are called Celts.'

a. The Possessive Genitive is often used predicatively, especially with **esse** and **fierī.**

Nōn *suae* esse *virtūtis*, arma adversāriīs trādere, '(he said) that it was not consistent with his valor (lit. 'of his valor') to surrender his arms to the enemy.'

136. The Subjective Genitive denotes the person who acts or feels.

Mīlitum concursū repulsī sunt, 'they were driven back by the coming of the soldiers.'

137. The Objective Genitive denotes the object of an action or feeling. It is not always translated into English with 'of.'

Rēgnī cupiditāte inductus, 'led by desire for royal power.'

NOTE. — The difference between the Subjective and the Objective Genitive may be seen in the following clause, in which both are used: prō veteribus *Helvētiōrum* iniūriīs *populī Rōmānī*, 'on account of the ancient wrongs inflicted by the Helvetians (subjective) on the Roman people (objective).'

138. A Genitive signifying the whole may be used to limit a word indicating a part. This is commonly called the Partitive Genitive, but is more accurately termed the Genitive of the Whole.

Iūmentōrum quam maximum numerum coëmere, 'to buy up as great a number as possible of pack-animals.'

Satis esse *causae* arbitrābātur, 'he thought there was sufficient (of) reason.'

a. Instead of the Genitive of the Whole the Ablative with **ex** or **dē** is frequently used, regularly with Cardinal Numerals and with **quīdam.**

Ūnum *ex Rōmānīs* prōvocāvit, 'he challenged one of the Romans.'

139. A Genitive is sometimes used instead of an appositive (see 121) and is then called an Appositional Genitive.

Triplicem aciem īnstrūxit *legiōnum* quattuor veterānārum, 'he drew up a triple line (consisting of) four veteran legions.'

NOTE. — The Genitives in 138 and 139 are sometimes confounded. In the former, the Partitive Genitive, the genitive denotes the Whole, of which a Part is taken; in the latter, the Appositional Genitive, the genitive and the noun which it limits denote the same thing.

140. The Genitive, modified by an adjective, may be used to denote a Characteristic or Quality of a person or thing.

Mīrae audāciae facinus ēdidit, 'he committed a crime of remarkable boldness.'

141. When the Genitive of Quality denotes a measure of extent or time, it is sometimes called the Genitive of Measure.

Post Rōmulī mortem *ūnīus annī* interrēgnum fuit, 'after the death of Romulus there was an interregnum of one year.'

Titulum *trium verbōrum*, 'an inscription of three words.'

142. When the Genitive of Quality denotes indefinite value, it is sometimes called the Genitive of Value.

Tantī (sc. *pretī*) eius apud sē grātiam ostendit, 'he showed him that his influence with him was worth so much' (literally, 'was of so great value').

NOTE. — Many of the above varieties of the Genitive may be used in the predicate. There is no genitive known as the Predicate Genitive, but we may have a Predicate Genitive of Possession, etc. (see 135, *a*).

143. Many Adjectives take a Genitive to complete their meaning, especially those signifying *desire*, *knowledge*, *familiarity*, *memory*, *participation*, *power*, *fullness*, and the opposites of these.

Mulier *auguriōrum* perīta, 'a woman skilled in auguries.'
Dominātiōnis avidus, 'eager for sovereignty.'

144. The Genitive is sometimes used with verbs meaning *remember* and *forget* (**meminī**, **reminīscor**, and **oblīvīscor**).

Reminīscerētur . . . veteris *incommodī* populī Rōmānī, 'let him bear in mind the ancient disaster to the Roman people.'
Sī veteris *contumēliae* oblīvīscī vellet, 'if he were willing to forget the ancient insult.'

145. Verbs of *accusing*, *convicting*, *condemning*, and *acquitting* take the Genitive of the *charge* or *penalty*.

Ā dictātōre *capitis* damnātus est, 'he was condemned to death by the dictator.'

146. The Impersonal Verbs **miseret**, **paenitet**, **pudet**, **piget**, **taedet**, and their compounds, take the Accusative of the *person affected* and the Genitive of the *person or thing toward whom* (*which*) *the feeling is directed*.

Quasi *ignāviae eum* pertaedēret, 'as if he were disgusted with his incapacity.'

147. The Impersonal Verbs **rēfert** and **interest** govern a Genitive of *the person* (or *thing*) *concerned*.

Docet quantopere *reī pūblicae* intersit, 'he shows how greatly it is to the interest of the state.'

3. *The Dative*

148. The indirect object of a verb is in the Dative case.

Latīnus rēx *eī* fīliam Lāvīniam dedit, 'King Latinus gave him his daughter, Lavinia.'

a. Some verbs which govern an indirect object in the Dative also admit another construction, especially **dōnō** and **circumdō**.

Rōmam *moenibus* circumdabat, 'he was surrounding Rome with walls' (Abl. of Means; 163).

149. The Dative of the Indirect Object is also used.

a. With many verbs of special meanings, such as *favor*, *help*, *trust*, *injure*, *please*, *displease*, *command*, *obey*, *serve*, *resist*, *indulge*, *spare*, *pardon*, *threaten*, *believe*, *persuade*, and the like.

Cum multīs Troiānīs, *quibus* ferrum Graecōrum pepercerat, 'with many Trojans, whom the sword of the Greeks had spared.'

Multae Italiae cīvitātēs *Rōmānīs* pāruērunt, 'many states of Italy obeyed the Romans.'

b. With many verbs compounded with **ad**, **ante**, **con-** (**com-**), **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **post**, **prae**, **prō**, **sub**, **super**, and **circum**.

Cum virtūte *omnibus* praestārent, 'since they surpassed all in valor.'

Utī *tōtī Galliae* bellum īnferrent, 'that they might make war on all Gaul.'

Note. — Observe that not all of the verbs under 149, *a* and *b*, govern a Dative; for example, Helvētiī *reliquōs Gallōs* virtūte *prae*cēdunt, 'the Helvetians surpass all the rest in valor.' Quī cum *eum* in itinere *con*vēnissent, 'when they had met him on the road.' Those which govern the Dative must be learned by observation and experience.

150. Verbs which govern a Dative can be used only impersonally in the passive.

Hīs persuādērī ut diūtius morārentur . . . non poterat, 'these could not be persuaded to remain longer.'

151. The Dative of Reference denotes the person to whom a statement or action refers or to whom it is of interest.

Docēbat quam veterēs et quam iūstae causae necessitūdinis *ipsīs* cum Aeduīs intercēderent, 'he pointed out what old and what legitimate

causes for an alliance existed between them (the Romans) and the Aedui' (literally, 'for them with the Aedui').

a. The Dative of Reference is sometimes about equivalent to a Possessive Genitive.

Sēsē omnēs flentēs *Caesarī* ad pedēs prōiēcērunt, 'all in tears threw themselves at Caesar's feet.'

Special varieties of the Dative of Reference are:

152. The Dative of the Person Judging.

Caesarī Pompeiāna dignitās gravis erat, 'in Caesar's opinion the prestige of Pompey was dangerous.'

153. The Dative of Separation, used with compounds of **ab, dē, ex, ad, sub, prae,** and **dis-,** and **inter-** usually of persons only.

Advenientī aquila pilleum abstulit, 'as he was coming an eagle carried off his cap.'

Scūtō ā novissimīs *ūnī mīlitī* dētrāctō, 'having seized a shield from one of the soldiers in the rear.'

154. The Dative of the Possession, used with the verb **sum.**

Est *mihi* liber, 'I have a book.'

a. Also with compounds of **sum.**

Novae urbis *cīvibus* coniugēs deerant, 'the citizens of the new city lacked wives.'

155. The Dative of Agency, used regularly with the Second Periphrastic Conjugation.

Caesar nōn exspectandum *sibi* statuit, 'Caesar decided that he must not wait' (more literally, 'that it must not be waited by him').

156. The Dative of Service or Purpose is used to denote the end or purpose toward which an action is directed, or for which something exists.

Ut aliquem locum *colloquiō* dēligeret, 'that he should choose some place for a conference.

Eum optimātium partibus *exitiō* futūrum, 'that he would be the ruin of the party of the aristocrats' (literally, 'for a ruin').

NOTE. — The Dative of Purpose is sometimes used with another Dative, as in the second example, when the construction is often called that of the Two Datives; sometimes without another Dative,

as in the first example. When it is used with **esse**, it is equivalent in force to a Predicate Nominative or Accusative.

157. Many adjectives take a Dative to complete their meaning, especially those meaning *friendly*, *unfriendly*, *similar*, *dissimilar*, *equal*, *near*, *related to*, *suitable*, *fit*, and the like.

Proximī sunt *Germānīs*, 'they are nearest to the Germans.'
Quī locum idōneum *castrīs* dēligant, 'to select a place suitable for a camp.'

4. *The Ablative*

158. The Ablative of Separation is used sometimes with and sometimes without a preposition.

Ubi mūrus *dēfēnsōribus* nūdātus est, 'when the wall was stripped of defenders.'
Satis habēbat . . . hostem *rapīnīs* . . . prohibēre, 'he regarded it as sufficient to keep the enemy from plundering.'
Ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre, 'to keep the violence of the enemy from their towns.'
Quī fīnēs Sēquānōrum *ab Hēlvetiīs* dīvidit, 'which separates the territory of the Sequani from the Helvetians.'

NOTE. — Whether a preposition is to be used or not must be learned mainly by observation. Verbs of *freeing*, *depriving*, and *lacking*, and the corresponding adjectives, regularly omit the preposition. Of verbs meaning to *keep from*, *remove*, *withdraw*, some take the preposition, and others omit it, the same verb often having both constructions (as in the second and third examples). Other verbs of separation usually take the ablative with a preposition. The preposition is very commonly used of *persons*.

For the Ablative of Place from Which, see 177 and 178.

159. The Ablative is used to denote the Source from which anything is derived.

a. Participles denoting birth or origin are followed by the Ablative of Source, usually without, but sometimes with, a preposition.

Nōbilissimā genitus *familiā*, 'born of a very noble family.'
Genitus *ex nōbilī fēminā*, 'born of a lady of high rank.'

160. The Agent, or doer of an action, is expressed by the Ablative with **ā** or **ab**.

Ā Volscīs occīsus esse dīcitur, 'he is said to have been killed by the Volscians.'

NOTE. — For the Dative of Agency, see 155.

161. An Ablative translated by *than* is often used with a comparative and called the Ablative of Comparison.

Rōmulus Silvius sē *Iove* maiōrem esse dīcēbat, 'Romulus Silvius used to say that he was greater than Jupiter.'

a. This construction is usually a substitute for **quam** ('than') with the Nominative or Accusative. In other cases **quam** must be used, and **quam** is sometimes used even with the Nominative or Accusative.

Dīcēbat hunc sonum multō clāriōrem esse quam tonitrum, 'he said that this sound was much louder than the thunder.'

162. Plūs, minus, amplius, and **longius** are often used with the force of **plūs quam, minus quam,** etc., instead of being followed by the Ablative of Comparison.

Ut *mīlium* amplius quīnquāgintā circuitū . . exercitum dūceret, 'that he might lead his army by a detour of more than fifty miles.' (*Mīlium* is Genitive of Measure; see 141.)

NOTE. — Sometimes, however, the Ablative of Comparison is used: Nōn amplius *quīnīs* aut *sēnīs mīlibus* passuum, 'not more than five or six miles.'

163. The Ablative is used to express the Means by Which, or the Instrument with Which, an action is accomplished.

Id Helvētiī *ratibus* ac *lintribus iūnctīs* trānsībant, 'this the Helvetii were trying to cross by a bridge of rafts and boats' (literally, 'by rafts and by boats joined together.')

The Ablative of Means or Instrument is very common in Latin and is used in many cases where a different construction is used in English. The following special varieties occur:

a. The deponents **ūtor**, *use*, **fruor**, *enjoy*, **fungor**, *perform*, **potior**, *get possession of*, **vescor**, *eat*, and their compounds, take the Ablative.

Veientēs *dolō* ūsī eōs in īnsidiās pellexērunt, 'the people of Veii, by the use of treachery, enticed them into an ambuscade.'

Impedīmentīs castrīsque nostrī potītī sunt, 'our men got possession of the baggage and the camp.'

b. The Ablative is used with **nītor** and **innītor.**

Ut magis *virtūte* contenderent quam *dolō* aut *insidiīs* nīterentur, 'that they rather fought with valor than relied on treachery and ambuscades.'

c. The Ablative is used with verbs of *filling* and adjectives of *plenty.*

Cophinus *stercore* plēnus, 'a basket full of filth.'

d. The Ablative is used in various other constructions differing from the English idiom.

Frūmentō quod *nāvibus* subvēxerat, 'the grain which he had brought in ships' (literally, 'by ships').

Ferē *cotīdiānīs proeliīs* cum Germānīs contendunt, 'they contend with the Germans in almost daily battles.'

Nē studium bellī gerendī *agricultūrā* commūtent, 'that they may not prefer agriculture to war' (literally, 'exchange *with* agriculture the desire of making war').

164. Price is expressed by the Ablative.

Portōria . . . *parvō pretiō* redēmpta habēre, 'that he had bought up the customs tolls at a low price.'

165. The Ablative of Cause gives the cause or reason for an action.

Quod *suā victōriā* tam īnsolenter glōriārentur, 'as for their boasting so arrogantly on account of their victory.'

NOTE Cause is also expressed by the Ablative with **ex**; for example, quō gravius hominēs *ex commūtātiōne* rērum doleant, 'that men might feel the deeper grief in consequence of a change of fortune.'

a. The Ablative of Cause is used with the adjective **contentus.**

Rēgnī *fīnibus* contentus erat, 'he was satisfied with the limits of the kingdom.'

166. The Ablative, regularly with **cum**, is used to express the Manner of an action, like an adverb. **Cum** may be omitted when the Ablative has an adjective modifier, and with some special words.

Dīviciācus *multīs cum lacrimīs* Caesarem complexus, 'Diviciacus embracing Caesar with many tears' (*i.e.* tearfully),

Incrēdibilī celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, 'with wonderful speed they rushed down to the river' (*i.e.* very swiftly).

a. The Ablative is used to denote that in Accordance with Which anything is done.

Negat sē *mōre* populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare, 'he says that he cannot in accordance with the custom of the Roman people give any one a passage through the province.'

167. The Ablative of Accompaniment is ordinarily used with the preposition **cum**, but in military expressions the Ablative alone may be used, when it is modified by an adjective.

Hinc Aenēās *cum multīs Troiānīs* fūgit, 'Aeneas fled from here with many Trojans.'

Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur *omnibus cōpiīs*, 'Caesar sent forward the cavalry and followed with all his forces.'

168. The Ablative of Degree of Difference is used with comparatives and words implying comparison, including expressions of distance.

Duōbus annīs post bellum adversus Samnītēs gērēbant, 'two years afterwards they waged war against the Samnites' (literally, 'afterwards by two years').

169. The Ablative is used to indicate the Attendant Circumstances of an action or situation.

Quī minus facile eam rem *imperiō nostrō* cōnsequī poterant, 'who were less easily able to accomplish this under our rule.'

170. A noun in the Ablative, modified by an adjective, may be used to denote a Quality or Characteristic.

Gallus quīdam *eximiā* corporis *magnitūdine*, 'a Gaul of extraordinary size of body.'

Quod nōndum *bonō animō* in populum Rōmānum vidērentur, 'because they did not yet seem well disposed towards the Roman people' (predicate use of the construction).

171. The Ablative of Specification is used with verbs and adjectives to denote the respect in which anything is done or exists.

Hīc vir *aequitāte* avō similis fuit, 'this man was like his grandfather in justice.'

172. The adjectives **dignus** and **indignus** govern the Ablative.

Indignae *homine doctō* voluptātēs, 'pleasures unworthy of a man of refinement.'

173. A noun or pronoun in the Ablative accompanied by a predicate noun, adjective, or participle in the same case, may be loosely connected with the rest of the sentence. This is called the Ablative Absolute.

The Ablative Absolute is generally the equivalent of a clause expressing time, condition, cause, means, or other attendant circumstances, and should be translated by such a clause.

TIME. — *Eō opere perfectō*, praesidia dispōnit, 'when that work was finished, he stationed garrisons.'

CONDITION. — Quod *illō licente* contrā licērī audeat nēmō, 'because if he made a bid, no one dared to bid against him.'

OPPOSITION or 'CONCESSION.' — Propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrīque altitūdinem *paucīs dēfendentibus* (oppidum) expugnāre nōn potuit, 'on account of the breadth of the ditch and the height of the wall, he was unable to take the town, though the defenders were few.'

MEANS. — Ut *aequātō* omnium *perīculō* spem fugae tolleret, 'that by making the danger of all equal he might take away the hope of flight.'

MANNER. — *Incitātīs equīs* hostēs impedītōs adoriēbantur, 'when the enemy were in difficulties the cavalry charged them at full speed' ('with their horses urged on.')

5. *Relations of Place*

NOTE. — For Place to Which see 131–133.

174. Place Where is regularly denoted by the Ablative with the prepositions **in** and **sub.**

Latīnus *in illīs regiōnibus* imperāvit, 'Latinus ruled in those regions.'

175. The preposition is omitted with the general designations of place, **locō**, **locīs**, and **parte**, with other words when they are modified by **tōtus**, and in some set expressions.

Quī . . . *alīēnō locō* cum equitātū Helvētiorum proelium committunt, 'they joined battle with the cavalry of the Helvetians in an unfavorable place.'

Tōtā Āfricā ōtium reddidit, 'he restored peace in all Africa.'

176. Names of towns and small islands express Place Where by the Locative. 'At home' is also expressed by the Locative form **domī.**

The Locative has in the singular of the first and second declen-

sions the same form as the Genitive; elsewhere the same form as the Ablative.

Eius posterī *Albae* rēgnāvērunt, 'his descendants were kings at Alba.'
Carthāgine quotannīs bīnī rēgēs creābantur, 'at Carthage two kings were chosen each year.'

177. Place from Which is regularly denoted by the Ablative with the preposition **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**.

Quī nūntiī *ab Icciō* vēnerant, 'who had come as messengers from Iccius.'
Castra *ex eō locō* movent, 'they move their camp from that place.'
Ut *dē fīnibus suīs* exīrent, 'to go out from their territories.'

178. The preposition is omitted with names of towns, with **domō**, 'from home,' and sometimes with other words, especially when governed by verbs compounded with **ab**, **ex**, or **dē**.

Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus *domō* exīre possent, 'there were only two routes by which they could go forth from home.'
Germānī suās cōpiās *castrīs* ēdūxērunt, 'the Germans led their troops from the camp.'

179. Motion *from the vicinity of a town* is expressed by the Ablative with a preposition (cf. 133).

Ab Ocelō . . . in fīnēs Vocontiōrum pervēnit, 'he came from the neighborhood of Ocelum into the territory of the Vocontii.'

6. *Expressions of Time*

NOTE. — For the Accusative of Duration of Time see 130.

180. Duration of Time is occasionally denoted by the Ablative.

Eā tōtā nocte continenter iērunt, 'they continued to march all that night.'

NOTE. — The Ablative of Duration of Time and that of Time When do not differ greatly in some cases. In the example, **continenter** shows that we have the former.

181. Time When or At Which is denoted by the Ablative.

Sextō decimō annō post rēgēs exāctōs populus Rōmae sēditiōnem fēcit, 'in the sixteenth year after the expulsion of the kings, there was an outbreak of the people at Rome.'
Quī *bellō Cassiānō* dux Helvētiōrum fuerat, 'who had been the leader of the Helvetians at the time of the war with Cassius.'

182. Time within Which is denoted by the Ablative.

Diēbus circiter *quīndecim* ad fīnēs Belgārum pervēnit, '**within about** fifteen days he came to the country of the Belgians.'

7. *Dates*

183. The Romans designated each year by the names of the consuls for that year. The days of the month were reckoned backward from three points, the *Kalends* (**Kalendae**), *Nones* (**Nōnae**), and *Ides* (**Īdūs**). The Kalends were the *first* day of every month. The Nones were the *fifth* and the Ides the *thirteenth*, except in March, May, July, and October, when they were the *seventh* and *fifteenth*, respectively. The names of the months were adjectives, agreeing with **Kalendae**, **Nōnae**, and **Īdūs**. They are as follows: **Iānuārius**, **Februārius**, **Mārtius**, **Aprīlis**, **Maius**, **Iūnius**, **Quīnctīlis** (later **Iūlius**), **Sextīlis** (later **Augustus**), **September**, **Octōber**, **November**, **December**.

The day before the points of the month from which time was reckoned was **prīdiē Kalendās**, **prīdiē Nōnās**, or **prīdiē Īdūs**; but the day before that was called, not the second day before the Kalends, etc., but the third (**ante diem tertium Kalendās Iānuāriās**), because the Romans counted the day from which they began to reckon. Thus, in December the Kalends of January counted one day, the 31st of December a second (**prīdiē Kalendās Iānuāriās**), and the 30th of December was the *third* day before the Kalends.

Therefore, in order to turn Roman dates into English, when a day before the Kalends is given, add two to the number of days in the preceding month, and subtract the given number; when a day before the Nones or Ides is given, add one to the day on which the Nones or Ides fall, and subtract the given number. Until Caesar's reform of the Calendar, in 46 B.C., March, May, July, and October had 31 days and the rest 29.

For example:

ante diem V. Kal. Aprīl., L. Pīsōne, Aulō Gabīniō cōnsulibus, 'on the 28th of March (31 + 2 − 5), 55 B.C.'

The expression **ante diem V. Kalendās Aprīlīs**, although the usual form, is not strictly grammatical. **Diē quīntō ante Kalendās Aprīlīs**, 'on the fifth day before the Kalends of April,' became

by attraction **ante diem quīntum Kalendās Aprīlīs**, where **Kalendās** is governed by **ante diem quīntum** as if by a preposition.

The day from sunrise to sunset was divided into twelve hours, which of course differed in length at different seasons of the year, designated as **hōra prīma, secunda**, etc. The night was divided into twelve hours from sunset to sunrise (**prīma hōra noctis**, etc.) and also into four watches (**vigilia prīma**, etc.).

8. *The Vocative*

184. The Vocative is the case of direct address.

Dēsilīte, *commīlitōnēs*, 'leap down, fellow-soldiers.'

C. PREPOSITIONS

185. The following prepositions govern the Ablative only: **ab (ā), cum, dē, ex (ē), prae, prō, sine.**

1. (*a*) **Ab** is used with verbs, nouns, and adjectives to denote *motion from*, *separation*, *source*, and *distance*, literally and figuratively.

Ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit, 'he led his army from (the country of) the Allobroges into (that of) the Segusiavi.'
Ā Sēquanīs impetrat, 'he obtains from the Sequani.'
Oppidum vacuum *ā dēfēnsōribus*, 'a town destitute of defenders.'
Mīlia passuum tria *ab* eōrum *castrīs*, 'three miles from their camp.'

(*b*) **Ab** is used to denote *the point of view from which*, with the force of *place where*.

Ā dextrō cornū, 'on the right wing.'

(*c*) **Ab** with the Ablative is used in expressions of time in the sense of *from . . .* (*on*) and *after*.

Ā prīmā aetāte rēgnum concupīscēbat, 'from early youth he was desirous of royal power.'
Pharnacem intrā quīntum *ab adventū* diem prōfligāvit, 'he routed Pharnaces within five days after his arrival.'

(*d*) For **ab** with the Ablative of Agent see 160.

2. (*a*) **Cum** denotes *accompaniment*, *association*, and *intercourse* (friendly and unfriendly).

Diēs quam cōnstituerat *cum lēgātīs*, 'the time that he had agreed on with the envoys.'
Ūnum imperium . . *cum ipsīs*, 'one (and the same) government with themselves.'

NOTE. — With the personal and relative pronouns **cum** regularly follows its case and forms a single word with it. **Quibuscum**, 'with whom?'

(*b*) For **cum** with the Ablative of Accompaniment see 167; with the Ablative of Manner, 166.

3. (*a*) **Dē** denotes motion *down from* or *from*.

Dē gradibus cūriae dēiectus est, 'he was thrown down (from) the steps of the senate-house.'

(*b*) **Dē** has the meaning *about*, *concerning*, or *with respect to*.

Dē rē pūblicā agere, 'to confer about political matters.'
Dē populō Rōmānō meritōs, 'deserved well of (*i.e.* with respect to) the Roman people.'

(*c*) **Dē** with the Ablative is used in expressions of *time when*.

De tertiā vigiliā, 'in the third watch.'

(*d*) **Dē** with the Ablative denotes *cause*, *accordance*, and *manner*, and sometimes has the force of a Partitive Genitive (see 138, *a*).

Quā dē causā . . ., 'for which reason.'
Dē improvīsō, 'unexpectedly.'

4. (*a*) **Ex** (**ē**) is used with verbs, nouns, and adjectives to denote *motion out of* or *from*, *separation*, and *source*, literally and figuratively.

Trēs (legiōnēs) *ex hībernīs* ēdūcit, 'he leads three legions out of winter quarters.'
Ex captīvīs comperit, 'he found out from captives.'

(*b*) **Ex** denotes *the point of view from which* with the force of *place where*; cf. 1 (*b*).

Ūnā ex parte, 'on one side.'

(*c*) **Ex** with the Ablative is used in expressions of time *from* . . . (*on*) and *after*.

Ūnus *ex eō tempore* Caesar omnia in rē pūblicā administrābat, 'from that time on Caesar managed all the affairs of the state alone.'
Diēs . . . *ex eō diē* quīntus, 'the fifth day after that day.'

(*d*) **Ex** with the Ablative may denote *cause*, *accordance*, *manner*, or *respect*, and may be equivalent to a Partitive Genitive (see 138, *a*).

Ex eō, 'on that account.' Ex commūnī cōnsēnsū, 'with (*i.e.* in accordance with) the common consent.' Magnā ex parte, 'in a great measure.'

5. **Prae, prō, and sine,** see VOCABULARY.

186. **In** and **sub** govern the Ablative or the Accusative, with a difference of meaning.

1. (*a*) **In** with the Accusative is used with verbs, nouns, and adjectives to denote *motion to* or *towards*, literally and figuratively.

In Italiam, 'into Italy.' *In dēditiōnem* accipere, 'to receive into surrender.' *In ipsum Caesarem . . .* incidit, 'he fell in with Caesar himself.'

(*b*) **In** with the Accusative is used in some expressions where there is no idea of motion in English.

In altitūdinem pedum sēdecim, 'of sixteen feet in height.'

(*c*) For other meanings of **in** see VOCABULARY.

2. (*a*) **Sub** with the Accusative denotes motion *up to* or *so as to come under* a place.

Exercitum *sub iugum* mīserat, 'he had sent the army under the yoke.' Sub prīmam nostram aciem, 'up to our van.'

(*b*) **Sub** with the Accusative denotes time, with the meaning *towards* or *about*.

Sub vesperum, 'towards evening.'

(*c*) **Sub** with the Ablative denotes rest *under* or *at the foot of*, literally or figuratively.

Sub monte, 'at the foot of a mountain.' Sub illōrum diciōne, 'under their sway.'

187. All the prepositions not mentioned in 185 and 186 govern the Accusative only, namely, **Ad**, **Adversus**, **Apud**, **Ante**, **Circum**, **Cis**, **Ob**, **Per**, **Post**, **Prope** (**Propius**), **Secundum**, **Trāns**, and those ending in **-ā** and **-ter** (**Circiter**, **Citrā**, **Contrā**, **Extrā**, **Inter**, **Intrā**, **Praeter**, **Propter**, **Suprā**, **Ultrā**).

D. ADJECTIVES

188. An adjective agrees with the noun which it limits in gender, number, and case. Adjectives may be attributive, appositive, or predicate. The first modify nouns directly; the second are joined to nouns in the manner of an appositive (see 121); the last modify a noun through the medium of a verb, usually *esse*.

Equitātum *omnem* . . . praemittit, 'he sends forward all the cavalry' (Attributive Adjective).

Helvētiī continentur . . . monte Iūrā *altissimō*, 'the Helvetians are bounded by the Jura Mountain, of great height' (Appositive Adjective).

Hōrum omnium *fortissimī* sunt Belgae, 'of all these the Belgians are the bravest' (Predicate Adjective).

189. An Attributive Adjective which modifies two or more nouns usually agrees in gender and number with the nearest.

Nōn *eādem* alacritāte ac studiō . . . ūtēbantur, 'they did not show the same eagerness and zeal.'

190. In Latin an adjective is often used where the English employs an adverb.

Quī creātur *annuus*, 'who is elected annually.'

191. Adjectives meaning *first* and *last* are used adverbially with the force shown in the following example.

Carcerem *prīmus* aedificāvit, 'he was the first to build a dungeon.'

192. Some adjectives, mostly Superlatives, may be used to denote a part of an object.

Cum *summus* mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, 'when the top of the mountain was held by Labienus.'

Ad *extrēmās* fossās castella cōnstituit, 'at the ends of the trenches he placed redoubts.'

193. The Comparative and the Superlative of adjectives and adverbs are often translated by *too*, *rather*, *very*, etc., instead of by *more* and *most*.

Cupidius novissimum agmen īnsecūtī, 'having followed the (enemy's) rear too eagerly.'

Flūmine Rhēnō, *lātissimō* atque *altissimō*, 'by the river Rhine (which is) very broad and very deep.'

194. **Quam** with the Superlative denotes the highest possible degree.

Quam maximum numerum, 'as great a number as possible.'

NOTE. — The full form, which sometimes occurs, is (for example) quam maximīs potest itineribus, 'by the longest possible marches. On **quisque** with the Superlative see 203, below.

195. Adjectives may be used as nouns in two ways:

a. The meaning of the noun is determined by the gender of the adjective.

Lēgātōs ad eum mittunt *nōbilissimōs* cīvitātis, 'they send to him as envoys the noblest men of the state.'

Quī dīcerent sē *suaque omnia* in fidem . . . populī Rōmānī permittere, 'to say that they intrusted themselves and all their possessions to the protection of the Roman people.'

b. The meaning of the noun is determined by some word understood, with which the adjective agrees.

Caesar eius *dextram* (sc. *manum*) prēndit, 'Caesar grasps his right hand.'

Multa in ea genera *ferārum* (sc. *bēstiārum*) nāscī cōnstat, 'it is well known that many kinds of wild animals are born there.'

NOTE. — Conversely, a noun may be used as an adjective. Victōribus Sēquanīs, 'to the victorious Sequani.'

E. PRONOUNS

196. The Personal Pronoun is omitted when it is the subject of a finite verb, unless it is emphatic for some reason.

Ego certē meum reī pūblicae . . . officium praestiterō, 'I at any rate will do my duty to the state.'

197. The Reflexive Pronoun **sē** and the corresponding adjective **suus** in principal clauses refer to the subject of the main verb.

Sē in castra recēpērunt, 'they returned (betook themselves) to the camp.'

198. **Sē** and **suus** in dependent sentences may refer to the subject of the verb of the dependent sentence (direct reflexive) or to that of the principal sentence (indirect reflexive).

Tribūnōs mīlitum monuit ut *sēsē* legiōnēs coniungerent, 'he directed

the tribunes of the soldiers that the legions should join themselves together' (Direct Reflexive).

Hīs utī conquirerent, sī *sibi* pūrgātī esse vellent, imperāvit, 'he ordered them to hunt them up, if they wished to be guiltless in his sight' (Indirect Reflexive).

NOTE. — The various uses of **sē** and **suus** are illustrated in the following sentence.

(Ariovistus dīxit) quod *sibi* Caesar dēnūntiāret *sē* Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum, nēminem *sēcum* sine *suā* perniciē contendisse, '(Ariovistus said) that as for Caesar's threatening him that he would not neglect the wrongs done to the Aeduans, no one had contended with him without being destroyed.'

Sibi refers to the subject of the main verb of saying which introduces the indirect discourse (indirect reflexive); **sē** refers back to the subject of **dēnūntiāret** (indirect reflexive); **sēcum** refers to the same person as **sibi** (indirect reflexive); while **suā** refers to the subject (**nēminem**) of its own clause (direct reflexive).

199. The Demonstrative Pronoun **ille** often means 'the famous,' 'the well known.'

Cato *ille*, 'the famous Cato.'

200. The Intensive **ipse** is used to emphasize the word with which it agrees, or as an emphatic pronoun.

Ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt, 'they themselves carry on war in their own territories.'

a. **Ipse** is very often translated by another word than 'self.'

In *ipsīs* flūminis rīpīs proeliābantur, 'they were fighting right on the banks of the river.'

201. **Ipse** is sometimes used as an Indirect Reflexive (see 155), when two reflexives are needed, or when **sē** or **suus** would not be clear.

Cūr dē *suā* virtūte aut dē *ipsīus* dīligentiā dēspērārent, 'why should they despair of their own valor or of his care?'

For the construction of the Relative Pronoun, see 122.

202. A Relative Pronoun at the beginning of a sentence is usually best translated by a personal or a demonstrative pronoun.

Quod ubi Caesar resciit, 'when Caesar learned this.'

a. Sometimes the Relative serves as a connective with the preceding sentence and should be translated by a Personal or Demonstrative Pronoun with a conjunction.

Quī sī iūvissent, 'for if they should aid them.'

203. The Indefinite Pronoun **quisque** is used idiomatically with Superlatives to indicate a class.

Nōbilissimī cuiusque līberī, 'the children of every one of high rank.'

F. VERBS

1. General

204. Verbs are sometimes used impersonally with or without a clause as subject.

Rogāre ut . . . id sibi facere *liceat*, 'they asked that it might be allowed them to do this.' (The subject of *liceat* is the clause *id facere*.)

Ita . . . diū et ācriter *pugnātum est*, 'thus the battle raged, long and fiercely' (literally, 'it was fought').

205. Verbs that regularly take a Direct Object are sometimes used without one and are then said to be used Absolutely.

Ut facile perpaucī *prohibēre* possent, 'so that a very few could easily prevent.'

2. Tenses

Note. — Each tense expresses two things: the *period* of the action, whether present, past, or future; and the *stage* of the action, whether going on, completed, or undefined.

206. The Present Tense is used of an action going on in the present, or of a general truth.

Hīs Vestae sacerdōtibus nōn *licet* virō nūbere, 'these priestesses of Vesta are not allowed to marry.'

207. In connection with **iam**, **iam diū**, **iam prīdem**, and similar expressions the Present is often used of an action begun in the past and continuing in the present (cf. 211).

a. Sometimes **iam** is implied or understood.

Hōc vigintī annōs *audiō*, 'I have (already) heard this for the last twenty years.'

208. The Historical Present may be used in narration to refer to past events.

Dīcit montem . . . ab hostibus tenērī, 'he said that the mountain was held by the enemy.'

209. The Imperfect may denote an action going on, or repeated, in past time.

Quī eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvitāte *obtinēbat*, 'who at that time was holding the chief place in the state.'

210. The Imperfect may be used of an act undefined in past time, especially in descriptions. Here it is to be translated, not by the progressive form, but as a simple past.

Id nātūrā locī sīc *mūniēbātur*, 'this was so strengthened by its natural location.'

211. The Imperfect with **iam, iam prīdem, iam dūdum**, etc., is sometimes used of a past action which had been continuing for some time.

Iam prīdem Pompeiō suspectae *erant* Caesaris opēs, 'the power of Caesar had for some time been an object of suspicion in Pompey's mind.'

212. The Imperfect is used of a repeated or customary action.

Sē Iove esse maiōrem *dīcēbat*, 'he used to say that he was greater than Jupiter.'

213. The Future is used of an act going on, or undefined in future time.

Faciam, sī mihi fidem quam postulō dederis, 'I will do it, if you will give me the pledge for which I ask' (literally, 'if you shall have given me').

a. Sometimes the first Periphrastic Conjugation is used, instead of the simple future, or as a past future.

Frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcum *portātūrī erant*, combūrunt, 'they burned all the grain except what they were going to take with them.'

214. The Perfect Indefinite denotes an act undefined in the past.

Is ita cum Caesare *ēgit*, 'he treated as follows with Caesar.'

NOTE. — The Perfect Indefinite is sometimes called the Historical Perfect.

a. On account of the meaning of the verbs, the Perfects **ōdī**, **meminī**, **nōvī**, and **cōnsuēvī** have the force of Presents. Thus **nōvī** means 'I have learned,' hence 'I know.'

b. The Perfect is sometimes used of a state of things no longer existing.

Fuit antea tempus, 'there was formerly a time.'

215. The Perfect Definite is like the English Present Perfect, and is used of an action completed in present time.

Ita utī suprā *dēmōnstrāvimus*, 'as we have shown above.'

216. The Pluperfect Indicative, like the English Past Perfect, denotes an act completed in the past.

Quod ante *tacuerat* prōpōnit, 'he revealed that about which he had previously kept silent.'

a. The Pluperfects **nōveram**, **memineram**, **ōderam**, and **cōnsuēveram** have the force of a simple past. See 214, *a*.

217. The Future Perfect denotes an action completed in the future.

Ego certē meum officium *praestiterō*, 'I at least shall have done my duty.'

a. The Future Perfect is sometimes used in Latin where English less exactly employs a Present or Future. See **dederis** (213).

3. THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES

218. The tenses are divided into Primary (or Principal) and Secondary (or Historical) tenses, the former denoting present or future action, and the latter past action.

The Primary and Secondary tenses of the Indicative and of the Subjunctive are as follows: —

INDICATIVE PRIMARY	SUBJUNCTIVE PRIMARY
Present.	*Present* (used of incomplete or future action).
Future.	
Perfect Definite (translated with 'have').	*Perfect* (used of completed or previous action).
Future Perfect.	

Indicative Secondary	Subjunctive Secondary
Imperfect.	*Imperfect* (used of incomplete or future action).
Perfect Indefinite (translated by a simple past).	*Pluperfect* (used of completed or previous action).
Pluperfect.	

219. In dependent clauses in the Subjunctive Primary Tenses regularly follow Primary Tenses in the principal clause, and Secondary Tenses follow Secondary Tenses.

Primary Sequence

Quaerō quid faciat, 'I ask what he is doing' (or 'will do').[1]
Quaeram quid faciat, 'I shall ask what he is doing' (or 'will do').
Quaesīverō quid faciat, 'I shall have asked what he is doing' (or 'will do').
Quaerō quid fēcerit, 'I ask what he has done' (or 'did').
Quaeram quid fēcerit, 'I shall ask what he has done' (or 'did').
Quaesīverō quid fēcerit, 'I shall have asked what he has done' (or 'did').

Secondary Sequence

Quaerēbam quid faceret, 'I asked what he was doing' (or 'would do').[2]
Quaesīvī quid faceret, 'I asked what he was doing' (or 'would do').
Quaesīveram quid faceret, 'I had asked what he was doing' (or 'would do').
Quaerēbam quid fēcisset, 'I asked what he had done.'
Quaesīvī quid fēcisset, 'I asked what he had done.'
Quaesīveram quid fēcisset, 'I had asked what he had done.'

4. Peculiarities of Sequence

220. The Perfect Indicative is usually a secondary tense and is followed by the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive, even when translated into English as a present perfect.

221. A dependent Perfect Infinitive is treated as a secondary tense, whenever it would be secondary if resolved into an equivalent Indicative.

Satis cōnstat Sullam prōclāmāsse *vincerent*, 'it is well known that Sulla cried that they might have their way' (dir. disc. *Sulla clāmāvit*).

[1] To express 'what he *will* do' *quid factūrus sit* is often used instead of *quid faciat*.

[2] To express 'what he *would* do,' *quid factūrus esset* is often used instead of *quid faceret*.

222. The Historical Present (208) is sometimes regarded as a primary, and sometimes as a secondary tense.

223. The Perfect Subjunctive is sometimes used as a secondary tense, or after a secondary tense.

Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās, ut ad galeās induendās . . . tempus *dēfuerit*, 'so short was the time, that they had no time to put on their helmets.'

224. In Indirect Discourse (see 265) Primary Tenses of the Subjunctive are often used after a past verb of saying for vividness or for variety. Sometimes the regular sequence of tenses is observed in the same speech.

Ariovistus *respondit* . . . quod multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam *trādūcat*, id sē suī mūniendī causā . . . facere; eius reī testimōnium esse, quod nisi rogātus nōn *vēnerit* et quod bellum nōn *intulerit* sed *dēfenderit* . . . Quid sibi *vellet*? cūr in suās possessiōnēs *veniret*.

NOTE. — For the Sequence of Tenses in Conditional Sentences, see 270.

5. Moods

a. The Independent Subjunctive

225. The Hortatory Subjunctive is used in the first person plural of the Present, in exhortations. The negative is **nē**.

Festīnēmus, inquit Cicero, prius quam abeat magistrātū, 'let us hasten, said Cicero, before he abdicates his office.'

226. The Jussive Subjunctive expresses a command. It is regularly in the Present Tense and most commonly in the Third Person Singular or Plural. The Second Person also occurs.

Pietātem *colās*, 'observe justice.'

a. Negative commands are regularly expressed by **nōlī (nōlīte)** with the infinitive.

Nōlī exīstimāre, 'do not suppose.'

227. The Deliberative or Dubitative Subjunctive is used in questions or exclamations implying doubt or indignation.

Cūr hunc quisquam ab officiō discessūrum *iūdicet*, 'Why should any one suppose that he would withdraw from his allegiance?'

228. The Optative Subjunctive is used to express a *wish*. The negative is regularly **nē**.

Moriar in patriā saepe servātā, 'may I die in the fatherland which I have often saved.'

b. Use of the Moods in Dependent Clauses

(1) *Purpose Clauses*

229. Clauses of Purpose, or Final Clauses, are introduced by **ut** (**utī**), **nē**, and **quō**, and take the Subjunctive.

Amūlius, *ut* rēgnum firmissimē *possidēret*, Numitōris fīlium interēmit, 'Amulius, in order to get a strong hold on the throne, slew Numitor's son.'

a. With comparatives **quō** is usually used instead of **ut**.

Praesidia dispōnit *quō facilius* eōs prohibēre *possit*, 'he stations garrisons, that he may be able the more easily to prevent them.'

230. A Relative Pronoun, equivalent to **ut is**, **ut iī**, etc., or a Relative Adverb, is often used with the Subjunctive to express purpose.

Patrēs Menēnium Agrippam mīsērunt, *quī* plēbem senātuī *conciliāret*, 'the fathers sent Menenius Agrippa to reconcile the people to the senate.'

231. Purpose clauses are often 'Parenthetical'; that is, they depend upon something to be supplied from the context instead of upon the main verb of their own sentence.

Ut omittam Philippum, omnium eius temporibus potentissimus rēx Antiochus fuit, 'to say nothing of Philip, Antiochus was the most powerful king of his times.'

NOTE. — Purpose may also be expressed by the Gerund, or Gerundive (282), or by the Supine (286); but never by the Infinitive (as in English).

NOTE. — For substantive Clauses of Purpose see 260.

(2) *Result Clauses*

232. Clauses of Result are introduced by **ut** and **ut nōn**, and take the Subjunctive. The main clause often, but not always,

contains a word meaning *so* or *such* (**tantus, tālis, tot, tam, is,** etc.).

Id nātūrā locī *sīc* mūniēbātur, *ut* magnam ad dūcendum bellum *daret* facultātem, 'this was so strengthened by its situation, that it offered a great opportunity for prolonging the war.'

Ā superiōre parte silvestris, *ut nōn* facile intrōrsus perspicī *posset*, 'wooded on the upper part, so that one could not easily see through into it' (*i.e.* 'so thickly wooded that it could not easily be seen into,' etc.).

(3) *Characteristic Clauses*

233. A relative clause which is used to express a quality or characteristic of an antecedent not otherwise defined is called a Clause of Characteristic, and is put in the Subjunctive.

Characteristic Clauses are especially common after expressions of existence and non-existence (**est quī, sunt quī,** etc.), and after **ūnus** and **sōlus.**

Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exīre *possent*, 'there were only two routes by which they could leave their home.'

Ūnum sē esse . . . quī addūcī nōn *potuerit* ut iūrāret, 'that he was the only one who could not be induced to take an oath.' (*Potuerit* would be subjunctive in the direct discourse.)

(4) *Temporal Clauses*

234. Temporal Clauses introduced by **postquam (posteāquam), ut, ubī, simul ac (atque),** and **cum prīmum** take the Indicative, usually the Perfect or Historical Present.

Eō *postquam* Caesar *perrēnit*, obsidēs poposcit, 'after Caesar came there, he demanded hostages.'

Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs *factī sunt*, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, 'when the Helvetians had been informed of his arrival, they sent envoys to him.'

a. The above conjunctions are sometimes followed by the Pluperfect Indicative. This is regularly the case with **postquam** in expressions denoting a definite interval of time.

Sīc fīnem accēpit secundum Pūnicum bellum *post*[1] annum ūndēvīcēsimum *quam*[1] *coeperat*, 'thus the second Punic war came to an end nineteen years after it had begun.'

[1] Note the separation of **post** and **quam**, which is not uncommon.

235. Temporal Clauses introduced by **cum**, 'when,' take the Indicative to denote the *time when* an action takes place, and the Subjunctive to denote the *circumstances under which* an action takes place.

With the *imperfect and pluperfect tenses* the Subjunctive is almost always used; *with the other tenses* the Indicative.

Cum bellum *parābis*, tē ipsum frūstrāberis, 'when you prepare for war you will deceive yourself.'

Ut numquam in parī perīculō fuerit Carthāgō, nisi *cum dēlēta est*, 'that Carthage was never in so great danger except at the time when it was destroyed.'

Hōc *cum* Amūlius *comperisset*, mātrem in vincula coniēcit, 'having learned this, Amulius cast the mother into prison.'

a. When **cum** means 'whenever,' the Indicative is used.

Hīs *cum* fūnēs *comprehēnsī erant*, praerumpēbantur, 'whenever the ropes had been caught by these, they were broken asunder.'

NOTE. — The Imperfect and Pluperfect Indicative are rare. **Cum**-causal and **cum**-concessive, translated by 'since' and 'although,' always take the Subjunctive; see 240 and 251.

236. Temporal Clauses introduced by **dum**, *while*, regularly take the Indicative in the Historical Present.

Dum Ardeam *oppugnat*, imperium perdidit, 'while he was besieging Ardea, he lost the sovereignty.'

237. Temporal Clauses introduced by **dum, dōnec, quoad**, and **quam diū**, *as long as*, take the Indicative.

Quam diū in Italiā *fuit*, nēmō eī in aciē restitit, 'as long as he was in Italy, no one opposed him in battle.'

NOTE. — In the examples belonging under 236 the action of the verb of the Temporal Clause and that of the verb of the Main Clause are not *coextensive in time;* in those belonging under 237 they *are coextensive.*

238. **Dum**, **dōnec**, and **quoad**, *until*, take the Indicative to denote an actual event, but the Subjunctive to denote anticipation or expectancy.

Ut spatium intercēderet, dum mīlitēs *convenīrent*, lēgātīs respondit, 'that a little time might intervene, until the soldiers should assemble (*i.e.* for the soldiers to assemble), he replied to the envoys,' etc.

Hostēs cohibuit *dōnec* pōns ā tergō *ruptus esset*, 'he held the enemy in check until the bridge should be destroyed behind him.'

239. Temporal Clauses introduced by **priusquam** take the Indicative to denote an actual fact, the Subjunctive to denote anticipation or expectancy.

Nec prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum . . . *pervēnērunt*, 'and they did not cease to flee, until they came to the river Rhine.'

Caesar priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā *reciperent*, in fīnēs Suessiōnum . . . exercitum dūxit, 'Caesar led his army into the lands of the Suessiones before the enemy could recover from their panic flight.'

(5) *Causal Clauses*

240. **Cum** causal takes the Subjunctive.

Praesertim *cum* . . . eōrum precibus adductus bellum *suscēperit*, multō etiam gravius queritur, 'especially since he undertook the war moved by their entreaties, he complained the more bitterly.'

241. Causal Clauses introduced by **quod** and **quoniam** take the Indicative, unless the reason is given as that of some other person than the speaker or writer, or unless a verb of saying is implied, in which case the Subjunctive is used.

Dumnorīx . . . Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis fīliam in mātrimōnium *dūxerat*, 'Dumnorix was a friend of the Helvetians, because he had married the daughter of Orgetorix from that state.'

Etiam gravius quod *sit dēstitūtus* queritur, 'he complains the more bitterly because he has been deserted.'

242. Relative Clauses denoting *cause* are usually a special variety of the Clause of Characteristic (233) and take the Subjunctive.

Fuit mīrificā vigilantiā Canīnius, *quī* tōtō suō cōnsulātū somnum nōn *vīderit*, 'Caninius was a man of extraordinary vigilance, since he did not close his eyes during his whole consulship.'

(6) *Conditional Sentences*

243. In Conditional Sentences with nothing implied as to the fulfillment of the Condition, which are expressed Positively (or Vividly) any tense of the Indicative may be used in either the Condition (Protasis) or the Conclusion (Apodosis).

Sī vērum *est*, ut populus Rōmānus omnēs gentēs virtūte superārit, nōn *est īnfitiandum* . . ., 'if it is true that the Roman people surpassed all nations in valor, it must not be denied,' etc.

a. In future conditions of this class the Future Perfect is used in the Protasis when its action is regarded as *completed* at the time represented by the verb of the Apodosis.

Sī ponticulum *trānsierimus*, omnia armīs *agenda erunt*, 'if we cross ('shall have crossed') the little bridge, everything must be accomplished by arms.'

244. To this class also belong those Conditional Sentences in which the Protasis denotes a repeated action, sometimes called General Conditions.

Sī quandō nostrī ferreīs manibus iniectīs nāvem *religāverant*, suīs labōrantibus *succurrēbant*, 'if ever our men had fastened to a ship by throwing grappling-irons upon it, they came to the rescue of their countrymen who were in distress.'

245. Conditional Sentences with nothing implied as to the fulfillment of the condition, which are expressed Less Positively (or Vividly), take the Present or Perfect Subjunctive in the condition, and the Present Subjunctive in the conclusion.

Sī quī ex reliquīs *excellat* dignitāte, *succēdat*, 'if any one of the rest should be superior in rank, he would succeed.'

a. The Perfect Subjunctive is used under the conditions which call for the Future Perfect Indicative in conditions of the first class; see 243, *a*.

246. Conditions and conclusions Contrary to Fact take the Imperfect Subjunctive to denote present time and the Pluperfect Subjunctive to denote past time.

Sī quī ex reliquīs *excelleret* dignitāte, *succēderet*, 'if any one of the rest were superior in rank, he would succeed.'

Sī quī ex cēterīs superior *fuisset* dignitāte, *successisset*, 'if any one of the rest had been superior in rank, he would have succeeded.'

247. The Apodosis of a Condition Contrary to Fact sometimes stands in the Indicative, frequently in expressions of *ability*, *obligation*, or *necessity* and with the two Periphrastic Conjunctions.

Āctum erat de pulcherrimō imperiō, nisi illa coniūrātiō in Cicerōnem et Antōnium cōnsulēs incidisset, 'it would have been all over with that noble state, had not that conspiracy happened during the consulship of Cicero and Antonius.'

248. The Protasis of any kind of Conditional Sentence may be implied in a single word or phrase, instead of being expressed by a clause with **sī**, or it may be omitted altogether.

Ego *cum tālibus virīs* brevī orbem terrārum subigerem, 'with such men I would soon conquer the world' (= *sī tālēs virōs habērem*).

249. Conditional Clauses of Comparison are introduced by **quasi, tamquam sī, velut sī**, or simply by **tamquam** and **velut.** They take the Subjunctive in the tenses demanded by the Sequence of Tenses (219).

Quasi ignāviae eum *pertaedēret*, missiōnem continuō efflāgitāvit, 'as if he were disgusted with his incapacity, he at once asked for his discharge.'

(7) *Concessive and Adversative Clauses*

250. Adversative sentences introduced by **quamquam** state facts and are put in the Indicative.

Quamquam quārtānae morbō *labōrābat*, prope per singulās noctēs latebrās commūtāre cōgēbātur, 'although he was suffering from quartan ague, he was forced to change his hiding-places almost every night.'

251. Cum concessive or adversative takes the Subjunctive.

Cicerō *cum posset* armīs suam salūtem dēfendere, māluit urbe cēdere, 'although Cicero might have protected himself by arms, he preferred to leave the city.'

252. Adversative Clauses introduced by **etsī (tametsī)** take the same moods and tenses as conditional sentences.

Quārum studium *etsī* senior *arripuerat*, tamen magnum prōgressum fēcit, 'although he had taken up the study of this late in life, yet he made great progress.'

253. Clauses with **dum** or **dum modo**, denoting a proviso, take the Subjunctive.

Vincerent, *dum modo scīrent* eum optimātium partibus exitiō futūrum, 'they might have their way, provided they bore in mind that he would be the ruin of the aristocratic party.'

254. Relative Clauses denoting Concession are a special variety of the Characteristic Clause (233) and take the Subjunctive. See 256.

Cicerō, quī omnēs superiōrēs diēs mīlitēs in castrīs *continuisset*, septimō diē quīnque cohortēs frūmentātum mittit, 'although Cicero had kept

the soldiers in camp on all the previous days, on the seventh he sent five cohorts to forage.'

(8) *Relative Clauses*

255. Relative Clauses are regularly in the Indicative.

Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs possessiōnēsque *habēbant*, fugā sē . . . recipiunt, 'the Allobroges, who had villages and possessions across the Rhone, fled.'

256. Relative Clauses of Purpose (230), Characteristic (233), Cause (242), and Concession (254) are put in the Subjunctive.

(9) *Substantive Clauses*

257. Substantive Clauses are used like nouns, as the subject and object of verbs and in some other constructions. They are in the Indicative, except as mentioned below.

Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat, quod Dīviciācī fidem . . . *cognōverat*, 'of all these things one thing stood in the way, namely, that he knew the loyalty of Diviciacus.'

258. **Quod** introducing a substantive clause sometimes means *as to the fact that, as to.* The mood is the Indicative.

Quod rem Caesarī ēnūntiārit, 'as to his having reported the matter to Caesar.' (The Subjunctive is due to Indirect Discourse.)

259. Indirect Questions are substantive clauses. They are introduced by interrogative words, and sometimes by **sī**, 'whether,' and take the Subjunctive.

Quālis *esset* nātūra montis . . . quī cognōscerent mīsit, 'he sent men to find out what the nature of the mountain was.'

Sī perrumpere *possent* cōnātī, 'having tried (to see) whether they could break through.'

a. Double indirect questions are introduced by **utrum** or **-ne** in the first member, and by **an** in the second. 'Or not' is translated by **necne**.

Frātrī optiōnem dedit, *utrum* rēgnum habēre *vellet an* bona quae pater relīquisset, 'he gave his brother his choice, whether he wished to have the throne or the goods which his father had left.'

Ut dēclārārent *utrum* proelium committī ex ūsū esset *necne*, 'that they should declare whether it was of advantage for battle to be joined or not.'

b. In indirect dubitative questions the Subjunctive was used in the direct question (see 227).

260. Verbs meaning *to ask, demand, persuade, advise, command,* and the like, are followed by object clauses in the Subjunctive, usually introduced by **ut** and **nē**.

(Orgetorīx) cīvitātī persuāsit, *ut* dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs *exīrent*, 'Orgetorix persuaded the state to go forth from its territory with all its forces.'

Illa petiit *ut* sibi *darent* quod in sinistrīs manibus gererent, 'she asked that they give her what they wore on their left arms.'

a. Such clauses may be used as appositives to nouns implying *purpose* or *design*.

Scaevola in castra hostis sē contulit, *eō cōnsiliō, ut* rēgem *occīderet*, 'Scaevola entered the enemy's camp with the intention of killing the king.'

Note. — **Iubeō**, *order*, **vetō**, *forbid*, and **cupiō**, *desire*, take the Infinitive with Subject Accusative.

261. Substantive Clauses resembling result clauses are used as the subject and object of certain verbs, and as appositives. They are introduced by **ut** (negative **ut . . . nōn**) and take the Subjunctive.

Hīs rēbus fīēbat, *ut* minus lātē *vagārentur*, 'it happened on account of these things that they roamed less widely.'

Fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur, 'they made their march look exactly like a stampede' (Lane).

Note. — In some cases the idea of result has been entirely lost, as in **poenam sequī oportēbat, ut īgnī cremārētur**, the law required that the punishment of being burned to death should follow.'

262. Substantive clauses in the Subjunctive, introduced by **nē, quīn** or **quōminus**, are used as the objects of verbs meaning *hinder, prevent, refuse*, etc.

Quī rēgem impedīret quō minus cōpiās in Italiam trādūceret, 'to prevent the king from leading his forces into Italy.'

263. Substantive clauses in the Subjunctive, introduced by **quīn**, are used with verbs and expressions of doubt and uncertainty, when these are negatived.

Neque abest suspīciō *quīn* ipse sibi mortem cōnscīverit, 'and the suspicion is not lacking that he committed suicide.'

Nēmō dubitābat *quīn* aliquid dē pāce *esset scrīptum*, 'no one doubted but that there was something written (in it) about peace.'

264. Verbs of Fearing are followed by the Subjunctive introduced by **ut**, 'that not,' and **nē** 'that' (or 'lest').

Nam *nē* eius suppliciō Dīviciācī animum *offenderet* verēbātur, 'for he feared that by punishing him he might hurt the feelings of Diviciacus.'

Rem frūmentāriam, *ut* satis commodē supportārī *posset*, timēre dīcēbant, 'they said that they feared that supplies could not be brought there readily.'

6. Indirect Discourse

265. In Indirect Discourse Principal Declarative sentences are put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. The tenses of the Infinitive denote time present, past, or future to that of the verb of saying, thinking, or knowing which introduces the Indirect Discourse.

Angustōs *sē* fīnēs *habēre* arbitrābantur, 'they thought that they had narrow limits.' Direct Discourse: angustōs fīnēs habēmus.

(Dīxit) *sē* (eōs) eōdem locō quō Helvētiōs *habitūrum*, 'he said that he would hold them in the same estimation as (he did) the Helvetians.' Direct Discourse: eōdem locō vōs quō Helvētiōs habēbō.

Cum id . . . illum ūnō diē *fēcisse* intellegerent, 'when they knew that he had done that in one day.' Direct Discourse: id ille ūnō diē fēcit.

266. Imperative sentences in Indirect Discourse are put in the Subjunctive. The tense depends on that of the verb of saying, according to the rule of the Sequence of Tenses (219 ff.).

Satis cōnstat Sullam prōclāmāsse *vincerent*, dummodo scīrent, etc., 'it is well known that Sulla cried that they might have their way, provided they knew,' etc. Direct Discourse: Vincite, dummodo sciātis.

267. Real questions in Indirect Discourse are usually put in the Subjunctive. Rhetorical questions (see 227) may be put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative.

Ariovistus respondit: Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās possessiōnēs venīret, 'Ariovistus answered: What did he want? Why did he come into his dominions?' Direct Discourse: Quid vīs? Cūr in meās possessiōnēs venistī?

Num etiam recentium iniūriārum memoriam dēpōnere posse, 'could he lay aside the recollection of the recent wrongs also.' Direct Discourse: Num etiam recentium iniūriārum memoriam dēpōnere possim?

268. Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse are put in the Subjunctive if they are not already in that mood. The tense is determined by that of the verb of saying, according to the rule of the Sequence of Tenses (219 ff.).

(Dīcit) esse nōnnūllōs, quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum *valeat*, quī prīvātim plūs *possint* quam ipsī magistrātūs, 'that there are some whose influence with the commons is very great, who as private individuals have more power than the magistrates themselves.' Direct Discourse: Sunt nōnnūllī, quōrum . . . valet, quī . . . possunt.

(Dīxit) sibi minus dubitātiōnis darī, quod cās rēs, quās lēgātī Helvētiī *commemorāssent*, memoriā *tenēret*, 'he felt less hesitation, because he remembered those things which the Helvetian envoys had related.' Direct Discourse: Mihi minus dubitātiōnis datur, quod eās rēs, quās . . . commemorāvērunt, memoriā teneō.

269. Subordinate Clauses which are not thought of as a part of the Indirect Discourse are in the Indicative.

Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caeroesōs, Paemanōs, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrārī ad XL mīlia, 'they thought that the Condrusi, Eburones, Caeroesi, and Paemani, who are called by the single name Germans, (would furnish) about 40,000.'

270. Conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse follow the general rules, the condition becoming Subjunctive, if it is not already in that mood, and the conclusion being put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative.

But Conditions Contrary to Fact retain the past tenses of the Subjunctive even after a primary tense, and in the conclusion take the Future Participle with **fuisse**.

(Dīcit) sī nōn *faciat*, eum adversus rem pūblicam *factūrum* (esse) *vidērī*, 'he says that if he does not do it, he will seem to be acting contrary to the interests of the state.' Direct Discourse: sī nōn faciēs, adversum rem pūblicam facēre vidēberis.

(Dīxit) sī id ita *fēcisset*,[1] sibi populōque Rōmānō perpetuam amīcitiam . . . cum eō *futūrum*, 'he said that if he did this, there would be lasting friendship with him on the part of himself and the Roman people.' Direct Discourse: sī id fēceris (fut. perf.) . . . perpetua amīcitia erit.

Sī quid ipsī ā Caesare opus *esset*, sēsē ad eum *ventūrum fuisse*, 'that if he wanted anything from Caesar, he would have come to him.' Direct Discourse: sī quid mihi opus *esset*, *vēnissem*.

271. The Subjunctive is used in clauses in which Indirect Discourse is implied.

Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum quod *essent pollicitī* flāgitāre, 'Caesar demanded of the Aeduans the grain which (as he reminded them) they had promised.'

[1] A Future Perfect Indicative of the Direct Discourse appears in Indirect Discourse as a Perfect Subjunctive after a Primary Tense and a Pluperfect Subjunctive after a Secondary Tense.

7. Subjunctive by Attraction

272. A dependent clause attached to a subjunctive or infinitive clause, and forming an essential part of it, may be put in the Subjunctive by Attraction.

Utī commeātū quī ex Sēquanīs *supportārētur* Caesarem interclūderet, 'that he might cut off Caesar from the supplies which were coming from the Sequani.'

8. The Imperative

273. The Imperative is used in commands or exhortations.

Iacta ālea *estō*, 'let the die be cast.'

For negative commands see 226, *a*.

9. The Infinitive

Note. — The Infinitive is a verbal noun. As a noun it may have an adjective in agreement; as a verb, it may govern cases, has tense and voice, and may be modified by adverbs. The tenses of the Infinitive denote time present, past, or future to that of the main verb.

For the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse see 265.

274. The Infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, may be used as the subject or object of a verb or as an appositive.

Commodissimum vīsum est *mittere*, 'it seemed best to send.'

Mōribus suīs *Orgetorīgem* ex vinculīs causam *dīcere* coēgērunt, 'according to their custom they forced Orgetorix to plead his cause in chains.'

a. A Predicate Noun, Adjective, or Participle with these Infinitives is attracted into the Nominative (cf. 126, *a*).

Catō esse quam vidērī bonus mālēbat, 'Cato preferred to be, rather than to seem, good.'

275. The Historical Infinitive, with its subject in the Nominative, is sometimes used in narration instead of a past tense of the Indicative.

Interim cotīdiē Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum *flāgitāre*, 'meanwhile Caesar every day asked the Aeduans for the grain.'

10. The Participle

Note. — The participle is a verbal adjective. As an adjective it agrees with the noun which it limits; as a verb it governs cases, has tense and voice, and may be modified by an adverb.

276. The tenses of the participle denote time present, past, or future to that of the main verb.

Rōmānī *spectantēs* virginēs rapuērunt, 'the Romans carried off the maidens, while they were looking on.'
Timōre perterritī Rōmānī discēdunt, 'The Romans withdrew because they had been frightened.'

Note. — As is seen in the second example, the context often gives to the participle an idea of time, cause, condition, concession, manner, attendant circumstances, and the like; cf. 173.

277. Some Perfect Passive Participles of Deponent and Semi-Deponent verbs are used as presents. Such are **arbitrātus, ratus, ausus, gāvīsus, solitus, ūsus, cōnfīsus, diffīsus, secūtus.**

278. The Future Active Participle (except **futūrus**) is regularly confined to the First Periphrastic Conjugation, but it is sometimes used to express purpose.

Hanc iniūriam *vindicātūrus*, in Italiam rediit, 'to avenge this wrong he returned into Italy.'

279. The Future Passive Participle denotes capability or necessity, and is commonly used with the verb **sum.**

Aciēs *erat īnstruenda*, 'the line of battle had to be drawn up.'
Ariovistus tantōs sibi spīritūs sumpserat, ut *ferendus* nōn vidērētur, 'Ariovistus had assumed such arrogance that he seemed unbearable.'

Note. — The Latin has no Present Passive Participle, and no Perfect Active Participle, except in the case of deponent verbs. With other verbs the ideas expressed in English by these participles must be expressed in Latin by the Ablative Absolute (173), or by a clause introduced by a conjunction (**dum, cum**, etc.).

Note. — The Perfect Participles of deponent verbs are usually active in meaning, but they sometimes have a passive meaning.

Dēpopulātīs agrīs, 'since their fields had been devastated.'

280. The Perfect Passive Participle sometimes contains the leading idea of its phrase and is translated by a verbal noun. So also the Future Passive Participle when used as the Gerundive.

Eius posterī ūsque *ad Rōmam conditam* Albae rēgnāvērunt, 'his descendants were kings at Alba until the founding of Rome.'

281. The Perfect Passive Participle with **habēre** is often nearly equivalent to a pluperfect, but lays stress rather on *the existing state of affairs* than on the action of the verb.

Portōria *redēmpta habēre*, 'that he had the customs tolls bought up.'

11. The Gerund and Gerundive

Note. — The Gerundive is the future passive participle when it contains the leading idea in its phrase (see 280). The Gerund is a verbal noun, found only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative.

282. The Gerund is used in the genitive to limit a noun or adjective, in the accusative with **ad**, when it often denotes purpose, and in the ablative.

Hominēs *bellandī* cupidī, 'men desirous of making war.'

In locum inīquum prōgredī *pugnandī* causā, 'to advance into an unfavorable place for the purpose of fighting.'

Cōnstituērunt ea quae *ad proficīscendum* pertinērent comparāre, 'they resolved to get ready the things which had to do with their departing.'

Reperiēbat etiam *in quaerendō* Caesar, 'Caesar also found out on inquiring.'

Note. — Observe the second example. **Causā** is used both with the gerund and with the gerundive to denote purpose, with the meaning 'for the sake of' or 'for the purpose of.'

283. Instead of the Gerund governing a noun, the Gerundive in agreement with the noun is commonly used, especially after a preposition.

Datā facultāte per prōvinciam *itineris faciendī*, 'if given the opportunity of making a march through the province.'

Parātiōrēs *ad omnia perīcula subeunda*, 'more ready to face every danger.'

Nē *in quaerendīs suīs* (signīs) pugnandī tempus dīmitteret, 'lest in seeking his own standards he should lose time for fighting.'

284. The genitives **meī**, **tuī**, **suī**, **nostrī**, and **vestrī**, which were originally neuter singular, are used in the gerundive construction without reference to gender or number.

Neque suī colligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt, 'and they leave the enemy no opportunity of collecting themselves.'

285. The Gerundive in agreement with the object is used with **dō**, **cūrō**, and some other verbs, with the value of an object clause, or to express purpose.

Faustulus puerōs uxōrī *nūtriendōs* dedit, 'Faustulus gave the boys to his wife, to be nourished.'

Pontem in Ararī *faciendum* cūrat, 'he had a bridge built over the Arar.'

12. The Supine

Note. — The Supine is a verbal noun of the fourth declension, used only in the accusative and ablative singular.

286. The Supine in **-um** is used with verbs of motion to express the purpose of the motion.

Aeduī lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt *rogātum* auxilium, 'the Aeduans sent envoys to Caesar to ask for help.'

Note. — Sometimes the Supine in **-um** is used with other verbs, if motion is implied. Sorōrem et propinquās *nūptum* in aliās cīvitātēs collocāsse, = 'that he had sent his sister and (other) female relatives to other states, to be married.'

287. The Supine in **-u** is used with adjectives as an Ablative of Specification. It is most naturally translated by an English Infinitive.

Perfacile *factū* esse illīs probat cōnāta perficere, 'he proves to them that to accomplish their attempts is an easy thing to do.'

IV. FIGURES OF RHETORIC AND GRAMMAR

288. Hendiadys is the expression of one idea through two nouns connected by a conjunction.

In eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdere, 'that he was visiting upon them every species of cruelty.'

289. Litotes asserts a thing with emphasis by denying the opposite.

Nōn sine magnā spē magnīsque praemiīs domum relīquisse, 'that they had left home not without great hope of great rewards' (*i.e.* 'with the greatest hope').

290. Asyndeton is the omission of the conjunction between words, phrases, or clauses.

Fēlīcissimē dīmicāvit, Samnītēs dēlēvit, 'he fought with the greatest success (and) destroyed the Samnites.'

291. In Zeugma one verb is made to stand for two.

Aliī naufragiō, aliī ā servulīs ipsīus *interfectum* eum scrīptum relīquērunt, 'some have recorded that he perished in a shipwreck, others that he was killed by his own slaves.'

LATIN COMPOSITION

The following Exercises have been prepared because it is believed that a much more thorough acquaintance with, and appreciation of, Latin idioms, constructions, and forms can be gained from the turning of English into Latin than from mere translation from the original.

The Exercises cover the entire text except pp. 21–58 and pp. 423 ff. Exercises 1–24 are based on the text preceding Caesar; they are carefully graded and are made very simple. Exercises 25–95 are based on the text of the *Gallic War*. With one exception Exercises 25–60 are based each on a single chapter of Book I (a single Exercise is made on Chapters xxix and xxx). The remaining Exercises are distributed evenly over the rest of the *Gallic War*. Exercises 25–52 are accompanied by carefully graded Grammar Lessons, which are illustrated by the sentences of each Exercise, together with a review of the principles of the preceding Lessons. At first very easy, detached sentences are given, from which there is a gradual transition to continuous passages. *Therefore those who prefer to do so may begin their work in Composition with Caesar, omitting the preceding Exercises.*

The Exercises are based closely upon the Latin text, and require a reproduction of various words and constructions, but with many changes of form and combination. All the words required in translating will be found in some part of the text upon which they are based, or will be suggested in

the foot-notes. In the first place, the Latin should be translated carefully and thoroughly understood, attention being directed especially to peculiarities of construction, or to points in which the Latin idiom differs from the English. The pupil will then be prepared intelligently to attempt the translation from the English. The Latin text should be referred to for the verification of doubtful points. There is an English-Latin Vocabulary at the back of the book.

Some of the errors to which beginners are especially inclined are guarded against in the following HINTS, to which references are made by Roman numerals (VI, X). References are also occasionally made to the pages and lines of the Text (as p. 10, l. 6), to call attention to words or phrases which may have been forgotten. Words between parentheses are to be omitted in translating into Latin.

HINTS

I. Remember that only deponent verbs have a perfect active participle. With other verbs, 'having done this' and similar expressions must be translated into Latin by the ablative absolute, or by a clause introduced by *cum*, *ubi*, etc.

II. The present participle is often used loosely in English. It must be translated into Latin by a perfect participle or an equivalent (see I), unless its action is strictly *contemporaneous* with that of the verb on which the participle depends; *e.g.* 'Attacking them when they were in disorder, he slew a great part of them,' *eōs impedītōs aggressus, magnam partem eōrum concīdit.*

III. Tenses are generally used more exactly in Latin than in English. We say, for instance, 'If he comes, I shall see him'; the Latin, more exactly, *sī veniet* or *sī vēnerit*

(fut. perf.). In translating into Latin, determine the exact relations of time, and use the corresponding tenses.

IV. Study the way in which Indirect Discourse is expressed. Read carefully 265–271. When reading Latin, carefully notice the moods and tenses of all indirect quotations. In Indirect Discourse the time must be determined with reference to that of the verb which introduces the indirect discourse. The *past*, *present*, or *future* tense of the infinitive is to be used, according as the action takes place *before*, *at the same time with*, or *after* the action of the main verb upon which it depends. The infinitive expresses *no time in itself*, but its time is viewed only with reference to the main verb in the sentence. The same is true of the participle.

V. Before translating a sentence in Indirect Discourse, try to reproduce the speaker's words: *e.g.* 'The Aedui said that their towns were being stormed and their fields laid waste.' The words of the Aedui may be given as follows: *oppida nostra oppugnantur, et agrī vāstantur;* this becomes in indirect discourse after a past tense, *Aeduī dīxērunt oppida sua oppugnārī et agrōs vāstārī.*

Pay special attention to the principle of the Sequence of Tenses. See 218, 219. Note that the present subjunctive, following a primary tense of the indicative, and the imperfect subjunctive, following a secondary tense of the indicative, express an action that is going on at the *same time* as the action of the main verb, or at some time future to that action; and that the perfect subjunctive, following a primary tense of the indicative, and the pluperfect subjunctive, following a secondary tense of the indicative, express an action that is *completed* at the time of the action of the main verb.

VI. Independent statements are much more common in English than in Latin. Hence, in translating English into

Latin, many coördinate verbs in English should be made subordinate in the Latin in some of the ways suggested in I and II.

VII. The Latin pronouns are more numerous and more definite than the English. Where in English we repeat a proper name to avoid ambiguity, or use such paraphrases as 'the general,' 'the Roman,' etc., a carefully chosen pronoun should be used in Latin.

VIII. Be careful in the use of pronouns. On *sē* and *suus* see 197, 198. In your Latin reading carefully observe the use of pronouns.

IX. Note the various ways of expressing Purpose. See 229, 230, 282 N., 286.

X. The voluntary agent is expressed by the ablative *with* a preposition; the means or instrument, by the ablative *without* a preposition.

XI. Be careful in translating English prepositions: *e.g.* 'He killed him *with* a sword,' *gladiō eum interfēcit;* 'he went *with* him,' *cum eō īvit;* 'when he heard *of* this,' *cum dē hōc audīvisset;* a 'man *of* great eloquence,' *vir magnā ēloquentiā;* 'the possessions *of* his father,' *paterna bona.* Determine the exact force of the English preposition, and translate accordingly.

XII. In translating into Latin such sentences as 'the man I saw,' the relative cannot be omitted, but we must say *vir* (*homō*) *quem vīdī.*

XIII. Prepositional phrases are seldom attached to nouns in Latin. When such cases occur in English, unless the relation can be expressed in Latin by the genitive, a relative clause should be used, or a participle added: *e.g.* 'the embassy from Caesar,' *Caesaris lēgātiō, lēgātiō ā Caesare missa, lēgātiō quae ā Caesare missa est.*

XIV. A personal or demonstrative pronoun at the beginning of a sentence, and sometimes a noun (see VII), is often best translated into Latin by a relative pronoun.

XV. Some conjunctions, like *enim*, *autem*, etc., are postpositive; *i.e.*, they do not stand first in the sentence, but after one or more words. This is always indicated in the Vocabulary. *Inquit*, 'said he,' always follows one or more words of a quotation.

XVI. Observe that verbs which govern the dative, or another case than the accusative, must be used impersonally in the passive: *e.g.* 'He persuaded the Helvetians,' *Helvētiīs persuāsit;* but 'the Helvetians were persuaded,' *Helvētiīs persuāsum est.*

XVII. In expressing the relations of place, the preposition is regularly omitted with names of towns, etc. (132); place where is expressed by the locative, which in the singular of the first and second declensions has the same form as the genitive; in the third declension, and in the plural, the same form as the dative or ablative. 176.

XVIII. Prohibitions, or negative commands, are sometimes expressed by the present or perfect subjunctive; but generally by *nōlī* (pl. *nōlīte*) with the infinitive, or *cavē* (pl. *cavēte*) with the subjunctive.

XIX. Causal clauses introduced by *quod*, *quia*, and *quoniam* take the indicative, unless the reason is viewed as that of some other person than the speaker or writer, when the subjunctive is used. 241.

XX. Note the idiomatic use of certain adjectives: *e.g.* *in extrēmō ponte*, 'at the end of the bridge'; *in mediā urbe*, 'in the middle of the city'; *summus mōns*, 'the top of the mountain'; *prīmus docuit*, 'he was the first to teach.'

XXI. Distinguish: 'I *may* do this,' *licet mihi hōc facere*, or

licet hōc faciam; 'I *can* do this,' *hōc facere possum;* 'I *ought* to do this,' *hōc facere dēbeō*, or *oportet mē hōc facere;* 'I *must* do this,' *me hōc facere necesse est, necesse est ut hōc faciam*, or *hōc mihi faciendum.* In the past tenses the *auxiliary* becomes past, and not the infinitive as in English: *e.g. licuit mihi hōc facere.*

XXII. To write good Latin one must not only express one's self with grammatical correctness, but also idiomatically. Many English expressions cannot be rendered literally; in fact, a continuous passage of idiomatic English can hardly ever be translated word for word into idiomatic Latin. Read the passage carefully, and translate the thought, not the words.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION INTO LATIN

1. Grammar Lesson. *Roman History*, 1–4.

(*a*) **Review of First and Second Declensions.** 9–15, 16–19.*
(*b*) **Use of Prepositions *in* and *sub*.** 186.
(*c*) **Subject and Direct Object of Verb.** 119, 125.

1. Saturn came into Italy. 2. He founded Saturnia upon[1] the Janiculum. 3. Aeneas fled from Troy,[2] which[3] is in Asia. 4. Latinus was a king in Italy. 5. He gave his[4] daughter in marriage. 6. Aeneas transferred the seat of government to Alba.[5] 7. This city was on the Alban mount. 8. Romulus Silvius was thrown-headlong into the Alban lake. 9. Aeneas and Ascanius founded cities in Latium.[6] 10. In very early times, under the rule of[7] Romulus, a city was founded.

[1] Use the prep. *in*.
[2] 'from Troy,' use the abl. case.
[3] *quae*.
[4] Omit.
[5] 'to Alba,' cf. p. 3, l. 2; see 132.
[6] Nom. case, *Latium*. See Vocab.
[7] See note, p. 2, l. 3.

2. Grammar Lesson. *Roman History*, 5–8.

(*a*) **Review of First Conjugation.** 90.
(*b*) **Agreement of Adjective.** 188, 189.
(*c*) **Indirect Object.** 148, 149.

1. The good Proca was ruling[1] in those districts. 2. This[2] king had[3] two sons. 3. They were called[4] Numitor and Amulius. 4. Amulius gave the ancestral property to Numitor. 5. The younger[5] son threw the daughter of Numitor into chains.

* References like this are to the GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX to be found on pages 489–584.

6. But the twin sons restored the kingdom to Numitor. 7. Romulus founded a city on the Aventine mount and called it[6] Rome. 8. Romulus had surrounded his[7] city with walls.[8] 9. Romulus gave Remus his[7] choice. 10. Nevertheless[9] he killed his brother.

[1] Imperfect tense.
[2] Use the pronoun, *hīc, haec, hōc.* See 81.
[3] Use the verb, *habeō.*
[4] See p. 2, l. 1; what voice?
[5] See p. 4, l. 9 and note.
[6] *eam.*
[7] Omit.
[8] 'with walls,' abl. of means.
[9] *tamen.*

3. Grammar Lesson. *Roman History*, 9–11.

(*a*) **Review of the Verb** *sum.* **88.**
(*b*) **Predicate Noun. 120.**
(*c*) **Predicate Adjective. 188.**

1. The city, of which[1] Romulus had been king, was new. 2. Many neighbors viewed the games. 3. Tarpeia was a maiden who had charge of the place-of-refuge.[2] 4. The Romans will be in the midst of the slaughter. 5. The rings and armlets are golden. 6. You gave to the children a small[3] gift. 7. The road to the stronghold is long,[4] but there[5] are many soldiers there. 8 Romulus admitted the Romans into the stronghold, and was called king. 9. All of the enemy are on[6] the Tarpeian mount. 10. This place is now called the Roman forum.

[1] *cuius.*
[2] 'the place-of-refuge,' *asȳlum.*
[3] *parvus*, adj.
[4] *longus*, adj.
[5] Omit.
[6] Cf. p. 3, l. 3.

4. Grammar Lesson. *Roman History*, 12–14.

(*a*) **Pronouns, Relative, Demonstrative, Possessive. 78, 81, 83.**
(*b*) **Possessive Genitive 135.**
(*c*) **Agreement of Relative. 122.**

1. The senators, whom he chose, he called fathers. 2. After the death of their[1] king, the Romans carried on no wars.

3. Numa, who was elected king, was of great[2] advantage to the state. 4. He sought to civilize[3] the character of a warlike people. 5. These women have come with their children. 6. The second[4] king of Rome was Numa, to whom[5] Tullus Hostilius succeeded. 7. He did everything which was of advantage[6] to the state. 8. Those men who fought[7] against[8] the Sabines are brave and active. 9. Tullus Hostilius, whom the Romans elected king, undertook[8] this war. 10. He ends the battle on account of the faithlessness of Tarpeia.

[1] See note on *sē*, p. 4, l. 3, and Hint VIII. [5] Dat. case.
[2] *multum*, the adv. See p. 11, l. 10. [6] Use the subjunctive mood.
[3] *molliō*. [4] *alter*. See 49. [7] *pugnō*. [8] cf. p. 8, l. 8.

5. Grammar Lesson. *Roman History*, 15–17.

(*a*) **Review of the Third Declension. 24–37.**
(*b*) **Two Accusatives: (1) Both referring to the same person or thing. 127. (2) One referring to the person affected, the other to the result produced. 128.**
(*c*) **Apposition. 121.**

1. The Romans chose Ancus Marcius, the grandson of Numa, king. 2. He taught[1] the Romans agriculture. 3. He called the city, which he founded at the mouth of the Tiber, Ostia. 4. They asked Tarpeia, the daughter of a Roman soldier, the way to the stronghold. 5. Tarquinius came to the city of Rome. 6. Then he gained the friendship of Ancus, the king of Rome.[2] 7. The latter[3] made Tarquinius guardian of his[4] children. 8. Tanaquil, the wife of Tarquinius, was skilled in augury.[5] 9. Afterwards[6] he accomplished[7] many things.[8] 10. Nevertheless,[9] the two sons of Ancus, who had been his wards, were the cause of his death.[10]

[1] cf. p. 2, ll. 1–2.
[2] 'of Rome,' express by an adjective.
[3] *Hīc*. [4] See Ex. **4**, note **1**.
[5] a plural idea in Latin. See p. 14, l. 6.
[6] cf. p. 10, l. 8. [7] *i.e.* did.
[8] 'many things,' express by one word; see 195, *a*.
[9] See Ex. **2**, note 9. [10] *i.e.* killed him.

6. Grammar Lesson. *Roman History*, 18–20.

(*a*) **Review of Second Conjugation. 91.**
(*b*) **Subjective Genitive. 136.**
(*c*) **Objective Genitive. 137.**

1. The woman, of whom [1] Servius Tullius was born, was noble. 2. By the command [2] of the king, Tarquinius Priscus, this boy was brought up in the royal [3] house. 3. Tanaquil, in honor [4] of her husband, appointed him king. 4. Thus he, who had been a slave, now [5] possessed [6] royal-power. 5. Servius Tullius had been the first to [7] manage the government well. 6. In the first place,[7] he put an end to the slaughter.[8] 7. During the reign of this king the Roman city had [9] many thousand citizens.[10] 8. Tullia, the wife of Tarquinius Superbus, killed her [11] own [12] father. 9. Tarquinius Superbus was the son of the fifth [13] king of Rome.[14] 10. She drove the carriage over the dead [15] body of her father.

[1] 'of whom,' express by the prep. *ē*, with the abl. of the rel. pronoun.
[2] Cf. p. 12, l. 2.
[3] Use the adj., *rēgius*.
[4] Cf. p. 2, l. 8.
[5] *nunc*.
[6] Cf. p. 5, l. 1.
[7] See note to p. 2, l. 1.
[8] Cf. p. 10, l. 5.
[9] Imperfect tense.
[10] See 138, and say 'thousands.'
[11] See Ex. **4**, note 1.
[12] *ipsīus*.
[13] *quīntus*, adj.
[14] Express by an adj.
[15] *mortuus*, adj.

7. Grammar Lesson. *Roman History*, 21–24.

(*a*) **Adjectives, their Declension and Comparison. 46–66.**
(*b*) **Accusative of Limit of Motion. 132.**
(*c*) **Accusative of Duration of Time and Space. 130.**

1. Tarquinius Superbus was more active in war than in peace.[1] 2. Nevertheless, he made very many buildings,[2] among [3] which was the temple of Jupiter. 3. Then he advanced [4] to [5] Ardea, a city which is not far from [6] Rome. 4. Lucretia, a very high-born lady, killed herself in the sight of her husband, Collatinus. 5. For this reason her husband, together with many others, closed the gates of the city against Tarquinius. 6. Tar-

quinius is said[7] to have been too proud.[8] 7. For many years the-government-was-administered by kings. 8. Afterwards the Romans went to Rome and elected consuls. 9. In the first year five consuls were chosen, who were very unlike[9] the kings. 10. Tarquinius and several others made war upon Rome, but they were conquered in the first battle.

[1] 'than in peace,' express by *quam*, followed by the ablative case of the noun.
[2] *aedificium*.
[3] Use the prep. *in*.
[4] Cf. p. 10, l. 3.
[5] Do not translate 'to.' Apply Grammar Lesson, *b*.
[6] 'not far from.' Cf. p. 1, l. 2.
[7] Cf. p. 1, l. 2. [8] Cf. 193.
[9] 'unlike,' *dissimilis*, adj. Cf. p. 13, l. 2.

8. Grammar Lesson. *Viri Romae*, p. 58 to p. 62, l. 6.

(*a*) Review of Third Conjugation of Verbs. 92, 93.
(*b*) Ablative Absolute. 173.

1. Caesar, when he had lost his father,[1] was deprived of his property. 2. He was more hostile to Sulla than[2] to Cinna. 3. The former[3] sought for Caesar for the purpose of killing him,[4] but Caesar changed his robe[1] and escaped to[5] Alba. 4. He was seized by a slave, but by giving him money[1] he obtained pardon. 5. At first[6] Sulla refused to grant[7] the pardon, but Caesar's relatives at last[8] obtained it. 6. In Asia, where he had served his first campaign, he captured Mitylenae. 7. When Caesar had been presented with a civic crown, Sulla died. 8. He withdrew to Rhodes, where Apollonius Molo was a famous teacher. 9. Caesar was captured by pirates, but he conducted himself in such a way that he was ransomed when fifty talents had been given[1] them. 10. Then he hastened to[5] Miletus.

[1] Express this clause by the abl. abs. constr. and cf. Hint I.
[2] *quam*. [3] *ille*.
[4] 'for the purpose of killing him,' express by two words. Cf. p. 59, l. 4.
[5] Cf. Ex. 7, note 5.
[6] *prīmō*. [7] *dare*. [8] *tandem*.

9. Grammar Lesson. *Viri Romae*, **p. 62, l. 7 to p. 67, l. 5.**

(*a*) **Review of Fourth and Fifth Declension of Nouns. 39–45.**
(*b*) **Ablative of Means. 163.**
(*c*) **Ablative of Comparison. 161, 162.**

1. Caesar was more eager for power than many other Romans. 2. 'Therefore,' said he,[1] 'there is no opportunity for ambition in a poor village.' 3. He ever longed to obtain royal-power by means of his forces. 4. He came to[2] Gades, a town in Spain. 5. There he noticed a temple of Hercules, in which was a statue of Alexander. 6. He was disgusted at his own inactivity because Alexander was[3] greater than himself.[4] 7. The Forum and Capitol were adorned with porticoes by Caesar, when[5] aedile. 8. By giving games and hunting-spectacles,[6] he squandered his patrimony. 9. After Caesar had been elected consul, Pompey and Crassus formed an alliance. 10. Bibulus, the colleague of Caesar, was driven out of the Forum by force of arms.

[1] Cf. p. 68, l. 10, and Hint XIV.
[2] Cf. Ex. **7**, note 5.
[3] Subjunctive mood.
[4] See Ex. **4**, note 1.
[5] Omit; 121.
[6] Cf. Ex. **8**, note 1.

10. Grammar Lesson. *Viri Romae*, **p. 67, l. 6 to p. 72.**

(*a*) **Review of Fourth Conjugation of Verbs. 94.**
(*b*) **Uses of the Participle. 276–281 and Hint II.**

1. Caesar, when he had completed his consulship,[1] attacked the Gauls. 2. For nine years[2] he carried on war in the province of Gaul. 3. He was the first one to[3] build a bridge and attack the Germans. 4. Having attacked the Britons, he reduced their country to the form of a province. 5. Hastening forward to the front of the battle line, he snatched a shield from the hands of a retreating soldier. 6. When Julia, the daughter of Caesar, married[1] Pompey, harmony was preserved. 7. When the former[4] died,[1] the power of Caesar was suspected. 8. Caesar returned into Italy, and became a candidate for the consulship a second time. 9. He stood at the river Rubicon for a little while, but finally crossed the bridge. 10. He captured[1] Brundisium with his army, and hastened on to Rome.

[1] See Ex. **8**, Grammar Lesson, and note 1.
[2] See Ex. **7**, *c*, Grammar Lesson.
[3] 'the first to,' cf. p. 2, l. 1.
[4] *ille*.

11. Grammar Lesson. *Viri Romae*, pp. 73–81.

(*a*) **Dative with Compounds.** 149, *b*.
(*b*) **Ablative of Cause.** 165.
(*c*) **Clauses of Purpose.** 229, 230, and Hint IX.
(*d*) **Clauses of Result and Characteristic.** 232, 233.

1. Caesar made war on the Gauls[1] in order that he might return to Rome as victor.[2] 2. Caesar was the only one[3] who could[4] conquer Pompey. 3. When Pompey had been killed,[5] Caesar finished the civil wars. 4. Antony placed the crown on Caesar's head. 5. The conspirators sent Cassius to stab[6] him. 6. They came into the senate so that[7] they might approach nearer to him. 7. Because of his many wounds Caesar could not spring up. 8. The assassins slew Julius Caesar in order that he might not be king. 9. Caesar was so merciful[8] that he was unwilling to read the letters which had been sent to Pompey. 10. His reputation was so[9] injured by the verses of Catullus that he could not lay aside his hatred.

[1] Cf. p. 76, l. 2.
[2] See Ex. **3**, Grammar Lesson, *b*.
[3] *ūnus*.
[4] See Grammar Lesson, *d*.
[5] See Ex. **8**, Grammar Lesson, *b*.
[6] See 230 and p. 32, l. 10.
[7] See 229, *a*.
[8] *tam clēmēns*.
[9] *adeō*.

12. Grammar Lesson. *Viri Romae*, pp. 82–89.

(*a*) **Partitive Genitive.** 138.
(*b*) **Genitive of Quality.** 140.
(*c*) **Dative of Possession.** 154.
(*d*) **Uses of the Subjunctive and Imperative.** 225, 273, and Hint XVIII.

1. One of the teachers[1] said, "Let us apply ourselves with all our mind to this study." 2. Let us not change our name. 3. Cicero's reputation was so great[2] that many wished[3] to see him and hear him. 4. He went to Athens in order that he might have Antiochus as teacher. 5. Let us return to Rome from Greece. 6. Cicero had[4] many books[5] in his library.[6] 7. He was a man of great eloquence. 8. During the consulship of Cicero[7] the conspiracy of Catiline was checked. 9. Because

of his many crimes Catiline was not elected consul. 10. Do not advance [8] to the city and seize those who are in prison.

[1] See 138, *a*. [2] Use *tantus*. [3] Ex. **11**, Grammar Lesson, *d*.
[4] Do not use *habeō;* apply Grammar Lesson, *c*.
[5] Use *liber*. [7] Ex. **8**, Grammar Lesson, *b*.
[6] *bibliothēca, -ae*, f. [8] See p. 89, l. 2.

13. Grammar Lesson. *Viri Romae*, pp. 90–97.

(*a*) **Ablative of Agent. 160.**
(*b*) **Ablative of Place Where and Locative. 174–176, and Hint XVII.**
(*c*) **Causal Clauses. 240–242, and Hint XIX.**

1. The fatherland was saved by Cicero. 2. The Romans called Cicero the father of his country because [1] he had saved his country. 3. Cicero could not defend himself because he had no arms. 4. Cicero lived [2] at Rome for many years.[3] 5. Caesar and Pompey waged war in Italy. 6. Cicero attacked Antony because [4] he was an enemy. 7. Antony entered into an alliance with Octavianus in order that he might declare Cicero an outlaw. 8. Cicero died in his native land because he was unwilling [5] to flee. 9. Do not cut off his hands. 10. Cicero was called by the Romans the father of eloquence.

[1] The reason of the Romans. [4] The reason of Cicero.
[2] *vīvō*. [5] *nōlō*.
[3] Ex. **7**, Grammar Lesson, *c*.

14. Grammar Lesson. Nepos, *Hamilcar*, 1, 2.

(*a*) **Ablative with Deponents. 163**, *a*.
(*b*) ***Cum*-Clauses. 235, 240.**

1. When Hamilcar was in command of the army, he was a very young man. 2. Since he was in command of the army, the Carthaginians did not yield to the enemy. 3. The Romans could not use [1] their fleet in the war. 4. He wished [2] to renew the war so that [3] he might pursue the Romans. 5. When they conquered the enemy, they got possession of [4] their arms. 6. When peace had been made,[5] he returned home. 7. Let us not leave our arms. 8. When they besieged Carthage, they

used mercenary soldiers, because they had a large number of them. 9. Since he drove the Romans away from the walls of the city, they perished from hunger. 10. Hamilcar was so great[6] a general that he drove the enemy away from the walls of his city.

[1] *ūtor.* [3] Ex. **11**, Grammar Lesson, *c* [5] Ex. **8**, Grammar Lesson, *b*.
[2] *volō.* [4] *potior.* [6] *tantus.*

15. Grammar Lesson. Nepos, *Hamilcar*, 3, 4, *Hannibal*, 1, 2.

Temporal Clauses. 234–239.

1. After the Carthaginians made Hamilcar general,[1] they sent him to Spain to make war[2] with the Romans. 2. Before Hamilcar[3] crossed the sea into Spain, he was made general.[4] 3. Hamilcar was killed before he could carry the war into Italy. 4. Since his hatred for the Romans was[5] eternal, Hannibal tried to subdue them in the second Carthaginian war. 5. The Romans waited[6] until Hannibal came into Italy. 6. As long as he lived, he never ceased to keep his hatred for the Romans. 7. While these things were going on,[7] the Romans were making preparations for war. 8. When Hamilcar, the father of Hannibal, was setting out for Spain, he commanded his son to go with him. 9. After he had given a pledge, he went to Spain. 10. The Romans came to the king before Hannibal could find out about his wishes.

[1] Ex. **5**, Grammar Lesson, *b* (1). [4] See 129, *a*.
[2] See Ex. **11**, note 6. [5] Ex. **14**, Grammar Lesson, *b*.
[3] Put this word first in the sentence. [6] *exspectō.* [7] See p. 53, l. 1.

16. Grammar Lesson. Nepos, *Hannibal*, 3–5.

Substantive Clauses. 260–264.

1. They persuaded[1] him[2] to set out for Spain. 2. The Carthaginians caused Hannibal to be made[3] general. 3. The Romans feared[4] that Hannibal would capture Saguntum. 4. After he reached Italy, he conquered the army of the Roman consul and put it to flight. 5. When this army had been conquered,[5] he started-for[6] Etruria. 6. They feared that he would conquer all the Roman armies and set out for Rome. 7. They tried to

prevent[7] him from[8] making his camp in the vicinity of[9] Rome. 8. There is no doubt[10] that Hannibal inspired fear in the Romans. 9. He commanded[11] them[12] to go[13] outside the rampart. 10. Let us count[14] over all the battles.

[1] See p. 16, l. 7.
[2] See 149, *a*.
[3] See p. 107, l. 2, and 261.
[4] See 264.
[5] Ex. **8**, Grammar Lesson, *b*.
[6] *petō*.
[7] *prohibeō*.
[8] See 262.
[9] See 133.
[10] *Nōn est dubium*, and see 263.
[11] *imperō*.
[12] See 149, *a*.
[13] See 260.
[14] Ex. **12**, Grammar Lesson, *d*.

17. Grammar Lesson. Nepos, *Hannibal*, 6–8.

Indirect Questions. 259.

1. Why[1] was Hannibal recalled to Carthage? 2. I ask[2] why Hannibal was recalled to Carthage. 3. When[3] a conference had been agreed upon, they tried to settle the war. 4. They sent envoys to Rome because (as they said) they wished to settle the war. 5. He wished to learn[4] what the Romans would reply. 6. After the Roman envoys came, Hannibal boarded a ship so that he might escape. 7. Tell me[5] what the Carthaginians did. 8. He tried to see whether[6] he could persuade Antiochus to make war on the Romans. 9. We fear that Hannibal went to Antiochus. 10. Do not[7] set sail.

[1] *cūr*.
[2] *quaerō*.
[3] Ex. **14**, Grammar Lesson, *b*.
[4] *cognōscō*.
[5] *Dīc mihi*.
[6] 'tried to see whether,' *cōnārī sī*; see 259.
[7] See 226, *a*.

18. Grammar Lesson. Nepos, *Hannibal*, 9–11.

Conditional Sentences, — Simple and Future. 243, 245, and Hint III.

1. If I should go to Rome, I should be in great danger. 2. If I go[1] to Rome, I shall be in great danger. 3. Hannibal was afraid that he would be given up because he had a good deal of money. 4. If he is placing his money in amphorae, he is deceiving them. 5. If you get your enemies out of the way,[2] it will be easier. 6. He used a-large-number-of ships,[3] so that they might

be overcome. 7. He caused[4] a large number of snakes to be gathered alive. 8. When Hannibal instructed[5] his soldiers to capture or kill the king, he sent a messenger to the king's ship with a letter. 9. When[6] Eumenes opened the letter which Hannibal had sent him, he could find nothing in it. 10. If the enemy should attack the ship of Eumenes, he would withdraw within his garrisons.

[1] See Hint III.
[2] See note to p. 75, l. 1.
[3] Ex. **14**, Grammar Lesson, *a*.
[4] Ex. **16**, Grammar Lesson.
[5] See p. 118, l. 3.
[6] Use *cum*.

19. Grammar Lesson. Nepos, *Hannibal*, 12, 13.

(*a*) **Conditional Sentences. — Contrary to Fact. 246.**
(*b*) **Concessive Clauses. 250–254.**

1. If the envoys had not dined at the house of Flaminius, mention would not have been made of Hannibal. 2. If he should bring this matter before the senate, the Romans would send envoys to Prusias. 3. If Hannibal were keeping himself in one place, they would find him easily. 4. Although[1] Prusias asked them not to[2] demand this, they refused. 5. Although[3] Hannibal feared that he would be seized, he was a very brave man. 6. After the slave-boy looked out of the door, he reported to Hannibal what he had seen. 7. Hannibal took poison, because (as he thought[4]) the Romans wished to seize him. 8. He was so[5] brave that when the Romans were coming he took poison. 9. Let us live as long as fortune permits. 10. Devote some time to literature.

[1] Use *quamquam*.
[2] See p. 120, ll. 4, 5, and 260.
[3] Use *cum*.
[4] See 241.
[5] *tam*, see 232.

20. Grammar Lesson. Nepos, *Cato*, 1–3.

Indirect Discourse. 265–271, and Hints IV and V.

1. Nepos says that Cato moved to Rome. 2. The Romans think that he brought the poet, Ennius, back from Sardinia. 3. I think that his father left to him an hereditary estate. 4. We think that the soldiers are in the forum. 5. It was said[1]

that as long as he lived Cato suffered no loss of reputation. 6. I believe that if he should drive Cato out of the province, he would succeed to his[2] place. 7. Cato said that they should check[3] extravagance. 8. We know[4] that many men write histories, although they are not great generals. 9. He replied[5] that the seven books of histories, which Cato wrote, were called the Origines. 10. They say that in these books he describes many wars.

[1] *dicēbātur.* [3] This would be the imperative in dir. disc.
[2] Use *ille.* [4] *sciō.* [5] *respondeō.*

21. Review Grammar Lesson. *The Argonauts*, 1–6.

(*a*) **Sequence of Tenses.** 218–224.
(*b*) **Temporal Clauses.** 234–239.

1. When Aeson had held the rule for a few years, he was driven out by his brother. 2. Pelias had intended[1] to kill Jason before he could be taken away from the city by his friends. 3. When Pelias hears that Jason is dead, he will inquire what the cause was. 4. Pelias sent some of his friends[2] to Delphi, that he might know whom to guard against.[3] 5. When a man comes to the palace with one foot bare,[4] the king will fear him. 6. While Jason was crossing a river, one of his shoes[5] was carried away. 7. As long as Jason lived with[6] the centaur, Pelias held the rule of Thessaly. 8. As soon as the king knows that Jason has come, he will send him to Colchis to get possession of the golden fleece. 9. Jason will employ[7] Argus to build a ship in which he may transport a great number of men. 10. When the weather is suitable for voyaging, Jason will set sail with fifty companions.[8]

[1] See p. 129, l. 5. [4] See p. 132, l. 5. [6] See p. 132, l. 1.
[2] See p. 129, l. 6. [5] See p. 132, l. 2. [7] See p. 133, l. 1.
[3] Use *cavēre* with a direct object. [8] See p. 135, l. 1.

22. Review Grammar Lesson. *The Argonauts*, 7–12.

Sequence of Tenses. 218–224.
Indirect Questions. 259.

1. When the Argonauts had landed in Mysia to look for[1] water, Hylas was carried off by the nymphs. 2. While Hercules was

waiting (to see) whether[2] Hylas would return, the Argonauts set sail. 3. Let us inquire of these men who is king of Thrace at this time. 4. The Argonauts inquired from the inhabitants of what kind the punishment of Phineas was. 5. Zetes and Calais attacked the Harpies from above, before they could carry off the food. 6. As soon as Jason had weighed anchor, he asked of Phineas in what part of the sea the Symplegades lay.[3] 7. If the Argonauts do not ply their oars[4] with incredible speed, their ship will not go through[5] unharmed. 8. Aeetes asked of the Argonauts what they had come to seek[1] in Colchis. 9. "I will give you the golden fleece," said the king, "if you will yoke these two bulls." 10. Medea persuaded Jason to make use of[6] her skill in medicine.

[1] 286.
[2] *sī*.
[3] 'had been placed.'
[4] See p. 141, l. 2.
[5] 'be led through.'
[6] Use *ūtor*.

23. Review Grammar Lesson. *The Argonauts*, 13–18.

Sequence of Tenses. 218–224.
Conditional Sentences. 243–246, and Hint III.

1. Unless Jason ploughs the field before sunrise, he will not be able to place the yoke upon the bulls. 2. Jason will ask the king what the nature of the dragon's teeth is. 3. He slew the armed men before they were able to draw their swords. 4. If Medea had not lent[1] aid to Jason, the armed men would have slain him. 5. Let us urge Jason not to desert Medea. 6. If Jason should attempt to carry off the golden fleece, Medea would aid him by her great knowledge of medicine. 7. The Argonauts will wait until Jason returns.[2] 8. While Jason and Medea were making their way[3] through the woods, they saw a wonderful light. 9. If it were safe to remain in Colchis, we should not be weighing anchor. 10. When Jason had ordered the ship to be launched,[4] the Argonauts asked him how great the danger was.

[1] See p. 143, l. 11.
[2] 238.
[3] See p. 146, l. 2.
[4] See p. 135, l. 3.

24. Review Grammar Lesson. *The Argonauts*, 19–24.

Indirect Discourse. 265-270, and Hints IV and V.

1. The king says that the enemy will not cease to flee until they reach the river. 2. When Aeetes was pursuing the Argonauts, he saw the limbs of his son in the sea. 3. Jason says to Pelias that he must give[1] him his kingdom, since he has brought back the golden fleece. 4. Jason asked of the king why he wished to hold the rule as long as he lived.[2] 5. Medea said to the daughters of Pelias that she would make their father young,[3] if they would do what[4] she wished. 6. The daughters of the king hoped that their father would be young,[3] if they should do what Medea had done. 7. He said that if Jason had not come to Corinth, he would not have divorced[5] Medea. 8. Since Glauce suspects no evil, she will put on the robe which Medea has poisoned.[6] 9. Medea, having killed her children, fled from Thessaly in a chariot which the Sun god had given her. 10. It is said that Jason was crushed by his ship, which had been drawn up on the shore.

[1] Direct Disc. 'give me your kingdom.'
[2] 272.
[3] 'a young man.'
[4] 'that which.'
[5] See p. 152, l. 12.
[6] See p. 152, l. 17.

25. Grammar Lesson. *Caesar*, Book I, Chap. 1.

(*a*) **Review of First and Second Declensions. 9–15, 16–19.**
(*b*) **Use of Prepositions, *in* and *sub*. 186.**
(*c*) **Subject and Direct Object of Verb. 119, 125.**

1. Caesar came[1] into Gaul. 2. The Belgians inhabit one part of Gaul. 3. The Belgians carried on war in Gaul. 4. Gaul extended[2] to the river Rhine. 5. The Romans divided Gaul into three parts. 6. The merchants did not bring wine[3] into Aquitania. 7. The Aquitani are nearest to Spain. 8. The Garonne river separated the Celts from the Aquitani. 9. The Helvetians, who fought with the Germans, were brave. 10. The rivers were wide.[4]

[1] *veniō*.
[2] Imperfect tense.
[3] *vīnum*.
[4] *lātus, -a, -um*.

26. Grammar Lesson. *Caesar*, Book I, Chap. 2.

(*a*) **Review of First Conjugation.** 90.
(*b*) **Agreement of Adjective.** 188, 189.
(*c*) **Indirect Object.** 148, 149.

1. Messala and Piso were very rich. 2. The Sequani do not give money[1] to the Germans. 3. Orgetorix persuades the Helvetians. 4. The river is wide and the mountain is high. 5. The Helvetians, whose[2] territory is contracted, are very brave. 6. They excel[3] all the Gauls. 7. The Helvetians do not roam about widely, because[4] they are hemmed in by a broad river. 8. The Jura mountain is very high. 9. The grief of the Helvetians is great. 10. Caesar and Orgetorix were of very high rank.[5]

[1] *pecūnia.*
[2] Use the gen. plu. of the rel., *quī, quae, quod.*
[3] Observe the case used on p. 157, l. 6.
[4] *quod.*
[5] 'of very high rank,' *i.e.* 'very noble.'

27. Grammar Lesson. *Caesar*, Book I, Chap. 3.

(*a*) **Review of the verb** *sum.* 88.
(*b*) **Predicate Noun.** 120.
(*c*) **Predicate Adjective.** 188.

1. Caesar was called king.[1] 2. The Helvetians gave their daughters in marriage to the Sequani. 3. The Roman people called Casticus a friend. 4. Orgetorix establishes friendship with Dumnorix. 5. A good friend persuaded me.[2] 6. Diviciacus was a friend of Caesar. 7. All the Gauls are very powerful. 8. The sovereign-rule was seized[3] by[4] Dumnorix. 9. The influence of Caesar was great. 10. Orgetorix tried to persuade[5] the Helvetians.

[1] *rēx.*
[2] 'me,' *mihi.*
[3] What voice is this?
[4] Use the prep. *ab.*
[5] 'to persuade,' use the inf.

28. Grammar Lesson. *Caesar*, Book I, Chap. 4.

(*a*) **Pronouns, Relative, Demonstrative, Possessive. 78, 81, 83.**
(*b*) **Possessive Genitive, 135.**
(*c*) **Agreement of Relative, 122.**

1. The Helvetians condemned Orgetorix, who committed suicide. 2. According to the custom of the Helvetians he was burned to death. 3. The Helvetians appointed a day for his trial,[1] but he saved himself. 4. Orgetorix collected his supporters,[2] of whom he had ten thousand. 5. The state is roused to arms. 6. This matter, which was reported to the Helvetians, rouses them to arms. 7. His retainers, to whom this matter was reported, are gathered together. 8. Orgetorix tried to plead his own[3] case. 9. The punishment, which he suffered,[4] was heavy.[5] 10. The number of his retainers is large.

[1] Use the gen. case, as on p. 163, l. 3. [3] 'his own,' express by one word.
[2] Omit; use poss. adj. as noun (195, *a*). [4] Study p. 163, l. 2. [5] *gravis*.

29. Grammar Lesson. *Caesar*, Book I, Chap. 5.

(*a*) **Review of the Third Declension. 24–37.**
(*b*) **Two Accusatives: (1) Both referring to the same person or thing. 127. (2) One referring to the person affected, the other to the result produced. 128.**
(*c*) **Apposition. 121.**

1. The Helvetians did not make[1] Orgetorix king. 2. They call[2] the Boii allies. 3. The Rauraci, allies of the Helvetians, adopt the plan which the Boii had previously[3] adopted. 4. The Helvetians tried to teach[4] them everything.[5] 5. We ask[6] our friends (for) their opinion.[7] 6. The Tulingi, their neighbors, will depart with them. 7. I shall take away the hope of returning home. 8. This month is called[8] December.[9] 9. You have besieged many towns and villages. 10. The Boii, whom the Helvetians took as allies, give orders to burn all their villages.

[1] *creō*.
[2] See p. 161, l. 7.
[3] *prius*.
[4] *doceō*.
[5] Use the neut. pl. of *omnis* (195, *a*).
[6] *rogō*.
[7] *sententia*.
[8] *nōminō*.
[9] The form is the same in Latin.

30. Grammar Lesson. *Caesar*, Book I, Chap. 6.

(*a*) **Review of Second Conjugation. 91.**
(*b*) **Subjective Genitive. 136.**
(*c*) **Objective Genitive. 137.**

1. The hope of safety[1] was taken away. 2. By the narrow roads they hold the enemy back. 3. The Helvetians make this request,[2] because they are trying to go through the territory of the Sequani. 4. The enemy were impelled by a desire[3] of sovereign-rule. 5. On account of[4] the safety of their allies the Sequani will not allow the Helvetians to go through their territory. 6. The fears[5] of the Sequani were groundless.[6] 7. The mountain, which overhangs us, is called the Jura. 8. Hold the enemy back! 9. There[7] were very few bridges in Gaul, because[8] the rivers were crossed by fords. 10. On account of the departure of the Helvetians Caesar hastened[9] into Gaul.

[1] *salūs*. [2] *i.e.*, 'ask this thing.' See Ex. **29**, sentence 5.
[3] See p. 158, l. 5. [6] *vānus, -a, -um*. [9] *contendō*.
[4] 'On account of,' *propter*, a prep. [7] Omit.
[5] *timor*. [8] See Ex. **26**, note 4.

31. Grammar Lesson. *Caesar*, Book I, Chap. 7.

(*a*) **Adjectives, their Declension and Comparison. 46–66.**
(*b*) **Accusative of Limit of Motion. 132.**
(*c*) **Accusative of Duration of Time and Space. 130.**

1. The Helvetians set out and came to Geneva.[1] 2. Caesar remained[2] in farther Gaul for many days. 3. Envoys were sent, men[3] of highest rank. 4. The envoys informed[4] Caesar of their arrival. 5. With the consent of the other envoys they marched to Geneva. 6. It is our intention[5] to refrain from evil-doing. 7. Caesar was too proud.[6] 8. The Helvetians will march home, because Lucius Cassius, the consul, was killed. 9. Caesar informed the Helvetians, who wished[7] to march through the province, of his intention. 10. They returned home and for many days refrained from mischief.

[1] Notice that *ad Genavam* (p. 169, l. 2, see note) means 'into the vicinity of Geneva.' In the trans. of sentence 1 apply the Grammar lesson, *b*.
[2] *maneō*. [4] Study the Latin-English Vocab. under the word *certus*.
[3] Omit. [5] Study p. 169, l. 9. [6] *superbus*. See 193. [7] *volō*.

32. Grammar Lesson. *Caesar*, Book I, Chap. 8.

(*a*) Review of Third Conjugation of Verbs. 93.
(*b*) Ablative Absolute. 173.

1. When Caesar had made a trench, he was able to keep the Helvetii from the march. 2. When Caesar had stationed garrisons and fortified redoubts,[1] he went into Italy. 3. I cannot allow[2] you to march through the province. 4. Having been informed of[3] this, Caesar sent messengers to Italy and levied soldiers. 5. You have been disappointed in this expectation. 6. Against Caesar's will[1] the Helvetians could not cross the Rhone river. 7. The Jura mountain is[4] nineteen miles from Lake Geneva. 8. Having tried[5] to use force, the enemy made several rafts. 9. You will show that you will keep the Helvetians from our territory. 10. For many days the enemy tried to drive the Romans back.

[1] Express the clause by the abl. abs. const. and study Hint I. The Latin order puts *Caesar* at the beginning of the sentence.
[2] Study p. 171, l. 10.
[3] Use the prep. *dē*, as in p. 169, l. 6.
[4] Use *absum*.
[5] Study the first part of Hint I.

33. Grammar Lesson. *Caesar*, Book I, Chap. 9.

(*a*) Review of Fourth and Fifth Declensions of Nouns. 39–45.
(*b*) Ablative of Means. 163.
(*c*) Ablative of Comparison. 161, 162.

1. Dumnorix was more[1] powerful among the Sequani than his brother, Diviciacus.[2] 2. He was more friendly[3] to the Helvetians than to the Sequani. 3. For these reasons[4] they will allow hostages to be given.[5] 4. When envoys had been sent,[6] they persuaded the Sequani.[7] 5. By means of bribery he had the state under obligation. 6. The daughters of this consul had been married. 7. The enemy unwillingly[8] gave up the attempt.[9] 8. The other road is easier than this one.[10] 9. By this speech Caesar was greatly[11] influenced. 10. And so the mat-

ter having been undertaken, Dumnorix persuaded more states than (did) Diviciacus.

[1] *plūs*.
[2] Ex. **29**, Grammar Lesson, *c*.
[3] Use *amīcus* as an adj.
[4] *i.e.* 'on account of these things (*res*).' Use the abl. case.
[5] Use the inf.
[6] See Ex. **32**, note 1.
[7] See Grammar Lesson **26**, *c*.
[8] Use the adj. *invītus*.
[9] See p. 172, l. 5.
[10] Omit.
[11] *magnopere*.

34. Grammar Lesson. *Caesar*, Book I, Chap. 10.

(*a*) Review of Fourth Conjugation of Verbs. 94.
(*b*) Uses of the Participle. 276-281, and Hint II.

1. When this had been done,[1] the Helvetians decided[2] to report the matter to Caesar. 2. If this is done,[1] Caesar will carry on war[3] in the territory of the enemy. 3. Even[4] though the Helvetians[5] refrain from mischief,[6] they will be the enemies of the Roman people. 4. Men who are fond-of-war, easily fight with their neighbors. 5. Titus Labienus, the lieutenant of Caesar, was far away from Rome.[7] 6. When Caesar had enrolled two new legions and had withdrawn three from winter quarters,[1] he returned[8] to Gaul. 7. The commander[9] remained in Italy for several days.[10] 8. Hastening by forced marches, Caesar led his army to Labienus. 9. Caesar defeated the mountaineers[11] in several battles. 10. He was the first[12] to lead his troops into farther Gaul.

[1] See Ex. **32**, note 1.
[2] Cf. p. 160, ll. 4, 5.
[3] Cf. p. 158, l. 2.
[4] 'even,' *etiam*.
[5] The Latin order is, 'The Helvetii, even though,' etc.
[6] See p. 170, ll. 5, 6.
[7] Use the abl. case.
[8] *redīre*.
[9] *imperātor*.
[10] See Ex. **31**, Grammar Lesson, *c*.
[11] *montānus*.
[12] Study 191.

35. Grammar Lesson. *Caesar*, Book I, Chap. 11.

(*a*) Dative with Compounds. 149, *b*.
(*b*) Clauses of Purpose. 229, 230, and Hint IX.

1. When the Helvetians[1] had taken[2] the troops through the narrow pass, they carried off the children of the Aeduans into slavery. 2. Titus Labienus was in command[3] of a legion.

3. The Helvetians sent soldiers to [4] lay waste the land. 4. Caesar hastened into Gaul, in order that the enemy might not capture the towns of his allies. 5. The Aeduans fled to Caesar, in order that they might more easily defend themselves 6. When their land had been laid waste and their property destroyed,[2] the Allobroges had nothing left.[5] 7. I shall place the lieutenant in command of the army. 8. Caesar made war[6] upon the Helvetians as they were leaving [7] their country. 9. Fortune did not fail [8] Caesar. 10. They were informed of the arrival of Caesar, whose army was hastening [9] by forced marches.

[1] Cf. Ex. **34**, note 5. [2] Cf. Ex. **32**, note 1. [3] *praesum*.
[4] Study Grammar Lesson, *b*. [5] See note to p. 177, l. 11.
[6] *bellum īnferre*. Cf. Grammar Lesson, *a*.
[7] Cf. Grammar Lesson **34**, *b*, and see p. 164, l. 5.
[8] 'fail,' *i.e.* 'was not wanting' (*dēsum*). [9] What tense?

36. Grammar Lesson. *Caesar*, Book I, Chap. 12.

(*a*) **Ablative of Cause. 165.**
(*b*) **Clauses of Result and Characteristic. 232, 233.**

1. The Arar is a river whose current is wonderfully smooth.[1] 2. When three quarters of the forces had been led across,[2] Caesar arrived. 3. They were so hindered-in-their-movements that a large part of them were killed. 4. Caesar was lucky [3] in that [4] he attacked the enemy when [5] off-their-guard. 5. Since Lucius Cassius, the consul, had been killed,[2] Caesar defeated [6] the army of the Helvetians. 6. Many fled so quickly [7] that Caesar could not follow [8] them. 7. Many fled quickly so that Caesar could not follow them. 8. Because of fear they tried to cross the river, but Caesar, having sent [9] his soldiers forward,[2] prevented it.[5] 9. "I shall avenge the death of a Roman consul," he said.[10] 10. He is the only [11] one who paid the penalty.

[1] *i.e.* 'which flows with wonderful smoothness.'
[2] See Ex. **32**, note 1. [3] *fortūnātus*.
[4] 'in that,' etc., study Grammar Lesson, *b*; 'in that he' = 'who.'
[5] Omit. [6] *i.e.* 'sent under the yoke.' [7] *tam celeriter*.
[8] *cōnsequī*. [9] 'sent forward,' *praemittō*.
[10] *inquit*. On its position in the sentence see Hint XV.
[11] *sōlus*. Study Grammar Lesson, *b*.

37. Grammar Lesson. *Caesar*, Book I, Chap. 13.

(*a*) **Partitive Genitive.** 138.
(*b*) **Genitive of Quality.** 140.
(*c*) **Review of Clauses of Purpose and Result.** 229–232.

1. The majority[1] of the Helvetians had already crossed the river. 2. The enemy were so stirred by the arrival of Caesar, that they sent envoys to him. 3. Caesar's soldiers were so well trained,[2] that they crossed the river in one day. 4. I shall send soldiers to treat with Divico. 5. Caesar will make peace with the Helvetians in order that they may not attack his allies. 6. Nevertheless[3] they do not wish to return home. 7. A man of great courage[4] will always[5] fight for[6] his fatherland.[7] 8. Caesar attacked one canton, so that the enemy might not bring help to their men.[8] 9. Caesar built a bridge over the Arar, so that he might the more easily cross the river. 10. There is no one[9] who does not learn[10] from his forefathers.

[1] 'majority,' *i.e.* 'the greater (comp. degree) part.'
[2] 'well trained,' *exercitātus*. [3] *tamen*. [4] *virtūs*.
[5] *semper*. [6] *prō*, a prep. [7] *patria*.
[8] Omit; 195, *a*. [9] *nēmō*. [10] Study Ex. **36**, Grammar Lesson, ***b***.

38. Grammar Lesson. *Caesar*, Book I, Chap. 14.

(*a*) **Dative of Reference.** 151.
(*b*) **Dative of Possession.** 154.
(*c*) **Uses of the Subjunctive and Imperative.** 225, 273, **and Hint XVIII.**

1. Let us be on our guard. 2. The name of this Gaul was Divico. 3. I have less hesitation because I cannot forget the old insult. 4. May they not try to force their way through the province! 5. Give[1] me hostages and do[1] the things that you promised. 6. Let Divico not boast of his victory. 7. For the Romans are so brave,[2] that they will easily be able to send[3] the Gauls under the yoke. 8. Divico, do not apologize to the Romans for the wrongs which you have done them. 9. The Romans were not braver than the Helvetians. 10. Let us make peace with the Helvetians, our enemies.

[1] Use the singular number. [2] *fortis*. [3] See p. 179, ll. 6, 7.

39. Grammar Lesson. *Caesar*, Book I, Chap. 15.

(*a*) Ablative of Agent. 160.
(*b*) Ablative of Place Where and Locative. 174–176, and Hint XVII.
(*c*) Causal Clauses. 240–242, and Hint XIX.

1. All the cavalry was sent forward by Caesar. 2. The majority[1] of the soldiers remained in camp. 3. Caesar had[2] many personal enemies[3] at Rome. 4. Caesar was satisfied[4] to keep his men from fighting. 5. The Helvetians harassed Caesar's army in the rear, because (as they thought) the Romans were thoroughly frightened.[5] 6. Many Romans were killed by the Helvetians, because the former (in reality) had joined battle in an unfavorable place. 7. Do not attack the Romans too eagerly. 8. When the Aeduans had been sent forward,[6] battle was joined. 9. The Aeduans did not attack the Roman army, because Caesar was their friend.[7] 10. At Geneva for many days Caesar kept his men from plundering.

[1] See Ex. **37**, note 1.
[2] See Ex. **38**, Grammar Lesson, *b*.
[3] 'personal enemies,' use *inimīcus*.
[4] Cf. p. 184, l. 15.
[5] *perterreō*.
[6] See Ex. **32**, note 1.
[7] Cf. sentence 3.

40. Grammar Lesson. *Caesar*, Book I, Chap. 16.

(*a*) Dative of Purpose. 156.
(*b*) Ablative with Deponents. 163, *a*.
(*c*) *Cum*- Clauses. 235, 240.

1. The grain supply[1] was of the greatest concern[2] to Caesar. 2. Caesar made use of the boats that were on the Arar river. 3. Since the grain was not yet ripe, it could not be brought up the river by the Aeduans. 4. Caesar was put off from day to day by the Aeduans. 5. Caesar reproaches the Aeduans, because (as he charged) they put him off from day to day. 6. This was a great disadvantage[3] to the Romans. 7. Since Caesar[4] had[5] to distribute grain to the army, he called together the chief men of the Aeduans. 8. Since the war had been undertaken because of the entreaties of the allies, Caesar com-

plained bitterly.[6] 9. Let us purchase grain. 10. Do not reproach me.

[1] *rēs frūmentaria.*
[2] Study Grammar Lesson, *a.*
[3] *dētrīmentum.* Cf. note 2.
[4] See Ex. **34**, note 5.
[5] Use *oportet* and study p. 186, l. 4.
[6] *graviter.*

41. Grammar Lesson. *Caesar*, Book I, Chap. 17.

(*a*) Pronouns, Personal and Indefinite. 76, 85, and Hints VII and VIII.

(*b*) Temporal Clauses, *postquam, ut, ubi, cum prīmum.* 234.

1. Was[1] not Liscus induced by what Caesar said?[2] 2. After the Romans overcame the Helvetians, they took away the liberty of the Aeduans.[3] 3. As soon as our plans were reported to the enemy, Liscus came to Caesar. 4. Caesar has more power[4] than Liscus. 5. Who will be able to check them?[1] 6. Liscus informed Caesar of this, because (as he said) the magistrates did not have the greatest influence. 7. Ought not the Gauls to have borne the rule of the Romans?[1] 8. Liscus was silent, because he was forced to be so[5] by the magistrates of the Aeduans. 9. This[6] Caesar did, in order that deserters might not report anything[7] to the enemy. 10. After they had furnished the grain, Caesar pardoned[8] them. 11. Let us report whatever is done in Caesar's camp.

[1] Interrogative questions in Latin are introduced (*a*) by interrogative pronouns and adverbs, or (*b*) by *nōnne* when they imply the answer "Yes," by *num* when they imply the answer "No," or by *-ne*, appended to an important word, when they merely ask for information.

[2] *i.e.* 'by the speech of Caesar.'
[3] 'of the Aeduans,' cf. p. 188, l. 5.
[4] Cf. p. 187, l. 4.
[5] 'to be so,' omit.
[6] Use the neut. pl.
[7] Cf. p. 170, l. 9, and Ex. **35**, Grammar Lesson, *b.*
[8] *ignōscō.* Cf. Ex. **26**, Grammar Lesson, *c.*

42. Grammar Lesson. *Caesar*, Book I, Chap. 18.

(*a*) Adjectives, Various Uses with Nouns. 143, 157, 158 N.

(*b*) Temporal Clauses, *antequam, priusquam; dum, dōnec, quoad.* 236–239.

1. Before Dumnorix, the brother of Diviciacus, could speak, Caesar dismissed the meeting. 2. Dumnorix, who was eager for

a revolution, was a man[1] of great generosity. 3. Whenever he bid,[2] no one dared to bid against him. 4. While this was going on,[3] Dumnorix arrived in the land of the Sequani. 5. He maintained so large a number of cavalry, that he was influential also among the Sequani. 6. Liscus did not speak freely, before Caesar dismissed the meeting. 7. Liscus waited for Caesar[4] to dismiss the meeting. 8. Because of his boldness Dumnorix bought up all the revenues. 9. By the arrival of the Romans Liscus was freed[5] from danger. 10. Have you come to help me?

[1] Omit. [2] See Ex. **40**, Grammar Lesson, *c*.
[3] *i.e.* 'while these things were being done' (*gerō*).
[4] *i.e.* 'until Caesar should dismiss,' etc. [5] *līberō*.

43. Grammar Lesson. *Caesar*, Book I, Chap. 19.

Substantive Clauses. 260–264.

1. He begged Liscus to speak freely. 2. Caesar urged Diviciacus to come to him and to tell him the truth.[1] 3. Although hostages had been given,[2] the Gauls did many things without the knowledge of Caesar.[3] 4. The result was[4] that Caesar censured Dumnorix, and gave orders that the Aeduans punish him. 5. When this had been done,[2] he summoned Diviciacus, so that he might have a conference with him. 6. Before he had a conference with Diviciacus, he sent away the ordinary interpreters. 7. What[5] did Caesar say to Diviciacus? 8. Let the state punish Dumnorix! 9. May the state punish Dumnorix! 10. I beg[6] you not to punish Dumnorix.

[1] 'the truth,' *i.e.* 'true things.' [2] Cf. Ex. **32**, note 1. [3] Cf. p. 191, l. 7.
[4] 'the result was,' *i.e.* 'it happened that' (*factum est ut*).
[5] *i.e.* 'what things.' [6] *i.e.* 'I beg that you do not,' etc.

44. Grammar Lesson. *Caesar*, Book I, Chap. 20.

Indirect Questions. 259.

1. I beg you to inform me what has happened to Diviciacus. 2. Wherefore it will come about that he will have very little influence in Gaul. 3. The result was[1] that in answer to the

wish of Diviciacus, Caesar overlooked the wrong done to the state.[2] 4. I wish to know what you are doing. 5. Let us advise Caesar to put a watch upon Dumnorix. 6. I feel more pain as a result of this than you (do). 7. Your influence with me is so great that I advise you to avoid every suspicion. 8. Caesar did not know with whom Dumnorix was talking. 9. Do not make this request of Caesar. 10. Let us ask him to come to help us.[3]

[1] See Ex. **43**, note 4. [2] See Ex. **30**, Grammar Lesson, *c*.
[3] See p. 190, l. 16.

45. Grammar Lesson. *Caesar*, Book I, Chap. 21.

Conditional Sentences — Simple. 243, and Hint III.

If the enemy have encamped at the foot of the mountain, they are distant not more[1] than eight miles from Caesar's camp. Since Publius Considius has been in the army of Lucius Sulla, he is considered most skilled in warfare. Therefore Caesar will send him ahead with all the scouts to find out what the nature of the mountain is. If the ascent of the mountain is easy, and if the enemy have encamped at the foot of it, Titus Labienus has already climbed to[2] the top of the mountain. He has done this in order that he may make an attack on the enemy at daybreak. When Caesar has sent ahead all the cavalry in[3] the third watch, he will follow them with all his forces. If you were skilled in warfare, you understood what his plan[4] was. He will take possession of the mountain in order that the enemy may not climb it.

[1] Cf. p. 185, ll. 1, 2. [3] Cf. p. 195, l. 2.
[2] Omit, and cf. p. 195, l. 1. [4] Cf. p. 195, l. 1.

46. Grammar Lesson. *Caesar*, Book I, Chap. 22.

Conditional Sentences — Future. 245.

If the enemy should take possession of the hill, the Gallic arms and ensigns would be seen there by Considius. If Titus Labienus holds possession of the mountain, he and Caesar will make an attack on the enemy on all sides at once. Although

Labienus was holding the top of the mountain, and[1] the enemy did not know of[2] Caesar's arrival, Considius, who was thoroughly[3] frightened, reported to Caesar a thing[4] which was not true.[5] Since Labienus did not see Caesar's forces near the camp of the enemy, he did not make an attack upon the Gauls. Although Considius had reported to Caesar as seen, a thing[6] which he had not seen, the scouts informed Caesar late in the day what had been done. Since Caesar was not able to do what[6] he had wished, he did not join battle with the enemy, but drew up his men on the nearest hill.

[1] Connect the two sentences by *neque*.
[2] Do not use the gen.; cf. p. 195, l. 10.
[3] Express by a compound verb.
[4] *id*.
[5] *vērus, -a, -um*.
[6] = 'that which.'

47. Grammar Lesson. *Caesar*, Book I, Chap. 23.

Conditional Sentences — Contrary to Fact. 246.

On the next day Caesar decided[1] to turn away[2] from the Helvetians and to go to a well-supplied town of the Aeduans, Bibracte by name. If he had not wished to distribute grain to his soldiers, he would have followed the Helvetians. If the town had been distant more than eighteen miles, Caesar would have been cut off from a supply-of-grain. Deserters from[3] Lucius Aemilius, who was in command of[4] a part of the cavalry of the Gauls, hastened to the enemy, to report to them what Caesar had done. The Helvetians changed their plan and turned their march, in order to make an attack on the rear-guard of the Romans. The Helvetians said to one another[5]: "If the Romans were not thoroughly[6] frightened, they would have joined battle after[7] having possession of the mountain. Let us follow them,[8] and cut them[8] off from their grain supply."

[1] Cf. p. 160, ll. 4–6.
[2] = 'to turn away his march.'
[3] Use the gen
[4] Cf. p. 186, l. 6.
[5] *inter sē*.
[6] See Ex. **46**, note 3.
[7] Use the abl. abs. construction.
[8] Express only once.

48. Grammar Lesson. *Caesar*, Book I, Chap. 24.

Concessive Clauses. 250–254.

After Caesar had[1] drawn up two legions on the top of the hill, he commanded his troops to withstand the attack of the enemy.

Although he had four legions of veteran soldiers, he decided to fortify the hill. On the top of the hill he placed two legions which had been enrolled last in Hither Gaul, in order that they might fortify that part of the hill. He thought as follows[2]: "Although the Helvetians should come up[3] with all their forces, they will not be able to defeat my line of battle. The two legions which I have led up[3] to the top of the hill will protect the baggage." Meanwhile[4] the Helvetians formed a phalanx, in order that they might make an attack on the Romans. They thought as follows[2]: "If we can drive back[5] the Roman cavalry, we will go up to the middle of the hill and attack the veteran legions. Then[6] we will make an attack on the auxiliaries, and seize all the baggage."

[1] Be careful of the tense; see Ex. **41**, Grammar Lesson, *b*. [2] *ita*.
[3] Express by a compound verb; cf. p. 199, l. 5. [4] *Intereā*.
[5] Express by a compound verb; cf. p. 199, l. 4. [6] *Deinde*.

49. Grammar Lesson. *Caesar*, Book I, Chap. 25.

The Infinitive. 274, 275.

Since Caesar wished to make the danger of all equal, he removed first his own horse and then those[1] of his soldiers from sight, so that the Romans could not flee. He ordered his men[1] to hurl their pikes from the higher ground,[2] that[3] they might the more easily break through the phalanx of the Gauls. If the phalanx should be broken, it would be easy to defeat the enemy. Although the Gauls were greatly hindered[4] in fighting, because the pikes of the Romans bound their shields together, yet they fought with the greatest bravery. But they were so exhausted by wounds, that they retreated to a height which was about a mile away. When the Romans were going up[5] the mountain, the Boii and the Tulingi attacked them on the open flank. As soon as the Helvetians saw this, they began to return. If the Romans had not wheeled about and advanced to the attack[6] in two divisions, it would have been easy for the enemy[7] to surround them.

[1] Omit. [2] = 'place.' [3] Be careful of the conjunction.
[4] 'it was a great hindrance to the Gauls'; cf. p. 200, l. 1.
[5] See Ex. **48**, note 3. [6] *signa inferre*. [7] Acc., subject of the infin.

50. Grammar Lesson. *Caesar*, Book I, Chap. 26.

Indirect Discourse. 265–271, and Hints IV and V.

When the Helvetians thought that the attacks of the Romans could no longer be withstood, they began to retreat, in order to protect their baggage. The Gauls are said to have fought so bravely, that the Romans did not see the back[1] of an enemy during that whole day. Caesar tells us that they were still[2] fighting late at night, and that they wounded many of the Roman soldiers. When the Romans held possession of the camp, they captured one of the sons of Orgetorix. It is said that one hundred and thirty thousand of the Gauls, who survived from that battle, marched that whole night without cessation.[3] A letter was sent by Caesar to the Lingones, to say[4] that they should not give grain to the Aeduans. He announced to them that if they did this, he would regard them as[5] enemies of the Roman people. When three days had passed,[6] he followed the Gauls with all his troops.

[1] = 'an enemy turned away.' [2] *iam*. [3] Express by an adv.
[4] Omit. [5] *prō*. [6] = 'let pass;' 173.

51. Grammar Lesson. *Caesar*, Book I, Chap. 27.

Numerals. 72.

While the Helvetians were awaiting the arrival of Caesar, he sent soldiers to them, to demand a hundred hostages. Meanwhile[1] the Helvetians, since they had no provisions,[2] decided[3] to send envoys to Caesar, to ask for peace. The envoys are said to have thrown themselves at Caesar's feet, and to have obeyed him, when he ordered them not to leave the place in which they then were. He said that he would give them an answer within two days; meanwhile they should[4] hunt up the slaves who had run away from the camp of the Romans. Afterwards he learned that five thousand men of one canton, Verbigenus by name, since they had been thoroughly frightened, had left their camp and retreated to the river Rhine. If their flight had been concealed, or had been ignored by Caesar, they would have reached[5] the boundaries of the Germans, which were about fifteen miles distant.

[1] See Ex. 48, note 4. [2] See p. 165, l. 2. [3] See Ex. 47, note 1.
[4] For an imperative or jussive subj. of the dir. disc. [5] *perveniō*.

52. Grammar Lesson. *Caesar*, Book I, Chap. 28.

(*a*) **The Gerund and Gerundive.** 282–285.
(*b*) **Dative of Agent.** 155.

Caesar was obliged [1] to do many things at one time. Messengers had to be sent to the states, through whose territories the Helvetians were hastening, and those who had fled had to be hunted up. If they had been brought back to Caesar, he would have received them by [2] capitulation. Since the Helvetians had lost their crops and burned their towns, they did not wish to return home. Although there was no grain in the fields, Caesar said that they must go home, because he feared that the Germans would cross over into Gaul, to take possession of the fields. Since the Boii were men of great valor, the Aeduans had the hope of conquering their enemies, if they could have such [3] brave allies. Therefore they are said to have received the Boii into their territories, and to have given them land.[4] Caesar said to the Helvetians that the towns which they had destroyed [5] by fire must be rebuilt.[6] This must be done by them at once,[7] in order that those lands might not be unoccupied.

[1] Say 'many things had to be done by Caesar.' [2] = 'into surrender.'
[3] *tam.* [4] *i.e.* 'fields.' [5] *dēleō.*
[6] Cf. p. 204. l. 7. [7] *statim.*

53. *Caesar*, Book I, Chaps. 29, 30.

Caesar found lists [1] in the camp of the Helvetians, drawn up [2] in Greek letters. From these lists he learned that the number of the Helvetians was reduced to one hundred and thirty thousand men. If this was true,[3] they had lost two thirds [4] of their forces. The envoys, who came to Caesar, said that the Helvetians had left their homes and had almost [5] obtained control of all Gaul. They did this because they wished to choose the most fruitful region of all Gaul for a dwelling-place. They hoped that the rest of the states would pay tribute to them. If this had happened, it would have been dangerous [6] to Caesar and the Roman people. The envoys moreover asked permission [7] to appoint a day for a meeting of all Gaul. They did this because

they wished to ask aid from Caesar. Caesar said that he would grant[8] this, if they would promise that they would not make war on the Romans. He did this for the sake[9] of establishing[10] peace.

[1] *tabula.* [2] *cōnficiō.* [3] See Ex. **46**, note 5.
[4] Say 'two parts' and cf. p. 178, l. 5. [5] *paene.*
[6] *perīculōsus, -a, -um.* [7] 'asked that it might be allowed them.'
[8] Cf. p. 170, l. 4. [9] *causā* with preceding gen. [10] = 'making.'

54. *Caesar*, Book I, Chap. 31.

Then[1] the chief men of all Gaul treated with Caesar privately. When they had cast themselves down at his feet, it came to pass[2] that they obtained what[3] they wished. Ariovistus had not been able to get possession of the children of Diviciacus as hostages. Therefore Diviciacus was the only one who dared to beg aid from the Romans. He spoke to Caesar as follows[4] in behalf of all the chief men of the Gauls: "The Germans, who have been summoned, have crossed the Rhine. If they covet the lands of the Gauls, the Sequani will be forced to give them[5] hostages. We have therefore[6] come to you, to beg for help.[7] You are the only one who can prevent Ariovistus from ruling cruelly. We do not doubt that you can protect all Gaul. If you do[8] not do this, we must seek another dwelling-place. Do not[9] report to Ariovistus that we have come to you for the sake[10] of asking for aid. We fear that he will inflict punishment on us."[11]

[1] See Ex. **48**, note 6. [4] See Ex **48**, note 2.
[2] Cf. p. 208, l. 4. [5] Omit.
[3] See Ex. **46**, note 6. [6] 'therefore' = 'wherefore.'
[7] Acc.; for the construction of verb cf. p. 205, l. 13.
[8] Be careful of the tense. What kind of a condition is this? See Ex. **46**, Grammar Lesson.
[9] Use *nōlīte* with the infin.
[10] See Ex. **53**, note 9. [11] Cf. p. 203, l. 13

55. *Caesar*, Book I, Chap. 32.

When Caesar had heard this speech of Diviciacus, he perceived that all those who were present were weeping.[1] He asks the Sequani why[2] they look at[3] the ground so[4] sadly[5]; but they are

silent, because they are obliged[6] to admit Ariovistus into their territories. Caesar wondered why the Sequani made no reply.[7] Diviciacus said that no opportunity at all for flight was given to the Sequani. If they had not admitted Ariovistus into their territories, their lot[8] would not have been so wretched. While Ariovistus was absent,[9] they dreaded his cruelty and did not[10] dare to ask for aid. There was no doubt[11] that Ariovistus had taken possession of all the towns of the Sequani. For this reason they did not dare to make[12] any reply to Caesar. If they should offend the mind of Ariovistus, he would inflict punishment on[13] the hostages, which the Sequani had given him. They did not wish their children to be cruelly slain.

[1] *fleō*. [2] *quam ob rem*. [3] Cf. p. 212, l. 12. [4] *tam*.
[5] Use an adj. agreeing with 'they.'
[6] See **Ex. 52**, note 1, and cf. p. 213, ll. 7, 8,
[7] *i.e.* 'replied nothing.' [8] = 'fortune.'
[9] What tense? See **Ex. 42**, Grammar Lesson, *b*.
[10] See Ex. **46**, note 1. [11] = 'it was not doubtful.'
[12] Cf. note 7. [13] See Ex. **54**, note 11.

56. *Caesar*, Book I, Chap. 33.

When the meeting has been dismissed,[1] Caesar thinks that he ought to take up the matter as soon as possible, because it is disgraceful that Ariovistus should assume so arrogant a manner.[2] If the Germans gradually become accustomed to cross the Rhine, they will not refrain from occupying all Gaul. The Germans were such wild and barbarous men, that Caesar did not wish to have them as[3] neighbors to the Roman province. Since the Aeduans had been called brothers by the Roman senate, Caesar thought that they must[4] not be held in slavery by the Germans. Caesar said to the Aeduans: "The power of the Roman people is so great that they can very easily protect all their allies from injury. The haughtiness of the king of the Germans is too[5] great for me to bear. If he does not at once put an end to his wrong doing, it will be dangerous both for him and for his people."

[1] Use abl. abs. construction. [2] *i.e.* 'so great arrogance.' [3] Omit.
[4] Express by second periphrastic conjugation.
[5] Trans. 'greater than so that I can bear it.'

57. *Caesar*, Book I, Chap. 34.

Caesar resolves[1] to treat with Ariovistus concerning affairs of the greatest importance, and sends envoys to him; but Ariovistus[2] says that he does not dare to come at that time. Ariovistus also said that he did not wish to choose a place for a conference, because he thought that Caesar had[3] no[4] business in that part of Gaul. Ariovistus said to Caesar: "I do not wish to take possession of the whole of Gaul. If you will remain in that part of Gaul which you possess, I myself will go with my army into that part which has been conquered by the Germans. We have held those regions continuously for many years. It would be dangerous for me, if I should go without my army into your part of Gaul. I fear that I should not return; for your soldiers would wish to capture me[5] and kill me,[5] if I should give them the opportunity."[6]

[1] Trans. 'it pleases Caesar.'
[2] Trans. by *ille;* see Hint VII.
[3] Use *sum* and dat. of possessor.
[4] *nihil;* cf. p. 215, ll. 11–13.
[5] Express only once.
[6] Cf. p. 170, l. 5.

58. *Caesar*, Book I, Chap. 35.

When envoys had been sent[1] again to Ariovistus, Caesar demanded of him not to permit that other Germans cross the Rhine. The envoys spoke as follows: "If you wish to be called a friend of the Roman people, you ought[2] to return the hostages which you have from the Aeduans, and not[3] make war upon the Aeduans.[4] If you do not do this, we must defend our friends." If Ariovistus had wished to make requital to Caesar for[5] his kindness, he would have done what Caesar asked. Caesar did not dare to neglect the Aeduans, because the senate had decreed that all the friends of the Roman people in[6] Gaul should be defended. Since Caesar had been placed in command of the province of Gaul, he did not see why[7] he should permit[8] Ariovistus to[8] make war upon the Aeduans and their allies. If he should do this, it would be so disgraceful to himself and to the Roman people, that he feared that he would lose his province.

[1] Use abl. abs. construction.
[2] Use *oportet* with the infin.
[3] See Ex. **46**, note 1.
[4] Use the proper form of *hīc*.
[5] *prō*.
[6] See Hint XIII.
[7] See Ex. **55**, note 2.
[8] 'permit that Ariovistus should make.'

59. *Caesar*, Book I, Chap. 36.

The German king replied as follows: "I shall rule those whom I have conquered as[1] I wish, and I ought not to be hindered by you in the exercise[2] of my own rights. Caesar is doing me a wrong in[3] making my revenues less profitable. The Aeduans have promised that they will pay tribute to the Germans every year. If they do this, I will be their friend, and I will not make war upon them. If the Romans engage in battle with me, they will not[4] contend with the unconquered Germans, men well-trained in war, without[4] great danger to[5] themselves. The Aeduans were made tributary to me, because they were conquered by my soldiers in war. I cannot understand why they do not do what[6] has been agreed upon. Because Caesar has come into Gaul with his army, the Aeduans ought[7] not to think that they must[8] not pay the tribute. If they do not wish to obey me, let them try the fortune of war a second time."[9]

[1] = 'in what manner.'
[2] See Vocab. under the word *iūs*.
[3] Use a rel. clause.
[4] Join 'not' and 'without.'
[5] Use the possessive pronoun.
[6] See Ex. **46**, note 6.
[7] See Ex. **58**, note 2.
[8] See Ex. **56**, note 4.
[9] *iterum*.

60. *Caesar*, Book I, Chap. 37.

At this time the Aeduans and the Treveri sent envoys to Caesar to[1] say that their lands were being devastated by the Harudes, and that these men could not easily be stopped.[2] Moreover, they feared that the Suebi, whom two brothers, Nasua and Cimberius by name, commanded, would lead their forces across the river Rhine, and devastate the fields of the Gauls. They said that they would not refuse to give hostages to Ariovistus if he would make peace with them. Caesar replied to the envoys as follows: "I shall at once hasten to march against Ariovistus, and I shall procure as great a supply of grain as possible.[3] As long as the Suebi remained[4] on the other bank of the river Rhine, I did not fear Ariovistus and his army; but[5] if the Suebi join themselves with Ariovistus, I shall be exceedingly troubled. It is not easy to fight

with two armies of the enemy at the same time. Therefore I shall lead my men against Ariovistus by forced marches."

[1] The infin. must not be used.
[2] Study carefully p. 219, ll. 10, 11. 'They' should be translated by *hīs*.
[3] Express by *quam* and the superlative.
[4] What tense should be used? See Ex. **42**, Grammar Lesson, *b*.
[5] See p. 181, l. 3.

61. *Caesar*, Book I, Chaps. 38, 39.

Caesar hastened to occupy Vesontio, in which it was reported that there was a great abundance of everything which was of service in war. He therefore took precaution that Ariovistus should not occupy this town first,[1] since it was fortified by its natural location.[2] When Caesar, by forced marches, reached[3] the town, he stationed a garrison there.[4] When the traders said that the Germans were of extraordinary courage, the Romans were so frightened, that they could not control their features. Some sealed their wills[5] and hid themselves in their tents. One[6] lamented his fate, another reported to Caesar that the soldiers would not break camp. Even the tribunes of the soldiers feared the enemy, although they[7] said that they were afraid that the supply of grain could not conveniently be brought up.

[1] *prīmus*. [2] Where should this last clause come in the Latin sentence?
[3] *perveniō*; cf. p. 178, ll. 8, 9. [4] *ibi*. [5] Use the abl. abs. constr.
[6] Study carefully p. 222, l. 9. [7] 'they,' *i.e.* the tribunes; trans. by *illī*.

62. *Caesar*, Book I, Chaps. 40, 41.

Therefore when all the centurions had been called together,[1] Caesar spoke as follows: "If, during my consulship, Ariovistus desired the friendship of the Roman people, why should he now[2] withdraw from his obligation? I am persuaded that he will not reject my favor. What, pray, do you fear? We made trial of the enemy when the Cimbri were defeated by Marius. If the Helvetians have generally overcome the Germans, we shall overcome them, because the Helvetians are not a match for the Romans. I shall look[3] after the grain. As to your saying[4] that you will not advance when the signal is given,[5] I am not at all disturbed by that, for I do not doubt that the tenth legion will be a body-guard

for me." When the camp had been broken,[6] Caesar set out with his army.

[1] See Ex. **61**, note 5. [3] Study p. 226, l. 14. [5] *signum dare*.
[2] *nunc*. [4] Study p. 227, l. 1. [6] See note **1**.

63. *Caesar*, Book I, Chaps. 42, 43.

When Caesar approached nearer, Ariovistus came to his senses and sent envoys to say that he wished to have a conference.[1] The result was, that a day was set for a conference.[2] If each did not[3] come with his cavalry, Ariovistus feared that Caesar would surround him by stratagem. Caesar took all the horses from the Gallic horsemen and put on them the soldiers of the tenth legion. When the soldiers had been halted[4] near by,[5] Caesar and Ariovistus held their conference on horseback. Caesar said, "You have been called friend and king by the Roman senate, a thing which has happened to few. You know how often honorary measures[6] have been passed in behalf of the Aedui. Do not make war upon the Aedui. Return their hostages. Do not allow the Germans to cross the Rhine."

[1] Cf. p. 216, l. 6. [4] See Ex. **61**, note 5.
[2] Study p. 230, ll. 1, 2. [5] *prope*.
[3] 'If . . . not' trans. by *nisi*. [6] Omit; see 195, *a*.

64. *Caesar*, Book I, Chaps. 44–46.

When the speech of Caesar had been thus[1] delivered,[2] Ariovistus replied briefly: "I did not make war upon the Gauls, but when they came to attack me, I defeated their forces. If they had wished to try it again, I should have been ready again to fight it out, in order that I might force[3] them to pay the tribute. I shall gladly seek the friendship of the Romans, if it will be a protection to me. I did not bring the Germans into Gaul for the sake of making war. What do you mean? I am not such a barbarian[4] that I do not know that you have an army in Gaul for the sake of crushing me." When Caesar[5] had said that he could not give up the undertaking, he broke off the conference.[6]

[1] *sīc*. [3] See the phrase, p. 163, l. 1.
[2] See Ex. **61**, note 5. [4] *i.e.* 'so barbarous.'
[5] The best Latin order requires that the sentence begin with the word *Caesar*. [6] See p. 237, l. 10.

65. *Caesar*, Book I, Chaps. 47–50.

Caesar thus soliloquized[1]: "The Germans can not be kept from throwing their weapons at the Romans. I shall send Procillus to Ariovistus, because he is a young man of the greatest courage.[2] Moreover,[3] the German king speaks the Gallic language fluently, and will know what Procillus says." Although Ariovistus cut Caesar off from his grain supply, because he led his troops past Caesar's camp, still the latter formed a line of battle. Ariovistus remained in camp, so that he might keep Caesar from supplies; but Caesar[4] sent soldiers to select a place suitable for a camp and to form a triple line of battle. Then he forced[5] Ariovistus to come with his army. Among the Germans there is this custom, that they do not contend in battle before the new moon.

[1] 'soliloquize,' *sēcum loquī*.
[2] The Latin manner of expression would be, 'Because Procillus is a young man of the greatest courage, I shall send him to Ariovistus.'
[3] *Praetereā*. [4] *hīc*. [5] See p. 163, l. 1.

66. *Caesar*, Book I, Chaps. 51–54.

All the auxiliary troops having been drawn up in sight of the enemy, Caesar formed a triple line of battle. The Germans left to their kinsmen[1] no hope in flight. The women wept because their husbands[2] were[3] setting out for the battle. When the battle had been joined,[4] the Romans could not throw their pikes at the enemy, because they[5] ran forward too quickly[6] and formed a phalanx. Many, having been wounded,[7] were put to flight, and no one[8] sent reënforcements[9] to help them in their distress. Although Ariovistus escaped to the Rhine river, Caesar killed many of his soldiers. Caesar said that Procillus, his friend, was saved from the hands of the Germans, and that this fact gave him pleasure. Procillus did not know whether he would be killed,[10] or saved from the hands of the enemy.

[1] 'to their kinsmen,' trans. by *suīs*.
[2] *marītus*; see Vocab.
[3] What tense of the verb should be used?
[4] Use the abl. abs. constr. [5] *hī*.
[6] Use the comparative degree of the adverb.
[7] Use the perf. pass. part.
[8] 'and no one,' *neque quisquam*.
[9] *auxilia*.
[10] Use *interficiō*.

67. *Caesar*, Book II, Chaps. 1-4.

Caesar was afraid that all the Belgians would conspire against the Roman people and exchange hostages; for it has been shown that he was informed by a despatch from Labienus that the Gauls were annoyed because the Romans were becoming established in Gaul. As soon as he had enlisted two new legions, Caesar[1] did not doubt that he ought not to delay about coming to his army. Therefore he directed the Gauls to make ready a supply of grain. Envoys sent by the Remi came to say: "We surrender ourselves and our possessions to the Roman people; but we can not prevent the rest of the Belgians from uniting with the Germans. The Bellovaci are the only ones who can[2] muster a thousand armed men. The result is, that[3] they are the most powerful."

[1] See Ex. **64**, note 5.
[2] See 233.
[3] *i.e.* 'wherefore it happens that,' etc.

68. *Caesar*, Book II, Chaps. 5-8.

The Remi did all the things that Caesar ordered. It was important for the welfare of all, that Caesar hasten to lead his army across the river Axona. In this way[1] he made it possible[2] to fortify the camp. The Belgians stormed a town of the Remi and hurled stones at the wall. The result was[3] that Iccius sent a messenger to Caesar to say: "If you do not send us aid, we can not hold out any longer." When Caesar sent soldiers to help the Remi,[4] the zeal of the latter[5] to fight on the defensive was increased. Caesar saw that redoubts ought to be constructed at the ends of the entrenchments, in order that he might leave two legions in the camp and draw up the rest in line of battle.

[1] *ita*.
[2] Cf. the note to p. 257, l. 3.
[3] See Ex. **67**, note 3.
[4] Cf. p. 259, l. 4.
[5] Use the proper form of *hīc*; cf. p. 259, ll. 6, 7.

69. *Caesar*, Book II, Chaps. 9–13.

Caesar waited to see if the Belgians would start to cross,[1] and when they[2] had hurried to the river, they found a ford. They wished[3] to cut down the bridge, so that the Remi could not[4] be of service to the Romans. Although the Romans attacked the enemy, the latter tried most bravely to cross, but they were disappointed in their expectation.[5] Therefore they said: "Let us return home and defend our territory." When Caesar found this out, he ordered Labienus to cut to pieces their rear, so that they might not put hope[6]-of-refuge in flight. On the next day Caesar decided to storm the town of Noviodunum, in order that it might not be of service[7] to the Belgians. The Gauls, who had never seen arbor-sheds and towers and other siege-works, begged for peace.

[1] *i.e.* 'make a beginning of crossing.'
[2] *hī*.
[3] *volō*.
[4] Cf. p. 261, ll. 7–9.
[5] See p. 264, l. 8.
[6] See p. 266, l. 9.
[7] See Ex. **68**, note 4.

70. *Caesar*, Book II, Chaps. 14–17.

Diviciacus pleaded for the Bellovaci as follows: "The Bellovaci revolted from the Aeduans because (as they thought)[1] the Aeduans[2] had been reduced to slavery by Caesar. Show mercy to the Bellovaci. If you do this, you will extend the influence of the Aeduans." When this speech had been delivered[3] Caesar took the Bellovaci under his protection and saved them. The Nervii are men of great courage, and do not allow any wine to be imported into their country. They therefore did not surrender to Caesar nor send envoys to beg for peace. Caesar was informed by captives, that they had persuaded their neighbors to put their wives in the swamplands. The Gauls had observed the usual marching order of the Roman army and the Nervii decided to attack each legion separately[4] and plunder the baggage.

[1] See Ex. **39**, Grammar Lesson, *c*.
[2] *hī*.
[3] See Ex. **61**, note 5.
[4] *sēparātim*.

71. *Caesar*, Book II, Chaps. 18–22.

One could[1] not look into the wooded hill where[2] the Nervii had encamped. Caesar knew that he was approaching the enemy and so,[3] leading[4] six legions light armed, in order that they might protect[5] the heavy baggage, he built[6] a camp. As soon[7] as the Nervii saw the baggage of the Romans, they rushed forth with all their troops from the woods, in order that they might attack the Roman cavalry. Caesar's soldiers had to rush to arms in a short[8] time, but they did not have to be told what ought to be done, because they had been well[9] trained. Caesar urged his men to fight bravely and to wait until[10] he should give the signal to join battle. On account of the thick hedges he could not see what was going on[11] in other places.

[1] Use the impersonal constr.; cf. the note to p. 274, l. 8.
[2] *i.e.* 'in which.'
[3] *itaque*.
[4] Use the abl. abs. constr.
[5] Examine p. 276, l. 1.
[6] *i.e.* 'fortified.'
[7] Cf. p. 251, l. 2.
[8] *brevis*.
[9] *bene*.
[10] Study p. 177, ll. 11–13.
[11] *i.e.* 'was being done.' Use *agō*.

72. *Caesar*, Book II, Chaps. 23–26.

Many Atrebates, breathless with running, were driven to the river, which they tried to cross. Caesar's soldiers fought bravely and all the enemy except[1] the Nervii were put to flight. When the latter[2] entered[3] the camp of the Romans, and the camp servants and the Gallic cavalry met them, since they thought that the Romans had been surrounded, they fled in all directions. Nevertheless[4] the Nervii had not yet obtained possession of Caesar's baggage. Matters had reached[5] such[6] a crisis[5] that the standard bearer was killed, the standard lost, almost all the centurions either killed or wounded, and many were leaving the battle and avoiding the weapons. Caesar seized a shield from a soldier, whom he called by name, and urged the legions to face about and fight more bravely.

[1] Use the prep. *praeter*.
[2] *i.e.* 'the Nervii'; trans. by the rel. *quī*.
[3] *ingredior*; see Vocab.
[4] *Tamen*.
[5] Cf. p. 284, l. 1.
[6] Use the adv. *tam* in the proper place in the sentence.

73. *Caesar*, Book II, Chaps. 27–30.

Caesar's soldiers showed themselves superior in fighting to the Nervii, although they were exhausted by wounds. The enemy, moreover,[1] fought so bravely, that they crossed a broad river, climbed up high banks, and came up to an unfavorable place. When the elders of the Nervii were informed that their nation had been almost annihilated, they begged Caesar to[2] save them and to keep their neighbors from wrong and harm. I have said that the Aduatuci, who came to bring help to the Nervii, returned home in order that they might fortify their town. The Cimbri and Teutones, from whom the Aduatuci are descended, left their baggage near[3] the river Rhine. When the Romans constructed a rampart, the Aduatuci laughed at them.[4] They thought the Romans were such little chaps.

[1] *autem*.
[2] Cf. p. 268, l. 14, and p. 269, ll. 9–10.
[3] Use *prope* with the acc. case.
[4] 'at them,' use the acc. case.

74. *Caesar*, Book II, Chaps. 31–35.

The enemy sent envoys to speak after the following manner: "We will surrender ourselves and all our possessions to you, if you will save us. Do not take[1] our arms away from us, so that we can not[2] defend ourselves from our enemies." Caesar replied: "If you surrender before the battering-ram touches your wall, I will save your state, but you must deliver up your arms." Although the Nervii said that they would do what Caesar commanded, they kept concealed a third of their arms. They formed the plan of making[3] a sally from the town, but although they had surrendered, Caesar did not withdraw the outposts. The result was,[4] that many of the enemy were killed and the city-gates were broken down.

[1] See Ex. **38**, Grammar Lesson, *c*.
[2] Cf. p. 274, l. 8.
[3] Use the expression, *consilium capere*, with the genitive of the gerundive constr. See Ex. **52**, Grammar Lesson, *a*.
[4] See Ex. **67**, note 3.

75. *Caesar*, Book III, Chaps. 10–16.

Although[1] Caesar knew that there would be great difficulties in[2] waging war with the Veneti, he thought that the making[3] of a rebellion must not be neglected and that the Gauls must be held to[4] (their) allegiance. Therefore[5] Decimus Brutus was put in command of the Roman fleet, in order that he might have an encounter with the ships of the Veneti. But their ships were of[6] so great height and strength that it was not evident to Brutus how[7] he could harm them. For he saw that if he built up[8] towers, they would be overtopped by the sterns of the barbarian ships. He therefore cut the ropes with very sharp sickles and took away all the use of the fleet. The Veneti were then easily overcome by the valor of the Romans.

[1] 250, 251.
[2] See p. 295, l. 1.
[3] 280.
[4] See p. 296, l. 3.
[5] *igitur*.
[6] Abl. of quality.
[7] *quō modō*.
[8] See p. 301, l. 4.

76. *Caesar*, Book IV, Chaps. 20–22.

Caesar thought that he ought to go[1] to Britain because the Britons used to send[2] auxiliary forces to the Gauls; but before he went[3] to the island he wished to find out as soon as possible how many warships he had. Volusenus was the only one[4] who could be sent to spy[5] out everything. He ordered[6] him to report how large the island was. After Volusenus had returned to Caesar, the latter[7] delayed for many days in the country of the Morini. If the Morini had not sent envoys to say[8] that they did not wish to make war on the Romans,[9] Caesar would not have taken them under his protection. And so[10] he was not kept from going to Britain.

[1] See p. 304, l. 3.
[2] See 209.
[3] See 239.
[4] *ūnus* and see 233.
[5] Do not use the infin.
[6] Use *imperō*.
[7] *hīc*.
[8] See 230.
[9] See p. 307, l. 14.
[10] *Itaque*.

77. *Caesar*, Book IV, Chaps. 23–26.

Caesar waited until he got a favorable tide and wind. When he reached Britain, the troops of the barbarians were arrayed on the hills which bordered the sea. Because[1] (in Caesar's opinion) this was not a suitable place for disembarking, he decided to advance seven miles. The Britons sent ahead their cavalry to keep the Romans from landing. So it happened[2] that they could not leap from their ships. But the enemy were so frightened by the strange appearance of the warships that they gradually retreated. The Romans, encouraged by the eagle-bearer[3] of the tenth legion, began to fight fiercely. Caesar noticed that his soldiers could not keep the ranks on account of the depth of the water. When, however,[4] they stood on dry land, they were able to put the enemy to flight.

[1] Use *quod*. See 241.
[2] See 261.
[3] *aquilifer, -erī*, m.
[4] *autem*.

78. *Caesar*, Book IV, Chaps. 27–31.

Caesar found out that the Britons had seized[1] his envoy, Commius, whom he had sent ahead into Britain,[2] and had put him in chains. Although they had sent envoys to negotiate[3] for peace, they suddenly[4] made war. Eighteen ships, which were sufficient[5] for transporting the cavalry, tried to reach[6] Britain but were unable (to do so[7]) on account of a great storm. The result was[8] that they were forced[9] to put out to sea in the face of the night. The warships in which the army had been transported, were so wracked by the storm that many were useless. If Caesar had known that the full moon causes very great tides in the ocean, he would not have lost so many ships.

[1] Use a participle.
[2] 'whom he had sent ahead to Britain,' not a part of what Caesar found out. See 269.
[3] See p. 314, l. 16.
[4] *improvīsō*.
[5] See p. 308, l. 7.
[6] See p. 309, l. 8.
[7] Omit.
[8] *Fīebat ut*. See 261.
[9] *cōgō*.

79. *Caesar*, Book IV, Chaps. 32–38.

When this had been done[1] the seventh legion, which had been on guard duty, formed a new plan. Caesar found out that a part of the barbarians kept coming to and from the camp. He set out[2] from the camp with many cohorts and advanced toward the enemy. Then[3] it was reported to him that the Britons were fighting with chariots, and he saw how[4] they ride over (the field) in every direction and leap down from their chariots and fight on foot. In this way they caused the ranks of the Romans to be thrown[5] into confusion. Caesar saw that even if[6] the barbarians should spread[7] the news everywhere about the small numbers of the Romans, they could not drive them (the Romans) out of Britain.

[1] See 173 and 202, *a*.
[2] Use a participle.
[3] *Tum*.
[4] *quō modō*.
[5] See 261.
[6] 'even if,' *etsī*.
[7] See note on *expulissent*, p. 322, l. 14.

80. *Caesar*, Book V, Chaps. 8–10.

Caesar said, "I shall leave Labienus in Gaul and look after the grain supply and I shall set sail with my army toward sunset." At midnight the wind dropped so that he was not able to keep his course. The result was[1] that he was carried too far toward the north.[2] When he had reached Britain and the enemy were not seen anywhere,[3] he learned that they had all left the shore and hidden themselves in the forests. Let us not find fault[4] with Caesar because, as soon as[5] he had landed his army, he marched[6] against the enemy. When the Britons had been driven back,[7] the Romans captured their natural stronghold.[8] Then Caesar was informed[9] that many of his ships had again[10] been damaged by a storm.

[1] Ex. **78**, note 8.
[2] *septentriō*.
[3] 'anywhere' = in any (*ūllus*) place.
[4] *accūsō*.
[5] *cum primum*. See 234.
[6] *iter facere*.
[7] Apply 173.
[8] Read carefully p. 330, l. 4.
[9] See p. 178, ll. 5–6.
[10] *iterum*.

81. *Caesar*, Book V, Chaps. 11–14.

"Call back the legions and cavalry and defend yourselves on the march." He commanded Labienus[1] to send him workmen as quickly as possible[2] and he commanded his soldiers to haul up the ships because he feared that[3] the forces of the Britons would assemble in-larger-numbers.[4] A guard for the ships having been left, he returned to that place where the enemy had been. They[5] had entrusted the supreme command to Cassivellaunus. Caesar has given a brief account[6] of[7] the inhabitants of Britain.[8] He says that a part of the Britons were descended from those who once[9] lived in the country of the Belgae; further,[10] that the island is triangular in shape and that all the Britons stain themselves with woad.

[1] See 149, *a*. [2] See 194. [3] See 264.
[4] *maiōrēs*. [5] Apply 202, *a*.
[6] 'give a brief account,' cf. the phrase *pauca nārrō*.
[7] 'of,' *dē*.
[8] 'the inhabitants of Britain,' *i.e.* 'those who inhabit Britain.'
[9] *ōlim*. [10] *praetereā*.

82. *Caesar*, Book V, Chaps. 15–19.

After[1] the barbarians had made an attack on the Roman soldiers who were busy with building the camp, Caesar sent two cohorts as reinforcements.[2] As[3] the battle was being fought[4] in front of the camp, it could be seen that the Romans did not dare to pursue the retreating Britons. Besides this[5] the cavalry were fighting with great danger (to themselves[6]). Before[7] Caesar could send one legion as reinforcements,[2] the enemy sharply attacked the Romans. But they[8] (the Romans) afterwards drove them (the enemy) headlong until they took refuge[9] in the woods. Then Caesar crossed the Thames river, on the opposite bank of which the forces of Cassivellaunus had been drawn up.

[1] Use *postquam*. [4] Read carefully p. 338, l. 4. [7] See 239.
[2] See 156. [5] Read carefully p. 338, l. 13. [8] Apply 202, *a*.
[3] *Ut*. See 234. [6] Omit. [9] See p. 329, l. 7.

83. *Caesar*, Book V, Chaps. 20–23.

If the Trinobantes send[1] envoys to Caesar, they will carry out his orders, but we ask that they surrender to him. I should like[2] to know where the town of Cassivellaunus is. Caesar said that a large number of people had gathered there[3] for the purpose of defending themselves.[4] But the Romans stormed the tower[5] and killed many Britons. If Cassivellaunus had been in control of these districts, he would have collected all his forces in order to make a sudden attack on the Roman camp. While this was going on, it was reported to Cassivellaunus that his country was being laid waste and although he was unwilling[6] to pay taxes to the Roman people, he was forced to surrender[7] to Caesar.

[1] See Hint III.
[2] *velim*.
[3] 'there,' not *ibi*.
[4] See p. 342, ll. 12–14.
[5] Apply 173.
[6] Cf. *nōlō*.
[7] Cf. p. 342, l. 9.

84. *Caesar*, Book V, Chaps. 38–41.

When two lieutenants of the Roman army had been killed,[1] Ambiorix persuaded the Nervii to destroy the legion which Cicero had. He said that they could free themselves forever and take vengeance on the Romans. Cicero's camp was surrounded before the report of the death of the two lieutenants could be brought[2] to him. Although all the roads were blocked, Cicero tried to send a dispatch to Caesar. When timber had been collected, towers erected, and many stakes burned at the end,[1] they mounted the rampart. Then the Nervii sent envoys to say[3] that they wished to have a conference with Cicero. While they were having the conference, the Germans were crossing the Rhine. Cicero said that they must[4] lay down their arms.

[1] Apply 173.
[2] See 239.
[3] See 230.
[4] *necesse est*. See p. 346, l. 8.

85. *Caesar*, Book V, Chaps. 42–44.

If the Nervii had not learned from the Romans how[1] to surround the camp with a rampart, they would have been conquered. The host of the enemy was so great[2] that they completed the fortifications in a short time.[3] They built towers of a great height. By means of red-hot balls they set fire to the thatched huts of the soldiers and the wind carried the fire all through the camp. The enemy felt sure[4] that victory had already been won. The Romans had to fight[5] most bravely, although all their personal-belongings were being destroyed by the fire. Caesar tells[6] how[7] brave were two centurions, named[8] Pullo and Vorenus.

[1] *quō modō*. Apply 259.
[2] Use *tantus*.
[3] *brevī tempore*.
[4] *cōnfīdō*. See p. 346, ll. 15–16.
[5] Ex. 52, Grammar Lesson.
[6] *nārrō*.
[7] *quam*.
[8] Apply 171.

86. *Caesar*, Book V, Chaps. 45–48.

After many messengers, whom Cicero had sent with dispatches to Caesar, had been killed, Cicero[1] at last[2] succeeded[3] in getting a dispatch carried to him. When Caesar received this dispatch, it was about 5 o'clock. He saw that all hope lay[4] in quick action. He wrote to Crassus to come to him as quickly as possible, because he could not wait for the rest of the army. Labienus informed him that all the forces of the Treveri were coming towards him and that he was afraid that he could not withdraw his legion from winter quarters without[5] great danger. When by forced marches Caesar arrived in the country of the Nervii, he sent a letter to Cicero, which was read in a meeting of the soldiers.

[1] *ille*.
[2] 'at last,' *tandem*.
[3] 'succeeded,' *i.e.* 'caused that a dispatch be carried.' See 261.
[4] See p. 356, ll. 2–3.
[5] *sine*.

87. *Caesar*, Book V, Chaps. 49–52.

Cicero wrote to Caesar that the Gauls had raised the siege and were hastening toward him. Caesar marched cautiously because he had so few men and he relaxed his speed because Cicero had

been released from the blockade. Then he sent scouts to view the host of the enemy. The Gauls were waiting until reinforcements should arrive.[1] Caesar thought that to cross the stream involved great danger.[2] And so he succeeded[3] in getting the enemy to bring their troops across to his own position. Since the gates of the Roman camp had been blocked up with rows of sod, the Gauls tried to fill up the trenches. Then Caesar commanded his men to make a sally and to put the enemy to flight. Cicero's soldiers learned of all this[4] with great joy.

[1] See 238. [2] Cf. p. 358, ll. 15, 16. [3] Ex. 86, note 3.
[4] Express in the plural and place at the beginning of the sentence.

88. *Caesar*, Book VI, Chaps. 15–23.

Caesar says that the Gauls sacrifice human beings,[1] in order to propitiate the power of the gods; that if they did not catch men committing[2] any crime, they burned the innocent. They believed that Mercury had been the inventor of all arts and that diseases had been kept from them by Apollo. When one of the Gauls[3] died, all things which were dear to him were burned in public.

Since the Germans had no separate[4] fields, their desire for war was greater than their desire for agriculture, and as long as[5] the people saw that their wealth was equal[6] to that of the more powerful citizens, they could not be induced to commit[7] crimes.

[1] Use *homō*.
[2] 'in any crime.'
[3] 138, *a*.
[4] Use *proprius*.
[5] 237.
[6] 'had been made equal.'
[7] 'impelled to crimes.'

89. *Caesar*, Book VI, Chaps. 25–28.

If a lightly equipped traveller[1] should make a journey of sixty days from this (part of) Germany, he would not come to the beginning of the Hercynian forest. Caesar says that there were in that forest many wild animals, some[2] of which[3] differed from all the wild beasts which he had ever seen. He says that there was an ox of a form not unlike (that) of a stag,[4] and that it had a long[5] horn from which branches spread[6] in all directions.[7] If

their legs had had joints, the elks of [8] which Caesar speaks would have been able to lie down; but as long as the trees stood, they were accustomed to lean against them.

[1] 'one lightly equipped.'
[2] Use *quīdam*.
[3] 138, *a*.
[4] See p. 378, ll. 14–15.
[5] *excelsus*.
[6] Say 'spread themselves.'
[7] *undique*.
[8] *dē*.

90. *Caesar*, Book VII, Chaps. 1–5.

While Caesar was holding the assizes in Italy, the Gauls began a war.[1] They had great hope that the legions would not dare to leave their winter quarters until Caesar returned, and that they would recover their liberty. When they had bound themselves[2] by an oath not to refuse any danger, they made Vercingetorix their leader. He inquired how great forces they had and urged them to demand hostages of all the states. When he had got together a large army of infantry and cavalry, he marched into the territories of the Bituriges, who asked help of[3] the Aeduans. Since the Aeduans did not dare to cross the river, they returned home. If it had been evident[4] to Caesar why they did this, he would have told us.

[1] 'made the beginning of a war.'
[2] See p. 382, l. 16, and 383, l. 2.
[3] 128.
[4] See p. 387, l. 2.

91. *Caesar*, Book VII, Chaps. 6–10.

Caesar wished to set out for Transalpine Gaul before the legions should come[1] into the province. When it had been announced to him that Lucterius would make an inroad[2] into the province, he decided to place a garrison at Narbo. Although the snow on Mount Cevenna was very deep, yet Caesar opened a way through it. If Caesar had been absent from the camp for three days, Brutus would have sent all the cavalry to meet him. Caesar feared that if he did not protect[3] the Aeduans, all Gaul would be alienated from him, but he did not wish to lead his army out of winter quarters until he was able to sustain the attack of the enemy.

[1] 239.
[2] *ēruptiō*.
[3] 'if there was no protection in him for the Aeduans.'

92. *Caesar*, Book VII, Chaps. 63–68.

The Aeduans said that they missed[1] Caesar's indulgence towards them, but that they would not separate themselves from the rest of[2] the Gauls. Vercingetorix said that if he had not contended in battle with the Romans, it would have been easy to keep them from getting grain.[3] Caesar knew that all the roads had been blocked,[4] so that nothing could be brought from Italy. He therefore ordered[5] the states of the Germans to send him horsemen. Vercingetorix did not doubt that[6] no one of the enemy's cavalry would dare to lend[7] help to the footsoldiers. When the cavalry of Vercingetorix had been put to flight, he marched to the town of Alesia.

[1] *requīrō*.
[2] *reliquus*.
[3] *frūmentātiō*.
[4] *interclūdō*.
[5] Use *imperō*.
[6] *quīn*.
[7] *ferō*.

93. *Caesar*, Book VII, Chaps. 69–75.

When the Roman army reached the town of Alesia, the soldiers saw that below the town wall there was a trench and a wall of stones. In a cavalry battle, which was fought on the plain, the Gauls were beaten. Vercingetorix sent messengers around to every state in Gaul to say that he ought not to be given up by them to the enemy for torture. As long as[1] there was grain, the Gauls would not perish. In the meantime[2] Caesar was constructing fortifications and he dug three long, deep[3] trenches. He had to make the fortifications so extensive that the Gauls, who were in the town, could not break through them. In addition to this[4] he had to get timber and grain.

[1] See 237.
[2] *interim*.
[3] Say 'long and deep.'
[4] See p. 338, line 13 and note.

94. *Caesar*, Book VII, Chaps. 77–80.

Express in indirect discourse Chap. 77, from *nihil dē eōrum sententiā* (p. 408, l. 10) to *servitūtī subicere* (p. 409, l. 11), introducing it by the words *Critognātus dīxit*. Study carefully 265–271 and Hints IV and V.

95. *Caesar*, Book VII, Chaps. 81–90.

While these things were going on, the Gauls were preparing a large number of ladders and grappling hooks, so that by means of these[1] they might drive the Romans from their rampart. Because of the darkness[2] it was not possible to see[3] whether[4] wounds had been inflicted. Vercingetorix and his men were afraid that their Gallic brothers would not break through the fortifications of the Romans. When they[5] had withdrawn beaten, they decided to attack the camp of Reginus and Rebilus because (as they said) this camp had been made in an unfavorable position. At noon they approached the camp. But after many wounds had been inflicted,[6] the enemy fled and the Gauls who were in Alesia were forced to surrender their arms.

[1] See 230.
[2] See 165.
[3] *i.e.* 'it could not be seen.'
[4] *sī*.
[5] Use *ille*.
[6] Apply 173.

VOCABULARIES

RULES FOR PRONUNCIATION OF GREEK AND LATIN PROPER NAMES[1]

Accent.

1. A word may have two, or even three or four, accents; *e.g* Flăm-i-nĭ-nus, Cáp-pa-dó-ci-a.
2. If only two syllables precede the primary accent, the secondary accent is on the first; *e.g.* Áv-en-tí-nus.
3. In words of two syllables, accent the first; *e.g.* Rĕ-mus, Cæ-sar.
4. In words of more than two syllables, accent the penult, if long, otherwise the antepenult; *e.g.* Col-lā-tī-nus, Lā-vĭn-i-a, Co-rĭn-thus.

Syllabication.

1. Two vowels coming together, and not forming a diphthong, must be divided; *e.g.* De′us.
2. A single consonant, or mute with *l* or *r*, between the last two vowels of a word, or between the vowels of any two unaccented syllables, must be joined to the latter vowel; *e.g.* Có-*clēs*, Pél-o-*pon*-nē′-sus.
3. A single consonant, or mute with *l* or *r*, *before* an accented vowel must be joined to that vowel, so also a single consonant *after* it, except in the penult; *e.g.* *Trās*-u-*mĕ́*-nus, *Lĕm*-o-*vĭ́*-ces.

Exceptions.

1. A single consonant, or mute with *l* or *r*, after an accented *a*, *e*, or *o*, and before two vowels the first of which is *e*, *i*, or *y*, must be joined to the following vowel; *e.g.* Lu-cá-*ni*-a, Pau-sā′-*ni*-as, Ā́-*tri*-us.
2. A single consonant, or mute with *l* or *r*, after an accented *u*, must be joined to the following vowel; *e.g.* Fú-*ri*-us, Ú-*ti*-ca, Ú-*bi*-i, except *Púb*-li-us.

Sounds of the Letters.

Vowels.

1. A vowel ending an accented syllable has its *long English* sound; *e.g.* Tor-*quā́*-tus, Cor-*cȳ*-ra, Gor-*tȳ́*-na, Hel-*vḗ*-ti-i.

[1] These rules were prepared by the late Professor A. H. Pattengill, of the University of Michigan, and were used by him for several years. They are given without change, except that the examples have been taken as far as possible from the Text.

The marks of quantity are intended to indicate the sound of the vowels *in English*.

(*a*) But *a* at the end of an unaccented syllable has the sound of *a* in America; *e.g.* *Va*-lé-ri-us, Lámp-*sa*-cus.

(*b*) *E*, *o*, and *u* at the end of an unaccented syllable have nearly the same sound as when accented, only not so distinct; *e.g.* Lác-*e*-dǽ-mon.

(*c*) (1) *I* final has its long sound; *e.g.* Cím-*brī*, Bel-lóv-a-*cī*.

(2) *I* at the end of unaccented syllable, not final, has an obscure sound much like *e*; *e.g.* Át-*ti*-ca.

(3) *I* has its long sound in the first syllable of a word, the second of which is accented, when it either stands alone before a consonant; *e.g.* *I*-bé-rus; or ends a syllable before a vowel; *e.g.* *Dī*-ǎ-na.

(*d*) *Y* = *I* in all cases.

2. A vowel has its *short English* sound when followed by a consonant in the same syllable; *e.g.* *Scíp*-i-o, *Cás*-ti-cus.

Exception. — *Es* at the end of a word is pronounced like the English word *ease*; *e.g.* Cár-nu-*tes*.

DIPHTHONGS.

1. *Æ* and *œ* = *e* in all cases; *e.g.* *Læ*-ví-nus, *Bœ*-ó-ti-a, Bél-*gæ*.
2. When *ai*, *ei*, *oi*, and *yi* are accented and followed by another vowel, the *i* = initial *y*, as in *your*, and the vowel before it has its long sound; *e.g.* A-chaí-*a* (pronounced A-chǎ-ya), Boí-i.
3. *Au* = *aw*, in *law*; *e.g.* *Claú*-di-us, *Au*-lér-ci.
4. *Eu* = *u* long; *e.g.* *Teút*-o-ni.

CONSONANTS.

The consonants have in general the same sounds as in English.

1. *C* and *g* are soft before *e*, *i*, *y*, *œ*, and *æ*; *e.g.* Phrý-*gi*-a, Cor-*cÿ*-ra, *Cím*-bri.
2. *Ch* always has the sound of *k*; *e.g.* *Chry*-sóg-o-nus.
3. *C*, *s*, and *t* before *i* preceded by an accented syllable and followed by a vowel have the sound of *sh*; *e.g.* *Sic*-y-on (Sísh-e-on), Bœ-ó-*ti*-a, Tas-gé-*ti*-us.
4. After *s*, *t*, or *x*, *t* keeps its hard sound; *e.g.* Clas-*tíd*-i-um. So also in the termination, *-tion*.

NOTE. — These rules are not intended to be complete, but they are complete enough for all practical purposes. The most important rules are those for syllabication, and without a correct knowledge of these, accuracy is impossible.

ABBREVIATIONS

abl.	= *ablative.*
abs.	= *absolute.*
acc.	= *accusative.*
adj.	= *adjective.*
adv.	= *adverb, adverbial.*
chap.	= *chapter.*
coll.	= *collective, collectively.*
comp.	= *comparative.*
conj.	= *conjunction.*
dat.	= *dative.*
decl.	= *declension.*
def.	= *defective.*
dem.	= *demonstrative.*
desid.	= *desiderative.*
dim.	= *diminutive.*
distrib.	= *distributive.*
e.g.	= *exempli gratia = for example.*
Eng.	= *English.*
etc.	= *et cetera = and so forth.*
excl.	= *exclamation.*
f.	= *feminine.*
f., ff.	= *following, and what follows.*
freq.	= *frequentative.*
fut.	= *future.*
gen.	= *genitive.*
Ger.	= *German, Germanic word.*
ibid.	= *ibidem = in the same place.*
id.	= *idem = the same.*
i.e.	= *id est = that is.*
imp.	= *imperative.*
impers.	= *impersonal, impersonally.*
impf.	= *imperfect.*
inch.	= *inchoative.*
indecl.	= *indeclinable.*
indef.	= *indefinite.*
indic.	= *indicative.*
inf.	= *infinitive.*
insep.	= *inseparable.*
intens.	= *intensive.*
inter.	= *interrogative.*
interj.	= *interjection.*
intr.	= *intransitive.*
irr.	= *irregular.*
Kel.	= *Keltic, Keltic word*
lit.	= *literally.*
loc.	= *locative.*
m.	= *masculine.*
MSS.	= *manuscripts.*
n., neut.	= *neuter.*
nom.	= *nominative.*
num.	= *numeral.*
opp.	= *opposite.*
ord.	= *ordinal.*
p., pp.	= *page, pages.*
part.	= *participle.*
pass.	= *passive.*
patr.	= *patronymic.*
pers.	= *person, personal.*
pf.	= *perfect.*
pl.	= *plural.*
plup.	= *pluperfect.*
pos.	= *positive.*
pred.	= *predicate.*
prep.	= *preposition.*
pres.	= *present.*
pron.	= *pronoun, pronominal.*
reflex.	= *reflexive.*
rel.	= *relative.*
semi-dep.	= *semi-deponent.*
sing.	= *singular.*
subj.	= *subjunctive, subject.*
subst.	= *substantive.*
sup.	= *superlative.*
trans.	= *translate, translation.*
v.	= *verb.*
voc.	= *vocative.*

* Implies that the form before which it stands is hypothetical.
Roots are printed in small capitals, as DIC, CAP.

VOCABULARY

In the Vocabulary, English words which are cognate with the Latin words, or derived from them, are printed in SMALL CAPITALS. Those included between parentheses are intended, not to be used as definitions, but to assist in memorizing the meanings of the Latin words. The connection of the Latin words with one another, and their derivation, should also be observed (see *Grammatical Appendix*, 107–118).

Unless otherwise indicated, the numbers in the Vocabulary refer to the sections of the Grammatical Appendix.

A

A., with proper names = **Aulus**, a Roman *praenōmen*, or forename.

a. d. = **ante diem**; see 183.

ā, ab, abs, [cf. *ἀπό*, Eng. o f, o f f], prep. with abl. originally implying separation, *from*, *away from*, *out of;* of place or direction, *from*, *at*, *on;* of agency, with the passive voice, *by;* of time, *from*, *since*, *after*. **ā dextrō cornū**, *on the right wing*. **ā fronte**, *in front*. **ā tergō**, *in the rear*. **ab īnfimō**, *at the bottom*. **ab utrōque latere**, *on both sides*. **ab mīlibus passuum octō**, *eight miles off*.

abaliēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *estrange*, *make hostile*. (ALIENATE.)

abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [ab + dō], *put away; conceal*, *hide*. **sē abdere**, *to hide oneself*.

abdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [ab + dūcō], *lead away*, *take off*. (ABDUCT.)

abeō, -īre, -īvī or -iī, —, fut. part. **abitūrus**, [ab + eō], *go away*, *depart*.

abhorreō, -horrēre, -horruī, —, [ab + horreō], *shrink from; be averse to*, *disagree with*. (ABHORRENT.)

abiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [ab + iaciō], *throw away*, *throw down*, *throw; lay aside*. (ABJECT.)

abiēs, -ietis, f., *spruce*, *fir*.

abripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus, [ab + rapiō], *take forcibly away; carry off*, *remove; hurry off*.

abrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ab + rogō], of a law, *repeal*, *annul*. (ABROGATE.) **alicui magistrātum abrogāre**, *depose from office*.

abscēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, [abs + cēdō], *withdraw*, *desist*.

abscīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus, [abs + caedō], *cut off*.

absēns, -entis, [part. of absum]. adj., ABSENT.

absimilis, -e, [ab + similis], adj., *unlike*.

absistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, [ab + sistō], *withdraw; desist*.

absolvō, -solvere, -solvī, absolūtus, [ab + solvō], *set free*, *acquit*. (ABSOLVE.)

abstinentia, -ae, [abstinēns, part. of abstineō], f., ABSTINENCE, *self-restraint*, *integrity*.

abstineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, [abs + teneō], *keep back, hold off; refrain from*, ABSTAIN, *absent oneself.*

abstulī, see auferō.

absum, abesse, āfuī, —, fut. part. āfutūrus, [ab+sum], *be absent, be distant; be free from, be wanting; be disinclined to; be unsuitable to.* longē abesse, *to be far away.*

absūmō, -ere, absūmpsī, absūmptus, [ab + sūmō], *take away, use up, destroy, consume.*

abūtor, -ūtī, -ūsus sum, [ab + ūtor], dep., *waste, squander.*

ac, see atque.

Acca, -ae, f., *Acca*, forename of *Acca Lārentia*, the foster-mother of Romulus and Remus.

accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, [ad + cēdō], *go to, approach; be added; assent, approve; undertake.* ad amīcitiam accēdere alicuius, *to become a friend of any one.* propius accēdere, *to come nearer.* (ACCEDE.)

accelerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad + celerō; cf. celer], *hasten.* (ACCELERATE.)

accendō, -ere, accendī, accēnsus, [ad + unused candō], *set fire to; inflame, arouse, excite.*

acceptus, pf. pass. part. of accipiō, used as an adj., ACCEPTABLE, *welcome, beloved.* As part., see accipiō.

accidō, -cidere, -cidī, —, [ad + cadō], *fall, befall, occur, fall to the lot of, turn out.* Impers., accidit, *it happens.* (ACCIDENT.)

accīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus, [ad + caedō], *cut into.*

accingō, -ere, accīnxī, accīnctus, [ad+cingō], *gird on, bind on, gird.*

accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [ad + capiō], *take to oneself, receive,* ACCEPT; *take in, understand, learn; deal with, treat; undergo.*

accipiter, -ris, m., *hawk.*

acclīvis, -e, [ad + clīvus], adj., *sloping upwards, rising.*

acclīvitās, -ātis, [acclīvis], f., *ascent.*

accommodātus, -a, -um, [part. of accommodō], adj., *suited, adapted.*

accommodō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad + commodus], *fit, put on, adjust;* ACCOMMODATE *to.*

accūrātē, comp. accūrātius, [cf. cūra], adv., *carefully.* (ACCURATELY.)

accurrō, -currere, -cucurrī or -currī, -cursus, [ad + currō], *run to, hasten to.*

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad + causa], ACCUSE, *blame, censure.* Of things, *find fault with, throw blame on.*

ācer, ācris, ācre, comp. ācrior, sup. ācerrimus, adj., *sharp, piercing; bitter; eager, fierce, vigorous.* (ACRID, ACRIMONIOUS.)

acerbē, comp. acerbius, sup. acerbissimē, [acerbus], adv., *bitterly, cruelly, severely.*

acerbus, -a, -um, [cf. ācer], adj., *sharp* to the taste, *bitter; harsh, cruel.* (ACERBITY.)

ācerrimē, see ācriter.

acervus, -ī, m., *a heap, pile.*

Achillās, -ae, m., *Achillas*, prefect of Ptolemy, king of Egypt.

āciēs, -ēī, f., (old gen. aciē occurs, p. 280, l. 4), *edge;* of the eye, *keenness* or *fierceness;* of an army, *line of battle, battle.*

Acilius, Aci'lī, m., *M. Acilius*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

acquiēscō, -quiēscere, -quiēvī, —, [ad + quiēscō], *rest; be at rest; die.* (ACQUIESCE.)

ācriter, comp. ācrius, sup. ācerrimē, [ācer], adv., *sharply, fiercely.*

āctiō, -ōnis, [agō], f., *act,* ACTION.

āctus, see agō.

Acūtius, Acūtī, m., *Acutius,* gentile name of *Acūtius Rūfus,* a follower of Pompey.

acūtus, -a, -um, comp. acūtior, sup. acūtissimus (part. of acuō, *sharpen*), adj., *sharpened, sharp; pointed.* (ACUTE.)

ad, prep. w. acc., *to;* of motion and direction, *towards, up to;* of place, *at, near by, in the presence of, among, on;* of time, *up to, until;* of purpose, especially with the gerundive constr., *in order to, for the purpose of;* of other relations, *with regard to, according to, as to, in;* with words of number, *about.* ad Genavam, *in the vicinity of Geneva.* ad multam noctem, *till late at night.* ad extrēmum, *at last, finally.* ad hunc modum, *after this manner.* ad vesperum, *towards evening.* ad duodecim, *about twelve.*

adaequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad + aequō, from aequus], *make equal to; become equal (to), be equal to.* adaequāre cursum, *to keep up with.* (ADEQUATE.)

adamō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad + amō], *eagerly desire, covet; love dearly.*

addō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [ad + dō], *add.* addere in aliquid, *to make* ADDITIONS *to anything.*

addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [ad + dūcō], *lead to, bring to; draw, haul taut; induce.* (ADDUCE.)

adēmptus, part. of adimō.

adeō, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -itus, [ad + eō], *go to, approach, visit; enter upon; undergo, expose oneself to.*

adeō, [ad + eō], adv., *to this; so, so much, to such a degree; even, indeed.* adeō nōn, *so little.*

adequitō, -āre, -āvī, —, [ad + equitō, from eques], *ride towards; ride up to.*

adhaerēscō, -haerēscere, -haesī, —, [ad + haerēscō], *cling to.* (ADHESIVE.)

Adherbal, -alis, m., *Adherbal,* a Numidian prince, son of Micipsa. He was slain by Jugurtha.

adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, [ad + habeō], *apply; bring forward, bring in, summon, admit; bestow; use; invite* to a dinner; *turn to for counsel, consult.*

adhortātiō, -ōnis [adhortor], f., *exhortation, encouragement.*

adhūc, [ad + hūc], adv., *heretofore, hitherto, as yet.*

adiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [ad + iaciō], *throw to; add, join to.*

adigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus, [ad + agō], *drive (to), drive in; bind.* iūre iūrandō adigere, *compel to take oath.*

adimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptus, [ad + emō], *take to oneself, take away.*

adipīscor, -ipīscī, -eptus sum, [ad + apīscor], dep., *arrive at; obtain by effort, win.* (ADEPT.)

aditus, -ūs, [adeō], m., *approach, access; way of approach.* aditum petere, *to ask for a hearing.*

adiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, adiūnctus, [ad + iungō], *join to, add to; win over.* (ADJUNCT.)

adiūtor, -ōris, [adiuvō], m., *assistant, helper; advocate; aider, promoter.* (ADJUTANT.)

adiuvō (ad + iuvō), -iuvāre, -iūvī, adiūtus, [ad + iuvō], *help, aid, assist, support; render assistance, be of assistance.*

Admagetobriga, -ae, [Kel., = 'Stronghold of Admagetos'], f., *Admagetobriga*, a town in eastern Gaul, on the river Arar.

administer, -trī, m., *assistant.*

administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad + ministrō], *render assistance; manage*, ADMINISTER; *arrange for;* of orders, *carry out.*

admīrandus, -a, -um, [part. of admīror], adj., *wonderful, strange.*

admīrātiō, -ōnis, [admīror], f., *wonder*, ADMIRATION.

admīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, [ad + mīror], dep., *wonder at*, ADMIRE.

admittō, -mittere, -misī, -missus, [ad + mittō], *let go;* ADMIT, *receive; be guilty of, commit.* **amīcitiās admittere**, *to form friendships.* **equō admissō**, *with his horse at full speed.*

admodum, [ad + modum), adv., *to the limit; quite, very.*

admoneō, -monēre, -monuī, admonitus, [ad + moneō], *remind*, ADMONISH, *warn.*

admonitus, -ūs, [admoneō], m., *advice*, ADMONITION.

admoveō, -āre, admōvī, admōtus, [ad + moveō], *move towards, bring near.*

adolēscō, -olēscere, -olēvī, adultus, *grow up.* (ADOLESCENT.)

adolēvī, see adolēscō.

adoptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad + optō], *choose;* ADOPT

adorior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, [ad + orior], dep., *fall upon, attack; accost; engage in.*

adortus, pf. part. of **adorior**, *having attacked, attacking.*

adsum,-esse, affuī, [ad + sum], *be at hand, be present; help; take part in.*

adsurgō, -ere, adsurrēxī, adsurrēctus, [ad + surgō], *rise up, stand up.*

Aduatucī, -ōrum, m., pl., a warlike people on the left bank of the Meuse, descended from the Cimbri and Teutones.

adūlātiō, -ōnis [adūlor], f., *flattery.* (ADULATION.)

adulēscēns, -entis, [part. of adolēscō], adj., *young.* As subst., m. and f., *a youth.*

adulēscentia, -ae, [adulēscēns], f., *youth.* **adulēscentia iniēns**, *early youth.*

adulēscentulus, -ī, [dim. of adulēscēns], m., *very young man, youth.*

adveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus, [ad + veniō], *come to, arrive.*

adventō, -āre, —, —, [intens. of adveniō], *come quickly, press forward.*

adventus, -ūs, [cf. adveniō], m., *coming, arrival.* (ADVENT.)

adversārius, -a, -um, [adversor], adj., *opposed, hostile.* As subst., **adversārius**, **adversārī**, m., *enemy*, ADVERSARY.

adversum, see adversus, prep.

adversus, -a, -um, sup. -issimus, [part. of advertō], adj., *turned towards, facing, opposite;* ADVERSE, *unsuccessful.* **adversō colle**, *up the hill.* **adversīs hostibus occurrunt**, *they meet the enemy face to face.*

adversus and **adversum**, adv. and prep.:
(1) As adv., *opposite, against; to meet.*
(2) As prep. with acc., *opposite to, against.*

advertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, [ad + vertō], *turn to, direct, turn.* **animum advertō**, see animadvertō.

advolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad + volō], *fly to; hasten to.*

aedēs, see aedis.

aedificium, aedifi'cī, [aedificō], n., *building, house.* (EDIFICE.)

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [aedis, cf. faciō], *build, construct.*

aedīlicius, -a, -um, [aedīlis], adj., *of an aedile.* As subst., *ex-aedile.*

aedīlis, -is, [aedis], m., *aedile, commissioner of public works;* see note to p. 64, l. 6.

aedis or **aedēs**, -is, f., *temple;* pl., *house, dwelling.*

Aeduus, -a, -um, [Kel., = 'Fiery'], adj., *Aeduan.* As subst., Aeduus, -ī, m., *an Aeduan;* pl., *Aeduans, the Aedui*, a powerful Gallic people, between the upper waters of the Sequana (*Seine*) and the Liger (*Loire*), in alliance with the Romans before Caesar's arrival in Gaul.

Aegātēs, -ium, f., pl., *the Aegates Islands;* see p. 99, l. 1, and note.

aeger, -gra, -grum, adj., *sick, feeble.*

aegerrimē, see aegrē.

aegrē, comp. **aegrius**, sup. **aegerrimē**, [aeger], adv., *with difficulty, hardly; reluctantly.* **aliquid aegrē ferre**, *to feel distress, to be vexed* at anything.

aegritūdō, -inis, (aeger), f., *illness; grief, trouble.*

aegrōtō, -āre, -āvī, —, [cf. aeger], *be ill, lie sick.*

Aegyptus, -ī, f., *Egypt*, a country in northeastern Africa, about the lower course of the Nile.

Aemilius, -a, the name of a celebrated Roman gens. In this book are mentioned:
(1) *L. Aemilius Paulus*, who fell in the battle of Cannae, 216 B.C.
(2) *L. Aemilius Paulus*, consul in 182 B.C.
(3) *Lucius Aemilius*, a decurion in charge of a squad of Gallic cavalry.

aemulātiō, -ōnis, [aemulor], f., *rivalry*, EMULATION.

aemulor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [aemulus], dep., *rival, vie with*, EMULATE.

Aenēās, -ae, m., *Aenēās*, son of Venus and Anchises.

aēneus, -a, -um, [aes], adj., *of copper, of bronze.*

aequālis, -e, [aequus], adj., EQUAL, *of the same age.*

aequāliter, [aequālis], adv., *evenly uniformly.*

aequē, comp. aequius, sup. aequissimē, [aequus], adv., EQUALLY.

aequinoctium, -noctī, [aequus + nox], n., *the* EQUINOX.

aequitās, -ātis [aequus], f., *evenness;* EQUITY, *fairness.* **animī aequitās**, *calmness*, EQUANIMITY.

aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [aequus], EQUALIZE, *make equal.*

aequus, -a, -um, comp. **aequior**, sup. aequissimus, adj., *level, even; just, equitable; like*, EQUAL; *favorable.* **aequō animō**, *with* EQUANIMITY, *calmly.*

āēr, āeris, m., *air.*

aerārium, aerārī, [aes], n., *treasury, state-treasury; public money.*

aerātus, -a, -um, [aerō from aes], adj., *armored* with bronze.

aes, aeris, n., *copper, bronze; money.* aes aliēnum, *debt.*

aestās, -ātis, f., *summer.*

aestimātiō, -ōnis, [aestimō], f., *valuation.* (ESTIMATION.)

aestimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, ESTIMATE, *value.*

aestuārium, aestuārī, [aestus], n., *tidal marsh, marsh.* (ESTUARY.)

aestus, -ūs, m., *heat, tide.*

aetās, -ātis, [for aevitās from aevum], f., *age, time of life; time.* ā prīmā aetāte, *from early youth.*

afferō, afferre, attulī, allātus, [ad + ferō], *bring to, bring; announce, report; cause; introduce; allege, assign.* vim afferre, manūs afferre, *offer violence, do violence.*

afficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [ad + faciō], *do something to, treat; visit with, afflict, weaken.* (AFFECT.)

affīgō, -ere, -fīxī, -fīxus, [ad + fīgō], *fasten to.* (AFFIX.)

affingō, -ere, -fīnxī, -fictus, [ad + fingō], *invent in addition.*

affīnis, -e, [ad + fīnis], adj., *bordering on, related to;* as subst., affīnis, -is, m. and f., *relation* by marriage.

affīnitās, -ātis, [affīnis, from ad + fīnis], f., *relationship* by marriage, *kinship.* (AFFINITY.)

affirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad + firmō], *strengthen; declare.* (AFFIRM.)

afflictō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [intens. of affligō], *dash against, wreck.*

affligō, -flīgere, -flīxī, -flictus, *dash at, overthrow;* AFFLICT, *damage, shatter; subdue, defeat.*

affuī, see adsum.

Āfrānius, Āfrānī, m., *Afranius*, gentile name of *L. Āfrānius*, one of Pompey's officers.

Āfrica, -ae, f., *Africa*, at first referring only to the dominions of Carthage; afterwards to the Roman province of Africa; then to the whole continent.

Āfricānus, -a, -um, adj., *African.* As subst., m., surname of *Pūblius Cornēlius Scīpiō Āfricānus*, the conqueror of Hannibal.

Āfricus, -a, -um (cf. Āfrica), adj., *African;* as subst., Āfricus, -ī (sc. ventus), m., *the southwest wind*, which blew towards Rome from the direction of Africa.

āfutūrus, fut. part. of absum.

Agēdincum, -ī, n., chief city of the Senones, modern *Sens.*

ager, agrī, m., *land* under cultivation, *field, territory;* pl., *lands, country, the country.* agrī cultūra, *farming*, AGRICULTURE.

agger, -geris, [ad + GES, in gerō], m., *rampart, mound, material for a mound* (earth, timber).

aggredior, -gredī, -gressus, [ad + gradior, *walk, go*], dep., *approach; attack, fall upon; attempt.* (AGGRESSIVE.)

aggregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (ad + gregō, from grex, *herd*), *collect; join.* (AGGREGATE.)

agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [intens. of agō], *set in violent motion; drive about, rouse, excite; disturb*, AGITATE; *consider.*

agmen, -minis, [agō], n., *troop, army on the march; line of march.* agmen claudere, *to bring up the rear.* novissimum agmen, *the rear.* prīmum agmen, *the van.* See INTROD., p. xl.

agnitus, see agnōscō.

agnōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nitus, [ad + gnōscō], *recognize*, *acknowledge*.

agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, *set in motion*, *drive*, *lead*, *direct*, *guide*; *incite*, *urge*; *pursue*; *drive off* as plunder, *rob*; *do*, ACT, *perform*; *carry on*, *accomplish*; *confer*, *plead with*; of time, *spend*; pass., *be in question*, *be at stake*. **āctum est dē**, *it was all over with*. **vītam agere**, *to pass one's life*. **cum aliquō agere**, *to try to persuade any one*. **conventūs agere**, *to hold court*. **grātiās agere**, *to thank*. **vīneās agere**, *to bring up the vineae*. **cunīculōs agere**, *to extend the mines*.

agricola, -ae, [ager, cf. colō], m., *husbandman*, *farmer*.

agrī cultūra, see ager.

Agrigentum, -ī, n., *Agrigentum*, a large, wealthy city on the south coast of Sicily.

aiō, pres. ind. aiō, aïs, aït, aiunt, impf. aiēbam, def., *say yes*, *assent*; *say*, *tell*.

āla, -ae, f., *wing*.

alacer, -cris, -cre, comp. alacrior, adj., *lively*; *eager*, *spirited*.

alacritās, -ātis, [alacer], f., *eagerness*, *ardor*, ALACRITY.

ālārius, -a, -um, [āla, *wing*], adj., *of the wing*. As subst., **ālāriī**, **-ōrum**, m. pl., *auxiliary troops*, placed on the wings of the army.

Alba, -ae, f., *Alba*. See albus.

Albānus, -a, -um, adj., *of Alba*, *pertaining to Alba*. As subst., **Albānī**, -ōrum, m. pl., *inhabitants of Alba*.

Albicī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Albici*, a people dwelling in the mountains above Massilia.

albus, -a, -um, adj., *white*. As subst., Alba, -ae, f., *Alba* or *Alba Longa*, 'the long white city,' an ancient town in Latium, fifteen miles southeast of Rome. (ALBUM.)

alcēs, -cis, f., ELK.

ālea, -ae, f., *game of dice*; *die*; by metonymy, *hazard*, *risk*.

Alesia, -ae, f., *Alesia*, a city in the territory of the Mandubii.

Alexander, -drī, m., *Alexander III*, surnamed the Great, king of Macedonia from 336 to 323 B.C.

Alexandrēa or **Alexandrīa**, -ae, f., *Alexandria*, a city in Egypt, at the mouth of the Nile, founded by Alexander the Great.

aliās, [acc. pl. of alius], adv., *at another time*; *at other times*; *otherwise*. **aliās . . . aliās**, *at one time . . . at another*, *now . . . now*. (ALIAS.)

aliēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [aliēnus], ALIENATE, *estrange*.

aliēnus, -a, -um, comp. **aliēnior**, sup. **aliēnissimus**, [alius], adj., *of another*, *another's*; *foreign*, *strange*; *unfavorable*, *improper*; *disloyal*, *hostile*. (ALIEN.)

aliō, [old dat. of alius], adv., *to another place*, *elsewhere*. **longē aliō spectāre**, *to have a very different purpose*.

aliquam, [acc. of aliquī, sc. partem], adv., *in some degree*. **aliquam diū**, *for some time*.

aliquamdiū, [aliquam + diū], adv., *for a while*.

aliquandō, [alius + quandō], adv., *at some time or other*, *once*; *at last*.

aliquantum, -ī, [aliquantus], n., *a little*, *something*.

aliquī, aliqua, aliquod, [ali- + quī], indef. pron. adj., *some, any, some other.*

aliquis, aliqua, aliquid, nom. and acc. pl. n. aliqua, [ali- + quis], indef. pron., *some one, any one, anybody;* pl., *some, any.* Neut., aliquid, *something, anything.* aliquid sublevāre, *to help somewhat.*

aliquot, [ali-, quot], indef. num. adj., indecl., *some, several.*

aliquotiēns, [aliquot], adv., *several times.*

aliter [ali-], adv., *otherwise, differently.* aliter ac, *otherwise than.*

alius, -a, -ud, gen. alīus, dat. aliī, adj., *another, other, different, else; the rest of.* alius . . . alius, *one . . . another, the one . . . the other;* pl., aliī . . . aliī, *some . . . other;* often as subst., alius, *another*, aliī, *others.* aliā rē, *with anything else.* alius aliā causā illātā, *one alleging one reason, another, another.* longē alius atque, *very different from.*

allātus, see afferō.

Allia, -ae, f., *the Allia*, a small river in the country of the Sabines, about twelve miles northward from Rome.

alligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad + ligō], *bind to, bind fast.*

Allobrogēs, -um, (acc. Allobrogas, p. 107, l. 3), m. pl., a Gallic people in the northeastern part of 'the Province,' between the Rhone and the Alps. Sing. Allobrox, -ogis, m., *an Allobrogian, one of the Allobroges.*

allocūtus, see alloquor.

alloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum, [ad + loquor], dep., *speak to, address.*

alō, alere, aluī, altus or alitus, *nourish, increase, keep, rear, raise.*

Alpēs, -ium, f. pl., the *Alps*, general term for the mountains separating Cisalpine Gaul from Transalpine Gaul and Germany.

Alpicus, -a, -um, a rare form for Alpīnus, [Alpēs], adj., *Alpine.* As subst., Alpicī, -ōrum, m. pl., *dwellers among the Alps.*

altē, comp. altius, sup. altissimē, [altus], adv., *high, on high, deeply, far; highly.*

alter, -era, -erum, gen. alterīus or alterius, adj., often with the force of a subst., *one of two, the other, another; second.* alter . . . alter, *the one . . . the other.* alterī . . . alterī, *the one party . . . the other.*

altitūdō, -inis, [altus], f., *height,* ALTITUDE; *depth; thickness.*

altus, -a, -um, comp. altior, sup. altissimus, [part. of alō], adj., *nourished, great; high, tall, deep.* As subst., altum, -ī, n., (sc. *mare*), *the deep, the sea;* pl. alta, -ōrum, *greatness;* sup. altissimum, -ī, n., *top.*

alūta, -ae, f., *soft leather.*

amāns, -antis, comp. amantior, sup. amantissimus, [part. of amō], adj., *loving, affectionate;* with gen., *fond of.*

Amantinī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Amantini, inhabitants of Amantia*, a town near Dyrrachium.

Ambarrī, -ōrum, [Kel. ambi, = Lat. ambi-, + Arar], m. pl., a people on both sides of the Arar (*Saône*) near its junction with the Rhone.

Ambiānī, **-ōrum**, [Kel.], m. pl., a small state in Belgic Gaul.

Ambibariī, **-ōrum**, m. pl., a people of northwestern Gaul.

Ambiorīx, **-īgis**, m., *Ambiorix*, a chief of the Eburones.

ambitiō, **-ōnis**, [ambiō], f., *a going around; desire for favor*, AMBITION.

Ambivaritī, **-ōrum**, m. pl., *the Ambivariti*, a Belgian tribe.

ambō, **ambae**, **ambō**, acc. m. **ambō** or **ambōs**, num. adj., *both*.

ambulō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *walk*. (AMBLE, PERAMBULATE.)

āmentia, **-ae**, [āmēns, from **ā** + **mēns**], f., *madness, folly*.

āmentum, **-ī**, n., *thong, strap* for revolving javelins and so hurling them with greater force.

amīcē, [amīcus], adv., *in a friendly manner*.

amīcitia, **-ae**, [amīcus], f., *friendship;* of a state, *friendship, alliance*.

amīcus, **-a**, **-um**, comp. **-ior**, sup. **-issimus**, [amō], adj., *loving, friendly, well-disposed*. (AMICABLE.)

amīcus, **-ī**, [amō], m., *friend, ally*.

āmittō, **-mittere**, **-mīsī**, **-missus**, [**ā** + **mittō**], *send away; let go, lose*.

amnis, **-is**, m., *river, stream*.

amō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *love, be fond of*. (AMIABLE.)

amor, **-ōris**, [amō], m., *love, affection; passion*.

amphora, **-ae**, [*ἀμφορεύς*], f., AMPHORA, a long, pointed jar, with two handles at the top; *wine-jar*.

amplificō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, [amplus + faciō], *make large, increase*.

ampliō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, [amplus], *enlarge*. (AMPLIFY.)

amplitūdō, **-inis** (**amplus**), f., *greatness, extent; importance*.

amplius, [comp. of **amplus** and **amplē**], indecl. subst., adj., and adv., *more, further; besides, more than*.

amplus, **-a**, **-um**, comp. **amplior**, sup. **amplissimus**, adj., *great*, AMPLE; *distinguished*.

Amūlius, **Amūlī**, m., *Amulius*, son of Proca, king of Alba Longa. He usurped the throne which rightfully belonged to his elder brother Numitor, but was deposed and slain by Romulus and Remus.

an, conj., introducing the second part of a double question, *or, or rather, or indeed*. The first member ordinarily has **utrum**, **num**, or **-ne**, but is sometimes omitted. In direct questions **an** is often not translated; in indirect questions, *whether*.

Anartēs, **-ium**, m. pl., *the Anartes*, a people of Dacia.

Ancalitēs, **-um**, m. pl., *the Ancalites*, a tribe of Britain.

anceps, **-cipitis**, [an = ambi-, cf. caput], adj., *two-headed; double; uncertain, indecisive; dangerous*. **anceps proelium**, *battle on two fronts*, i.e. *both in front and in the rear*.

Anchīsēs, **-ae**, m., *Anchises*, father of Aeneas.

ancora, **-ae**, [*ἄγκυρα*], f., ANCHOR. **in ancorīs**, *at anchor*.

Ancus, **-ī**, m., *Ancus*, forename of *Ancus Mārcius*, the fourth king of Rome.

Andecumborius, Andecumbo'rī, m., a prominent man among the Remi.

Andēs, -ium, or **Andī**, -ōrum, m. pl., a Gallic people north of the Liger (*Loire*). The name survives in *Anjou*.

Ān̄driscus, -ī, m., *Andriscus*, who claimed to be Philip, son of King Perseus of Macedonia.

angor, -ōris, [cf. angō], m., *strangling; anguish, grief.*

angulus, -ī, m., ANGLE, *corner.*

angustē, (angustus), adv., *closely, in close quarters.*

angustiae, -ārum, [angustus], f. pl., *narrow place, defile; straits, difficulties; scarcity.*

angustus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [cf. angō, *squeeze*], adj., *contracted, narrow, close.* Neut. as subst., **rēs erat in angustō**, *matters had reached a crisis.* **angustum mare**, *strait.*

anima, -ae, f., *air; breath; life, soul.* (ANIMATE.)

animadvertō, or **animum advertō**, -tere, -tī, -sus, [animus + advertō], *turn the mind to, attend to; notice, observe; censure, punish.* **in eum animadvertere**, *to punish him*, '*attend to him.*'

animal, -ālis, (anima), n., *living being*, ANIMAL.

animus, -ī, m., *soul, life; mind, reason; courage, spirit; purpose; feeling.* **esse alicui in animō**, *to intend.* **animum advertere**, see **animadvertō**.

Aniō, -ēnis, m., *the Anio*, a river in Latium, a tributary of the Tiber.

annālis, -is, abl. annālī, [annus], m., *year-book, chronicle;* pl., ANNALS.

annō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, (ad + nō), *swim to.*

annōna, -ae, [annus], f., *year's produce, harvest; grain.*

annōtinus, -a, -um, (annus), adj., *of the preceding year.*

annuō, -ere, -uī, —, *nod to, give assent, promise.*

annus, -ī, m., *year.*

annuus, -a, -um, [annus], adj., *for a year.* (ANNUAL.)

ānser, -eris, m., *goose.*

ante, adv. and prep., *before.*

(1) As adv. of space, *before, in front;* of time, *before, previously, ago.* **ante quam** or **antequam**, *sooner than, before;* often separated by intervening words. **paulō ante**, *a little while before.*

(2) As prep. with acc., of space and time, *before;* in comparisons, *before, superior to, in comparison with.* **ante diem**, see 183.

anteā, [ante + eā], adv., *before, formerly.*

antecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, —, [ante + cēdō], *go before, precede; excel.*

antecursor, -ōris, (antecurrō, *run before*), m., *one who runs before, scout;* pl., *vanguard.*

anteeō, -īre, -īvī or -iī, —, [ante + eō], *go before, precede; surpass.*

anteferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, [ante + ferō], *bear before; place before, prefer.*

antemna, -ae, f., *yard* of a ship.

antepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, antepositus, [ante + pōnō], *set before; prefer.*

ante quam, see ante.

antesignānus, -ī, (ante+signum), m., *skirmisher.*

antevertō, -ere, -tī, —, [ante + vertō], *place before, prefer.*

Antiochus, -ī, [Ἀντίοχος], m.,

Antiochus, the name of several kings of Syria. In this book refers to

(1) Antiochus III., surnamed the Great; he was induced by Hannibal to declare war against the Romans, but was defeated near Mt. Sipylus, in Magnesia, in 190 B.C.

(2) A philosopher of Ascalon, the teacher of Cicero during his studies at Athens in 79 B.C.

antīquitās, -ātis, [antīquus], f., *age*, ANTIQUITY; *ancient times*, *history* of ancient times.

antīquitus, [antīquus], adv., *in former times*, *anciently*.

antīquus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [ante], adj., *former*, *old-time*, *early*.

Antistius, Antistī, m., *Antistius*, gentile name of *C. Antistius Rēgīnus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Antōnius, -a, the name of a Roman gens. In this book are mentioned:

(1) *Mārcus Antōnius*, Mark Antony, the triumvir.

(2) *C. Antōnius Hybrida*, the colleague of Cicero in his consulship.

ānulus, -ī, m., *ring*, *finger-ring*.

aperiō, -īre, -uī, -tus, *uncover; open*, *show; disclose*, *reveal*.

apertus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part. of aperiō], adj., *open*, *uncovered; exposed*, *unprotected; clear*, *manifest*. latus apertum, *open flank*.

Apollō, -inis, m., a god of the Greeks and Romans, identified by Caesar with a Gallic deity.

Apollōnia, -ae, f., *Apollonia*, a city in southwestern Illyria. See map, frontispiece.

Apolloniātēs, -ium, m. pl., *inhabitants of Apollonia*.

Apollōnius, -ōnī, m., *Apollonius*, named *Molō*; see note to p. 61, l. 1.

apparātus, -ūs, [apparō], m., *preparation; supplies*, *engines; magnificence*. (APPARATUS.)

appāreō, -pārēre, -pāruī, —, fut. part. appāritūrus, [ad + pāreō], APPEAR; *be plain*, *be manifest; serve*, *attend*. (APPARENT.)

apparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad + parō], *prepare*, *make ready*.

appellātiō, -ōnis, [appellō, -āre], f., *designation*, *name*. (APPELLATION.)

appellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, [ad + pellō], *bring to*, *land*.

appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *address*, *accost*, *appeal to; name; entitle*.

Appennīnus, -ī, m., *the Apennines*; see note to p. 76, l. 1.

appetō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, [ad + petō], *desire*, *seek; draw near*. (APPETITE.)

Appius, Appī, m., *Appius*, a Roman forename, especially common in the Claudian gens.

applicō, -āre, -āvī or -uī, -ātus, (ad + plicō, *fold*), APPLY *to*, *fasten to*; sē applicāre, *lean against*. (APPLICATION.)

appōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, [ad + pōnō], *place near*, *set before*.

apprehendō, -ere, -dī, -sus, [ad + prehendō], *seize*, *grasp*. (APPREHEND.)

appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad + propinquō], *approach*, *come near*.

appulsus, see appellō.

Aprīl. or **Apr.** = Aprīlis.

Aprīlis, -e, [aperiō], adj., *of* APRIL.

Apsus, -ī, m., *the Apsus*, a river of Illyricum.

aptus, -a, -um, comp. aptior (root ap-, *fasten*), adj., *fitted, fit, suitable*, APT.

apud, prep. with acc. only, *at, with, near, close to, by; among, in the presence of; at the house of; in the works of.*

Āpūlia, -ae, f., *Apulia*, a district in Southeastern Italy.

aqua, -ae, f., *water, spring.*

aquila, -ae, f., *eagle;* by metonymy, *eagle*, made of metal and carried on a pole as the standard of a Roman legion. See INTROD., p. XXXIV. (AQUILINE.)

Aquileia, -ae, f., a city at the head of the Adriatic Sea. See note to p. 176, l. 1.

aquilifer, -erī, [aquila, cf. ferō], m., *bearer of the eagle, standard-bearer.* Cf. aquila.

aquilō, -ōnis, also aquilō ventus, m., *the north wind.*

Aquītānia, -ae, f., one of the three main divisions of Gaul.

Aquītānus, -a, -um, adj., *of Aquitania.* As subst., **Aquītānus**, -ī, m., *Aquitanian;* pl., *Aquitanians, Aquītānī*, inhabitants of Aquitania.

aquor, -ārī, —, (aqua), *get water.*

āra, -ae, f., *altar.*

Arar, -aris, acc. -im, [Kel., = 'Sluggish'], m., *the Arar*, now *the Saône.* See note to p. 178, l. 1, and map opposite p. 155.

arbitrium, arbi'trī, [arbiter], n., *judgment, decision; authority.* (ARBITER.)

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, [arbiter], dep., *testify; think, consider.* (ARBITRATE.)

arbor, -oris, f., *tree.* (ARBOR, ARBOREAL.)

arceō, -ēre, -uī, —, *shut up, enclose; keep off; prevent.*

arcessō, -sere, -sīvī, -sītus, *cause to come, fetch; summon, invite.*

Ardea, -ae, f., *Ardea*, a town in Latium, about twenty miles south of Rome. See map, opp. p. 1.

ārdeō, -ēre, ārsī, ārsus, *be on fire, burn; be inflamed, desire eagerly.* (ARDENT.)

arduus, -a, -um, adj., *steep, high; difficult.* (ARDUOUS.)

Arelāte, indecl. n. (rarely f.), *Arelate*, a town of southern Gaul, on the Rhone; modern Arles.

Aremoricī, -ōrum, m. pl., a people of Gaul, dwelling in the Roman Province.

Aremoricus, -a, -um, [Kel., = 'by the sea'], adj., a name applied to the states on the northwestern coast of Gaul.

argentum, -ī, n., *silver; money.*

argilla, -ae, f., *clay.*

Argos, only nom. and acc. n., also Argī, -ōrum, m. pl. [Ἄργος], *Argos*, a city in Argolis, in the northeastern part of the Peloponnesus. See map opp. p. 97.

āridus, -a, -um, adj., *dry*, ARID; as subst., **āridum**, -ī, n., *dry land, shore.*

ariēs, -ietis, m., *ram; battering-ram.*

Ariovistus, -ī, [Ger. A a r, for Adler, + v i r s t, for Horst, 'Eagle-eyrie' ?], m., a German king.

arma, -ōrum, n. pl., *implements;* ARMS, *armor, weapons.* **ad arma concurrere**, *to rush to arms.*

armāmenta, -ōrum, (armō), n. pl.,

implements, equipment, rigging. (ARMAMENT.)

armātūra, -ae, [armō], f., *armor, equipment.* levis armātūrae peditēs, *light infantry.* levis armātūrae Numidae, *light-armed Numidians.*

armātus, -a, -um, sup. armātissimus, [part. of armō], adj., ARMED, *equipped.* As subst., armātī, -ōrum, m. pl., *armed men, soldiers.*

Armenia, -ae, f., *Armenia.*

armilla, -ae, [armus, *shoulder, arm*], f., *bracelet, armlet.*

armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [arma], ARM, *equip.*

arō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *plough.* (ARABLE.)

Arpīnum, -ī, n., *Arpinum;* see note to p. 82, l. 3.

arripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus, [ad + rapiō], *seize, snatch; take up, learn with avidity.*

arroganter, comp. -ius, [arrogāns], adv., ARROGANTLY, *haughtily.*

arrogantia, -ae, [arrogāns], f., ARROGANCE, *insolence.*

Arrūns, -untis, m., *Arruns*, a son of Tarquinius Superbus.

ars, artis, f., ART, *skill; knowledge; device, stratagem; an art, science.*

ārsit, see ārdeō.

articulus, -ī, m., *joint.* (ARTICLE, ARTICULATE.)

artificium, artifi'cī, (ars, cf. faciō), n., *art, trade; trick.* (ARTIFICE.)

Arvernus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Arverni, Arvernian.* As subst., Arvernī, -ōrum, m. pl., *Arvernians, the Arverni*, a powerful people on the upper Elaver (*Allier*), whose chief city, Gergovia, was unsuccessfully besieged by Caesar.

arx, arcis, f., *citadel, stronghold.*

Ascanius, Asca'nī, m., *Ascanius*, son of Aeneas.

ascendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus, [ad + scandō, *climb*], ASCEND; *mount, scale; embark.*

ascēnsus, -ūs, [ascendō], m., ASCENT; *way up, approach.*

ascīscō, ascīscere, ascīvī, ascītus, [ad + scīscō, *approve*], *admit* to association with oneself, *receive, accept.*

Asia, -ae, f., *Asia*, referring to Asia as distinguished from Europe, to Asia Minor, or to the Roman province of Asia.

Asiāticus, -a, -um, adj., *of Asia*, ASIATIC. As subst., Asiāticus, -ī, m., surname of *L. Scīpiō Asiāticus*, the conqueror of Antiochus.

Asina, -ae, m., *Asina*, surname of *Cn. Cornēlius Asina.*

asinus, -ī, m., *an ass, donkey.* (ASININE.)

aspectus, -ūs, m., *appearance*, ASPECT; *sight.*

asper, -era, -erum, comp. asperior, sup. asperrimus, adj., *adverse, harsh, cruel.* (ASPIRATE.)

asperitās, -ātis, [asper], f., *roughness*, ASPERITY, *cruelty; acidity.*

āspernor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [ā + spernor], dep., *disdain, despise.*

aspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, aspectus, [ad + speciō], *look upon; regard, inspect.*

assequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, [ad + sequor], dep., *follow up, overtake; attain.*

assīdō, -ere, -sēdī, —, *sit down.*

assiduus, -a, -um, [ad, cf. sedeō], adj., *continually present; continual, constant.* (ASSIDUITY.)

assistō, -ere, astitī, —, [ad + sistō], *stand near, appear before.*

assuēfaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, [assuētus + faciō], *accustom, train.*

assuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētus, *become accustomed to.*

astō, -āre, -stitī, —, [ad + stō], *stand by.*

astū, [ἄστυ], n., indecl., *city*, especially *Athens.*

asȳlum, -ī, n., *place of refuge*, ASYLUM.

at, conj., *but, but yet; however, nevertheless.*

Athēnae, -ārum, f. pl., *Athens*, chief city of Greece, situated in Attica, in the southeastern part of central Greece.

Athēniēnsis, -e, adj., *of Athens, Athenian.* · As subst., m., *an Athenian, inhabitant of Athens.*

Atīlius, Atīlī, m., gentile name of *M. Atīlius Rēgulus.*

atque, ac, [ad + -que], conj.:
(1) Copulative, *and, and also, and even, and in particular.*
(2) Comparative, after words of likeness or unlikeness, *as, than.* idem atque, par atque, *the same as.* simul atque, *as soon as.*

Atrebās, -ātis, [Kel., = 'Possessor'], m., *an Atrebatian;* pl., *Atrebatians, the Atrebates*, a Belgic people west of the upper part of the Scaldis (*Scheldt*).

Ātrius, Ātrī, m., *Atrius*, family name of *Q. Atrius.*

atrōciter, [atrōx], adv., *fiercely, cruelly.*

atrōx, -ōcis, comp. atrōcior, sup. atrōcissimus, adj., *fierce, cruel, harsh.* (ATROCITY.)

attenuō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad, cf. tenuis], *thin out, diminish.* (ATTENUATE.)

attexō, -texere, -texuī, -textus, [ad + texō], *weave on, add, join* to.

Atticus, -ī, m., *Atticus*, surname of *T. Pompōnius Atticus*, a friend of Cicero.

attingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctus, [ad + tangō], *touch upon, touch; reach;* of territorial divisions, *border on, adjoin.*

Attius, Attī, m., *Attius*, gentile name of *P. Attius Vārus*, one of Pompey's officers.

attribuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, [ad + tribuō], *assign, assign to.* (ATTRIBUTE.)

attulī, see afferō.

auctor, -ōris, [augeō], m., *producer; adviser; authority, narrator; originator, cause.* (AUTHOR.)

auctōritās, -ātis, [auctor], f., AUTHORITY, *power; dignity; weight, prestige, importance.*

auctus, -a, -um, comp. auctior, [part. of augeō], adj., *increased, rich.*

audācia, -ae, [audāx], f., *daring, boldness;* AUDACITY, *rashness; insolence.*

audācter, comp. audācius, sup. audācissimē, [audāx], adv., *boldly, courageously.*

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, semidep., *dare, risk; attempt.*

audiō, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -ītus, *hear, listen to; assent to; be called, be regarded; learn* by hearing, *hear of.* dictō audiēns esse, *to obey.* (AUDIBLE, AUDITOR, AUDIENCE.)

auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus, [ab + ferō], *carry away, remove; steal.*

aufugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —, [ab + fugiō], *flee from, escape.*

augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus, *in-*

crease, enlarge; add to. (AUGMENT.)

augurium, augu'rī, [augur], n., *divination*, AUGURY; *omen.*

Aulercus, -ī, m., *an Aulercan, one of the Aulerci;* pl., *the Aulerci*, a people in Central Gaul, having four branches, the *Aulercī Brannovīcēs*, *Aulercī Cēnomanī*, *Aulercī Diablintēs*, and the *Aulercī Eburovīcēs.*

Aurēlius, -a, the name of a Roman gens. In this book refers to *C. Aurēlius Cotta*, consul B.C. 200.

aureus, -a, -um, [aurum], adj., *of gold, golden.*

aurīga, -ae, m., *charioteer, driver.*

auris, -is, [cf. audiō], f., *ear.* (AURIST.)

aurum, -ī, n., *gold.* (AURIFEROUS.)

Aurunculeius, -ī, m., *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta*, a lieutenant of Caesar, killed by the Eburones.

ausus, see audeō.

aut, conj., *or;* corrective or emphatic, *or at least, or rather, or else.* aut . . . aut, *either . . . or.* aut . . . aut . . . aut, *either . . . or . . . or.*

autem, conj., *but, however, on the contrary; moreover.*

autumnus, -ī, [augeō], m., AUTUMN.

auxilior, -ārī, -ātus sum, [auxilium], *help, aid.*

auxilium, auxi'lī, [cf. augeō], n., *help, aid; relief.* Pl., auxilia, AUXILIARIES.

avāritia, -ae, [avārus, *greedy*], f., *greed*, AVARICE, *covetousness.*

āvehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectus, *carry off.*

Aventīnus, -ī, m., [sc. mōns], *the Aventine*, the most southern of the seven hills of Rome.

Aventīnus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Aventine, on the Aventine.*

āversus, -a, -um, sup. āversissimus, [part. of āvertō], adj., *turned away; behind, in the rear.* āversum hostem, *a retreating enemy.* āversī ab hoste circumvenīrī, *to be surrounded in the rear by the enemy*, i.e. with their backs to the enemy. (AVERSE.)

āvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, [ā + vertō], *turn aside*, AVERT; *alienate, estrange.* sē āvertere, *to turn aside.*

avidus, -a, -um, adj., *eager, greedy.*

avis, -is, f., *bird; sign, omen.* (AVIARY, AVIATION.)

āvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ā + vocō], *call off, call away.* (AVOCATION.)

āvolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ā + volō], *fly away; flee, withdraw; divert, turn.*

avunculus, -ī, [dim. of avus], m., *uncle.*

avus, -ī, m., *grandfather.*

Axona, ae, m., a river in the southern part of Belgic Gaul, flowing into the Isara (*Oise*); now the *Aisne.*

B

Bācēnis, -is, f., a forest in Germany.

Baculus, -ī, m., *Publius Sextius Baculus*, one of the bravest of Caesar's centurions.

Baebius, -a, the name of a Roman gens. In this book are mentioned:

(1) *Cn. Baebius Tamphilus*, consul in B.C. 182.

(2) *M. Baebius Tamphilus*, consul in B.C. 181.

Bagradās, -ae, m., the *Bagradas*, the principal river of the Roman Province of Africa.

Baleārēs, -ium, [= *βαλιαρεῖς, slingers*], m. pl., natives of the Balearic Islands (Majorca, Minorca, Yviza, and two others), off the east coast of Spain; famous as slingers. See map, opp. p. **1**.

balteus, -ī, m., *belt*.

barba, -ae, f., *beard*. (BARBER.)

barbarus, -a, -um, adj., *of strange speech, foreign;* BARBAROUS, *uncivilized*. As subst., barbarī, -ōrum, m. pl., *foreigners; natives*, BARBARIANS.

Barca, -ae, [Βάρκᾶς], m., *Barca*, surname of Hamilcar, the father of Hannibal.

Basilus, -ī, m., *Basilus*, surname of *L. Minucius Basilus*, one of Caesar's officers.

Belgae, -ārum, m. pl., *the Belgians, Belgae*, inhabitants of one of the three main divisions of Gaul; divided into many states or tribes. See map opp. p. 155.

Belgium, Belgī, n., *Belgium*, the country of the Belgae.

bellicōsus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [bellicus], adj., *warlike, fierce*. (BELLICOSE.)

bellicus, -a, -um, [bellum], adj., *of war, military*.

bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [bellum], *wage war, fight*.

Bellovacī, -ōrum, m. pl., a powerful Belgic people, between the Sequana (*Seine*), Samara (*Somme*), and the Isara (*Oise*) Rivers.

bellum, -ī, (for duellum, from duo), n., *war*. Loc. bellī, *in war*. bellum gerere, *to wage war*. bellum īnferre, *to make war*. bellum parāre, *to prepare for war*.

bene, comp. melius, sup. optimē, [bonus], adv., *well, ably, successfully; very*.

beneficiārī, -ōrum, (beneficium), m. pl., *privileged soldiers, bodyguard*.

beneficium, benefi'cī, [bene, faciō], n., *kindness, service*, BENEFIT.

benignē, [benignus], adv., *kindly, courteously*. (BENIGNANTLY.)

bēstia, -ae, f., BEAST, *animal*.

Bēstia, -ae, m., *Bestia*, surname of *L. Calpurnius Bēstia*, consul 111 B.C.

bibliothēca, -ae, f., *library*.

Bibracte, -īs, [Kel., from * bebros, 'beaver'], n., capital of the Aedui, situated on a mountain now called Mont Beuvray (2690 ft.). See map opp. p. 155.

Bibrax, -actis, [Kel., from * bebros, 'beaver'], f., a town of the Remi, north of the Axona (*Aisne*). See map opp. p. 155.

Bibrocī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Bibroci*, a tribe of the Britons.

Bibulus, -ī, m., *Bibulus*, the name of a family of the Calpurnian gens. In this book, *L. Calpurnius Bibulus*, the colleague of Julius Caesar in his consulship, as well as in his aedileship and praetorship. Being in sympathy with the aristocratic party, he opposed Caesar to the best of his ability.

bīduum, -ī, [bis + diēs], n., *space of two days, two days*.

biennium, -ennī, [bis + annus], n., *period of two years*. (BIENNIAL.)

bīnī, -ae, -a, [cf. bis], distr. num., *two by two, two at a time*.

bipertītō, [bipartītus, bis + partītus], adv., *in two divisions*.

bis, num. adv., *twice, on two occasions*.

Bīthȳnia, -ae, f., *Bithynia*, a province in the northern part of Asia Minor.

Bīthȳnus, -a, -um, adj., *of Bithynia, Bithynian.* As subst., Bīthȳnus, -ī, m., *Bithynian, inhabitant of Bithynia.*

Biturīgēs, -um, [Kel., = 'World-kings,' or 'Ever kings'], m. pl., a people in central Gaul, across the Liger (*Loire*) from the Aedui. See map opp. p. 155.

Blithō, -ōnis, m., *Blitho*, surname of *Sulpicius Blithō*, a Roman historian.

Boduognātus, -ī, [Kel., = 'Inured to battle'], m., a leader of the Nervii.

Boiī, -ōrum, m. pl., a Keltic people widely diffused over central Europe, whose name survives in *Bohemia;* 32,000 joined the Helvetii in their migration, the remnant surviving being settled with the Aedui. See map opp. p. 155.

bonitās, -ātis, [bonus], f., *goodness, friendliness, kindness; virtue;* of land, *fertility.*

bonus, -a, -um, comp. **melior**, sup. **optimus**, adj., *good, advantageous; well-disposed, friendly.* **bonō animō esse**, *to be favorably disposed.* As subst., bonum, -ī, n., *good thing, the good; profit, advantage;* pl., bona, -ōrum, *goods, possessions.* bonī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the good, good men*, a term applied to themselves by the *optimātēs*, or aristocracy.

boreās, -ae, m., also **boreās ventus**, *the north wind.* (BOREAS.)

bōs, bovis, gen. pl., **boum**, dat. bōbus or **būbus**, m. and f., *ox, bull, cow.* (BOVINE.)

bracchium, -ī, n., *forearm, arm.*

Brannovīcēs, -um, m. pl., *the Brannovices*, a tribe of the Aulerci.

Brātuspantium, -ī, [Kel., = 'Valley of Judgment'], n., a stronghold of the Bellovaci. See map opp. p. 155.

brevī, [brevis], adv., *in a little while, in a short time, soon.*

brevis, -e, comp. brevior, sup. brevissimus, adj., *short,* BRIEF; *short-lived.*

brevitās, -ātis, [brevis], f., *shortness; smallness, small stature;* BREVITY.

Britannī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the inhabitants of Britain, British.*

Britannia, -ae, f., *Britain.* See map, opp. p. 1.

brūma, -ae (for brev-ma, sup. form from **brevis**, sc. diēs), f., *shortest day* of the year; *winter solstice.*

Brundisium, n., Brundi'sī, a seaport in Calabria in southeastern Italy, the usual point of departure for Greece; modern *Brindisi.* See map opp. p. 1.

Bruttiī, -ōrum, m., *Bruttii*, a people of southern Italy. See map inside front cover.

Brūtus, -ī, m., *Brutus*, a surname of the Junian gens. In this book are mentioned:

(1) *L. Iūnius Brūtus*, the liberator and first consul of Rome.

(2) *M. Iūnius Brūtus*, the leader, with Cassius, of the assassins of Julius Caesar.

(3) *Decimus Iūnius Brūtus Albīnus*, the opponent of Antony in the war at Mutina.

Buthrōtum, -ī, n., *Buthrotum*, a town of Epirus, opposite Corcyra.

Byllidēnsēs, -ium, m. pl., *inhabitants of Byllis*, a town near Dyrrachium.

C

C, in expressions of number, = 100.

C, originally = G; with proper names = Gaius, a Roman forename.

Cabillōnum, -ī, n., *Cabillonum*, a city of the Aeduans.

Cabūrus, -ī, m. See Valerius.

cacūmen, -inis, n., *top*.

cadāver, -eris, [cf. cadō], n., *corpse, dead body*. (CADAVER.)

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus, *fall; be slain, die; take place, happen*.

cādūceus, -ī, [κηρύκειον], m., *herald's staff*.

Cadūrcī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Cadurci*, a people of Aquitania.

Caecilius, Caecilia, name of a Roman gens. In this book refers to:
(1) *Q. Caecilius Metellus Macedonicus*, who defeated Andriscus in 148 B.C.
(2) *Q. Caecilius Metellus Numidicus*, consul in 109 B.C.

caedēs, -is, [cf. caedō], f., *killing, murder, massacre*.

caedō, caedere, cecīdī, caesus, *cut, cut down; cut to pieces, slay; vanquish, destroy*.

caelestis, -e, [caelum], adj., *heavenly*. As subst., caelestēs, -ium, m. pl., *gods*. (CELESTIAL.)

Caelius, Caelī, m., Caelius, gentile name of *M. Caelius Rūfus*.

caelum, -ī, n., *the sky, heaven, heavens*.

Caemanī, -ōrum, m. pl., a small state in Belgic Gaul.

Caepiō, -ōnis, m., *Caepio*, family name of *Cn. Servīlius Caepiō*, consul 140 B.C.

caerimōnia, -ae, f., *religious usage, sacred rite; reverence*, CEREMONY.

Caerōsī, -ōrum, m. pl., a small state in Belgic Gaul.

caeruleus, -a, -um, (caelum), adj., *sky-blue, dark blue*. (CERULEAN.)

Caesar, -aris, m., *Caesar*, the name of a famous family of the Julian gens. In this book are mentioned:
(1) *C. Iūlius Caesar*, the dictator. See pp. xxii ff.
(2) *C. Iūlius Caesar Octāviānus*, afterward *Augustus*.
(3) *L. Iūlius Caesar*, a kinsman of Julius Caesar.

caespes, -itis, (caedō), m., *sod, turf*.

calamitās, -ātis, f., *loss, damage; misfortune, disaster, defeat*. (CALAMITY.)

calceus, -ī, m., *shoe*.

Calēnus, -ī, m., *Calenus*, surname of *Q. Fufius Calēnus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Caletī, -ōrum, also **Caletēs**, -um, [Kel., from caleto-, 'hard'], m. pl., a people living on the seacoast at the mouth of the Sequana (*Seine*).

Calidius, Cali'dī, m., *M. Calidius*, a supporter of Caesar.

callidē, comp. callidius, sup. callidissimē, [callidus], adv., *skillfully, cunningly*.

callidus, -a, -um, comp. callidior, sup. callidissimus, [calleō], adj., *shrewd, cunning; calculating*.

cālō, -ōnis, m., *soldier's servant, camp servant*.

Calpurnius, -a, the name of a Roman gens.
(1) *L. Calpurnius Bēstia*, consul 111 B.C.
(2) *Calpurnia*, wife of Julius Caesar.

(3) *L. Calpurnius Bibulus.* See *Bibulus.*

calvitium, calvi'tī, [calvus], n., *baldness.*

calvus, -a, -um, adj., *bald.* As subst., **Calvus**, -ī, m., *C. Licinius Macer Calvus;* see note to p. 80, l. 10.

Camillus, -ī, m., *Camillus.* See **Fūrius.**

Campānia, -ae, f., *Campania*, a district in central Italy, southeast of Latium, noted for its beauty and fertility. See map opp. p. 1.

Campānus, -a, -um, adj., *of Campania, Campanian.* As subst., **Campānus**, -ī, m., *a Campanian.*

campester, -tris, -tre, (campus), adj., *of a plain, level.*

campus, -ī, m., *plain, level field;* often = **Campus Mārtius**, the *Campus Martius*, a grassy plain in Rome lying along the Tiber, the place where reviews and the elections were held. (CAMPUS.)

Canīnius, **Canīnī**, m., gentile name of *C. Canīnius Rebilus*, who held the consulship for a few hours in 45 B.C. See p. 96.

canis, -is, m. and f., *dog.* (CANINE.)

Cannae, -ārum, f. pl., *Cannae*, a town in Apulia, in southeastern Italy, the scene of the defeat of the Romans by Hannibal in 216 B.C. See map opp. p. 1.

Cannēnsis, -e, adj., *of Cannae, at Cannae.*

Cantium, **Cantī**, n., *Cantium, Kent*, a district of Britain.

cantō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of **canō**], *sing, play, recite.* (INCANTATION.)

cantus, -ūs, [canō], m., *song, chant; cry, note.*

capessō, -ere, -īvī, -itūrus, [desid. of **capiō**], *eagerly seize; betake oneself, resort to;* **rem pūblicam capessere**, *to undertake public business, to serve one's country.*

capillus, -ī, [cf. **caput**], m., *hair.* (CAPILLARY.)

capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, *take hold of, seize;* CAPTURE; *take possession of; captivate, charm; cheat, betray; select; affect, influence; receive, obtain.* **initium capere**, *to begin.* **cōnsilium capere**, *to form a plan.* **dolōrem capere**, *to be grieved.*

Capitōlium, **Capitōlī**, [caput], n., *the* CAPITOL, a temple on the southern apex of the Capitoline Hill, dedicated to Jupiter, Juno, and Minerva; often *the Capitoline Hill*, the hill on which the Capitol stood. See map opp. p. 57.

capitulātim, [caput], adv., *by heads, summarily.* (RECAPITULATE.)

capra, -ae, f., *she-goat.* **Caprae palūs**, *the Goat's Pool*, a marsh in the Campus Martius.

captīvus, -a, -um, [capiō], adj., CAPTIVE. As subst., m. and f., *prisoner*, CAPTIVE.

captō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of **capiō**], *seize eagerly; snatch at, strive for.*

captus, -a, -um, see **capiō.**

Capua, -ae, f., *Capua*, a city in Campania, 136 miles southeast of Rome, noted for its luxury.

caput, -itis, n., *head;* by metonymy, *person, life;* of a river, *mouth.* **capitis absolūtus**, *not condemned to death.* **capite dēmissō**, *with head bowed down.* **duo mīlia capitum**, *two thousand souls.*

carcer, -eris, m., *prison, dungeon;* especially the *Tulliānum;* see note to p. 89, l. 5. (INCARCERATE.)

careō, carēre, caruī, caritūrus, *be without, be free from; do without, refrain from; hold aloof from, be absent from.* patriā carēre, *to be in exile.*

Cāria, -ae, [Kāpía], f., *Caria*, a province in Asia Minor.

carīna, -ae, f., *keel.*

cāritās, -ātis, [cārus], f., *affection, love.* (CHARITY.)

carmen, -inis, (canō), n., *song, charm.*

Carnutēs, -um, m. pl., a state in central Gaul, north of the Liger (*Loire.*)

carō, carnis, f., *flesh, meat.* (CARNAL, CARNIVOROUS.)

carpentum, -ī, n., *carriage;* a covered vehicle with two wheels.

carrus, -ī, m., *cart, wagon.*

Carthāginiēnsis, -e, adj., *of Carthage, Carthaginian.* As subst., Carthāginiēnsis, -is, m., a *Carthaginian.*

Carthāgō, -inis, f., *Carthage*, a city on the northern coast of Africa, near the modern Tunis.

Carthāgō Nova, *New Carthage*, a city in eastern Spain.

Carvilius, Carvi'lī, m., *Carvilius*, a chief of the Britons.

casa, -ae, f., *hut, house;* pl., *barracks.*

Casca, -ae, m., *Casca*, surname of *C. Servilius Casca*, one of the assassins of Caesar.

cāseus, -ī, m., CHEESE.

Cassī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Cassi*, a tribe of Britain.

Cassiānus, -a, -um, [Cassius], adj., *of Cassius.*

Cassius, Cassia, m., name of a Roman gens, refers in this book to:

(1) *C. Cassius Longīnus*, originator of the conspiracy against Caesar.

(2) *Lucius Cassius Longīnus*, praetor B.C. 111; when consul, 107 B.C., he engaged in battle with the Tigurini in the territory of the Allobroges, and was defeated and slain.

(3) *Q. Cassius Longīnus*, tribune of the commons in 49 B.C.

Cassivellaunus, -ī, m., *Cassivellaunus, Caswallon*, a chief of the Britons.

castellum, -ī, [dim. of castrum], n., *redoubt, stronghold, citadel.* (CASTLE.)

Casticus, -ī, m., a prominent Sequanian.

castīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, (castus, cf. agō), *reprove.* (CASTIGATE.)

castrum, -ī, n., *fortress, castle;* pl. castra, -ōrum, *camp, encampment.* castra movēre, *to break camp.* castra pōnere, *to pitch camp.* in castrīs ūsum habēre, *to have experience in military service.*

cāsū, [cāsus], adv., *by chance, accidentally.*

cāsus, -ūs, [cadō], m., *fall; occurrence; chance, fortune; overthrow; misfortune, calamity, good fortune.*

Catamantāloedis, -is, [Kel., = 'Man of Even Temper'], m., foremost man of the Sequani before Caesar's time.

catēna, -ae, f., *chain; fetter.* (CONCATENATION.)

Catilīna, -ae, *Catilina, Catiline*, family name of *L. Sergius Catilīna*, see p. 86, ll. 7 ff.

Catō, -ōnis, [catus, *shrewd*], m., a noted family of the Porcian gens. In this book are mentioned :
(1) *M. Porcius Catō*, the censor.
(2) *M. Porcius Catō Uticēnsis*.

Catullus, see Valerius.

Catulus, see Lutātius.

Caturīgēs, -um, [Kel., = 'Battle-Kings'], m. pl., a Gallic people in the eastern part of the Province.

cauda, -ae, f., *tail*. (CAUDAL.)

Caudīnae, see furculae.

causa, -ae, f., CAUSE, *reason; opportunity; excuse; condition, situation; case at law;* abl. causā, with preceding gen., *for the sake of, for the purpose of*.

cautē, [cautus], adv., CAUTIOUSLY.

cautēs, -is, f., *rock, reef*.

Cavarillus, -ī, m., an Aeduan.

caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautus, *be on one's guard, beware of; give security*. (CAUTION.)

Cebenna, -ae, f., a mountain range in southern Gaul, the *Cévennes*.

cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus, *go away, withdraw, retreat; yield, give up to; abandon; fall to the lot of; happen*. (CONCEDE.)

celeber, -bris, -bre, comp. celebrior, sup. celeberrimus, adj., *frequented, crowded, populous; renowned*, CELEBRATED.

celer, -eris, -ere, comp. celerior, sup. celerrimus, adj., *quick, swift, sudden*.

celeritās, -ātis, [celer], f., *speed, quickness, swiftness, rapidity, despatch*. (CELERITY.)

celeriter, comp. celerius, sup. celerrimē, [celer], adv., *quickly, at once, immediately*.

cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *conceal, hide, keep secret*.

Celtae, -ārum, [Kel.], m. pl., *Celts*, inhabitants of the central part of Gaul between the Garonne and the Seine.

Celtillus, -ī, m., father of Vercingetorix.

cēna, -ae, f., *dinner*, the principal meal of the Romans, taken in the early times at noon, afterwards later in the day.

Cēnabum, -ī, n., a city of the Carnutes; modern *Orléans*.

Cēnimagnī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Cenimagni*, a tribe of Britain.

cēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [cēna], *dine; eat, dine upon*.

Cēnomanī, -ōrum, m. pl., the *Cenomani*, a tribe of the *Aulerci*.

cēnseō, -ēre, -uī, cēnsus, *estimate; think, judge; decree, determine; vote for, favor*.

cēnsor, -ōris, [cēnseō], m., *censor*, a Roman magistrate. Two censors were chosen every five years, and served for eighteen months. They held the census, or rating of the citizens; chose the members of the senate from those eligible to that dignity, and removed them for cause; exercised a general supervision over public morals; and administered the finances of the state.

Cēnsōrīnus, -ī, m., *Censorinus*, family name of *L. Mārcius Cēnsōrīnus*, consul 149 B.C.

cēnsōrius, -a, -um, [cēnsor], adj., *of the censor*, CENSORIAL. (CENSORIUS.) As subst., cēnsōrius, -ōrī, m., *one who has been censor, ex-censor*.

cēnsūra, -ae, [cēnsor], f., *censorship*.

cēnsus, -ūs, [cēnseō], m., *registra-*

tion of citizens and property by the censors; CENSUS; *enumeration.*

centaurus, -ī, m., CENTAUR; see note to p. 132, l. 1.

Centēnius, Centēnī, gentile name of *C. Centēnius*, a praetor, defeated by Hannibal in 216 B.C.

centum or **C**, num. adj. indecl., *a hundred.*

centuriō, -ōnis, [centuria], m., CENTURION, *captain.* See INTROD., p. xxix.

cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus, *separate; see.* (DISCERN.)

certāmen, -inis, [certō], n., *contest, battle; trial* of strength or skill; *competition.*

certō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [certus], *vie with; contend; rival.*

certus, -a, -um, [old part. of cernō], adj., *determined, certain; definite, specified;* CERTAIN, *assured; trustworthy.* aliquem certiōrem facere, *to inform any one.* certior fierī, *to be informed.*

cervīx, -īcis, f., *neck, throat.* (CERVICAL.)

cervus, -ī, m., *stag;* in military language, a device for obstructing the enemy's advance.

cessō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of cēdō], *be remiss; delay, be inactive.*

cēterus, -a, -um, nom. sing. m. not in use, adj., *other, the other, the rest;* pl., *the rest, the others, the other.* As subst., cēterī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the others, all the rest;* cētera, -ōrum, n. pl., *the rest, everything else.* (ET CETERA.)

Cethēgus, -ī, m., *Cethegus*, cognomen of *P. Cornēlius Cethēgus*, consul in 181 B.C.

Ceutronēs, -um, m. pl., a people in the eastern part of 'the Province.'

charta, -ae, f., *leaf* of the Egyptian papyrus, *paper; writing.* (CHART.)

Chēruscī, -ōrum, m. pl., a tribe of the Germans.

chorda, -ae, [χορδή], f., *string*, of a musical instrument. (CHORD.)

Chrȳsogonus, -ī, m., *Chrysogonus*, surname of *L. Cornēlius Chrȳsogonus*, a freedman of Sulla. He accused Sex. Roscius Amerinus of parricide. Cicero defended Roscius in his first public oration.

cibāria, -ōrum, [cibārius, from cibus], n. pl., *provisions, rations.*

cibus, -ī, m., *food, victuals.*

cicātrīx, -īcis, f., *scar.*

cicer, -eris, n., *the chickpea.*

Cicerō, -ōnis, [cicer], m., *Cicero*, name of a family of the Tullian gens. In this book refers to:
(1) *M. Tullius Cicerō*, the orator and statesman. See p. 82.
(2) *Q. Tullius Cicerō*, brother of the orator and one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Ciliciēnsis, -e, [Cilicia], adj., *of Cilicia*, a country of southeastern Asia Minor, *Cilician.*

Cimberius, Cimbe'rī, m., a leader of the Suebi.

Cimbrī, -ōrum, m. pl., a Germanic people, originally in the Cimbric peninsula (the present Jutland), that joined with the Teutons in the invasion of Gaul. They were annihilated by Marius near Vercellae in 101 B.C.

Cīneās, -ae, m., *Cineas*, a friend and counsellor of Pyrrhus.

Cingetorīx, -rīgis, m., *Cingetorix:* (1) a chief of the Treveri; (2) a chief among the Britons.

cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cinctus, *surround, encircle; invest.* (CINCTURE.)

Cinna, -ae, m., family name of *L. Cornēlius Cinna.* See note to p. 59, l. 1.

cippus, -ī, m., *stake, post; gravestone.*

circinus, -ī, [= *κίρκινος*], m., *pair of compasses.*

circiter, [circus, *circle*], adv. and prep.: (1) As adv., *about, not far from, near.* (2) As prep. with acc. only, *about.*

circuitus, -ūs, [circumeō], m., CIRCUIT, *way around.*

circum, [acc. of circus, *circle*], adv. and prep.: (1) As adv., *about, around.* (2) As prep. with acc., *around, about; in the neighborhood of, near, near by.*

circumcīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus, [circum + caedō], *cut around, cut out.*

circumclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus, [circum + claudō], *enclose on all sides.*

circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datus, [circum + dō], *place around, surround; envelop.*

circumdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, [circum + dūcō], *lead around; draw around, trace.*

circumeō, -īre, -īvī or -iī, circumitus or circuitus, [circum + eō], *go around, surround.* (CIRCUIT, CIRCUITOUS.)

circumfundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus, [circum + fundō], *pour around, surround;* pass., *crowd around.*

circumiciō, [circumjiciō], -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [circum + iaciō], *throw around, place around.*

circummittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, [circum + mittō], *send around.*

circummūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [circum + mūniō], *surround with walls, fortify; hem in.*

circumsistō, -sistere, -stetī or -stitī, —, [circum + sistō], *stand around, surround, beset.*

circumstō, -stāre, -stetī, —, [circum + stō], *surround; besiege.*

circumvāllō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [cf. vāllum], *surround with a wall.*

circumveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, [circum + veniō], *come around; surround.* (CIRCUMVENT.)

cis, prep. with acc., *on this side of.*

Cita, see **Fufius.**

citātus, -a, -um, (part. of citō), adj., *urged on, at full speed.*

citerior, -ius, [citer, from cis], adj. in comp. degree, *on this side, hither; nearer, next.* Gallia citerior, *Cisalpine Gaul.*

citharīzō, -āre, —, —, [*κιθαρίζω*], *play on the cithara* or *lyre.*

citharoedus, -ī, m., *singer,* with accompaniment of the *cithara.*

cito, sup. citissimē, [citus, *swift*], adv., *swiftly.*

citrā, [citer, from cis], prep. with acc. only, *on this side of.*

citrō, [citer, from cis], adv., *hither.* ultrō citrōque, *to and fro.*

cīvicus, -a, -um, [cīvis], adj., *civil,* CIVIC. corōna cīvica, *civic crown.* See note to p. 60, l. 9.

cīvīlis, -e, [cīvis], adj., *civic,* CIVIL; *courteous, polite.*

cīvis, -is, m. and f., *citizen.*

cīvitās, -ātis, [cīvis], f., *state, nation; citizenship.*

clādēs, -is, f., *destruction, disaster, defeat.*

clam, [cf. cēlō], adv. and prep. with acc., *secretly, without the knowledge of.*

clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *cry, shout; call upon, invoke;* PROCLAIM.

clāmor, -ōris, [cf. clāmō], m., *outcry, shout, din.* (CLAMOR.)

clandestīnus, -a, -um, [clam], adj., *secret,* CLANDESTINE.

clārē, [clārus], adv., *clearly, loudly.*

clārus, -a, -um, comp. **clārior**, sup. **clārissimus**, adj., *clear, bright; celebrated, famous.*

classiārius, -a, -um, adj., *of the fleet.* As subst., classiāriī, -ōrum, m. pl., *marines, naval forces.*

classicum, -ī, [classis], n., *signal on the trumpet, trumpet-call.*

classis, -is, f., *class, division of the people; army; fleet.*

Clastidium, Clastidī, n., a town in Cisalpine Gaul.

Claudius, Claudī, m., gentile name of *Appius Claudius Caecus*, celebrated for his eloquence, who in his old age was carried into the senate and prevailed on the members not to listen to the terms of peace offered by Pyrrhus. See Mārcellus, Nerō.

claudō, claudere, clausī, clausus, *shut, close; shut in, surround; besiege.* (INCLUDE.) agmen claudere, *to bring up the rear.*

clāvus, -ī, m., *nail, spike.*

clēmēns, -entis, adj., *mild, gentle, compassionate.* (CLEMENT, INCLEMENT.)

clēmenter, [clēmēns], comp. clēmentius, sup. clēmentissimē, adv., *quietly, mildly.*

clēmentia, -ae, [clēmēns], f., *mercy,* CLEMENCY.

Cleopatra, -ae, f., *Cleopatra*, queen of Egypt, famous for her wit and beauty.

cliēns, -entis, [= cluēns, from cluēō, *hear*], m., *dependent,* CLIENT, *follower.*

clientēla, -ae, [cliēns], *clientship;* pl., *clients, dependents.*

clipeus, -ī, m., *round shield.*

cloāca, -ae, f., *sewer.*

Clōdius, Clōdī, m., form of Claudius, gentile name of:

(1) *P. Clōdius Pulcher*, a bitter enemy of Cicero. He was active in promoting the exile of Cicero.

(2) *A. Clōdius*, a friend of Caesar.

Cluentius, Cluentī, m., the name of an opponent of Sulla in the Social Wars.

Clūsium, Clūsī, n., an old and powerful town of Etruria.

Cn., see Gnaeus.

coacervō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + acervō], *heap up, pile up.*

coāctus, pf. pass. part. of cōgō.

coartō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + artō, *compress*], *crowd together.*

Cocles, -itis, m., *Cocles*, [one-eyed], a surname of *Horātius Cocles.* See Horātius.

coēgī, see cōgō.

coëmō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēmptus, [com- + emō], *buy up.*

coëō, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -itus, [com + eō], *come together, unite.*

coepiō, coepere, coepī, coeptus, pres. not found in classical Latin, def., *begin, commence.* With a

pass. infinitive the pass. form, **coeptus est, coeptus erat**, is used.

coërceō, -ercēre, -ercuī, -ercitus, [com- + arceō, *shut up*], *confine, shut in; restrain, check.* (COERCE.)

cōgitātiō, -ōnis, [cōgitō], f., *thought, reflection; plan, project.*

cōgitātum, -ī, [cōgitō], n., *thought, idea;* in pl. often *purpose.*

cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + agitō], *consider, reflect on, think; design, plan.* (COGITATE.)

cognātiō, -ōnis, f., *relationship* by blood, *kinship; kindred.*

cognitus, -a, -um, [part. of cognōscō], adj., *known, approved.*

cognōmen, -ĭnis, [com- + (g)nōmen], n., *surname, family name; name.* (COGNOMEN.)

cognōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, cognitus, [com- + (g)nōscō], *become acquainted with, learn, learn of; know, recognize; examine, investigate; take* COGNIZANCE *of.*

cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus, [com- + agō], *drive together, collect, gather; compel, oblige.*

cohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, [com- + habeō], *hold together, embrace; restrain.*

cohors, -hortis, f., COHORT, the tenth part of a legion.

cohortātiō, -ōnis, [cohortor], f., *encouraging, exhortation.*

cohortor, -ārī, -ātus, [com- + hortor], dep., *encourage, exhort, address* with encouraging words.

collabefīō, -fierī, -factus sum, [com- + labe- + fīō], *go to pieces.* (COLLAPSE.)

Collātīnus, -a, -um, [Collātia], adj., *of Collatia.*

Collātīnus, -ī, m., *Collatinus*, family name of *L. Tarquinius Collātīnus*, husband of Lucretia, and colleague of Brutus in his consulship.

collātus, see **cōnferō.**

collaudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + laudō], *praise highly, extol.*

collēga, -ae, m., COLLEAGUE.

colligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com- + ligō], *bind, bind together.*

colligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus, [com- + legō, *gather*], COLLECT, *assemble; obtain, get.* **sē colligere**, *to gather themselves together, to come together; to recover oneself.*

collis, -is, m., *hill, height, elevation.*

collocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + locō, *place*], *place, set, post, station; set in order, arrange;* with or without **nūptum**, *give in marriage.* (COLLOCATION.)

colloquium, collo'quī, [colloquor], n., *conference, interview.* (COLLOQUY.)

colloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum, [com- + loquor], dep., *talk with, hold a conference, hold a parley.* inter **sē** collocūtī, *having conferred together.*

collum, -ī, n., *neck.*

colō, -ere, coluī, cultus, *till, cultivate; inhabit; clothe, adorn; honor, worship.*

colōnia, -ae, [colōnus], f., *colony.*

colōnus, -ī, [cf. colō], m., *husbandman; settler*, COLONIST.

color, -ōris, m., COLOR, *complexion.*

columba, -ae, f., *dove, pigeon.*

columbārium, -ārī, [columba], n., *dove-cot, pigeon-house.*

com-, prep., old form of **cum**, found only in composition; see **cum.**

combūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstus, [com + būrō, *burn*], *burn up, consume.* (COMBUSTION.)

comes, -itis, [com-, cf. eō], m., *companion, comrade; retainer.*

cōmitās, -ātis, [cōmis], f., *courtesy, affability.*

comitātus, -ūs, [comitor], m., *escort, retinue.*

comitia, -ōrum [plur. of comitium], n. pl., *the Roman people in assembly; election.*

comitiālis, -e, [comitia], adj., *of election, election.*

Comitium, Comi'tī, [com- + eō], n., *place of meeting;* at Rome, *the Comitium;* see note to p. 64, l. 6.

comitor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [comes], dep., *attend, accompany.*

commeātus, -ūs, [commeō], m., *passing to and fro, voyage; furlough; supplies,* often including (but sometimes exclusive of) grain (frūmentum).

commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + memorō], *mention, relate.* (COMMEMORATE.)

commendō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + mandō], *entrust; recommend, defend.* (COMMEND.)

commeō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + meō, *go*], *go to and fro, visit, resort to.*

commīlitō, -ōnis [com-, cf. mīles], m., *fellow-soldier.*

comminus [com- + manus], adv., *hand to hand.*

commissum, -ī, [committō], n., *undertaking; fault, offence.*

commissūra, -ae, [committō], f., *joint.*

committō, -mittere, -mīsī, commissus, [com- + mittō], *bring together, unite; engage in; entrust,* COMMIT; *commit, do, be guilty of.* proelium committere, *to join battle, fight.*

Commius, Commī, m., *Commius,* an Atrebatian, a friend of Caesar.

commodē, comp. commodius, sup. commodissimē, [commodus], adv., *conveniently, to advantage; properly, suitably; well, skilfully.* nōn minus commodē . . . quam, *just as readily as.*

commodus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [com- + modus, i.e. *having full measure*], adj., *convenient, advantageous, easy; favorable; suitable.* As subst., commodum, -ī, n., *advantage, profit.*

commonefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, [commoneō + faciō], *remind, admonish.*

commoror, -ārī, -ātus sum, [com- + moror], dep., *stay, remain.*

commoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, commōtus, [com- + moveō], *disturb, alarm; excite, rouse, influence.* bellum commovēre, *to begin war.* sē commovēre, *to undertake anything.* (COMMOTION.)

commūnicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [commūnis], *share; unite with;* COMMUNICATE; *consult.*

commūniō, -īre, -īvī or iī, -ītus, [com- + mūniō], *strongly fortify, intrench.*

commūnis, -e, [com- + mūnus], adj., *common, general, public.* commūnī cōnsiliō, *by common consent.* in commūnī conciliō, *at a general council.* ex commūnī cōnsēnsū, *by general agreement.*

commūnitās, -ātis, [commūnis], f., COMMUNITY, *fellowship; courtesy, affability.*

commūtātiō, -ōnis, [commūtō], f., *change.* (COMMUTATION.)

commūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + mūtō], *change, alter; exchange.*

compāreō, -ēre, -uī, —, [com- + pāreō], *appear, be visible, be shown.*

comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + parō], *prepare, get together; secure, get.*

comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [compār], *bring together as equal, match,* COMPARE; *rank with.*

compellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, [com- + pellō], *drive together, collect; force,* COMPEL.

compellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + pellō], *address; reproach; arraign.*

comperiō, -perīre, -perī, -pertus, *find out, learn; find guilty.*

compēs, -pedis, f., *fetter* for the feet; pl., *bonds, chains.*

complector, -plectī, -plexus sum, [com- + plectō, *braid*], dep., *embrace, encircle; include.*

compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus, [com- + pleō], *fill full;* COMPLETE, *fill up.*

complicātus, part. of complicō.

complicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + plicō, *fold*], *involve, connect.* (COMPLICATE.)

complūrēs, -a and -ia, [com- + plūrēs from plūs], adj., pl., *very many; many.* As subst., **complūrēs**, -ium, m., pl., *a great many.*

compōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, compositus, [com- + pōnō], *put together; arrange;* COMPOSE, *settle, end.* **pācem compōnere**, *to conclude peace.*

comportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + portō], *bring in, carry, convey.*

compositiō, -ōnis [compōnō], f., *agreement, treaty.* (COMPOSITION.)

comprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsus, [com- + prehendō], *bind together; seize, grasp;* COMPREHEND.

comprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus, [com- + premō], COMPRESS; *restrain, subdue.*

comprobō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + probō], *approve, assent to; prove.*

cōnātum, -ī, [n. of cōnātus, from cōnor], n., *attempt, undertaking.*

cōnātus, -ūs, [cōnor], m., *attempt.*

cōnātus, pf. part. of cōnor.

concēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, [com- + cēdō], *withdraw; give up, submit; allow, grant; permit.* (CONCEDE, CONCESSION.)

concidō, -cidere, -cidī, —, [com- + cadō], *fall together, fall down; be slain; be defeated, go to ruin.*

concīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus, [com- + caedō], *cut to pieces, kill.*

conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [concilium], *win over,* CONCILIATE, *reconcile; win, gain.*

concilium, -ī, [com-, cf. calō, *call*], n., *meeting, assembly;* COUNCIL.

concinō, -ere, -cinuī, —, [com- + canō], *sound together.*

concipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [com- + capiō], *take, receive,* CONCEIVE.

concitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of conciō], *put in motion; drive, spur; rouse; instigate.*

concitor, -ōris, m., *one who excites* or *stirs up.*

conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + clāmō, *shout*], *cry aloud, shout.*

conclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, conclūsus, [com- + claudō], *shut up, confine; include; end;* CONCLUDE.

Conconnetodumnus, -ī, m., a chief of the Carnutes.

concordia, -ae, [concors], f., *harmony*, CONCORD.

concupīscō, -cupīscere, -cupīvī, -cupītus, [com- + cupiō], inch., *greatly desire, long for.* (CONCUPISCENCE.)

concurrō, -currere, -cucurrī or -currī, -cursus, [com- + currō], *run together, assemble; rush together, fight; coincide, happen.* **eō concursum est**, *a rush was made to that point.* (CONCUR.)

concursus, -ūs, [concurrō], m., *running together*, CONCOURSE; *attack; meeting, shock.*

concutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussus, [com- + quatiō], *strike together; shatter, impair; terrify, alarm.*

condiciō, -ōnis, [com-, cf. dīcō], f., CONDITION, *terms.*

condō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [com- + dō], *put together, found; conceal.*

condōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + dōnō], *give up, forgive, pardon.* (CONDONE.)

Condrūsī, -ōrum, m., pl., a Belgic tribe on the right bank of the Mosa (*Meuse*), south of the Eburones; the name survives in that of the district *Condroz.*

condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [com- + dūcō], *bring together, collect; hire; contribute to, profit, serve.* **condūcit** (impers.), *it is profitable.* (CONDUCE, CONDUCT.)

cōnfectus, see cōnficiō.

cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, collātus, [com- + ferō], *bring together, collect; contribute; compare; consult,* CONFER; *devote, apply; bestow; ascribe, refer; put off.* **sē cōnferre**, *to betake one's self, proceed.* **arma cōnferre**, *to engage in battle.*

cōnfertus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part. of cōnferciō], adj., *crowded together, dense, compact.*

cōnfestim, adv., *at once, speedily.*

cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [com- + faciō], *do thoroughly, complete, accomplish; compose; wear out, exhaust; kill;* of troops, *furnish;* of leather, *dress.* **magnō itinere cōnfectō**, *having made a forced march.* (CONFECTION.)

cōnfīdō, -fīdere, -fīsus sum, [com- + fīdō, *trust*], semi-dep., *rely upon, have confidence in; be confident.* (CONFIDE.)

cōnfīgō, -ere, -fīxī, -fīxus, [com + fīgō], *fasten together.*

cōnfirmātus, -a, -um, comp. **cōnfirmātior** (part. of **cōnfirmō**), adj., *encouraged, confident.*

cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + firmus], CONFIRM, *strengthen; set, establish; encourage; declare; assure.* **iūre iūrandō cōnfirmāre**, *to bind by an oath.*

cōnfīsus, -a, -um, see cōnfīdō.

cōnfiteor, -fitērī, -fessus, [com- + fateor, *confess*], dep., CONFESS, *acknowledge.*

cōnflīgō, -flīgere, -flīxī, -flīctus, [com- + flīgō], *dash together, collide; contend.* (CONFLICT.)

cōnflō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + flō], *blow up; kindle; bring together; cause.* **aes aliēnum cōnflāre**, *to contract debt.*

cōnfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, —, [com- + fluō], *flow together, assemble.* (CONFLUENCE.)

cōnfodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus, [com- + fodiō], *dig up; stab.*

cōnfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —, [com- + fugiō], *flee, take refuge; have recourse, resort.*

cōnfundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus, [com- + fundō], *pour together, bring together.* (CONFOUND, CONFUSION.)

cōnfūsus, part. of cōnfundō.

congerō, -gerere, -gessī, -gestus, [com- + gerō], *bring together, accumulate; build, construct.*

congredior, -gredī, -gressus [com- + gradior, *step*], dep., *come together, meet; join battle, contend.*

congressus, -a, -um, see congredior.

congressus, -ūs, [congredior], m., *meeting, encounter.* (CONGRESS.)

coniciō (conjiciō), -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [com- + iaciō], *throw together, hurl, strike; throw up, place, put.* conicere in fugam, *to put to flight.* (CONJECTURE.)

coniūnctim, [coniungō], adv., *jointly, in common.*

coniungō, -ere, coniūnxī, coniūnctus, [com- + iungō], *join, unite.* (CONJUNCTION.)

coniūnx, or **coniux**, -ugis, [cf. coniungō], m. and f., *husband, wife.* (CONJUGAL.)

coniūrātiō (conjūrātiō), -ōnis, [coniūrō], f., *sworn union; conspiracy, plot.*

coniūrātus, -a, -um, [part. of coniūrō], adj., *conspiring.* As subst., pl. m., *conspirators.*

coniūrō (conjūrō), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + iūrō], *form a conspiracy, conspire, plot.* (CONJURE.)

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *attempt, undertake.* (CONATIVE.)

conqueror, -querī, -questus sum, [com- + queror], dep., *complain, deplore.*

conquīrō, -ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus [com- + quaerō], *seek out, bring together.*

cōnsanguineus, -a, -um, [com- + sanguineus, from sanguis], adj., *of the same blood.* As subst., m. and f., *relative, kinsman;* pl., *blood relations.* (CONSANGUINITY.)

cōnscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsus, [com-+scandō], *mount, ascend; go on board* a ship.

cōnscientia, -ae, [cōnsciō], f., *joint knowledge; consciousness;* CONSCIENCE.

cōnscīscō, -ere, cōnscīvī, cōnscītus, [com- + scīscō], *determine.* mortem sibi cōnscīscere, *commit suicide.*

cōnscius, -a, -um, [com- + sciō], adj., CONSCIOUS, *aware of, accessory.* As subst., cōnscius, cōnscī, m., *accomplice.*

cōnscrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, [com- + scrībō], *write together, enroll; draw up, compose.* patrēs cōnscrīptī, see pater. (CONSCRIPT.)

cōnscrīptus, see cōnscrībō.

cōnsecrātus, -a, -um, adj., CONSECRATED, *holy.*

cōnsector, -ārī, -ātus sum, [freq. of cōnsequor], dep., *pursue, overtake.*

cōnsecūtus, see cōnsequor.

cōnsenēscō, -ere, -senuī, —, [con- + senex], *grow old.*

cōnsēnsus, -ūs, [cōnsentiō], m., *agreement, unanimity.* (CONSENSUS.)

cōnsentiō, -īre, cōnsēnsī, cōnsēnsus, [com- + sentiō], *agree together, conspire, plot.*

cōnsenuī, see cōnsenēscō.

cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, [com- + sequor], dep., *follow up; overtake; acquire, gain; accomplish; arise, ensue; perceive.* (CONSEQUENCE.)

cōnserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertus, [com- + serō], *connect, join.* pugnam or manum cōnserere, *to join battle.*

cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + servō], *preserve, keep.* (CONSERVATION.)

cōnsīderātē, (cf. cōnsīderō), adv., CONSIDERATELY, *carefully.*

cōnsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *examine;* CONSIDER, *reflect upon.*

Cōnsidius, -si'dī, m., *Publius Considius*, an officer in Caesar's army who made an unfortunate mistake. See p. 195, ll. 10 fol.

cōnsīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessus, [com- + sīdō, *sit*], *sit down; encamp; establish one's self, settle; hold a sitting..*

cōnsilium, -si'lī, [cf. cōnsulō], n., *consultation,* COUNSEL; *gathering for deliberation, council; advice; plan, purpose; judgment, discretion.* cōnsilium inīre or habēre, *form a plan.*

cōnsimilis, -e, [com- + similis], adj., *very like.*

cōnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitus, [com- + sistō, *set, place*], *stand, stop; take a position, make a stand; stay, remain; sojourn, settle; endure, continue;* CONSIST (*in*), *depend* (*on*).

cōnsobrīnus, -ī, [com-, cf. soror], m., *cousin.*

cōnsōlor, -ārī, -ātus, [com- + sōlor, *comfort*], dep., *comfort,* CONSOLE, *encourage.*

cōnspectus, -ūs, [cōnspiciō], m., *sight, view.* ē cōnspectū, *out of sight.*

cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, cōnspectus, [com- + speciō], *observe, perceive;* pass., *be in sight, be* CONSPICUOUS.

cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [com-, cf. speciō], dep., *get sight of, see.*

cōnspicuus, -a, -um, [cf. cōnspiciō], adj., *in view, apparent;* CONSPICUOUS, *illustrious.*

cōnspīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, CONSPIRE.

cōnstanter, comp. cōnstantius, sup. cōnstantissimē, [cōnstāns], adv., *steadfastly, resolutely; uniformly, unanimously.* (CONSTANTLY.)

cōnstantia, -ae, [cōnstāns], f., *steadiness, courage; perseverance; faithfulness.* (CONSTANCY.)

cōnsternō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + sternō], *confound, terrify, affright.* (CONSTERNATION.)

cōnsternō, -ere, -strāvī, -strātus, [com- + sternō], *strew, cover.*

cōnstīpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + stīpō, *press*], *press together.*

cōnstitī, see cōnstō and cōnsistō.

cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, cōnstitūtus, [com- + statuō], *put, place; draw up, form; found, construct; make, establish; determine.* (CONSTITUTE.)

cōnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -statūrus, [com- + stō], *agree; stand firm; consist of, depend on.* sibi cōnstāre, *be consistent.* Impers. cōnstat, *it is agreed, it is well known.*

cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētus [com- + suēscō], *accustom; accustom one's self, be accustomed.*

cōnsuētūdō, -inis, [cōnsuēscō], f., *custom, habit; character; companionship, familiarity; practice.*

cōnsuētus, see cōnsuēscō.

cōnsul, -ulis, m., CONSUL, one of the chief magistrates at Rome. In dates the names of the consuls, in the abl. abs., are used to designate the year; 183.

cōnsulāris, -e, [cōnsul], adj., CONSULAR, *of consular rank.* As subst., cōnsulāris, -is, m., *ex-consul.*

cōnsulātus, -ūs, [cōnsul], m., *consulship.*

cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, -tus, [com-, cf. saliō], *take counsel*, CONSULT, *take care; be mindful; determine;* with dat., *have regard for, look out for.*

cōnsultō (cf. cōnsulō), adv., *with deliberation, purposely.*

cōnsultum, -ī, [cōnsultus], n., *deliberation; plan, decree.* senātūs cōnsultum, see senātus.

cōnsultus, -a, -um, [part. of cōnsulō], adj., *well-considered; experienced, learned.* iūris cōnsultus, *a lawyer, counsellor.*

cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus, [com- + sūmō], *use up, devour*, CONSUME; *destroy;* pass., *consume; spend.*

cōnsurgō, -ere, -surrēxī, -surrēctus (com- + surgō), *rise, stand up.*

contabulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-, cf. tabula, *board*], *board over; build* (in stories), *build up.*

contagiō, -ōnis, [cf. contingō], f., *contact.* [CONTAGION.]

contegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctus (com- + tegō), *cover, cover up;* of a ship, *provide with a deck.*

contemnendus, -a, -um, [part. of contemnō], adj., *contemptible, unworthy of notice.*

contemnō, -temnere, -tempsī, -temptus, [com- + temnō], *disdain, despise.* (CONTEMN.)

contemptiō, -tiōnis, [contemnō, *despise*], f., CONTEMPT.

contemptus, -ūs (contemnō), m., CONTEMPT, *scorn.* **contemptuī esse**, *to be an object of contempt.*

contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentus, [com- + tendō], *make effort, strive; demand; hasten, push forward;* CONTEND, *vie; defend an action; maintain, insist.*

contentiō, -ōnis, [contendō], f., *effort; struggle, contest; controversy.* (CONTENTION.)

contexō, -ere, -texuī, -textus, *weave, make of wicker-work.*

contentus, -a, -um, [part. of contineō], adj., *satisfied*, CONTENT.

continēns, -entis, [part. of contineō], adj., *bounding, limiting; bordering, adjacent; connected, continuous; moderate, temperate.* (CONTINENT.) **continēns terra**, or continēns (sc. terra), *the mainland.* (CONTINENT.)

continenter, [continēns], adv., *constantly*, CONTINUALLY.

contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, [com + teneō], *hold together*, CONTAIN; *hold; hold back, keep, shut in; embrace, include; curb, rule;* of places and regions, *hem in, bound;* of space, *fill;* of a rite, *consist of.* sē continēre, *to hold one's self, remain.* (CONTENTS.)

contingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctus, [com- + tangō], *touch, be near; happen, fall to the lot of.* (CONTACT.)

continuō, [continuus], adv., *forthwith, straightway.*

continuus, -a, -um, [cf. contineō], adj., CONTINUOUS, *successive.*

cōntiō, -ōnis, [for conventiō, from conveniō], f., *meeting, assembly; speech.*

cōntiōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [cōntiō], dep., *address an assembly, make a speech.*

contrā, [comp. of com-], adv. and prep.:

(1) As adv., *opposite, on the other side, in front of, face to face; on the contrary.*

(2) As prep. with acc. only, *opposite, facing, contrary to; against, to the disadvantage of, in spite of; in reply to.* (CONTRARY.)

contrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, [com + trahō], *bring together, collect; draw in,* CONTRACT.

contrārius, -a, -um, [contrā], adj., *opposite,* CONTRARY. As subst., **contrārium**, -ārī, n., *the opposite, reverse.* ē contrāriō, *on the other hand, on the contrary.*

contrōversia, -ae [cf. contrā and vertō], f., *rivalry, difference of opinion, strife,* CONTROVERSY.

contumēlia, -ae, f., *insult, abuse; violence, injury.* (CONTUMELY.)

convalēscō, -valēscere, -valuī, —, [com- + valeō], inch., *recover, grow strong.* (CONVALESCENT.)

convehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus [com- + vehō], *bring together.*

conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, conventus, [com- + veniō], *come together, assemble; meet; be fit, belong, correspond; be agreed, be settled.* Impers. **convenit**, *it is agreed.*

conventus, -ūs, [cf. conveniō], m., *assembly, meeting; court.* (CONVENTION.)

conversus, see convertō.

convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, [com- + vertō], *turn, direct, turn about; change;* of the sight, *fix, rivet; use for, use as; divert, misuse.* (CONVERT, CONVERSION). conversa signa īnferre, *to face about and advance.* itinere conversō, *turning about.*

convīcium, convīcī, [com-, cf. vōx], n., *abuse, abusive language.*

Convictolitavis, -is, m., an Aeduan.

convictus, see convincō.

convincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victus, [com- + vincō], *conquer, overcome;* CONVICT, *refute; prove.*

convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [com- + vocō], *call together, summon,* CONVOKE.

coorior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, [com- + orior], dep., *arise, appear.*

cophinus, -ī, m., *basket.*

cōpia, -ae, [= co-opia, from com- + ops], f., *quantity, supply, plenty; opportunity.* Pl., cōpiae, -ārum, *means, resources, wealth; forces, troops.*

cōpiōsus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [cōpia], adj., *well supplied, rich.* (COPIOUS.)

cōpula, -ae, f., *grappling-iron.* (COPULA.)

cor, cordis, n., *heart.* (CORDIAL.)

cōram, [com-, cf. ōs], adv. and prep. with abl., *before:*

(1) As adv., *before the eyes, present, in person.*

(2) As prep. with abl., *before, in the presence of.*

Corinthus, -ī, [Κόρινθος], f., *Corinth*, a city of Greece, situated on the Isthmus of Corinth.

Corinthius, -a, -um, [Corinthus], adj., *of* or *belonging to Corinth, Corinthian.* As subst., Corin-

thius, -inthī, m., *an inhabitant of Corinth, a Corinthian.*

Coriolānus, -ī, [Coriolī], m., *Coriolanus*, surname of *C. Mārcius Coriolānus.*

Coriolī, -ōrum, m. pl., *Corioli*, a town of Latium, about sixteen miles southeast of Rome. See map, opp. p. 1.

Coriosolitēs, -um, m. pl., a people along the northwest coast of Gaul, north of the Veneti; the name survives in *Corseult*, near St. Malo.

Cornēlius, -a, the name of a Roman gens which contained a number of distinguished families. See Cethēgus, Cinna, Lentulus, Scīpiō, Sulla.

Cornēlius, -a, -um, (Cornēlius), adj., of *Cornelius, Cornelian*, referring to *P. Cornēlius Scīpiō Africānus.* See note to p. 111, l. 2.

cornū, -ūs, n., *horn; trumpet;* of an army, *wing.* (CORNUCOPIA.)

corōna, -ae, f., *crown, wreath.* See cīvicus. sub cōrōna vēndere, *to sell as slaves*, see p. 303, l. 12. (CORONET.)

corpus, -oris, n., *body; person; dead body*, CORPSE.

corrēxī, see corrigō.

corrigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctus, [com- + regō], CORRECT, *improve; restore, calm.*

corripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus, (com- + rapiō), *assail, censure.*

corrōdō, -ere, -sī, -sum, [com- + rōdō], *gnaw.* (CORRODE.)

corrōsus, see corrōdō.

corrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, corruptus, [com- + rumpō], *destroy, ruin;* CORRUPT, *mislead, bribe.*

corruptus, see corrumpō.

cortex, corticis, m. and f., *bark* of a tree.

Corvīnus, -ī, m., *Corvinus*, surname of *M. Valerius Corvīnus*, an early Roman.

corvus, -ī, m., *raven.*

coss., = cōnsulibus.

cotīdiānus or **cottīdiānus**, -a, -um, [cotīdiē], adj., *daily; ordinary, usual.*

cotīdiē, or **cottīdiē**, [quot + diē], adv., *daily, every day.*

Cotta, -ae, m., *Cotta*, surname of *L. Aurēlius Cotta*, consul in 65 B.C.; see also Aurunculeius.

Cotus, -ī, m., an Aeduan.

crassitūdō, -tūdinis (crassus, *thick*), f., *thickness.*

Crassus, -ī, m.:

(1) *Marcus Licinius Crassus*, triumvir with Caesar and Pompey.

(2) *Publius Licinius Crassus*, younger son of the triumvir; lieutenant of Caesar, in Gaul, 58–56 B.C., where he distinguished himself; he returned to Rome in 55, followed his father to the East, and fell with him at Carrhae.

Crāstinus, -ī, m., *Crastinus*, a veteran centurion in Caesar's army.

crātēs, -tis, f., *wicker-work; hurdle, fagot.*

crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., *thick, frequent, numerous, abundant.*

crēbrō (crēber), adv., *frequently.*

crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus, *lend; trust, believe, think; intrust, consign.* (CREDIT.)

Cremera, -ae, f., *the Cremera*, a small river in Etruria, near Veii.

cremō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *burn.* (CREMATE.) īgnī cremāre, *to consume by fire, burn to death.*

Cremōna, -ae, f., *Cremona.* A town of Cisalpine Gaul, on the Po.

creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, CREATE, *make; elect, appoint.*

crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētus, inch., *grow, increase; become great;* of a river, *become swollen.*

Crēta, -ae, [Κρήτη], f., *Crete*, a large island in the Mediterranean southeast of Greece, now called Candia. See map opp. p. 1.

Crētēnsis, -e, adj., *of Crete, Cretan.* As subst., Crētēnsis, -is, m., *Cretan, inhabitant of Crete.*

Crētēs, -um, [Κρῆτες], m. pl., *Cretans*, inhabitants of Crete, now Candia.

crīmen, -inis, [cf. cernō], n., *accusation, charge; crime, offence.*

Critognātus, -ī, m., *Critognatus*, a prominent man among the Arverni.

cruciātus, -ūs, [cruciō, *torture*], m., *torture, cruelty, suffering.* (EXCRUCIATING.)

cruciō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [crux], *torture, torment; afflict.*

crūdēlis, -e, comp. crūdēlior, sup. crūdēlissimus, adj., *rude, unfeeling, cruel.*

crūdēlitās, -ātis, [crūdēlis], f., *cruelty, barbarity.*

crūdēliter, comp. crūdēlius, sup. crūdēlissimē, [crūdēlis], adv., *cruelly, with cruelty.*

crūs, crūris, n., *leg.*

crux, crucis, f. *gallows, cross.* (CRUX.)

cubiculum, -ī, [cubō], n., *sleeping-chamber, bedchamber.*

cubīle, -īlis (cubō, *lie down*), n., *bed, resting place.*

cui, see quī.

cuivīs, see quīvīs.

culpa, -ae, f., *fault, blame.* (CULPABLE.)

cultūra, -ae, [cf. colō], f., *cultivation.* (CULTURE.) See ager.

cultus, -ūs, [colō], m., *care, cultivation; civilization, refinement, luxury; dress, attire.*

cum, prep. with ablative only, *with;* of association, *with, in the company of;* of comparison, *compared with;* of manner and circumstance, *under, amid, at;* of time, *at the same time with.* With the personal pronouns and with quī, cum is enclitic; as, mēcum, nōbīscum, quibuscum.

In composition the earlier form com- is used, which remains unchanged before p, b, m, but is changed to col- or con- before l, cor- or con- before r, con- before other consonants, and co- before vowels and h; it implies doing anything in concert with others, or thoroughly and completely.

cum, conj., *when;* of definite time, *when, while, as long as, after;* of indefinite time or repeated action, *whenever, as often as;* of relative time, descriptive or circumstantial, *when, while, after;* of cause and concession, with subj., *since, inasmuch as, although.* **cum . . . tum**, *both . . . and, not only . . . but also, while . . . especially.* **cum prīmum**, *as soon as.*

cumulus, -ī, m., *heap.*

cunctātiō, -ōnis, [cunctor], f., *delay, hesitation.*

cunctor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *delay, linger, hesitate.*

cūnctus, -a, -um, [coniūnctus], adj., *altogether; the whole, all.*

cupidē, comp. -ius, sup. -issimē, [cupidus], adv., *eagerly, earnestly.*

cupiditās, -ātis, [cupidus], f., *eagerness, desire, ambition.* (CUPIDITY.)

cupidus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [cf. cupiō], adj., *desirous, fond of; greedy, covetous.*

cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītus, *long for, desire; wish well to.*

cūr, [for quōr, = quoi + reī], adv., *why? wherefore?*

cūra, -ae, f., *care, anxiety, trouble; diligence.*

Curēs, -ium, f., pl., *Cures*, a town of the Sabines, the birthplace of Numa Pompilius. See map, opp. p. 1.

cūria, -ae, f., *curia, association*, one of the ten divisions of each of the original three Roman tribes; by metonymy, *senate-house, place of meeting of the senate*, either the *Cūria Hostīlia*, in the Forum, named from Tullus Hostilius, or the *Cūria Pompeia*, in the Campus Martius.

Curiātius, -ātī, m., *Curiatius*, the name of three brothers of Alba, who fought with the Horatii.

Cūriō, -ōnis, m., *Curio*, surname of *C. Scrībōnius Cūriō*, tribune of the commons in 50 B.C. and one of Caesar's officers.

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [cūra], *take care, provide for, arrange;* with gerundive, *see to it that, see that.*

currō, currere, cucurrī, cursus, *run.*

currus, -ūs, [currō], m., *chariot, car.*

cursus, -ūs [currō], m., *running; speed.* **magnō cursū**, *at full speed.*

cūstōdia, -ae, [cūstōs], f., *guard, watch.* (CUSTODY.)

cūstōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [cūstōs], *watch, guard.*

cūstōs, -ōdis, m. and f., *guard, keeper, watch.*

Cynoscephalae, -ārum, f., *Cynoscephalae*, hills near Scotassa in Thessaly, where T. Quinctius Flaminius defeated Philip, king of Macedonia, 197 B.C.

Cȳrēnae, -ārum, [Κυρήνη], f., pl., *Cyrene*, a city on the northern coast of Africa south of Greece. See map, opp. p. 1.

Cȳrēnaeus, -a, -um, adj., *of Cyrene.* As subst., Cyrēnaeus, -ī, m., *inhabitant of Cyrene.*

Cȳrus, -ī, m., *Cyrus*, the founder of the Persian monarchy.

D

d, see **a. d.**

Dācus, -ī, m., *Dacian;* pl., *the Dacians*, dwelling on the north bank of the Danube.

Damisippus, -ī, m., *Damisippus;* see *Licinius.*

damnātiō, -ōnis, [damnō], f., *condemnation, conviction.*

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [damnum], *condemn, sentence.*
vōtī damnārī, *to be rendered liable to fulfil a vow, to have one's prayer granted.*

Dānuvius, Dānu'vī, m., *the Danube.*

dē, prep. with abl., denoting separation, *from;* of place and motion, *away from, out of;* of source, *of, from, out of, sprung from;* of the whole, partitively, *of, from among;* of material, *made of, from;* of cause, *on account of, for, through, by;* of relation, *concerning, about;* of time, *after, during, in the course of, in.* **dē improvīsō**, *unexpectedly.*

dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitus [dē + habeō], *owe, be in* DEBT, *be under obligation;* pass., *be due;* followed by infin., *ought, must, should.* (DEBIT.)

dēbilis, -e, [dē + habilis], adj., *lame, crippled, helpless.*

dēbilitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dēbilis, *feeble*], *lame, cripple, disable; dishearten.* (DEBILITATE.)

dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, [dē + cēdō], *go away, withdraw; avoid, shun; cease, die.*

decem, or **X**, indecl. num., *ten.* (DECIMAL.)

December, -bris, -bre, [decem], adj., *of the tenth; of the tenth month* (counting from March), *of December.*

decemplex, -icis, [decem, cf. plicō], adj., *tenfold.*

decemvirī, -um or -ōrum, [decem, vir], m., *a board consisting of ten men,* DECEMVIRS.

dēceptus, see dēcipiō.

dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētus, [dē + cernō], *decide; resolve, decree, intrust; contend, fight.*

dēcertō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dē + certō, *contend*], *fight to a finish.* proeliō dēcertāre, *to fight a decisive battle.*

dēcessus, -ūs, [dēcēdō], m., *departure; fall, ebb.*

dēcidō, -cidere, -cidī, —, [dē + cadō], *fall down, fall off.*

decimus, -a, -um, [decem], adj., *tenth.* (DECIMATE.)

Decimus, -ī, abbreviated **D.**, [decimus], m., *Decimus*, a Roman forename. See Brūtus.

dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [dē + capiō], *catch; deceive.* (DECEPTION.)

dēclārō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dē + clārō, from clārus], *make clear,* DECLARE, *show.*

dēclīvis, -e, [dē + clīvus], adj., *sloping, descending.*

dēclīvitās, -ātis, [dēclīvis], f., DECLIVITY, *descent, slope.*

decōrus, -a, -um, [decor], adj., *becoming, fitting; adorned, beautiful.* (DECOROUS.)

dēcrētum, -ī, [dēcernō], n., *decree, decision, votes.*

dēcrētus, part. of dēcernō.

decumānus, -a, -um, [decimus], adj., *of a tenth part,* DECUMAN. decumāna porta, main entrance of the Roman camp, opposite the porta praetōria. See p. xxxviii.

decuriō, -ōnis, [decem], m., DECURION, a cavalry officer in charge of a *decuria* (10 horsemen).

dēcurrō, -currere, -cucurrī or -currī, -cursus, [dē + currō], *run down, rush down, hasten.*

dēdecus, -coris, [dē + decus, *honor*], n., *dishonor, disgrace.*

dedī, see dō.

dēditīcius, -a, -um, [dēditus, from dēdō], adj., *surrendered, subject.* As subst., dēditīciī, -ōrum, m. pl., *prisoners of war, captives.*

dēditiō, -ōnis, [dēdō], f., *surrender.* accipere or recipere in dēditiōnem, *to receive into surrender.*

dēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [dē + dō], *give up, surrender; devote.*

dēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [dē + dūcō], *lead down; launch; lead away, withdraw; induce; conduct; attend.* (DEDUCE.)

dēfatīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dē + fatīgō, *weary*], *tire out, exhaust.*

dēfectiō, -iōnis, [dēficiō], f., *desertion, revolt,* DEFECTION.

dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsus, *ward off, repel;* DEFEND, *protect.*

dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, [dēfendō], f., DEFENCE.

dēfēnsor, -ōris, [dēfendō], m., *defender, protector.*

dēfēnsus, see dēfendō.

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, [dē + ferō], *carry off, remove; transfer, deliver; confer upon, bestow; give, offer; report, submit.*

dēfessus, -a, -um, [part. of dēfetīscor], adj., *wearied, exhausted.* As subst., dēfessus, -ī, m., *one exhausted;* pl., *the exhausted.*

dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [dē + faciō], *fail, be exhausted; fall away, revolt, rebel.* (DEFICIENT, DEFECT.)

dēfigō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxus [dē + fīgō, *fasten*], *drive in, fasten in.*

dēfīniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [dē + fīniō], DEFINE, *fix; assign.*

dēfīxus, part. of dēfīgō.

dēfōrmitās, -ātis, [dēfōrmis], f., *ugliness, disfigurement.* (DEFORMITY.)

dēfugiō, -ere, -fūgī, —, [dē + fugiō], *flee; avoid.*

dēfungor, -fungī, -fūnctus sum, [dē + fungor], dep., *have done with, perform, finish; die.* (DEFUNCT.)

dēhonestō, -āre, —, —, *dishonor; disfigure.*

dēiciō (dēiiciō), -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, [dē+iaciō], *throw down, lay down; throw into; dislodge, rout; kill, destroy; disappoint.* eā spē dēiectī, *disappointed in this expectation.*

dēiectus, see dēiciō.

dēiectus, -ūs, [dēiciō], m., *slope, declivity.*

dein, see deinde.

deinceps [dein + cap-, from capiō], adv., *one after another, in succession.*

deinde, or dein, [dē + inde], adv., *thereafter, afterwards, next.*

dēlātus, see dēferō.

dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *delight, please.* (DELECTATION.)

dēlēctus, see dēligō.

dēlēctus, -a, -um, [part. of dēligō], adj., *picked, select, chosen.* As subst., dēlēctī, -ōrum, m. pl., DELEGATES.

dēlēgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dē + lēgō], *send away, despatch; refer.*

dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *erase; blot out, destroy, overthrow; finish;* of disgrace, *wipe out.* (DELETE.)

dēlīberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dē, cf. lībra, *balance*], *weigh, consider,* DELIBERATE; *consult* an oracle.

dēlībrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dē + liber, *bark*], *remove the bark, peel.*

dēliciae, -ārum, [cf. dēlectō], f., pl., *delight, pleasure; allurement; luxury.*

dēlīctum, -ī, [dēlinquō], n., *crime, offence.*

dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus, [dē + legō], *choose, pick out, select.*

dēligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dē + ligō], *bind together, bind fast.*

dēlītēscō, -lītēscere, -lituī, —, [dē + latēscō, from lateō], *hide oneself, lie in wait.*

Dēmarātus, -ī, m., *Demaratus*, the father of Tarquinius Prīscus.

dēmēns, -mentis, [dē + mēns], adj., *mad,* DEMENTED; *wild, foolish.*

dēmergō, -ere, -sī, -sus, [dē + mergō], *sink, submerge.*

dēmessus, perf. part. of dēmetō.

dēmetō, -ere, -messuī, -messus, [dē + metō], *reap.*

Dēmētrius, -ētrī, [Δημήτριος], m., *Demetrius*, father of Philip, king of Macedonia.

dēmigrātiō, -ōnis, [dēmigrō], f., *emigration.*

dēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dē + migrō], *migrate, depart, go away.*

dēminuō, -minuere, -minuī, -minūtus, [dē + minuō], *lessen*, DIMINISH; *impair.*

dēmissus, -a, -um [perf. part. of dēmittō], adj., *dropped; low.* capite dēmissō, *with downcast face.*

dēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [dē + mittō], *let down, let fall; put down;* of the head, *bow.*

dēmō, dēmere, dēmpsī, dēmptus, [dē + emō, *take*], *take down, take.*

dēmōlior, -īrī, -ītus sum, [dē + mōlior], dep., *throw down*, DEMOLISH, *raze.*

dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dē + mōnstrō, *show*], *point out, show, mention; explain*, DEMONSTRATE.

dēmum, [dē], adv., *at length, at last.* tum dēmum, *then indeed, then at last, not till then.*

dēnārius, -a, -um, [dēnī], adj., *of ten each, worth ten asses.* As subst. dēnārius, -ārī, m., *denarius*, a silver coin originally worth ten, afterward sixteen, *asses;* = about $0.20.

dēnegō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [dē + negō], *refuse, deny; say no.*

dēnī, -ae, -a, [decem], distrib. num. adj., *ten each, ten apiece.*

dēnique, adv., *and thereafter; at last; in short; at any rate.*

dēns, dentis, m., *tooth.* (DENTIST.)

dēnsus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *thick*, DENSE, *crowded.*

dēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dē + nūntiō], *announce, declare; threaten; order.* (DENOUNCE.)

dēpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, [dē + pellō], *drive out, expel; avert, remove.*

dēperdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [dē + perdō, *destroy*], *destroy, lose.*

dēpereō, -īre, -iī, -peritūrus, [dē + pereō], PERISH, *die, be lost.*

dēpingō, -pingere, -pīnxī, dēpictus, [dē + pingō], DEPICT, *paint, draw.*

dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, dēpositus, [dē + pōnō], *lay down, place; lay aside, resign.* (DEPOSIT.)

dēpopulor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [dē + populor], dep., *lay waste, ravage.* Part. dēpopulātus, pass., *devastated.* (DEPOPULATE.)

dēportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dē + portō], *carry off; bring home; obtain.* (DEPORT.)

dēposcō, -poscere, -poposcī, —, [dē + poscō], *demand.*

dēpositus, see dēpōnō.

dēprāvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dē + prāvus], *pervert, corrupt.* (DEPRAVED.)

dēprecātor, -ōris, [dēprecor], m., *intercessor.* eō dēprecātōre, *by his intercession.*

dēprecor, -ārī, -ātus, [dē + precor, *pray*], dep., *pray to be delivered from, plead against; ask for quarter.* (DEPRECATE.)

dēprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsus [dē + prehendō], *seize, catch; surprise; detect.*

dēprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus, [dē + premō], *press down, sink.* (DEPRESS.)

dēpugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dē + pugnō], *fight decisively, contend.*

dērēctus, -a, -um, (part. of dērigō), adj., *straight, perpendicular.*

dērigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctus, [dē + regō], *set straight, direct, steer.*

dērīvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dē + rīvus, *stream*], *draw off.* (DERIVE.)

dērogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dē + rogō], *take away.*

dēscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsus, [dē + scandō], *climb down,* DESCEND, *march down; dismount;* DESCEND *to, resort to.*

dēscīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, dēscītus, [dē + scīscō], *withdraw, desert, rebel.*

dēscrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, [dē + scrībō], *copy off, write down;* DESCRIBE, *mark off, define.*

dēsecō, -āre, -secuī, -sectus, [dē + secō], *cut off.*

dēserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertus [dē + serō, *join*], *leave, abandon,* DESERT.

dēsertor, -ōris, [dēserō], m., DESERTER.

dēsertus, see dēserō.

dēsertus, -a, -um, [part. of dēserō], adj., DESERTED, *solitary; lonely.*

dēsīderium, -de'rī, [dēsīderō], n., *longing, desire; grief, regret.*

dēsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *long for; ask, need; miss, lack.* (DESIDERATUM.)

dēsidia, -ae, f., *indolence.*

dēsignō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dē + signō, *mark*], *point out,* DESIGNATE.

dēsiliō, -silīre, -siluī, -sultus, [dē + saliō, *leap*], *leap down, dismount.* (DESULTORY.)

dēsinō, -sinere, -siī, -situs, [dē + sinō], *cease, give up.*

dēsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitus, [dē + sistō], *leave off, cease,* DESIST *from, give up.*

dēspectus, -ūs, m., *view.*

dēspērātiō, -ōnis, [dēspērō], f., DESPERATION, *despair.*

dēspērātus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part. of dēspērō], adj., *without hope,* DESPERATE, *abandoned.*

dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dē + spērō], *despair of, give up hope of; give up.*

dēspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, [dē + speciō, *look*], *look down upon, look down; disdain.*

dēspoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dē + spoliō], DESPOIL, *rob.*

dēstinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make fast, fix; resolve, intend; assign, devote.* (DESTINATION.)

dēstitī, see dēsistō.

dēstituō, -uere, -stituī, -stitūtus, [dē + statuō], *desert, abandon, leave.* (DESTITUTE.)

dēstrictus, see dēstringō.

dēstringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictus, [dē + stringō, *pluck off*], *strip off;* of a sword, *draw.*

dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, —, fut. inf., dēfutūrum esse or dēfore, [dē + sum], *be away; be wanting, be absent; fail, desert.*

dēsuper, [dē + super], adv., *from above.*

dētegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctus, [dē + tegō], *uncover, expose; reveal, betray.* (DETECT.)

dētendō, -ere, -tendī, -tēnsus, [dē + tendō], *unstretch;* of a tent, *strike.*

dēterior, -ius, adj. in comp. degree, sup. dēterrimus, [dē], *worse.*

dēterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territus, [dē + terreō], *frighten off, prevent,* DETER; *repress.* **dēterrēre nē, quō minus** or **quīn**, *to prevent from.*

dētineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, [dē + teneō], *hold off; hinder*, DETAIN.

dētrāctus, see dētrahō.

dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, dētrāctus, [dē + trahō], *drag off, remove; subtract, deprive; disparage*, DETRACT.

dētrīmentum, -ī, [dē, cf. terō, *wear away*], n., *loss, damage, injury; repulse, defeat.* (DETRIMENT.)

dēturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dē + turbō], *drive off.*

deus, -ī, m., *god*, DEITY.

dēvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus, [dē + vehō], *carry away, remove, convey.* equīs dēvexerat, *he had brought on horseback.*

dēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, [dē + veniō], *come to, reach.*

dēvexus, -a, -um, [dēvehō], adj., *sloping.* As subst., dēvexa, -ōrum, n. pl., *slopes.*

dēvictus, part. of dēvincō.

dēvincō, -ere, dēvīcī, dēvictus, [dē + vincō], *conquer, subdue.*

dēvolō, -āre, —, fut. part. dēvolātūrus, [dē + volō], *fly down; fly away, hasten.*

dēvorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, DEVOUR, *consume.*

dēvoveō, -ēre, -vōvī, -vōtus, [dē + voveō], DEVOTE, *consecrate.*

dexter, -tera or -tra, -terum or -trum, adj., *to the right, on the right; skilful.* As subst., dextera or dextra, -ae, f., (sc. manus), *the right hand.*

dextra, -ae, see dexter.

diadēma, -atis, [διάδημα], n., DIADEM, *royal crown.*

Diāna, -ae, f., *Diana*, an ancient Italian goddess of the moon, later identified by the Romans with the Greek Artemis, goddess of the chase.

diciō, -ōnis, pl. and nom. sing. not in use, f., *dominion, sovereignty, authority.*

dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *dedicate, offer.*

dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus, *say, speak; tell, name; mean; appoint; speak* in public, *plead.* (CONTRADICT.) iūs dīcere, *administer justice, hold court.* causam dīcere, *to plead one's cause, to defend oneself.* diem dīcere, *to set a day.*

dictātor, -ōris, [dictō], m., DICTATOR, a Roman magistrate of unlimited power, at first appointed only in great emergencies.

dictātūra, -ae, [dictātor], f., *office of dictator, dictatorship.*

dictiō, -ōnis, [cf. dīcō], f., *speaking, pleading.* (DICTION.)

dictitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dīcō], intens., *say often, assert, insist.*

dictū, supine of dīcō.

dictum, -ī, [dīcō], n., *saying, word; command.* dictō audientēs, *obedient.* (DICTUM.)

dīdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, [dis- + dūcō], *lead apart, separate.*

diēs, diēī, m. and f., *day; time.* multō diē, *late in the day.* in diēs, *day by day, every day.* diem ex diē, *day after day.* in diem, *at a date*, i.e. for payment. diem dīcere alicui, *to bring a complaint against, arraign.*

differō, differre, distulī, dīlātus, [dis- + ferō], *spread, scatter; put off, delay;* DIFFER, *be different.*

difficilis, -e, comp. difficilior, sup. difficillimus, [dis- + facilis], adj., *hard*, DIFFICULT; *troublesome; ill-natured.* iter difficile, *a road difficult to pass over, impracticable.*

difficultās, -ātis, [difficilis], f., DIFFICULTY, *trouble, distress.*

diffīdō, -fīdere, -fīsus sum, [dis- + fīdō], semi-dep., *distrust; despair of.*

diffundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus, [dis- + fundō], *pour out, spread out.*

digitus, -ī, m., *finger;* as a measure, *finger's breadth*, one sixteenth of a Roman foot, .728 inch: **digitus pollex**, *thumb.* (DIGIT.)

dignitās, -ātis, [dignus], f., *worth, merit*, DIGNITY; *rank; reputation, honor.* **corporis dignitās**, *presence.*

dignor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [dignus], dep., *deem worthy, deign, condescend.* (DIGNIFY.)

dignus, -a, -um, adj., *worthy, deserving; fitting, proper.*

dīiūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dis- + iūdicō], *decide.*

dīlēctus, -ūs, [dīligō], m., *enrollment, draft.*

dīligēns, -entis, [part. of dīligō], adj., *industrious, attentive*, DILIGENT; *scrupulous.*

dīligenter, comp. dīligentius, sup. dīligentissimē, [dīligēns], adv., *industriously, carefully, punctually*, DILIGENTLY.

dīligentia, -ae, [dīligēns], f., *activity*, DILIGENCE, *industry.*

dīligō, -ligere, -lēxī, -lēctus, [dis- + legō], *single out; value, prize, love.*

dīmēnsus, see dīmētior.

dīmētior, -mētīrī, -mēnsus, [dis- + mētior], dep., *measure, measure off;* of work, *lay out.* Part. **dīmēnsus**, pass., *Caesar*, Bk. II. chap. 19. (DIMENSION.)

dīmicātiō, -ōnis, [dīmicō], f., *fight; contest.*

dīmicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fight, contend.*

dīmidius, -a, -um, [dis- + medius], adj., *half;* as subst., dīmidium, dīmi'dī, n., *half.*

dīmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [dis- + mittō], *send in different directions;* DISMISS; *let go, let slip, lose; abandon, leave; give up.*

dīrigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctus, [dis + regō], DIRECT, *steer.*

dirimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptus, [dis- + emō], *take apart; interrupt, put an end to.*

dīripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus, [dis- + -rapiō], *plunder, pillage; take away.*

dīruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutus, [dis- + ruō], *overthrow, demolish, destroy.*

dīrus, -a, -um, adj., *fearful, dreadful*, DIRE.

dis- or **dī-**, inseparable prep., used only as a prefix, *apart, in different directions; between, among; not, un-; utterly, entirely.*

Dīs, Dītis, m., *god of the lower world, Dis, Pluto.*

discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, [dis- + cēdō], *disperse, scatter, separate; go away, withdraw; remain; give up, resign.*

discernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus, [dis + cernō], *distinguish.*

discessus, -ūs, [discēdō], m., *departure; marching off, decamping.*

discidium, -ci'dī, n., *disagreement, dissension.*

disciplīna, -ae, [discipulus], f., *instruction, teaching, education; learning, knowledge, science, culture.* (DISCIPLINE.)

discipulus, -ī, [discō], m., *scholar, pupil, follower.* (DISCIPLE.)

disclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus, [dis- + claudō], *separate.*

discō, discere, didicī, —, *learn, become acquainted with; learn how.*

discutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussus, [dis- + quatiō], *shatter, clear away.*

disertē, [disertus], adv., *clearly, eloquently.*

disertus, -a, -um, comp. disertior, sup. disertissimus, [part. of disserō, *argue*], adj., *skilful; clear, well-spoken, fluent, eloquent.*

disiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [dis- + iaciō], *disperse, scatter; rout; dash to pieces, destroy.*

dispālātus, -a, -um, adj., *straggling, astray.*

dispār, disparis, [dis- + pār], adj., *unequal.* (DISPARITY.)

dispergō, -ere, -spersī, -spersus, [dis- + spargō, *scatter*], *scatter,* DISPERSE.

dispersus, see dispergō.

dispiciō, -ere, dispexī, dispectus, [dis- + speciō], *descry, perceive; consider, reflect upon.*

dispōnō, -ere, disposuī, dispositus, [dis- + pōnō], *place here and there, distribute; array, arrange; station, post; adjust,* DISPOSE.

disputō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dis- + putō], *weigh, examine, discuss; argue,* DISPUTE.

dissēnsiō, -ōnis, f., DISSENSION, *strife.*

dissentiō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, dissēnsus, [dis- + sentiō], *differ, disagree,* DISSENT; *quarrel.*

disserō, -serere, —, —, [dis- + serō, *sow*], *plant at intervals.*

dissideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessus, [dis- + sedeō], *be at variance, differ*

dissipō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *scatter, disperse.* (DISSIPATE.)

dissolvō, -solvere, -solvī, -solūtus, [dis- + solvō], *disunite, destroy; abolish, annul.* (DISSOLVE, DISSOLUTION.)

distendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus, [dis- + tendō], *stretch out, divide.* (DISTEND.)

distineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, [dis- + teneō], *keep apart, separate; hinder, delay.*

distō, -stāre, —, —, [dis- + stō], *stand apart, be apart, be* DISTANT.

distrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctus, [dis- + trahō], *draw apart.* (DISTRACT.)

distribuō, -ere, distribuī, distribūtus, [dis- + tribuō], *divide,* DISTRIBUTE, *apportion, spread.*

districtus, -a, -um, [part. of distringō], adj., *harassed, distracted, busy.*

distringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictus, [dis- + stringō], *draw asunder; keep busy, engage.*

dītissimus, see dīves.

diū, comp. diūtius, sup. diūtissimē, adv., *for a long time.* **quam diū**, *as long as.*

diurnus, -a, -um, [cf. diēs], adj., *of the day, by day.* (DIURNAL.)

diūtinus, -a, -um [diū], adj., *of long duration, lasting, long.*

diūturnitās, -ātis, [diūturnus], f., *long duration.*

diūturnus, -a, -um, comp. -ior [diū], adj., *long, long continued.*

dīversus, -a, -um, sup. dīversissimus, [part. of dīvertō], adj., *opposite; apart; in different directions, different.* (DIVERS, DIVERSE.)

dīvertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, [dis- + vertō], *go different ways, separate.* (DIVERT.)

dīves, -itis, comp. dītior, sup. dītissimus, adj., *rich, wealthy.*

Dīviciācus, -ī, [Kel. *Deiviciacos*, -from *deivos*, 'god'], m.:

(1) An Aeduan of great influence, loyal to Caesar, who at his intercession pardoned Dumnorix, his brother, leader of the Aeduan national party which was hostile to Rome and the Bellovaci. Cf. note to p. 188, l. 11.

(2) A chief of the Suessiones.

Dīvicō, -ōnis, [Kel., from *deivos*, 'god'], m., leader of the Helvetii in their war with Cassius, 107 B.C., and head of an embassy to Caesar, 58 B.C.

dīvidō, -videre, -vīsī, -vīsus, *separate*, DIVIDE, *part; distribute, share.* (DIVISION.)

dīvīnus, -a, -um, [dīvus], adj., *of a god, godlike*, DIVINE; *prophetic.*

dīvitiae, -ārum, [dīves], f. pl., *riches, wealth.*

dīvum, -ī, [dīvus], n., *the sky.* Only with sub in sub dīvō, *under the sky, in the open air.*

dīvus, -a, -um, adj., *of a deity, godlike; deified, sainted*, a term applied to Julius Caesar, and to many of the Roman emperors, after death.

dō, dare, dedī, datus, *give, give up, grant, confer; surrender; offer, furnish, allow.* poenās dare, *to suffer punishment.* negōtium dare, *to commission, direct.* in fugam dare, *to put to flight.* (DATA.)

doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus, *teach; inform; point out; show, tell.* (DOCILE.)

doctor, -ōris, [doceō], m., *teacher, instructor.* (DOCTOR.)

doctrīna, -ae, [doceō], f., *teaching, instruction; learning.* (DOCTRINE.)

doctus, -a, -um, comp. doctior, sup. doctissimus, [part. of doceō], adj., *learned, skilled, experienced.*

documentum, -ī, [doceō], n., *lesson, warning.*

doleō, dolēre, doluī, dolitūrus, *suffer; be annoyed.*

dolor, -ōris, [doleō], m., *pain; grief, distress.* (DOLOROUS.)

dolus, -ī, m., *device; cunning, fraud, deceit.*

domesticus, -a, -um, [domus], adj., *of the house; of the family*, DOMESTIC; *home, native, one's own; civil.*

domiciliuni, -ci'lī, [domus], n., *habitation; dwelling-place.* (DOMICILE.)

domina, -ae, f., *mistress.*

dominātiō, -ōnis, [dominor], f., *rule, dominion, despotism.* (DOMINATION.)

dominātus, -ūs, [dominor], m., *rule, command, mastery.*

dominor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [dominus], dep., *rule, have dominion.*

dominus, -ī, [domō], m., *master, ruler, lord;* of a ship, *captain.* (DOMINIE.)

Domitius, Domitī, m., *Domitius*, gentile name of:

(1) *L. Domitius Ahēnōbarbus*, consul in 54 B.C.

(2) *Cn. Domitius*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

domō, -āre, domuī, domitus, *tame, subdue, master.*

domus, -ūs, f., *house, dwelling, home.* Loc. domī, *at home.* Acc. domum, *homewards, home.* Abl. domō, *from home.*

dōnātīvum, -ī, [dōnō], n., *largess,*

gift, distribution of money. (DONATIVE.)

dōnec, conj., *as long as, while, until.*

dōnicum, conj., *while, until.*

Donnotaurus, see Valerius.

dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dōnum], *give, present, bestow; endow, gift.* (DONATION, DONOR.)

dōnum, -ī, n., *gift, present, reward.*

dorsum, -ī, *back* of a beast of burden; *range, ridge.*

dōs, dōtis, [dō], f., DOWRY, DOWER.

dracō, -ōnis, m., *snake*, DRAGON.

Druidēs, -um, m. pl., *Druids*, a Gallic priesthood.

Dubis, -is, [Kel., = 'the Black'], m., a river of Gaul, tributary of the Arar (*Saône*); now the *Doubs.*

dubitātiō, -ōnis, [dubitō], f., *doubt, hesitation.*

dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dubius], *doubt; hesitate, delay; deliberate.* (DUBITATIVE.)

dubius, -a, -um, adj., *doubtful, uncertain; critical.* (DUBIOUS.)

ducentī, -ae, -a, [duo + centum], adj., *two hundred.*

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, *lead, guide, conduct;* of a trench, *make; protract, prolong, put off; think, consider, reckon.* uxōrem dūcere, in mātrimōnium dūcere, and sometimes dūcere alone, *to marry.*

ductus, -ūs, [dūcō], m., *lead, generalship, command.*

Duīlius, -ī'lī, m., *Duilius*, the family name of *C. Duīlius*, the conqueror of the Carthaginians off Mylae in 260 B.C.

dulcis, -e, comp. dulcior, sup. dulcissimus, adj., *sweet; agreeable, pleasant.* (DULCET, DULCIMER.)

dum, conj., *while, as long as; until; provided, if only.*

dum modo, [dum + modo], conj., *provided, if only.*

Dumnorīx, -īgis, [Kel., = 'Great King'], m., an Aeduan, brother of Diviciacus, and son-in-law of Orgetorix; a bitter enemy of Caesar, and apparently leader of the Aeduan anti-Roman party, until slain by Caesar's orders.

dumtaxat, (dum taxat, cf. tangō), adv., *only.*

duo, -ae, -o, acc. m., **duo**, adj., *two; both.* (DUAL.)

duodecim, or **XII**, [duo + decem], indecl. num., *twelve.* (DUODECIMAL.)

duodecimus, -a, -um, [duodecim], num. adj., *twelfth.*

duodēnī, -ae, -a, [cf. duodecim], distrib. num. adj., *twelve at a time, twelve each.*

duodēquadrāgēsimus, -a, -um, [duo + dē + quadrāgēsimus], num. adj., *the thirty-eighth.*

duodēseptuāgintā, or **LXVIII**, [duo + dē + septuāgintā], indecl. num. adj., *sixty-eight.*

duodēvīgintī, or **XVIII**, [duo + dē + vīgintī], adj., *eighteen.*

duplex, -icis, [duo, cf. plicō, *fold*], adj., *twofold, double.* (DUPLEX, DUPLICITY.)

duplicātus, -a, -um, (part. of duplicō), adj., *double.*

duplicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, (duplex), *make double, double.* (DUPLICATE).

dūritia, -ae, [dūrus], f., *hardness, hardship.*

dūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, (dūrus), *harden.* (ENDURE, DURATION.)

Dūrus, -ī, m., *Durus*, surname of

Q. Laberius Dūrus, one of Caesar's military tribunes.

dūrus, -a, -um, sup. dūrissimus, adj., *hard, severe, difficult; rough, rude; unfeeling, cruel.*

dux, ducis, [cf. dūcō], m., *leader, guide; commander, general.*

Dyrrachīnus, -a, -um, (Dyrrachium), adj., *of* or *at Dyrrachium.*

Dyrrachium, -a/chī, n., *Dyrrachium*, formerly called *Epidamnus*, a town in Illyricum, nearly opposite Brundisium.

E

ē, prep., see **ex**.

eā, [abl. f. of **is**; sc. **viā**], adv., *on that side, there.*

Eburōnēs, -um, [Kel., from Eburos, a proper name], m. pl., a Belgic people north of the Treveri.

Eburovīcēs, -cum, m. pl., *the Eburovices*, a division of the Aulerci.

ecquid, inter. adv., *at all?* merely emphasizing the question, and often not translated in words.

ēdīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictus, [ē + dīcō], *declare, announce; order.* diem ēdīcere, *to appoint a day.*

ēdictum, -ī, [ēdīcō], n., *proclamation.* (EDICT.)

ēdiscō, -ere, -didicī, —, [ex + discō], *learn by heart, commit to memory.*

ēditus, -a, -um, [part. of ēdō], adj., *elevated, high.*

ēdō, ēdere, ēdidī, ēditus, [ē + dō], *give out, put forth, exhibit; give birth to, bear; publish, announce; perform, cause, inflict.* (EDIT.)

ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [ē + dūcō], *lead forth; bring up, rear.*

ēducō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ē, cf. dūcō], *bring up, rear,* EDUCATE.

effēmino, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex + fēmina], *make* EFFEMINATE, *weaken, enervate.*

efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus, [ex + ferō], *carry out, publish; carry out* for burial, *bury; raise, praise, extol;* ELATE.

efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [ex + faciō], *work out; bring to pass;* EFFECT, *accomplish; make, render; build, construct.* (EFFICIENT.)

efflāgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex + flāgitō], *demand earnestly, insist.*

effodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossus, [ex + fodiō], *dig out, tear out.*

effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —, [ex + fugiō], *flee, escape; avoid, shun.*

effundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus, [ex + fundō], *pour out, shed; pour forth, spread abroad; throng; squander, waste.*

effūsus, -a, -um, [part. of effundō], adj., *unrestrained, lavish.*

egēns, -entis, [part. of egeō], adj., *needy.*

egeō, -ēre, eguī, *need.*

Ēgeria, -ae, f., *Ēgeria*, one of the *Camēnae*, or Muses.

ēgī, see agō.

ego, meī, personal pron., *I*; pl., nōs, nostrum, nōbīs, *we.* (EGO.)

ēgredior, -gredī, -gressus, [ex + gradior, *step*], dep., *go forth, leave;* from a ship, *land, disembark.*

ēgregiē, [ēgregius], adv., *admirably, splendidly.*

ēgregius, -a, -um, [ex + grex, *herd, crowd*], adj., *eminent, distinguished, excellent.* (EGREGIOUS.)

ēgressus, -ūs, [ēgredior], m., *landing-place.* (EGRESS.)

ēgressus, -a, -um, part. of ēgredior.

ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectus, [ē + iaciō], *cast out; drive out, expel; cast ashore.* sē eicere, *rush.*

ēlābor, ēlābī, ēlāpsus sum, [ē + lābor], dep., *slip away; escape.* (ELAPSE.)

ēlabōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ē + labōrō], *labor, endeavor; work out.* (ELABORATE.)

ēlātē, comp. ēlātius, sup. ēlātissimē, [ēlātus], adv., *loftily, proudly.*

ēlātus, see efferō.

ēlātus, -a, -um, [part. of efferō], adj., *exalted, lofty.* (ELATED.)

ēlēctus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part. of ēligō], adj., *chosen, picked.* (ELECT.)

ēlegantia, -ae, [ēlegāns], f., *grace,* ELEGANCE.

elephantus, -ī, nom. sing., usually elephās or elephāns, [-antis], m., ELEPHANT.

Eleutetī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Eleuteti*, a people of central Gaul.

ēliciō, -licere, -licuī, -licitus, *draw out, entice,* ELICIT.

ēligō, ēligere, ēlēgī, ēlēctus, [ē + legō], *pick out; choose.* (ELECT.)

ēloquentia, -ae, [ēloquēns], f., ELOQUENCE.

ēlūceō, -lūcēre, -lūxī, —, [ē + lūceō], *shine out, shine forth; be apparent, be conspicuous, be manifest.*

ēmendō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ē + mendum, *fault*], *correct,* EMEND; *atone for, compensate for.*

ēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, —, [ex + migrō, *depart*], *remove,* EMIGRATE.

ēmineō, -minēre, -minuī, —, *stand out, project; be prominent, be conspicuous.* (EMINENT.)

ēminus, [ē + manus], adv., *aloof, at a distance; from afar.*

ēmittō, ēmittere, ēmīsī, ēmissus, [ē + mittō], *send forth; drive, hurl, discharge; let loose, set free; lose; throw away, let go; give utterance to.* (EMIT, EMISSION.)

emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptus, *buy, purchase; acquire, obtain.*

ēnāscor, -nāscī, -nātus, [ex + nāscor], dep., *grow out;* of branches, *shoot out.*

enim, [nam], conj., postpositive, *for, for in fact; and in fact.* neque enim, *and (with good reason) for . . . not, for in fact . . . not.*

ēnītor, ēnītī, ēnīxus or ēnīsus sum, [ē + nītor], dep., *mount; make an effort, strive.*

Ennius, Ennī, m., *Ennius*, gentile name of *Q. Ennius*, the famous epic and dramatic poet; he lived from 239 to 169 B.C.

ēnumerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ē + numerō], *count over,* ENUMERATE; *relate, detail, describe.*

ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ē + nūntiō], *speak out, say, assert; disclose, reveal, report.* (ENUNCIATE.)

eō, īre, īvī or iī, itum, *go; walk, ride, march, move, advance.* īnfitiās īre, *to deny.* obviam īre, *go to meet.*

eō, [cf. is], adv., *on that account; to that place, thither; to that degree, so far.*

eōdem, [cf. īdem], adv., *in the same place; to the same place; to the same purpose; thereto, besides.*

epigramma, -atis, [ἐπίγραμμα], n., *inscription;* EPIGRAM, *poem.*

Ēpīrus, -ī, [Ἤπειρος], m., *Epirus*, a country northwest of Greece and west of Thessaly.

epistula or **epistola**, -ae, [ἐπιστολή], f., *letter*, EPISTLE.

Eporēdorīx, -īgis, m., *Eporedorix.*

epulae, -ārum, f. pl., *banquet.*

epulor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [cf. epulae], *feast, banquet, dine.*

eques, -itis, m., *horseman; cavalryman; knight, member of the equestrian order.*

equester, -tris, -tre, [eques], adj., *of a horseman*, EQUESTRIAN; *of cavalry, cavalry; of the knights.*

equitātus, -ūs, [equitō, *ride*], m., *cavalry.*

equitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [eques], *ride.*

equus, -ī, m., *horse, steed.* (EQUINE.)

Eratosthenēs, -is, m., a Greek philosopher of the third century B.C.

ērēctus, -a, -um, [ērigō], adj., *raised, elevated, high.*

ēreptus, see ēripiō.

ergā, prep. with acc., *towards, to, with respect to.*

ergō, adv., *consequently, therefore.* With preceding gen., *in consequence of, on account of.*

ērigō, ērigere, ērēxī, ērēctus, [ē + regō], *raise up*, ERECT; *rouse, stir up.*

ēripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus, [ex + rapiō, *seize*], *take away, remove; deprive; rescue, save.* sē ēripere, *to rescue oneself, make one's escape.*

errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *wander; be in* ERROR, *be mistaken*, ERR.

error, -ōris, [cf. errō], m., *wandering, straying;* ERROR, *mistake.*

ērumpō, ērumpere, ērūpī, ēruptus, [ē + rumpō], *break out, burst forth.* (ERUPT.)

ēruō, ēruere, ēruī, ērutus, [ē + ruō], *cast forth; dig up; destroy utterly.*

ēruptiō, -ōnis, [cf. ērumpō], f., *sortie; rush.* (ERUPTION.)

Eryx, Erycis, [Ἔρυξ], f., *Eryx*, a high mountain in the northwestern part of Sicily; famous for a temple of Venus on it. See map inside front cover.

ēsca, -ae, f., *food, bait.*

ēscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus, [ē + scandō], *climb up, mount, ascend, embark.*

essedārius, -dārī, [essedum], m., *fighter from a chariot, warrior* who fights from a chariot.

essedum, -ī, n., *war-chariot, chariot.*

Esuviī, -ōrum, [Kel., from *Esus*, the Gallic Mars; 'Sons of Esus'], m., pl., *the Esuvii*, a Gallic people, between the Carnutes and the Lexovii. See map opp. p. 155.

et, adv. and conj.:
(1) As adv., *also, too, even.*
(2) As conj., *and; and yet, but.*
et . . . et, *both . . . and.*

etiam, [et + iam], adv. and conj., *and also, also, even.* etiam tum, *even then.* etiamnum, *still, even yet.* nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam, *not only . . . but also.*

Etrūria, -ae, f., *Etruria*, a country in Italy, northwest of Rome; modern Tuscany.

Etrūscī, -ōrum, m., pl., *the Etruscans, Tuscans, the inhabitants of Etruria.*

etsī, [et + sī], conj., *although, even if, and yet.*

Eumenēs, -is, [Εὐμένης], m., *Eu-*

menes, referring to *Eumenes II.*, king of Pergamum in Asia Minor from 197 to 158 B.C.

Eurīpidēs, **-is**, m., *Euripides;* see note to p. 63, l. 4.

Eurōpa, **-ae**, f., *Europe.*

ēvādō, **ēvādere**, **ēvāsī**, **ēvāsus**, [ē + vādō], *go forth; get away, escape; turn out, become.* (EVADE, EVASION.)

ēvellō, **-vellere**, **-vellī**, **-vulsus**, [ex + vellō, *pluck*], *pull out.*

ēveniō, **-venīre**, **-vēnī**, **-ventus**, [ex + veniō], *come out, turn out.*

ēventus, **-ūs**, [cf. ēveniō], m., *outcome, issue, result; chance, fortune; fate, accident.* (EVENT.)

ēversus, see ēvertō.

ēvertō, **ēvertere**, **ēvertī**, **ēversus**, [ē + vertō], *overturn; destroy, ruin.*

ēvocātus, **-ī**, [ēvocō], m., *volunteer veteran*, one who volunteered for additional service after his discharge.

ēvocō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, [ē + vocō], *call forth, summon*, EVOKE; *induce to enlist* (cf. ēvocātus).

ēvolō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *fly away, fly up.*

ex, often before consonants **ē**, prep. with abl., *out of;* of place, *from, out of, down from;* of time, *from, since, after;* of source and material, *from, of;* of partition, *of, out of, from among;* of transition, *from, out of;* of cause, *from, by reason of, by, in consequence of;* of measure and correspondence, *according to, with, in, by, on.* **ex ūnā parte**, *on one side.*

In composition **ex-** becomes **ef-** before **f**, **ē-** before **b**, **d**, **g**, **i** consonant, **l**, **m**, **n**, and **v**.

exāctus, see exigō.

exacuō, **-acuere**, **-acuī**, **-acūtus**, [ex + acuō], *sharpen; excite, inflame.*

exadversum, [ex + adversum], adv. and prep. with acc., *opposite, over against.*

exaequō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, [cf. aequus], *make equal.*

exagitō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, [ex + agitō], *rouse, keep in motion, harass, attack; irritate, excite.*

exāminō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *weigh*, EXAMINE.

exanimō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, [exanimus, from ex + anima, *breath*], *put out of breath, deprive of life, kill.* Pass., *be exhausted, be out of breath.*

exārdēscō, **-ere**, **exārsī**, **exārsus**, [ex + ārdēscō], inch., *blaze out; break out; be provoked, rage.*

exarō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, [ex + arō], *plow out; raise; compose.*

exasperō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, [ex, asper], *irritate, provoke*, EXASPERATE.

exaudiō, **-īre**, **-īvī**, **-ītus**, [ex + audiō], *hear clearly, distinguish; discern, hear.*

excēdō, **-cēdere**, **-cessī**, **-cessus**, [ex + cēdō], *go forth, depart, withdraw; go beyond, surpass.* (EXCESS.)

excellēns, **-entis**, comp. **excellentior**, sup. **excellentissimus**, [part. of excellō], adj., *prominent; distinguished, surpassing*, EXCELLENT.

excellō, **-cellere**, —, **-celsus**, *be eminent*, EXCEL.

excelsus, **-a**, **-um**, comp. **excelsior**, [part. of excellō], adj., *lofty,*

high; distinguished, noble. As subst., **excelsum**, -ī, n., *a height.*

exceptus, see **excipiō**.

excerpō, -ere, excerpsī, excerptus, [ex + carpō], *pluck out, extract; choose, select.* (EXCERPT.)

excidium, -ci′dī, n., *overthrow; ruin, destruction.*

excieō and **exciō**, -cīre, -cīvī, -cītus or -citus, [ex + ciō], *call out, summon; rouse, excite.*

excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [ex + capiō], *take out; take up; take in; cut off, catch; receive; withstand; capture, take; encounter; succeed, follow.* (EXCEPT.)

excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of exciō], *call forth;* EXCITE; *erect, rear.*

exclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex + clāmō], *call out, cry aloud,* EXCLAIM.

exclūdō, -ere, exclūsī, exclūsus, [ex + claudō], *shut out,* EXCLUDE; *hinder, prevent.*

excōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex + cōgitō], *think out, contrive, invent.*

excolō, -colere, -coluī, -cultus, [ex + colō], *cultivate, improve; ennoble, refine.*

excruciō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *torture.*

excubitor, -ōris, [excubō], m., *sentinel.*

exculcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex + calcō, *trample*], *trample down.*

excursiō, -ōnis, [ex, cf. currō], f., *sally, sortie; expedition.* (EXCURSION.)

excursus, -ūs, [excurrō], m., *running forth, onset.* (EXCURSUS.)

excūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ex, causa], *excuse, make excuse for.*

exemplum, -ī, n., *specimen, copy,* EXAMPLE, *precedent.* **bonī exemplī servī**, *slaves of high character.*

exeō, -īre, -iī, -itus, [ex + eō], *go out, go forth, retire; march out; withdraw, leave; pass away, perish; turn out, result, become public.* (EXIT.)

exerceō, -ercēre, -ercuī, -ercitus, [ex + arceō], EXERCISE, *employ, drill, train; follow out, carry into effect, administer.*

exercitātiō, -ōnis, [exercitō], f., *exercise, training, discipline.*

exercitātus, -a, -um, comp. **exercitātior**, sup. **exercitātissīmus**, [exercitō, freq. of exerceō], adj., *exercised, trained, disciplined.*

exercitus, -ūs, [exerceō], m., *army.*

exhauriō, -īre, exhausī, exhaustus, [ex + hauriō], *draw out, empty,* EXHAUST; *impoverish; bring to an end.*

exhērēdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *disinherit.*

exhibeō, -ēre, exhibuī, exhibitus, [ex + habeō], *hold forth, present; show, display,* EXHIBIT.

exhorrēscō, -ere, exhorruī, —, [ex + horrēscō], inch., *tremble, shudder, be afraid, shrink from.*

exigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus, [ex + agō], *drive out, expel; finish; pass, spend; consider; demand,* EXACT.

exiguē (exiguus), adv., *scantily, barely, hardly.*

exiguitās, -ātis, [exiguus], f., *smallness; small number, fewness; shortness.*

exiguus, -a, -um, adj., *scanty, short, brief; poor.*

eximius, -a, -um, [cf. eximō], adj., *select, choice; distinguished, excellent, remarkable.*

eximō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptus, [ex + emō], *take out, remove; free, deliver.*

exīstimātiō, -ōnis, [exīstimō], f., *opinion, judgment; reputation.*

exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex + aestimō], *value, estimate; esteem, appreciate; suppose, think.*

exitium, -i'tī, [exeō], n., *destruction, ruin, mischief, death.*

exitus, -ūs, [exeō], m., *going out, departure; outlet, passage; close, conclusion, result; end of life, death.* (EXIT.)

exorior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, [ex + orior], dep., *come forth, rise, appear; begin.*

exōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex + ōrō], *prevail upon, persuade, induce.*

expediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [ex, pēs], *disengage, let loose, set free; prepare, procure; be serviceable, be expedient.*

expedītiō, -ōnis, f., EXPEDITION.

expedītus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part. of expediō], adj., *unincumbered, light-armed; ready, easy, unembarrassed.* legiōnēs expedītae, *legions without baggage.* As subst., expedītus, -ī, m., *light-armed soldier.*

expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, [ex + pellō], *drive out, remove,* EXPEL. (EXPULSION.)

experior, -perīrī, -pertus sum, dep., *try, prove, test;* EXPERIENCE, *know by experience; find; try, attempt.* (EXPERIMENT.)

expiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex + piō], EXPIATE, *atone for.*

expleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētus, *fill out, complete; make good.*

explicō, -āre, -plicāvī or -plicuī, -plicātus or -plicitus, [ex + plicō], *unfold; extend, deploy; disclose, display; set forth, explain.* (EXPLICIT.)

explōrātor, -ōris, [explōrō], m., *spy, scout.*

explōrātus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part. of explōrō], adj., *established, certain, sure.*

explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *search out,* EXPLORE; *spy out, reconnoitre; try, test.*

expōnō, -ere, exposuī, expositus, [ex + pōnō], *set forth, exhibit; land, disembark; abandon,* EXPOSE; *set forth, relate, explain.*

exposcō, -poscere, -poposcī, —, [ex + poscō], *request, demand.*

exprimō, -ere, expressī, expressus, [ex + premō], *press out, force out; wrest, elicit, extort;* EXPRESS, *portray, model.*

exprobrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex + probrum], *reproach with, blame for, charge, upbraid.*

expugnātiō, -ōnis, [expugnō], f., *storming; winning over by entreaties.*

expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex + pugnō], *take by storm, capture; overcome, win over.*

expulsus, see expellō.

exquīrō, -ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus, [ex + quaerō, *seek*], *seek out, search out; ask for, inquire into.* (EXQUISITE.)

exquīsītus, see exquīrō.

exsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, [ex + sequor], dep., *follow up, maintain, enforce.* (EXECUTE.)

exsilium, -i'lī, [exsul], n., EXILE.

exsistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, [ex + sistō], *come forth; arise, become;* EXIST, *be.*

exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex +

spectō], *look out for, wait to see, await; look to see,* EXPECT.

exsplendēscō, -splendēscere, -splenduī, —, [ex + splendēscō], inch., *shine forth, be distinguished.*

exspoliātus, part. of exspoliō.

exspoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *rob,* DESPOIL.

exstinguō, -stinguere, -stīnxī, exstīnctus, [ex + stinguō, *quench*], *put out,* EXTINGUISH; *abolish, blot out, kill, destroy.*

exstitī, see exsistō.

exstō, -stāre, —, —, [ex + stō], *stand forth; exist, be.*

exstruō, -ere, exstrūxī, exstrūctus, [ex + struō], *pile up, heap up, build.*

exsul, exsulis, [ex, cf. saliō], m., *exile.*

exter or **exterus**, -a, -um, comp. **exterior**, sup. extrēmus, or **extimus**, [ex], adj., *outward, outer, foreign.* Comp. exterior, -ius, *outer,* EXTERIOR. Sup. **extrēmus**, *last, last part of, at the end;* EXTREME, *uttermost.* As subst., **extrēmī**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the rear.*

exter or **exterus**, -tera, -terum, [ex], used only in the pl., adj., *on the outside, foreign.*

externus, -a, -um, [exter], adj., *outward,* EXTERNAL; *of another country, foreign.*

exterreō, -ēre, -terruī, -territus, *frighten thoroughly.*

exterritus, part. of exterreō.

extimēscō, -timēscere, -timuī, —, [ex + timēscō], inch., *be greatly terrified; fear greatly, dread.*

extrā, [exter], adv. and prep.:

(1) As adv., *on the outside, without.*

(2) As prep. with acc., *outside of, beyond, except; contrary to.*

extrahō, -ere, extrāxī, extrāctus, [ex + trahō], *draw out; protract, prolong.* (EXTRACT.)

extrēmō, [extrēmus], adv., *at last, finally.*

extrēmus, -a, -um, see exter.

extrūdō, -ere, -trūsī, -trūsus, [ex + trūdō], *thrust out, keep out.*

exuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, *draw out, pull off; strip, despoil.*

exūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstus, [ex + ūrō, *burn*], *burn up.*

F

faber, fabrī, m., *workman.*

Fabius, Fabī, m., the name of a distinguished Roman gens, in this book refers to:

(1) *C. Fabius*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

(2) *Q. Fabius Rullianus.*

(3) *Q. Fabius Maximus.*

(4) *Quintus Fabius Maximus*, called *Allobrogicus* in honor of his victory over the Allobroges, Arverni, and Ruteni in the year of his consulship, 121 B.C.; he celebrated a splendid triumph, and erected a triumphal arch in Rome across the Via Sacra near the temple of Vesta.

Fabricius, -bri'cī, *Fabricius*, gentile name of *C. Fabricius Luscīnus.*

fabricō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [cf. faber], *build, construct.* (FABRICATE.)

fābula, -ae, [cf. for, *speak*], f., *narration, story; play;* FABLE.

facētē, [facētus], adv., *wittily.*

facētus, -a, -um, adj., *witty, humorous.* (FACETIOUS.)

facile, comp. facilius, sup. facillimē, [facilis], adv., *easily, readily.*

facilis, -e, comp. facilior, sup. facillimus, [cf. faciō], adj., *easy, convenient, not difficult.* (FACILE.)

facinus, -oris, [cf. faciō], n., *action, deed; misdeed, crime.* facinus admittere or in sē admittere, *to become guilty of* (*a*) *crime.*

faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, *make; do, accomplish, form; bring about, cause; incur, suffer; act; choose, appoint; grant, furnish, give.* For pass., fīō, fierī, factus sum, see fīō. verba facere, *to speak.* certiōrem facere, *to inform.* iter facere, *to march.* vim facere, *to use violence.* imperāta facere, *to obey commands.* frūmentī cōpiam facere, *to furnish a supply of grain.* stīpendia facere, see stīpendium.

factiō, -ōnis, [faciō], f., *party, political party.* (FACTION.)

factū, pass. supine of faciō.

factum, -ī, [faciō], n., *deed, action, achievement.* (FACT.)

factus, see faciō and fīō.

facultās, -ātis, [facilis], f., *ability, capability; opportunity, chance; abundance, supply;* pl., *resources.* (FACULTY.)

fācundia, -ae, [fācundus], f., *eloquence, fluency.*

fāgus, -ī, f., *beech tree, beech.*

Falēriī, -ōrum, m., *Falerii*, the capital city of the Falisci, situated in southern Etruria, about 28 miles north of Rome.

Falernus, -a, -um, adj., *Falernian*, of the Ager Falernus, a district in Campania famous for its wine.

Faliscus, -a, -um, [Falēriī], adj., *of* or *belonging to Falerii.* As subst., Faliscus, -ī, m., *an inhabitant of Falerii, a Faliscan.*

fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsus, *deceive, cheat; fail, disappoint.* (FALLACIOUS.)

falsus, -a, -um, [part. of fallō], adj., *feigned,* FALSE, *pretended.*

falx, falcis, f., *sickle; hook* shaped like a sickle.

fāma, -ae, [cf. for, *speak*], f., *report, rumor, tradition;* FAME, *reputation.*

famēs, -is, f., *hunger;* FAMINE, *want.*

familia, -ae, [famulus, *servant*], f., *body of slaves* in one household, *family servants; estate; household,* FAMILY; including the whole body of serfs and retainers under the authority of a nobleman, *retinue.* mātrēs familiae, *matrons.*

familiāris, -e, [familia], adj., *of a house or household;* FAMILIAR, *intimate.* rēs familiāris, *private property, estate.* As subst., familiāris, -is, m., *friend, intimate acquaintance.*

familiāritās, -ātis, [familiāris], f., FAMILIARITY, *intimacy, friendship.*

fāmōsus, -a, -um, [fāma], adj., *famed,* FAMOUS; *slanderous, scandalous.*

famula, -ae, f., [famulus, *servant*], f., *maid-servant, handmaid.*

fānum, -ī, [cf. for, *speak*], n., *shrine, sanctuary, temple.* (FANE.)

fās, only nom. and acc. sing. in use, [cf. fārī, *to speak*], indecl., n., *right, allowable, lawful,* according to the laws of God and nature.

fascis, -is, m., *bundle, fagot;* pl., the *fasces*, a bundle of rods tied about an ax, carried before the highest Roman magistrates as a symbol of authority.

fāstī, -ōrum, [fāstus, sc. diēs], m., *calendar, annals.*

fastīgātus, -a, -um, [cf. fastīgium], adj., *sloping.*

fastīgium, fastīgī, n., *peak, height, top; slope, ridge.*

fātālis, -e, [fātum], adj., *of fate, fated;* FATAL; *deadly, destructive.*

fatīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *weary,* FATIGUE.

fātum, -ī, [cf. fārī, *to speak*], n., *ordained* in accordance with the laws of God and nature; FATE, *destiny.*

faucēs, -ium, f. pl., *throat; narrow way, pass.*

Faustulus, -ī, [dim. of faustus], m., *Faustulus*, name of the shepherd who found and reared Romulus and Remus.

faveō, favēre, fāvī, fut. part. fautūrus, FAVOR, *be propitious.*

favor, -ōris, [faveō], m., FAVOR, *good-will, applause.*

fēlīcitās, -ātis, [fēlīx, *happy*], f., *happiness, good fortune; success.* (FELICITY.)

fēlīciter, comp. fēlīcius, sup. fēlīcissimē, [fēlīx], adv., *luckily, happily; successfully.*

fēmina, -ae, f., *woman.* [FEMININE.)

femur, -oris or -inis, n., *thigh.*

fera, see ferus.

ferāx, -ācis, comp. ferācior, sup. ferācissimus, [ferō], adj., *fertile, productive.*

ferē, adv., *almost, nearly;* with words denoting time, *about; for the most part, usually.*

feriō, -īre, *strike;* see icō.

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *bear, carry, bring; lead, drive; impel, urge; bring forth, produce; endure, suffer; obtain, receive; assert, say, permit; move, propose; demand, require;* pass., *be borne, rush.* signa ferre, *to advance.* lēgem ferre, *to pass a law.*

ferōcia, -ae, [ferōx], f., *fierceness, bravery, courage.* (FEROCITY.)

ferōx, -ōcis, comp. ferōcior, sup. ferōcissimus, [cf. ferus], adj., *bold; confident, high-spirited; courageous, warlike.*

ferrāmentum, -ī, [ferrum], n., *tool* of iron.

ferreus, -a, -um, [ferrum], adj., *made of iron, iron; hard, cruel.* ferreae manus, *grappling-irons.*

ferrum, -ī, n., *iron;* figuratively, *iron point, sword.*

fertilis, -e, sup. fertilissimus, [ferō], adj., FERTILE.

fertilitās, -ātis, [fertilis], f., FERTILITY.

ferus, -a, -um, adj., *wild, untamed; uncultivated; desolate; rude, savage;* as subst., fera, -ae (sc. bēstia), f., *wild beast.*

fervefaciō, -fācere, -fēcī, -factus, [ferveō + faciō], *make hot, heat.*

fervēns, part. of ferveō.

ferveō, fervēre, —, —, *be hot.* (FERVID, FERVENT.)

festīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *hasten; do speedily.*

fēstum, -ī, n., *holiday,* FESTIVAL.

fictilis, -e, [fingō], adj., *of clay, earthen.*

fidēlis, -e, comp. fidēlior, sup. fidēlissimus, [fidēs], adj., *faithful, trustworthy.* (FIDELITY.)

fidēliter, [fidēlis], adv., *faithfully.*

fīdēns, -entis, [part. of fīdō], adj., *confident, courageous.*

fidēs, -eī, f., *trust, belief; good faith, loyalty; pledge of good faith, promise;* in business, *credit; confidence, trust; protection.*

fidūcia, -ae, [fīdus], f., *trust, confidence, reliance, self-confidence; boldness.*

figūra, -ae, [fingō], f., *shape, form,* FIGURE.

fīlia, -ae, f., *daughter.*

fīlius, fīlī, m., *son.* (FILIAL.)

fingō, fingere, fīnxī, fictus, *form, shape; conceive, imagine; invent, devise;* of the features, *change, control.* (FICTION.)

fīniō, fīnīre, fīnīvī, fīnītus, [fīnis], *limit, bound, define; end;* FINISH.

fīnis, -is, m., *limit, boundary, end, extent; purpose, object.* Pl., *territory, country.* (FINIS.)

fīnitimus, -a, -um, [fīnis], adj., *bordering on, neighboring.* As subst., fīnitimī, -ōrum, m. pl., *neighbors.*

fīō, fierī, factus, used as pass. of faciō, *be made, be done; become, happen; come about, come to pass.* **certior fierī**, *to be informed.*

fīrmē, comp. fīrmius, sup. fīrmissimē, [fīrmus], adv., FIRMLY, *strongly.*

fīrmitās, -ātis, [fīrmus], f., *firmness, durability, strength; endurance, constancy.*

firmiter, [fīrmus], sup. fīrmissimē, adv., *solidly,* FIRMLY.

fīrmitūdō, -inis, [fīrmus], f., *strength, solidity.* (FIRMNESS.)

firmus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior**, sup. **-issimus**, adj., *strong,* FIRM; *steadfast, powerful.*

Flaccus, -ī, m., see Valerius.

flāgitiōsus, -a, -um, [flāgitium], sup. flāgitiōsissimus, adj., *shameful, disgraceful.*

flāgitium, -i/tī, n., *outrage; disgrace.*

flāgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *demand, require, solicit.*

flagrō, -āre, -āvī, flagrātūrus, *blaze, burn; be inflamed, be excited; be afflicted, suffer.* (CONFLAGRATION.)

Flāminīnus, -ī, m., *Flamininus,* family name of:

(1) *T. Quīnctius*, who was sent against the Gauls in 360 B.C.

(2) *C. Quīnctius Flāminīnus*, consul in 192 B.C.

(3) *T. Quīnctius Flāminīnus*, the conqueror of Philip, king of Macedon, in 197 B.C.

Flāminius, -i/nī, m., *Flaminius,* gentile name of *C. Flāminius*, defeated and slain by Hannibal at Lake Trasimenus in 217 B.C.

flamma, -ae, f., *blaze,* FLAME.

flectō, flectere, flexī, flexus, *bend, turn; persuade, influence.* (INFLECT, INFLECTION.)

fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētus, *weep; weep for, bewail.*

flētus, -ūs, [fleō], m., *weeping, wailing.*

flōrēns, -ntis, comp. flōrentior, sup. flōrentissimus, [part. of flōreō, *bloom*], adj., *blooming, flourishing, prosperous; influential.*

flōreō, flōrēre, flōruī, —, [flōs, *flower*], *bloom, blossom; flourish, be prosperous, be successful; be distinguished.*

flōs, flōris, m., *flower.* (FLORAL, FLORIST.)

flūctus, -ūs, [cf. fluō], m., *flood, tide, wave; commotion.*

flūmen, -inis, [cf. fluō], n., *river.*

fluō, fluere, flūxī, flūxus, *flow.*

fluvius, fluvī, [cf. fluō], m., *river, stream.*

fōdiō, fodere, fōdī, fossus, *dig.*

foedē, [foedus], adv., *foully, basely.*

foederātus, -a, -um, [cf. foedus], adj., *leagued, allied.* (CONFEDERATE.)

foedus, -eris, [cf. fīdō], n., *treaty; agreement.*

fore = futūrum esse ; see **sum**.

forem = essem ; see **sum**.

foris, -is, f., *door, gate;* pl., *folding door, entrance.*

fōrma, -ae, f., FORM, *figure, appearance, looks; beauty.*

fōrmōsitās, -ātis, [fōrmōsus], f., *beauty.*

fōrmōsus, -a, -um, comp. fōrmōsior, sup. fōrmōsissimus, [fōrma], adj., *beautiful, handsome.*

fors, fortis, [cf. ferō, *bring*], f., *chance, luck, accident.*

fortasse, adv., *perhaps, possibly.*

forte, [abl. of fors], adv., *by chance; perchance, perhaps.*

fortis, -e, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *strong; brave, valiant.*

fortiter, comp. fortius, sup. fortissimē, [fortis], adv., *bravely, boldly.*

fortitūdō, -inis, [fortis], f., *strength, courage, bravery.* (FORTITUDE.)

fortuītō, [abl. of fortuītus, from forte], adv., *by chance.*

fortūna, -ae, [fors], f., *chance, luck,* FORTUNE; *lot, rank, circumstances; good fortune; ill fortune;* personified, *Fortune.*

forum, -ī, [forīs], n., *open place, market-place;* esp. **Forum Rōmānum**, *the Roman Forum, the Forum;* see note to p. 64, l. 6.

fossa, -ae, [cf. fodiō], f., *ditch, trench, intrenchment,* FOSSE.

fovea, -ae, f., *pit, pitfall.*

foveō, fovēre, fōvī, fōtus, *keep warm; cherish, favor.*

frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctus, *break; break down, dishearten, subdue, overcome.* (FRACTURE, FRAGILE.)

frāter, -tris, m., *brother.* (FRATERNITY.)

frāternus, -a, -um, [frāter], adj., *of a brother, brotherly.* (FRATERNAL.)

Fregellae, -ārum, f., *Fregellae;* see note to p. 112, l. 15.

fremitus, -ūs, [cf. fremō, *roar*], m., *noise, din.*

frequēns, -entis, comp. frequentior, sup. frequentissimus, adj., *often, regular,* FREQUENT, *constant; in great numbers, crowded, populous.*

fretum, -ī, n., *strait;* **fretum Siciliēnse** or **Siciliae**, *the strait of Messina*, between Italy and Sicily.

frētus, -a, -um, adj., *supported; trusting, relying, confiding.*

frīgus, frīgoris, n., *cold, cold weather.* Pl., *cold spells.*

frōns, frontis, f., *forehead;* FRONT.

frūctus, -ūs, (fruor), m., *enjoyment;* FRUIT ; *profit; income.*

frūctuōsus, -a, -um, sup. -issimus, [frūctus], adj., FRUITFUL, *fertile.*

frūgēs, -um, f., pl., *produce, products of the soil, fruits.*

frūmentārius, -a, -um, [frūmentum], adj., *having to do with grain* or *supplies; productive of grain.* **rēs frūmentāria**, *supply of grain, supplies.* **nāvis frūmentāria**, *provision ship, grain ship.*

frūmentātiō, -ōnis, [frūmentor], f., *getting grain, foraging.*

frūmentor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [frūmentum], dep., *get grain, forage.*

frūmentum, -ī, [fruor], n., *grain,*

standing grain. Pl. often, *grain crops.*

fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, fut. part. fruitūrus, dep., *enjoy, delight in.*

frūstrā, [fraus], adv., *in vain.*

frūstror, -ārī, -ātus sum, [frūstrā], dep., *trick, disappoint.* (FRUSTRATE.)

Fūfetius, -fe'tī, m., *Fufetius*, gentile name of *Mettius Fūfetius*, leader of the Albans against Tullus Hostilius.

Fufius, Fufī, m., gentile name of *C. Fufius Cita*, a Roman knight.

fuga, -ae, f., *flight.* in fugam dare, *to put to flight, rout.*

fugiēns, -entis, [part. of fugiō], adj., *flying, fleeing.* As subst., m., *a fugitive.*

fugiō, fugere, fūgī, —, *flee, make off; avoid, shun; escape.*

fugitīvus, -a, -um, [cf. fugiō], adj., *fleeing.* As subst., fugitīvus, -ī, m., *runaway*, FUGITIVE.

fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [fuga], *put to flight, rout.*

fulmen, -inis, [cf. fulgeō], n., *lightning flash, thunderbolt; crushing blow.*

Fulvius, Fulvī, m., *Fulvius*, gentile name of *A. Fulvius*, put to death by the order of his own father, because he joined Catiline's conspiracy.

fūmus, -ī, m., *smoke.* (FUME.)

fūnāle, -is, [fūnis], n., *torch.*

funda, -ae, [cf. fundō], f., *sling.*

fundāmentum, -ī, [fundō], n., *foundation, basis.*

funditor, -ōris, [cf. funda], m., *slinger.*

fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsus, *pour; scatter, rout.* (CONFUSE, CONFOUND.)

fūnestus, -a, -um, [fūnus], adj., *deadly, destructive, fatal.*

fungor, fungī, fūnctus sum, dep., *be engaged in, perform; do, administer.* (FUNCTION.)

fūnis, fūnis, m., *rope; cable;* pl., *halyards.*

fūnus, -eris, n., FUNERAL.

furcula, -ae, [furca], f., *a little* FORK. In pl., Furculae Caudīnae, *the Caudine Forks*, narrow passes in the mountains near Caudium, a town in Samnium.

Fūrius, Fūria, the name of a Roman gens, refers in this book to:

(1) *M. Fūrius Camillus*, the deliverer of Rome from the Gauls.

(2) *P. Fūrius Philus*, who, after the battle of Cannae, formed a conspiracy among the young nobles.

(3) *L. Fūrius*, consul in 196 B.C.

furor, -ōris, [furō, *rage*], m., *rage, madness, fury.* (FUROR.)

furtum, -ī, n., *theft.*

fūsilis, -e, [fundō], adj., *melted, liquid.*

futūrus, -a, -um, [part. of sum], adj., *going to be, yet to be, to come*, FUTURE. As part. see **sum**.

G

Gabalī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Gabali*, a tribe dwelling in the southeastern part of Gaul.

Gabīnius, -īnī, m., *Aulus Gabinius*, tribune of the Commons in 66 B.C., consul with Lucius Calpurnius Piso, 58 B.C.

Gādēs, -ium, f., pl., *Gādēs;* see note to p. 63, l. 7.

Gaius, Gaī, abbreviation **C.**, m., *Gaius*, a Roman forename.

Galba, -ae, m.:

(1) *Servius Sulpicius Galba*, praetorian governor of Lusitania in 151 B.C.
(2) *P. Sulpicius Galba*, consul in 200 B.C.
(3) *Galba*, a chief of the Suessiones.

galea, -ae, f., *helmet*, usually of leather.

Gallia, -ae, f., *Gaul*, comprising the regions now occupied by France, Belgium, Holland, and the western parts of Germany and Switzerland. See INTROD., p. xxxviii.

Gallicus, -a, -um, [Gallus], adj., *of Gaul, Gallic.*

gallīna, -ae, f., *hen.* (GALLINACEOUS.)

Gallus, -a, -um, adj., *Gallic.* As subst., m., *a Gaul;* pl., Gallī, -ōrum, *Gauls.*

Garumna, -ae, m., *Garonne*, the great river of southwestern France, which rises in the Pyrenees Mountains and flows in a northwesterly direction to the Atlantic Ocean, after a course of about 350 miles. See map opp. p. 155.

gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, semi-dep., *be glad, rejoice.*

gaudium, gaudī, [gaudeō], n., *joy, gladness.*

gāvīsus, see gaudeō.

Geminus, see Servilius.

geminus, -a, -um, adj., *twin; twofold.* As subst., geminī, -ōrum, m., pl., *twins.*

Genava, -ae, [Kel. genavā, 'mouth'], f., a city of the Allobroges, on the lacus Lemannus; now *Geneva.* See note to p. 167, l. 1.

gener, generī, m., *son-in-law.*

generātim, [genus], adv., *by kind; by peoples, by tribes, nation by nation.*

generōsus, -a, -um, [genus], adj., *of noble birth, well-born; magnanimous*, GENEROUS.

genitus, see gignō.

gēns, gentis, f., *clan*, GENS, composed of families having a common ancestor, a common name, and certain religious rights in common; *tribe, people, nation.*

genuī, see gignō.

genus, -eris, n., *race, birth; kind, class, rank; method, nature; sort, style.* (GENUS.)

Gergovia, -ae, f., chief town of the Arverni.

Germānī, -ōrum, m. pl., *Germans.*

Germānia, -ae, f., *Germany.*

gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, *bear, carry; manage, do, carry on; wear; perform, accomplish;* of an office, *fill;* of war, *wage.* **sē gerere**, *to conduct one's self, act, behave.* **mōrem gerere alicui**, *to gratify any one.* **rēs gestae**, *exploits, deeds.*

gestō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of gerō], *bear, carry, wield; wear.*

gestus, -ūs, [gerō], m., *bearing, carriage; gesture, movement.*

gignō, gignere, genuī, genitus, *give birth to, beget;* pass., *be born, spring.* (PROGENITOR.)

gladius, gladī, m., *sword.* (GLADIATOR.)

glāns, glandis, f., *acorn; bullet* thrown from a sling.

glōria, -ae, f., GLORY, *fame; vainglory, boasting.*

glōrior, -ārī, -ātus sum, [glōria], dep., *boast, pride one's self.*

glōriōsus, -a, -um, comp. glōriōsior, sup. glōriōsissimus, [glōria],

adj., GLORIOUS, *famous; conferring honor, honorable; boastful.*

Gnaeus, Gnaeī, abbreviated **Cn.**, m., *Gnaeus*, a Roman forename.

Gobannitiō, -ōnis, m., an Arvernian.

Gortȳnius, -a, -um, adj., *of Gortyna*, a city in Crete, *Gortynian.* As subst. **Gortȳnius**, -ȳnī, m., *Gortynian, inhabitant of Gortyna.*

Gracchī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Gracchi*, referring to *Ti. Semprōnius Gracchus*, and his brother, *C. Semprōnius Gracchus.*

Gracchus, see **Semprōnius.**

gradus, -ūs, m., *step, pace; gait; station, position;* pl., *stairs.* (GRADE.)

Graecē, [**Graecus**], adv., *in the Greek language, in Greek.*

Graecia, -ae, f., *Greece.*

Graecus, -a, -um, adj., *Grecian, Greek.* As subst., **Graecus**, -ī, m., *a Greek.*

Graiocelī (or **Graī Ocelī**), -ōrum, m., pl., a Gallic tribe in the Graian Alps.

Graius, -a, -um, adj., *of the Greeks, Grecian.* As subst., **Graius, Graī**, m., *a Greek.*

grandis, -e, adj., *large, great.* (GRAND.)

grānum, -ī, n., GRAIN, *seed.*

graphium, graphī, n., *stylus* for writing, *pen.*

grātia, -ae, [grātus], f., *favor, regard, friendship; requital, kindness, courtesy, influence.* (GRACE, GRATITUDE.) Pl., grātiae, -ārum, *thanks.* **grātiā**, with preceding gen., *for the sake of.* **grātiam habēre**, *to feel gratitude.* **grātiās agere**, *to thank.* **grātiam referre**, *to requite.* **grātīs** (= grātiīs), *from favor*, for nothing, GRATIS.

grātīs, see **grātia.**

grātulātiō, -ōnis, [grātulor], f., *rejoicing*, CONGRATULATION. **fit grātulātiō**, *congratulations are offered.*

grātulor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [grātus], dep., CONGRATULATE.

grātus, -a, -um, comp. **grātior**, sup. **grātissimus**, adj., *pleasing, acceptable; thankful*, GRATEFUL; *influential.* Neut. as subst., **grātum facere**, *to do a favor.*

gravis, -e, comp. **gravior**, sup. **gravissimus**, adj., *heavy; severe, difficult; disagreeable; strong, great; of weight, of authority.* (GRAVE.) **graviōre aetāte**, *of greater age.*

gravitās, -ātis, [**gravis**], f., *weight; importance, dignity, influence; seriousness.* (GRAVITY.)

graviter, comp. **gravius**, sup. **gravissimē**, [**gravis**], adv., *heavily; severely, bitterly; with dignity; seriously, with displeasure.*

gravō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**gravis**], *load, weigh down.* Pass. as dep., *hesitate, be unwilling.*

grūs, gruis, m. and f., *crane.*

gubernātor, -ōris, [**gubernō**], m., *helmsman; director, ruler.* [GUBERNATORIAL.)

gustō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *taste.*

Gutruātus, -ī, m., a chief of the Carnutes.

H

habeō, habēre, habuī, **habitus**, *have, possess, keep; treat, use, regard, think, reckon, render.* **cēnsum habēre**, *to take a census.* **ōrātiōnem habēre**, *to make a speech.* **senātum habēre**, *to hold a meeting of the senate.*

habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of **habeō**], *dwell, reside; inhabit.*

habitus, -ūs, m., *condition*, HABIT; *dress, attire.*

Hadrūmētum, -ī, ['Αδρούμετος], n., *Hadrumetum*, a city in northern Africa, not far from Carthage.

Hamilcar, -aris, m., *Hamilcar*, father of Hannibal.

hāmus, -ī, m., *hook.*

Hannibal, -alis, m., (1) *Hannibal*, the father of Hamilcar and grandfather of (2) *Hannibal*, a famous general of the Carthaginians, who waged war against the Romans from 218 to 202 B.C.

Hannō, -ōnis, m., *Hannō*, a Carthaginian statesman, a contemporary of Hannibal. He was the leader of the party opposed to Hannibal.

harpagō, -gōnis, m., *hook, grappling-iron.*

Harūdēs, -um, m., pl., a Germanic people between the Danube and the upper part of the Rhine; apparently a remnant from the Cimbric migration, and originally from Jutland. See map opp. p. 155.

haruspex, -icis, [cf. speciō], m., *soothsayer.*

Hasdrubal, -alis, m., *Hasdrubal*, a Carthaginian name. In this book refers to:

(1) *Hasdrubal*, brother-in-law of Hannibal.

(2) *Hasdrubal*, brother of Hannibal.

hasta, -ae, f., *staff; spear.*

hastīle, -is, [hasta], n., *spear, shaft; spear, javelin.*

haud, adv., *not, not at all, by no means.*

hedera, -ae, f., *ivy.*

Helvēticus, -a, -um, *Helvetian.*

Helvētius, -a, -um, adj., *of the Helvetii, Helvetian.* **cīvitās Helvētia**, *the State of the Helvetii, Helvetian State*, divided into four cantons, the names of two of which, **pāgus Tigurīnus**, **pāgus Verbigenus**, are known. As subst., **Helvētiī**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Helvetians, Helvetii.*

Helviī, -ōrum, m., pl., a Gallic people in 'the Province.'

Helvius, Helvī, m., *Helvius*, gentile name of *C. Helvius.*

herba, -ae, f., HERB; *grass.*

herbidus, -a, -um, [herba], adj., *grassy.*

Herculēs, -is, m., *Hercules.* See note to p. 63, l. 8.

Hercynius, -a, -um, adj., *Hercynian*, a name applied to a great forest in southern Germany.

hērēditās, -ātis, [hērēs], f., *heirship, inheritance; an inheritance.* (HEREDITY.)

hērēdium, -ēdī, [hērēs], n., *hereditary estate.*

Hērennius, -ennī, m., *Herennius*, forename of *Herennius Pontius.*

hērēs, -ēdis, m. and f., *heir, heiress.*

Hibernia, -ae, f., *Hibernia*, ancient name of Ireland. (HIBERNIAN.)

hībernus, -a, -um, [hiems], adj., *of winter.* As subst., **hīberna**, -ōrum (sc. **castra**), n., pl., *winter quarters.*

hīc, haec, hōc, gen. **huius**, dem. pron., used with or without a subst., *this. this . . . here; the following; he, she, it.* When contrasted with **ille**, **hīc** usually means *the latter*, **ille**, *the former.* When followed by **ut**, **hīc** frequently = *such.*

hīc, [hīc], adv., *here; hérein; now, then.*

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [hiems], *pass the winter, winter.*

Hiempsal, -alis, m., *Hiempsal*, son of Micipsa.

hiems, hiemis, f., *winter; wintry storm, stormy weather.*

Hierō, -ōnis, m., *Hiero*, king of Syracuse.

hinc, [hīc], adv., *from this place, hence; on this account, from this; henceforth; next, afterwards.* **hinc . . . hinc**, *on this side . . . on that, on the one side . . . on the other.*

Hippō, -ōnis, ['Ιππών], m., *Hippo*, a city in northern Africa on the coast, west of Carthage.

Hispānī, -ōrum, m., *Spaniards.*

Hispānia, -ae, f., *Spain.*

Hispāniēnsis, -e, [Hispānia], adj., *in Spain, Spanish.* As subst., Hispāniēnsis, -is, m., *a Spaniard.*

historia, -ae, [ἱστορία], f., HISTORY; *narrative, account;* pl., *a work of history, history.*

hodiē, [ho = hōc, diē], adv., *to-day; now.*

homō, hominis, m. and f., *human being, man.* Pl., hominēs, -um, m., *men, people, mankind.*

honestās, -ātis, [honōs], f., *honor* received from others, *reputation; uprightness, integrity.* (HONESTY.)

honestē, comp. honestius, sup. honestissimē, [honestus], adv., *honorably, virtuously.*

honestus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [honōs], adj., *honorable, upright, noble.* (HONEST.)

honōrificē, [honōrificus], adv., *honorably, with honor, with respect.*

honōrificus, -a, -um, comp. honōrificentior, sup. -centissimus, [honōs, cf. faciō], adj., *honorable; in one's honor.*

honōs, or **honor**, -ōris, m., HONOR, *esteem, dignity; public office, post; mark of honor.*

hōra, -ae, [= ὥρα], f., *hour*, a twelfth part of the day, from sunrise to sunset, or of the night, from sunset to sunrise, the Roman hours varying in length with the season of the year; *time, season.*

Horātius, -a, the name of a Roman gens. In this book are mentioned:

(1) *The Horātiī*, triplets, *praenōmina* not given, who fought with the Curiatii.

(2) *Horātius Cocles*, *praenōmen* not given, who defended the bridge against the Etruscans.

(3) *M. Horātius Pulvillus*, consul 509 B.C.

horreō, horrēre, horruī, —, *tremble at, shudder at, dread.* (HORRID.)

horribilis, -e, (hōrreō), comp. horribilior, adj., *awful*, HORRIBLE.

hortātus, -ūs, [hortor], (the nom. is not found), m., *encouragement*, EXHORTATION.

hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *encourage*, EXHORT.

hospes, hospitis, m., *host; guest; friend* bound by ties of HOSPITALITY, *guest-friend.*

hospitium, -i'tī, [hospes], n., HOSPITALITY, *friendship; lodging, inn.*

hostia, -ae, f., *animal sacrificed, victim.*

hostīlis, -e, [hostis], adj., HOSTILE.

hostīliter, [hostīlis], adv., *in a hostile manner.*

Hostīlius, -a, name of a Roman gens. In this book are mentioned:

(1) *Tullus Hostīlius*, the third king of Rome.

(2) *C. Hostīlius Mancīnus*, consul 137 B.C., who conducted the war against the Numantines.

hostis, -is, m., *stranger*, public *enemy*, *foe;* in this book both the sing. and the pl., hostēs, -ium, in most cases = *the enemy*. Cf. inimīcus.

hūc, [hīc], adv., *hither*, *on this; to this*, *besides*.

hūmānitās, -ātis, [hūmānus], f., HUMANITY; *kindliness; refinement*, *culture*.

hūmānus, -a, -um, [homō], adj., HUMAN; *humane*, *kind*.

humilis, -e, comp. humilior, [humus], adj., *low*, *lowly; small*, *slight; common*, HUMBLE; *mean*.

I

iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, —, *lie*, *be prostrate; lie dead; be situated; be despised*. Pres. part. as subst., iacentēs, -ium, m. pl., *the fallen*.

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus, *throw*, *cast; throw up*, *construct*.

iactātiō, -ōnis, [iactō], f., *tossing*, *shaking; boasting*, *display*.

iactō, [jactō], -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of iaciō], *throw*, *cast; throw about; agitate*, *boast of*.

iactūra, -ae, [iaciō], f., *throwing away; loss*, *sacrifice*.

iactus, part. of iaciō.

iaculum, -ī, [iaciō], n., *javelin*, *dart*.

iam, [jam], adv., of time, *already*, *now; immediately; soon; at length; actually;* of assurance, *in fact*, *indeed*. **nōn iam**, *no longer*. **iam prīdem**, *long ago*, *long since*.

Iāniculum, -ī, [Iānus], n., *the Janiculum*, a hill lying across the Tiber from Rome, connected with the city by a wooden bridge called the *Pōns Sublicius*. It was the seat of a mythical citadel of Janus. See map opp. p. 57.

iānua, -ae, f., *door; entrance*. (JANITOR.)

Ibērus, -ī, m., *the Ibērus*, a river in Spain, the *Ebro*.

ibī, adv., *there; thereupon*.

ibīdem, adv., *in the same place*.

Iccius, Iccī, m., a leader of the Remi.

icō, icere, īcī, ictus, in classical prose only in the perf. system, a., *hit*, *strike;* pres. feriō. **foedus icere**, *to make a league*, *make a treaty*.

ictus, -ūs, [icō], m., *blow*, *stroke*. *wound*. (ICTUS.)

Īd., abbreviation for Īdūs.

īdem, eadem, idem, gen. eiusdem, [is], dem. pron., *the same;* often with the force of an adv., *also*, *besides*.

identidem, [idem et idem], adv., *repeatedly*, *again and again*. (IDENTICAL.)

ideō, [id+eō], adv., *for that reason*, *therefore*.

idōneus, -a, -um, adj., *fit*, *suitable*, *convenient*.

Īdūs, -uum, f. pl., *the Ides*, the fifteenth day of March, May, July, and October; the thirteenth day of other months.

igitur, adv., *then*, *therefore*.

ignāvia, -ae, [ignāvus], f., *idleness*, *sloth*.

ignāvus, -a, -um, adj., *slothful*, *lazy*, *cowardly*.

īgnis, -is, m., *fire*. Pl., īgnēs, *watchfires*. (IGNITE.)

ignōminia, -ae, [in- + (g)nōmen], f., *disgrace*, IGNOMINY.

ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [cf. ignōscō], *be* IGNORANT *of*, *not know*, *be unaware*; *overlook*. (IGNORE.)

ignōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnōtus, [in- + (g)nōscō, *know*], *pardon*, *forgive*, *excuse*.

ignōtus, [in- + (g)nōtus], adj., *unknown*, *strange*; *unacquainted with*, *ignorant of*.

īlicō, [in + locō], adv., *on the spot*; *immediately*.

illātūrus, see īnferō.

ille, illa, illud, gen. illīus, dem. pron., *that*; *he*, *she*, *it*; *the famous*, *the well-known*. See hīc.

illīc, [ille], adv., *in that place*, *there*, *yonder*.

illigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [in + ligō, *bind*], *bind*, *fasten*.

illō, [ille], adv., *thither*, *to that place*.

illūc, [ille], adv., *to that place*, *thither*, *there*; *thereto*; *to such a point*.

illūdō, -lūdere, -lūsī, -lūsus, [in + lūdō], *make fun of*, *ridicule*, *mock*; *deceive*.

illūstris, -e, comp. illūstrior, sup. illūstrissimus, adj., *bright*; *clear*; ILLUSTRIOUS, *renowned*; *evident*.

illūstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [in + lūstrō], *light up*, *illuminate*; *make clear*, ILLUSTRATE; *render famous*.

Illyricum, -ī, n., *Illyricum*, a region along the east coast of the Adriatic Sea, belonging to Caesar's province; now *Istria* and *Dalmatia*.

imāgō, -inis, [cf. imitor], f., *imitation*, *likeness*, IMAGE, *representation*; *statue*, *bust*.

imbēcillitās, -ātis, [imbēcillus, *weak*], f., *weakness*. (IMBECILITY.)

imber, -bris, m., *rain*, *shower*.

imitātiō, -ōnis, [imitor], f., *a copying*, IMITATION.

immānis, -e, adj., *monstrous*, *huge*.

immēnsus, -a, -um, adj., *immeasurable*, IMMENSE.

immeritus, -a, -um, adj., *undeserving*, *innocent*.

immittō, -ere, immīsī, immissus, [in + mittō], *admit*, *introduce*.

immō, adv., *no indeed*, *by no means*, *nay*; *yes indeed*, *certainly*.

immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [in, cf. mola, *sacred meal*], *sprinkle with sacred meal*; *sacrifice*, IMMOLATE.

immortālis, -e, [in- + mortālis], adj., IMMORTAL, *eternal*.

immōtus, -a, -um, [in- + mōtus], adj., *unmoved*; *steadfast*, *firm*.

immūnis, -e, [in- + mūnus], adj., *free from taxes*, etc. (IMMUNE.)

immūnitās, -ātis, [immūnis], f., IMMUNITY, *freedom* from taxes, etc.

impatiēns, -entis, [in- + patiēns], adj., *intolerant*, IMPATIENT.

impedīmentum, -ī, [impediō], n., *hindrance*, *interference*. (IMPEDIMENT.) Pl. impedīmenta, -ōrum, *heavy baggage*, *baggage*. See INTROD., p. xxxiii.

impediō, -pedīre, -pedīvī, -pedītus, [in, cf. pēs], *hinder*, *obstruct*, *interfere with*, *disorder*. (IMPEDE.)

impedītus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part. of impediō], adj., *hindered*, *obstructed*, *embarrassed*; *difficult*, *hard*; of places, *hard to reach*, *inaccessible*.

impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, [in + pellō], *strike against*, *drive*; *put to rout*; *set in motion*, IMPEL; *urge*, *persuade*.

impendeō, -pendēre, —, —, [in + pendeō], *overhang; be at hand*, IMPEND, *threaten.*

imperātor, -ōris, [imperō], m., *commander-in-chief, commander.*

imperātum, -ī, [imperō], n., *command, order.* **imperāta facere**, *to do what has been commanded, carry out orders.*

imperfectus, -a, -um, [in- + perfectus], adj., *unfinished, incomplete.* (IMPERFECT.)

imperītus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [in- + perītus], adj., *inexperienced, unskilled, unacquainted with.* **tam imperītus rērum**, *of so little experience.*

imperium, -e/rī, [cf. imperō], n., *command, order; government, dominion; military authority; the state.* **nova imperia**, *a revolution.*

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *command, order; exercise authority; levy, draft, demand.* After **imperō**, **ut** is ordinarily to be translated by *to*, and **nē** by *not to.*

impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [in + patrō, *execute*], *obtain* by request, *procure, accomplish; gain one's request.*

impetus, -ūs, [in, cf. petō], m., *attack, charge; vehemence, excitement; fury*, IMPETUOSITY, *force.*

impietās, -ātis, [impius], f., *irreverence*, IMPIETY; *undutifulness.*

impius, -a, -um, adj., IMPIOUS.

implicātus, -a, -um, [part. of implicō], adj., *entangled, involved, connected with.* (IMPLICATED.)

implicō, -āre, -āvī or -uī, -ātus or -itus, [in + plicō], *infold, envelop; involve*, IMPLICATE, *embarrass.* **in morbum implicitus**, *taken sick.*

implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [in + plōrō, *cry out*], *beseech*, IMPLORE; *invoke, appeal to.* **auxilium implōrāre**, *to beg for help.*

impōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, [in + pōnō], *place on, put;* IMPOSE, *dictate* terms of peace; *mount.*

importō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [in + portō], *bring in*, IMPORT.

impraesentiārum, adv., *for the present, now.*

imprīmīs, [in, prīmīs], adv., *especially.* (IMPRIMIS.)

improbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *disapprove, reject.*

improbus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [in- + probus, *good*], adj., *bad, shameless.*

improvīsō, [improvīsus], adv., *unexpectedly, suddenly.*

improvīsus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, [in- + part. of prōvideō], adj., *unforeseen, unexpected.* Neut. as subst. in **dē improvīsō**, *unexpectedly, suddenly.*

imprūdēns, -ntis, [in- + prūdēns, = prōvidēns], adj., *unforeseeing, unaware, off one's guard.* (IMPRUDENT.)

imprūdenter, [imprūdēns], adv., *without foresight, ignorantly.* (IMPRUDENTLY.)

imprūdentia, -ae, [imprūdēns], f., IMPRUDENCE, *ignorance.*

impūbes, -eris, [in- + pūbēs], adj., *not of age;* as subst., m., *a minor.*

impugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [in + pugnō], *fight against, attack; oppose.*

impulsus, see impellō.

impūne, [impūnis, from in- + poena], adv., *without punishment, with* IMPUNITY.

impūnitās, -ātis, [impūnis from in- + poena], f., *exemption from punishment*, IMPUNITY.

impūnītus, -a, -um, [in- + pūnītus], adj., *unpunished, secure.*

in, prep. with acc. and abl.:

(1) With the acc.: of place, after verbs implying motion, *into, to, up to, towards, against ;* of time, *till, until, for ;* of purpose, *for, with a view to ;* of other relations, *to, in, respecting, concerning, according to, after, over.*

(2) With the abl.: of place, *in, within, on, upon, among, over ;* of time, *in, within, during, while ;* of other relations, *in case of, in relation to, respecting.*

In composition **in** retains its form before the vowels and most of the consonants; is often changed to il- before l, ir- before r; usually becomes im- before m, b, p.

in-, inseparable prefix, = *un-, not*, as in **inaudītus**, *unheard.*

inānis, -e, adj., *empty, void ; lifeless ; worthless.* (INANE.)

incēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, [in + cēdō], *advance, march, walk ; approach ; happen.*

incendium, -cendī, [incendō], n., *burning, fire.* (INCENDIARY.)

incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus, *set fire to, burn ; rouse, excite.*

inceptum, -ī, [incipiō], n., *beginning, attempt, undertaking ; purpose, subject.* (INCEPTION, INCEPTIVE.)

incidō, -cidere, -cidī, —, [in + cadō], with in and the acc., *fall in with, come upon, meet, happen in the time of ; occur ;* of war, *break out.*

incīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus, [in + caedō], *cut into.*

incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [in + capiō], *begin, undertake ; instigate.* (INCIPIENT.)

incitātiō, -ōnis, [incitō], f., *ardor, enthusiasm.*

incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [in + citō, *move rapidly*], *urge,* INCITE, *hurry ;* of horses, *urge on, spur ; run in ;* of men, *rouse, spur on.*

inclūdō, -clūdere, inclūsī, inclūsus, [in + claudō], *shut up, imprison ;* INCLUDE.

incognitus, -a, -um, [in- + cognitus], adj., *untried ; unknown.* (INCOGNITO.)

incohō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *begin, commence.* (INCHOATIVE.)

incola, -ae, [incolō], m. and f., *inhabitant.*

incolō, -colere, -coluī, —, [in + colō], intrans., *live, dwell ;* trans., *inhabit, live in.*

incolumis, -e, adj., *safe, unharmed, unhurt.*

incommodum, -ī, [incommodus], n., *inconvenience, disadvantage ; disaster, injury, defeat.*

incrēdibilis, -e, [in- + crēdibilis], adj., *extraordinary,* INCREDIBLE.

increpitō, -āre, —, —, [freq. of increpō, *chide*], *reproach, rebuke ; taunt.*

increpō, -āre, -uī, -itus, *resound, clash ; upbraid, scold.*

incumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitus, [in + cumbō], *lie upon, press upon ; make an effort, apply one's self ; incline, choose.* (INCUMBENT.)

incursiō, -ōnis, [incurrō], f., *onset, attack*, INCURSION.

incursus, -ūs, [cf. incurrō], m., *assault, attack.*

incūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [in + causa], *find fault with*, ACCUSE, *rebuke.*

inde, adv., *from that place, thence; from that time; after that, thereupon; therefore.*

index, -icis, [cf. indicō], m. and f., *informer;* INDEX, *mark, sign, proof.*

indicium, -di'cī, [cf. indicō], n., *notice, sign*, INDICATION, *proof, information.*

indicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [index], *point out, inform; make known, reveal; betray, accuse.*

indīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictus, [in + dīcō], *declare, proclaim, announce;* of a council, *convoke, call, appoint; impose, inflict.* (INDICATIVE.)

indictus, -a, -um, [in- + dictus], adj., *unsaid.* **indictā causā**, *without a hearing.*

indigeō, -ēre, -uī, —, [indu, old form of **in**, + egeō], *need, want; demand, require.*

indignātus, -a, -um, [part. of indignor], adj., *angered*, INDIGNANT.

indignitās, -ātis, [indignus], f., *unworthiness, shamefulness;* INDIGNITY, *ill treatment.*

indignor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [indignus], dep., *be* INDIGNANT *at, resent.*

indignus, -a, -um, [in- + dignus], adj., *undeserving, unworthy; shameful.*

indīligēns, -ntis, [in- + dīligēns], adj., *negligent, careless.*

indīligenter, comp. -ius, [indīligēns], adv., *carelessly, heedlessly.*

indō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [in + dō], *insert; give, confer.*

indolēs, -is, f., *character, disposition.*

indūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [in + dūcō], *lead in, introduce;* INDUCE, *influence; cover.*

indulgentia, -ae, f., *favor, kindness*, INDULGENCE.

indulgeō, -dulgēre, -dulsī, -dultus, *be kind to, favor.*

induō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *put on, dress in; clothe, cover.* sē induere, *impale oneself on.* (INDUE.)

industria, -ae, [industrius], f., *diligence*, INDUSTRY, *activity.*

industriē (industrius), adv., *vigorously*, INDUSTRIOUSLY.

indūtiae, -ārum (indu, cf. eō), f. pl., *truce.*

ineō, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -itus, [in + eō], *go into; begin; undertake;* with grātiam, *acquire, obtain.* **inīēns** adulēscentia, *early youth.* initā aestāte, *in the beginning of summer.*

inermis, -e, [in-+ arma], adj., *unarmed, defenceless.*

ineūns, see ineō.

īnfāmia, -ae, [īnfāmis], f., *disgrace, scandal.* (INFAMY.)

īnfāmis, -e, [in- + fāma], adj., *notorious*, INFAMOUS.

īnfectus, -a, -um, [in- + factus], adj., *not done, unaccomplished.*

īnferō, -ferre, intulī, illātus, [in + ferō], *bring in, import; throw upon, throw into;* of injuries, *inflict;* of hope and fear, *inspire;* of an excuse, *offer, allege;* of wounds, *make, give.* bellum īnferre, *to make war.* signa īnferre, *to advance.* (INFERENCE.)

īnferus, -a, -um, comp. īnferior,

sup. īnfimus or īmus, adj., *below, underneath;* comp., *lower, inferior;* sup., *lowest, at the bottom.*

īnfēstus, -a, -um, adj., *unsafe; hostile, threatening.* (INFEST.)

īnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [in + faciō], *stain, dye; anoint.* (INFECT.)

īn-figō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxus, *fix in, fasten on.* (INFIX.)

īnfimus, see īnferus.

īnfīnītus, -a, -um, [in, cf. fīnis], adj., *boundless, endless.* (INFINITE.)

īnfīrmus, -a, -um, comp. īnfīrmior, sup. īnfīrmissimus, [in- + fīrmus], adj., *weak, feeble.* (INFIRM.)

īnfitiae, -ārum, [in-, cf. fateor], f. pl., found only in the acc. in the phrase īnfitiās īre, *to deny.*

īnfitior, -ārī, -ātus sum, [īnfitiae], *deny, disown.*

īnflātē, [īnflātus], adv., found only in comp. īnflātius, *too boastfully.*

īnflātus, -a, -um, [part. of īnflō], adj., INFLATED; *puffed up, proud.*

īnflectō, -flectere, -flexī, -flexus, [in + flectō], *bend.* (INFLECT.)

īnflexus, see īnflectō.

īnflō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [in + flō], *inflate; inspire, encourage.*

īnfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, -flūxus, [in + fluō], *flow into, flow.* (INFLUX.)

īnfodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus, [in + fodiō], *bury.*

īnfōrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [in + fōrmō], *shape, fashion; organize;* INFORM, *instruct.*

īnfrā, adv., and prep. with acc., *below, underneath; inferior to.*

īnfrendō, -ere, —, —, *gnash.*

īnfringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctus, [in + frangō], *break off; subdue, overcome.* (INFRINGE, INFRACTION.)

ingemīscō, -gemīscere, —, —, [in- + gemō], inch., *groan; groan over.*

ingemō, -ere, -uī, —, *groan over, lament, bewail.*

ingenium, -ge'nī, [in, cf. gignō], n., *nature; character, disposition; talents, ability.*

ingēns, -entis, [in-, cf. gignō], adj., *beyond the natural size; vast, great; mighty, remarkable.*

ingenuus, -a, -um, [in, cf. gignō], adj., *free-born, noble,* INGENUOUS, *liberal.*

ingrātīīs, [in-, grātiīs], adv., *without thanks, unwillingly.*

ingredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, [in + gradior, *step*], *advance; go into, enter; enter upon, undertake.* (INGREDIENT.)

inhaereō, -ēre, -haesī, -haesus, *stick fast, cling.* (INHERENT.)

inhiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *gape at, gaze at with longing, covet.*

iniciō, (injiciō), -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [in + iaciō], *throw in; lay on; put on; inspire, cause; strike into.* (INJECT.)

iniectus (injectus), see iniciō.

inimīcitia, -ae, [inimīcus], f., *enmity; hostility.*

inimīcus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [in- + amīcus], adj., *unfriendly, hostile.* As subst., inimīcus, -ī, m., *enemy, personal enemy* as distinguished from **hostis**, *a public enemy.*

inīquē, [inīquus], adv., UNEQUALLY, *unjustly.*

inīquitās, -ātis, [inīquus], f., *unfairness, unreasonableness.* inī-

quitās locī, *unfavorableness of (the) position.*

inīquus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [in- + aequus], adj., *uneven; unfavorable, disadvantageous; unjust.* (INIQUITY.)

initium, -i/tī, [ineō], n., *entrance; beginning.* **initiō**, *in the beginning, at first.* (INITIATE.)

initus, see ineō.

iniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, [in + iungō], *join to, impose on, bring upon*, INJUNCTION.

iniūria (injūria), -ae, [iniūrius, in- + iūs], f., *wrong, injustice*, INJURY.

iniussus, -ūs, [in- + iussus], m., only abl. in use, *without command, without orders.*

iniūstē, [iniūstus], adv., UNJUSTLY.

innāscor, -nāscī, nātus sum, [in + nāscor], dep., *be born in, arise in.* (INNATE.)

innītor, -nītī, -nīxus or -nīsus sum, [in + nītor], dep., *lean upon.*

innīxus, see innītor.

innocēns, -entis, [in- + nocēns], adj., *harmless; blameless*, INNOCENT.

innocentia, -ae, [innocēns], f., *blamelessness*, INNOCENCE; *integrity.*

innoxius, -a, -um, [in- + noxius], adj., *harmless; blameless, innocent.*

inopia, -ae, [inops], f., *want, lack; poverty, scarcity.*

inopīnāns, -antis, [in- + opīnāns], adj., *not expecting, off one's guard.*

inopīnātus, -a, -um, [in- + opīnātus], adj., *unexpected, surprising.*

inquam, inquis, inquit, def., always postpositive, *say.*

inquiētus, -a, -um, [in- + quiētus], adj., *restless*, UNQUIET, *disturbed.*

īnsciēns, -entis, [in- + sciēns, from sciō], adj., *not knowing, unaware.* **īnsciente Caesare**, *without Caesar's knowledge.*

īnscientia, -ae, [īnsciēns], f., *inexperience, ignorance.*

īnscītia, -ae, [īnscītus], f., *ignorance, inexperience, unskilfulness.*

īnscius, -a, -um, [in-, cf. sciō], adj., *ignorant, unaware.*

īnscrībō, īnscrībere, īnscrīpsī, īnscrīptus, [in + scrībō], *write upon*, INSCRIBE.

īnsecūtus, see īnsequor.

īnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, [in + sequor], dep., *follow up, pursue.*

īnserō, -ere, -uī, -tus, *plant*; INSERT.

īnsideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessus, [in + sedeō], *sit upon; settle on, occupy; be fixed, adhere to.*

īnsidiae, -ārum, [cf. īnsideō], f., pl., *ambush, ambuscade; artifice, snare.* per **īnsidiās**, *by stratagem.*

īnsidior, -ārī, -ātus sum, [īnsidiae], dep., *lie in wait for, plot against.*

īnsigne, -is, [īnsignis], n., *mark, signal, indication; badge, decoration, ensign; honor; illustrious deed.*

īnsignis, -e, [in + signum], adj., *conspicuous; remarkable, noteworthy; eminent, prominent.*

īnsiliō, -silīre, -siluī, —, [in + saliō, *leap*], *leap upon.*

īnsinuō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *push in.* sē **īnsinuāre**, *force one's way in*, INSINUATE *oneself.*

īnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, [in + sistō], *stand upon; press on; follow, pursue, adopt.*

īnsolēns, -entis, [in- + solēns, part. of soleō], adj., *immoderate, haughty*, INSOLENT.

īnsolenter, comp. īnsolentius, sup. īnsolentissimē, [īnsolēns], adv., *haughtily*, INSOLENTLY.

īnsolentia, -ae, [īnsolēns], f., *arrogance*, INSOLENCE, *extravagance*.

īnsolitus, -a, -um, [in- + solitus], adj., *unaccustomed*.

īnstabilis, -e, [in-+ stabilis], adj., *unsteady*. (UNSTABLE.)

īnstāns, -antis, [part. of īnstō], adj., *present, immediate; pressing, urgent*, INSTANT.

īnstar, n., indecl., *image;* followed by gen., *like*.

īnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtus, [in + statuō], of troops, *draw up; build, construct; make ready, furnish; purpose, resolve; establish*, INSTITUTE; *undertake, begin; teach, instruct*.

īnstitūtum, -ī, [īnstituō], n., *plan; custom;* INSTITUTION.

īnstitūtus, see īnstituō.

īnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātūrus, [in + stō], *be near at hand, approach; press on, threaten*.

īnstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctus, [in + struō, *build*], *build, construct, make ready, provide;* of troops, *draw up; equip*. (INSTRUCT.)

Īnsuber, -bris, adj., *of or belonging to Insubria*, a country in northern Italy. As subst., *an Insubrian*.

īnsuēfactus, -a, -um, [īnsuēscō + faciō], adj., *well-trained*.

īnsula, -ae, f., *an island*. (INSULAR.)

īnsum, -esse, -fuī, [in + sum], *be in, be upon; belong to*.

integer, -gra, -grum, [in-, cf. tangō, *touch*], adj., *untouched, whole; uninjured; fresh*. As subst., integrī, -ōrum, m. pl., *those (who were) not wearied, those (who were) fresh*. (INTEGER, INTEGRAL.)

integō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctus, [in + tēgo], *cover over*.

intellegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctus, [inter + legō], *understand, perceive, ascertain*. (INTELLECT.)

inter, prep. with acc., *among;* of position and relation, *between, among, into the midst of;* of time, *between, during, within*. inter sē, *with each other, with one another*. cohortātī inter sē (= sē inter sē), *urging one another on*. inter iocum, *in joke, jestingly*.

intercalārius, -a, -um, adj., INTERCALARY.

intercalō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *insert in the calendar*, INTERCALATE.

intercēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, [inter + cēdō], *go between; lie; pass between;* of time, *intervene, take place;* of a tribune, *veto*. (INTERCEDE, INTERCESSION.)

intercipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [inter + capiō], *cut off;* INTERCEPT; *usurp; interrupt*.

interclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus, [inter + claudō], *shut off, blockade, hinder*.

interdīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictus, [inter + dīcō], *forbid*, INTERDICT, *prohibit*.

interdiū, [inter + diū], adv., *in the daytime, by day*.

interdum, [inter + dum], adv., *for a time; sometimes, now and then*.

intereā, [inter + eā], adv., *in the meantime*.

intereō, -īre, -iī, -itus, [inter + eō], *be lost; perish, die.*

interfector, -ōris, [interficiō], m., *slayer, assassin.*

interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [inter + faciō], *destroy, kill.*

intericiō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [inter + iaciō], *throw between; interpose, intervene.* Pass part., **interiectus**, *lying between, intervening.*

interim, adv., *in the meantime.*

interimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptus, [inter + emō], *take away; kill, destroy.*

interior, -ius, gen. -ōris, [inter], adj., comp., (superlative **intimus**), *inner*, INTERIOR, *middle; more hidden; more intimate, more confidential.*

interitus, -ūs, [intereō], m., *overthrow, destruction.*

intermittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, [inter + mittō], *leave an interval, leave vacant, leave off, stop, discontinue; interrupt, suspend;* pass., of fire, *abate;* of wind, *be* INTERMITTENT. **quā flūmen intermittit**, *where the river does not flow.* **nocte intermissā**, *a night intervening.*

interneciō, -ōnis, [cf. internecō, *destroy*], f., *slaughter, massacre, utter destruction.* (INTERNECINE.)

internūntius, -nūntī, [inter + nūntius], m., *go-between, messenger.*

interpellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [inter + pellō], *interrupt; disturb, hinder.*

interpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, [inter + pōnō], *place between*, INTERPOSE; *put forward; introduce, insert; present;* of time, *let pass; allege, deduce.* **sē interpōnere**, *to lend one's aid.* (INTERPOSITION.)

interpres, -pretis, m., INTERPRETER.

interrēgnum, -ī, [inter + rēgnum], n., *interval between two reigns*, INTERREGNUM.

interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [inter + rogō], *ask, question*, INTERROGATE, *examine.*

interscindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissus, [inter + scindō], *cut down; cut through.*

interserō, -serere, —, —, [inter + serō], *place between, interpose; allege.*

intersum, -esse, -fuī, *lie between; be present at, take part in.* Impers. **interest**, *it concerns; it makes a difference.* **magnī interesse**, *to be of great importance.* (INTEREST.)

intervāllum, -ī, [inter + vāllum], n., properly *room between two palisades;* INTERVAL, *space.*

interventus, -ūs, m., *coming between*, INTERVENTION.

intestīnus, -a, -um, [intus], adj., *internal*, INTESTINE.

intexō, -texere, -texuī, -textus, [in + texō, *weave*], *weave in, interweave.*

intrā, adv. and prep. with acc. only, *within;* of time, *during.*

intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [cf. intrā], *go into, enter; penetrate, reach.*

intrōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [intrō + dūcō], *lead into, bring into.* (INTRODUCE, INTRODUCTION.)

introeō, -īre, -īvī, —, [intrō + eō], *go in, enter into.*

introitus, -ūs, [intrō, cf. eō], m., *entering, entrance.*

intrōmissus, see intrōmittō.

intrōmittō, -ere, -mīsī, intrōmis-

sus, [intrō + mittō], *send into, send in, let in.*

intrōrsus, [intrō + versus], adv., *within, inside, into the interior.*

intrōrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, [intrō + rumpō], *break in.*

intueor, -tuērī, -tuitus sum, [in + tueor], dep., *look upon; regard, consider.*

intuleram, see īnferō.

intumēscō, -tumēscere, -tumuī, —, inch., *swell up, rise; become angry; swell with pride.*

intus, adv., *within, on the inside.*

inūsitātus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, [in- + part. of ūsitor, freq. of ūtor], adj., *unusual, unfamiliar, strange.*

inūtilis, -e, comp. -ior, [ir. + ūtilis], adj., *useless; hurtful, injurious.*

invādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsus, [in + vādō], *go into; attack,* INVADE; *seize, take possession of.*

invehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus, [in + vehō], *carry in, carry to;* pass., *ride into, sail to; fall upon, attack, inveigh against.*

inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus, [in + veniō], *come upon, meet with; discover,* INVENT; *learn; acquire.*

inventor, -ōris, [inveniō], m., *originator,* INVENTOR.

inveterāscō, -āscere, -veterāvī, —, [in + veterāscō, from vetus], *grow old; become established; establish one's self.* INVETERATE.

invicem, or **in vicem**, adv., *by turns.*

invictus, -a, -um, [in- + victus], adj., *unconquered; unconquerable, invincible.*

invideō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsus, [in + videō], *look askance at; envy.*

invidia, -ae, [cf. invideō], f., *envy jealousy; odium, unpopularity.* (INVIDIOUS.)

inviolātus, -a, -um, [in- + violātus], adj., *unhurt, uninjured, inviolate; inviolable.*

invīsitātus, -a, -um, [in-, cf. videō], adj., *unseen.*

invīsus, -a, -um, [part. of invideō], adj., *hated, hateful.*

invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, INVITE; *feast, entertain; allure, attract.*

invītus, -a, -um, adj., *unwilling.* **sē invītō**, *against his will.*

iocus, -ī, m., pl., iocī or ioca, -ōrum, *jest,* JOKE.

Iovis, Iovī, see Iuppiter.

ipse, -a, -um, gen. ipsīus, dem. pron., *self; himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, they* (emphatic); *very;* often best rendered freely, *just, mere, in person.* **ipsīus castra**, *his own camp.* **ipsum esse Dumnorīgem**, *that Dumnorix was the very man.*

īrācundia, -ae, [īrācundus], f., *anger, wrath.*

īrācundus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, [īra, *wrath*], adj., *irascible, passionate.*

īrāscor, īrāscī, īrātus sum, [īra], dep., *be angry.*

īrātus, -a, -um, [part. of īrāscor], adj., *angered, violent, furious.* (IRATE.)

irrētiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *entrap, entangle, catch.*

irrīdeō, -rīdēre, -rīsī, -rīsus, [in + rīdeō, *laugh*], *laugh at, ridicule.*

irrīdiculē, [in + rīdiculē], adv., *without wit.* **nōn irrīdiculē**, *humorously.*

irrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, [in + rumpō], *break into, rush into.*

irruō, -ruere, -ruī, —, [in + ruō], *rush in, invade, make an attack.*

irruptiō, -ōnis, [irrumpō], f., *incursion, attack.* (IRRUPTION.)

is, ea, id, gen. eius, dem. pron., *he, she, it; that, this, the, the one;* before **ut**, is = tālis, *such;* after **et**, *and that too;* after **neque**, *and that not;* with comparatives abl. eō = *the, all the;* as eō **magis**, *all the more.*

iste, ista, istud, gen. istīus, dem. pron., *that of yours, that, this; he, she, it; such.*

ita, [cf. is], adv., *in this way, thus, in the following manner, in such a way, accordingly; of this kind.*

Italia, -ae, f., *Italy.*

Italicus, -a, -um, adj., *of Italy, Italian.* As subst., Italicī, -ōrum, m., pl., *the Italians*, as distinguished from the Roman citizens.

Italus, -a, -um, [Italia], adj., *of Italy, Italian.* As subst., Italus, -ī, m., *an Italian.*

itaque = et ita, *and so.*

itaque, [ita + que], adv., *and thus, accordingly, therefore.*

item, adv., *also, farther; just so, in like manner.* (ITEM.)

iter, itineris, [cf. eō, īre], n., *journey, line of march, march; road, route.* **magnum iter**, *forced march*, from 20 to 25 miles a day.

iterum, adv., *again, a second time.* (ITERATE.)

iuba (juba), -ae, f., *mane.*

Iuba, -ae, m., *Juba I.*, a king of Numidia, who sided with Pompey and was defeated by Caesar.

iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus, *order, command; decree, enact.*

iūcundus, -a, -um, comp. **iūcundior**, sup. **iūcundissimus**, adj., *pleasant, delightful.* (JOCUND.)

iūdex, -icis, [iūs, cf. dīcō], m. and f., *judge, juror.* (JUDICIAL.)

iūdicium (jūdicium), -di'cī, [iūdex], n., legal *judgment, decision, decree; court, trial; opinion.* **optimum iūdicium facere**, *to pass a very favorable opinion.* (JUDICIAL.)

iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [iūdex], *judge; judge of, think, infer; proclaim, declare, resolve, conclude.*

iugulum, -ī, [dim. of **iugum**], n., *collar bone; throat, neck.* (JUGULAR.)

iugum (jugum), -ī, [IUG, cf. iungō], n., *yoke;* of mountains, *ridge, summit, chain.* **sub iugum mittere**, *to send under the yoke.* See note to p. 30, l. 7.

Iugurtha, -ae, m., *Jugurtha*, king of Numidia, who carried on war with the Romans between 111 and 106 B.C. He was defeated by Marius.

Iūlius, -a, name of a celebrated Roman gens. See **Caesar**. To this gens belonged **Iūlia**, -ae, f., *Julia*, daughter of Caesar, and wife of Pompey.

iūmentum (jūmentum), -ī, [for *iugimentum, root IUG in iungō], n., *beast of burden, draught-animal*, used of horses, mules, and asses.

iungō (jungō), iungere, iūnxī, iūnctus, *join together, connect, unite; harness.* (JUNCTION.)

iūnior, -ius, comp.; see **iuvenis**.

Iūnius, -a, name of a prominent Roman gens. See **Brūtus**.

Iūnō, -ōnis, f., *the goddess Juno*, sister and wife of Jupiter.

Iuppiter, **Iovis**, m., *Jupiter*, the highest of the gods.

Iūra (Jūra), -ae, m., *Jura*, a range of mountains extending from the Rhine to the Rhone (about 170 miles), and forming the boundary between the Helvetians and the Sequanians. See map opp. p. 155.

iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [iūs], *take oath; swear to; swear by, call to witness.* (CONJURE.)

iūs, iūris, n., *right, justice; court, place of trial; legal right, privilege, authority, permission; law;* abl., iūre, *justly.* iūs gentium, *the law of nations.* iūris cōnsultus, *a lawyer.* iūre bellī, *by the laws of war.* in suō iūre, *in the exercise of his own rights.* (JURY.)

iūs iūrandum, or **iūsiūrandum**, iūris iūrandī, [iūs + gerundive of iūrō], n., *oath.*

iussus, -ūs, only abl. sing. in use, [iubeō], m., *order, command.*

iūstitia, -ae, [cf. iūs], f., JUSTICE, *uprightness.*

iūstus (jūstus), -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [iūs], adj., JUST, *fair; proper, suitable, due, regular.*

iuvencus, -ī, [iuvenis], m., *young bullock.*

iuvenis, -is, comp. iūnior, adj., *young, youthful.* As subst., iuvenis, -is, m., *young person, youth* (between twenty and forty years). iūniōrēs, -um, m., pl., *those eligible for military service*, the members of each century who were under forty-six years of age. (JUNIOR.)

Iuventius, -ventī, m., *Juventius*, family name of *P. Iuventius*, defeated by Andriscus in 149 B.C.

iuventūs, -tūtis, [iuvenis], f., *youth;* coll., *young men.*

iuvō (juvō), -āre, iūvī, iūtus, *help, aid, assist.*

iūxtā, adv., and prep. w. acc., *near, by the side of.* (JUXTAposition.)

īvissem, see eō.

K

Kal. = Kalendae.

Kalendae, -ārum, f., pl., *Calends*, the first day of the month. Kalendae Aprīlēs, *the first of April.*

L

L., with proper names = *Lūcius*, a Roman forename.

Labeō, -ōnis, m., *Labeo*, surname of *Q. Fabius Labeō*, consul 183 B.C.

Laberius, Labe'rī, m., *Laberius*, gentile name of *Q. Laberius Dūrus*, one of Caesar's tribunes.

Labiēnus, -ī, m., *Titus (Attius?) Labienus*, the most prominent of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic War. Labienus gained important successes over the Treveri (54–53 B.C.), and the Parisii (52 B.C.). In the Civil War he went over to the side of Pompey, but displayed small abilities as a commander, and fell at the battle of Munda, 45 B.C.

labor, -ōris, m., LABOR, *toil; hardship, distress; task.*

labōriōsē, comp. labōriōsius, sup. labōriōsissimē, [labōriōsus], adv., LABORIOUSLY.

labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [labor], LABOR, *toil; strive; work out,*

produce by toil; suffer, be afflicted; be hard pressed.

labrum, -ī, n., *lip; rim.* (LABIAL.)

lac, lactis, n., *milk.* (LACTEAL.)

Lacedaemonii, -ōrum, m. pl., *Lacedaemonians.*

lacerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tear to pieces; slander, asperse, abuse.* (LACERATE.)

lacessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, *provoke, challenge; annoy, assail, attack, urge.*

lacrima, -ae, f., *tear.*

lacrimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [lacrima], *shed tears; lament, bewail.*

lacus, -ūs, LAKE, *pond.*

laedō, -ere, laesī, laesus, *injure, damage;* of a pledge, *break.*

laetitia, -ae, [laetus], f., *joy, exultation, rejoicing.*

laetus, -a, -um, adj., *joyful, glad.*

Laevīnus, see Valerius.

laniō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [lanius], *tear in pieces, mangle.*

lapis, -idis, m., *stone; milestone.* (LAPIDARY.)

laqueus, -ī, m., *noose, snare, halter.*

Lārentia, -ae, f., see Acca.

largior, largīrī, largītus sum, [largus, *abundant*], dep., *give freely, bestow; bribe.*

largiter, [largus, *abundant*], adv., *abundantly, much.* largiter posse, *to have great influence.*

largītiō, -ōnis, [largior], f., *generosity, largess; bribery.*

Lārīsa, -ae, f., *Larisa*, a city of Thessaly on the Peneus river, modern Larissa.

lassitūdō, -inis, [lassus, *weak*], f., *weariness, exhaustion.* (LASSITUDE.)

lātē, comp. lātius, sup. lātissimē, [lātus], adv., *widely, extensively.* longē lātēque, *far and wide.* quam lātissimē, *as far as possible.*

latebra, -ae, [lateō], f., usually pl., *hiding place, retreat.*

lateō, -ēre, -uī, —, *lie hid, be concealed; escape notice.* (LATENT.)

Latīnus, -a, -um, adj., *of Latium, Latin.* As subst., **Latīnī**, -ōrum, m., pl., *the Latins.*

Latīnus, -ī, m., *Latinus*, mythical king of Latium.

lātitūdō, -inis, [lātus], f., *width, breadth.* (LATITUDE.)

lātius, see lātē.

Latium, Latī, n., *Latium.*

Latobrīgī, -ōrum, m. pl., a tribe near the source of the Danube.

lātrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bark; bark at.*

latrō, -ōnis, m., *robber, brigand.*

latrōcinium, -ci'nī, [cf. latrō], n., *robbery, brigandage.*

lātūrus, see ferō.

lātus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *broad, wide;* of territory, *extensive.*

latus, -eris, n., *side;* of an army, *flank.* latus apertum, *exposed flank.* ab latere, *on the flank.* (LATERAL.)

laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [laus], *praise, extol,* LAUD.

laurea, -ae, f., LAUREL *tree, bay;* LAUREL *crown.*

laus, laudis, f., *praise, glory, renown; merit, excellency.*

Lāvīnia, -ae, f., *Lavinia*, daughter of King Latinus.

Lāvīnium, -īnī, n., *Lavinium*, a town in Latium.

laxō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [laxus], *extend, open, expand; undo.* (RELAX.)

lectīca, -ae, f., *litter, sedan chair.*

lēctor, -ōris, [cf. legō], m., *reader.*

lectulus, -ī, [dim. of lectus], m., *small couch, bed.*

lēgātiō, -ōnis, f., *embassy,* LEGATION; generally referring to persons (= lēgātī), *deputation, envoys.*

lēgātus, -ī, m., *ambassador, envoy;* of the army, *lieutenant, deputy.* (LEGATE.)

legiō, -ōnis, [cf. legō, *collect*], f., LEGION. See INTROD., p. xxviii.

legiōnārius, -a, -um, [legiō], adj., *of a legion,* LEGIONARY.

legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus, *bring together, gather,* COLLECT; *choose, appoint; review, read.*

Lemannus, -ī, m., in Caesar always with lacus, *Lake Geneva.*

Lemnovīcēs, -um, m. pl., *the Lemnovices,* a tribe of central Gaul.

Lemovīcus, -ī, m., *Lemovicus.*

lēnis, -e, adj., *gentle, smooth.* (LENIENT.)

lēnitās, -ātis, [lēnis], f., *smoothness, gentleness.*

lēniter, comp. lēnius, sup. -issimē, [lēnis], adv., *mildly, gently, slightly.*

lentē, [lentus], adv., *slowly.*

Lentulus, -ī, m., *Lentulus,* name of a distinguished family of the Cornelian gens; in this book refers to:

(1) *P. Cornēlius Lentulus Spinther,* a supporter of Pompey against Caesar.

(2) *P. Cornēlius Lentulus Sūra,* a prominent member of the Catilinarian conspiracy.

(3) *L. Cornēlius Lentulus Crūs,* consul in 49 B.C.

lentus, -a, -um, [cf. lēnis], adj., *pliant, flexible, tough; slow, sluggish; easy, calm.*

lēnunculus, -ī, m., *a small boat.*

leō, -ōnis, [λέων], m., *lion.*

Leptitānī, -ōrum, [Leptis], m. pl., *Leptitani, people of Leptis Minor,* a town on the northern coast of Africa.

lepus, -oris, m., *hare.*

lētālis, -e, [lētum], adj., *deadly, fatal.* (LETHAL.)

Leucī, -ōrum, [Kel., = 'bright'], m. pl., a Gallic state between the Mediomatrici and the Lingones; the name of their chief city, Tullum, survives in *Toul.*

levis, -e, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *light, slight; trivial; fickle, false;* of a report, *unfounded;* of an engagement, *unimportant.* Comp., *more capricious; less serious.*

levitās, -ātis, [levis], f., *lightness; fickleness, instability.* (LEVITY.)

lēx, lēgis, f., *enactment, law, rule; condition.* (LEGAL.)

Lexoviī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Lexovii,* a tribe dwelling in Gaul near the mouth of the Sequana (*Seine*).

libēns, -entis, [part. of libet], adj., *willing, with pleasure, glad.*

libenter, comp. libentius, sup. libentissimē, [libēns, *glad*], adv., *willingly, gladly.*

līber, -era, -erum, comp. -ior, sup. līberrimus, adj., *free, independent; unimpeded, generous.* (LIBERAL.) As subst., **līber**, -erī, m., *freeman.* See also **līberī**.

liber, -brī, m., *inner bark* of a tree; *book.* (LIBRARY.)

līberālitās, -ātis, [līberālis], f., *kindness, courtesy; generosity,* LIBERALITY.

līberāliter, comp. līberālius, sup. -issimē, [līberālis], adv., *courteously, kindly.* (LIBERALLY.)

līberē, comp. **-ius**, sup. līberrimē, [līber], adv., *freely; boldly; openly; without restraint.*

līberī, **-ōrum**, [from līber; i.e. the *free* part of the family], m. pl., *children.*

līberō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, [līber], *set free*, LIBERATE; *acquit.*

lībertās, -ātis, [līber], f., *freedom*, LIBERTY; *freedom of speech.*

lībertus, -ī, [līber], m., *freedman.*

Libō, **-ōnis**, m., *Libo*, surname of *L. Scrībōnius Libō*, a relative of Pompey's.

lībrīlis, -e, [lībra, *pound*], adj., *weighing a pound.*

liceor, licērī, licitus sum, dep., *bid*, at an auction.

licet, licēre, licuit and licitum est, impers., *it is allowed, lawful, permitted.* licet mihi, *I am allowed, I may.* petere ut liceat, *to ask permission.*

Licinius, -i'nī, m., *Licinius*, family name of:

(1) *P. Licinius Crassus*, cos. 171 B.C.

(2) *Licinius Damisippus*, a Roman senator.

Liger, -eris, m., the principal river of central Gaul, the *Loire.*

lignātiō, -tiōnis, [lignor], f., *getting wood.*

ligneus, -a, -um, [lignum], adj., *of wood, wooden.* (LIGNITE.)

lignor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *get wood.*

Ligus, -uris, m., *Ligurian, inhabitant of Liguria*, a country in the western part of Cisalpine Gaul.

līlium, līlī, n., LILY, a military device, called from the name of the flower.

Lilybaeum, -ī, n., *Lilybaeum*, a promontory on the southern coast of Sicily. Map inside front cover.

Lingonēs, **-um**, m. pl., a Gallic state separated from the Sequani by the Arar.

lingua, -ae, f., *tongue;* by metonymy, *language.* (LINGUAL, LINGUIST.)

lingula, -ae, [dim. of lingua], f., *tongue of land, spit.*

linter, -tris, f., *boat, skiff.*

līnum, -ī, n., *flax, linen.*

liquefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, [liqueō + faciō], *make liquid, melt; enervate.*

līs, lītis, f., *strife, quarrel, suit* at law; *subject of an action, matter in dispute; damages.* (LITIGATION.)

Liscus, -ī, m., chief magistrate (vergobret) of the Aedui, 58 B.C.

Litaviccus, -ī, m., an Aeduan.

lītigātor, -ōris, m., *party to a lawsuit*, LITIGANT.

littera, -ae, f., LETTER of the alphabet; *writing, document;* pl., litterae, -ārum, *writing; letter;* LITERATURE.

litterārius, -a, -um, [littera], adj., *of* or *belonging to reading and writing.* lūdus litterārius, *an elementary school.*

lītus, -ōris, n., *shore, coast.* (LITTORAL.)

locuplētō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [locuplēs], *make rich, enrich.*

locus, -ī, m., *place, ground; position, situation; room; social position, rank.* Pl., locī, -ōrum, m., *single places;* loca, -ōrum, n., *places connected, region, locality; station, post.*

locūtus, see loquor.

longē, comp. longius, sup. longissimē, [longius], adv., *a* LONG *way off, at a distance; far; greatly, by far.* Comp., of space, *farther;* of time, *further, longer.* quam longissimē, *as far as possible.* See lātē.

longinquus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, [longus], adj., *remote, distant; long-continued, lasting.*

longitūdō, -inis, [longus], f., *length.* (LONGITUDE.)

longurius, -u′rī, [longus], m., *long pole.*

longus, -a, -um, comp. longior, sup. longissimus, adj., LONG, *extended; lasting, remote.*

Longus, -ī, m., *Longus*, surname of *Ti. Semprōnius Longus*, colleague of P. Cornelius Scipio in the consulship, 218 B.C.

loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, dep., *speak, talk; say, tell.* (LOCUTION.)

lōrīca, -ae, (lōrum, *thong*), f., *coat of mail; fortification.* See INTROD., p. XXXI.

Lūcānus, -a, -um, adj., *Lucanian, of Lucania*, a province in southwestern Italy. As subst., Lūcānus, -ī, m., *a Lucanian.*

Lucceius, Lucceī, m., *Lucceius*, gentile name of *L. Lucceius*, one of Pompey's followers.

Lūcilius, Lūci′lī, m., *Lucilius*, gentile name of *Lūcilius Hirrus*, a follower of Pompey.

Lūcius, Lūcī, abbreviated L., m., *Lucius*, a Roman forename.

Lucrētia, -ae, f., *Lucretia*, wife of Tarquinius Collatinus, and a type of the Roman matron of the olden time.

Lucrētius, -crētī, m., *Lucretius*, the father of Lucretia.

Lucterius, -e′rī, m., one of the Cadurci.

lūctor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *wrestle, contend.* (RELUCTANT.)

lūctus, -ūs, [cf. lugeō], m., *sorrow, mourning, grief.*

lūcus, -ī, m., *sacred grove; grove.*

lūdus, -ī, m., *game, play; public game; sport, jest.* (INTERLUDE.)

lūgeō, -ēre, lūxī, lūctus, *grieve, lament; deplore.*

Lugotorīx, -rīgis, m., *Lugotorīx*, the name of one of the Britons.

lūgubris, -e, [cf. lūgeō], adj. *doleful, mournful,* LUGUBRIOUS.

lūmen, -inis, n., *light; light of the eye, eye; glory, ornament.* (LUMEN, ILLUMINATION.)

lūna, -ae, f., *the moon.* (LUNATIC.)

Lūna, -ae, f., *the Moon*, as a goddess.

lupa, -ae, f., *she-wolf.*

lupus, -ī, m., *wolf.*

luscinia, -ae, f., *nightingale.*

Lūsītānia, -ae, f., *Lusitania*, a district in Spain corresponding very nearly to modern Portugal.

Lūsītānus, -a, -um, adj., *of Lusitania.* As subst., m. pl., *Lusitanians.*

lūstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [lūstrum], *light up, illuminate; review, inspect; purify.* (ILLUSTRATE.)

Lutātius, -ātī, m., *Lutatius*, name of a Roman gens. In this book refers to:

(1) *C. Lutātius Catulus*, consul in 241 B.C. He brought the first Punic war to an end by his naval victory near the Aegates Islands.

(2) *Q. Lutātius Catulus*, who aided Marius in defeating the Cimbri at Vercellae in 101 B.C.

lūx, lūcis, f., *light, daylight.* prīmā lūce, ortā lūce, *at daybreak.*

lūxī, see lūgeō.

lūxuria, -ae, [lūxus, *excess*], f., LUXURY; *extravagance.*

M

M., with proper names = Mārcus, a Roman forename.

M'., with proper names = Mānius, a Roman forename.

M as a numeral = 1000.

Macedonia, -ae, f., *Macedonia.*

Macedonicus, -a, -um, [Macedonia], adj., *of* or *belonging to Macedonia, Macedonian.*

māceria, -ae, f., *wall.*

māchinātiō, -ōnis, [māchinor, *contrive*], f., *contrivance*, MACHINE. (MACHINATION.)

mactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [mactus], *magnify, glorify; sacrifice; kill.*

maculō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [macula, *spot*], *spot, stain; dishonor, defile.*

maestus, -a, -um, adj., *sad, gloomy, dejected.*

magicus, -a, -um, adj., MAGIC.

magis, sup. **maximē**, [cf. magnus], adv. in comp. degree, *more, rather.* **eō magis**, *all the more.* Sup. **maximē**, *very greatly, exceedingly, especially.* **quam maximē**, *as much as possible.* **ūnus omnium maximē**, *most of all.*

magister, -trī, [cf. magnus], m., *master, chief, captain* (of a ship); *teacher, guardian.* **magister equitum**, *master of the horse.*

magistrātus, -ūs, [magister], m., MAGISTRACY; MAGISTRATE.

Magnēsia, -ae, [Μαγνησία], f., *Magnesia*, a city on the river Meander in Caria, in southwestern Asia Minor. See map opp. p. 97.

magnificus, -a, -um, comp. magnificentior, sup. magnificentissimus, [magnus, cf. faciō], adj., *great, noble, distinguished;* MAGNIFICENT.

magnificentissimē, [magnificus], adv., sup., *most grandly, most splendidly.*

magnitūdō, -inis, [magnus], f., *greatness; size*, MAGNITUDE, *great number.*

magnopere, [for magnō opere, abl. of magnum + opus], adv., *very much, greatly; earnestly, urgently.*

magnus, -a, -um, comp. **maior** (major), sup. **maximus**, adj., *great, large, powerful; noble; mighty, loud; important, weighty;* (MAGNATE). Comp., *more* (MAJORITY). Sup., *greatest, very great, largest, very large* (MAXIMUM). As subst., **maiōrēs**, -um, m. pl., *forefathers, ancestors.* **maiōrēs nātū**, lit., *those older by birth, the old men, elders.* **Magnus**, -ī, m., *the Great*, surname of *Cn. Pompeius* and of *Alexander of Macedon.*

Māgō or **Māgōn**, -ōnis, [Μάγων], m., *Mago*, a brother of Hannibal.

maiestās, -ātis, [maior], f., *greatness, dignity; authority, sovereign power.* **crīmen maiestātis**, *charge of high treason.* (MAJESTY.)

maior, -ius, see magnus.

malacia, -ae, f., *calm* at sea.

male, [malus], comp. **peius**, sup. **pessimē**, adv., *badly, wickedly; barely, with difficulty; unsuccessfully.* (MALEFACTOR.)

maleficium, -fi'cī, [maleficus], n., *mischief, harm.* (MALEFICENT.)

mālō, **mālle**, **māluī**, —, [magis + volō], *prefer.*

malum, -ī, [malus], n., *evil*, *mischief*, *misfortune*; *evil deed*.

mālus, -ī, m., *mast*.

malus, -a, -um, comp. peior, sup. pessimus, adj., *bad*, *wicked*; *unfavorable*, *unfortunate*. (MALFORMATION.)

Mancīnus, -ī, m., *Mancinus*, surname of *C. Hostīlius Mancīnus*.

mandātum, -ī, [part. of mandō], n., *order*, *command*, MANDATE, *injunction*, *instruction*.

mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [manus + dō], *commit*; *order*, COMMAND, *direct*.

Mandubiī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Mandubii*, a Gallic tribe, living near the Aeduans.

Mandubracius, Mandubra'cī, m., a chief of the Britons.

māne, adv., *in the morning*.

maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsus, REMAIN, *tarry*; *abide*, *endure*, *continue*; *wait*; *wait for*.

Mānīlius, -īlī, m., *Manilius*, family name of *M'. Mānīlius*, consul in 149 B.C.

manipulāris, -is (manipulus), m., *comrade* (member of the same maniple).

manipulus, -ī, [manus + PLE in pleō, because the first standard of a maniple was a *handful* of hay raised on a pole], m., *company* of soldiers, MANIPLE, one third of a cohort.

Mānlius, Mānlī, m., *Manlius*, name of a Roman gens. In this book refers to:

(1) *T. Mānlius Torquātus*, who distinguished himself in the war against the Gauls in 361 B.C.

(2) *Cn. Mānlius Volsō*, consul in 189 B.C.; he was victor over the Galatians, the allies of Antiochus.

mānō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *flow*, *trickle*; *give forth*; *extend*, *spread*. (EMANATE.)

mānsuēfaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, [mānsuētus + faciō], *tame*.

mānsuētūdō, -inis, [mānsuētus, *tame*], f., *tameness*, *gentleness*, *compassion*.

manūmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, [manus + mittō], *release*, *emancipate*, *set free*. (MANUMISSION.)

manus, -ūs, f., *hand*; *work*, *skill*; *force*, *strength*; *band*, *troops*. ad manum, *near*, *close*. ad manum scrība, *private secretary*. manūs dēdere, *to yield*; ferreae manūs, *grappling-irons*. (MANUAL.)

Mārcellus, -ī, [dim. of Mārcus], m., *Marcellus*, family name. In this book refers to:

(1) *M. Claudius Mārcellus*, the 'Sword of Rome,' who captured Syracuse in 212 B.C.

(2) *M. Claudius Mārcellus*, consul in 183 B.C.

(3) *M. Claudius Mārcellus*, consul in 51 B.C.

Mārcius, -a, name of a Roman gens. In this book are mentioned:

(1) *Ancus Mārcius*, fourth king of Rome.

(2) *C. Mārcius Coriolānus*. See p. 24.

(3) *L. Mārcius Cēnsōrīnus*, consul in 149 B.C.

(4) *Mārcius Rūfus*, quaestor under Curio in Africa.

Marcomanī, -ōrum, [Ger. = 'Men of the Border,' 'Frontier-guard'], m. pl., a Germanic people the location of which is doubtful.

Mārcus, -ī, abbreviated **M.**, m.; *Marcus*, a Roman forename.

mare, maris, n., *the sea.* **Mare Superum**, *the Upper Sea, the Adriatic.*

maritimus, -a, -um, [mare], adj., *of the sea, by the sea, near the sea;* MARITIME.

marītus, -a, -um, adj., *of marriage, nuptial.* As subst., **marītus**, -ī, m., *husband.* (MARITAL.)

Marius, Marī, m., *C. Marius*, one of the greatest Roman generals; born 157 B.C., near Arpinum, died 86 B.C.; famous for his victories over Jugurtha and the Cimbri and Teutones; seven times consul, remaining to the end the bitter foe of the aristocratic party and the most formidable opponent of Sulla.

Mārs, Mārtis, m., *Mars*, the Roman god of war; by metonymy, *war, battle.* **dubiō Mārte**, *in an indecisive contest.*

Mārsī, -ōrum, m., *the Marsi*, a people living in a district just east of Latium.

Mārtius, -a, -um, adj., *of Mars, to Mars, martial; of the month of March, of March.*

mās, maris, m., *a male, male.* (MASCULINE.)

massa, -ae, f., *lump*, MASS.

Massiliēnsis, -e, [Massilia], adj., *of Massilia* in Gallia Narbonensis, modern Marseilles. As subst., **Massiliēnsēs**, -ium, m. pl., *the Massilians.*

matara, -ae, [Kel., = 'missile'], f., *javelin, spear.*

māter, -tris, f., *mother.* **mātrēs familiae**, *matrons.* (MATERNAL.)

māteria, -ae, [māter], f., MATERIAL; *timber, wood.*

māterior, -ārī, -ātus sum, [māteria), dep., *get timber.*

Matiscō, -cōnis, m., *Matisco*, a city of the Aeduans, the modern *Mâcon.*

mātricīda, -ae, [māter, cf. caedō], m., *murderer of a mother*, MATRICIDE.

mātrimōnium, -ōnī, [māter], n., *marriage*, MATRIMONY. **in mātrimōnium dare**, *to give in marriage.* **in mātrimōnium dūcere**, *to marry.*

Matrona, -ae, m., *the Marne*, which rises near the headwaters of the Meuse (*Mosa*) and flows northwest, joining the Seine (*Sēquana*) four miles above Paris, after a course of more than two hundred miles. See map opp. p. 155.

mātrōna, -ae, [māter], f., *wife*, MATRON.

mātūrē, comp. **mātūrius**, sup. **mātūrrimē**, [mātūrus], adv., *early.* **quam mātūrrimē**, *as early as possible.* (MATURELY.)

mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [mātūrus], *make haste; hasten.* (MATURE.)

mātūrus, -a, -um, comp. **-ior**, sup. **mātūrrimus**, adj., *ripe; early.* (MATURE.)

Maurētānia, -ae, f., *Mauretania*, in north Africa, modern Morocco.

maximē, [maximus], see **magis.**

maximus, see **magnus.**

Maximus, see **Fabius.**

medicīna, -ae, f., MEDICINE, the healing art.

medicus, -ī, m., *doctor, physician, surgeon.* (MEDICAL, MEDICINE.)

mediocris, -cre, (medius), adj., *middling, moderate; ordinary, common; small, slight*, MEDIOCRE.

mediocriter, comp., mediocrius [mediocris], adv., *moderately, in a slight degree.*

Mediomatricī, -ōrum, or Mediomatricēs, -um, m. pl., *the Mediomatrici* or *Mediomatrices*, a tribe living in central Gaul.

mediterrāneus, -a, -um, [medius + terra], *inland;* MEDITERRANEAN.

meditor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *reflect, consider*, MEDITATE; *plan, devise; practice.*

medium, medī, [medius], n., *middle, center, intervening space.* in medium prōferre, *to produce, bring out.* (MEDIUM.)

medius, -a, -um, adj., *in the middle, middle, mid-; moderate.* medius utrīusque, *halfway between both.* media nox, *midnight.* dē mediā nocte, *in the middle of the night.*

melior, adj., see bonus.

melius, adv., see bene.

membrum, -ī, n., MEMBER (of the body), *part, limb.*

Memmius, Memmī, m., *Memmius*, gentile name of *C. Memmius Gemellus.*

memor, -oris, adj., *mindful, remembering.*

memorābilis, -e, [memorō], adj., *worth telling*, MEMORABLE; *remarkable.*

memoria, -ae, [memor, *mindful*], f., MEMORY, *remembrance; account, narration.* memoriā tenēre, *to recollect.* nostrā memoriā, *in our own day.* memoriā prōditum, *handed down by tradition.*

Menapiī, -ōrum, m. pl., a Belgic people between the Mosa (*Meuse*) and the Scaldis (*Schelde*).

Menēnius, -ēnī, m., *Menenius*, family name of *Menēnius Agrippa.*

mēns, mentis, f., *mind, intellect; feeling; judgment, intelligence; purpose, intent; plan.* (MENTAL.)

mēnsa, -ae, f., *table; course* at dinner.

mēnsis, -is, m., *month.*

mēnsūra, -ae, (mētior), f., MEASURE.

mentiō, -ōnis, f., *calling to mind*, MENTION.

mentior, -īrī, -ītus sum, dep., *invent, lie, assert falsely.*

mercātor, -ōris, [mercor, *trade*], m., *trader, merchant.*

mercātūra, -ae, [mercor, *trade*], f., *trade.*

mercennārius, -a, -um, [mercēs], adj., *serving for pay, hired*, MERCENARY. As subst., mercennārius, -ārī, m., MERCENARY, *hireling.*

mercēs, -ēdis, [cf. mereō, *earn*], f., *pay, wages, reward.*

Mercurius, -cúrī, m., *Mercury.*

mereō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, and mereor, -ērī, -itus sum, dep., *deserve, be worthy of*, MERIT; *earn, gain, obtain; render service.*

mergō, -ere, -sī, -sum, *dip, plunge in, swallow up; sink, overwhelm.* (SUBMERGE, IMMERSE.)

meridiānus, -a, -um, [meridiēs], adj., *of mid-day, mid-day.* (MERIDIAN.)

meridiēs, -ēī, [*merī-diē*, loc., = 'in the clear day'], m., *mid-day; south.*

meritō, [meritum], adv., *justly.*

meritum, -ī, [mereō], n., MERIT, *service; worth, value.*

meritus, see mereor.

merx, mercis, f., *merchandise.*

Messāla, -ae, m., *Messala*, family name of *Marcus Valerius Messāla*, consul 61 B.C.

Messāna, -ae, f., *Messana*, a city of northwestern Sicily, modern Messina.

metallum, -ī, [μέταλλον], n., METAL; *mine*.

Metellus, see Caecilius.

mētior, mētīrī, mēnsus sum, *measure*, *measure out*, *distribute*. (MENSURATION.)

Metius, Metī, m., *Marcus Metius*, an envoy of Caesar to Ariovistus.

Mettius, Mettī, m., *Mettius*, forename of *Mettius Fūfetius*, leader of the Albans in the time of Tullus Hostilius.

metō, metere, messuī, messus, *reap*.

mētor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *measure off*.

metus, -ūs, m., *fear*, *dread*; *terror*. (METICULOUS.)

mī, voc. of meus.

Micipsa, -ae, m., *Micipsa*, a king of Numidia, died in 118 B.C., leaving the kingdom to his sons, Adherbal and Hiempsal.

migrō, -āre, -āvī, ātus, *depart*, *remove*. (MIGRATE.)

mihi, see ego.

mīles, -itis, m., *soldier*, *foot-soldier*; coll. by metonymy, *soldiery*, *soldiers*.

Mīlētus, -ī, f., *Miletus*, an Ionian city on the western coast of Asia Minor, near Ephesus. See map opp. p. 115.

mīliārium, -ārī, [mīlle], n., *milestone*.

mīliēns, [mīlle], num. adv., *a thousand times*. mīliēns sēstertium, see note to p. 65, l. 4.

mīlitāris, -e, [mīles], adj., *of a soldier* or *soldiers*; *of war*, MILITARY, *warlike*. rēs mīlitāris, *art of war*; *military operations*.

mīlitia, -ae, [mīles], f., *military service*, *warfare*, *war*. Loc., mīlitiae, *in the field*, *in war*; often contrasted with domī, *at home*, *in peace*. (MILITIA.)

mīlitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [mīles], *be a soldier*, *perform military service*, *make war*. (MILITATE.)

mīlle, indecl. in sing., pl. mīlia or mīllia, num. adj., *a thousand*. Used as subst. with gen., usually in the plural. As subst., n., (sc. passuum), *mile*.

mīlvus, -ī, m., *kite*, a bird of prey.

minae, -ārum, [cf. minor], f. pl., *threats*.

Minerva, -ae, f., *Minerva*, goddess of wisdom.

minimē, see parum.

minimus, -a, -um, see parvus.

minister, -tra, -trum, adj., *subordinate*, *ministering*. As subst., minister, -trī, m., *attendant*, *waiter*, *servant*, *helper*. (MINISTER.)

minitor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [freq. of minor], dep., *threaten*, *menace*.

minor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *threaten*, *menace*.

minor, -us, see parvus.

Minucius, -a, gentile name of:

(1) *L. Minucius Basilus*, one of Caesar's officers.

(2) *M. Minucius Rūfus*, master of horse under Fabius Maximus.

(3) *Q. Minucius Thermus*, consul in 193 B.C.

minuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, DIMINISH, *reduce*; of the tide, *ebb*; of controversies, *settle*, *put an end to*.

minus, see parum.

mīrābilis, -e, [mīror], adj., *won-*

derful, extraordinary. (ADMIRABLE.)

mīrificus, -a, -um, [mīrus, cf. faciō], adj., *wonderful, marvelous, strange.*

mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, [mīrus], dep., *wonder, marvel; wonder at;* ADMIRE, *esteem.*

mīrus, -a, -um, adj., *wonderful, extraordinary.* mīrum in modum, mīrō modō, *in a surprising way.*

misceō, miscēre, miscuī, mixtus, MIX, *mingle, blend; throw into confusion, disturb.*

miser, -era, -erum, comp. -ior, sup. miserrimus, adj., *wretched, unfortunate, pitiable; poor.* (MISERABLE.) As subst., miserī, -ōrum, m., pl., *the wretched.*

misericordia, -ae, [misericors], f., *compassion, mercy.* ūtī misericordiā, *to exercise compassion.*

miseror, -ārī, -ātus sum, [miser], dep., *lament, deplore.* (COMMISERATE.)

missiō, -ōnis, [mittō], f., *sending; release, liberation; discharge* from service, DISMISSAL. (MISSION.)

missus, -a, -um, see mittō.

Mithridātēs, -is, m., *Mithridates,* Mithridates VI, surnamed the Great, king of Pontus.

Mithridāticus, -a, -um, adj., *of Mithridates, Mithridatic.*

mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, *send, send off, despatch; dismiss;* of weapons, *hurl, throw.*

Mitylēnae, -ārum, f., pl., *Mitylēne.* See note to p. 60, l. 8.

mōbilitās, -ātis, [mōbilis], f., MOBILITY, *speed; fickleness.*

mōbiliter, [mōbilis], adv., *quickly, easily.*

moderātiō, -ōnis, [moderor], f., *controlling, guidance;* MODERATION, *self-control.*

moderor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [modus], dep., *hold in check, control.* (MODERATE.)

modestia, -ae, [modestus], f., *moderation; discretion; shame,* MODESTY; *honor, dignity.*

modestus, -a, -um, [modus], adj., *moderate,* MODEST, *temperate, sober, discreet.*

modicus, -a, -um, [modus], adj., *in proper measure, moderate, modest, temperate; mediocre.* (MODICUM.)

modius, modī, [modus], m., *grain-measure,* MODIUS, sixteen *sextāriī* (about two gallons), *peck.*

modo, [modus], adv., *only, merely;* of time, *just now, but now.* modo . . . modo, *now . . . now.* nōn modo . . . sed etiam, *not only . . . but also.* dum modo, *provided only, if only.*

modus, -ī, m., *measure, amount; limit, end; manner, fashion,* MODE. ad hunc modum, *after this manner.* quem ad modum, *in what way, how; in whatever way, just as.* eius modī, *of such a kind.*

moenia, -ium, n. pl., *ramparts, city walls; walled town.*

molestē, comp. -ius, sup. -issimē, [molestus, *troublesome*], adv., *with trouble* or *annoyance.* ferre molestē, *to be annoyed, be vexed.*

molestia, -ae, [molestus], f., *trouble, uneasiness, annoyance.*

mōlēs, -is, f., *mass;* pl., *massive works.*

molestus, -a, -um, [cf. mōlēs], adj., *troublesome, annoying, disagreeable.* (MOLEST.)

mōlīmentum, -ī, [mōlior], *great effort, exertion.*

molitus, see molō.

mōlior, -īrī, -ītus sum, [mōlēs], dep., *make an exertion, struggle, toil; build, construct; undertake.*

molliō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [mollis], *make soft, soften; tame, restrain, civilize.* (EMOLLIENT.)

mollis, -e, adj., *soft, gentle; weak.* (MOLLIFY.)

mollitia, -ae, and mollitiēs, -ēī, [mollis], f., *softness; weakness.*

Molō, -ōnis, m., *Molo*, surname of *Apollōnius Molō*. See Apollōnius.

molō, -ere, -uī, -itus, *grind.* molita cibāria, *meal, coarse flour.*

mōmentum, -ī, [moveō], n., *movement, motion; brief space of time*, MOMENT; *cause, circumstance.* (MOMENTUM.)

Mona, -ae, f., *Mona*, now the Isle of Man, in the Irish Sea.

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *remind*, ADMONISH; *advise, warn, teach; predict, foretell.*

mōns, montis, m., *mountain, mountain-range, elevation, height.* summus mōns, *top of a mountain.* rādīcēs montis, *foot of a mountain.* sub monte, *at the foot of a mountain.*

mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *point out, show.* (DEMONSTRATE.)

mōnstrum, -i, [moneō], n., *portent*, MONSTER.

monumentum, -ī, [cf. moneō], n., *memorial*, MONUMENT.

mora, -ae, f., *delay; cause of delay.*

morātus, -a, -um, see moror.

morbus, -ī, [cf. morior, mors], m., *disease, sickness.*

Morinī, -ōrum, [Kel., from morī, = Lat. mare; 'Dwellers by the Sea'], m. pl., a powerful Belgic people, on the seacoast north of the Lys River and opposite Kent. See map opp. p. 155.

morior, morī and morīrī, mortuus sum, fut. part. moritūrus, [cf. mors], *die.* (MORIBUND, MORTUARY.)

moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, [mora], dep., *delay, linger; hinder.*

mors, mortis, f., *death.* (MORTAL.)

mortuus, -a, -um, [part. of morior], adj., *dead.* (MORTAL.)

mōs, mōris, m., *habit, custom, manner; humor;* pl., *customs, manners, conduct; character.* mōrem gerere, see gerō.

mōtus, -ūs, [moveō], m., MOTION, *movement; uprising, tumult.*

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move, stir; remove; affect, influence;* castra movēre, *to break camp.*

mox, adv., *soon, next; afterwards.*

Mūcius, Mūcī, m., *Mucius*, family name of *Q. Mūcius Scaevola.*

mulier, -ieris, f., *woman, female; wife.*

multimodīs, [multīs, modīs], adv., *in many ways.*

multiplex, -icis, [multus, cf. plicō], adj., *manifold, repeated, many; many times as great; of many parts.* (MULTIPLICITY.)

multitūdō, -inis, [multus], f., *large number*, MULTITUDE, *the common people.*

multō [multus], adv., *by much, much, far.*

multō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [multa, *fine*], *punish, fine.*

multum, [multus], adv., *greatly, much.* multum posse or valēre, *to have great power or influence.*

multus, -a, -um, adj., comp. plūs, sup. plūrimus, *much;* pl. *many.* As subst., m. pl., multī, -ōrum, *many people;* plūrēs, -ium, *more, several;* plūs, *more;* plūrimum, *very much;* gen. of value, plūrimī, *of very great worth;* multō diē, *late in the day.*

Mummius, Mummī, m., *Mummius*, family name of *L. Mummius Achāicus*, who took and sacked Corinth in 146 B.C.

mundus, -ī, m., *world, universe.* (MUNDANE.)

mūnicipium, -ci'pī, [mūniceps], n., *free town, town.* (MUNICIPALITY.)

mūnīmentum, -ī, [mūniō], n., *fortification.*

mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [moenia], *fortify, protect; guard;* of roads, *make, build.*

mūnītiō, -ōnis, [mūniō], f., *a fortifying; fortification, defences; protection.* (MUNITIONS.)

mūnītus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part. of mūniō], adj., *fortified, protected.*

mūnus, -eris, n., *duty, function, gift.* (REMUNERATE.)

mūrālis, -e, [mūrus], adj., *of a wall, wall.* (MURAL.)

Murcus, -ī, m., *Murcus*, surname of *Statius Murcus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

mūrus, -ī, m., *wall; rampart.*

mūs, mūris, m. and f., *mouse.*

mūsculus, -ī, [mūs], m., *a little mouse;* as a military term, *sheds, mantlets.*

mutilus, -a, -um, adj., MUTILATED; *lacking.*

mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of moveō], *move, remove; change, exchange.* (MUTATION, MUTABLE.)

N

Nābis, -idis, m., *Nabis*, a king of Sparta.

nactus, -a, -um, see nancīscor.

nam, conj., introducing an explanation or reason, *for;* as an enclitic with interrogative words, hardly translatable as a separate word.

Nammeius [Nammeiius], -ī, m., the name of a Helvetian.

namque, [nam + -que], conj., *for, and in fact.*

nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus or nanctus sum, dep., *get, receive; meet with, find, incur, contract.*

Narbō, -ōnis, m., chief city of 'the Province,' modern *Narbonne.*

nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *say, tell; recount, describe*, NARRATE.

nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, dep., *be born; arise, grow; begin.* (NATAL.)

Nāsīca, see Scīpiō.

Nāsīdius, Nāsīdī, m., *Nasidius*, gentile name of *L. Nāsīdius*, one of Pompey's officers.

Nasua, -ae, m., a chief of the Suebi.

nāsus, -ī, m., *nose; sense of smell.* (NASAL.)

nātālis, -e, [nātus], adj., *of birth*, NATAL. nātālis diēs, *birthday.*

nātiō, -ōnis, [cf. nātus], f., *birth; race;* NATION, *people.*

nātīvus, -a, -um, [nātus], adj., NATIVE, *natural.*

nātura, -ae, [nātus, from nāscor], f., NATURE, *character; situation.*

nātūrāliter, [nātūrālis], adv., NATURALLY, *by nature.*

nātus, -a, -um, [part. of nāscor], adj., *born, arisen.* As subst., nātus, -ī, m., *son.*

nātus, -ūs, [cf. nāscor], m., used only in abl. sing., *birth.*

naufragium, -a′gī, [nāvis, cf. frangō], n., *shipwreck; ruin, loss.*

nauta, -ae, [for nāvita from nāvis], m., *sailor.*

nauticus, -a, -um, [ναυτικός], adj., NAUTICAL, *naval.* **nautica castra**, *naval camp.*

nāvālis, -e, [nāvis], adj., *of ships*, NAVAL. As subst., **nāvālia**, -ium, n. pl., *shipyard, docks.*

nāvicula, -ae, [dim. of nāvis], f., *small vessel, boat, skiff.*

nāvigātiō, -ōnis, [nāvigō], f., *sailing*, NAVIGATION; *voyage.*

nāvigium, -i′gī, [nāvis, cf. agō], n., *vessel, ship, boat.*

nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [nāvis + agō], *sail.* (NAVIGATE.)

nāvis, -is, f., *ship.* **nāvis longa**, *ship of war.* **nāvis onerāria**, *ship of burden, transport.* **nāvis trirēmis**, *ship with three banks of oars, trireme.*

nāvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [(g)nāvus, *busy*], *do with zeal.* **operam nāvāre**, *do one's best.*

nē, adv. and conj.:

(1) As adv., *not.* **nē . . . quidem**, *not even;* the word emphasized stands between nē and quidem.

(2) As conj., *that . . . not, lest, not to;* after words of fearing, *that;* after words of beseeching, ordering, commanding, *not to.*

nē quis, *that no one.* **nē qua spēs**, *that no hope.* **dēterrēre nē**, *to frighten from.*

-ne, enclitic interrogative particle, *whether.* **-ne . . . an**, or **-ne . . . -ne**, *whether . . . or.*

nec, conj., see **neque.**

necessāriō, [necessārius], adv., *of necessity, unavoidably.*

necessārius, -a, -um, [necesse], adj., *unavoidable, necessary; urgent, pressing; related.* **mors necessāria**, *a natural death.* As subst., **necessārius**, -ārī, m., *kinsman, relation.*

necesse, adj., only in nom. and acc. sing., n., *necessary.*

necessitās, -ātis, [necesse], f., NECESSITY, *urgency; fate, destiny; relationship.*

necessitūdō, -inis, [necesse], f., NECESSITY; *relationship, friendship, intimacy.*

necne, [nec + -ne], conj., *or not.* **utrum . . . necne**, *whether . . . or not.*

necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *kill, destroy.*

nefārius, -a, -um, [nefās], adj., *wicked, abominable*, NEFARIOUS.

nefās, [ne, *not* + fās], indecl., n., *something contrary to divine law, sin, crime.*

neglegēns, -entis, [part. of neglegō], adj., NEGLIGENT, *careless.*

neglegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctus, [nec + legō], *disregard, be indifferent to*, NEGLECT; *overlook; despise.*

negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *deny, say not, say no*, often = dīcit nōn; *refuse.* (NEGATIVE, NEGATION.)

negōtior, -ārī, -ātus, [negōtium], *transact business.*

negōtiātor, -ōris, [negōtior], m., *trader, merchant.* (NEGOTIATOR.)

negōtium, -ōtī, [nec + ōtium], n., *business; effort, trouble, difficulty.* **negōtium dare**, *to direct, command.* (NEGOTIATION.)

Nemetēs, -um, m. pl., a Germanic people west of the Rhine, east of the Mediomatrici; **chief city, No-**

viomagus, now Speier (*Spires*). See map opp. p. 155.

nemō, -inis, [nē + hemō, for homō], pl. and gen. and abl. sing. not in use, being replaced by forms from **nūllus**, m. and f., *no man, nobody.*

nepōs, -pōtis, m., *grandson, descendant.* (NEPOTISM.)

Neptūnus, -ī, m., *Neptune*, a god of the Romans corresponding to the Greek Poseidon. He was god of the sea and of all great waters.

nē-quāquam, adv., *by no means.*

neque or **nec**, [ne, *not* + que], adv., *and not, nor, and . . . not, but . . . not, not yet.* **neque . . . neque** or **nec**, *neither . . . nor.*

nē . . . quidem, see **nē**.

nēquīquam, [nē + quīquam], adv., *in vain.*

Nerō, -ōnis, m., *Nero*, surname of *Ti. Claudius Nerō*, emperor from 14–37 A.D., and of *C. Claudius Nerō*, who defeated Hasdrubal at Sena, in 207 B.C.

Nervius, Nervī, m., *a Nervian.* Pl. **Nerviī**, -ōrum, *the Nervii*, a warlike people of Belgic Gaul, south of the Scaldis (*Schelde*), defeated by Caesar in 57 B.C. at the Sambre with great slaughter; chief city Bagacum, now *Bavay.* See map opp. p. 155.

nervus, -ī, m., *sinew, muscle;* pl., *power, force.* (NERVE.)

nēsciō, -īre, -īvī or -iī, —, [nē + sciō], *not know, be ignorant.* **nēscio quis** or **quid**, a compound pron. or adj. pron., *I know not who, some one; I know not what, something, some.*

neu, see **nēve**.

neuter, -tra, -trum, gen. **neutrīus**, [nē + uter], adj., *neither.* As subst., **neutrī**, -ōrum, m. pl., *neither side, neither force.* (NEUTER, NEUTRAL.)

nēve or **neu**, [nē + -ve], adv. and conj., *and not, nor, and that . . . not, and lest.* **neu . . . -que**, *and not . . . but.*

nex, necis, f., *violent death, murder; death.* **vītae necisque potestās**, *power of life and death.*

niger, -gra, -grum, adj., *black, dark; gloomy, ill-omened.*

nihil or **nīl**, [ne, *not* + **hīlum**, *trifle*], indecl. n., *nothing;* acc. often with adverbial force, *not at all, by no means.*

nihildum, [nihil + **dum**], indecl., n., *nothing as yet.*

nihilum, -ī, [ne, *not* + **hīlum**], n., *nothing.* **nihilō**, abl. of degree of difference, lit. *by nothing; not at all, in no way.* **nihilō minus**, *none the less.*

nimius, -a, -um, [nimis], adj., *excessive, too great.*

nisi, [ne + sī], conj., *if not, unless, except.*

nitēns, -entis, [part. of niteō], adj., *brilliant; illustrious, conspicuous.*

niteō, -ēre, -uī, —, *shine, glitter; look beautiful; be conspicuous.*

Nitiobrogēs, -um, m. pl., *the Nitiobroges*, a tribe in Aquitania.

nītor, nītī, nīxus or **nīsus sum**, dep., *lean, support one's self; strive, labor; rely on.*

nix, nivis, f., *snow.*

nō, nāre, nāvī, —, *swim, float.*

nōbilis, -e, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [cf. nōscō], adj., *noted, renowned; of high rank;* NOBLE. As subst., **nōbilēs**, -um, m. pl., NO-

BLES, *men of rank;* **nōbilissimus, -ī,** m., *man of highest rank;* pl., *men of highest rank.* **nōbilissimī cuiusque,** *of all those of highest rank.*

nōbilitās, -ātis, [nōbilis], f., *celebrity;* NOBILITY, *rank;* often collective (= nōbilēs), NOBILITY, *nobles.*

nōbīs, see **ego.**

noceō, -ēre, -uī, —, fut. part., **nocitūrus,** *do harm, injure.* (NOXIOUS.)

noctū, [old abl. of **noctus** = **nox**], adv., *by night, at night.*

nocturnus, -a, -um, [nox], adj., *of night, by night,* NOCTURNAL.

nōdus, -ī, m., NODE, the swelling about the joints of an animal.

Nōla, -ae, f., *Nola,* a town in the central part of Campania, twenty-one miles from Capua; it played a prominent part in the second Punic and Social Wars. Augustus died there in 14 A. D.

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, [nē + volō], n., *wish . . . not, be unwilling.* **nōlī, nōlīte,** with infin., *do not.*

nōmen, nōminis, [cf. nōscō], n., *name, title; the gentile name; fame, renown.* **suō nōmine,** *on his own account.* **nōmen Rōmānum,** *the Roman nation.* (NOMINAL.)

nōminātim, [nōminō], adv., *by name, especially.*

nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [nōmen], *call, name; mention.* (NOMINATE.)

nōn, adv., *not, no.* **nōn nūllus** or **nōnnūllus,** *some, several.* **nōn numquam,** *sometimes.*

nōnāgēsimus, -a, -um, [nōnāgintā], adj., the *ninetieth.* (NONAGENARIAN.)

nōnāgintā, indecl. num. adj., *ninety.*

nōndum, [nōn + dum], adv., *not yet.*

nōn nūllus, -a, -um, see **nōn.**

nōn numquam, see **nōn.**

nōnus, -a, -um, [for **novēnus,** from **novem**], num. ord. adj., *ninth.* (NONES.)

Nōreia [Nōreïa], -ae, f., chief city of Noricum (see map opp. p. 1), where the Romans were defeated by the Cimbri 113 B.C.; now *Neumarkt.*

Nōricus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Norici, Norican.* As subst., **Nōrica,** -ae, f., *Norican woman.*

nōs, see **ego.**

noster, -tra, -trum, [nōs], pron. adj., *our, our own.* As subst., **nostrī, -ōrum,** m. pl., *our men, our side.*

nota, -ae, [cf. nōscō], f., *means of recognition, mark; brand.*

nōtitia, -ae, [nōtus], f., *acquaintance.*

notō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [nota], *mark, brand; indicate,* DENOTE; *designate; mention, tell; censure.*

nōtus, -a, -um, sup. **nōtissimus,** [part. of nōscō], adj., *well known, familiar.*

novem, indecl. num. adj., *nine.*

Noviodūnum, -ī, [Kel., = 'New town'], n., city of the Suessiones, on the Axona (*Aisne*), later called *Augusta Suessiōnum;* now *Soissons.* See map opp. 155.

novus, -a, -um, sup. **novissimus,** adj., *new, fresh, strange.* (NOVEL.) Sup., *last, at the rear.* As subst., **novissimī, -ōrum,** m pl., *those at the rear, the rear.* **novissimum agmen,** *the rear.*

nox, noctis, f., *night.* prīmā nocte, *at nightfall.* multā nocte, *late at night.* (EQUINOX.)

noxia, -ae, [noceō], f., *crime, offense.*

nūbilis, -e, [cf. nūbō], adj., *marriageable.*

nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptus, *be married; marry, wed.*

nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [nūdus], *strip; expose, leave unprotected.*

nūdus, -a, -um, adj., *unclothed,* NUDE; *destitute, barren; unprotected; mere, sole.*

nūllus, -a, -um, gen. nūllīus, [nē + ūllus], adj., *not any, none, no.* As subst., nūllus, -ius, m., *no one, nobody.*

num, inter. adv., usually introducing a question expecting a negative answer, *then, now; not so . . . is it?* in ind. questions, *whether, if.* num etiam, etc., *could he also? he could not also . . . could he?*

Numa, -ae, m., forename of *Numa Pompilius*, second king of Rome.

Numantia, -ae, f., *Numantia*, a city in Spain, captured and destroyed by P. Scipio Africanus in 133 B.C. See map, opp. p. 1.

Numantīnus, -a, -um, [Numantia], adj., *of* or *belonging to Numantia.* As subst., Numantīnus, -ī, m., *a Numantine.*

nūmen, -inis, [nuō], n., *nod; divine will; divine power.*

numerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [numerus], *count, number; count out, pay down.* (ENUMERATE.)

numerus, -ī, m., *number, quantity; position, rank; importance;* numerō with gen., *in the capacity of, as.* (NUMERAL.)

Numidae, -ārum, [*νομάς, wanderer,* pl., *νομάδες*], m. pl., *inhabitants of Numidia, Numidians*, a people living in Northern Africa, in the region now called Algeria, famous as archers, and employed by the Romans as light-armed troops.

Numidia, -ae, f., *Numidia*, a country in Northern Africa; modern Algeria.

Numitor, -ōris, m., *Numitor*, a king of Alba Longa.

nummus, -ī, m., *piece of money, coin;* the Roman unit of coinage, *sestertius, sesterce;* see sēstertius.

numquam, [ne, *not* + umquam], adv., *never.*

nunc, adv., *now.*

nūncupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [nōmen, capiō], *call by name, call, name;* of vows, *take.*

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [nūntius], *announce; give orders.* nūntiātur, *word is brought, it is reported.* quā rē nūntiātā, *on hearing this.*

nūntius, -a, -um, adj., *making known, informing.* As subst., nūntius, nūntī, m., *messenger; message, news.*

nūper, sup. nūperrimē, adv., *lately, recently.*

nūptum, supine of nūbō.

nūsquam, [ne + ūsquam], adv., *nowhere, in no place; in nothing; for no purpose.*

nūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of nuō], *nod; waver, give way; doubt, hesitate.*

nūtriō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *nourish, rear.* (NUTRIMENT, NUTRITIOUS.)

nūtus, -ūs, [nuō, *nod*], m., *nod; command;* ad nūtum, *at a nod, promptly, instantly.*

nympha, -ae, f., NYMPH.

O

ob, prep. with acc., *on account of, for.* ob eam causam, *for that reason.* ob eam rem, *on that account.* quam ob rem, *wherefore, for what reason.*

obaerātus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, [ob + aes], adj., *in debt.* As subst., obaerātus, -ī, m., *debtor.*

obdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [ob + dūcō], *draw before; overspread, envelop;* of a trench, *prolong, extend.*

obductus, -a, -um, [part. of obdūcō], adj., *overspread, cloudy, gloomy.*

obeō, -īre, -īvī, -itus, [ob + eō], *go to meet; engage in; perform; fall, die.* diem obiit suprēmum or diem obiit, *met his last day, died.*

obiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [ob + iaciō], *throw, cast; offer, give up; oppose, put in the way;* OBJECT, *taunt, upbraid with.*

obitus, -ūs, [ob, cf. eō], m., *approach; destruction, death.* (OBITUARY.)

oblātus, part. of offerō.

obligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ob + ligō], *bind,* OBLIGE, *make liable.*

oblīviō, -ōnis, [cf. oblīvīscor], f., *forgetfulness,* OBLIVION.

oblīvīscor, -līvīscī, -lītus sum, dep., *forget.* See *Grammatical Appendix*, 144.

obnoxius, -a, -um, [ob + noxius], adj., *liable, guilty; exposed; submissive, obedient.* (OBNOXIOUS.)

oboediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [ob + audiō], *give ear, listen; obey, be subject.*

obruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutus, [ob + ruō], *overwhelm, bury; overpower; destroy; overload, surfeit.*

obsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ob + sacrō, from sacer], *beseech* in the name of all that is sacred, *implore, beg.*

observō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ob + servō], *watch,* OBSERVE; *keep track of; heed, comply with.*

obses, -idis, [cf. obsideō], m. and f., *hostage; security, pledge.* See note to p. 174, l. 1.

obsideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessus, [ob + sedeō], *sit, stay; besiege, blockade.*

obsidiō, -ōnis, [obsideō], f., *siege, blockade.*

obsignō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ob + signō], *seal up, seal.*

obsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitus, [ob + sistō], *take one's place before; resist, withstand, oppose.*

obstrictus, -a, -um, see obstringō.

obstringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictus, [ob + stringō, *tie*], *bind, lay under obligation.*

obstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctus, [ob + struō], *build against, barricade, stop up.* (OBSTRUCT.)

obtemperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *obey.*

obtestor, -ārī, ātus, [ob + testor], *call as witness, appeal to; implore.*

obtestātiō, -ōnis, [obtestor, *call as witness*], f., *solemn charge; entreaty, supplication.*

obtineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, [ob + teneō], *hold fast, keep, hold; get possession of,* OBTAIN; *occupy, inhabit.*

obtingō, -tingere, -tigī, —, [ob + tangō], *fall to the lot of, befall, occur; be assigned.*

obtrectātiō, -ōnis, [obtrectō], f., *detraction, disparagement.*

obtrectātor, -ōris, [obtrectō], m., *detractor, traducer.*

obtulī, see offerō.

obveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus, [ob + veniō], *fall in with, meet; go to meet; fall to the lot of.*

obviam, [ob + viam], adv., *in the way; against, to meet.* obviam īre, *go to meet.* obviam fierī, *meet.*

obvius, -a, -um, [ob + via], adj., *in the way; against, to meet, meeting.* obvium fierī, *to meet.* obvium esse, *to meet.* (OBVIOUS.)

obvolvō, -ere, -volvī, -volūtus, [ob + volvō], *envelop, cover over.*

occāsiō, -ōnis, [cf. occidō], f., *opportunity,* OCCASION.

occāsus, -ūs, [cf. occidō], m., *setting.* sōlis occāsus, *sunset; west.*

occīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus, [ob + caedō], *kill, slay.*

occidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsus, [ob + cadō], *fall; perish.*

occultātiō, -ōnis, [occultō], f., *concealment.*

occulō, -ere, -uī, -tum, *cover; hide, conceal.*

occultē, [occultus], adv., *secretly.*

occultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of occulō], *hide, conceal; keep secret.*

occultus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part. of occulō, *cover*], adj., *hidden, secret.* (OCCULT.) As subst., ex occultō, *from ambush.* sē in occultum abdere, *to go into hiding.* in occultō, *in concealment, in secret.*

occumbō, -ere, occubuī, occubitus, [ob + cumbō], *fall in death, die.*

occupātiō, -ōnis, [occupō], f., OCCUPATION, *employment;* pl., *business.*

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ob, cf. capiō], *seize, take possession of; fill,* OCCUPY; *attack;* of the attention, *engage.* occupārī in, with abl., *to be engaged in.*

occurrō, -currere, -currī, rarely -cucurrī, -cursūrus, [ob + currō], *run to meet; meet with, find, encounter; match, offset; resist, oppose; come to mind,* OCCUR.

Ōceanus, -ī, [Ὠκεανός], m., OCEAN, *the sea,* looked upon by Caesar as one body of water, including the Atlantic Ocean, the English Channel, and the North Sea.

Ocelum, -ī, [Kel., = 'Main Pass'?], n., a city of the Graioceli in the Alps, now *Usséau,* west of Turin. See map opp. p. 155.

Octāviānus, -ī, m., *Octavianus, Octavian, C. Octāvius.* See note to p. 92, l. 14.

Octāvius, -a, the name of a Roman plebeian gens, made patrician by Julius Caesar. In this book is mentioned *C. Octāvius;* see *Octāviānus* above.

octāvus, -a, -um, [octō], num. ord. adj., *eighth.* (OCTAVE.)

octingentī, -ae, -a, or **DCCC**, [octō + centum], num. adj., *eight hundred.*

octō, or **VIII**, indecl. num. adj., *eight.* (OCTOROON.)

octōdecim, or **XVIII**, [octō + decem], indecl. num. adj., *eighteen.*

octōgintā, or **LXXX**, [octō], indecl. num. adj., *eighty.* (OCTOGENARIAN.)

octōnī, -ae, -a, [octō], distr. num. adj., *eight apiece, eight at a time.*

oculus, -ī, m., *eye.* (OCULIST, OCULAR.)

ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus, def., pf. translated as if present, *hate.*

odium, odī, [ōdī], n., *hatred.* (ODIOUS.)

offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsus, [ob + fendō], *hit, dash against; come upon, find;* OFFEND, *be* OFFENSIVE.

offēnsiō, -ōnis, [offendō], f., *stumbling; dislike; wounding; accident, misfortune;* OFFENSE.

offēnsus, -a, -um, [part. of offendō], adj., OFFENDED, *vexed.*

offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātus [ob + ferō], *bring before, present,* OFFER; *cause, inflict; bestow.* (OBLATION.)

officiōsus, -a, -um, [officium], adj., *courteous, obliging; obedient.* (OFFICIOUS.)

officium, -fi'cī, [opus, cf. faciō], n., *service, favor; duty; allegiance; employment,* OFFICE.

ōlim, [cf. ollus, old form of ille], adv., *at that time, formerly, hereafter; once upon a time.*

omittō, -ere, omīsī, omissus, [ob + mittō], *let go; lay aside; neglect, give up; pass over, say nothing of.* (OMIT, OMISSION.)

omnīnō, [omnis], adv., *altogether, in general;* after negatives, *at all;* with numerals, *in all, only.* nihil omnīnō, *nothing at all.*

omnis, -e, adj., *every, all.* Gallia omnis, *Gaul as a whole.* As subst., pl., omnēs, -ium, m., *all men, all.* omnia, -ium, n., *all things, everything.*

onerārius, -a, -um, [onus], adj., *of burden.* nāvis onerāria, *ship of burden, transport.*

onus, -eris, n., *load, burden; cargo.* (ONEROUS.)

opera, -ae, [opus], f., *service, labor; aid, attention; means, agency.* operam dare, *to give attention.* operam nāvāre, see nāvō.

operiō, operīre, operuī, opertus, *cover, cover over.*

opīniō, -ōnis, [opīnor, *think*], f., *idea, belief; good* OPINION, *reputation; expectation.* opīniō timōris, *impression of fear.* praeter opīniōnem, *contrary to expectation.*

oportet, oportēre, oportuit, impers., *it is necessary, it behooves; ought; be proper.* Often best translated by *ought* and *must.*

oppidānus, -a, -um, [oppidum], adj., *of the town.* As subst., oppidānī, -ōrum, m., pl., *townspeople.*

oppidum, -ī, n., fortified *town, city;* fortified *inclosure.*

oppleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, [ob + pleō], *fill; cover.*

oppōnō, -ere, opposuī, oppositus, [ob + pōnō], *place opposite,* OPPOSE; *bring forward, adduce.*

opportūnē, [opportūnus], adv., OPPORTUNELY, *advantageously.*

opportūnitās, -ātis, [opportūnus], f., *fitness;* OPPORTUNITY; *advantage.*

opportūnus, -a, -um, comp. opportūnior, sup. opportūnissimus, adj., *fit, adapted; convenient, seasonable,* OPPORTUNE.

oppositus, see oppōnō.

opprimō, -ere, oppressī, oppressus, [ob + premō], PRESS *against; overwhelm, defeat utterly, crush, destroy; weigh down, burden; fall upon, surprise.* (OPPRESS.)

opprobrium, -brī, [ob + probrum], n., *reproach, scandal, disgrace; taunt, abuse.*

oppugnātiō, -ōnis, [oppugnō], f., *assault, attack, siege.*

oppugnātor, -ōris, [oppugnō], m., *assailant, besieger.*

oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ob + pugnō], *attack, assault;* of a city or camp, *besiege.*

ops, opis, nom. and dat. sing. not in use, f., *aid, help; influence; might, power; wealth.* Pl., opēs, -um, *help; resources, means, wealth; influence; power.*

optimās, -ātis, [optimus], adj., *of the best.* As subst., m., *an adherent of the nobility, aristocrat.* (OPTIMATE.)

optimē, see **bene.**

optimus, see **bonus.**

optiō, -ōnis, f., *choice, privilege,* OPTION.

optō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *choose, select; wish, desire.*

opus, n., used only in nom. and acc., *necessity, need.* opus est, *it is necessary.*

opus, operis, n., *work, labor; structure, works, fortification.* (OPUS.)

ōra, -ae, f., *shore, coast; district.*

ōrāculum, -ī, [ōrō], n., ORACLE; *prophecy; oracle,* the place where oracular responses were given.

ōrātiō, -ōnis, [ōrō], f., *speech, language;* ORATION, *address, plea; power of oratory, eloquence.*

ōrātor, -ōris, [ōrō], m., *speaker,* ORATOR, *envoy.*

orbis, -is, m., *circle,* ORBIT. orbis terrae or terrārum, *the whole earth.*

Orcynia, -ae, f., another name for Hercynia.

ōrdinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ōrdō], *set in order, arrange; narrate, record.* (COÖRDINATE.)

ōrdior, -īrī, ōrsus sum, [cf. ōrdō], dep., *begin, undertake; describe.*

ōrdō, -inis, m., *series,* ORDER; *company, class, rank; regular succession; command of a century, captaincy.*

Orgetorīx, -īgis, m., [Kel., = 'The King who slays,' 'All-slaughtering King'], a Helvetian lord who formed a plot to seize the supreme power, but was apprehended and died, or committed suicide, before judgment was pronounced.

Ōricum, -ī, n., *Oricum,* a seaport of Epirus.

oriēns, -entis, [part. of orior], adj., *rising.* orientem sōlem, *the rising sun = the east.* (ORIENT.)

orīgō, -inis, [orior], f., *commencement,* ORIGIN; *race, family.* Pl., Orīginēs, -um, the title of Cato's history.

orior, -īrī, ortus sum, fut. part. oritūrus, pres. oritur, imp. subj. usually orerētur, *arise, rise; be descended, be born; originate, spring from; start from.*

ōrnāmentum, -ī, [ōrnō], n., *equipment; decoration,* ORNAMENT, *distinction.*

ōrnātus, -a, -um, comp. ōrnātior, sup. ōrnātissimus, [part. of ōrnō], adj., *equipped; adorned, embellished; distinguished, illustrious.* (ORNATE.)

ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *furnish, equip;* ADORN, *decorate; embellish, set forth.*

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ōs], *speak; argue, plead; entreat, beseech.*

ortus, -a, -um, [part. of orior], adj., *sprung, born.*

ōs, ōris, n., *mouth, face, features; mouth of a river.* (ORAL.)

os, ossis, n., *bone.* (OSSIFY.)

ōsculor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [ōsculum, *kiss*], dep., *kiss.*

Osismī, -ōrum, m. pl. a small state in the extreme northwest corner of Gaul. See map opp. p. 155.

ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentus, [obs. old form of ob + tendō], *show, display; produce, furnish; point out, declare; disclose, make known.*

ostentātiō, -ōnis, [ostentō], f., *show, display.* (OSTENTATION.)

ostentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [intens. of ostendō), *display.*

Ōstia, -ae, f., *Ostia*, the seaport of Rome at the mouth of the Tiber; according to the tradition it was founded by Ancus Marcius. See map opp. p. 1.

ōstium, ōstī, [cf. ōs], n., *door; mouth, entrance.* More commonly plural, ōstia, to indicate the *mouth* of a river.

ōtiōsus, -a, -um, [ōtium], adj., *unoccupied, idle; quiet, peaceful.* (OTIOSE.)

ōtium, ōtī, n., *leisure, idleness; peace, quiet.*

ōvum, -ī, n., *egg.* (OVAL.)

P.

P., with proper names = Pūblius, a Roman forename.

pābulātiō, -ōnis, [cf. pābulor], f., *foraging.*

pābulātor, -ōris, [pābulor], m., *forager.*

pābulor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [pābulum], *forage.*

pābulum, -ī, n., *food, fodder, pasturage.*

pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [pāx], PACIFY, *subdue.*

pactum, -ī, [pacīscor], n., *agreement, contract, bargain;* quō pactō, *in what manner.* (COMPACT.)

Padus, -ī, m., *the Po*, a large river in Cisalpine Gaul. See map opp. p. 1.

Paelignī, -ōrum, m., *the Paeligni*, a people of central Italy.

paene, adv., *almost, nearly.*

paeniteō, -ēre, -uī, —, *make sorry, cause to repent.* Impers. paenitet, -ēre, -uit, *it repents, it grieves.* (PENITENT.)

pāgus, -ī, m., *district, canton*, generally referring to the inhabitants rather than to the country.

palam, adv., *openly, publicly.*

Palātium, -ātī, [Palēs, an ancient divinity of shepherds], n., *the Palatine hill*, on which was the residence of Augustus; hence pl., palātia, -ōrum, PALACE.

palma, -ae, f., PALM of the hand, *hand.*

palūdātus, -a, -um, adj., *dressed in a general's cloak* (palūdāmentum).

pālus, -ī, m., *stake.*

palūs, -ūdis, f., *swamp, marsh.*

Pamphȳlius, -a, -um, adj., *Pamphylian, of Pamphylia*, a province on the southern coast of Asia Minor, between Lycia and Cilicia.

pandō, pandere, pandī, passus, *spread out.* passīs manibus, *with hands outstretched.*

pānis, -is, [cf. pābulum], m., *bread, loaf.*

Papīrius, -īrī, m., *Papirius*, family name of *L. Papīrius Cursor.*

pār, paris, adj., *equal, like, well-matched; fit, proper.* pār atque, *same as.* pār proelium, *an indecisive battle.* As subst., pār,

paris, m. and f., *equal; mate, companion.* (PAR.)

parātus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [part. of parō], adj., *prepared; equipped, provided.*

parcō, parcere, pepercī and parsī, parsus, *be sparing; treat with forbearance; refrain from, spare.* (PARSIMONY.)

parcus, -a, -um, comp. parcior, sup. parcissimus, [cf. parcō], adj., *sparing, frugal, temperate.*

parēns, -entis, [part. of pariō], m. and f., PARENT; *father, mother.*

pāreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *appear; obey; submit to, be subject to.*

pariō, -ere, peperī, partus, fut. part., **paritūrus**, *bring forth, produce, lay; effect, accomplish; acquire, obtain.* (PARTURITION.)

Parīsiī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Parisii*, a tribe living in Gaul on the river *Sēquana* (*Seine*). The name PARIS is from *Lutetia Parīsiōrum*, their chief city.

pariter, [pār], adv., *equally, alike; together.* (PARITY.)

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, PREPARE, *make ready for, intend, resolve; obtain, purchase.*

parricīdium, -cīdī, n., *murder of a father* or *parents*, PARRICIDE; *murder; treason.*

pars, partis, f., PART, *share, number; region, district; side, direction; party, faction; character, rôle*; pl., coll., *party.* **pars maior**, *the majority.* **ūnā ex parte**, *on one side.* **in omnēs partēs**, *in every direction.*

Parthī, -ōrum, m. pl., *Parthians*; see note to p. 69, l. 3.

particeps, -cipis, [pars + capiō], m., *sharer.* (PARTICIPANT.)

partim, [old acc. of pars], adv., PARTLY, *in part.*

partiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [pars], *share.* (PARTITION.)

parcē [parcus], adv., *sparingly.*

parum, comp. minus, sup. minimē, adv., *too little, not enough.* As subst., *too little.* Comp., *less.* Sup., *least, very little; not at all, by no means.*

parvulus, -a, -um, [dim. of parvus], adj., *very small, very young; slight, trifling.* As subst., parvulus, -ī, m., *small child, infant.*

parvus, -a, -um, comp. minor, sup. minimus, adj., *small, trifling, insignificant; short, brief;* of price or value, *small, low.* **parvī**, gen. of value, *of little worth.* Comp., *smaller, less.* As subst., **minus**, n., *less;* **minimum**, n., *the least.* **minus dubitātiōnis**, *less hesitation;* see 138.

pāscō, pāscere, pāvī, pāstus, *feed;* in pass. reflexive with dep. force, *graze, browse, feed.* (PASTURE, PASTOR.)

passim, [pandō], adv., *here and there.*

passus, -ūs, m., *step, pace;* as a measure of length, *pace*, = 4 feet, 10¼ inches by English measurement. **mīlle passūs**, *thousand paces, mile.* See note to p. 171, l. 4.

passus, see pandō.

pāstor, -ōris, [pāscō], m., *herdsman, shepherd.* (PASTOR.)

patefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus, [pateō + faciō], *open, disclose, bring to light.*

patēns, -entis, comp. patentior, [part. of pateō], adj., *open, accessible.* (PATENT.)

pateō, patēre, patuī, —, *lie open, stand open; extend; be accessible.*

pater, -tris, m., *father.* Pl., patrēs, -um, *fathers, forefathers.* patrēs or patrēs cōnscrīptī, *senators.*

paternus, -a, -um, [pater], adj., *of a father, father's,* PATERNAL.

patiēns, -entis, [part. of patior], adj., *bearing, enduring,* PATIENT.

patienter, [patiēns], adv., PATIENTLY, *with fortitude.*

patientia, -ae, [patior], f., *endurance,* PATIENCE.

patior, patī, passus sum, dep., *suffer, endure; allow, permit.* (PASSION.)

patria, -ae, [cf. pater], f., *fatherland, native land.* (PATRIOT.)

patrius, -a, -um, [pater], adj., *of a father, fatherly; ancestral, of (their) forefathers.*

patrimōnium, -ōnī, [pater], n., *inheritance from a father,* PATRIMONY.

patrōcinium, -ci'nī, n., *protection, patronage.*

patrōnus, -ī, [pater], m., *protector,* PATRON, *advocate.*

patruēlis, -e, [patruus], adj., *of a father's brother, of a cousin.* As subst., patruēlis, -is, m., *a cousin.*

patruus, -ī, [pater], m., *father's brother, uncle.*

paucitās, -ātis, [paucus], f., *fewness, small number.* (PAUCITY.)

paucus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *little;* pl., *few.* As subst., paucī, -ōrum, m. pl., *few, only a few;* pauca, -ōrum, n. pl., (*sc.* verba), *a few words.*

paulātim, [paulus], adv., *little by little; gradually; one by one.*

paulisper, [paulus + per], adv., *for a short time.*

paulō, [paulus], adv., *by a little, somewhat.*

paululum, [paulus], adv., *a very little.*

paulum, [paulus], adv., *a little, somewhat.*

Paulus, see Aemilius.

pauper, -eris, adj., *poor, in moderate circumstances; scanty, small.* As subst., m., *poor man.* (PAUPER.)

paupertās, -ātis, [pauper], f., *poverty, moderate circumstances.*

pāvō, -ōnis, m., *peacock.*

pāx, pācis, f., PEACE; *harmony.*

peccō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *do wrong.* (IMPECCABLE.)

pecūnia, -ae, [cf. pecus], f., *property, money.* (PECUNIARY.)

pecus, -oris, n., *cattle.*

pedālis, -e, [pēs], adj., *a foot thick.*

pedes, -itis, [pēs], m., *foot-soldier;* sing., coll., *foot-soldiers, infantry.* Pl., peditēs, -um, *infantry.*

pedester, -tris, -tre, [pēs], adj., *on foot,* PEDESTRIAN, *of the infantry; on land, land.* exercitus pedester, *land-force, infantry.* pedestrēs cōpiae, *infantry.*

peditātus, -ūs, [pedes], m., *infantry.*

Pedius, Pedī, m., *Quintus Pedius,* grandson of Julia, oldest sister of Julius Caesar, under whom he served as lieutenant in the Gallic and Civil Wars.

peior, see malus.

peius, see male.

pellexit, see pelliciō.

pelliciō, -licere, -lexī, -lectus, *allure, entice, coax.*

pellis, -is, f., *skin, hide; tent* (of skins).

pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus, *beat, strike; drive away; defeat, rout.* (REPEL, REPULSE.)

Peloponnēsus, -ī, [Πελοπόννησος],

f., *the Peloponnesus, southern Greece*, now called the Morea.

Pēlūsium, Pēlūsī, n., *Pelusium*, a town of lower Egypt at the eastern end of the delta of the Nile.

Penātēs, -ium, [cf. pāscor], m. pl., *Penates, household gods*, whose images were kept in the principal living-room of the house, near the hearth; by metonymy, *home, hearth.*

pendō, pendere, pependī, pēnsus, *weigh out; pay, pay out.* (EXPEND, EXPENSE.)

penes, prep. with acc., *with, at the house of; in the possession of, in the power of.*

penetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *enter*, PENETRATE.

penitus, adv., *far within, far away.*

penna, -ae, f., *feather, plume.* (PEN.)

pepercerat, see parcō.

peperit, see pariō.

per, prep. with acc., *through;* of space, *across, along, over, among;* of time, *during, in the course of;* of agency, means, and manner, *by, by the hands of, by means of, under pretence of;* of cause, *by reason of;* in oaths, *in the name of, by.*

In composition, **per** adds the force of *through, thoroughly, perfectly, completely, very.*

peragō, -agere, -ēgī, -āctus, [per + agō], *agitate; go through with, finish; carry out, execute; set forth, relate, describe.*

peragrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [per + agrō], *wander through, pass through.*

percipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [per + capiō], *take in, understand; experience, feel.* (PERCEPTION.)

percontātiō, -ōnis, [percontor], f., *questioning, inquiry.*

percontor or **percūnctor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, [per + contus, *pole*], dep., lit. *search with a pole; ask, inquire, investigate.*

percurrō, -currere, -cucurrī, or -currī, -cursus, [per + currō], *run through, run along.*

percussor, -ōris, [percutiō], m., *murderer, assassin.*

percutiō, -cutere, percussī, percussus, [per + quatiō], *strike through, pierce; knock at; shock, astound; kill; ruin.* (PERCUSSION.)

perdiscō, -ere, -didicī, —, [per + discō], *learn thoroughly.*

perditus, -a, -um, [part. of perdō], adj., *desperate.* As subst., m. pl., *desperate men.*

perdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [per + dō], *destroy, ruin; lose.* (PERDITION.)

perdūcō, -dūcere, perdūxī, perductus, [per + dūcō], *lead, conduct, bring; induce; win over; prolong; construct, make.*

peregrīnus, -a, -um, [per + ager], adj., *foreign.* As subst., peregrīnus, -ī, m., *stranger, foreigner.* (PEREGRINATION.)

perennis, -e, [per + annus], adj., PERENNIAL; *continual, perpetual.*

pereō, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -itus, [per + eō], *pass away; perish; be lost.*

perequitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [per + equitō], *ride through; ride about.*

perexiguus, -a, -um, [per + exiguus], adj., *very small.*

perfacilis, -e, [per + facilis], adj., *very easy.*

perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, [per + ferō], *carry through; carry, bring, report; endure, suffer,*

submit to; complete; retain to the end.

perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [per + faciō], *finish, perform, carry out; cause, effect.* (PERFECT.)

perfidia, -ae, [perfidus], f., *faithlessness, treachery.* (PERFIDY.)

perfringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctus, [per + frangō], *break through.*

perfruor, -fruī, frūctus sum, dep., *enjoy fully, be delighted.*

perfuga, -ae, [cf. perfugiō], m., *deserter.*

perfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —, [per + fugiō], *flee for refuge, desert.*

perfugium, perfu'gī, [perfugiō], n., *place of refuge.*

perfungor, -fungī, -fūnctus sum, [per + fungor], dep., *fulfill, perform; undergo, endure.*

Pergamēnus, -a, -um, adj., *of Pergamum*, a city in Mysia. Pergamēnus, -ī, m., *a citizen of Pergamum.*

pergō, -ere, perrēxī, perrēctus, [per + regō], *go on, proceed, hasten, march.*

perīclitor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [perīculum], dep., *try, prove, test; be in danger.*

perīculōsus, -a, -um, comp. perīculōsior, sup. perīculōsissimus, [perīculum], adj., *dangerous, perilous.*

perīculum, -ī, n., *trial; risk, danger.*

perītus, -a, -um, comp. perītior, sup. perītissimus, adj., *experienced, skilled, acquainted with.*

perlātus, see perferō.

perlēctus, perf. part. of perlegō.

perlegō, -legere, -lēgī, -lēctus, [per + legō], *read through.*

perluō, -ere, -luī, lūtus, [per + luō], *wash;* pass. reflex., *bathe.*

permaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsūrus, [per + maneō], *continue, remain.* (PERMANENT.)

permisceō, -ēre, -miscuī, -mixtus, [per + misceō], *throw into confusion.*

permittō, -ere, permīsī, permissus, [per + mittō], *let pass; cast, hurl; entrust, surrender;* PERMIT, *allow.* (PERMISSION.)

permōtus, see permoveō.

permoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, [per + moveō], *deeply move, greatly disturb, alarm; influence, induce.*

permūtātiō, -ōnis, [permūtō], f., *change, exchange.* (PERMUTATION.)

permūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [per + mūtō], *change throughout; interchange, exchange.*

perniciēs, -ēī, f., *destruction, death, overthrow; pest.*

perniciōsus, -a, -um, comp. perniciōsior, sup. perniciōsissimus, [perniciēs], adj., *destructive, deadly,* PERNICIOUS, *dangerous.*

pernīcitās, -ātis, [pernīx], f., *swiftness, speed.*

perōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [per + ōrō], *plead; end, finish.* (PERORATION.)

perpaucī, -ae, -a, [per + paucus], adj., *very few.* As subst., perpaucī, -ōrum, m., pl., *a very few.*

Perpenna, -ae, m., *Perpenna*, family name of *M. Perpenna*, censor in 86 B.C.

perpetior, -petī, -pessus sum, [per + patior], dep., *bear steadfastly, endure.*

perpetuō, [perpetuus], adv., *continually, uninterruptedly, forever.*

perpetuus, -a, -um, [per, cf. petō], adj., *continuous, unbroken,* PER-

PETUAL. As subst., in perpetuum, *forever, ever after.*

perrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, [per + rumpō], *break through, get across, force one's way through; overcome.*

persaepe, [per + saepe], adv., *very often.*

perscrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, [per + scrībō], *write out, describe, report.*

persequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, [per + sequor], dep., *follow up, pursue; assail, attack; overtake; accomplish; set forth, recount.*

Perseus, -ī, m., *Perseus*, the last king of Macedonia, conquered by L. Aemilius Paulus, at Pydna, 168 B.C.

persevērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [per, sevērus], *persist*, PERSEVERE, *keep on.*

persolvō, -solvere, -solvī, -solūtus, [per + solvō], *pay in full, pay.* poenās persolvere, *to pay the penalty.*

perspectus, see perspiciō.

perspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, [per + speciō, *look*], *see, look; inspect; perceive, observe, ascertain.* (PERSPICACITY.)

persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus, [per + suādeō, *persuade*], *convince*, PERSUADE, *prevail upon, induce.* mihi persuādētur, *I am convinced.*

pertaedet, -ēre, pertaesum est, [per + taedet], impers., *it wearies, it disgusts.*

perterreō, -terrēre, —, -territus, [per + terreō], *frighten thoroughly, terrify.*

perterritus, part of perterreō.

pertimēscō, -timēscere, -timuī, —, [per + timēscō], *be alarmed, fear greatly.*

pertinācia, -ae, [pertināx], f., *perseverance, obstinacy.* (PERTINACITY.)

pertināciter, [pertināx], adv., *persistently, obstinately.* (PERTINACIOUSLY.)

pertināx, -ācis, [per + tenāx], adj., *persevering, obstinate.* (PERTINACIOUS.)

pertineō, -ēre, -uī, —, [per + teneō], *stretch out, extend; reach;* PERTAIN *to, concern, belong to; apply, suit.*

perturbātiō, -ōnis, [perturbō], f., *disturbance, commotion.* (PERTURBATION.)

perturbātus, -a, -um, [part. of perturbō], adj., *disturbed, agitated, unsettled.* (PERTURBED.)

perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [per + turbō, *disturb*], *throw into confusion, embarrass.* (PERTURB.)

pervagor, -ārī, -ātus, [per + vagor], *rove about, wander about.*

pervehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus, [per + vehō], *carry through;* pass., *go through, sail through.*

perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus, [per + veniō], *reach, come to; arrive at; attain.*

pervertō, -vertere, -vertī, perversus, [per + vertō], *overthrow; destroy, ruin, corrupt.* (PERVERT.)

pervulgātus, -a, -um, [part. of pervulgō], adj., *very common, widely known.*

pēs, pedis, m., *foot;* as a measure of length, = .9708 of the English foot, or 296 millimeters. pedem referre, *to retreat.*

pestilentia, -ae, [pestilēns], f., *plague*, PESTILENCE; *fever.*

petītiō, -ōnis, [petō], f., *thrust, attack; candidacy;* PETITION.

petō, -ere, -īvī or -iī, -ītus, *seek; go to; get, secure; attack; demand, ask, request.* petere ut liceat, *to ask permission.*

Petrocoriī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Petrocorii*, a tribe in central Gaul, living north of the *Garumna* (*Garonne*).

petulantia, -ae, f., *impudence, pertness, wantonness.* (PETULANCE.)

phalanx, -angis, Greek acc. sing. (p. 245, l. 13), **phalanga**, 38, [φάλαγξ], f., *compact host, mass,* PHALANX; see note, p. 199, l. 4.

Pharnacēs, -is, m., *Pharnaces*, son of Mithridates the Great, king of Pontus.

Pharsālicus, -a, -um, adj., *of Pharsalus, at Pharsalus.*

Phīdippus, -ī, [φειδιππος], m., *Phidippus*, a famous Athenian courier of the time of Miltiades.

Philippus, -ī, [φίλιππος], m., *Philippus, Philip*, referring in this book to (1) *Philip V.*, king of Macedon from 220 to 179 B.C. He was defeated at Cynoscephalae in 197 B.C. (2) *L. Mārcius Philippus*, consul in 56 B.C.

philosophus, -a, -um, adj., *philosophical.* As subst., philosophus, -ī, m., PHILOSOPHER.

Pīcēns, -entis, [Pīcēnum], adj., *of* or *belonging to Picenum.* As subst., Pīcentēs, -ium, m., *the inhabitants of Picenum, the Picenes.*

Pictonēs, -um, m. pl., *the Pictones*, a Gallic people living on the Atlantic coast, south of the Liger (*Loire*).

pietās, -ātis, [pius], f., *dutiful conduct, devotion,* PIETY; *affection, love, loyalty.*

pilleus, -ī, m., and **pilleum**, -ī, n., *skull-cap, cap.*

pīlum, -ī, n., *javelin, pike.*

pīlus, -ī, [pīlum], m., usually joined with prīmus, *maniple of the triarii*, a division in the army containing the most experienced soldiers. prīmī pīlī centuriō, *first centurion of the first maniple of the triarii*, the first centurion of the legion in rank.

pingō, -ere, pīnxī, pictus, *paint, represent, portray.* (DEPICT, PICTURE.)

pinna, -ae, f., *feather;* in military language, *battlement.*

pīrāta, -ae, m., *sea-robber, corsair,* PIRATE.

piscātōrius, -a, -um, [piscātor from piscis], adj., *of fishermen;* nāvis piscātōria, *fishing boat.*

piscis, -is, m., *fish.* (PISCATORIAL.)

Pīsō, -ōnis, m., name of four persons mentioned in the Gallic War:

(1) *Lūcius Calpurnius Pīsō Caesōnīnus*, consul 112 B.C.; killed 107 B.C. when serving as lieutenant in Gaul with the consul *Lūcius Cassius Longīnus.*

(2) *Lūcius Calpurnius Pīsō Caesōnīnus*, consul with *Aulus Gabīnius*, 58 B.C., and father-in-law of Caesar.

(3) *Mārcus Pūpius Pīsō Calpurniānus*, consul with *M. Valerius Messāla*, 61 B.C.

(4) *Pīsō*, an Aquitanian.

pīstrīnum, -ī, n., [pīstor], *flour-mill, mill.*

Placentia, -ae, f., *Placentia*, a city of Cisalpine Gaul on the Padus (Po).

placeō, placēre, placuī, placitus, *please, be agreeable, be welcome to.* Used impersonally, placet, *it is agreed, it seems good; it is resolved, it is decided.* eī placuit, *he resolved.*

plācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [cf. placeō], *quiet, soothe, appease; reconcile, conciliate.* (PLACATE.)

plāga, -ae, f., *stroke, blow; calamity, disaster.*

plaga, -ae, f., *net, snare.*

plānitiēs, -ae, [plānus], f., *plain.*

plānus, -a, -um, comp. plānior, sup. plānissimus, adj., *level, flat.* (PLAIN.)

plausus, -ūs, [plaudō, *beat, clap*], m., *applause.*

plēbs, plēbis, and **plēbēs**, -eī or -is, f., *common people, commons,* PLEBEIANS, *populace.*

plectō, -ere, —, —, [cf. plāga], only in the passive, *be punished, suffer punishment; be blamed.*

plēnus, -a, -um, comp. plēnior, sup. plēnissimus, [cf. pleō], adj., *full, filled;* PLENTIFUL.

plērumque, [n. acc. of plērusque], adv., *usually, for the most part.*

plērusque, -aque, -umque, [plērus, *very many*], adj., *very many, most.* As subst., plērīque, -ōrumque, m. pl., *the greater part, the majority, most; very many.*

Plīnius, -īnī, m., *Plinius* or *Pliny*, gentile name of *C. Plīnius Secundus;* see note to p. 86, l. 9.

plumbum, -ī, n., *lead.*

plūrimum, [plūrimus], used as sup. of multum, adv., *very much, most, especially.*

plūs, [neut. sing. of plūs, plūris, adj.], used as comp. of multum, adv., *more.* plūs valēre, *to have more power.* plūris, gen. of price, *of more value, dearer, higher.* (PLURALITY.)

plūs, plūres, plūrimus, see multus.

pluteus, -ī, m., *shed* for protecting advancing besiegers; *breastwork.*

pōculum, -ī, n., *cup.*

poena, -ae, [cf. ποινή], *fine, punishment, penalty.* poenās dare, or persolvere, *to pay the penalty.*

Poenī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Carthaginians*, so named from their Phoenician origin.

Poenicus or **Pūnicus**, -a, -um, adj., *Punic, Carthaginian.*

poēta, -ae, m., POET.

polleō, -ēre, —, —, [cf. potis and possum], *be able, have influence.*

polliceor, -licērī, -licitus sum, [por, = prō, + liceor], dep., *promise, offer.*

pollicitātiō, -ōnis, [polliceor], f., *promise.*

pollicitus, see polliceor.

Polybius, -y'bī, [Πολύβιος], m., *Polybius*, a native of Megalopolis in Arcadia, celebrated for his history of Rome. In 169 B.C. he was sent to Rome as a hostage, and became intimate with Scipio Africanus the younger.

pompa, -ae, f., *public procession; parade, display.* (POMP.)

Pompeiānus, -a, -um, adj., *of Pompey, Pompeian.*

Pompeius, -ī, m., *Pompeius* or *Pompey*, a Roman gentile name. In this book refers to:

(1) *Pompeius*, consul in 141 B.C.

(2) *Cn. Pompeius Magnus*, Pompey the Great.

Pompilius, -pi'lī, m., *Pompilius*, gentile name of Numa Pompilius.

Pompōnius, -pōnī, m., *Pomponius*,

gentīle name of *T. Pompōnius Atticus.*

Pomptīnus, -a, -um, adj., *Pomptine.* Pomptīnae palūdēs, *the Pomptine Marshes*, see note to p. 75, l. 11.

pondus, -eris, [cf. pendō], n., *weight, burden; importance.* (PONDEROUS.)

pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, *place, fix, deposit; depict, represent; lay aside, give up; spend, employ; set up, build; count, reckon.* Pass., often *be situated; be dependent, depend on.* castra pōnere, *to pitch camp.* rudīmentum pōnere, *to learn, to take first steps in.* (POSITION.)

pōns, pontis, m., *bridge.* (PONTOON.)

ponticulus, -ī, [dim. of pōns], m., *little bridge.*

Ponticus, -a, -um, *of Pontus, to Pontus, Pontic.*

Pontius, Pontī, m., *Pontius*, family name of *C. Pontius*, leader of the Samnites.

Pontus, -ī, m., *Pontus;* see note to p. 72, l. 1.

poposcērunt, see poscō.

populātiō, -ōnis, [populor], f., *a laying waste, ravaging, plundering.* (DEPOPULATION.)

populī scītum, see populus, scītum.

populor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *lay waste, devastate.* (DEPOPULATE.)

populus, -ī, m., *people, nation,* sing. coll., *the people, the citizens.* (POPULACE.)

Porcius, -a, name of a Roman gens. See Catō

porrigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctus, [por = prō + regō], *stretch out, extend; offer, present; prolong.* porrēcta loca aperta pertinēbant, *the open places lay extended*, i.e., *reached.*

Porsena, -ae, m., *Porsena* or *Porsenna*, king of Clusium, and head of the Etruscan league in the time of Tarquin the Proud.

porta, -ae, f., *gate, entrance, passage.* (PORTAL.)

portendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus, [por = prō + tendō], *point out, indicate; predict, foretell.* (PORTEND, PORTENT.)

porticus, -ūs, [porta], f., *colonnade,* PORTICO.

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bear, carry, bring.*

portōrium, -ōrī, [cf. porta], n., *tax, duty.*

portus, -ūs, [cf. porta], m., *harbor, port.*

poscō, -ere, poposcī, —, *demand, beg; require, need.*

Posīdōnius, -ōnī, m., *Posīdōnius*, a distinguished Stoic philosopher of Apameia in Syria, a contemporary of Cicero and Pompey.

positus, -a, -um, see pōnō.

possessiō, -ōnis, [cf. possīdō], f., POSSESSION.

possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessus, [por = prō + sedeō], *hold, occupy,* POSSESS.

possīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessus, [por = prō + sidō], *take* POSSESSION *of, occupy, seize.*

possum, posse, potuī, —, [potis, *able*, + sum], irr., *be able;* pres. = *I can*, impf. and pf. = *I could.* multum, plūrimum posse, *to have great, very great power* or *influence.*

post, adv., *afterwards, after;* often

with abl. of degree of difference. annō post, *a year later, the following year.* paucīs post diēbus, *a few days later.*

post, prep. with acc. only:
(1) Of place, *behind.* post tergum, *in the rear.*
(2) Of time, *after.* post mediam noctem, *after midnight.*

posteā [post eā], adv., *afterwards.* posteā quam, with the force of a conjunction, *after;* cf. postquam.

posteāquam, see posteā.

posterius, [comp. of posterus], adv., *later, at a later time.*

posterus, -a, -um, comp. posterior, sup. postrēmus or postumus [post], adj., *coming after, later; next, following.* in posterum, *for the future.* As subst., posterī, -ōrum, m. pl., *descendants, posterity.* Comp., posterior, -ius, *later, inferior.* Sup. postrēmus, -a, -um, *last; lowest.* ad postrēmum, *finally, at last.*

posthāc, [post + hāc], adv., *after this, hereafter, in future.*

postquam, [post + quam], conj., *after, as soon as; when, since, inasmuch as.* post and quam are often separated by intervening words.

postrēmō, [abl. of postrēmus], adv., *at last, finally; in fine, in short.*

postrēmus, see posterus.

postrīdiē, [posterī diē], adv., *on the day after, next day.* postrīdiē eius diēī, *on the following day.*

postulātum, -ī, [postulō], n., *demand, request.*

postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *demand, ask, request;* of things, *require, demand; accuse of, charge with* (POSTULATE.)

Postumius, -u'mī, m., *Postumius*, name of a Roman gens. In this book refers to:
(1) *Spurius Postumius Albīnus*, consul in 321 B.C.
(2) *A. Postumius Albīnus*, consul in 242 B.C.

potēns, -entis, comp. potentior, sup. -issimus, [part. of possum], adj., *powerful, strong; influential.* (POTENT.) As subst., potentior, -ōris, m., *one more powerful;* pl., *the more powerful.*

potentātus, -ūs, [potēns], m., *power, supremacy.* (POTENTATE.)

potentia, -ae, [potēns], f., *might, power; rule, sway.* (POTENTIAL.)

potestās, -ātis, [potis], f., *ability, power, capacity; self-control; rule; office, magistracy; opportunity.*

potior, potīrī, potītus sum, [potis, *able*], dep., *obtain possession of, acquire, obtain*, followed by the abl. or by the gen.

potis, pote, adj., *able;* see possum, potius, potissimum.

potissimum, [sup. of potis], adv., *chiefly, especially, above all.*

potius, [comp. of potis], adv., *rather, preferably, more.* potius quam, *rather than.*

prae, prep. with abl., *in comparison with, on account of.*

praeacūtus, -a, -um, [part. of praeacuō], adj., *sharpened, pointed; very sharp.*

praebeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, [prae + habeō], *proffer, offer, grant, supply; furnish, provide; yield, surrender; show, exhibit; excite, cause, arouse.*

praecaveō, -cavēre, -cāvī, -cautus [prae + caveō], *take precautions.*

praecēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, [prae + cēdō], *go before; surpass.* (PRECEDE.)

praeceps, -cipitis, [prae + CAP in caput], adj., *headlong, with great speed; steep,* PRECIPITOUS.

praeceptor, -ōris, [praecipiō], m., *teacher, instructor,* PRECEPTOR.

praeceptum, -ī, [praecipiō], n., *maxim, rule, order, direction, command.* (PRECEPT.)

praecīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus, [prae + caedō], *cut off, cut short; finish, end, destroy.*

praecipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [prae + capiō], *take beforehand, anticipate; admonish, inform, direct; bid, order; instruct.*

praecipitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [praeceps], *throw headlong, cast down.* (PRECIPITATE.)

praecipuē, [praecipuus], adv., *especially, specially, particularly.*

praecipuus, -a, -um, [prae, cf. capiō], adj., *particular, especial; distinguished, excellent.*

praeclārē, [praeclārus], adv., *very clearly; gloriously.*

praeclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus, [prae + claudō], *shut up, block up, shut against, shut in the face of.* (PRECLUDE.)

praecō, -ōnis, m., *herald, crier.*

praecurrō, -ere, -cucurrī or -currī, -cursus, *run forward; hasten in advance; anticipate.*

praeda, -ae, f., *booty, spoil, plunder.* (DEPREDATION.)

praedicātiō, -ōnis, [praedicō], f., *praise; assertion, statement.* (PREDICATION.)

praedicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [prae + dīcō], *announce, proclaim, declare; praise, commend; boast.* (PREDICATE.)

praedīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictus, [prae + dīcō], *say beforehand, warn, admonish.* (PREDICT.)

praedō, -ōnis, [praeda], m., *plunderer, robber.* **maritimus praedō**, or **praedō** [sc. **maritimus**], *pirate.*

praedor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [praeda], dep., *pillage, plunder.*

praedūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [prae + dūcō], *extend; construct.*

praefectus, -ī, [praeficiō], m., *overseer, commander,* PREFECT.

praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *offer, present;* PREFER, *rate higher; display, reveal.* **sē praeferre**, *to show one's self superior to.*

praeferōx, -ōcis, [prae + ferōx], adj., *insolent, full of confidence.*

praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [prae + faciō], *place over, place in command of.*

praefīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxus, [prae + fīgō], *fasten in front, set in front.* (PREFIX.)

praefīniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [prae + fīniō], *determine beforehand, ordain, prescribe.*

praefīxus, part. of praefīgō.

praefor, -fārī, -fātus sum, [prae + for], dep., *say before, preface; utter a preliminary prayer.*

praefringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctus, [prae + frangō], *break off.*

praemittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [prae + mittō], *send forward, send in advance.*

praemium, praemī, [prae + emō], n., *reward, recompense; prize, booty.* (PREMIUM.)

Praeneste, -is, n., *Praeneste,* an

ancient city of Latium, situated about twenty miles east of Rome.

praeoccupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [prae + occupō], *take beforehand, reach first.* (PREOCCUPY.)

praeoptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [prae + optō, *choose*], *prefer.*

praeparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [prae + parō], *get ready*, PREPARE.

praepōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, [prae + pōnō], *put before, set over, place in command of; prefer.*

praerumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, [prae + rumpō], *break off.*

praeruptus, -a, -um, [part. of praerumpō], adj., *steep.*

praesaepe, -is, [prae + saepēs], n., *stable, stall.*

praesaepiō, -saepīre, -saepsī, -saeptum, [prae + saepiō], *hedge in, barricade, block.*

praesaeptus, part. of praesaepiō.

praescrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, [prae + scrībō], *give directions, direct*, PRESCRIBE.

praescrīptum, -ī, [part. of praescrībō], n., *direction, order, instructions.* (PRESCRIPTION.)

praesēns, -entis, [part. of praesum], adj., PRESENT, *in person; immediate; propitious.* in praesentī or in praesentia, [sc. tempora], *for the present.*

praesentia, -ae, [praesēns], f., PRESENCE. For in praesentia see praesēns.

praesertim, adv., *especially.*

praesidium, -si'dī, [praeses], n., *defence, protection; garrison, station; fortress.*

praestāns, -antis, comp. praestantior, sup. praestantissimus, [prae, stō], adj., *prĕeminent, excellent, distinguished, remarkable.*

praestitī, see praestō.

praestō, -stāre, -stitī, -stitus, *stand before, be superior, excel; fulfil, perform; show, manifest, assure; answer for.* Impers., praestat, *it is preferable, it is better.* officium praestāre, *to do one's duty.*

praesum, -esse, -fuī, irr., *have command of, rule, govern.*

praeter, [prae], adv. and prep. with acc., *past, beyond; above, more than; against, contrary to; except, besides.* In composition, *past, beyond.* (PRETERNATURAL.)

praetereā, [praeter + ea], adv., *further, besides, moreover.*

praetereō, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -itus, [praeter + eō], *pass by; disregard, leave unnoticed; surpass.*

praeteritus, -a, -um, [part. of praetereō], adj., *past, departed.* (PRETERIT.)

praetermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [praeter + mittō], *let pass, let go; pass over, pass without notice, overlook.*

praeterquam, adv., *other than, besides.*

praetor, -ōris, [for praeitor; prae, cf. eō], m., *leader, chief; general, commander;* PRAETOR, a magistrate at Rome, next to the consul in rank, charged with the administration of justice. At first there was but one praetor, but at an early period two were chosen, then six. Under Sulla there were eight, and the number finally reached sixteen.

praetōrium, praetōrī, [praetor], n., *general's tent, headquarters.*

praetōrius, -a, -um, [praetor], adj., *of the commander*, PRAETORIAN; *of a praetor* or *praetors.*

praetōria cohors, *general's cohort, the general's bodyguard.* praetōria porta, *the praetorian gate,* or front gate of a camp, near the praetōrium. praetōria comitia, *election of praetors.* As subst., praetōrius, -ōrī, m., *ex-praetor.*

praetulī, see praeferō.

praetūra, -ae, [prae, cf. eō], f., PRAETORSHIP.

praeūstus, -a, -um, [part. of praeūrō], adj., *burnt at the end.*

praeveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, [prae + veniō], *come before, outstrip, anticipate.*

prātum, -ī, n., *meadow.*

prāvus, -a, -um, adj., *crooked; perverse, improper, wrong.* (DEPRAVED.)

precor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *ask, beg, beseech; call upon, invoke.*

prehendō, see prēndō.

premō, premere, pressī, pressus, PRESS; *press hard; oppress, burden; overwhelm; urge, drive;* pass., *be hard pressed, be oppressed, be in need, be in danger.*

prēndō, (for prehendō), -ere, -dī, -sus, *lay hold of, grasp, seize; check, arrest; comprehend.*

pretium, pretī, n., *price, esteem; recompense, reward.* (PRECIOUS.)

prex, precis, f., generally pl.; nom. and gen. sing. not in use, *prayer, supplication; curse,* IMPRECATION.

prīdem, see iam.

prīdiē, adv., *the day before.* prīdiē eius diēī, *the day before that day, on the previous day.*

prīmipīlus, -ī, [prīmus + pīlus], m., = prīmus pīlus, *first centurion;* see pīlus.

prīmō, [prīmus], adv., *at first, first.*

prīmum, [acc. of prīmus], adv., *first, in the first place, for the first time.* quam prīmum, *as soon as possible.* cum prīmum, *as soon as.*

prīmus, see prior.

prīnceps, -ipis, [prīmus + CAP in capiō], adj., *first, chief.* As subst., m., *leader, chief.* (PRINCE, PRINCIPAL.)

prīncipātus, -ūs, [prīnceps], m., *beginning; supremacy, leadership; chief command.* (PRINCIPATE.)

prior, -us, gen. priōris, adj. in comp. degree, sup. prīmus, [cf. prō], *former, first.* As subst., priōrēs, -um, m., pl., *those in advance.* prīmus, *first, the first.* prīmus quisque, *the first possible, very first.* As subst., prīmī, -ōrum, m., pl., *the foremost men; chiefs, nobles.* prīma, -ōrum, n., pl., in the phrase in prīmīs, *especially.*

prīstinus, -a, -um, [for priustinus], adj., *former, previous, original.* As subst., prīstinum, -ī, n., *former condition.* (PRISTINE.)

prius, adv., comp., *before, sooner; rather.*

priusquam, [prius + quam], conj., *before, sooner than.* prius and quam are often separated by intervening words.

prīvātim, [prīvātus], adv., PRIVATELY, *in a private capacity; individually,* opposed in meaning to pūblicē.

prīvātus, -a, -um, [part. of prīvō], adj., *personal,* PRIVATE. As subst., prīvātus, -ī, m., *private citizen.*

prīvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bereave,* DEPRIVE, *rob.*

prō, prep. with abl. only, *in front of, before; for, in behalf of; instead of, as; on account of, in return for; in proportion to, considering, according to.*

proavus, -ī, [prō + avus], m., *great-grandfather.*

probābilis, -e, [probō], adj., *worthy of approval, agreeable, good; credible*, PROBABLE.

probātus, -a, -um, [part. of probō], adj., *approved, agreeable.* (PROBATION.)

probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [probus], *approve, think highly of; show to be worthy;* PROVE, *demonstrate.*

Proca, -ae, m., *Proca*, or *Silvius Proca*, name of one of the legendary kings of Alba, the father of Numitor and Amulius.

prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, —, [prō + cēdō], *go forward, march on; advance.* (PROCEED, PROCESSION.)

Procillus, see Valerius.

prōclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [prō + clāmō], *call, cry out.* (PROCLAIM.)

procreō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [prō + creō], *bring forth, produce*, PROCREATE.

procul, adv., *in the distance, far, afar off;* of time, *long before.*

prōcumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitus, [prō + cumbō, for cubō, *lie down*], *fall prostrate; sink down; be beaten down; lie down; lean forward.*

prōcūrātiō, -ōnis, [prōcūrō], f., *charge, control.*

prōcūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [prō + cūrō], *take care of, attend to; avert, expiate* by sacrifice. (PROCURATOR.)

prōcurrō, -currere, -cucurrī or -currī, -cursus, [prō + currō], *run forward, rush forward.*

prōdeō, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -itus, [prōd-, for prō, + eō], *come forth, advance.*

prōdesse, see prōsum.

prōdigium, -di'gī, n., *omen, portent; monster*, PRODIGY, *wonder.*

prōditiō, -ōnis, [cf. prōdō], f., *betrayal, treason, treachery.*

prōditor, -ōris, [cf. prōdō], m., *traitor.*

prōdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [prō + dō], *put forth, exhibit; reveal, disclose; relate, transmit; surrender, abandon.*

prōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [prō + dūcō], *lead forth, bring out; lengthen, prolong, extend.* (PRODUCE.)

proelior, -ārī, -ātus sum, [proelium], dep., *fight.*

proelium, proelī, n., *battle.*

profectiō, -ōnis, [cf. proficīscor], f., *departure, setting out.*

profectō, [prō + factō], adv., *actually, indeed, certainly.*

profectus, see proficīscor.

prōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, [prō + ferō], *put forth, put off; make known, mention; present.*

prōficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [prō + faciō], *effect, accomplish, make.* (PROFICIENT.)

proficīscor, -ficīscī, -fectus sum, dep., *set out, proceed, march.*

profiteor, -fitērī, -fessus sum, [prō + fateor], dep., *declare publicly*, PROFESS. nōmen profitērī, *avow one's self a candidate, volunteer.*

prōflīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *overthrow, overcome, rout; ruin, destroy.* (PROFLIGATE.)

profugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —, *flee, escape; take refuge.*

profugus, -a, -um, [cf. profugiō], adj., *fugitive, in flight.* As subst., profugus, -ī, m., *fugitive, exile.*

profundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus, [prō + fundō], *pour out; squander, shed; bring forth, utter.* sē profundere, *rush forth.* (PROFUSE.)

prōgnātus, -a, -um, [prō + (g)nātus, from (g)nāscor], adj., *sprung, descended.*

prōgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, [prō + gradior], dep., *go forth; advance, make* PROGRESS, *proceed.*

prōgressus, see prōgredior.

prōgressus, -ūs, [cf. prōgredior], m., *advance,* PROGRESS.

prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, [prō + habeō], *hold back, check; hinder, prevent; forbid,* PROHIBIT; *cut off, shut off.*

prōiciō [prōjiciō], -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [prō + iaciō], *throw forward, cast;* of arms, *throw down; abandon, lose; expel, banish.* sē prōicere, *to cast one's self down, leap down; to prostrate one's self.* (PROJECT.)

proinde, [prō + inde], adv., *hence, therefore, accordingly; in like manner, equally.*

prōmineō, -ēre, -uī, —, *stand out, project; lean out.* (PROMINENT.)

prōmiscuē, [prōmiscuus], adv., *all together,* PROMISCUOUSLY.

promissum, -ī, [part. n. of prōmittō], n., *a* PROMISE.

prōmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, [prō + mittō], *let go, put forth; foretell,* PROMISE.

prōmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, [prō + moveō], *move forward, push forward.* (PROMOTE.)

prōmptus, -a, -um, [part. of prōmō], adj., *at hand, ready, quick,* PROMPT.

prōmunturium, -tu'rī, n., PROMONTORY, *headland.*

pronepōs, -ōtis, [prō + nepōs], m., *great-grandson.*

prōnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *announce, declare; put to vote, lay before the senate.* (PRONOUNCE.)

prōpāgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *set forward, extend; generate,* PROPAGATE; *prolong.*

prōpatulus, -a, -um, [prō + patulus], adj., *open, uncovered.* As subst., prōpatulum, -ī, n., *open place, court.*

prope, comp. propius, sup. proximē, adv., *near, nearly, almost,* followed by the acc., *near;* comp. propius, *nearer.* proximē, *nearest, next; last, most recently.*

prōpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, [prō + pellō], *drive away, put to flight, defeat.* (PROPEL, PROPULSION.)

properē, [properus], adv., *hastily, in haste, quickly, speedily.*

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [properus, *quick*], *hurry, hasten.*

propinquitās, -ātis, [propinquus], f., *nearness, vicinity; relationship.* (PROPINQUITY.)

propinquus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, [prope], adj., *near, neighboring.* As subst., propinquus, -ī, m., *relative;* pl., propinquī, -ōrum, m., *relatives, kinsfolk;* propinquae, -ārum, f., *female relatives.*

propior, -us, gen. propiōris, adj. in comp. degree; sup. proximus, [cf. prope], positive wanting, *nearer.* proximus, -a, -um, *nearest, next, last,* of space or time. proximā

nocte, *on the following night.* As subst., proximum, -ī, n., *neighborhood, vicinity.* in proximō, ex proximō, *near by, close at hand.* proximī, -ōrum, m., pl., *by-standers.*

propius, see prope.

prōpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, [prō + pōnō], *set forth, put forward, present; declare, explain;* PROPOSE, *offer; raise, display; resolve, determine.*

prōpositum, -ī, [prōpōnō], n., *plan, purpose.* (PROPOSITION.)

proprius, -a, -um, [prope], adj., *one's own; characteristic.*

propter, prep. with acc. only, *near, next to; on account of, in consequence of.*

propterea, [propter + eā], adv., *for this reason, therefore.* propterea quod, *because.*

prōpugnāculum, -ī, [prōpugnō], n., *bulwark, defence.*

prōpugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [prō + pugnō], *fight* on the defensive.

prōpulsō, -āre, —, -ātus, [freq. of prōpellō], *drive off, drive back; ward off, repel.*

prōra, -ae, f., PROW.

prōscrībō, -scrībere, prōscrīpsī, prōscrīptus, [prō + scrībō], *make public; publish, announce; offer for sale;* PROSCRIBE.

prōscrīptiō, -ōnis, [prōscrībō], f., PROSCRIPTION, *confiscation.*

prōsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, [prō + sequor], dep., *follow after; follow up, pursue.* (PROSECUTE.)

prōsiliō, -īre, -uī, —, *leap forward, spring forth; rush, make haste.*

prōspectus, -ūs, [cf. prōspiciō], m., *view, sight.* in prōspectū, *in sight, visible, in* PROSPECT.

prōsperē, [prōsperus], adv., *favorably, propitiously.* (PROSPEROUSLY.)

prōsperus, -a, -um, [prō, cf. spēs], adj., *favorable, fortunate,* PROSPEROUS; *propitious.*

prōspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, prōspectus, [prō + speciō], *look forward, look; be on the watch; take care of, provide for.*

prōsternō, -sternere, prōstrāvī, prōstrātus, [prō + sternō], *cast down, overthrow; ruin, destroy.* (PROSTRATE.)

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, [prō + sum], *benefit, profit.*

prōtegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctus, [prō + tegō], PROTECT.

prōterō, -ere, -trīvī, -trītus, [prō + terō], *trample on, ride down.*

prōterreō, -ēre, -terruī, -territus, [prō + terreō], *frighten off.*

prōtinus, adv., *continuously; immediately, at once.*

prōtrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctus, [prō + trahō], *produce; bring to light, disclose;* PROTRACT, *prolong.*

prōtulit, see prōferō.

prōturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [prō + turbō, *disturb*], *drive away, repulse.*

prōvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus, [prō + vehō], *carry forward;* pass., *be carried; ride, drive, sail.* aetāte prōvectus, *advanced in years.*

prōventus, -ūs, [prōveniō], m., *outcome; success* (successful outcome).

prōvideō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsus, [prō + videō], *foresee;* PROVIDE *for, look out for, prepare.*

prōvincia, -ae, f., *office, charge;*

PROVINCE, government of a territory outside of Italy by a magistrate of Rome; also the territory itself. In Caesar often *the Province*, the part of Transalpine Gaul subdued by the Romans before B.C. 58, lying between the Mediterranean Sea and the upper part of the Rhone, the Cévennes Mountains, and the upper part of the Garonne River.

prōvinciālis, -e, [prōvincia], adj., *of the province.* (PROVINCIAL.)

prōvocātiō, -ōnis, [prōvocō], f., *appeal, challenge.* (PROVOCATION.)

prōvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [prō + vocō], *call forth, summon; appeal; stir up; challenge.* (PROVOKE.)

prōvolō, -āre, -āvī, —, [prō + volō, *fly*], *fly forward, dash forth.*

proximē, see prope.

proximus, -a, -um, see propior.

prūdēns, -entis, comp. prūdentior, sup. prūdentissimus, [for prōvidēns, part. of prōvideō], adj., *foreseeing; experienced*, PRUDENT, *intelligent.*

prūdentia, -ae, [prūdēns], f., *foresight; knowledge, skill; good sense*, PRUDENCE.

Prūsiās, or **Prūsia**, -ae, m., *Prusias*, a king of Bithynia, with whom Hannibal took refuge.

Pseudophilippus, -ī, m., *the false Philip, Pseudo-Philip*, i.e. *Andriscus*, who pretended to be Philip, son of Perseus, king of Macedonia.

Ptolemaeus, -ī, *Ptolemaeus, Ptolemy*, the name of several kings of Egypt.

pūblicē, [pūblicus], adv., *in the name of the state, as a state*, PUBLICLY.

pūblicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [pūblicus], *make* PUBLIC, *confiscate; publish.*

Pūblicola, -ae, m., *Publicola.* See Valerius.

pūblicus, -a, -um, [cf. pūbēs], adj., *of the people, of the state*, PUBLIC, *common.* As subst., **pūblicum**, -ī, n., *public place; possessions of the state, public treasury.* rēs pūblica, *the state, public business, public interest.*

Pūblius, Pūblī, m., *Publius*, a Roman forename.

pudor, -ōris, [cf. pudeō], m., *shame, sense of shame.*

puer, puerī, m., *child, boy; slave.*

puerīlis, -e, [puer], adj., *boyish, youthful; childish*, PUERILE, *silly.*

pueritia, -ae, [puer], f., *boyhood, childhood, youth.*

puerulus, -ī, [dim. of puer], m., *little boy, little slave.*

pūgiō, -ōnis, m., *dagger, poniard.*

pugna, -ae, f., *fight, battle; dispute, quarrel.*

pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [pugna], *fight, contend; oppose, resist, struggle with.* pugnātum est, *the battle raged.* (PUGNACIOUS.)

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, comp. pulchrior, sup. pulcherrimus, adj., *beautiful, handsome; noble, illustrious.*

Pullō, -ōnis, m., *Pullo*, the name of a Roman centurion.

pullulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [pullus], *sprout, shoot, come forth.*

pulsus, see pellō.

pulsus, -ūs, [pellō], m., *stroke, beat.*

Pulvīllus, see Horātius.

pulvis, -veris, m., *dust.* (PULVERIZE.)

Pūnicus, -a, -um, adj., *Punic, Carthaginian.*

pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [poena], *punish, chastise.* (PUNITIVE.)

pūpillus, -ī, m., *orphan, ward.* (PUPIL.)

puppis, -is, f., *stern; ship.*

pūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [for pūrigō; pūrus, cf. agō], *make clean; free from blame, excuse.* (PURGE.)

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *think, consider, believe, judge.* (PUTATIVE.)

Pydna, -ae, [Πύδνα], f., *Pydna*, a city of Macedonia, in Pieria on the Thermaic Gulf, the scene of the defeat of Perseus, king of Macedonia, by the Romans in 168 B.C. See map opp. p. 97.

Pȳrēnaeus, -a, -um, [Πυρηναῖος], adj., *of Pyrene; Pyrenaean.* **Pȳrēnaeī montēs**, *the Pyrenees Mountains*, between Spain and France. **Pȳrēnaeus saltus**, *the Pyrenees.*

Pyrrhus, -ī, m., *Pyrrhus*, king of Epirus; one of the greatest generals of antiquity. In 280 B.C. he was called to the aid of the Tarentines, who had become involved in a war with the Romans. After two victories he was defeated at Beneventum and compelled to leave Italy. He was killed in 272 B.C., while storming Argos.

Q

Q., with proper names = **Quīntus**, a Roman forename.

quā, [abl. fem. of quī, originally sc. viā or parte], adv., *where.*

quācumque, [quā + cumque], adv., *wherever, wheresoever.*

quadrāgēsimus, -a, -um, [quadrāgintā], adj., *fortieth.*

quadrāgintā, [quattuor], indecl num. adj., *forty.*

quadriennium, -ennī, [quattuor + annus], n., *a period of four years.*

quadringentēsimus, -a, -um, [quadringentī], adj., *the four hundredth.*

quadringentī, -ae, -a, or **CCCC**, [quattuor + centum], adj., *four hundred.*

quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus, *seek, look for; desire, require; inquire, ask.* (QUEST, QUESTION.)

quaestiō, -ōnis, [quaerō], f., *investigation*, QUESTIONING, *inquiry.*

quaestor, -ōris, [= quaesītor, from quaerō], m., QUAESTOR, a Roman magistrate whose duties varied at different periods. At first there were two quaestors each year, but the number was increased from time to time until it reached forty under Caesar. At that time the quaestors were engaged in the care of public moneys and military stores, partly at Rome and partly in the provinces. They were chosen in the *Comitia Tribūta*, and assigned to their provinces by lot.

quaestūra, -ae, [quaestor], f., QUAESTORSHIP.

quaestus, -ūs, [quaerō], m., *gain, profit.*

quālis, -e, adj., inter., *of what kind? what kind of?* rel., *of such a kind, such as, as.*

quam, [quī], adv. and conj., *how much, how; in what manner;* with superlatives (with or without possum), *as possible;* after comparatives and comparative expressions, *than, as;* with expressions of time, *after.* **tam . . . quam**, *so . . . as.* **quam diū**,

as long as. quam prīmum, *as soon as possible.*

quam diū, see quam.

quamquam, [quam + quam], conj., *although; and yet, however.*

quamvīs, [quam + vīs, from volō], conj., *as much as you will, however much, although.*

quandō, adv., *at any time, ever.*

quantō, [quantus], adv., *by how much, how much.*

quantō opere, see quantus.

quantum, [quantus], adv., rel., *so much as, to as great an extent;* inter., *how much? how far?*

quantus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., rel., *as great as, as;* inter., *how great? how much?* tantum . . . quantum, *so much, so far . . . as.* As subst., with gen. of the whole, quantum bonī, *how much advantage.* quantō opere, *how much, how deeply.* quantus . . . tantus, *as much . . . as, as great . . . as.*

quā rē, see rēs.

quārtānus, **-a**, **-um**, [quārtus], adj., *of the fourth, occurring on the fourth day.* As subst., quārtāna, **-ae**, f., [sc. febris], *quartan ague.*

quārtus, **-a**, **-um**, [quattuor], num. adj., *fourth.*

quasi, [quā + sī], adv. and conj., *as if, as though; about, nearly, as it were.*

quater, [cf. quattuor], num. adv., *four times.*

quattuor, or **IV**, indecl. num. adj., *four.* (QUADRUPED.)

quattuordecim, or **XIIII**, [quattuor + decem], indecl. num. adj., *fourteen.*

-que, conj., *and, but*, always appended to another word, which in construction belongs after it.

quem ad modum, see modus.

queror, querī, questus sum, *complain, lament; complain of.* (QUERULOUS.)

questus, see queror.

quī, quae, quod, gen. cuius, inter. adj. pron., *which? what? what kind of?*

quī, quae, quod, gen. cuius, rel. and inter. pron.:

(1) As rel. pron., *who, which;* at the beginning of a clause often best rendered by a personal or demonstrative pron.; with the subj. expressing cause, *since he* (or *they*), *because he* (or *they*); with the subj. expressing characteristic or result, often rendered *as he, so that he* (*it, they*), *that he* (*it, they*), etc. īdem quī, *the same as.*

(2) As inter. adj. pron., *what? what kind of?*

quī, quae or qua, quod, indef. pron., *any, any one,* or *anything,* used both as subst. and as adj. **sī quī**, *if any one.*

quia, conj., *because, since.*

quicquam, see quisquam.

quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, indef. pron., *whoever, whatever, whichever.*

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, indef. pron., *a certain one, a certain thing.* As adj., quīdam, quaedam, quoddam, *a certain, a; some, certain.*

quidem, adv., *indeed, at least.* **nē . . . quidem**, *not even;* the word emphasized is always placed between nē and quidem.

quiēs, quiētis, f., *rest,* QUIET; *sleep.*

quiēscō, -ere, -ēvī, -ētus, [quiēs], *keep quiet, rest.*

quiētus, -a, -um, [part. of quiēscō], adj., *at rest, inactive;* QUIET, *peaceful.*

quīlibet, quaelibet, quodlibet and quidlibet, indef. pron., *any one, whom you will.*

quīn, [old abl. quī + -ne], conj., *why not? that not, but that, without;* after words expressing doubt or suspicion, *that;* after dēterreō, retineō, etc., trans. by *from* with a participle. quīn etiam and quīn et, *nay even, moreover.*

Quīnctius, see Flāminīnus.

quīncūnx, -uncis, m., *quincunx*, a figure like the five spot on dice, ⁘.

quīndecim, or **XV**, [quīnque + decem], indecl. num. adj., *fifteen.*

quīngentēsimus, -a, -um, [quīngentī], adj., *the five hundredth.*

quīngentī, -ae, -a, or **D**, [quīnque + centum], num. adj., *five hundred.*

quīnī, -ae, -a, [quīnque], distrib. num. adj., *five each, five at a time.*

quīnquāgēnī, -ae, -a, [quīnquāgintā], distrib. num., *fifty each.*

quīnquāgēsimus, -a, -um, [quīnquāgintā], adj., *the fiftieth.*

quīnquāgintā, or **L**, [quīnque], indecl. num. adj., *fifty.*

quīnque, or **V**, indecl. num. adj., *five.*

quīnquennium, -ennī, [quīnque + annus], n., *a period of five years.* (QUINQUENNIAL.)

quīnquiēns, [quīnque], adv., *five times, for the fifth time.*

quīntum, [quīntus], adv., *for the fifth time.*

quīntus, -a, -um, [quīnque], num. adj., *fifth.*

Quīntus, -ī, m., *Quintus*, a Roman forename.

quis, —, quid, inter. pron., *who? what?* Neut. quid, with gen. of the whole, quid cōnsilī, *what plan?* Neut. quid, as adverbial acc. (= cūr), *why?*

quis, —, quid, indef. pron., often after sī, nisi, nē, and num, *any one, anything.* As adj., quī, quae or qua, quod, *any.* sī quis, *if any one.* nē quis, *that not any one = that no one.*

quisnam, —, quidnam, inter. pron., *who, pray? what, pray?* As adj., quīnam, quaenam, quodnam, *of what kind, pray?*

quispiam, quaepiam, quidpiam or quodpiam, indef. pron. and adj., *any one, anything; any.*

quisquam, —, quicquam, indef. pron., *any one, anything.* As adj., *any.*

quisque, —, quidque, indef. pron., *each one, each thing.* As adj., quisque, quaeque, quodque, *each.*

quisquis, quaequae, quicquid, indef. rel. pron., *whoever, whatever.*

quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs, [quī + vīs, from volō], indef. pron., *any one, anything you please.* As adj., quīvīs, quaevīs, quodvīs, *any whatever.*

quō, adv. and conj.:

(1) quō, [dat. or abl. of quī], adv., inter., *whither? to what place?* rel., *whither, where, when; by what, by as much as; by reason of which, wherefore; to what extent, how far?* indefinite, after sī and nē, *to any place, to any point, anywhere.*

(2) quō, [abl. of quī], final conj., used especially with comparatives and followed by subj., *in order that, that, that thereby.* quō minus, *that not*, often best translated by *from* with a participle.

quoad, [quō + **ad**], adv. and conj., *as far as; until; as long as, while.*

quod, adv. and conj.:
(1) As adv., *with respect to which, in what, as to what.* **quod sī**, *but if, and yet if.*
(2) As conj., *that, in that; because, inasmuch as, supposing that, as to* or *in regard to the fact that, so far as.* **proptereā quod**, *because.*

quō minus, see quō.

quondam, adv., *at some time, at one time; once, formerly;* of the future, *some day, hereafter.*

quoniam, [quom, old form of **cum**, + **iam**], conj., *since, as, because, whereas.*

quoque, conj., following the emphatic word of a clause, *also, too.* **quōque versus**, *in every direction.*

quōrsum and **quōrsus**, [quō, **versus**], adv., *to what place? whither? for what purpose? for what?*

quot, indecl. adj., *as many as.*

quotannīs, [quot + abl. pl. of **annus**], adv., *yearly, every year.*

quotiēns, [quot], adv., *as often as; how often.*

quotiēnscumque, [quot], adv., inter., *how often? how many times?* rel., *as often as.*

R

rādīx, -īcis, f., *root;* of an elevation, *foot, base; origin.* **rādīcēs collis**, *the foot of the hill.* **rādīcēs montis**, *the foot of the mountain.* (RADICAL.)

raeda, -ae, [Kel.], f., *wagon* with four wheels.

rāmus, -ī, m., *branch, bough.* (RAMIFICATION.)

rapīna, -ae, [cf. rapiō, *seize*], f., *pillage, plundering.* (RAPINE.)

rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus, *seize and carry off, snatch; hasten, hurry; destroy, pillage.*

raptim, [rapiō], adv., *hastily, hurriedly.*

raptor, -ōris, [raptō, rapiō], m., *robber, plunderer.*

raptus, perf. pass. part. of **rapiō**.

rārō, [rārus], adv., *seldom, rarely, now and then.*

rārus, -a, -um, comp. **rārior**, sup. **rārissimus**, adj., *thin;* RARE, *infrequent, few; scanty, scattered.*

ratiō, -ōnis, [reor, *reckon*], f., *reckoning, account; plan, theory, method, science; reason, ground; regard, consideration.* (RATIO, RATIONAL.)

ratis, -is, f., *raft.*

Rauracī [Rauricī], -ōrum, m. pl., a people along the Rhine, north of the Helvetii.

Ravenna, -ae, f., *Ravenna*, an important seaport of Cisalpine Gaul, in northeastern Italy.

re-, red-, an inseparable particle, used only in composition, *again, back.*

rebelliō, -ōnis, [rebellis, from **re-** and **bellum**], f., *uprising, revolt,* REBELLION.

rebellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re- + bellō], *revolt,* REBEL, *renew the combat.*

recēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, [re- + cēdō], *go back, withdraw, retreat; desist.* (RECEDE.)

recēns, -entis, adj., *fresh;* RECENT, *late.* As subst., recentēs, -ium, m. pl., *those who are fresh, the unwearied.*

recēnseō, -ēre, -cēnsuī, —, *review.* (RECENSION.)

receptus, see recipiō.

receptus, -ūs, [recipiō], m., *retreat.*

recessus, -ūs, [recēdō], m., *retreat; means of retreat.* (RECESS.)

recidō, -cidere, reccidī, —, fut. part. recāsūrus, [re- + cadō], *fall back; be reduced; fall to the lot of.*

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [re- + capiō], *take back, recover, win; receive, admit.* sē recipere, *to retreat; to recover one's self.* recipere in dēditiōnem, *to admit to surrender, receive into submission.*

recitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *read aloud,* RECITE.

reclīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re- + clīnō], *bend back;* pass. and reflexive, sē reclīnāre, *lean back,* RECLINE.

recognōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitus, *know again,* RECOGNIZE; *examine, inspect.*

reconciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re- + conciliō], *reunite,* RECONCILE; *win back, conciliate.*

rēctē, [rēctus], adv., *rightly, safely.*

rēctus, -a, -um, [perf. part. of regō], adj., *straight.* (RECTIFY.)

recuperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re-, cf. capiō], *recover, regain.* (RECUPERATE.)

recūsātiō, -ōnis, [recūsō], f., *refusal.*

recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re-, cf. causa], *refuse, make refusal, decline; raise objections.*

reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [red- + dō], *give back, return; represent; pay back; make, render; surrender; give up; hand over, deliver.*

redēmptus, see redimō.

redeō, -īre, -īvī, -itus, [red- + eō], *go back, return, arise, be received; slope back.*

redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus, [red- + agō], *drive back, bring back; reduce, force; render, make.* (REDACTION.)

redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptus, [red- + emō], *buy back, purchase; ransom; procure;* of revenues, *farm.* (REDEMPTION.)

redintegrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [red- + integrō, *make whole*], *renew; revive.*

reditiō, -ōnis, [cf. redeō], f., *a going back, returning.*

reditus, -ūs, [cf. redeō], m., *return; income, revenue.*

Redonēs, -um, m. pl., a Gallic people in Brittany (*Bretagne*); the name survives in *Rennes.*

redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [re- + dūcō], *lead back, accompany; bring off; restore;* REDUCE.

referō, -ferre, rettulī, -lātus, [re- + ferō], *bear back, bring back; carry, convey* to a person or place; *bear off, recover; pay back, requite; ascribe,* REFER; RELATE, *recount, tell, say.* sē referre, *go back, return.* pedem referre, *to retreat.* grātiam referre, *to make return, requite.* ad senātum referre, *to lay a matter before the senate.*

reficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [re- + faciō], *make again, reconstruct, repair; recruit, reënforce.*

refluō, -ere, —, —, [re- + fluō], *flow back, flow away.*

refoveō, -fovēre, -fōvī, -fōtus, [re- + foveō], *warm again; refresh, revive.*

refrāctus, see refringō.

refringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctus, [re- + frangō], *break; break down.* (REFRACTORY.)

refugiō, -ere, -fūgī, —, [re- + fugiō], *flee back, flee.* (REFUGE.)

rēgālis, -e, [rēx], adj., *of a king, royal*, REGAL.

rēgia, -ae, [rēgius], f., *palace.*

rēgīna, -ae, [rēx], f., *queen.*

Rēgīnus, -ī, m., *Reginus*, surname of *C. Antistius Rēgīnus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

regiō, -ōnis, [cf. regō, *keep straight*], f., *direction, line;* REGION, *country, district.*

rēgius, -a, -um, [rēx], adj., *of a king, kingly, royal; magnificent.* As subst., rēgiī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the king's troops.*

regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus, *direct, control, rule.*

rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [rēgnum], REIGN, *be king; be supreme.*

rēgnum, -ī, [cf. rēx], n., *kingly government, royalty; dominion, sovereignty, kingdom.*

regredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, [re- + gradior], dep., *go back, return; retreat.* (REGRESSION.)

Rēgulus, -ī, m., *Regulus*, family name of *M. Atīlius Rēgulus.*

reiciō, [rejiciō], -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, [re- + iaciō], *throw back, hurl back;* of ships, *carry back; drive back, repulse; throw away; refuse*, REJECT.

rēiectus, see rēiciō.

relanguēscō, -ere, -uī, —, [re- + languēscō], *become enfeebled.*

relātus, see referō.

relēgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re- + lēgō, *depute*], *banish, remove.* (RELEGATE.)

relīctus, see relinquō.

religiō, -ōnis, [re-, cf. legō], f., *sense of right, duty; religious scruple; fear of the gods;* RELIGION, *worship, religious rite.*

religō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re- + ligō], *bind; chain.*

relinquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lictus, [re- + linquō, *quit*], *leave behind; desert, abandon;* of a siege or attack, *leave off, give up; bequeath.* (RELINQUISH, RELICT.)

reliquiae, -ārum, [cf. relinquō], f., pl., *remnant, rest.*

reliquus, -a, -um, [cf. relinquō], adj., *remaining, the rest.* As subst., reliquī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the rest.* reliquum, -ī, n., *remainder, rest.* reliquī, gen. sing. neut., in the phrase nihil reliquī, *nothing left;* see 138.

remaneō, -ēre, remānsī, —, [re- + maneō], *stay behind*, REMAIN; *endure, last; continue to be.*

rēmex, -igis, [rēmus + agō], m., *oarsman, rower.*

Rēmī, -ōrum, m. pl., a Gallic people, about the head waters of the Axona (*Aisne*); chief city, Durocortorum, now *Rheims.*

rēmigō, -āre, —, —, [rēmex], *row.*

remigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re- + migrō], *move back, go back.*

reminīscor, -minīscī, —, [re- + MEN in mēns], dep., *remember, recollect;* followed by the gen.

remittō, -ere, remīsī, remissus, [re- + mittō], *send back; throw back; yield, give up; relax, diminish;* REMIT, *grant exemption from.* calcēs remittere, *to kick.* (REMISS.)

remōtus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup.

-issimus, [removeō], adj., *far off*, REMOTE.

removeō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, [re- + moveō], *move back*, REMOVE, *drive away; dismiss; deprive.*

remūneror, -ārī, -ātus sum, [re- + mūnus], dep., REMUNERATE, *repay.*

Remus, -ī, m., *Remus*, twin brother of Romulus.

Rēmus, -ī, m., *one of the Remi.*

rēmus, -ī, m., *oar.*

rēnō, -ōnis, m., *reindeer skin.*

renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re- + novō], *renew, restore, repeat; revive.* (RENOVATE.)

renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re- + nūntiō], *bring back word, announce, report.* (RENOUNCE.)

renuō, -nuere, -nuī, —, [re- + nuō], *nod backward, refuse* by a motion of the head; *deny, refuse.*

reor, rērī, ratus sum, dep., *believe, think, suppose.*

reparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re- + parō], *prepare again, renew, revive.* (REPARATION.)

repellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, [re- + pellō], *drive back*, REPULSE, REPEL; *reject, refuse.*

repente, [repēns], adv., *suddenly, unexpectedly.*

repentīnus, -a, -um, [repēns], adj., *sudden, hasty, unexpected.*

reperiō, reperīre, repperī or reperī, repertus, *find again, meet with; discover, find; learn.*

repetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītus, [re- + petō], *seek again; demand; exact.* poenās repetere, *to exact punishment.* repetundae (sc. pecūniae), *extortion.* (REPEAT, REPETITION.)

repetundus, part. of repetō.

repleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus, [re- + pleō], *fill again, fill up; complete.* (REPLETE, REPLETION.)

rēpō, rēpere, rēpsī, rēptus, *creep, crawl.* (REPTILE.)

repōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, [re- + pōnō], *put back, replace, restore; renew; lay up, reckon; class.*

reportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re- + portō], *carry back.* (REPORT.)

repraesentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re-, cf. praesēns], *do at once.*

reprehendō, -ere, reprehendī, reprehēnsus, [re- + prehendō], *seize, catch; blame, find fault with, reprove; prosecute, condemn.* (REPREHEND.)

reprimō, -ere, repressī, repressus, [re- + premō], *press back; check, confine*, REPRESS.

repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *put away, divorce; reject, scorn*, REPUDIATE.

repugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re- + pugnō], *oppose, resist, defend one's self against.*

repulsa, -ae, [repellō], f., *rejection*, REPULSE; *defeat* at the polls.

repulsus, see repellō.

reputō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re- + putō], *reckon, calculate; meditate, reflect on.* (REPUTE.)

requiēscō, -ere, -quiēvī, -quiētus, [re- + quiēscō], *rest.*

requīrō, -ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus, [re- + quaerō], REQUIRE, *demand; miss, long for.*

rēs, reī, f., *thing, object, matter; affair, event; circumstance, condition, property, possessions; object, project, business; state, commonwealth.* rēs mīlitāris, *warfare, military science.* rēs novae, *a revolution.* rēs pūblica, *commonwealth, republic, public busi-*

ness, public interest. **quā rē**, *wherefore, and for this reason.* **rē vērā**, *indeed, in truth.* **ē rē**, *advantageously.*

rescindō, -ere, rescidī, rescissus, [re- + scindō], *cut off, cut down, break up, destroy; renew, expose; annul, repeal,* RESCIND.

rescīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī or -sciī, -scītus, [re- + scīscō], *learn, find out.*

rescrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, [re- + scrībō], *write again; enroll anew, transfer* from one branch of the service to another. (RESCRIPT.)

reservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re- + servō], *keep back,* RESERVE, *keep.*

resideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, —, [re- + sedeō], *remain behind, be left;* RESIDE *in, be vested in.*

resīdō, -ere, -sēdī, —, *settle down, subside, become quiet.*

resistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, *remain; halt, stop, stand still;* RESIST, *oppose, withstand.*

resolvō, -ere, -solvī, -solūtus, [re- + solvō], *untie, unbind, loose; relax, enervate; dissolve, melt.* (RESOLVE.)

respiciō, -ere, respexī, respectus, [re- + speciō], *look back, look back upon, gaze at, contemplate; consider,* RESPECT.

respondeō, -ēre, respondī, respōnsus, [re- + spondeō], *answer, reply,* RESPOND; *correspond, agree.*

respōnsum, -ī, [respondeō], n., *answer, reply;* RESPONSE of oracle.

rēs pūblica, see **rēs**.

respuō, -spuere, -spuī, —, [re- + spuō, *spit*], *reject.*

restinguō, -stinguere, restīnxī, restīnctus, [re- + stinguō], *put out, extinguish; allay; destroy.*

restituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, [re- + statuō], *replace, rebuild; restore, revive; remedy; reinstate; save.* (RESTITUTION.)

retardō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re- + tardō], *keep back, delay, impede,* RETARD; *repress, check.*

retineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, [re- + teneō], *hold back, keep,* RETAIN, *restrain, detain; preserve, maintain.*

retrahō, -ere, retrāxī, retrāctus, [re- + trahō], *draw back, call back; remove, divert, turn.* (RETRACT.)

reus, -ī, m., *defendant, accused, prisoner.*

revellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsus, [re- + vellō, *pull*], *pull back; tear away.* (REVULSION.)

reverentia, -ae, f., *respect, regard,* REVERENCE.

revertō, -ere, revertī, [re- + vertō], only in tenses from pf. stem, and revertor, revertī, reversus sum, *return, come back, go back;* REVERT, *recur.*

revinciō, -vincīre, -vinxī, -vinctus, *bind fast, bind, fasten.*

revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re- + vocō], *call again, recall; call off.* (REVOKE.)

rēx, rēgis, [cf. regō, *rule*], m., *king, monarch, ruler.*

Rhea, -ae, f., *Rhea, Rhea Silvia,* daughter of Numitor, and mother of Romulus and Remus.

Rhēnus, -ī, [Kel., from root meaning 'flow'], m., *the Rhine,* the principal river of Northern Europe, having a course of about 850 miles. See map opp. p. 155.

rhētor, -oris, m., RHETORICIAN, *teacher of oratory; orator.*

Rhodanus, **-ī**, m., *the Rhone*, which rises in the Alps near the sources of the Rhine, and passing through Lake Geneva, follows at first a southwesterly direction, then flows south, reaching the Mediterranean after a course of about 500 miles.

Rhodius, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *Rhodian, of Rhodes.* As subst., Rhodius, **-dī**, m., *Rhodian, inhabitant of Rhodes.*

Rhodus, **-ī**, f., *Rhodes.* See note to p. 60, l. 9.

rīdeō, rīdēre, rīsī, rīsus, *laugh; laugh at, mock*, DERIDE. (RIDICULOUS.)

rīpa, **-ae**, f., *bank* of a river, *margin; shore* of the sea. (RIPARIAN.)

rīsus, **-ūs**, [rīdeō], m., *laughter; object of laughter.*

rīvus, **-ī**, m., *stream, brook.* (RIVULET.)

rōbur, **-oris**, n., *hard wood, oak; strength, vigor; best part, flower.*

rōbustus, **-a**, **-um**, [rōbur], adj., *oaken; strong, hardy*, ROBUST.

rogātus, **-ūs**, [rogō], only found in the abl. sing., m., *request, entreaty.*

rogō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *ask, question; beg, request, solicit.*

Rōma, **-ae**, f., *Rome.*

Rōmānus, **-a**, **-um**, [Rōma], adj., *Roman.* As subst., Rōmānus, **-ī**, m., *a Roman;* usually pl., *the Romans, Romans.*

Rōmulus, **-ī**, m., *Romulus*, the mythical founder and first king of Rome. Rōmulus Silvius, a mythical king of Alba Longa.

rōs, **rōris**, m., *dew.*

Rōscius, Rōscī, m., *Roscius*, gentile name of:

(1) *Sextius Rōscius* of Ameria, defended by Cicero against a charge of murder.

(2) *L. Rōscius*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

rōstrum, **-ī**, [rōdō], n., *beak, bill ship's beak;* pl., *the* ROSTRA; see note to p. 76, l. 9.

rota, **-ae**, f., *wheel.* (ROTATION.)

ruber, **-bra**, **-brum**, adj., *red.* Rubrum Mare, *the Red Sea*, a name applied to the Arabian and Persian gulfs.

Rubicō, **-ōnis**, m., *the Rubicon*, a small river in northeastern Italy, which formed the boundary between Italy and Cisalpine Gaul.

rubus, **-ī**, m., *bramble-bush.*

Rūfus, see **Acūtius**, **Caelius**, **Minucius**, **Sulpicius.**

ruīna, **-ae**, [ruō], f., *rushing down, falling, ruin, destruction; fallen building*, RUIN.

rūmor, **-ōris**, m., RUMOR, *report.*

rumpō, rumpere, rūpī, ruptus, *break, rend; violate, destroy.*

ruō, ruere, ruī, rutus, *fall, go to ruin; cause to fall, overthrow; hasten, hurry.*

rūpēs, **-is**, [cf. **rumpō**], f., *cliff, rock.*

rūrsus or **rūrsum** [= **revorsus** or revorsum, *turned back*], adv., *again, anew; in turn, on the contrary.*

rūs, rūris, n., *the country, lands, fields, estate.* (RURAL.)

Rutēnī, **-ōrum**, m. pl., a Gallic people, west of the Cévennes; part of them were within the limits of 'the Province,' and were hence called Rutēnī prōvinciālēs.

Rutīlius, Rutīlī, m., *Rutilius*, family name of *P. Rutīlius Lupus*, consul in 90 B.C.

Rutilus, -ī, m., *Rutilus*, surname of *M. Semprōnius Rutilus*, one of Caesar's officers.

S.

Sabīnus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Sabines, Sabine.* As subst., Sabīnī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Sabines*, dwelling in central Italy north of Latium.

Sabīnus, see Titurius.

Sabis, -is, m., *the Sambre*, a river in the central part of Belgic Gaul which flows northeast into the Mosa (*Meuse*).

Saburra, -ae, m., *Saburra*, a general of Juba I., king of Numidia.

sacellum, -ī, [sacrum], n., *little sanctuary, shrine.*

sacer, -cra, -crum, adj., *consecrated*, SACRED, *devoted; forfeited, accursed.* See sacrum.

sacerdōs, -ōtis, [sacer], m. and f., *priest, priestess.* (SACERDOTAL.)

sacerdōtium, sacerdōtī, [sacerdōs], m., *priesthood.*

sacrārium, -ārī, [sacrum], n., *shrine, sanctuary.*

sacrificium, sacrifi'cī, [sacra, cf. faciō], n., SACRIFICE.

sacrificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [sacer, cf. faciō], SACRIFICE.

sacrum, -ī, [sacer], n., *something* SACRED; *sacred vessel;* pl., *divine worship, religious rites.*

saepe, comp. -ius, sup. -issimē, adv., *often, frequently.* Comp., *too often.* saepe numerō, *oftentimes, repeatedly.*

saepēs, -is, f., *hedge.*

saepiō, -īre, saepsī, saeptus, [saepēs], *hedge in, inclose; fortify, guard, protect.*

saeviō, -īre, -iī, -ītus, [saevus], *be fierce, rage, rave; show cruelty.*

saevus, -a, -um, adj., *raging, fierce,* SAVAGE; *cruel, harsh.*

sagitta, -ae, f., *arrow.*

sagittārius, -ārī, [sagitta], m., *archer, bowman.*

sagulum, -ī, n., *military cloak; traveling-cloak.*

Saguntīnus, -a, -um, [Saguntum], adj., *of* or *belonging to Saguntum.* As subst., Saguntīnus, -ī, m., *an inhabitant of Saguntum, a Saguntine.*

Saguntus, -ī, f., or **Saguntum**, -ī, n., *Saguntum*, a town in the eastern part of Spain, near the coast, the capture of which by Hannibal led to the second Punic War.

sāl, salis, n., *salt water, the sea; shrewdness, wit; good taste, elegance.*

salīnus, -a, -um, [sāl], adj., *of salt, salt;* as subst., salīnae, -ārum, f. pl., *salt-works.* (SALINE.)

saltem, adv., *at least, even.*

saltus, -ūs, m., *forest, woodland, forest-pasture; glen, glade; mountain pass.*

salum, -ī, n., only found in acc. and abl. sing., *deep sea, sea.*

salūs, -ūtis, [cf. salvus, *well*], f., *health, welfare, safety.*

salūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [salūs], *greet,* SALUTE, *hail; call upon, visit.*

salvus, -a, -um, adj., *well, sound, safe.* (SALVATION.)

Samarobrīva, -ae, f., *Samarobriva*, a town of the Ambiani.

Samnītēs, -ium, m., pl., *Samnites, inhabitants of Samnium*, a mountainous district in central Italy, east and southeast of Latium.

sanciō, sancīre, sānxī, sānctus, *render sacred, confirm, ratify.* (SANCTIFY.)

sānctus, -a, -um, sup. sānctissimus, [sanciō], adj., *sacred, solemn.* (SANCTIFY.)

sanguis, -inis, m., *blood, bloodshed; race, stock, family.* (SANGUINARY.)

sānitās, -ātis, [sānus], f., *soundness* of mind, *good sense*, SANITY.

Santonēs, -um, or **Santonī**, -ōrum, m., pl., a Gallic people on the seacoast north of the Garonne; the name survives in *Saintes* and *Saintonge*.

sapiēns, -entis, comp. sapientior, sup. sapientissimus, adj., *wise, sensible, discreet.* As subst., m., *man of wisdom, sage.*

sapienter, [sapiēns], adv., *wisely.*

sarcinae, -ārum, [SAR in sarciō], f., pl., *baggage, packs*, the load that each soldier carried on his back.

Sardinia, -ae, f., *Sardinia*, a large island in the Mediterranean, west of the southern part of Italy. See map opp. p. 1.

Sardiniēnsis, -e, adj., *of Sardinia, Sardinian.* As subst., Sardiniēnsis, -is, m., *inhabitant of Sardinia, Sardinian.*

sarmentum, -ī, n., *twig, fagot;* pl., *brushwood.*

satelles, -itis, m. and f., *attendant, follower, courtier.*

satis, adj., n., indecl., *enough, sufficient, satisfactory.* As subst., *enough, sufficiency.* As adv., *enough, sufficiently, quite, wholly, somewhat;* often used as adj. with a gen. of the whole, as **satis causae**, *sufficient reason.* Comp. satius, *better, preferable.*

satis faciō (satisfaciō), facere, fēcī, factus, SATISFY; *make restitution; appease, placate; apologize.*

satisfactiō, -ōnis, [cf. satisfaciō], f., *apology, excuse.* (SATISFACTION.)

Sāturnīnus, -ī, m., surname of *L. Appuleius Sāturnīnus*, tribune of the Commons in 100 B.C.

Sāturnius, -a, -um, [Sāturnus], adj., *of Sāturnus.* As subst. **f.**, the citadel of Saturnus.

Sāturnus, -ī, m., [serō], *Saturnus*, first king of Latium; afterwards worshiped as god of agriculture.

saucius, -a, -um, adj., *wounded; ill, sick.*

saxum, -ī, n., *stone, rock.*

Scaevola, -ae, m. See **Mūcius**.

scālae, -ārum, f. pl., *ladder, scaling-ladder.*

scapha, -ae, [σκάφη], f., *light boat*, SKIFF.

scelerātus, -a, -um, [cf. scelus], adj., *wicked, criminal.*

scelestus, -a, -um, [scelus], adj., *impious, wicked.* As subst., m. and f., *wretch, scoundrel.*

scelus, -eris, n., *wicked deed, crime; sin, wickedness.*

schola, -ae, f., *debate, lecture;* SCHOOL.

scientia, -ae, [sciēns], f., *knowledge, skill*, SCIENCE.

scīlicet, [scīre licet], adv., *you may know, of course, forsooth, evidently.*

scindō, scindere, scidī, scissus, *tear; tear down, break down.* (RESCIND.)

sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *know, know how; understand, perceive.*

Scīpiō, -ōnis, m., [scīpiō, *staff*], *Scipio*, the name of a very distinguished family of the Cornelian gens. In this book are mentioned:

(1) *P. Cornēlius Scīpiō*, consul in 218 B.C., defeated by Hannibal at the Ticinus and at the Trebia; he was killed in battle with the Carthaginians in Spain in 212 B.C.

(2) *P. Cornēlius Scīpiō Āfricānus*, son of the preceding; he ended the second Punic War by defeating Hannibal at Zama, 202 B.C.

(3) *L. Cornēlius Scīpiō Asiāticus*, who defeated Antiochus in 190 B.C., and from this campaign derived his surname, *Asiāticus*.

(4) *Cn. Cornēlius Scīpiō*, consul in 222 B.C.

(5) *P. Cornēlius Scīpiō Aemiliānus Āfricānus Minor*, who destroyed Carthage in 146 B.C.

(6) *P. Cornēlius Scīpiō Nāsīca*, consul in 111 B.C.

(7) *Q. Caecilius Metellus Pius Scīpiō*, Pompey's father-in-law.

scītum, -ī, [scīscō], n., *ordinance, decree.* **populī scītum**, *a decree of the people.*

scrība, -ae, [cf. scrībō], m., SCRIBE, *clerk, secretary.*

scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *write, write down; communicate.* (INSCRIBE, SCRIPT.)

scrīnium, -īnī, n., *case, box.*

scrīptor, -ōris, [scrībō], m., *scribe, copyist, clerk; author, narrator.*

scrobis, -is, m. and f., *ditch.*

scūtum, -ī, n., *shield, buckler; defense, protection.* See INTROD., p. xxxi.

sē, sēsē, see **suī.**

sē- or **sēd-**, [abl. of **suī**], prep. used mostly in composition, *apart, away from.*

sēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, [sē- + cēdō], *go apart, separate, retire; rebel, revolt, secede.*

sēcessiō, -ōnis, [sēcēdō], f., *revolt,* SECESSION.

sēclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus [sē- + claudō], *shut off.* (SECLUDE.)

sēcrētō, [sēcrētus], adv., SECRETLY, *privately.*

sectiō, -ōnis, [secō], f., *booty.*

sector, -ārī, -ātus sum, [freq. of sequor], dep., *follow eagerly, pursue; seek the society of; search for.*

secundum, [sequor], prep. with acc. only, *along, next to, by the side of, according to, besides.*

secundus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [sequor], adj., SECOND, *next; secondary, inferior; propitious, favorable.*

secūris, secūris, [secō], f., *ax;* metaphorically, *power, authority.*

sed, conj., *but; yet, but yet.*

sēdecim, or **XVI**, [sex + decem], indecl. num. adj., *sixteen.*

sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessus, *sit; preside, hold court, be encamped; be established.* (SESSION.)

sēdēs, -is, [cf. sedeō, *sit*], f., *seat, chair, throne; habitation, settlement.*

sēditiō, -ōnis, [sēd- + eō], f., *dissension, civil discord, rebellion; strife, quarrel,* SEDITION.

sēditiōsus, -a, -um, sup. -issimus, [sēditiō], adj., SEDITIOUS, *mutinous.*

sēdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *calm, quiet.* (SEDATIVE.)

Sedulius, Sedu'lī, m., *Sedulius*, a chief of the Lemovices.

Sedusiī, -ōrum, m. pl., a German tribe, the location of which is uncertain.

sēgnis, -e, adj., *slow, sluggish.*

Segontiācī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Segontiaci*, a tribe of Britain.

Segovax, -vactis, m., *Segovax*, the name of a Briton.

sēgregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [sē- + gregō, from grex], *remove, separate.* (SEGREGATE.)

Segusiāvī, -ōrum, m. pl., a Gallic state, tributary to the Aedui, in the region west of the junction of the Rhone and Saône (*Arar*). See map opp. p. 155.

sēiungō, -ere, sēiūnxī, sēiūnctus, [sē- + iungō], *separate, divide.*

sella, -ae, [sedeō], f., *seat, chair.*

semel, num. adv., *once, once for all.* semel atque iterum, *time and again.*

sēmentis, -is, [sēmen, *seed*], f., *sowing;* of grain, *seeding.*

sēmet, see suī.

sēmita, -ae, f., *path.*

semper, adv., *always, continually, forever.*

Semprōnius, -a, the name of a Roman gens. In this book are mentioned:

(1) *M. Semprōnius Rutilus*, one of Caesar's officers.

(2) *Ti. Semprōnius Longus*, consul in 218 B.C.; together with Scipio he was defeated by Hannibal at the river Trebia.

(3) *Ti. Semprōnius Gracchus*, consul in 213 B.C., slain in battle with the Carthaginians.

(4) *Ti. Semprōnius Gracchus*, see *Gracchī.*

(5) *C. Semprōnius Gracchus*, see *Gracchī.*

(6) *M. Semprōnius Rutilus*, one of Caesar's officers.

Sēna, -ae, f., *Sena*, a town in Umbria in northeastern Italy, near which Hasdrubal was defeated and killed in 207 B.C.

senātor, -ōris, [cf. senex], m., SENATOR.

senātōrius, -a, -um, [senātor], adj., *of a senator*, SENATORIAL.

senātus, -ūs, [senex], m., *council of elders*, SENATE. senātūs cōnsultum, *decree of the senate.*

Seneca, -ae, m., *Seneca*, family name of *L. Annaeus Seneca*, a celebrated Stoic philosopher and writer, tutor of the Emperor Nero.

senex, senis, comp. senior, adj., *old, aged.* As subst., m., *old man.* Comp. as subst., senior, -ōris, m., *elder, elderly man.*

sēnī, -ae, -a, [sex], distr. num. adj., *six each.*

senior, -ōris, comp. of senex. (SENIOR.)

Senonēs, -um, [Kel., from genos = senex ?], m. pl., a strong Gallic state south of the Matrona (*Marne*); chief city Agedincum, now *Sens.* See map opp. p. 155.

sententia, -ae, [cf. sentiō], f., *opinion, judgment, will, desire; thought, purpose; purport;* SENTENCE, *saying, sentiment, vote.* sententiam dīcere, *to express an opinion.*

sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *perceive, feel; hear, see, perceive; think, believe; know; agree in opinion.* (SENSE.)

sentis, -is, m., *thorn, brier.*

sēparātim, [sēparātus], adv., SEPARATELY, *apart.*

sēparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [sē + parō], SEPARATE, *divide.*

sepeliō, -īre, sepelīvī, sepultus, *bury; ruin, overwhelm, destroy.*

septem, indecl. num. adj., SEVEN.

septentriō, -ōnis, [septem + triō, *plow-ox*], m., generally pl., **septentriōnēs**, **-um**, lit., *the seven plow-oxen*, the seven stars forming the constellation of the Great Bear, hence *the North.*

Septimius, Septi'mī, m., *Septimius*, gentile name of *L. Septimius*, a centurion under Pompey during the war with the pirates.

septimus, -a, -um, [septem], num. adj., *the seventh.*

septingentēsimus, -a, -um, [septingentī], adj., *the seven hundredth.*

septingentī, -ae, -a, or **DCC**, [septem + centum], num. adj., *seven hundred.*

septuāgēsimus, -a, -um, [septuāgintā], num. adj., *seventieth.*

septuāgintā, indecl. num. adj., *seventy.*

sepulcrum, -ī, [cf. sepeliō], n., *burial-place, grave, tomb*, SEPULCHER.

sepultūra, -ae, [sepeliō], f., *burial, funeral.*

Sēquana, -ae, m., *the Seine*, the principal river of northern France. See map opp. p. 155.

Sēquanī, -ōrum, m. pl., a Gallic state west of the Jura; chief city Vesontio, now *Besançon.* In their strifes with the Aedui they secured the aid of Ariovistus, who made them subject to himself. Cf. p. 210, ll. 3 ff., and p. 213, ll. 1 ff.

Sēquanus, -a, -um, adj., *Sequanian, of the Sequani.* As subst., Sēquanus, -ī, m., *a Sequanian.*

sequor, -ī, secūtus sum, dep., *follow, attend; come after, come next; pursue; comply with, adopt, conform to.* (SEQUENCE.)

Ser., with proper names = Servius, a Roman forename.

Sergius, -a, the name of a Roman gens. In this book are mentioned:

(1) *M. Sergius Catilīna*, the great-grandfather of the conspirator (2). See p. 86.

(2) *L. Sergius Catilīna.* See Catilīna.

sēriō, [sērius], adv., *in earnest*, SERIOUSLY.

sermō, -ōnis, m., *speech, talk, conversation; remark; discussion; language.* (SERMON.)

serō, serere, sēvī, sātus, *sow, plant.*

serpēns, -entis, [part. of serpō, *crawl*], m., SERPENT, *snake.*

Servīlius, -a, gentile name of *Cn. Servīlius Geminus*, consul in 217 B.C., killed at Cannae.

servīlis, -e, [servus], adj., SERVILE.

serviō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [servus], *be a servant, be enslaved*, SERVE; *be devoted, labor for, aim at, comply with.*

servitūs, -ūtis, [servus], f., *slavery*, SERVITUDE, *subjection.*

Servius, Servī, m., *Servius.* See Tullius.

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *save*, PRESERVE; *keep, retain; save up; watch, keep watch.*

servulus, -ī, [dim. of servus], m., *young slave, slave.*

servus, -ī, [cf. servō, *save*], m., *slave*, *servant*.

sescentēsimus, -a, -um, [sex, cf. centum], adj., *the six hundredth*.

sēsē, acc. and abl. of suī.

sēstertius, -a, -um, [= sēmis, tertius], adj., *two and a half*. As subst., sēstertius, -ī, m., (sc. nummus), *a sesterce*, a small silver coin, originally 2½ *asses*, = 5 cents. See note to p. 65, l. 4.

sētius, adv. in comp. degree, *less*. nihilō sētius, *none the less*, *nevertheless*.

seu, see sīve.

sevērē, comp. sevērius, sup. sevērissimē, [sevērus], adv., *gravely*, *seriously*, SEVERELY.

sevēritās, -ātis, [sevērus], f., *strictness*, SEVERITY.

sevērus, -a, -um, adj., *serious*, *grave*, *stern*; *gloomy*. (SEVERE.)

sex, or **VI**, indecl. num. adj., *six*.

sexāgēsimus, -a, -um, [sexāgintā], adj., *the sixtieth*.

sexāgintā, or **LX**, indecl. num. adj., *sixty*.

sexcentī, -ae, -a, [sex + centum], num. adj., *six hundred*.

Sextīlis, -e, [sextus], adj., *of the sixth month*, counting from March, afterwards called *Augustus*, in honor of the emperor.

Sextius, Sextī, m., a Roman gentile name. In this book refers to:

(1) *P. Sextius Baculus*. See Baculus.

(2) *T. Sextius*, one of Caesar's officers.

sextus, -a, -um, [sex], adj., *sixth*.

sī, conj., *if*, *since*, *when*, *whether*; *would that*. quod sī, *but if*, *now if*. sī quis and quī, see quis and quī.

sibi, see suī.

sīc, adv., *so*, *in this way*, *thus*. ut . . . sīc, *as . . . so*. sīc . . . ut, *so . . . that*; *just as*.

siccitās, -ātis, [siccus, *dry*], f., *dryness*, *drouth*.

siccō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [siccus], *make dry*, *dry*; *exhaust*. (DESICCATE.)

siccus, -a, -um, adj., *dry*. As subst., siccum, -ī, n., *dry land*, *a dry place*.

Sicilia, -ae, f., *Sicily*.

Siculus, -a, -um, adj., *Sicilian*. As subst., Siculī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Sicilians*.

sīcut or **sīcutī**, [sīc + utī], adv., *just as*, *as*.

sīdus, sīderis, n., *constellation*. (SIDERIAL.)

signifer, -ferī, [signum, cf. ferō], m., *standard bearer*.

significātiō, -ōnis, [significō], f., *sign*, *signal*; *demeanor*. significātiōnem facere, *give notice*, *convey information*. (SIGNIFICATION.)

significō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [signum, + FAC in faciō], *show*, *intimate*, *announce*; *mean*, SIGNIFY.

signō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [signum], *mark*, *designate*; *mark with a seal*, *seal*, *adorn*; *point out*, *indicate*. (SIGN.)

signum, -ī, n., *mark*, SIGN; *military standard*, *ensign*; *signal*; *seal of a letter*; *statue*, *figure*. See p. xxiv.

silentium, silentī, [sileō], n., SILENCE.

Sīlēnus, -ī, [Σειληνός], m., *Sīlēnus*, a Greek historian, who wrote of the wars of Hannibal.

silva, -ae, f., *wood*, *forest*. (SILVAN, PENNSYLVANIA.)

silvestris, -e, [silva], adj., *wooded, woody.*

Silvia, -ae, f., *Silvia.* See Rhea.

Silvius, Silvī, m., *Silvius*, mythical king of Alba Longa. See under Rōmulus, Proca.

similis, -e, adj., *like, resembling*, SIMILAR.

similiter, [similis], adv., *in like manner*, SIMILARLY.

similitūdō, -ūdinis, [similis], f., *similarity, resemblance.* (SIMILITUDE.)

simul, adv., *at the same time, at once, together; as soon as.* simul . . . simul, *both . . . and, partly . . . partly.* simul atque (ac), *as soon as.*

simulācrum, -ī, [simulō], n., *likeness, statue.*

simulātiō, -ōnis, [cf. simulō], f., *pretense, shamming, deceit.* (SIMULATION.)

simul atque, see simul.

simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [similis], *imitate, copy; pretend, feign*, SIMULATE.

simultās, -ātis, [simul], f., *hostile encounter; rivalry, hatred.*

sīn, [sī + nē], conj., *if however, but if.*

sine, prep. with abl. only, *without.*

singillātim, [singulī], adv., *one by one, individually*, SINGLY.

singulāris, -e, [singulī], adj., *one by one, single, solitary; remarkable, unparalleled.* (SINGULAR.)

singulī, -ae, -a, adj., *one to each, one by one, one apiece; separate, single; individual.*

sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., *left, on the left;* in the language of the Roman augurs, *favorable, auspicious;* of the Greek augurs, *perverse, unlucky.* (SINISTER.)

sinistra, -ae, [sc. manus], f., *left hand.* sub sinistrā, *on the left.*

sinistrōrsus, [sinister + vorsus = versus], adv., (turned) *to the left.*

situs, -a, -um, [part of sinō], adj., *placed, set, lying, situated; laid out; dependent.*

situs, -ūs, [sinō], m., *situation, location*, SITE.

sīve or seu, [sī + ve], conj., *or if.* sīve (seu) . . . sīve (seu), *if . . . or if, whether . . . or, either . . . or, it might be . . . or.*

sōbrius, -a, -um, [sō = sē- + ēbrius, *drunk*], adj., SOBER; *moderate, temperate; sensible.*

socer, -erī, m., *father-in-law.*

sociālis, -e, [socius], adj., *allied, confederate.* (SOCIAL.)

societās, -ātis, [socius], f., SOCIETY; *alliance, confederacy.*

socius, socī, m., *comrade, ally.* (ASSOCIATE.)

sōl, sōlis, m., *the sun.* ad orientem sōlem, *towards the east.* ad occidentem sōlem, *towards the west.* (SOLAR.)

Sōl, Sōlis, m., *the Sun*, as a god.

soleō, -ēre, solitus sum, semi-dep., *be wont, be accustomed.*

sōlitūdo, -inis, [sōlus], f., SOLITUDE, *wilderness, waste.*

solitus, -a, -um, [part. of soleō], adj., *accustomed, usual, habitual.*

solium, solī, n., *seat, throne; rule.*

sollers, -ertis, [sollus, *whole*, + ars], adj., *skilful, clever.*

sollicitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [sollicitus], *disturb, move, shake; rouse, excite, urge;* SOLICIT, *tempt.*

solum, -ī, n., *lowest part, ground.* agrī solum, *the bare ground.*

sōlum, [acc. of sōlus], adv., *only.* nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam, *not only . . . but also.*

sōlus, -a, -um, gen. sōlīus, adj., *alone, only, single,* SOLE; SOLITARY, *forsaken.*

solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus, [sē- + luō], *loosen, unbind; untie, let down; unseal, open; release; divide; pay.* nāvem solvere, or solvere (sc. nāvem), *to set sail.* (DISSOLVE, SOLUTION.)

somnus, -ī, m., *sleep; inactivity, idleness.* (SOMNOLENCE.)

sonus, -ī, m., *noise, sound.* (SONOROUS.)

soror, -ōris, f., *sister.* soror ex mātre, *half-sister on the mother's side.* (SORORITY.)

sors, sortis, f., *lot, fate, destiny, decision by lot.*

sortior, -īrī, -ītus sum, [sors], dep., *cast lots; assign by lot, obtain by lot.*

Sōsilus, -ī, [Σώσιλος], m., *Sosilus*, a Greek historian.

Sp. = Spurius, a Roman forename.

spatium, spatī, n., SPACE, *room, distance; race-course, track; space of time; interval, period, duration.* ā tantō spatiō, *at so great a distance, so far off.*

speciēs, gen. wanting, acc. -em, abl. -ē, f., *look, appearance; semblance, pretense.* ad speciem, *for show.* (SPECIES, SPECIOUS.)

spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of speciō], *look at, behold, watch, see; look to, aim at; tend, be directed; face, lie; judge.* (SPECTACLE, SPECTATOR.)

speculātor, -ōris, [speculor], m., *spy, scout.* (SPECULATOR.)

speculātōrius, -a, -um, [speculātor], adj., *spying, scouting;* speculātōrium nāvigium, *spy-boat.*

speculor, -ārī, -ātus, [cf. specula, *watch-tower*], dep., *spy out, reconnoiter.*

spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [cf. spēs], *hope, expect.*

spēs, speī, f., *hope, expectation.* in spem venīre, *to entertain the hope.*

Spinther, -eris, m., *Spinther*, surname of *P. Cornēlius Lentulus Spinther*, one of Pompey's supporters.

spīritus, -ūs, [cf. spīrō, *breathe*], m., *breath, air;* pl., *haughtiness, pride.* (SPIRIT.)

splendor, -ōris, m., *brightness,* SPLENDOR; *magnificence, excellence.*

spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [spolium], *strip, bare; rob, pillage, plunder,* DESPOIL.

spolium, spolī, n., *skin, hide; arms* stripped from an enemy, *booty,* SPOIL.

spondeō, -ēre, spopondī, spōnsus, *promise, give assurance, vow; agree.* (SPONSOR.)

sponte, abl., and spontis, gen., only forms in use of an obsolete nom. spōns, f., *of one's own accord, willingly, voluntarily.* suā sponte, *by their own influence.*

Spūrinna, -ae, m., *Vestritius Spurinna*, the name of an augur who warned Julius Caesar to beware the Ides of March.

Spurius, Spurī, m., *Spurius*, a Roman forename.

Staberius, Stabe'rī, m., *Staberius*, gentile name of *L. Staberius.*

stabiliō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [stabilis], *make steady; fix.*

stabilitās, -ātis, [stabilis], f., *steadiness*, *firmness*, STABILITY.

stabulum, -ī, [stō], n., *stall*, STABLE, *enclosure*.

statim, [cf. stō], adv., *forthwith*, *immediately*, *instantly*.

statiō, -ōnis, [cf. stō], f., *outpost*, *picket*, *guard*. in statiōne, *on guard*. (STATION.)

Statius, Statī, m., *Statius Murcus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

statua, -ae, [cf. sistō], f., *image*, STATUE.

statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *set up; erect*, *build; determine*, *resolve; judge*, *think; determine on*, *appoint*. (STATUTE.)

statūra, -ae, [cf. stō], f., *height*, *size*, STATURE.

status, -ūs, [stō], m., *station*, *position*, *place; posture*, *attitude; condition*, *rank*. (STATUS.)

stercus, -oris, n., *dung*, *manure*.

sterilis, -e, adj., *barren*, STERILE.

stimulus, -ī, *goad;* a military device consisting of sharp points of iron fastened to blocks of wood, which were sunk in the ground, *caltrops*. (STIMULUS.)

stīpendiārius, -a, -um, [stīpendium], adj., *tributary*, *subject to tribute*. (STIPENDIARY.) As subst., stīpendiārīī, -ōrum, m. pl., *tributaries*, *dependents*.

stīpendium, -pendī, n., *tribute; income*, *salary*, STIPEND, *pay; military service*, *campaign*. stīpendium merēre, stīpendia facere, *to serve* in the army.

stīpes, -itis, m., *post*, *stake*.

stirps, stirpis, f., *stock*, *trunk; offspring*, *son; race*, *family; origin*, *beginning*. (EXTIRPATE.)

stō, stāre, stetī, status, *stand*, *stand firm*, *abide by*, *remain*.

stolidus, -a, -um, adj., *slow*, *dull*, *stupid*. As subst., *fools*. (STOLID.)

strāgēs, -is, f., *destruction*, *defeat*, *massacre; wreck*.

strāmentum, -ī, [sternō, *strew*], n., *straw; pack-saddle*.

strangulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *choke*, *suffocate*, STRANGLE.

strēnuē, [strēnuus], adv., *vigorously*, *actively*, STRENUOUSLY.

strēnuus, -a, -um, adj., *quick*, *active*, *vigorous*, STRENUOUS.

strepitus, -ūs, m., *din*, *clash*, *crash; applause*.

strictus, see stringō.

stringō, -ere, strīnxī, strictus, *draw tight; graze; strip off;* of a sword, *draw*. (STRICT.)

struō, struere, strūxī, strūctus, *place together*, *arrange; make*, CONSTRUCT, *build*.

studeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *be eager for*, *strive for*, *give attention to; eagerly desire*, *strive*. novīs rēbus or imperiīs studēre, *to desire a revolution*.

studiōsē, [studiōsus], adv., *eagerly*, *zealously*. (STUDIOUSLY.)

studiōsus, -a, -um, [studium], adj., *eager*, *zealous*, *anxious*, STUDIOUS; *attached*, *devoted*.

studium, studī, [studeō], n., *application*, *zeal*, *eagerness*, *endeavor;* STUDY, *pursuit; good-will*, *affection*.

stultē, [stultus], adv., *foolishly*.

stultitia, -ae, [stultus], f., *foolishness*, *simplicity*. (Cf. STULTIFY.)

suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsus, *advise*, *exhort*, *urge*, PERSUADE.

suāvitās, -ātis, [suāvis], f., *sweetness*, *pleasantness*. (SUAVITY.)

sub, prep. with acc. and abl., *under:*
(1) With acc., after verbs of motion, *under, below, towards, up to; until; after.*
(2) With abl., *under, beneath, at the foot of; during; subject to.*
In composition, *under, beneath; somewhat, a little; secretly.*

subdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, [sub + dūcō], *lead up, lead away, carry off, draw off, transfer; steal, hide; haul up.*

subeō, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -itus [sub + eō], *go under; undergo; come up, go up (to), ascend, approach; encounter; submit to.* umerīs subīre, *carry on the shoulders.*

subiciō (subjiciō), -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [sub + iaciō], *throw from beneath; expose; make* SUBJECT.

subiectus, -a, -um, [part. of subiciō], adj., *lying near, adjacent.* (SUBJECT.)

subigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus, [sub + agō], *drive up, bring up; cultivate, work; conquer, subjugate; force, compel; come up.*

subitō, [subitus], adv., *suddenly, on a sudden, at once.*

subitus, -a, -um, adj., *sudden, unexpected, surprising.*

sublātus, part. of tollō.

sublevō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [sub + levō], *lift up, support, raise; lighten; relieve, assist, encourage.*

subluō, -luere, —, -lūtus, *wash, flow at the base of.*

subrīdeō, -rīdēre, -rīsī, —, [sub + rīdeō], *smile.*

subruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutus, [sub + ruō, *fall*], *undermine.*

subsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, [sub + sequor], dep., *follow close upon, follow after, follow up.* (SUBSEQUENT.)

subsidium, -si'dī, [cf. subsīdō], n., *reserve, auxiliaries; relief, help, resource, remedy.* (SUBSIDIARY.)

subsiliō, -īre, -uī, —, *leap up.*

subsistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, [sub + sistō, *set*], *halt, make a stand; remain; stand firm, oppose.*

subsum, -esse, —, [sub + sum], *be under, be behind; be at hand; be concealed, be in reserve.*

subtrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctus, [sub + trahō], *carry off; withdraw, take away.* (SUBTRACT.)

subvectiō, -tiōnis, [subvehō], f., *transportation, conveyance.*

subvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus, [sub + vehō], *carry up; bring up.*

subveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, [sub + veniō], *come to help, assist, relieve.* (SUBVENTION.)

succēdō, -ere, successī, successus, [sub + cēdō], *come under, enter; follow,* SUCCEED to another's place, *relieve; approach, draw near, advance; be* SUCCESSFUL.

succendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus, [sub, cf. candeō], *set fire to.*

successus, -ūs, [cf. succēdō], m., *advance; good result,* SUCCESS.

succīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus, [sub + caedō], *cut down.*

succumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, —, [sub + cumbō], *lie down; submit,* SUCCUMB.

succurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursus, [sub + currō], *run under, run to the help of, aid.* (SUCCOR.)

sucus, -ī, m., *juice.* (SUCCULENT.)

sūdor, -ōris, m., *sweat; hard labor.*

sudis, sudis, f., *stake.*

Suēba, -ae, [Suēbus, cf. Suēbī], f., *Swabian woman.*

Suēbī, -ōrum, [Ger., = 'Nomads'], m. pl., *the Swabians*, a powerful German people of uncertain location. Cf. Mommsen, *Hist. of Rome*, ed. of 1895, vol. v., p. 31, N. See map opp. p. 155.

Suessiōnēs, -um, m. pl., a Belgic state north of the Matrona (*Marne*); the name survives in *Soissons*. See map opp. p. 155.

suffectus, part. of sufficiō.

sufficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [sub + faciō], *dip, dye; choose as substitute; be sufficient*, SUFFICE.

suffīgō, -fīgere, —, fīxus, [sub + fīgō], *fasten, attach, affix.* crucī suffīgere, *to crucify.* (SUFFIX.)

suffodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossus, [sub + fodiō], *undermine; stab underneath.*

suffrāgātor, -ōris, [suffrāgor], m., *favorer, supporter.*

suffrāgium, -frāgī, [suffrāgor], n., *voting-tablet, ballot, vote; decision, judgment;* pl., *the polls.* suffrāgium ferre, *to vote.* (SUFFRAGE.)

suī (gen.), dat. sibĭ, acc. and abl. sē, strengthened form sēmet, reflex. pron., sing. and pl., *himself, herself, itself, themselves, him, her, them.*

Sulla, -ae, m., *Sulla*, surname of:

(1) *Lūcius Cornēlius Sulla;* see note to p. 59, l. 2.

(2) *Faustus Cornēlius Sulla*, son of the dictator.

(3) *P. Cornēlius Sulla*, nephew of the dictator.

Sullānus, -a, -um, adj., *of Sulla, by Sulla.* As subst., Sullānī, -ōrum, m., pl., *adherents of Sulla.*

Sulpicius, -a, name of a Roman gens, including *Ser. Sulpicius*, a Roman senator; see also **Blithō**, Galba, Rūfus.

sum, esse, fuī, fut. part. futūrus, fut. inf. fore or futūrus esse, imp subj. sometimes forem, *be, exist, live; be true, be so;* with gen., *belong to, be the part of, be the duty of;* with dat., *be for, serve for;* with abl., *have, possess.*

summa, -ae, [summus, sc. rēs], f., *top, summit; total, whole amount, whole;* SUM *of money; chief command, supremacy; chief point.* summae imperī praeesse, *to hold the chief command.*

summē, [summŭs], adv., *very greatly.*

sumministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [sub + ministrō, *serve*], *supply, provide, furnish.*

summittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *let down, lower; furnish, supply; send secretly; send as reënforcement.*

summoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, [sub+moveō], *drive back, remove.*

summus, see superus.

sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, [sub + emō], *take, take in hand; eat, drink, consume; choose, select; take on*, ASSUME; *claim; buy, purchase; enter upon, begin.* dē aliquō supplicium sūmere, *to inflict punishment on any one.*

sūmptuārius, -a, -um, [sūmptus], adj., *relating to expense*, SUMPTUARY.

sūmptuōsus, -a, -um, [sūmptus], adj., *expensive, costly*, SUMPTUOUS.

sūmptus, -ūs, [sūmō], m., *outlay, expense, cost, charge.*

supellex, supellectilis, f., *domestic utensils, furniture.*

super, prep. with acc. and abl.;

(1) With acc., *over, above, upon, upwards.*
(2) With abl., *over, upon, beyond, in addition to; during, at.*

superbē, [superbus], adv., *haughtily, proudly, superciliously.*

superbia, -ae, [superbus], f., *haughtiness, arrogance, pride.*

superbiō, -īre, —, —, [superbus], *be haughty, take pride.*

superbus, -a, -um, [super], adj., *proud, haughty.* (SUPERB.) As subst., **Superbus**, -ī, m., surname of *Tarquinius Superbus*, seventh king of Rome.

superior, -ius, comp. of superus.

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [superus], *go over, rise above, overtop; pass over; sail by, pass round; exceed; be left over; overcome, defeat, excel.*

supersedeō, -sedēre, -sēdī, -sessus, [super + sedeō, *sit*], *refrain from.* (SUPERSEDE.)

superstes, -itis, [super, cf. stō], adj., *present; surviving, alive.*

supersum, -esse, -fuī, [super + sum], *remain, be left; survive.*

superus, -a, -um, comp. superior, sup. summus or suprēmus, [super], adj., *above, on high.* Mare Superum, see mare. As subst., superī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the gods above, gods of heaven.* Comp., *higher, upper*, SUPERIOR; of time, *former, earlier;* as superiōre nocte, *the previous night;* of age, *greater.* As subst., superior, -ōris, m., *a* SUPERIOR. Sup., *highest; greatest, very great; most important, chief; all together, all;* often denoting a part, as summus mōns, *the top of the height.* As subst., summum, -ī, n., *top, end.*

supervenīō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, [super + veniō], *come up, arrive; come upon, light upon.*

supervīvō, -vīvere, -vīxī, —, [super + vīvō], *outlive, survive.*

suppetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītus, [sub + petō], *be at hand; hold out.*

supplēmentum, -ī, [suppleō], n., *reënforcements.* (SUPPLEMENT.)

supplex, -icis, [sub + plicō], adj., *kneeling in entreaty, begging,* SUPPLIANT. As subst., m., *a* SUPPLIANT.

supplicātiō, -ōnis, [cf. supplicō], f., *thanksgiving.* (SUPPLICATION.)

suppliciter, [supplex], adv., *humbly,* SUPPLIANTLY.

supplicium, -pli'cī, [supplex], n., *kneeling, bowing down; entreaty, petition,* SUPPLICATION; *execution; punishment of death.*

supportō, -āre, -āvī, —, [sub + portō], *carry up, bring up, convey.* (SUPPORT.)

suprā, adv. and prep.:
(1) As adv., *on the top, above; before, formerly; beyond, more.*
(2) As prep. with acc., *above, over; beyond, more than.*

suprēmus, see superus.

surgō, surgere, surrēxī or subrēxī, —, [sub + regō], *rise, get up, stand up; arise, grow.*

suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [subs + capiō], *take, catch; receive, admit; undertake, take up; assume, enter upon, begin, incur, succeed to; acknowledge, recognize.* bellum suscipere, *begin war.*

suspectus, -a, -um, [part. of suspiciō], adj., *subject to suspicion, mistrusted,* SUSPECTED.

suspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, [sub + speciō], *look upwards,*

look up at; admire, esteem, honor.

suspīciō, -ōnis, [cf. verb suspicor], f., *mistrust, distrust,* SUSPICION.

suspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [cf. suspiciō], dep., *mistrust,* SUSPECT; *suppose, believe.*

sustentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of sustineō], *sustain, endure, bear, hold out.*

sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, [sub + teneō], *hold up, keep up,* SUSTAIN; *lift, carry; hold in check, restrain; support, maintain; hold out, endure; withstand.*

sustulī, see tollō.

suus, -a, -um, [cf. suī], adj. pron., *his, her, its, their,* with or without *own; characteristic, peculiar; just, due, appropriate; favorable, advantageous;* with clēmentia, *his usual, his well-known showing of mercy.* As subst., suī, m. pl., *his, their friends, people, party, side, subjects;* suum, -ī, n., *their standing;* sua, n. pl., *his, her, their property, possessions.* sē suaque, *themselves and their possessions.*

Syphāx, -ācis, m., *Syphax,* a prince of Numidia, who at first sided with the Romans in the second Punic War, but subsequently allied himself with the Carthaginians.

Syrācūsae, -ārum, f., *Syracuse,* the wealthiest and largest city of Sicily, situated on the eastern coast. See map opp. p. 1.

Syria, -ae, [Συρία], f., *Syria,* a country in Asia, lying between the Euphrates and the Mediterranean Sea. See map opp. p. 115.

Syriacus, -a, -um, [Syria], adj., *of* or *belonging to Syria, Syrian.*

T

T., with proper names = Titus, a Roman forename.

tabella, -ae, [dim. of tabula], f., *small board, little picture; ballot, letter, epistle.*

tabellārius, -ārī, [tabella], m., *letter-carrier, messenger.*

tabernāculum, -ī, [cf. taberna, *hut*], n., *tent, hut.* (TABERNACLE.)

tabula, -ae, f., *board, writing-*TABLET; *list.* pīcta tabula, *a painted tablet, painting, picture.*

taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *be silent; say nothing of, pass over in silence.* (TACITURN.)

tacitus, -a, -um, [part. of taceō], adj., *silent.* (TACIT.)

taedium, taedī, [taedet], n., *weariness, loathing, disgust.* (TEDIUM.)

talea, -ae, f., *rod, bar.*

talentum, -ī, n., TALENT, a weight and a sum of money equal to about $1132 in gold.

tālis, -e, adj., *such, of such a kind; the following, such as this.* tālis . . . quālis, *of such a kind . . . as.*

tam, adv., *in such a degree, as much, so, so much.*

tamen, adv., *notwithstanding, nevertheless, yet, however.*

Tamesis, Tamesis, m., *the Tamesis,* modern THAMES.

tametsī, [tamen + etsī], conj., *although, though.*

tamquam, [tam + quam], conj., *so as, like as, as if; just as if.*

Tanaquil, -īlis, f., *Tanaquil.*

tandem, [tam], adv., *at length, finally;* in questions, *pray, now.* (TANDEM.)

tantō, see tantus.

tantopere, [= tantō opere], adv., *so earnestly, with so great effort.*

tantulus, -a, -um, [dim. of tantus], adj., *so very small, so slight, so trifling.*

tantum, [tantus], adv., *so much, so greatly; only so much, only, merely.* tantum quod, *only just.*

tantundem, [tantus], adv., *just as much.*

tantus, -a, -um, adj., *so great, so large, such, so important.* tantus . . . quantus, *so great, so much, only so much . . . as.* As subst., tantum, -ī, n., *so much;* in gen. of price, tantī, *of so much value, worth so much; of so great account, so great;* abl. of degree of difference, tantō, *by so much, so much.* Cf. quantus.

tardē, comp. tardius, sup. tardissimē, [tardus], adv., *slowly,* TARDILY.

tarditās, -ātis, [tardus], f., *slowness,* TARDINESS.

tardō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [tardus], *check, impede, hinder.* (RETARD.)

tardus, -a, -um, comp. tardior, sup. tardissimus, adj., *slow, sluggish,* TARDY; *irresolute; late.*

Tarentīnus, -a, -um, adj., *of Tarentum, Tarentine.* As subst., Tarentīnī, -ōrum, m. pl., *inhabitants of Tarentum, Tarentines.*

Tarentum, -ī, n., *Tarentum,* a celebrated and powerful city of southern Italy, situated in Calabria, on the Gulf of Tarentum. See map inside front cover.

Tarpeia, -ae, f., *Tarpeia,* name of a Roman maiden who opened the Roman citadel to the Sabines.

Tarpeius, -a, -um, [Tarpeia], adj., *of Tarpeia, Tarpeian;* mōns Tarpeius, *the Tarpeian Rock* or *Hill* (= mōns Capitōlīnus).

Tarquinius, -i'nī, m., *Tarquinius, Tarquin,* the name of a family in the early history of Rome. In this book are mentioned:

(1) *Tarquinius Prīscus,* the fifth king of Rome.

(2) *Tarquinius Superbus,* the seventh king of Rome.

(3) *L. Tarquinius Collātīnus,* husband of Lucretia.

Tarquiniī, -ōrum, m. pl., *Tarquinii,* a town in southern Etruria, about forty-five miles northwest of Rome.

Tauroïs, -entis, Gk. acc. -enta, m., *Tauroïs,* a town southeast of Massilia, modern TARENTE.

taurus, -ī, m., *bull.* (TAURINE.)

Taurus, -ī, [Ταῦρος], m., *Taurus,* a range of mountains in the southeastern part of Asia Minor.

Taximagulus, -ī, m., *Taximagulus,* a chief of the Britons.

Tectosagēs, -um, m. pl., *the Tectosages,* a Gallic tribe, living in 'the Province.'

tēctum, -ī, [tegō], n., *building, shelter, house; covering, roof.*

tegimentum, -ī, [cf. tegō], n., *covering.*

tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus, *cover over; hide, conceal; keep secret; defend, guard.*

tēlum, -ī, n., *dart, spear.*

temerārius, -a, -um, [temere], adj., *rash, heedless, reckless.*

temere, adv., *blindly, rashly; without good reason.*

temeritās, -ātis, [cf. temere], f., *rashness, hastiness.* (TEMERITY.)

tēmō, -ōnis, m., *pole* of a chariot

temperantia, -ae, [temperāns, *temperate*], f., *moderation, self-control.* (TEMPERANCE.)

temperātus, -a, -um, [perf. part. of temperō], comp. temperātior, adj., TEMPERATE, *mild.*

temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [cf. tempus], *control one's self, refrain, forbear.*

tempestās, -ātis, [tempus], f., *time, season; storm,* TEMPEST; *disturbance, calamity.*

templum, -ī, n., *sacred enclosure;* TEMPLE, *shrine.*

temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of tendō], *handle; try, attempt; attack, assail; try to win over;* TEMPT, *tamper with.*

tempus, -oris, n., *time, period; opportunity, season; occasion, circumstances.* in reliquum tempus, *for the future.* omnī tempore, *always.* tempŏris causā, *having regard to circumstances, insincerely.* (TEMPORAL, TEMPORARY.)

tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentus or tēnsus, *spread out;* of a snare, *lay; offer, present; go, march; strive;* EXTEND, *reach.*

tenebrae, -ārum, f. pl., *darkness, gloom; lurking-places.*

teneō, -ēre, -uī, —, *hold, grasp; keep in, restrain; bind; take in, understand; keep; possess; guard, defend;* of a course, *keep, hold.* ventus adversum tenet, *the wind blows the wrong way.* sē tenēre, *to keep one's self, to remain.* memoriā tenēre, *to remember.*

tener, -era, -erum, comp. -ior, sup. tenerrimus, adj., *tender, young.*

tentō or **temptō**, -āre, **-āvī**, -ātus, [intens. of tendō], *handle, touch, try, essay; try to win over.*

tenuis, -e, [cf. tendō], adj., *meager, slim; slight, trifling.* (TENUOUS.)

tenuiter, [tenuis], adv., *thinly.*

ter, num. adv., *three times, thrice.* (TERCENTENARY.)

Terentius, -a, name of a Roman gens. See Varrō.

teres, teretis, [terō, *rub*], adj., *smooth; tapering.*

tergum, -ī, n., *back.* ā tergō, post tergum, *in the rear, on the rear.* terga vertere, *to flee.*

terminus, -ī, m., *boundary, limit, end.* (TERMINUS.)

ternī, -ae, -a, [ter], distr. num. adj., *three each, three apiece.*

terra, -ae, f., *earth; land, soil; territory, region.* terrā, *on land, by land.* (TERRA FIRMA, TERRESTRIAL.)

terrēnus, -a, -um, [terra], adj., *of earth, earthy.*

terreō, -ēre, -uī, territus, *frighten, alarm,* TERRIFY; *deter* by fear.

terrestris, -tre, [terra], adj., *of the earth, land.* (TERRESTRIAL.)

terribilis, -e, [terreō], adj., *frightful, dreadful,* TERRIBLE.

territō, -āre, —, —, [freq. of terreō], *frighten greatly, terrify.*

territōrium, -ōrī, [terra], n., *territory.*

terror, -ōris, [terreō], m., TERROR, *panic, fear; object of fear, cause of fear.*

tertiō, [tertius], adv., *for the third time.*

tertius, -a, -um, [cf. trēs], adj., *third.* (TERTIARY.)

testāmentum, -ī, [cf. testor], n., *will,* TESTAMENT.

testimōnium, -ōnī, [cf. testis], n., *witness, proof, evidence*, TESTIMONY; TESTIMONIAL.

testis, -is, m. and f., *witness*.

testor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [testis], dep., *call as witness, invoke; show, demonstrate; bear witness; make a will*.

testūdō, -inis, [cf. testa, *potsherd*], f., *tortoise, tortoise-shell; tortoise-shed*, a movable shed, of which there were many varieties, designed to afford protection to soldiers at work near the foot of the enemy's wall; *tortoise-cover, testudo*, a covering formed by the soldiers' shields held above their heads and overlapping so as to ward off weapons thrown down upon them from above.

Teutobodus, -ī, m., *Teutobodus*, chief of the *Teutones* defeated by Marius.

Teutonēs, -um, or **Teutonī**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Teutones*, a Germanic people who, in company with the Cimbri, invaded Italy, and were annihilated by Marius at Aquae Sextiae in 101 B.C. See Cimbrī, and p. 53, ll. 1 ff.

Theophanēs, -is, m., *Theophanes*, a follower of Pompey.

Thessalia, -ae, f., *Thessaly*.

Thraex, Thraecis, or **Thrāx**, Thrācis, adj., *Thracian*. As subst., m., *a Thracian*.

Ti., with proper names = **Tiberius**, a Roman forename.

Tiberis, -is, m., *the Tiber*.

tībīcen, -inis, [tībia, cf. canere], m., *piper, flute-player*.

Tīcīnus, -ī, m., *the Ticinus*, a river in Cisalpine Gaul, flowing into the Po, the scene of the first victory of Hannibal in Italy. See map inside front cover.

Tigurīnus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Tigur canton*. As subst., **Tigurīnī**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Tigurini*, one of the four divisions of the Helvetii.

timeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *fear, be afraid of; be afraid*.

timidus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, [cf. timeō], adj., *fearful, cowardly*, TIMID.

timor, -ōris, [cf. timeō], m., *fear, dread, alarm, apprehension; panic*. (TIMOROUS.)

Titūrius, -ūrī, m., *Quintus Titurius Sabīnus*, a lieutenant of Caesar, who rendered efficient service in the campaigns of B.C. 57 and 56; placed with Cotta in command of a legion and a half among the Eburones in 54, he was drawn into ambush by Ambiorix, and caused the destruction of the force.

titulus, -ī, m., *superscription, inscription*, TITLE; *title of honor, glory*.

toga, -ae, f., TOGA, *gown*.

tolerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bear, support, maintain; hold out*. (TOLERATE.)

tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus, *lift, raise; encourage, elate; rear; extol; remove, make way with; kill, destroy*.

Tolōsātēs, -ium, [Tolōsa], m. pl., *the inhabitants of Tolosa*, chief city of the Volcae Tectosages. See map opp. p. 155.

tonitrus, -ūs, m. pl., **tonitrūs**, m., and **tonitrua**, n., *thunder, thunder-peal*.

tonō, -āre, -uī, —, *resound, thunder*.

tormentum, -ī, [cf. torqueō, *twist*], n., *windlass;* as a military term, pl., *torsion-hurlers, engines of war, artillery*, general term for machines used to hurl stones, darts, and other missiles, the motive force of which was derived from the twisting of tensile materials; *torsion-missiles*, missiles thrown by the torsion-hurlers; *instrument of torture, rack; torture*, TORMENT, *suffering.*

Torquātus, see Mānlius.

torqueō, -ēre, torsī, tortus, *turn, twist; hurl;* TORTURE, *torment.*

torquis, -is, m., *necklace, collar.*

torreō, -ēre, -uī, tostus, *scorch, burn.* (TOAST.)

tot, indecl. num. adj., *so many.*

totidem, [tot], indecl. num. adj., *just as many, just so many.*

tōtus, -a, -um, gen. tōtīus, adj., *the whole, all, entire;* with adverbial force, *wholly, entirely.*

trabs, trabis, f., *beam, timber.*

tractō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [trahō], *draw, pull; handle, manage; treat.*

tractus, -ūs, [cf. trahō], m., *dragging, drawing out; track, course; stretch, extent.*

trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [trāns + dō], *give up, deliver, surrender, entrust; betray; transmit, report; teach.* (TRADITION.)

trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [trāns + dūcō], *lead across, transport, transfer; expose, dishonor.* (TRADUCE.)

trāgula, -ae, f., *lance, javelin.*

trahō, -ere, trāxī, trāctus, *draw, drag; attract, allure, influence; lead, carry; derive; detain.*

trāiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [trāns + iaciō], *throw across, lead across, transfer; penetrate, transfix; go over, pass over.* (TRAJECTORY.)

trāiectus, -ūs, [trāiciō], m., *passage, journey.*

trānō, -āre, -āvī, —, [trāns + nō, *swim*], *swim across, swim over.*

tranquillitās, -ātis, [tranquillus, *quiet*], f., *calm, stillness.* (TRANQUILLITY.)

trāns, prep. with acc. only, *across, over; beyond.* (TRANSPARENT.)

Trānsalpīnus, -a, -um, adj., *transalpine, beyond the Alps.*

trānscendō, -scendere, -scendī, —, [trāns + scandō], *climb across; board.* (TRANSCEND.)

trānseō, -īre, -iī or -īvī, -itus, [trāns + eō], *go over, go across; pass by, march through; be changed from.* (TRANSIT.)

trānsferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, [trāns + ferō], *bear across, transport;* TRANSFER; *ascribe, charge; put off.* (TRANSLATE.)

trānsfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxus, [trāns + fīgō], *fix, pierce through,* TRANSFIX.

trānsfodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus, [trāns + fodiō], *transfix, pierce.*

trānsfuga, -ae, m., *a deserter.*

trānsgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, *go over, go across, cross.*

trānsigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus, [trāns + agō], *stab, transfix; finish, settle; perform,* TRANSACT; *bring to an end, end; pass, spend.*

trānsiliō, -īre, -siluī, —, [trāns + saliō], *leap across, jump over.*

trānsitus, -ūs, [trāns, cf. eō], m., *going over, passage.* (TRANSIT.)

trānslātus, see trānsferō.

trānsmarīnus, -a, -um, [trāns + marīnus], adj., *beyond sea,* TRANSMARINE.

trānsmissus, -ūs, [trānsmittō], m., *crossing, passage; distance.*

trānsmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, [trāns + mittō], *send across, let pass; go across, traverse; entrust, commit.* (TRANSMIT.)

Trānspadānus, -a, -um, [trāns + Padum], adj., *across the Po,* TRANSPADINE.

trānsportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [trāns + portō], *carry over, take across, remove,* TRANSPORT.

trānstrum, -ī, [trāns], n., *cross-piece, cross-beam, timber.*

trānstulī, see **trānsferō**.

trānsversus, -a, -um, [trāns + versus], adj., *crosswise, cross, oblique; out of the way.* (TRANSVERSE.)

Trasumēnus, -ī, m., *Trasumenus,* a lake in Etruria, the scene of the defeat of Flaminius by Hannibal.

Trebia, -ae, m., a river in Cisalpine Gaul, flowing into the Po.

Trebōnius, Trebōnī, m., *Trebonius,* gentile name of two men in Caesar's army named *C. Trebōnius.*

trecentēsimus, -a, -um, [trecentī], adj., *three hundredth.*

trecentī, -ae, -a, or **CCC**, [trēs + centum], num. adj., *three hundred.*

tredecim, [trēs + decem], indecl. num., adj., *thirteen.*

trepidātiō, -ōnis, [trepidō], f., *alarm, confusion,* TREPIDATION.

trepidō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *be in confusion; tremble, waver.*

trēs, tria, gen. trium, or **III**, num. adj., *three.*

Trēverī, -ōrum, m. pl., a powerful Belgic people near the Rhine, north of the Mediomatrici; chief town Augusta Treverorum, now *Trier.*

Triārius, Triārī, m., *Triarius,* gentile name of *C. Triārius,* one of Pompey's followers.

Tribocēs, -um, or Tribocī, -ōrum, [Kel., = 'the very sweet'], m. pl., a German people between the Rhine and the Vosges Mountains. See map opp. p. 155.

tribūnal, -ālis, [tribūnus], n., *raised platform* for seats of magistrates, *judgment-seat,* TRIBUNAL.

tribūnus, -ī, [tribus], m., *head of a tribe, tribune.* tribūnus mīlitāris, *tribune of the soldiers,* six to a legion. See p. xxix. tribūnus plēbis, *tribune of the people.* Tribunes were first appointed in 494 B.C., after the first secession to the Sacred Mount. At first there were but two; afterwards the number was increased to five, and finally to ten. They were originally appointed to afford protection to the common people; and that they might be able to afford such protection, their persons were declared sacred and inviolable. They gradually acquired the right of vetoing any act which a magistrate might undertake during his term of office. They convoked the assembly of the tribes (*comitia tribūta*), and usually presided over it.

tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, [tribus], *assign, ascribe, concede; grant, pay, render, bestow; ascribe,* ATTRIBUTE; *yield;* of time, *spend, devote.* suae magnopere virtūtī tribuere, *to presume upon his valor.*

tribūtum, -ī, [tribus], n., *stated payment,* TRIBUTE.

trīcēsimus, -a, -um, [trīgintā], adj., *thirtieth.*

trichila, -ae, f., *arbor, summer-house.*

trīduum, -ī, [trēs + diēs], *n., space of three days, three days.*

triennium, -ennī, [trēs + annus], n., *space of three years, three years.* (TRIENNIAL.)

trigeminus, -a, -um, [trēs + geminus], adj., *born three at a birth.* As subst., **trigeminī**, -ōrum, m., pl., *triplets.*

trīgintā, or **XXX**, indecl. num. adj., *thirty.*

trīnī, -ae, -a, [trēs], distrib. num. adj., *three each, three by three; threefold, triple.*

Trinobantēs, -um, m., pl., *the Trinobantes*, a tribe of Britain.

tripertītō, [tri-, cf. ter + partītus], adv., *in three divisions.*

triplex, -icis, [trēs, cf. plicō, *fold*], adj., *threefold*, TRIPLE.

triquetrus, -a, -um, adj., *three-cornered, triangular.*

trirēmis, -e, [ter + rēmus], adj., *having three banks of oars.* As subst., **trirēmis**, -is, m., *vessel having three banks of oars*, TRIREME.

trīstis, -e, adj., *sad, sorrowful; gloomy, sullen; grave, austere.*

trīstitia, -ae, [trīstis], f., *sadness, dejection.*

triumphō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [triumphus], *celebrate a triumph*, TRIUMPH. **triumphāre dē aliquō**, *to celebrate a triumph in consequence of a victory over any one.*

triumphus, -ī, m., TRIUMPH, celebration of a victory by a triumphal entry into Rome.

triumvir, -virī, [trēs + vir], m., TRIUMVIR, one of three associates in office, especially one of three dictators to reorganize the state.

Troia, -ae, f., *Troy*, a city of Phrygia.

Troiānus, -a, -um, [Troia], adj., *of Troy, Trojan.* As subst., Troiānus, -ī, *a Trojan.*

Troucillus, -ī, see Valerius.

trucīdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [trux + caedō], *cut to pieces, slaughter, butcher; destroy, ruin.*

truncus, -ī, m., TRUNK of a tree.

trux, **trucis**, adj., *wild, savage, fierce.*

tū, tuī, pl. **vōs**, **vestrum**, pers. pron., THOU, *you.*

tuba, -ae, f., *trumpet.*

tueor, -ērī, **tūtus sum**, dep., *look at, gaze at; defend, protect.*

tulī, see ferō.

Tulingī, -ōrum, m., pl., a German tribe north of the Helvetii, across the Rhine. See map opp. p. 155.

Tullia, -ae, f., *Tullia*, the daughter of Servius Tullius.

Tullius, **Tullī**, m., *Tullius*, a Roman gentile name. In this book are mentioned:

(1) *Servius Tullius*, the sixth king of Rome.

(2) *M. Tullius Cicerō*. See Cicerō.

(3) *Q. Tullius Cicerō*. See Cicerō.

Tullus, -ī, m., *Tullus*, forename of *Tullus Hostīlius*, third king of Rome.

tum, adv., *then, at that time, in those times; thereupon; in that case; besides, moreover.* **cum . . . tum**, *both . . . and, not only . . . but also.*

tumultus, -ūs, m., *disturbance, confusion*, TUMULT, *uproar; uprising, rebellion.*

tumulus, -ī, m., *mound, hillock.*

tunc, adv., *then, at that time; accordingly, consequently.*

turba, -ae, f., *tumult, disturbance, commotion; crowd, throng.*

turbātē, [turbātus], adv., *in a disorderly manner.*

turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [turba], *be in confusion; throw into confusion*, DISTURB, *agitate.*

turbulentus, -a, -um, comp. turbulentior, sup. turbulentissimus, [turba], adj., *disturbed*, TURBULENT; *stormy, confused, troubled.*

turma, -ae, f., *troop, squadron.*

turmātim, [turma], adv., *by squadrons.*

Turonī, -ōrum, m., pl., a people on the Liger (*Loire*), west of the Bituriges; the name survives in *Tours* and *Touraine*. See map opp. p. 155.

turpis, -e, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *ugly; disgraceful, shameful, dishonorable.*

turpitūdō, -inis, [turpis], f., *baseness, disgrace, dishonor.* (TURPITUDE.)

turris, -is, f., *tower;* often = **turris** ambulātōria, *movable tower*, built on wheels so that it could be moved up to the wall of a besieged city. See INTROD. p. xliv. (TURRET.)

Tuscia, -ae, f., *Etruria, the Etruscan territory.*

Tusculum, -ī, n., *Tusculum*, an ancient town of Latium, near modern *Frascati*, about fifteen miles southeast of Rome on the foothills of the Alban Mountains.

tūtō, comp. tūtius, [tūtus], adv., *safely, without danger.*

tūtor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [tueor], dep., *watch, protect, defend.*

tūtor, -ōris, [tueor], m., *watcher, protector; guardian*, TUTOR.

tūtus, -a, -um, comp. tūtior, sup. tūtissimus, [part of tueor], adj., *guarded, safe, secure.* As subst., tūtum, -ī, n., *place of safety, safety, security.*

tuus, -a, -um, [tū], poss. pron., adj., *thy, thine; your, yours.*

tyrannis, -idis, [τυραννίς], f., *rule of a tyrant, tyranny, despotic rule.*

tyrannus, -ī, m., *monarch, absolute ruler; despot, tyrant.*

U

ūber, -eris, n., *teat, udder, breast.*

ubī, adv. and conj., *in which place, where; where?* As conj., *when.* ubi prīmum, *as soon as.*

Ubius, -a, -um, adj., *of the Ubii.* As subst., Ubiī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Ubii*, a people of Germany.

ubīque, [ubī + -que], adv., *in any place, everywhere.*

ulcīscor, -ī, ultus sum, dep., *avenge one's self on, punish; avenge.*

ūllus, -a, -um, gen. ūllīus, adj., *any.* As subst., ūllus, -īus, m., *any one, anybody.* ūllum, -īus, n., *anything.*

ulterior, -ius, [ultra], adj. in comp. degree, sup. ultimus, *farther, beyond, more remote* or *distant.* Sup., *farthest, most distant* or *remote; last; utmost, greatest.* Neu., ulterius, as adv., *beyond, farther; to a greater degree, more.* (ULTERIOR, ULTIMATE.)

ultimus, see **ulterior**.

ultrā, prep. with acc. only, *beyond, besides.* (ULTRAconservative.)

ultrō, adv., *to the farther side; besides, moreover, also; of one's own accord, voluntarily.* ultrō . . . citrōque, *to and fro, back and forth.*

ultus, see ulcīscor.

ululātus, -ūs, m., *yell, shriek, cry.*

Umbria, -ae, f., *Umbria*, a district in east central Italy. See map opp. p. 1.

umerus, -ī, m., *upper arm, shoulder.* (HUMERUS.)

umquam, adv., *at any time, ever.*

ūnā, [ūnus], adv., *at one and the same time; together, in company.* **ūnā cum**, *along with, together with.*

unde, adv., *from which place, whence; where; from whom, from which; where? on which side?*

ūndecim, or **XI**, [ūnus + decem], indecl. num. adj., *eleven.*

ūndecimus, -a, -um, [ūndecim], num. ord. adj., *eleventh.*

ūndēquīnquāgintā, [ūnus + dē + quīnquāgintā], indecl. num. adj., *forty-nine.*

ūndētrīcēsimus, -a, -um, [ūnus, dē, cf. trīgintā], adj., *the twenty-ninth.*

ūndēvīcēsimus, -a, -um, [ūnus, dē, cf. vīgintī], adj., *the nineteenth.*

ūndēvīgintī, [ūnus + dē + vīgintī], indecl. num. adj., *nineteen.*

undique, [unde + -que], adv., *from all sides, on all sides, everywhere.*

unguentum, -ī [ungō], n., *ointment.* (UNGUENT.)

unguis, -is, m., *nail.*

ūniversus, -a, -um, [ūnus + versus, from vertō], adj., *all together, all, the whole of, entire; general,* UNIVERSAL. As subst., **ūniversī**, ōrum, m., pl., *all the men together, the whole body, all together; all men.*

ūnus, -a, -um, gen. **ūnīus**, num. adj., *one; only one, only, sole; alone; one and the same.* Pl., **ūnī**, *alone, only.* **ūnō tempore**, *at one and the same time.* **ad ūnum omnēs**, *all to a man.*

urbānus, -a, -um, [urbs], adj., *of the city, in the city, in Rome.* As subst., **urbānī**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the citizens.* (URBAN.)

urbs, urbis, f., *a walled town, city;* often *the city, Rome.*

urgeō, urgēre, ursī, —, *press, push; press hard.* Pass., *be hard pressed.* (URGE.)

ūrīnātor, -ōris, m., *diver.*

ūrō, -ere, ussī, ūstus, *burn.*

ūrus, -ī, m., *wild ox.*

ūsque, adv., *all the way, as far as; continuously.* **ūsque ad**, *all the way to, as far as;* of time, *up to, until.* **ūsque eō**, *even so far as this, even to this degree.*

ūsūrpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ūsus + rapiō], *seize upon,* USURP, *make use of, enjoy.*

ūsus, see ūtor.

ūsus, -ūs, [ūtor], m., USE, *employment; experience, training, skill; custom, practice; intercourse, familiarity; control; necessity; advantage.* **ūsū** venīre, *to happen, to occur.* (See 40, *b* and 156.)

ut, utī, adv. and conj.;

(1) As adv., *as, just as; as for instance, seeing that, as if, on the supposition that;* of manner, *how, in what way, in what manner;* of place, *where.* **ut**

prīmum, *as soon as.* ut . . . ita, *as . . . so, while . . . still.*
(2) As conj., temporal, with indic., *when, as soon as;* with subj., of result, *that, so that;* of purpose, *in order that, that;* of concession, *though, although.*

utcumque, adv., *in what way soever, in one way or another, somehow.*

ūter, -tris, m., *bag of hide, leather bottle, skin.*

uter, utra, utrum, gen. **utrīus**, pron. adj., often used as subst., *which* of two, *whichever, which.*

uterque, -traque, -trumque, gen. utrīusque, [uter + -que], adj., *each, both.* As subst., uterque, utrīusque, m., *both, each.* Pl., utrīque, *both sides, both forces, both peoples.*

utī, see **ut**.

Utica, -ae, f., *Utica*, a town on the coast of Africa, about twenty-seven miles northwest of Carthage; it was founded by Tyrians. See map opp. p. 1.

ūtilis, -e, comp. ūtilior, sup. ūtilissimus, [ūtor], adj., *useful, serviceable, helpful; profitable, expedient.*

ūtilitās, -ātis, [ūtilis], f., *usefulness, expediency, advantage.* (UTILITY.)

utique, adv., *in any case, at any rate, certainly; especially.*

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, dep., used with abl., *make* USE *of, employ, have, enjoy; observe, maintain; exercise, display; consume, take; experience, undergo; practise; enjoy the friendship of, associate with.* With two abls., USE *as, find to be.*

utpote, [ut + pote], adv., *as is possible, as is natural, of course; seeing that, since.*

utrimque, [uterque], adv., *from both sides, on both sides.*

utrum, [uter], conj., not translated in direct questions; in indirect questions, *whether.* utrum . . . an, *whether . . . or.* utrum . . . necne, *whether . . , or not.*

utrobīque, [uter + ubī + -que], *on both sides, from each side.*

ūva, -ae, f., *grape;* collect., *grapes.*

uxor, -ōris, f., *wife, consort.* uxōrem dūcere, *to marry.* (UXORIOUS.)

V

vacātiō, -ōnis, [cf. vacō], f., *exemption.* (VACATION.)

vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *be empty, be* VACANT, *be without; have leisure; be unoccupied, lie waste.*

vacuus, -a, -um, sup. vacuissimus, [vacō], adj., *empty, free, vacant, unoccupied.* (VACUOUS.)

vadum, -ī, n., *shoal; ford.*

vāgīna, -ae, f., *sheath, scabbard.*

vāgītus, -ūs, [vāgiō], m., *crying, squalling.*

vagor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *wander about, roam about, rove.*

valēns, -entis, comp. valentior, sup. valentissimus, [part. of valeō], adj., *strong, powerful; well.*

valeō, -ēre, -uī, fut. part. valitūrus, *be strong, be able; be well; have power, have influence, prevail; extend;* as greeting, imp., valē, *farewell.*

Valerius, -ia, name of a famous Roman gens. It refers in this book to:
(1) *P. Valerius Pūblicola*, consul in 509 B.C.

(2) *M. Valerius Corvīnus*, who served with distinction against the Gauls in 349 B.C.

(3) *M. Valerius Laevīnus*, who, as consul in 280 B.C., had charge of the war against Pyrrhus.

(4) *L. Valerius Flaccus*, Cato's colleague in his consulship (199 B.C.) and censorship (184 B.C.)

(5) *Gaius Valerius Flaccus*, a governor in Gaul (called *imperātor* by Cicero, *Pro Quīnctio*, 7, 28).

(6) *Gaius Valerius Cabūrus*, a Gaul who received the Roman franchise, 83 B.C.

(7) *Gaius Valerius Donnataurus*, a chief of the Helvii.

(8) *Gaius Valerius Procillus*, son of (6); sent by Caesar as envoy to Ariovistus.

(9) *Gaius Valerius Troucillus*, a prominent Gaul of 'the Province,' employed by Caesar as interpreter.

(10) *Gaius Valerius Catullus*, the poet; see note to p. 80, l. 10.

valētūdō, -inis, [valeō], f., *health; good health; bad health.* (VALETUDINARIAN.)

vallēs or **vallis**, -is, f., VALLEY.

vāllum, -ī, n., *line of palisades, intrenchment; wall, rampart.*

Vangionēs, -um, m. pl., a German tribe on the west side of the Rhine, north of the Nemetes. See map opp. p. 155.

vānus, -a, -um, adj., *empty, void; ostentatious*, VAIN; *false, untrustworthy.*

varietās, -ātis, [varius], f., VARIETY; *mottled appearance.*

varius, -a, -um, adj., *variegated, mottled, diverse; different*, VARIOUS, *changeful; inconstant, fickle.*

Varrō, -ōnis, m., *Varro*, surname of *C. Terentius Varrō*, consul in 216 B.C.; he was defeated by Hannibal at Cannae.

Vārus, -ī, m., *Varus.* See **Attius.**

vās, vāsis, n., *vessel, dish, utensil*; pl., vāsa, -ōrum, *equipments, baggage.* (VASE.)

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [vāstus], *lay waste*, DEVASTATE.

vāticinātiō, -ōnis, [vāticinor, *predict*], f., *prediction.* (VATICINATION.)

Vatinius, Vati'nī, m., *Vatinius*, gentile name of *P. Vatinius*, a tribune of the Commons.

-ve, enclitic conj., *or.*

vectīgal, -ālis, [cf. vehō], n., *tax, tribute; revenue; income.* See note to p. 189, l. 8.

vectīgālis, -e, [vectīgal], adj., *tributary.*

vectōrius, -a, -um, [vehō], adj., *for carrying;* vectōrium nāvigium, *transport ship.*

vegetus, -a, -um, adj., *lively, vigorous, brisk; bright.*

vehementer, [vehemēns], comp. vehementius, sup. vehementissimē, adv., *eagerly, earnestly*, VEHEMENTLY; *vigorously, exceedingly, very much.*

vehō, vehere, vexī, vectus, *bear, carry, convey, draw.*

Veiēns, -entis, adj., *of Veii*, a town of the Etruscans, about twelve miles north of Rome. As subst., m. pl., *the inhabitants of Veii.* See map opp. p. 1.

Veientānus, -a, -um, [Veiī], adj., *of* or *belonging to Veii.* As subst., Veientānus, -ī, m., *an inhabitant of Veii.*

vel, [old imp. of volō], conj., *or if you will, or even, or.* vel . . . vel, *either . . . or.*

vel, [conj. vel], adv., *or even, even, certainly, indeed.*

Veliocassēs, -ium, dat. Veliocassīs, [Kel., 'Excelling in Probity'?], m. pl., a small state on the north side of the Sequana (*Seine*); chief town, Rotomagus, to-day Rouen.

Vellaviī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Vellavii*, a tribe of central Gaul.

vellus, -eris, n., *fleece.*

vēlōcitās, -ātis, [vēlōx], f., *swiftness, rapidity*, VELOCITY.

vēlōx, -ōcis, comp. -ior, sup. -issimus, adj., *swift, active, quick.*

vēlum, -ī, [cf. vehō], n., *sail.* vēla ventīs dare, *to make sail, sail away.*

velut or **velutī**, adv., *even as, just as; just as if, as if.* velut sī, *just as if.*

vēnātiō, -ōnis, [vēnor], f., *hunting; hunting spectacle.*

vēndō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [vēnum, *sale*, + dō], *sell.*

Venellī, -ōrum, m. pl., a Gallic state on the north coast, west of the Lexovii. See map opp. p. 155.

venēnātus, -a, -um, [part. of venēnō], adj., *poisoned, poisonous.*

venēnum, -ī, n., *drug; poison.*

Venetī, -ōrum, m. pl., a seafaring Gallic people, on the west coast; almost exterminated by Caesar.

Venetĭcus, -a, -um, [Venetī], adj., *of the Veneti, with the Veneti.*

venerātiō, -ōnis, [veneror], f., *reverence*, VENERATION; *cause of respect.*

venia, -ae, f., *indulgence, kindness, favor, pardon; permission.*

veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventus, *come, go.*

venter, -tris, m., *belly, stomach.* (VENTRAL.)

ventitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [intens. of veniō], *keep coming, come frequently, resort.*

ventus, -ī, m., *wind.*

Venusia, -ae, f., *Venusia*, a town of Apulia near the border of Lucania, the birthplace of Horace.

venustus, -a, -um, comp. venustior, sup. venustissimus, adj., *charming, agreeable, beautiful; graceful.*

verberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [verber, *whip, beating*], *beat, strike, knock.* (REVERBERATE.)

Verbigenus, -ī, m., a canton of the Helvetii, apparently east of the Tigurini.

verbum, -ī, n., *word, saying.* verba dare, *to deceive.* verba facere, *to speak.* (VERBAL.)

Vercassivellaunus, -ī, m., *Vercassivellaunus*, a chief of the Arverni.

Vercingetorīx, -rīgis, m., *Vercingetorix*, a chief of the Arverni, commander-in-chief of the united forces of Gaul.

vērē, comp. -ius, sup. vērissimē, [vērus], adv., *truly; rightly, properly.*

verēcundia, -ae, [cf. vereor], f., *modesty, shame; respect.*

vereor, -ērī, veritus sum, dep., *reverence, respect; fear; dread.*

Verginia, -ae, f., *Virginia*, daughter of the centurion *Virginius.*

Verginius, -ínī, m., *Virginius.*

vergō, -ere, —, —, *incline, lie, slope; be situated.*

vergobretus, -ī, [Kel., = 'He that

renders judgment,' 'Judge'], m., *vergobret*, title of the chief magistrate of the Aedui.

vēritās, -ātis, [vērus], f., *truth*, *truthfulness*.

vērō, [vērus], adv. and conj., *in truth*, *truly*, *indeed*, *however*. (VERILY.)

Vērōna, -ae, f., *Verona*, a city of Gallia Cisalpina. See map inside front cover.

verrūca, -ae, f., *wart*.

versiculus, -ī, [dim. of versus], m., *little verse*, *verse*.

versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of vertō], *turn often*; *vex*, *agitate*; *think over*, *meditate*; pass., *be*, *be situated*, *be busied*; *occupy one's self*, *conduct one's self*.

versor, -ārī, -ātus, [versō], dep., lit., *turn one's self about*, *move about* in any place; *dwell*, *live*, *be*; *be occupied*, *employed*. in bellō versārī, *to engage in war*.

versus, [part. of vertō], prep., *toward*, *in the direction of*.

versus, -ūs, [vertō], m., *line*, *row*; VERSE.

Verticō, Verticōnis, m., *Vertico*, one of the Nervii.

vertō, -ere, vertī, versus, *turn*, *direct*, *change*; pass., *be turned*, *turn about*, *return*. annō vertente, *with the returning year*, *in a whole year*. terga vertere, *to turn and flee*, *to flee*.

Verucloetius, -oetī, m., a Helvetian sent with Nammeius as envoy to Caesar.

vērum, [vērus], adv., *truly*, *certainly*; *but*.

vērus, -a, -um, comp. -ior, sup. vērissimus, adj., *true*, *real*, *genuine*; *right*, *proper*, *reasonable*. rē vērā, see rēs. As subst., **vērum**, -ī, n., *the truth*.

verūtum, -ī, n., *javelin*, *dart*.

vescor, -ī, —, dep., *feed upon*, *eat*; *enjoy*, *use*.

Vesontiō, -ōnis, m., chief city of the Sequani, on the Dubis (*Doubs*) river; now *Besançon*. See map opp. p. 155.

vesper, -erī and -eris, m., *evening*. (VESPERS.)

Vestālis, -e, [Vesta], adj., *of Vesta*, *Vestal*.

vester, -tra, -trum, [vōs], poss. pron., *your*, *yours*.

vēstīgium, -īgī, n., *sole*; *foot*; *footstep*, *footprint*; *spot*; *trace*, *mark*, VESTIGE; of time, *instant*, *moment*.

vestiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [vestis], *clothe*.

vestis, -is, f., *clothes*, *clothing*; *robe*. (VESTMENT.)

vestītus, -ūs, [vestiō], m., *clothing*, *apparel*.

veterānus, -a, -um, [vetus], adj., *old*, VETERAN. As subst., veterānī, -ōrum, m. pl., VETERAN *soldiers*, VETERANS.

vetō, -āre, -uī, -itus, *oppose*, *forbid*, *prohibit*. (VETO.)

Vettonēs, -um, m. pl., *Vettones*, a people of Lusitania, the modern Portugal. See the map, frontispiece.

Veturia, -ae, f., *Veturia*, the mother of Coriolanus.

Veturius, -úrī, m., *Veturius*, family name of *T. Veturius Calvīnus*.

vetus, -eris, sup. veterrimus, adj., *old*, *former*, *long-standing*, *ancient*.

vetustās, -ātis, [vetus], f., *antiquity*.

vetustus, -a, -um, [vetus], adj., *aged, old, ancient.*

vēxillum, -ī, [cf. vēlum], n., *flag*, used as an ensign for soldiers sent out as a detachment separate from the regular organization of the legion; raised by the order of the general as a signal.

vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of vehō], *harass, assail; lay waste, overrun.* (VEX.)

via, -ae, f., *way, road; passage; march, journey.* (VIA.)

viātor, -ōris, [via], m., *wayfarer, traveller.*

Vibullius, Vibullī, m., *Vibullius.*

vīcēnī, -ae, -a, [cf. vīgintī], num. adj., *twenty each.*

vīcēsimus, -a, -um, [vīgintī], adj., *twentieth.*

vīciēns, [cf. vīgintī], adv., *twenty times.*

victima, -ae, f., VICTIM, *animal for sacrifice.*

victor, -ōris, [vincō], m., *conqueror*, VICTOR. As adj., *victorious, triumphant.*

victōria, -ae, [victor], f., VICTORY, *success.*

victus, see vincō.

victus, -ūs, [vīvō], m., *living, mode of life; food, provisions.*

vīcus, -ī, m., *row of houses, street, quarter; village; hamlet.*

videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus, *see, perceive, observe; understand; go to see, visit.* Pass. as dep., videor, vidērī, vīsus sum, *be seen, seem, appear; seem good, seem best.* (VISION, VISIBLE.)

Vienna, -ae, f., a town of the Allobroges, modern *Vienne.*

vigilantia, -ae, [cf. vigil], f., *wakefulness*, VIGILANCE.

vigilia, -ae, [vigil, *watchman*], f., *sleeplessness, wakefulness; watch*, one of the four divisions of the night; see 183. (VIGIL.)

vīgintī, or **XX**, indecl. num. adj., *twenty.*

vīlla, -ae, [dim. of vīcus], f., *country-house, farm*, VILLA.

vīmen, -inis, n., *pliant twig, osier, withe.*

vinciō, -īre, vinxī, vinctus, *bind; fetter, confine, restrain.*

vinclum, see vinculum.

vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus, *conquer, defeat, subdue; exceed, surpass; have one's own way.*

vinculum or **vinclum**, -ī, [vinciō], n., *bond, band, cord, fastening, fetter, rope, chain;* pl., *fetters, bonds, prison.*

vindex, -icis, m., *defender, protector.*

vindicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [vindex], *assert claim to, demand formally, claim; avenge, punish.* in lībertātem vindicāre, *to claim for liberty, set free, free.* (VINDICATE.)

vīnea, -ae, f., *vineyard; arbor-shed*, VINEA, a movable shed with a sloping roof, smaller than the tortoise-shed (see testūdō), used as a shelter for soldiers working the artillery or attempting to undermine a wall. The dimensions are given (by Vegetius) as 16 feet long, 8 feet wide, and 7 feet high. The outside was covered with rawhides or other material to protect against fire. See INTROD., p. xliv.

vīnum, -ī, n., *wine.* (VINOUS.)

violō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [cf. vīs], *injure; dishonor, outrage*, VIOLATE.

vir, virī, m., *man; husband.* (VIRILE.)

virga, -ae, f., *twig, sprout; switch, scourge.*

virgō, -inis, f., *maiden,* VIRGIN; *young woman, girl.*

virgultum, -ī, [virga, *twig*], n., *brushwood.*

Viriāthus, -ī, m., *Viriathus,* a leader of the Lusitanians, who made war against the Romans. He was slain by his own followers.

Viridomārus, -ī, m., *Viridomarus:* (1) A king of the Gauls, conquered and slain by Marcellus. (2) An Aeduan.

virītim, [vir], adv., *man by man, singly, individually.*

Viromanduī, -ōrum, [Kel., = 'Clients, or Descendants, of Viromandus'], m. pl., a Belgic state about the headwaters of the Samara (*Somme*) and the Scaldis (*Schelde*).

virtūs, -ūtis, [vir], f., *manliness; courage, valor, vigor, energy; effort; worth, goodness.* Pl., *manly qualities,* VIRTUES.

vīs, acc. vim, abl. vī, pl. vīrēs, -ium, f., *strength; force, violence; influence; quantity, number.* Pl., *physical powers.* (VIM.)

vīsus, see videō.

vīsus, -ūs, [videō], m., *look; appearance,* VISION.

vīta, -ae, [cf. vīvō], f., *life; way of life; existence, being.* (VITAL.)

vītis, -is, f., *vine, grape vine.*

vitium, -vitī, n., *fault, defect, blemish,* VICE; *offense, crime.*

vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *shun, avoid.*

vitrum, -ī, n., *woad,* a blue dye used by the Britons.

vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctus, *live, be alive, have life; pass the time, live; dwell.* (VIVACITY.)

vīvus, -a, -um, [cf. vīvō], adj., *alive, living;* of a river, *running; lively, vigorous,* VIVACIOUS.

vix, adv., *with difficulty, hardly, scarcely.*

Vocciō, -ōnis, m., a king of the Norici.

vōciferor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [vōx, cf. ferō], dep., *cry out, exclaim, shout,* VOCIFERATE.

vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [cf. vōx], *call, summon,* INVOKE; *name; call for, demand; call together, invite; put, set, place.* in crīmen vocāre, *to accuse.* (VOCATION.)

Vocontiī, -ōrum, m. pl., a Gallic state in 'the Province.'

Volcae, -ārum, m. pl., a Gallic tribe, living in 'the Province.'

volitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [freq. of volō], *flit about, move, fly, hasten.*

volō, velle, voluī, —, *will, wish, determine; be willing, consent; mean, intend.* (VOLUNTARY.)

Volscus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Volsci, Volscian.* As subst., Volscī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Volscians,* a people of central Italy.

Volsō, see Mānlius.

volucer, -cris, -cre, adj., *flying, winged.* As subst., f., (sc. avis), *flying creature, bird.*

volūmen, -inis, [cf. volvō], n., *roll of writing, book,* VOLUME.

Volumnia, -ae, f., *Volumnia,* the wife of Coriolanus.

voluntārius, -a, -um, [voluntās], adj., *willing,* VOLUNTARY, *volunteer.* As subst., voluntāriī, -ōrum, m. pl., *volunteers.*

voluntās, -ātis, [volō], f., *will,*

wish, desire; good will, affection; consent.

voluptās, -ātis, [volō], f., *pleasure, enjoyment, delight; desire, passion.* (VOLUPTUOUS.)

Volusēnus, -ī, m., *Volusenus*, gentile name of *C. Volusēnus Quadrātus*, a tribune in Caesar's army.

Vorēnus, -ī, m., *Vorenus*, name of a centurion in Caesar's army, *L. Vorēnus.*

vōs, see **tū**.

vōtum, -ī, [voveō], n., *solemn pledge, vow; wish, prayer.* (DEVOTE.)

voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtus, *vow, dedicate, consecrate.*

vōx, vōcis, f., *voice; utterance, cry, sound; word, saying.* Pl., vōcēs, *statements, sayings.*

Vulcānus, -ī, m., *Vulcanus*, or *Vulcan*, god of fire.

vulgō, [vulgus], adv., *generally, commonly, everywhere.* (VULGARLY.)

vulgus, -ī, n., *common people, multitude, crowd.* (VULGAR.)

vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [vulnus], *wound, hurt.* (VULNERABLE.)

vulnus, -eris, n., *wound, misfortune, calamity, defeat, disaster.*

vulpēs, -is, f., *fox.* (VULPINE.)

vultus, -ūs, m., *expression of countenance, looks, visage, features; face.*

X

Xanthippus, -ī, m., *Xanthippus*, a general of the Lacedaemonians, who, as leader of the Carthaginians, defeated Regulus.

Xenophōn, -ōntis, m., *Xenophon;* see note to p. 79, l. 3.

Z

Zama, -ae, f., *Zama*, a town in Numidia, southwest of Carthage, the scene of the defeat of Hannibal by Scipio Africanus.

ENGLISH–LATIN VOCABULARY[1]

A

able, be, possum, posse, potuī.
about (*adv.*), circiter; (*prep.*) dē.
absent, be, absum, -esse, āfuī.
abundance, facultās, -ātis, *f.*
account of, on, propter, *with acc. or see* 165.
account, give an, nārrō, 1.
accustomed, be, soleō, -ēre, solitus sum.
accustomed, become, cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētus.
active, strēnuus, -a, -um.
admit, recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.
adopt (*of a plan*), ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum (163, *a*).
adorn, ōrnō, 1.
advance, prōgredior, -ī, -gressus sum ; signa ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus ; **advance to the attack**, signa īnferō (149, *b*).
advantage, be of, prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī (149, *a*).
advise, moneō, -ēre, monuī, monitus.
aedile, aedīlis, -is, *m.*
Aeduan, Aeduus, -ī, *m.*
Aeetes, Aeētēs, -ae, *m.*; 15.
Aemilius, Aemilius, Aemīlī, *m.*
Aeneas, Aenēās, -ae, *m.*; 15.
Aeson, Aeson, -onis, *m.*
affair, rēs, reī, *f.*
afraid, be, vereor, -ērī, veritus sum.
after (*conj.*), postquam; (*prep.*), post ; **after the following manner**, ad hunc modum.
afterwards, posteā.
again, iterum.
against, ad, contrā, in, *preps. with acc.*
agreed, be, conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus ; **it is agreed**, convenit.
agriculture, agrīcultūra, -ae, *f.*
aid, subsidium, subsídī, *n*,
Alba, Alba, -ae, *f.*
Alban, Albānus, -a, -um.
Alesia, Alesia, -ae, *f.*
Alexander, Alexander, -drī, *m.*
alienate, aliēnō, 1.
alive, vīvus, -a, -um.
all, omnis, -e.
allegiance, fidēs, -eī, *f.*; 43, 44.
alliance, societās, -ātis, *f.*
Allobroges, Allobrogēs, -um, *m. pl.*
allow, patior, patī, passus sum ; be allowed, licet, -ēre, licuit, *with dat.*
ally, socius, socī, *m.*
almost, ferē, paene.
already, iam.
also, etiam.
although, quamquam, cum (250, 251).
always, semper.
Ambiorix, Ambiorīx, -īgis, *m.*
ambition, ambitiō, -ōnis, *f.*
among, apud, *prep. with acc.*
amphora, amphora, -ae, *f.*

[1] References like this (165) are to the Grammatical Appendix.

Amulius, Amūlius, Amūlī, *m.*
ancestral, paternus, -a, -um.
anchor, ancora, -ae, *f.*
Ancus, Ancus, -ī, *m*,
and, et ; **and not**, neque, nec ; **and so**, itaque; **and also**, atque.
annihilate, ad interneciōnem redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus.
announce, nūntiō, 1 ; ēnūntiō.
annoyed, **be**, molestē ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.
another, alius, -a, -um.
answer, respōnsum, -ī, *n.*
Antiochus, Antiochus, -ī, *m.*
Antony, Antōnius, Antōnī, *m.*
any, quis, quid; 85, 86.
Apollonius, Apollōnius, Apollōnī, *m.*
apologize, satis faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus.
appearance, speciēs, -ēī, *f.*; 44.
apply oneself, incumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitus.
appoint, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus (127); (*of a time or day*), dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus.
approach, accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus ; appropinquō, 1.
Aquitani, Aquītānī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
Aquitania, Aquītānia, -ae, *f.*
Arar, Arar, Araris, *m.*
arbor-shed, vīnea, -ae, *f.*
Ardea, Ardea, -ae, *f.*
Argonauts, Argonautae, -ārum, *m. pl.*
Argus, Argus, -ī, *m.*
Ariovistus, Ariovistus, -ī, *m.*
armed man, armātus, -ī, *m.*
armlet, armilla, -ae, *f.*
arms, arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
army, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*
around to (*prep.*), circā *with acc.*
array, **to**, īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus.
arrival, adventus, -ūs, *m.*
arrive, perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus.
arrogance, arrogantia, -ae, *f.*; spīritus, -ūs, *m.* (*in plural*).
art, ars, artis, *f.*
as (*adv.*), quem ad modum ; **as follows**, ita ; **as long as**, dum (237); **as soon as**, cum prīmum (234). **as** (**to your saying**), quod (258).
as (*prep.*), prō, *with abl.*
Ascanius, Ascanius, Ascánī, *m.*
ascent, ascēnsus, -ūs, *m.*
Asia, Asia, -ae, *f.*
ask, **ask for**, rogō, 1 ; petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus.
assassin, percussor, -ōris, *m.*
assemble, conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus.
assizes, conventus, -ūs, *m.* (*in the plural*).
assume, sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus.
at all, omnīnō ; **at once**, statim ; **at first**, prīmō.
Athens, Athēnae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
Atrebates, Atrebātēs, -um, *m. pl.*
attack, **to**, oppugnō, 1 ; adorior, -īrī, -ortus sum ; aggredior, -ī, -gressus sum ; signa īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, illātus (149, *b*).
attack, impetus, -ūs, *m.*
attempt, cōnātus, -ūs, *m.*
auxiliary troops, auxilia, -ōrum, *n. pl.*; ālāriī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
avenge, ulcīscor, -ī, ultus sum.
Aventine, Aventīnus, -a, -um.
avoid, vītō, 1.
await, exspectō, 1.
Axona, Axona, -ae, *m.*

B

back (*of an enemy*), (hostem) āversum (vidēre).

baggage, heavy baggage, impedīmenta, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
ball, glāns, glandis, *f.*
bank (*of a river*), rīpa, -ae, *f.*
barbarian, barbarus, -ī, *m.*
barbarous, barbarus, -a, -um.
bare, nūdus, -a, -um.
battering-ram, ariēs, arietis, *m.*
battle, proelium, proelī, *n.*; pugna, -ae, *f.*
be, sum, esse, fuī.
be from, be distant, absum, -esse, āfuī.
bear, perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus; patior, -ī, passus sum.
beat (*defeat*), **to**, vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus.
because, quod (241); cum (240); **because of**, propter, *with acc.*; see also 165.
become established, inveterāscō, -ere, -veterāvī.
before (*prep.*), ante, *with acc.*
before (*conj.*), antequam, priusquam.
beg, petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus; implōrō, 1.
begin, coepī, coepisse, coeptus.
beginning, initium, initī, *n.*
Belgians, Belgae, -ārum, *m. pl.*
believe, crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus (149, *a*).
Bellovaci, Bellovacī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
besides this, accēdēbat ut (261).
besiege, oppugnō, 1.
Bibracte, Bibracte, -is, *n.*
Bibulus, Bibulus, -ī, *m.*
bid, liceor, -ērī, -itus sum.
bind together, colligō, 1; **bind oneself**, sanciō, -īre, sānxī, sānctus.
bitterly, graviter.
Bituriges, Biturīgēs, -um, *m. pl.*
block, to, obstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus.
blockade, obsidiō, -ōnis, *f.*
board, to (*of a ship*), cōnscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus.
boast, glōrior, -ārī, -ātus sum.
boat, nāvis, -is, *f.*
body, corpus, -oris, *n.*
body-guard, praetōria cohors, cohortis, *f.*
Boii, Boiī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
boldness, audācia, -ae, *f.*
book, liber, -brī, *n.*
border on, to, contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus.
born, be, nāscor, -ī, nātus sum.
both . . . and, et . . . et.
boundary, fīnis, -is, *m.*
boy, slave-boy, puer, puerī, *m.*
branch, rāmus, -ī, *m.*
brave, fortis, -e.
bravely, audācter, fortiter.
bravery, fortitūdō, -inis, *f.*
break (*of a camp*), moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus.
break down, refringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctus; **break off**, dirimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptus; **break through**, perfringō.
breathless, exanimātus, -a, -um.
bribery, largītiō, -ōnis, *f.*
bridge, pōns, pontis, *m.*
brief account, give a, pauca nārrō, 1, *with* dē *and abl.*
briefly, pauca (respondēre).
bring, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus; **trādūcō**, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus; importō, 1; **bring back**, redūcō; **bring up**, supportō, 1; ēducō, 1; (*a river*), subvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus; **bring before** (*the senate*), referō.
Britain, Britannia, -ae, *f.*
Britons, Britannī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*

broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brother, frāter, frātris, *m.*
Brundisium, Brundisium, Brundísī, *n.*
Brutus, Brūtus, -ī, *m.*
build, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus; fabricō, 1; aedificō, 1; (*of a camp*), mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus; **build up**, excitō, 1.
building, aedificium, aedifícī, *n.*
bull, taurus, -ī, *m.*
burn, combūrō; exūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstus; **burn to death**, īgnī cremō, 1; **burn at the end**, praeūrō.
business, negōtium, negōtī, *n.*
busy, be, occupō, 1 (*in passive*).
but, sed.
buy up, redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptus.
by (*of a personal agent*), ā, ab, *prep. with abl.* (160).

C

Caesar, Caesar, -aris, *m.*
Calais, Calaïs, -is, *m.*
call, nōminō, 1; appellō, 1; **call together**, convocō, 1; **call back**, revocō, 1.
camp, castra, -ōrum, *n. pl.*; **camp servant**, cālō, -ōnis, *m.*
campaign, stīpendium, -endī, *n.*, *see* serve.
can, possum, posse, potuī.
candidate, be a, petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus.
canton, pāgus, -ī, *m.*
Capitol, Capitōlium, -ōlī, *n.*
capitulation, dēditiō, -ōnis, *f.*
captive, captīvus, -ī, *m.*
capture, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus; (*of a town*), expugnō, 1.
carriage, carpentum, -ī, *n.*
carry, dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus; **carry off**, abdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus; **carry away**, auferō, -ferre, abstulī, ablātus; **carry on** (*of war*), gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus; **carry into**, īnferō, *with dat.*
Carthage, Carthāgō, -inis, *f.*
Carthaginian, Carthāginiēnsis, -e; Pūnicus, -a, -um; **a Carthaginian**, Carthāginiēnsis, -is, *m.*
case, causa, -ae, *f.*
Cassius, Cassius, Cassī, *m.*
Cassivellaunus, Cassivellaunus, -ī, *m.*
cast down, prōiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus.
Casticus, Casticus, -ī, *m.*
catch, comprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsus.
Catiline, Catilīna, -ae, *m.*
Cato, Catō, -ōnis, *m.*
Catullus, Catullus, -ī, *m.*
cause, causa, -ae, *f.*
cause, efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, ut (261).
cautiously, cautē.
cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, *m.*
cavalry (*adj.*), equester, -tris, -tre.
cease, dēsistō, -ere, dēstitī, -stitus.
Celts, Celtae, -ārum, *m. pl.*
centaur, centaurus, -ī, *m.*
centurion, centuriō, -ōnis, *m.*
cessation, without, continenter.
Cevenna, Cevenna, -ae, *f.*
chain, vinculum, -ī, *n.*
change, mūtō, commūtō, 1.
character, mōs, mōris, *m.* (*in the plural*).
charge of, have, prōcūrō, 1; praesum, -esse, -fuī (149, *b*).
chariot, currus, -ūs, *m.*; **war chariot**, essedum, -ī, *n.*
check, coerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus; comprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus.
chief man, prīnceps, prīncipis, *m.*

children, līberī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
choice, optiō, -ōnis, *f.*
choose, ēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus.
Cicero, Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.*
Cimberius, Cimberius, Cimbérī, *m.*
Cimbri, Cimbrī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
Cinna, Cinna, -ae, *m.*
citizen, cīvis, -is, *m.*
city, urbs, urbis, *f.*
civic, cīvicus, -a, -um.
civil, cīvīlis, -e.
civilize, molliō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.
climb, **climb up**, ascendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus.
close, **to**, claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus.
cohort, cohors, -hortis, *f.*
Colchis, Colchis, -idis, *f.*
Collatinus, Collātīnus, -ī, *m.*
colleague, collēga, -ae, *m.*
collect, cōgō, -ēre, coēgī, coāctus.
come, veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus; **come up**, **come up to**, subeō, -īre, -īvi, -itus; **come** (*to one's senses*), revertor, -vertī, -versus sum; **come about that**, **come to pass that**, sum, esse, fuī, ut; fīō, fierī, factus sum, ut (261).
command, imperō, 1; praesum, -esse, -fuī; **be in command**, praesum (149 *b*).
command, iussus, -ūs, (*only in abl. sing.* iussū).
commander, imperātor, -ōris, *m.*
commit suicide, sibi mortem cōnscīscere (cōnscīscō, -ere, -scīvī, -scītus).
Commius, Commius, Commī, *m.*
complain, queror, -ī, questus sum.
complete, perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus; fungor, -ī, fūnctus sum (163, *a*).
conceal, cēlō, 1 (128).
concern, cūra, -ae, *f.*
concerning, dē, *prep. with abl.*
condemn, condemnō, 1 (145).
conduct oneself, sē gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus.
confer, **have a conference**, colloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum.
conference, colloquium, -lóquī, *n.*
conquer, vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus.
consent, voluntās, -ātis, *f.*
consider, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
Considius, Cōnsidius, Cōnsídī, *m.*
conspiracy, coniūrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
conspirator, coniūrātus, -ī, *m.*
conspire, coniūrō, 1.
construct, cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtus; aedificō, 1.
consul, cōnsul, -ulis, *m.*
consulship, cōnsulātus, -ūs, *m.*
contend, contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus.
continuously, continenter.
contracted, angustus, -a, -um.
control, imperium, impérī, *n.*
control, **to**, fingō, fingere, fīnxī, fictus; **be in control of**, praesum, -esse, -fuī (149, *b*).
conveniently, commodē.
Corinth, Corinthus, -ī, *f.*
count over, ēnumerō, 1.
country, fīnēs, -ium, *m. pl.*; **native country**, patria, -ae, *f.*; **in the country of**, in (*with abl. of the people*).
courage, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
course, cursus, -ūs, *m.*
covet, adamō, 1.
Crassus, Crassus, -ī, *m.*
crime, scelus, -eris, *n.*
crisis, angustum, -ī, *n.*
crops, frūgēs, -um, *f. pl.*
cross, **cross over**, trānseō, -īre, -īvī, -itus (129).
crown, corōna, -ae, *f.*
cruelly, crūdēliter.

cruelty, crūdēlitās, -ātis, *f.*
crush, opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus.
custom, cōnsuētūdō, -inis, *f.*; mōs, mōris, *m.*
cut, caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesus; **cut down**, interscindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissus; **cut off**, abscīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus; interclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus; **cut to pieces**, concīdō.

D

damage, to, afflīgō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctus.
danger, perīculum, -ī, *n.*
dangerous, perīculōsus, -a, -um.
dare, audeō, -ēre, ausus sum.
darkness, tenebrae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
daughter, fīlia, -ae, *f.*
day, diēs, -ēī, *m. and f.* (45).
daybreak, at, prīmā lūce.
dead, mortuus, -a, -um.
dear, cārus, -a, -um.
death, mors, mortis, *f.*
deceive, fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsus.
December, December, -bris, -bre.
decide, cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtus.
Decimus, Decimus, -ī, *m.*
declare an outlaw, prōscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus.
decree, dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, crētus.
deep, altus, -a, -um.
defeat, pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus; superō, 1; vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus.
defend, dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus.
delay, dubitō, 1; moror, -ārī, -ātus sum.
deliver (*a speech*), habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus; **deliver up**, trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditus.
Delphi, Delphī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
demand, postulō, 1.
depart, proficīscor, -ī, profectus sum.
departure, profectiō, -ōnis, *f.*
deprive of, spoliō, 1 (158).
depth, altitūdō, -inis, *f.*
descended, prōgnātus, -a, -um (159, *a*).
describe, expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus.
desert, dēserō, -ere, -uī, -tus.
deserter, perfuga, -ae, *m.*; fugitīvus, -ī, *m.*
desire, cupiditās, -ātis, *f.*
desire, to, appetō, -ere, -petīvī, -petītus.
despatch, litterae, -ārum, *f. pl.*; nūntius, nūntī, *m.*
destroy, cōnsūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus; dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus.
devastate, vāstō, 1.
devote, tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus.
die, morior, morī *and* morīrī, mortuus sum.
differ, differō, -ferre, distulī, dīlātus
difficulty, difficultās, -ātis, *f.*
dig, fodiō, -ere, fōdī, fossus.
dine, cēnō, 1.
direct, negōtium dō, dare, dedī, datus.
direction, pars, partis, *f.*; **in every direction, in all directions**, in omnēs partēs.
disadvantage, dētrīmentum, -ī, *n.*
disappoint, fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsus; (*in an explanation*), dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus.
disease, morbus, -ī, *m.*
disembark, ēgredior, -ī, -gressus sum.
disgraceful, turpis, -e.
disgusted, be, taedet, -ere, -uit (204, 146).

dismiss, dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.
distant, be, absum, -esse, āfuī.
distress, to be in, labōrō, 1.
distribute (*of grain*), mētior, -īrī, mēnsus sum.
district, regiō, -ōnis, *f.*; locus, -ī, *m.*
disturb, summoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus.
Diviciacus, Dīviciācus, -ī, *m.*
Divico, Dīvicō, -ōnis, *m.*
divide, dīvidō, -ere, dīvīsī, dīvīsus.
divisions, in two, bīpartītō.
divorce, to, repudiō, 1.
do, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus; gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus; **do** (**wrong**), (iniūriam) īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus (149, *b*).
door, iānua, -ae, *f.*
doubt, dubitātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
doubt, dubitō, 1 (263).
doubtful, dubius, -a, -um.
dragon, dracō, -ōnis, *m.*
draw (*of a sword*), dēstringō, -ere, -strīnxī, -strictus; **draw up**, īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus; cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus; (*of a ship*), subdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus.
dread, horreō, -ēre, -uī.
drive, compellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus; agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus; **drive away, drive back**, repellō; reiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus; **drive out**, expellō.
drop, to (*of the wind*), intermittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.
dry land, siccum, -ī, *n.* (195, *a*).
Dumnorix, Dumnorīx, -īgis, *m.*
during, per, *prep. with acc.*
dwelling-place, domicilium, domicilī, *n.*

E

each, quisque, quidque; (*individually*), singulī, -ae, -a; **each one** (*of two*), uterque, utraque, utrumque.
eager, cupidus, -a, -um (143).
eagerly, audācter.
eagle-bearer, aquilifer, -erī, *m.*
early, antīquus, -a, -um.
easily, facile.
easy, facilis, -e.
eight, octō.
eighteen, octōdecim.
elder, maior nātū.
elect, creō, 1; ēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus.
elk, alcēs, -is, *f.*; 6.
eloquence, ēloquentia, -ae, *f.*
employ, negōtium dō, dare, dedī, datus (148).
encamp, castra pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus; cōnsideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus.
encounter, congressus, -ūs, *m.*
encourage, hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
end, fīnis, -is, *m.*; **end of**, extrēmus, -a, -um (192).
end, to, fīnio, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.
enemy, hostis, -is, *m.*; (*personal*), inimīcus, -ī, *m.*
engage in battle, congredior, -ī, -gressus sum.
enlist, cōnscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus.
Ennius, Ennius, Ennī, *m.*
enroll, cōnscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus.
ensign, signum, -ī, *n.*; īnsigne, -is, *n.*
enter, ingredior, -ī, -gressus sum.
entreaty, prex, precis, *f.*
entrenchment, fossa, -ae, *f.*
entrust, permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.
envoy, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*

equal, make, aequō, 1.
erect, to (*build up in stories*), contabulō, 1.
escape, profugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitus; ēvādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsus.
establish, cōnfīrmō, 1.
eternal, perpetuus, -a, -um.
Etruria, Etrūria, -ae, *f.*
even, etiam.
every, omnis; **every year**, quotannīs; **everything**, omnēs rēs, omnia; **everywhere**, ubīque.
evident, be, satis cōnstat, -āre, -stitit (204).
evil, malum, -ī, *n.*
evil doing, maleficium, maleficī, *n.*
exceedingly, vehementer.
excel, praecēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus.
except, praeter, *prep. with acc.*
exchange, inter sē dare (dō, dare, dedī, datus).
exhaust, dēfatīgō, 1.
exhausted, cōnfectus, -a, -um; dēfatīgātus, -a, -um.
expectation, spēs, speī, *f.*
extend (*trans.*), amplificō, 1; (*intrans.*), pertineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.
extensive, magnus, -a, -um; **so extensive**, tantus, -a, -um.
extraordinary, incrēdibilis, -e.
extravagance, lūxuria, -ae, *f.*

F

face about, signa convertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus; **in the face of** (*facing*), adversus, -a, -um.
fact, rēs, reī, *f.*
fail, dēsum, -esse, -fuī (154, *a*).
faithlessness, perfidia, -ae, *f.*
famous, clārus, -a, -um.
far, longē; procul; **not far**, haud procul.
farther, ulterior, -ius.
fate, fātum, -ī, *n.*
father, pater, -tris, *m.*; **of a father**, paternus, -a, -um.
fatherland, patria, -ae, *f.*
favor, grātia, -ae, *f.*
favorable, idōneus, -a, -um (157).
fear, timor, -ōris, *m.*
fear, to, vereor, -ērī, veritus sum; timeō, -ēre, -uī.
feature, vultus, -ūs, *m.*
feel (*of pain*), capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus; **feel sure**, cōnfīdō, -ere, -fīsus sum.
few, paucī, -ae, -a.
field, ager, agrī, *m.*
fiercely, ācriter.
fifteen, quīndecim.
fifth, quīntus, -a, -um.
fifty, quīnquāgintā.
fight, pugnō, 1; **fight it out**, dēcertō, 1; **fight on the defensive**, prōpugnō, 1.
finally, postrēmō, dēnique.
find, reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertus; **find out**, cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus; explōrō, 1; **find fault with**, accūsō, 1.
fire, īgnis, -is, *m.*
first, prīmus, -a, -um.
five, quīnque; **five o'clock**, ūndecima hōra; 183.
Flaminius, Flāminius, Flāmínī, *m.*
flank, latus, -eris, *n.*
flee, fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitus; fugam petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus; sē fugae mandāre, 1; fugā sē recipere (recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus).
fleece, vellus, -eris, *n.*
fleet, classis, -is, *f.*
flight, fuga, -ae, *f.*
flow, fluō, -ere, flūxī, flūxus.
fluently, to speak, multā scientiā ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *with abl.*
follow, sequor, sequī, secūtus sum; cōnsequor.

fond of war, bellicōsus, -a, -um.
food, cibus, -ī, *m.*
foot, pēs, pedis, *m.*; **at the foot of**, sub. *prep. with abl.*
for, nam, enim.
for the sake of, causā, *following a gen.*
for, **in behalf of**, prō, *prep. with abl.*
force, vīs, vīs, *f.*; *pl.* vīrēs (33); forces (*troops*), cōpiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
force, to, cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus.
forced (*of a march*), magnus, -a, -um.
ford, vadum, -ī, *n.*
forefathers, maiōrēs, -um, *m. pl.*
forest, silva, -ae, *f.*
forever, in perpetuum, in perpetuō.
forget, oblīviscor, -ī, oblītus sum.
form, fōrma, -ae, *f.*
form, to (*of an alliance*), iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctus; (*of a plan*), capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus; ineō, -īre, -īvī, -itus; (*of a line of battle*), īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus; (*of a phalanx*), faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus.
former, ille, illa, illud; 81.
fortification, mūnītiō, -ōnis, *f.*
fortify, mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus; commūniō.
fortune, fortūna, -ae, *f.*
forum, forum, -ī, *n.*
found, to, condō, -ere, -didī, -ditus.
four, quattuor.
free, līber, -era, -erum.
free, to, līberō, 1 (158).
freely, līberē.
friend, amīcus, -ī, *m.*
friendly, amīcus, -a, -um (157).
friendship, amīcitia, -ae, *f.*
frighten, terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus; **frighten thoroughly**, perterreō.
from, ā, ab, *prep. with abl.*; dē, *prep. with abl.*; (*with verb of hindering or preventing*), quōminus.
from above, dēsuper.
front of, prīmus, -a, um; 192.
fruitful, frūctuōsus, -a, -um.
full, plēnus, -a, -um (163, *c*).
furnish, cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus.
further (*adv.*), praetereā.

G

Gades, Gādēs, -ium, *f. pl.*
gain, to, cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum.
Gallic, Gallus, -a, -um; Gallicus, -a, -um.
game, lūdus, -ī, *m.*
Garonne, Garumna, -ae, *m.*
garrison, praesidium, praesidī, *n.*
gate, porta, -ae, *f.*
gather, colligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus; **gather together** (*trans.*), cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus; (*intrans.*), conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus.
Gaul, Gallia, -ae, *f.*; **a Gaul**, Gallus, -ī, *m.*
general, imperātor, -ōris, *m.*
generally, plērumque.
generosity, līberālitās, -ātis, *f.*
Geneva, Genava, -ae, *f.*
German, Germānus, -a, -um; **the Germans**, Germānī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
getting grain, frūmentātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
get possession of, potior, -īrī, -ītus sum (163, *a*); **get together**, see gather; **get done**, efficiō, -ere, -fecī, -fectus, ut (261).
gift, dōnum, -ī, *n.*
give, dō, dare, dedī, datus; afferō, -ferre, attulī, allātus; **give up**, dēsistō, -ere, dēstitī, dēstitus; (*surrender*), dēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus; **give in marriage**, in mātrimōnium dō.
gladly, libenter.

Glauce, Glaucē, -ēs, *f.*
go, eō, īre, īvī, itus ; **go up**, subeō ; **go on**, gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus (*in passive*).
golden, aureus, -a, -um.
good, bonus, -a, -um ; **goods**, bona, -ōrum, *n. pl.* (195 *a*) ; **good deal of**, magnus, -a, -um.
government, imperium, -pérī, *n.* ; (*of a king*), rēgnum, -ī, *n.* ; **the government is administered**, rēgnātur (204).
gradually, paulātim.
grain, frūmentum, -ī, *n.* ; **grain supply**, frūmentum, commeātus, -ūs, *m.* ; **getting grain**, frūmentātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
grandson, nepōs, -ōtis, *m.*
grant, concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus ; dō, -are, dedī, datus.
grappling-iron, cōpula, -ae, *f.*
great, magnus, -a, -um ; summus, -a, -um.
greatly, magnopere ; multum.
Greece, Graecia, -ae, *f.*
grief, dolor, -ōris, *m.*
ground, sōlum, -ī, *n.*
groundless, vānus, -a, -um.
guard, cūstōs, -ōdis, *m.*
guard duty, statiō, -ōnis, *f.*
guard, to, cūstōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.
guard, be on one's, caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautus.
guardian, tūtor, -ōris, *m.*

H

halt, cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtus.
Hamilcar, Hamilcar, -aris, *m.*
hand, manus, -ūs, *f.*
happen, contingō, -ēre, contigī, -tāctus ; accidō, -ere, -cidī ; fīō, fierī, factus sum, ut (261).
harass, vexō, 1 ; lacessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus.
harm, maleficium, malefícī, *n.* ; iniūria, -ae, *f.*
harm, to, noceō, -ēre, -uī; 149, *a*.
harmony, concordia, -ae, *f.*
Harpies, Harpȳiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
hasten, contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus ; **hasten forward**, volitō, 1.
hatred, odium, odī, *n.*
haughtiness, arrogantia, -ae, *f.*, spīritus, -ūs, *m.* (*in plural*).
haul up (*of a ship*), subdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus.
have, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus ; **have a conference**, in colloquium veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus.
head, caput, -itis, *n.*
headlong, praeceps, -itis, 54.
hear, audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.
heavy, gravis, -e,
hedge, saepēs, -is, *f.*
height, altitūdō, -inis, *f.* ; iugum, -ī, *n.* ; mōns, montis, *m.* ; collis, -is, *m.*
help, auxilium, auxílī, *n.* ; subsidium, subsídī, *n.*
Helvetian, Helvētius, Helvētī, *m.*
hem in, contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.
Hercules, Herculēs, -is, *m.*
Hercynian, Hercynius, -a, -um.
hereditary estate, hērēdium, -ēdī, *n.*
hesitation, dubitātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
hide, abdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus.
high, altus, -a, -um ; excelsus, -a, -um.
high-born, nōbilis, -e.
higher, superior, -ius ; excelsior, -ius.
hill, collis, -is, *m.*
hinder, impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus (262).
hindered (*in movement*), impedītus, -a, -um.

his, eius ; **his own** (*and reflexive*), suus, -a, -um ; ipsīus (200–1).
history, historiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
hither, citerior, -ius.
hold, teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentus ; (*of assizes*), agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus ; **hold back**, prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus (262); **hold out**, sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus; **hold possession of**, occupō, 1 ; potior, -īrī, -ītus sum (163, *a*).
home, domus, -ūs, *f.*; (*with verbs of motion*), domum (132).
honor, honor, -ōris, *m.*
honorary, honōrificus, -a, -um.
hope, spēs, spei, *f.*; **hope of refuge**, praesidium, praesídī, *n.*
hope, to, spērō, 1.
horse, equus, -ī, *m.*
horseman, eques, -itis, *m.*
host, multitūdō, -inis, *f.*
hostage, obses, obsidis, *m. and f.*
hostile, hostīlis, -e ; inimīcus, -a, -um ; see **enemy**.
Hostilius, Hostīlius, -īlī, *m.*
house, domus, -ūs, *f.*, 40 ; **at the house of**, apud.
how often, quotiēns.
hundred, centum.
hunger, famēs, -is, *f.*
hunting-spectacle, vēnātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
hunt up, requīrō, -ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus.
hurl, iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus; mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus.
hurry, contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus.
husband, marītus, -ī, *m.*; coniūnx, -iugis, *m.*
hut, casa, -ae, *f.*
Hylas, Hylās, -ae, *m.*

I

I, ego, meī, mihi, mē ; 76.
Iccius, Iccius, Iccī, *m.*
if, sī ; **if not**, nisi.
ignore, ignōrō, 1.
impel, indūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (260).
import, īnferō, -ferre, intulī, illātus.
importance, of greatest, summus, -a, -um.
important, to be, intersum, -esse, -fuī.
in, in, *prep. with acc. or abl.*; **in behalf of**, prō, *prep. with abl.*; **in order that**, ut ; (*with a comparative*), quō ; **in this way**, ita.
inactivity, ignāvia, -ae, *f.*
increase, be added, accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus.
incredible, incrēdibilis, -e.
induce, addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (260).
indulgence, indulgentia, -ae, *f.*
infantry, peditēs, -um, *m. pl.*
inflict (*wounds*), īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus ; **inflict punishment**, suppliciō afficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.
influence, auctōritās, -ātis, *f.*; **to have very little**, minimum possum, posse, potuī.
influence, to, addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus (260).
influential, to be, largiter possum, posse, potuī.
inform, (aliquem) certiōrem faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus.
inhabit, incolō, -ere, -coluī, -cultus.
inhabitant, incola, -ae, *m. and f.*
injure, lacerō, 1.
injury, iniūria, -ae, *f.*
innocent, innocēns, -entis, 54.
inquire of, rogō, 1 (128) ; quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus (*with* ab *or* ex *and abl.*).
inroad, ēruptiō, -ōnis, *f.*
inspire, iniciō, -ere, **-iēcī, -iectus** (149 *b*).

instruct, praecipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus (*with dative*).
insult, contumēlia, -ae, *f.*
intend, in animō habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
intention, animus, -ī, *m.*
interpreter, interpres, -itis, *m.*
into, in, *prep. with acc.*
inventor, inventor, -ōris, *m.*
involve, implicō, 1.
island, īnsula, -ae, *f.*
Italy, Italia, -ae, *f.*

J

Jason, Iāsōn, -onis, *m.*
join, coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus; **join** (*battle*), committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.
joint, articulus, -ī, *m.*
joy, laetitia, -ae, *f.*
Julius, Iūlius, Iūlī, *m.*
Jupiter, Iuppiter, Iovis, *m.*; 33.
Jura, Iūra, -ae, *m.*

K

keep, retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus; **keep concealed**, cēlō, 1; **keep from**, contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus; prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus; dēpellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus.
kill, interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.
kindness, beneficium, benefícī, *n.*; **acts of kindness**, beneficia.
king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*
kingdom, rēgnum, -ī, *n.*
know, sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus; cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus.

L

Labienus, Labiēnus, -ī, *m.*
ladder, scālae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
lake, lacus, -ūs, *m.*
lament, queror, -ī, questus sum.
land, lands, agrī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*; fīnēs, -ium, *m. pl.*
land, to (*trans.*), expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus; (*intrans.*), ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum.
language, lingua, -ae, *f.*
large, magnus, -a, -um.
last, suprēmus, -a, -um; **at last**, postrēmō, dēnique.
late in the day, multō diē; **late at night**, multā nocte.
Latinus, Latīnus, -ī, *m.*
Latium, Latium, Latī, *n.*
latter, hīc, haec, hōc; 81.
laugh at, irrīdeō, -ēre, -rīsī, -rīsus.
launch, dēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus.
lay, pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus; **lay aside, lay down**, dēpōnō; **lay waste**, dēpopulor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
lead, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus; **lead across**, trādūcō (129); **lead up**, subdūcō.
lean, to, reclīnō, 1.
leap down, dēsiliō, -īre, -siluī, -sultus (*with* ex *and abl.*).
learn, discō, -ere, didicī; certior fīō, fierī, factus sum.
leave (*trans.*), dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus; relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictus; (*intrans.*), excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus; discēdō, *with* ab *and abl.*; (*go out*), exeō, -īre, -īvī, -itus.
left, reliquus, -a, -um.
leg, crūs, crūris, *n.*
legion, legiō, -ōnis, *f.*
lend, dō, dare, dedī, datus.
less, minus.
letter (*of the alphabet*), littera, -ae, *f.*; (*an epistle*), litterae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
levy, imperō, 1 (149, *b*).
liberty, lībertās, -ātis, *f.*

library, bibliothēca, -ae, *f.*
lie down, prōcumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitus.
lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
light, lūmen, -inis, *n.*
light armed, lightly equipped, expedītus, -a, -um.
limb, membrum, -ī, *n.*
line of battle, aciēs, aciēī, *f.*
Lingones, Lingonēs, -um, *m. pl.*
Liscus, Liscus, -ī, *m.*
list, tabula, -ae, *f.*
literature, litterae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
live, vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctus.
location (natural), nātūra locī.
long, longus, -a, -um ; excelsus, -a, -um.
longer (*adv.*), diūtius.
long for, cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus.
look after, alicuī esse cūrae (156); prōvideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsus ; **look at**, intueor, -ērī, -tuitus sum ; **look into**, perspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus ; **look out**, prōspiciō.
lose, āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.
loss, dētrīmentum, -ī, *n.*
lot, fortūna, -ae, *f.*
Lucius, Lūcius, Lūcī, *m.*, *expressed by the abbreviation* **L.**
lucky, fortūnātus, -a, -um.
Lucretia, Lucrētia, -ae, *f.*
Lucterius, Lucterius, -térī, *m.*

M

magistrate, magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*
maiden, virgō, -inis, *f.*
maintain, alō, -ere, aluī, altus *or* alitus.
make, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus ; creō, 1 ; **make** (*a trench*), perdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus ; **make it possible**, efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, ut (261) ; **make ready, make preparations**, comparō, 1 ; **make war**, bellum īnferō, -ferre, intulī, illātus (149, *b*).
make reply, respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsus.
man, vir, virī, *m.*
manage, administrō, 1.
many, multī, -ae, -a ; **many things**, multa, -ōrum, *n. pl.* (195, *a*).
march, iter, itineris, *n.*
march, to, iter faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus.
Marcius, Mārcius, Mārcī, *m.*
Marius, Marius, Marī, *m.*
marriage, mātrimōnium, mātrimōnī, *n.*
marry, in mātrimōnium dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus ; *of the woman*, nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūptus (*with dat.*).
match, pār, paris, *m.*
matter, rēs, reī, *f.*
mean, sibi velle (volō, velle, voluī).
meanwhile, interea.
Medea, Mēdēa, -ae, *f.*
medicine, medicīna, -ae, *f.*
meet, occurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursus.
meeting, concilium, concīlī, *n.*
mention, mentiō, -ōnis, *f.*
mercenary, mercennārius, -a, -um.
merciful, clēmēns, -entis ; 54.
Mercury, Mercurius, Mercúrī, *m.*
mercy, clēmentia, -ae, *f.*
Messala, Messāla, -ae, *m.*
messenger, nūntius, nūntī, *m.*
middle, middle of, medius, -a, -um ; **midnight**, media nox.
midst of, in the, medius, -a, -um.
mile, mīlle passūs ; *pl.* mīlia passuum.
Miletus, Mīlētus, -ī, *f.*
military, mīlitāris, -e ; **military affairs**, rēs mīlitāris.
mind, mēns, mentis, *f.*
mischief, iniūria, -ae, *f.*

miss, requīrō, -ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus.
Mitylene, Mitylēnae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
Molo, Molō, -ōnis, *m.*
money, pecūnia, -ae, *f.*
month, mēnsis, -is, *m.*
moon, lūna, -ae, *f.*
more, plūs, plūrēs ; 54.
more (*adv.*), amplius.
moreover, praetereā, autem.
Morini, Morinī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
most powerful, to be, plūrimum valeō, -ēre, valuī.
mount, mōns, montis, *m.*
mount, to, ascendō, -ere, -endī, -ēnsus.
mountain, mōns, montis, *m.*
mountaineer, montānus, -ī, *m.*
mouth (*of a river*), ōstium, ōstī (*usually in plural*).
move, dēmigrō, 1.
muster, cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.
my, meus, -a, -um.
Mysia, Mȳsia, -ae, *f.*

N

name, nōmen, nōminis, *n.* ; **by name**, nōmine ; (*adv.*), nōminātim.
Narbo, Narbō, -ōnis, *m.*
narrow road, narrow pass, angustiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
Nasua, Nasua, -ae, *m.*
nation, gēns, gentis, *f.*
natural location, nātūra locī ; **natural stronghold**, locus nātūrā mūnītus.
nature, nātūra, -ae, *f.*
near, prope.
nearer, propius.
nearest, proximus, -a, -um.
neglect, neglegō, -ere, neglēxī, neglēctus.
negotiate for (*of peace*), petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus.
neighbor, fīnitimus, -ī, *m.*
Nepos, Nepōs, -ōtis, *m.*
Nervii, Nervīī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
nevertheless, tamen.
new, novus, -a, -um.
news, nūntius, nūntī, *m.*
night, nox, noctis, *f.* ; **late at night**, multā nocte.
nine, novem.
nineteen, ūndēvīgintī.
no, nūllus, -a, -um ; **no one**, neque quisquam, nēmō, *dat.* nēminī, *acc.* nēminem ; *gen. and abl. wanting, supplied by* nūllīus *and* nūllō.
noble, nōbilis, -e.
noon, merīdiēs, -ēī, *m.*
nor, neque, nec.
north, septentriō, -ōnis, *m.* (*usually in plural*).
not, nōn ; haud ; **not at all**, nihil ; **not yet**, nōndum.
nothing, nihil, *indecl.*
notice, animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus.
Noviodunum, Noviodūnum, -ī, *n.*
now, nunc.
Numa, Numa, -ae, *m.*
number, numerus, -ī, *m.*
Numitor, Numitor, -ōris, *m.*
nymph, nympha, -ae, *f.*

O

oar, rēmus, -ī, *m.*
oath, iūsiūrandum, iūrisiūrandī, *n.*
obey, pāreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus (149, *a*).
obligation, officium, offícī, *n.* ; **under obligation**, obstrictus, -a, -um.
observe, perspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus.

obtain, impetrō, 1; **obtain possession of, get control of**, potior, -īrī, potītus sum (163, *a*).
occupy, occupō, 1.
Ocean, Ōceanus, -ī, *m.*
offend, offendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus.
off one's guard, inopīnāns, -antis.
old, vetus, -eris.
on, in, *prep with abl.*; **on account of**, propter, *prep. with acc.*; **on the next day**, postrīdiē, proximō diē.
once, ōlim; **at once**, statim.
one, ūnus, -a, -um; **one** (. . . another), alius, -a, -ud (. . . alius).
oneself, self, suī, sibi, sē; suus, -a, -um.
only one, sōlus, -a, -um; ūnus, -a, -um.
open, apertus, -a, -um.
open, to, patefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus.
opinion, sententia, -ae, *f.*
opportunity, facultās, -ātis, *f.*; locus, -ī, *m.*
opposite (*bank*), alter, -era, -erum; 49.
or (**whether . . .**), an.
order, give orders, iubeō, -ere, iussī, iussus.
ordinary, cotīdiānus, -a, -um.
Orgetorix, Orgetorīx, -īgis, *m.*
Origines, Orīginēs, -um, *f.*
Ostia, Ōstia, -ae, *f.*
other, alius, -a, -ud; (*of two*), alter, -era, -erum; 49.
ought, oportet, -ēre, oportuit.
our, noster, -tra, -trum.
outpost, praesidium, praesídī, *n.*
outside (*of*), extrā, *prep. with acc.*
over, super, *prep. with acc. or abl.*
overcome, superō, 1.
overhang, impendeō, -ēre.
overlook, condōnō, 1.
overtop, superō, 1.
own, ipsīus; suus, -a, -um (197–8; 200–1).
ox, bōs, bovis, *m.*

P

palace, rēgia, -ae, *f.*; 195, *b*.
pardon, venia, -ae, *f.*
pardon, to, ignōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtus; 149, *a*.
part, pars, partis, *f.*
pass, let, intermittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus; **pass** (*honorary measures*), faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus.
paternal, paternus, -a, -um.
patrimony, patrimōnium, -ōnī, *n.*
pay, persolvō, -ere, -solvī, -solūtus; pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsus.
peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*
Pelias, Peliās, -ae, *m.*; 15.
penalty, poena, -ae, *f.*
people, populus, -ī, *m.*
perceive, animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus.
perish, pereō, -īre, periī.
permit, permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.
personal property, impedīmentum, -ī, *n.* (*in plural*).
persuade, persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus (149, *a*).
phalanx, phalanx, -angis, *f.*
picked men, ēlēctī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
pike, pīlum, -ī, *n.*
pirate, pīrāta, -ae, *m.*
Piso, Pīsō, -ōnis, *m.*
place, locus, -ī, *m.* (*plur.* locī *or* loca).
place, to, collocō, 1; **place in** *or* **on**, impōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus (149, *b*); **place in command of**, praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (149, *b*).
plain, plānitiēs, -ēī, *f.*

plan, cōnsilium, cōnsĭlī, *n.*
plead, verba faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus; dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus.
please, placeō, -ēre, placuī, placitus (149, *a*).
pleasure, voluptās, -ātis, *f.*
pledge, iūsiūrandum, iūrisiūrandī, *n.*
plough, arō, 1.
plunder, dīripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptus.
plundering, rapīna, -ae, *f.*
ply (*oars*), contendō, -ere, -dī, -tus (remīs, 163).
poet, poeta, -ae, *m.*
poison, venēnum, -ī, *n.*
poison, to, venēnō īnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.
Pompey, Pompeius, -pēī, *m.*
poor, pauper, -eris, -ere.
portico, porticus, -ūs, *f.*
position, locus, -ī, *m.*
possess, get possession of, occupō, 1; potior, -īrī, potītus sum (163, *a*).
power, potestās, -ātis, *f.*; (*of a god*), nūmen, -inis, *n.*; **power, have more**, plūs possum, posse, potuī.
powerful, to be more, plūs possum, posse, potuī; **to be very**, plūrimum possum, posse, potuī.
pray (in the expression '*what, pray?*'), tandem.
present, be, adsum, -esse, **affuī.**
present, to, dōnō, 1 (148, *a*).
preserve, servō, 1; teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentus.
prevent, dēterreō, -ēre, -terruī, -territus; prohibeō, -ēre, -hibuī, -hibitus (262); see p. 311, l. 1 and note.
previously, prius.
Priscus, Prīscus, -ī, *m.*
prison, carcer, -eris, *m.*
privately, sēcrētō.
Proca, Proca, -ae, *m.*
procure, prōcūrō, 1.
profitable, less, dēterior, -ius.
promise, polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus sum.
property, fortūnae, -ārum, *f. pl.*; bona, -ōrum, *n. pl.* (195, *a*).
propitiate, plācō, 1.
protect, dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus.
protection, praesidium, praesĭdī, *n.*; fidēs, fidēī, *f.* (45).
proud, superbus, -a, -um.
province, prōvincia, -ae, *f.*
provisions, cibāria, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
Prusias, Prūsiās, or Prūsia, -ae, *m.*
public, in, pūblicē (*adv.*).
Publius, Pūblius, Pūblī, *m.*, *expressed by the abbreviation* **P.**
Pullo, Pullō, -ōnis, *m.*
punish, animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, in, *with acc.*
punishment, poena, -ae, *f.*; supplicium, supplĭcī, *n.*
purchase, emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptus.
purpose of, for the, see 231 and N.
pursue, sequor, -ī, secūtus sum.
put, pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus; impōnō (149, *b*); coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus; **put** (*an end to*), faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus; **put in command**, praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus; **put off**, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus; **put on**, induō, -ere, -duī, -dūtus; **put to flight, in fugam** coniciō; **in fugam convertō**, -ere, -vertī, -versus; **put out** (*to sea*), prōvehor, -ī, -vectus sum (in altum).

Q

quickly, celeriter.
quickness, quick action, celeritās, -ātis, *f.*

R

raft, ratis, -is, *f.*
raise (*of a siege*), relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictus.
rampart, agger, -eris, *m.*; vāllum, -ī, *n.*
rank, ōrdō, -inis, *m.*
ransom, redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptus.
Rauraci, Rauracī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
reach, perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, ad *with acc.*
read, legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus.
ready, parātus, -a, -um.
rear, novissimī, -ae, -a; **rear guard**, novissimum agmen, -inis, *n.*
reason, for this, ob eam rem.
rebellion, rebelliō, -ōnis, *f.*
Rebilus, Rebilus, -ī, *m.*
rebuild, restituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtus.
recall, revocō, 1.
receive, accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.
recover, recuperō, 1.
red-hot, fervēns, -entis; 54.
redoubt, castellum, -ī, *n.*
reduce, redigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus.
refrain, temperō, 1.
refuse, recūsō, 1 (262).
regard, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
Reginus, Rēgīnus, -ī, *m.*
region, locus, -ī, *m.*; regiō, -ōnis, *f.*
reinforcement, subsidium, -sidī, *n.*
reinforcements, auxilia, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
reject, repudiō, 1.
relative, propinquus, -ī, *m.*; (*by marriage*), affīnis, -is, *m. and f.*
relax, remittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (*with* dē *and abl.*).
release, līberō, 1 (158).
remain, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus; sē tenēre (teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentus) *with abl.*
Remi, Rēmī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
remove, removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus.
Remus, Remus, -ī, *m.*
reply, respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsus.
report, nūntiō, 1; ēnūntiō; renūntiō.
reproach, accūsō, 1.
reputation, exīstimātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
request, petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus; rogō, 1.
requital, make, grātiam referō, -ferre, rettulī, -lātus.
rest, rest of, reliquus, -a, -um (192).
restore, restituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus.
result is, fit, fierī, factum est, ut (261).
retainer, cliēns, -entis, *m.*
retreat, pedem referō, -ferre, rettulī, -lātus; sē referre; fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitus.
return, reditiō, -ōnis, *f.*
return, to (*trans.*), reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditus; (*intrans.*), revertor, -ī, -versus sum.
revenue, vectīgal, -ālis, *n.*
revolt, dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.
revolution, rēs novae, rērum novārum, *f. pl.*
Rhine, Rhēnus, -ī, *m.*
Rhodes, Rhodus, -ī, *f.*
Rhone, Rhodanus, -ī, *m.*
rich, dīves, -itis.
ride over, perequitō, 1.
right, rights, iūs, iūris, *n.*
ring, ānulus, -ī, *m.*
ripe, mātūrus, -a, -um.
river, flūmen, -inis, *n.*
road, iter, itineris, *n.*
roam about, vagor, -ārī, -ātus sum.

robe, vestis, -is, *f.*
Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um ; Romans, Rōmānī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
Rome, Rōma, -ae, *f.*
Romulus, Rōmulus, -ī, *m.*
rope, fūnis, -is, *m.*
rouse, incitō, 1.
row (*rank*), ōrdō, -inis, *m.*
royal, rēgius, -a, -um ; **royal power**, rēgnum, -ī, *n.*
rule, imperium, impérī, *n.* (*usually in the pl.*) ; **under the rule of**, sub *with abl.*
rule, to, imperō, 1.
run, currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursus ; **run away**, profugiō, -ere, -fūgī ; **run forward**, prōcurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursus.
running, cursus, -ūs, *m.*
rush (*to arms*), concurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursus ; **rush forth**, prōvolō, 1.

S

Sabines, Sabīnī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
sacrifice, to, immolō, 1.
sad, trīstis, -e.
safe, tūtus, -a, -um.
safety, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*
Saguntum, Saguntum, -ī, *n.*
sally, ēruptiō, -ōnis, *f.*
same, īdem, eadem, idem.
Sardinia, Sardinia, -ae, *f.*
satisfied (to be), satis habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
Saturn, Sāturnus, -ī, *m.*
Saturnia, Sāturnia, -ae, *f.*
save, ēripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptus ; cōnservō, 1.
say, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus ; inquam, inquis, inquit.
scout, explōrātor, -ōris, *m.*
seal, obsignō, 1.
seat, sēdēs, -is, *f.*
second, secundus, -a, -um ; alter, -era, -erum, 49 ; **a second time**, iterum.
see, videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus ; intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus.
seek, petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus ; quaerō, -ere, -sīvī, -sītus ; (*try*), cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
seize, dētrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctus ; occupō, 1 ; comprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsus.
select, dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus.
self, oneself, suī, sibi, sē ; suus, -a, -um.
senate, senātus, -ūs, *m.*
senator, senātor, -ōris, *m.*
send, mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus ; **send forward, send ahead**, praemittō.
separate, dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsus ; sēparō, 1.
separately, sēparātim.
Sequani, Sēquanī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
serve (*in the army*), stīpendia faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus.
service, ūsus, -ūs, *m.*
Servius, Servius, Servī, *m.*
set (*a day or time*), dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus ; **set out**, proficīscor, -ī, -fectus sum ; **set fire to**, incendō, -ere, -dī, -cēnsus ; **set sail**, nāvem solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus (*also without* nāvem).
settle, compōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus.
seven, septem.
seventh, septimus, -a, -um.
several, complūrēs, -a *and* -ia.
shape, fōrma, -ae, *f.*
sharp, very, praeacūtus, -a, -um.
sharply, ācriter.
shield, scūtum, -ī, *n.*
ship, nāvis, -is, *f.*
shoe, calceus, -ī, *m.*

shore, lītus, -oris, *n.*
short, brevis, -e.
show, dēmōnstrō 1 ; ostendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus ; **show** (*mercy*), ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum ; **show oneself superior to**, sē praeferre (ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus); 149, *b*.
sickle, falx, falcis, *f.*
sides, on all, undique.
siege, obsidiō, -ōnis, *f.*
siege-works, 'things that are serviceable for a siege' ; see p. 267, l. 6.
sight, cōnspectus, -ūs, *m.*
signal, signum, -ī, *n.*
silent, to be, taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
since, cum (240).
six, sex.
sixty, sexāgintā.
skill, scientia, -ae, *f.*
skilled, perītus, -a, -um (143).
slaughter, caedēs, -is, *f.*
slave, servus, -ī, *m.*; **slave-boy**, puer, -erī, *m.*
slavery, servitūs, -ūtis, *f.*
slay, interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.
smoothness, lēnitās, -ātis, *f.*
snake, serpēns, -entis, *m.*
snatch, rapiō, -ere, -uī, -tus.
snow, nix, nivis, *f.*
so, tam ; adeō ; **so large, so great**, tantus, -a, -um ; **so that**, ut ; **so that . . . not**, nē.
sod, caespes, -itis, *m.*
soldier, mīles, -itis, *m.*
soliloquize, sēcum loquī (loquor, loquī, locūtus sum).
some, aliī, -ae, -a ; quīdam, quaedam, quiddam ; 86.
son, fīlius, fīlī, *m.*
soon as possible, as, quam celerrimē.
sovereign rule, rēgnum, -ī, *n.*
Spain, Hispānia, -ae, *f.*
speak, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus ; verba faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus.
speech, ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
speed, celeritās, -ātis, *f.*
spread (*trans.*), dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus ; (*intrans.*), sē diffundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus.
spring up, prōsiliō, -īre, -siluī, -sultus.
spy out, explōrō, 1.
squander, effundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus.
stab, cōnfodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossus.
stag, cervus, -ī, *m.*
stand, stō, stāre, stetī, status ; cōnstō, -stāre, -stitī.
standard, signum, -ī, *n.*; īnsigne, -is, *n.*
standard-bearer, signifer, -ferī, *m.*
start, initium faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus.
state, cīvitās, -ātis, *f.*
station, collocō, 1 ; dispōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus.
statue, imāgō, -inis, *f.*
stern (*of a ship*), puppis, -is, *f.*
still, tamen.
stir, commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus.
stone, lapis, -idis, *m.*
stop, resistō, -ere, -stitī.
storm, tempestās, -ātis, *f.*
storm, to, expugnō, 1.
strange, inūsitātus, -a, -um.
stratagem, īnsidiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
stream, rīvus, -ī, *m.*
strength, fīrmitūdō, -inis, *f.*
stronghold, arx, arcis, *f.*
study, studium, studī, n. (*usually in pl.*).
subdue, pācō, 1.
succeed, to, succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus.
such (*a barbarian*), tam (barbarus); **such little chaps**, hominēs

tantulae statūrae; (*adj.*), tālis, -e; is, ea, id.

sudden, subitus, -a, -um.

suddenly, subitō.

suffer (*punishment*), suppliciō afficī (afficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus); he **suffers punishment**, poena eum sequitur (sequor, -ī, secūtus sum).

sufficient, satis.

suitable, idōneus, -a, -um (157).

Sulla, Sulla, -ae, *m.*

summon, vocō, 1; arcessō, -ere, -cessīvī, -cessītus.

sunrise, sōlis ortus, -ūs, *m.*

sunset, sōlis occāsus, -ūs, *m.*

supply of grain, rēs frūmentāria, reī frūmentāriae, *f.*; frūmentum, -ī, *n.*

supporter, cliēns, -entis, *m.*

supreme, summus, -a, -um; summa, -ae, *f.*, *with gen.*

surrender, sē in potestātem permittere (permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus); sē dēdere (dēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus).

surround (*trans.*), circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datus (148, *a*); (*intrans.*), circumveniō, -īrē, -vēnī, -ventus.

survive, supersum, -esse, -fuī (149, *b*).

suspect, suspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus.

suspicion, suspīciō, -ōnis, *f.*

swampland, palūs, -ūdis, *f.*

sword, gladius, gladī, *m.*

Symplegades, Symplēgadēs, -um, *f. pl.*

T

take, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus; recipiō; sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus; **take from**, dētrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctus; take (*as allies*), ascīscō, -ere, -scīvī, -scītus; **take away**, tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus; ēripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptus; **take up**, suscipiō; **take arms from one**, armīs dēspoliō, 1; **take precaution**, praecaveō, -ere, -cāvī, -cautus; **take possession of**, occupō, 1; potior, -īrī, potītus sum (163, *a*); **take refuge**, sē abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus; **take through**, trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus; **take vengeance on**, ulcīscor, -ī, ultus sum.

talent, talentum, -ī, *n.*

talk, loquor, -ī, locūtus sum.

Tanaquil, Tanaquil, -īlis, *f.*

Tarpeia, Tarpeia, -ae, *f.*

Tarpeian, Tarpeius, -a, -um.

Tarquinius, Tarquinius, -ínī, *m.*

tax, vectīgal, vectīgālis, *n.*

teach, doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctus.

teacher, doctor, -ōris, *m.*

tell, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus; (*show*), doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctus.

temple, templum, -ī, *n.*

ten, decem.

tenth, decimus, -a, -um.

territory, fīnēs, -ium, *m. pl.*

Teutones, Teutonī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*

Thames, Tamesis, -is, *m.*

than, quam.

that, in order that, ut, quō (229 and *a*); nē (264); quīn (263).

thatch, strāmentum, -ī, *n.*; thatched, strāmentīs tēctus.

their, suus, -a, -um; eōrum.

them, *see* **they**.

then, deinde, tum.

there, ibi.

therefore, quā rē, quam ob rem, itaque.

Thessaly, Thessalia, -ae, *f.*

they, them, *pl. of* is, ea, id.

thick, dēnsus, -a, -um.

thing, rēs, reī, *f.*; *expressed also by the neuter of adjectives;* 195, *a.*
think, putō, 1; arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum.
third (*adj.*), tertius, -a, -um.
third (*noun*), pars tertia; two thirds, duae partēs.
thirty, trīgintā.
this, hīc, haec, hōc.
thoroughly, expressed by *per-* in composition.
those, illī, eī (81).
thousand, mīlle.
Thrace, Thrācia, -ae, *f.*
three, trēs.
three quarters, trēs partēs.
through, trāns, per, *preps. with acc.*
throw, coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus; throw **headlong**, praecipitō, 1; throw **into confusion**, perturbō, 1.
thus, sīc.
Tiber, Tiberis, -is, *m.*
tide, aestus, -ūs, *m.*
timber, māteria, -ae, *f.*
time, tempus, -oris, *n.*
Titus, Titus, Titī, *m.*, *expressed by the abbreviation* **T.**
together with, ūnā cum, *and abl.*
to one another, inter sē.
tooth, dēns, dentis, *m.*
top of, summus, -a, -um (192).
torture, cruciātus, -ūs, *m.*
touch, attingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctus.
towards, ad; (*of time*), sub (*with acc.*).
tower, turris, -is, *f.*
town, oppidum, -ī, *n.*
trader, mercātor, -ōris, *m.*
Transalpine, Trānsalpīnus, -a, -um.
transfer, trānsferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus.
transport, trānsportō, 1.
treat, agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus.
tree, arbor, -oris, *f.*
trench, fossa, -ae, *f.*
Treveri, Trēverī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
trial, perīculum, -ī, *n.*; causa, -ae, *f.*
triangular, triquetrus, -a, -um.
tribune, tribūnus, -ī, *m.*
tributary, stīpendiārius, -a, -um.
tribute, stīpendium, stīpendī, *n.*
Trinobantes, Trinobantēs, -um, *m. pl.*
triple, triplex, -icis.
troops, cōpiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
trouble, to, commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus.
Troy, Troia, -ae, *f.*
true, vērus, -a, -um.
try, experior, -īrī, -pertus sum; cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum; temptō, 1.
Tulingi, Tulingī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
Tullia, Tullia, -ae, *f.*
Tullius, Tullius, Tullī, *m.*
Tullus, Tullus, -ī, *m.*
turn about, convertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus; **turn away**, āvertō.
twin, geminus, -a, -um.
two, duo, -ae, -o.

U

unconquered, invictus, -a, -um.
under, sub, *prep. with acc. or abl.*
understand, intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus.
undertake, suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.
undertaking, negōtium, negōtī, *n.*
unfavorable, inīquus, -a, -um; aliēnus, -a, -um.
unharmed, incolumis, -e.
unite, cōnsentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsus.
unless, nisi.
unlike, dissimilis, -e (157).
unoccupied, be, vacō, 1.
until, dum (238).
unwilling, invītus, -a, -um; **be unwilling**, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī (101).

upon, in, *prep. with abl. or acc.*
urge, hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum ; cohortor.
usage, cōnsuētūdō, -inis, *f.*
use, ūsus, -ūs, *m.*
use, to, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum (163, *a*) ; (*of force*), faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus.
useless, inūtilis, -e.

V

valor, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
Veneti, Venetī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
Verbigenus, Verbigenus, -ī, *m.*
Vercingetorix, Vercingetorīx, -īgis, *m.*
verse, versiculus, -ī, *m.*
very, ad modum ; *expressed also by the superlative.*
Vesontio, Vesontiō, -ōnis, *m.*
veteran, veterānus, -a, -um ; **veteran soldier**, veterānus, -ī, *m.*
victor, victor, -ōris, *m.*
victory, victōria, -ae, *f.*
view, to, spectō, 1.
village, vīcus, -ī, *m.*
Volusenus, Volusēnus, -ī, *m.*
Vorenus, Vorēnus, -ī, *m.*
voyage, to, nāvigō, 1.

W

wait, wait to see, exspectō, 1 (259).
wall, mūrus, -ī, *m.* ; moenia, -ium, *n. pl.*
war, bellum, -ī, *n.*
ward, pūpillus, -ī, *m.*
warfare, rēs mīlitāris, reī mīlitāris, *f.*
warlike, bellicōsus, -a, -um.
warship, nāvis longa.
watch, cūstōs, -ōdis, *m. and f.*; **of the night**, vigilia, -ae, *f.*
water, aqua, -ae, *f.*
way, iter, itineris, *n.*; **modus**, -ī, *m.*; **make a way**, iter capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus ; **in this way**, hōc modō ; ita ; **in such a way**, tālī modō ; **get out of the way**, tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus.
wealth, opēs, -um, *f. pl.*
weapon, tēlum, -ī, *n.*
weather, tempestās, -ātis, *f.*
weep, fleō, -ere, flēvī, flētus.
weigh (*anchor*), tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus.
welfare, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*
well-supplied, cōpiōsus, -a, -um.
well-trained, exercitātus, -a, -um.
what (*rel.*), quod, id quod ; (*interrog.*), quid ; **what kind of**, quālis, -e.
wheel about, signa convertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus.
when, cum, ubi.
where, ubi.
wherefore, quā rē, quam ob rem.
whether . . . or, utrum . . . an ; sī ; 259 and *a*.
which, quī, quae, quod.
while, dum (236); **for a little while**, paulisper.
who (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod ; (*interrog.*), quis, quae, quid.
whole, tōtus, -a, -um ; omnis, -e.
why, cūr, quam ob rem, quā rē.
wide, lātus, -a, -um.
widely, lātē.
wife, uxor, -ōris, *f.*; mulier, -eris, *f.*
wild, ferus, -a, -um ; **wild animal, wild beast**, fera, -ae, *f.*
will, testāmentum, -ī, *n.*
win, pariō, -ere, peperī, partus.
wind, ventus, -ī, *m.*
wine, vīnum, -ī, *n.*
winter quarters, hīberna, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
wish, voluntās, -ātis, *f.*

wish, to, volō, velle, voluī.
with, cum, *prep. with abl.*
withdraw (*trans.*), ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus; dēdūcō; (*intrans.*), discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus; sē recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.
without, sine, *prep. with abl.*
withstand, sustineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus.
woad, vitrum, -ī, *n.*
woman, mulier, -eris, *f.*
wonder, mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum.
wonderful, incrēdibilis, -e.
wooded, silvestris, -e.
woods, silva, -ae, *f.*
workman, faber, fabrī, *m.*
wound, vulnus, -eris, *n.*
wound, to, vulnerō, 1.
wrack, frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus.
wretched, miser, -era, -erum.
wrong, wrong-doing, iniūria, -ae, *f.*

Y

yet, tamen.
yield, cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus.
yoke, iugum, -ī, *n.*
yoke, to, iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctus.
young, adulescēns, -entis; iuvenis, -is; **young man**, adulēscēns, -entis, *m.*
your, vester, -tra, -trum.

Z

zeal, studium, studī, *n.*
Zetes, Zētēs, -ae, *m.*